

**MACMILLAN'S  
TEACHING IN PRACTICE**

**VOLUME TWO**

# MACMILLAN'S TEACHING IN PRACTICE

AN ENCYCLOPAEDIA OF MODERN METHODS  
OF TEACHING IN THE PRIMARY SCHOOL  
WRITTEN BY RECOGNISED AUTHORITIES  
IN EDUCATION AND

EDITED BY

E. J. S. LAY

*Seven volumes, with a Portfolio of 160 Class Pictures in full  
colour and 8 additional Colour Plates containing thirty-two  
drawings to illustrate the Art Lessons. A most useful Reference  
Book to the pictures is issued with the Portfolio*

VOLUME TWO



Hindi Teachers' Training Institute	
LIBRARY	
Subject	.....
Book No	.....
Almshah No	.....
..... No	.....

MACMILLAN AND CO., LIMITED  
ST. MARTIN'S STREET, LONDON



PRINTED IN GREAT BRITAIN BY PERNELL AND SONS, LTD.  
PAULTON (SOMERSET) AND LONDON

# CONTENTS OF VOLUME II

## SECOND YEAR'S COURSE OF HISTORY

PAGE

I. ABRAHAM (A GREAT CHIEF OF THE SHEPHERD-MEN) . . . . .	3
II. HAMMURABI (A WISE KING OF THE RIVER-MEN) . . . . .	13
III. JOSEPH (THE HEBREW SLAVE WHO BECAME AN EGYPTIAN NOBLEMAN) . . . . .	19
IV. THESEUS (THE BRAVE PRINCE) . . . . .	34
V. ULYSSES (THE CUNNING WARRIOR) . . . . .	44
VI. SOLOMON (THE WISE KING) . . . . .	53
VII. SENNACHERIB (A CRUEL AND TERRIBLE KING) . . . . .	59
VIII. NEBUCHADNEZZAR (THE KING WHO TOOK THE JEWS TO BABYLON) . . . . .	65
IX. CYRUS THE PERSIAN (THE KING WHO HELPED THE JEWS) . . . . .	71
X. PHEIDIPPIDES (THE SWIFT RUNNER) . . . . .	80
XI. LEONIDAS (THE BRAVE KING OF SPARTA) . . . . .	89
XII. ALEXANDER THE GREAT (THE MAN WHO NEVER LOST A BATTLE) . . . . .	96
XIII. A BOY IN ATHENS . . . . .	108
XIV. ATHENS IN THE AGE OF PERICLES . . . . .	122
XV. MORE STORIES TO TELL . . . . .	129
1. THE GODDESS HOLDA AND THE FIRST FLAX-GROWER . . . . .	129
2. THE STORY OF PHAËTON . . . . .	130

## SECOND YEAR'S COURSE OF HANDWORK FOR THE HISTORY LESSONS

ABRAHAM . . . . .	134
An Eastern house made from a cardboard box, paper-cutting scene of an oasis; plastic model of an Eastern well; paper cut-out of an Eastern shepherd.	
HAMMURABI . . . . .	136
Paper model of Hammurabi's chair; plastic model of the stele; cut-out of a Babylonian man.	
JOSEPH . . . . .	138
Egyptian lyre in cardboard; plastic model of a pyramid; plastic model of the Sphinx; Egyptian paper-cutting scene; Egyptian boat modelled in card; paper cut-out of an Egyptian.	

	PAGE
<b>THESEUS</b>	<b>140</b>
Greek sword and scabbard made in paper; plastic model of sandal; Greek bed in card.	
<b>ULYSSES</b>	<b>142</b>
Toy project associated with the Wooden Horse of Troy.	
<b>SOLOMON AND SENNACHERIB</b>	<b>144</b>
Assyrian battering-ram made from a cardboard box; Assyrian winged bull modelled in clay; model of a Phoenician ship.	
<b>THE ASSYRIANS</b>	<b>146</b>
An Assyrian city gate modelled in cardboard; an Assyrian chariot modelled in cardboard.	
<b>NEBUCHADNEZZAR AND CYRUS</b>	<b>148</b>
Babylonian temple modelled in cardboard; Persian winged Sphinx modelled in clay or plasticine; paper cut-out of a Persian nobleman and attendant.	
<b>ALEXANDER THE GREAT</b>	<b>150</b>
Plastic model of a Greek helmet; Greek shields made by paper-cutting; model of a Greek bow; a cut-out of a Greek warrior.	
<b>A BOY IN ATHENS</b>	<b>152</b>
A Greek vase in paper-cutting; plastic model of a Greek jug; co-operative paper-cutting—a wreath of olive leaves; plastic model of a boy's top; plastic model of a Greek table; plastic model of a Greek lamp.	

## THE SECOND YEAR'S COURSE OF ENGLISH

<b>THE TEACHING OF LITERATURE</b>	<b>157</b>
SCOPE OF THE WORK	157
<b>MODEL LESSONS</b>	<b>158</b>
THE JELLYFISH TAKES A JOURNEY	<i>Grace James</i> 158
THEOPHANIA	<i>Adelaide Phillips</i> 161
SEPTIMUS SEPTIMUSSON—PART I.	<i>E. Nesbit</i> 166
SEPTIMUS SEPTIMUSSON—PART II.	<i>E. Nesbit</i> 171
<b>SIX SIMPLE PLAYS FOR THE SECOND YEAR'S COURSE</b>	<b>178</b>
THE CLEVER COBBLER	<i>Dorothy M. Prescott</i> 178
FAIRYFOOT	<i>Kate Lay</i> 182
WISHES	<i>Marian V. Hayes</i> 186
THE BURNT CAKES	<i>Marian V. Hayes</i> 189
THE SHOP-WINDOW FAIRY	<i>Mary K. Byrne</i> 191
SLEEPY CECILY	<i>Dorothy M. Prescott</i> 195

# CONTENTS OF VOLUME II

vii

## SECOND YEAR'S COURSE OF POETRY

PAGE

POEMS FOR THE SECOND YEAR'S COURSE . . . . .	203
SONGS . . . . .	205
1. SALLY IN OUR ALLEY . . . . . <i>Henry Carey</i>	205
2. APRIL SHOWERS . . . . . <i>James Stephens</i>	206
RHYMES . . . . .	207
3. CAT'S MEAT . . . . . <i>Harold Monro</i>	207
4. FAN THE FLAME . . . . . <i>Wilfrid Thorley</i>	208
5. THE MUFFIN-MAN . . . . . <i>Madeleine Nightingale</i>	209
6. LITTLE APRIL FISH . . . . . <i>E. Rendall</i>	209
OF FAIRIES . . . . .	210
7. A FAIRY WENT A-MARKETING . . . . . <i>Rose Fyleman</i>	211
8. FAIRIES BY THE SEA . . . . . <i>Rose Fyleman</i>	212
9. THE LIGHT-HEARTED FAIRY . . . . . <i>Anon</i>	212
10. VERY NEARLY! . . . . . <i>Queenie Scott-Hopper</i>	213
OF PEOPLE . . . . .	214
11. "SOOEPP" . . . . . <i>Walter de la Mare</i>	214
12. TIRED TIM . . . . . <i>Walter de la Mare</i>	216
13. DANNY MURPHY . . . . . <i>James Stephens</i>	216
14. PEDLAR JIM . . . . . <i>Florence Hoare</i>	216
FLOWERS AND BIRDS . . . . .	217
15. POPPIES . . . . . <i>Ida Wolfe</i>	218
16. THE BEE AND THE FLOWER . . . . . <i>Lord Tennyson</i>	219
17. FOUR AND EIGHT . . . . . <i>Ida Wolfe</i>	219
18. THE THROSTLE . . . . . <i>Lord Tennyson</i>	220
19. GAY ROE . . . . . <i>Robert Bridges</i>	221
20. ROBIN REDBREAST . . . . . <i>William Allingham</i>	222

	PAGE
STORIES . . . . .	224
21. THE BABES IN THE WOOD . . . . .	225
22. FIVE LITTLE BROTHERS . . . . . <i>Ella Wheeler Wilcox</i>	226
23. DAN THE COLT . . . . . <i>Wilfrid Thorley</i>	227
24. A SONG OF THE GREENAWAY CHILD . . . . . <i>Austin Dobson</i>	228
LET'S PRETEND . . . . .	229
25. CATCHING FAIRIES . . . . . <i>William Cory</i>	229
26. THE CARAVAN . . . . . <i>Madeleine Nightingale</i>	230
27. THE OPPOSITE SIDE . . . . . <i>Flora Sandström</i>	231
28. WISHING . . . . . <i>William Allingham</i>	231
29. SOLDIERS . . . . . <i>Thomas Hardy</i>	232
30. CHOOSE YOUR CALLING . . . . . <i>By permission</i>	233
31. THE FAIRIES . . . . . <i>William Allingham</i>	233
POEMS BY LORD TENNYSON . . . . .	236
32. THE BROOK . . . . . <i>Lord Tennyson</i>	237
33. CRADLE SONG . . . . . <i>Lord Tennyson</i>	238
34. SWEET AND LOW . . . . . <i>Lord Tennyson</i>	239
35. THE OWL . . . . . <i>Lord Tennyson</i>	240
SIX NOTABLE PICTURES FOR ORAL AND WRITTEN COMPOSITION . . . . .	242
1. THE PRINCESS AND THE FROG . . . . .	242
2. OUR ANCIENT WORD OF COURAGE: FAIR SAINT GEORGE . . . . .	245
3. IDUNA AND THE APPLES OF YOUTH . . . . .	251
4. THE LAMENT FOR ICARUS . . . . .	254
5. ULYSSES AND THE SIRENS . . . . .	257
6. ORPHEUS AND HIS LYRE . . . . .	259

# CONTENTS OF VOLUME II

ix

PAGE

## SECOND YEAR'S COURSE OF COMPOSITION

INTRODUCTION . . . . .	263
1. THE STORY OF THE DANDELION . . . . .	263
2. THE LION IN LOVE . . . . .	265
3. THE HANDSOME STAG . . . . .	267
4. THE FOX AND THE ASS . . . . .	268
5. THE WISE MAID OF WESSEX—PART I . . . . .	270
6. THE WISE MAID OF WESSEX—PART II. . . . .	271
7. THE GREEDY NOBLEMAN . . . . .	274
8. THE FAT HENS AND THE LEAN HENS . . . . .	275
9. BRER RABBIT AND BRER TORTOISE RUN A RACE—PART I. . . . .	277
10. BRER RABBIT AND BRER TORTOISE RUN A RACE—PART II. . . . .	279
11. THE STUDENT AND THE PEARS . . . . .	280
12. HOW THE SULTAN FOUND AN HONEST MAN . . . . .	282
13. THE VAIN JACKDAW . . . . .	284
14. THE PRINCESS OF THE IVORY CASTLE . . . . .	286
15. MAY DAY . . . . .	287
16. THE DOG AND THE WOLF . . . . .	289
17. THE OLD CREEPER . . . . .	290
GROUPED WORDS FOR SPELLING . . . . .	293

## SECOND YEAR'S COURSE OF NEEDLEWORK

SYLLABUS OF THE SECOND YEAR'S WORK . . . . .	299
INTRODUCTION . . . . .	299
SUGGESTED COURSE OF LESSONS FOR THE FIRST TERM . . . . .	300
NINE LESSONS IN DETAIL FOR THE FIRST TERM . . . . .	302
MAKING THE PATTERN OF A CURVED BAG TO HOLD KNITTING . . . . .	302
Details and Demonstration of Lesson 1.	
MAKING A HEM ALONG A CONVEX CURVE . . . . .	305
Details and Demonstration of Lessons 3 and 4.	
HEMMING . . . . .	306
Details and Demonstration of Lesson 6.	

## CONTENTS OF VOLUME II

MAKING A HANDLE FOR A BAG . . . . .	PAGE 309
Details and Demonstration of Lesson 12.	
DRAWING AND WORKING A PICTURE AND INITIALS IN RUNNING STITCH . . .	311
Details and Demonstration of Lessons 15 and 16.	
MAKING UP THE KNITTING BAG . . . . .	314
Details and Demonstration of Lesson 20.	
EXPERIMENTAL WORK. MAKING THE PATTERN OF A DOLL'S PINAFORE . . .	316
Details and Demonstration of Lesson 24.	
SUGGESTED COURSE OF LESSONS FOR THE SECOND TERM . . .	318
THREE LESSONS IN DETAIL FOR THE SECOND TERM . . .	320
MAKING THE PATTERN OF A FEEDER . . . . .	320
Details and Demonstration of Lesson 13.	
NEATENING A CURVED EDGE BY MEANS OF FACING WITH TAPE . . .	324
Details and Demonstration of Lesson 18.	
STICK PRINTING . . . . .	326
Details and Demonstration of Lesson 21.	
SUGGESTED COURSE OF LESSONS FOR THE THIRD TERM . . .	327
TWO LESSONS IN DETAIL FOR THE THIRD TERM . . .	329
DECORATIVE STITCHERY BORDERS . . . . .	329
Details and Demonstration of Lesson 5.	
ARRANGEMENT OF BORDER DESIGNS . . . . .	330
Details and Demonstration of Lesson 7.	

## SECOND YEAR'S COURSE OF NATURE STUDY

FOREWORD TO SECOND YEAR'S COURSE . . . . .	337
I. HIPS AND HAWS . . . . .	338
II. BRAMBLE OR BLACKBERRY . . . . .	341
III. NON-SPLITTING DRY FRUITS . . . . .	343
IV. THE APPLE . . . . .	345
V. THE DAFFODIL . . . . .	348
VI. SNAILS AND SLUGS . . . . .	352
VII. SNAILS AND SLUGS . . . . .	356
VIII. POND SNAILS . . . . .	356

# CONTENTS OF VOLUME II

xi

	PAGE
IX. HIBERNATION . . . . .	361
X. HAZEL FLOWERS . . . . .	364
XI. PUSSY WILLOW, PALM OR SALLOW . . . . .	368
XII. THE LESSER CELANDINE . . . . .	369
XIII. WOOD ANEMONE OR WIND FLOWER . . . . .	373
XIV. LIFE IN A POND . . . . .	376
XV. THE GREAT WATER BEETLE . . . . .	381
XVI. DRAGON FLIES . . . . .	385
XVII. CADDISWORMS . . . . .	389
XVIII. WHITE BEAD NETILE . . . . .	392
XIX. POPPY AND WILD ROSE . . . . .	396
XX. DANDELION AND GROUNDSEL FLOWERS . . . . .	398
XXI. CLIMBING PLANTS: SWEET PEA, RUNNER BEAN, WILD ROSE . . . . .	402
XXII GERMINATION OF SUNFLOWER, MUSTARD AND CRESS, BROAD BEAN . . . . .	403

## SECOND YEAR'S COURSE OF GEOGRAPHY

PRACTICAL GEOGRAPHY . . . . .	411
INTRODUCTION . . . . .	411
LESSONS IN PRACTICAL GEOGRAPHY . . . . .	417
1 PRELIMINARY TALK ON THE EARTH . . . . .	417
2. FINDING DIRECTION . . . . .	420
STORY. THE VOYAGE OF CHRISTOPHER COLUMBUS . . . . .	421
3. DIRECTION—THE SUN . . . . .	423
4. THE POLE STAR AND THE PLOUGH . . . . .	424
5. THE MAKING OF PLANS—PART I. . . . .	426
STORY. THE HIDDEN TREASURE . . . . .	428
6. THE MAKING OF PLANS—PART II. . . . .	430
7. THE MAKING OF PLANS—PART III. . . . .	430
8. OUR ROUTES—PART I . . . . .	433
9. OUR ROUTES—PART II. . . . .	435
10. OUR ROUTES—PART III. . . . .	437
11. OUR ROUTES—PART IV. . . . .	437



	PAGE
DESCRIPTIVE GEOGRAPHY . . . . .	439
I. CANADA—THE RED INDIANS . . . . .	439
II. A TRIP ACROSS CANADA . . . . .	450
III. CANADIAN FISHERIES . . . . .	463
IV. CANADIAN FORESTS . . . . .	471
V. CANADIAN WHEATLANDS AND RANCHES . . . . .	484
VI. CANADA—HOME LIFE IN CITY AND COUNTRY. . . . .	494
VII. AUSTRALIA—HISTORY AND PEOPLES . . . . .	503
VIII. AUSTRALIA—A TRIP ACROSS THE CONTINENT . . . . .	515
IX. AUSTRALIA—SHEEP AND CATTLE . . . . .	530
X. AUSTRALIA—LIFE IN CITY AND COUNTRY . . . . .	535
XI. NEW ZEALAND—HISTORY AND PEOPLES . . . . .	541
XII. NEW ZEALAND AND PAPUA . . . . .	549

# HANDWORK FOR THE GEOGRAPHY LESSONS

CANADA. I. . . . .	564
Indian peace pipe in paper; Red Indian wigwam in paper or calico; snowshoe in card; tomahawk in paper; Red Indian cut-out.	
CANADA. II. . . . .	566
Cardboard model of a Canadian Pacific Railway engine; toboggan in card; plastic model of cowboy's hat.	
CANADA. III. . . . .	568
Clay model of lumberman's shanty; cardboard model of rancher's house.	
CANADA. IV. . . . .	570
Clay models of seals grouped to form a scene; camping scene—tent in material or paper; Canadian trapper cut-out.	
CANADA. V. . . . .	572
Clay model of beaver; paper-cutting—making a scrapbook; cut-out picture of Canadian forest; Indian canoe in card.	
AUSTRALASIA. I. . . . .	574
Dutch flag—paper-cutting exercise; aboriginal arms in card; card model of boomerang; aboriginal dwelling in clay, cane and raffia.	
AUSTRALASIA. II. . . . .	576
Lumber worker's saw in card; lumber train—of match boxes, card and clay; Maori house in thin card.	
AUSTRALASIA. III. . . . .	578
Wool wagon in thin card; Sydney harbour bridge—in cardboard and cotton reels.	

# CONTENTS OF VOLUME II

xiii

AUSTRALASIA. IV. . . . .	PAGE 580
Papuan house in thin card; toy model of a kangaroo.	
AUSTRALASIA. V. . . . .	582
Balancing toy of parrot; balancing toy of laughing jackass; emu cut-out; kiwi cut-out; lyre bird cut-out.	

## DECORATIVE NEEDLEWORK

GENERAL INTRODUCTION . . . . .	587
I. A TOOL POCHETTE IN TACKING STITCH . . . . .	589
II. A TRAY CLOTH IN HUCKABACK STITCH . . . . .	595
III. HANDKERCHIEF SACHET USING CHAIN STITCH . . . . .	598
IV. HANDKERCHIEF DECORATED WITH SIEM STITCH . . . . .	602
V. WOOL EMBROIDERY USING FREE DESIGN . . . . .	605
VI. POCHETTE EXECUTED IN TENT STITCH . . . . .	608
VII AN IRONHOLDER EXECUTED IN CROSS STITCH . . . . .	611
VIII A CIRCULAR SCALLOPED MAT . . . . .	614
IX. A DECORATED LUNCH BAG . . . . .	616
X. NEEDLE WEAVING . . . . .	621



THE GLEANERS, FROM THE PAINTING BY JEAN FRANÇOIS MILLET

## LIST OF CONTRIBUTORS

- E. H. ARNOLD, Organiser of Instruction in Art and Handicrafts for Northumberland.  
 MISS EILEEN D. ARUNDEL, Designer and Worker in Design applied to Needlework, Writer and Lecturer on Needlework for Schools.  
 MISS E. ATKINSON, B.Sc. (Lond.), Geography and Botany Mistress, West Ham Secondary School.  
 R. P. H. BLORE, M.A. (Lond.), F.C.P., Assistant Master of Parmiter's Foundation School and Lecturer at West Ham Municipal College.  
 MRS. MARY K. BYRNE.  
 P. W. COLE, A.R.C.A. (Lond.), Art Master of the School of Art, Brassey Institute, Hastings.  
 MRS. GRETA COLSON, L.R.A.M. (Eloc.), L.G.S.M. (Floc.), etc., Professor of Speech and Drama, Royal Academy of Music.  
 SIR HENRY WALFORD DAVIES, Mus. Doc., C.V.O.  
 E. E. ELCOMBE, L.C.P., M.Coll.H., Headmaster of the Blue Bell Hill School, Nottingham.  
 SIR RICHARD GREGORY, Bart., LL.D., D.Sc., F.R.A.S.  
 MISS DOROTHY HANSON, M.B., Ch.B., Medical Officer of the Bergman Österberg Physical Training College, and Lecturer in Anatomy and Hygiene.  
 MISS DOROTHY HARILEY, joint author with Miss Margaret M. Elliot, B.A. (Lond.), of *Life and Work of the People of England*.  
 MRS. K. HARVEY, M.Sc., Lecturer in Biology at St. Peter's Training College, Peterborough.  
 MISS MARIAN V. HAYES.  
 PROFESSOR F. J. C. HEARNSHAW, M.A., LL.D., Professor of History at London University.  
 LEWIS HEATH, Art Master of the Doveley's School, Uttoxeter.  
 MISS ELEANOR HIPWELL, Senior Lecturer in Art, Bishop Otter College, Chichester.  
 MISS D. M. HOWLETT, Diplômée of the National Training School of Cookery and other Domestic Subjects; Lecturer at the Diocesan Training College, Brighton, and at St. Peter's College, Peterborough.  
 MISS KATE LAY.  
 GEORGE M. LOGAN, M.A. (Glasg.), Principal Teacher of Mathematics, Grammar School, Dunoon, Argyll.  
 G. V. MILLS, Geography Master, East Ward Central School, Bury.  
 GEORGE NOYLE, compiler of *Adventures into Literature*.  
 MISS S. C. NAYLER, Headmistress of Ditchling Road Junior School, Brighton, Sussex.  
 L. M. PARSONS, D.Sc. (Lond.), D.I.C., F.G.S., F.R.Met.Soc., Science Master, Westminster City School.  
 FRANK PENNELLS, Senior Assistant Master of the Central School, St. Leonards-on-Sea.  
 MISS D. M. PRESCOTT, B.A. Hons. (Lond.).  
 REV. CANON LONSDALE RAGG, D.D. (Oxon.)  
 MISS W. H. ROGERS, of Becontree Senior Girls' School.  
 E. R. SHEARMUR, B.Sc., Senior Geography Master, West Ham Secondary School.  
 J. YORK SMITH, M.A.  
 MISS AUDREY M. STRATFORD, B.Sc.  
 G. KEITH THOMSON, M.A., M.Litt., Headmaster of Rawlins Grammar School, Quorn.  
 R. W. THORPE, Assistant Master of the Secondary Modern School, Prescott Street, Halifax.  
 B. C. WALLIS, B.Sc. (Lond.), F.R.G.S., Fellow of the College of Preceptors, Fellow of the Royal Statistical Society.  
 S. A. WILLIAMS, M.A., Principal of the London County Council School of Retail Distribution.  
 M. F. WRIN, A.C.P., F.Coll.H., F.R.H.S., F.R.S.A., Headmaster of the Secondary Modern School, Prescott Street, Halifax.

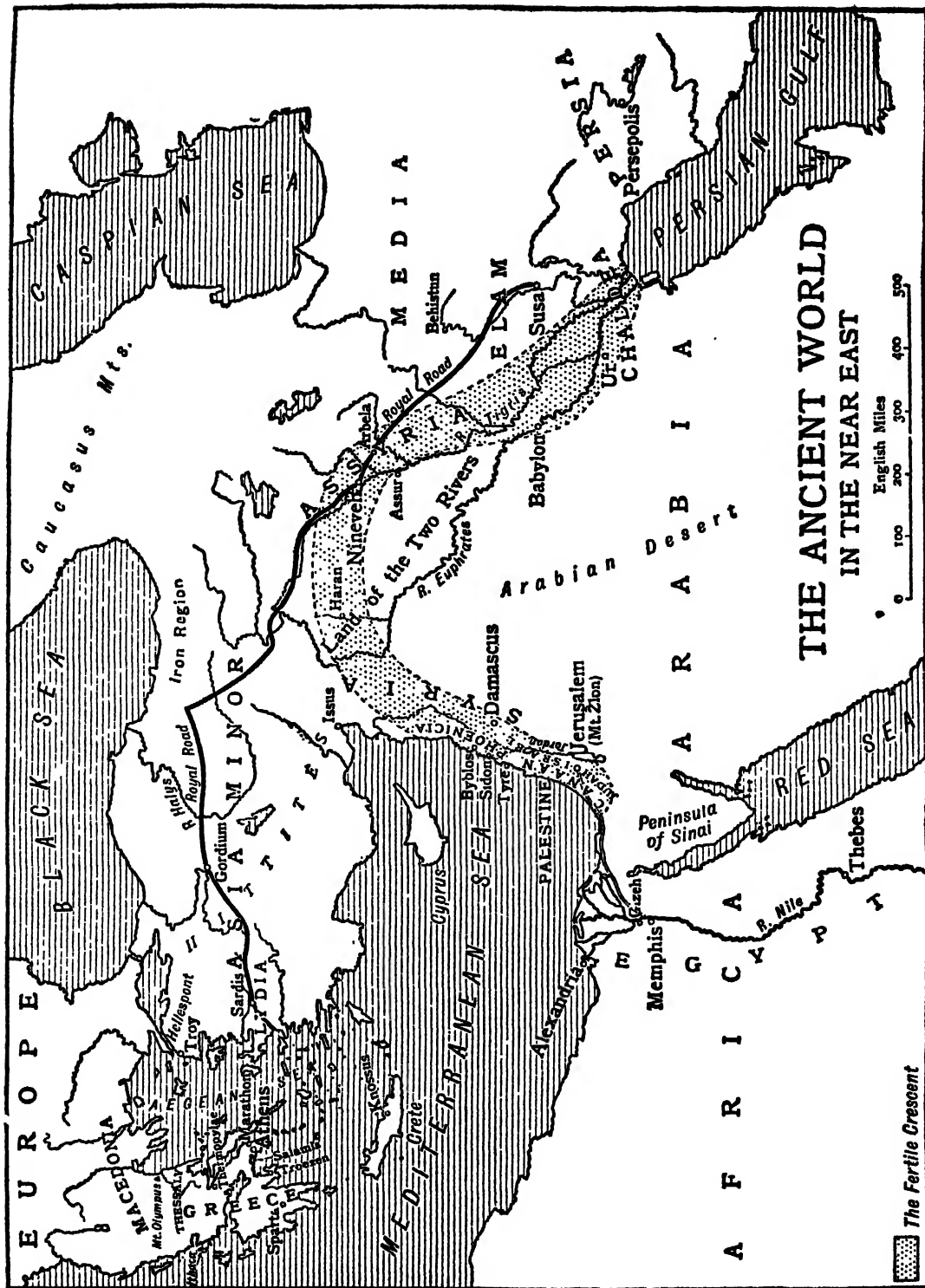
## ACKNOWLEDGMENTS

Messrs. ALLEN & UNWIN, LTD., for "Catching Fairies" ("Words for a Portuguese Air") from *Ionica*, by William Cory; Messrs. ERNEST BENN, LTD., for "Septimus Septimusson," from *The Magic World*, by E. Nesbit; Messrs. A. & C. BLACK, LTD., for "Theophania," by Miss Adelaide Phillpotts, from *The Flying Carpet*, edited by Lady Cynthia Asquith, and "Five Little Brothers," by Ella Wheeler Wilcox; Messrs. BASIL BLACKWELL, LTD., for "The Caravan" and "The Muffin-Man," by Miss Madeleine Nightingale, and "Little April Fish," by Mr. E. Rendall; Messrs. J. CURWEN & SONS, LTD., for "Pedlar Jim," by Florence Hoare, from *Songs of the British Islands*; Mr. WALTER DE LA MARE; Mr. ALBAN DOBSON, acting for the Trustees, and the Publishers, THE OXFORD UNIVERSITY PRESS, for "A Song of the Greenaway Child," by Austin Dobson; Miss ROSE FYLEMAN, for "Fairies by the Sea" and "A Fairy went A-Marketing," reprinted from *Punch* by permission of the Proprietors, and from "Fairies and Friends" (Methuen & Co.) and "Fairies and Chimneys" (Methuen & Co.); THE EXECUTORS OF THE LATE THOMAS HARDY; Messrs. G. HARRAP & Co., LTD., for "Very Nearly," by Miss Queenie Scott-Hopper, from *An Anthology of Recent Poetry*; Miss GRACE JAMES, for "The Jelly-Fish takes a Journey," from *Green Willow*; THE OXFORD UNIVERSITY PRESS, for "Gay Robin," by Robert Bridges, from *Poetical Works of Robert Bridges*; THE POETRY BOOKSHOP, LTD., for "Cat's Meat," from *Strange Meetings*, by Harold Monro; Miss FLORA SANDSTRÖM; MR. JAMES STEPHENS; MR. WILFRID THORLEY; MRS. FRIDA WOLFE and Messrs. SIDGWICK & JACKSON, LTD., for "Poppies" and "Four and Eight," from *The Very Thing*.





**SECOND YEAR'S COURSE  
OF  
HISTORY**



# I. ABRAHAM

(A GREAT CHIEF OF THE SHEPHERD-MEN)

## PICTURE REFERENCE



BEDOUIN ENCAMPMENT OF NORTH AFRICA

**T**HE Class Picture (No. 12 in the portfolio) shows a Tent of the Shepherd Men. It is fully described in the Reference Book. The above plate of a Bedouin Encampment at the present time shows its similarity with that of the Semitic nomads in the time of Abraham.

## INTRODUCTION

**The Nomads.**—This lesson is mainly concerned with the early nomads, of whom Abraham is taken as a representative type. The importance of Abraham's story in the history of civilisation lies in his wonderful conception of a sole supreme invisible God. He became to the Hebrews the embodiment of their ideals, and stood at their head as the founder of the nation, the one to whom God had manifested His love by frequent promises and covenants.

Abraham belonged to one of the Semitic tribes of Arabia. The Semites were a white race who have from the remotest ages peopled Arabia. They were at first a nomadic pastoral people, driving their flocks and herds from place to place in search of pasture. Gradually they began to settle down on a fruitful belt of land between the mountains of Armenia and the desert of Arabia. This portion of productive land is a part of what is sometimes known as the *Fertile Crescent*. It will be seen from the map that the Fertile Crescent is a semi-circle terminated at the western end by Palestine and the Mediterranean, and at the eastern end by the Persian Gulf, which receives the waters of the two great rivers, the Tigris and the Euphrates, which give to Babylonia the name of *Land of the Two Rivers*. When the nomadic Semites secured a footing in the Fertile Crescent they slowly



B.C.  
 2000 changed their habits from the wandering life to the settled agricultural life. They became the founders of the nations of the Babylonians and Assyrians in the east, and the Hebrews, Syrians and Phoenicians on the Mediterranean coast.  
 1900  
 1800  
 1700 Abraham the Hebrew came from the city of Ur on the Lower Euphrates. Under the guidance of his father, Abraham and the tribal family moved northwards along the Euphrates valley. They settled for some time in Haran, and then, as recorded in Genesis, "Abraham departed, and took Sarai his wife and Lot his brother's son, and they went forth to go into the land of Canaan."  
 1600  
 1500  
 1400  
 1300  
 1200 This period of Abraham is most nearly fixed by connection with Hammurabi, king of Babylon, who is generally identified with the Amraphel of Shinar (Genesis xiv.) and whose date is about 2123-2080 B.C. The movement of Abraham's people was a part of the Semitic migration that had been going on for several centuries past. The "Princes of the Desert" as they are called, ruled Egypt at this time.  
 1100  
 1000  
 900  
 800  
 700  
 600  
 500  
 400  
 300  
 200  
 100  
 0

The woman led the flocks all day to pasture; the man wandered far on business with his camel. The woman carried all the treasures upon her in the form of silver anklets and armlets, necklets and veil ornaments; the man had nothing. The business of the man was to fight and travel, his characteristic weapons were the sword and the bow. The woman was the mistress of the property and the family.

The tent consisted of a low roof made of black cloth woven from goats' or camels' hair, and stretched over poles, with a flap down three sides to keep off the wind; a rush mat on the ground served to sleep upon; cooking was done on a smouldering fire of wood ashes in front of the tent. There were, of course, no tables, chairs or other furniture; a few cooking pots, wooden drinking bowls and leathern waterskins were the chief possessions of these wanderers.

Canaan, the "Holy Land" of the Jews and Christians, is a small country less than 150 miles long. The average breadth between the Jordan and the Mediterranean is less than forty-five miles. This "promised land" has many fertile plains and valleys, though much of it is made up of barren hills. In Abraham's time the land was occupied by the Canaanites, a Semitic people akin to the Hebrews. Unlike the nomad Hebrews, the Canaanites were a settled nation, who lived in walled towns and engaged chiefly in agriculture. Abraham and his people would not be very welcome to the Canaanites, who generally looked on the nomads as enemies. For that reason Abraham continued to live his wandering life in the hill country away from the towns.

**The Sumerians.**—That part of the Fertile Crescent enclosed by the rivers Tigris and Euphrates naturally falls into two divisions, the northern part which is more or less mountainous, and the southern part which is flat and marshy. In ancient days a great area near the mouths of the rivers consisted of marsh land. Gradually the silt brought

down by the floods formed numerous fertile islands, and on these islands the River-Men settled to grow their crops. The first known inhabitants of this part of the *Land of the Two Rivers* were peoples from the mountains who reclaimed the marsh land by digging canals and draining off the water. These people, known as the Sumerians, appeared there earlier than 4000 B.C. When the River-Men of Egypt were settling down in the Nile valley the Sumerians were growing wheat and barley in the fertile plain then called Shinar.

During recent years much has been learned of the Sumerians from the excavations of mounds which mark the sites of ancient towns. Excavations were made in the mounds as long ago as 1854 by J. E. Taylor, the British Consul at Basra, but it was not until after the First Great War that systematic and extensive investigations were carried out under the guidance of C. Leonard Woolley. As recently as the year 1928 excavators at Ur discovered the graves of a king and queen who probably lived about 3500 B.C. It was customary at that period to place with the ordinary dead folk such personal belongings as beads and earrings, a knife or dagger, the pins that fastened the dress, and perhaps the cylinder seal with which the owner impressed his clay writing tablets. Near the coffin or the matting roll in which the body was placed were set

weapons and tools, and food and drink in vessels of clay, copper or stone. In the grave chambers of the king and queen was found a wonderful collection of objects—masses of vessels in copper, silver, stone and gold;

a collection of tools and weapons, including a set of chisels and a saw made of gold; a silver model of a boat; beautiful harps inlaid with gold and semi-precious stones, and much more besides. When a royal person died, he or she was accompanied to the grave by the bodies of all the members of the court. How these people died is not known, but there were buried together near the king no fewer than sixty-five people, and with the queen twenty-five. Amongst these were armed soldiers of the guard, and the drivers and grooms of two four-wheeled chariots with bullocks harnessed to each. The illustration shows the queen's wonderful headdress which was found in the tomb. (The face is a model of a Sumerian woman) On the head was a wig bound by a broad gold ribbon festooned in loops. Over this were three wreaths, the lowest, hanging down over the forehead, of plain gold ring pendants, the second of beech leaves, and the third of long willow leaves. Fixed into the back of



WONDERFUL HEADRESS OF A QUEEN FOUND IN A GRAVE CHAMBER AT UR

On the head was a wig, bound by a broad gold ribbon festooned in loops. Over this were three golden wreaths, the lowest, hanging down over the forehead, of plain gold ring pendants, the second of beech leaves, and the third of long willow leaves. Fixed into the back of the hair was a golden comb with points ending in gold flowers. Huge earrings hung down to the shoulders.

the hair was a golden comb with points ending in gold flowers. Spiral rings of gold wire were twisted into the side curls of the wig. Huge earrings hung down to the shoulders.

The ladies of the court who were sacrificed at the queen's death all wore brightly coloured woollen garments and elaborate headdresses, but none so elaborate as the queen's.

We see then that the ancient River-Men of Sumeria, like those of Egypt, had made much advancement towards civilisation. The Sumerians possessed cattle, sheep, goats and asses (the horse was unknown); they ploughed with the ox and ass; they fished in the canals and marshes; they made pottery, utensils of copper and stone, and ornaments in gold, silver and semi-precious stones. They wove wool and flax on the loom; they traded by barter, exporting grain, wool and flax and importing gold, silver, copper, ivory, precious woods and fine stones. They lived in brick houses, some of which were two storeys high, they surrounded their towns with high walls, and they built lofty temples for their worship. They developed a system of picture writing by drawing with the tip of a reed on flat oval tiles of soft clay, which, when baked, became imperishable tablets. Later, the picture writing developed to sign writing which is generally known as cuneiform, or wedge-shaped.

The nature of their civilisation as demonstrated by the discoveries suggests that it was already many centuries old. There is much evidence that the civilisation of the Euphrates valley is more ancient than that of the Nile valley.

[It is difficult for children to understand how we know about the people of the past, and it is hoped that the following account (which may be read to the children) will be helpful and interesting]

### HOW WE KNOW ABOUT THE PAST

The stories we are going to hear are about men and women who lived hundreds or thousands of years ago. The stories tell us what they did, what sort of houses they lived in, the kind of clothes they wore and the kind of food they ate. But, you will say,

how do we come to know so much about people whom we have never seen? Who found out about them to begin with, and how were they able to do so?

Men and women of long ago lived in very much the same way as we do. They built themselves houses of mud, wood or stone, using tools of stone or metal with which to build. They made themselves cups, bowls and baskets to hold their food. They ploughed their fields with ploughs and cut the grain with sickles. They went to war and fought each other with spears, swords and axes, and used shields and armour to protect themselves in battle. When they were at peace, after their work was done, they drew pictures and carved and modelled men and animals.

You will see that the men and women of long ago had a great many possessions of their own. When they died some of these possessions, tools and weapons, and sometimes even food, were buried in their graves in the belief that they would need them in a future life. The rest of their possessions remained in their houses. Gradually the mud walls of these houses, softened by the rain, crumbled away, and earth and sand covered up all that lay beneath them. At last nothing was left but mounds of earth to show where once a house or even a whole city had stood.

In many parts of the world these mounds were to be seen. Some of them covered great cities, some small villages, and some only the grave of a single man. For hundreds of years no one troubled to wonder what was inside these mounds. But here and there a man grew curious, and opened up one of them with a spade. The things that were discovered were so wonderful and interesting that more and more people began to dig up mounds.

At first the diggers were not at all careful, and by their clumsiness they often spoilt the very things for which they were searching. Gradually, however, they learned to dig and to search more skilfully. Now learned men often give up their whole lives to digging up the past, sometimes uncovering whole cities,

with shops and houses, temples and palaces, swimming baths and theatres. We can walk along the streets of some old town and see many of the same sights which a townsman saw when he walked in those streets hundreds of years ago.

Men and women who do this kind of work are called archaeologists. This is a hard word, but it means people who wish to find out about the past. Archaeologists need very careful training for their work. They must learn how to dig up the mounds without disturbing their treasures. They must be able to draw and to photograph the things they find. They must know what each of these discoveries was used for. It is these clever, patient archaeologists who tell us most of what we know about the past.

Would you like to know how this exciting work is done? Let us suppose that we are spending a holiday near the sea in Sweden. Close to the hotel where we are staying there is a field in which stands a mound. For years no one paid any attention to it. People thought that it was only a natural hill. Then one day the farmer to whom the field belonged happened to see his dog scratching a hole in the hill.

As the dog scratched up the earth, the farmer's eye caught sight of something buried in the ground. He fetched a spade and dug round it, and found that it was a wooden dragon's head. Digging still deeper, he discovered that the dragon's head was part of the prow of a ship.

How came a ship to be buried in the farmer's field? He was puzzled, and told his friends what he had found. One of them knew of an archaeologist who was staying near, and on his advice the farmer invited the learned man to come and see the ship. The archaeologist came, and was delighted at the discovery. He at once engaged a number of workmen and started to explore farther.

They have been digging for some time now. Shall we go and see what they have found? We must go first to the farmhouse, for an underground passage has been dug

from it into the inside of the mound. We go along the passage, which is so dark that we have to carry candles. At the far end we come to a chamber in the earth lit up by electric light, so that we can see everything in it.

The ship stands in the middle of the chamber, propped up by pieces of wood. It is not complete, for parts of the planks have rotted away, but we can see its boat shape, and the dragon's head at the prow. That man over there is the archaeologist. He has a notebook and is sketching something with great care. In a corner of the chamber the workmen are busy turning up the earth.

Why was the ship buried? Let us ask the archaeologist. He has seen us, and shutting up his notebook he comes forward to meet us. We ask him to tell us about his discoveries.

"Certainly," he says. "This chamber is the burial place of a Viking chieftain who lived here over a thousand years ago. The Vikings were sea pirates, who sailed the seas in ships such as this one. Sometimes, when a chieftain died, his ship was buried with him, as this one was."

"Where is the chief?" you ask. He shows us an urn or pot inside which we see some ashes and a few pieces of bone. "That is all that is left of him," he tells us. "His body was burnt and then his friends and relations gathered the ashes, put them into this urn and buried them with his ship in this grave."

"What were you doing just now?" we ask him. He shows us a small bronze dagger. "I was drawing a picture of this," he says. "It was the sea chief's own dagger." You are allowed to hold it in your hand. How strange to think that the dead chieftain's own strong hand grasped that decorated hilt when he went out to fight!

"We have found other things, too," says our guide. He shows us an axe head. "That was probably the chief's battle-axe," he says, "and here is his spear head as well."

"What are the workmen doing?" you ask. "They are digging up the grave of

the chieftain's wife," he tells us. "She was buried in the same mound (or barrow, as we call it) as her husband. Yesterday we found a beautiful necklace of amber beads which must have belonged to her, and also a brooch and a pair of bracelets."

We go over to watch the workmen. They are turning up the soil very carefully. We watch with the greatest interest, expecting at any moment to see something wonderful brought up, but nothing appears except some small pieces of pottery. I take one up and begin to look at it carelessly. It appears to me like a small piece of an earthenware jug.

"May I see that piece of pottery?" says the archaeologist. I give it to him in surprise. What can he want it for? He looks at it for a long time very intently through a magnifying glass. "Yes, I thought so," he says at last. "It is part of a lamp. You can see the place where the flame has smoked it black, and here is where the wick used to be." We should never have noticed that. What a clever man! It seems almost like magic to be able to see a lamp in a little piece of broken earthenware.

It is all very interesting, but we are beginning to find it a little warm and airless down here inside the hill. We need fresh air, so we thank our friend the archaeologist for showing us his discoveries and make our way back along the tunnel to the farmhouse.

We feel as if we know a good deal about that Viking chieftain. We can imagine him setting out with his men in early spring aboard the good ship *Dragon*. We imagine him fighting at the head of his followers against an enemy ship, waving his battle-axe round his head and shouting his war cry as he leaps aboard the other vessel. We think of him landing on strange shores to trade, and filling his ships with walrus tusks to carve into ornaments, and skins to make warm coats for the winter. Then, when the cold comes, we imagine him setting sail once more for Sweden and home.

Meanwhile, at home the chieftain's wife is keeping house for him and looking after

the children. She misses her husband very much and is glad when she hears the look-out man on the cliff top cry, "The *Dragon* is in sight." Stopping only to put on her best dress and gold bracelets, she hurries down to the seashore to meet the returning warriors. What a welcome they all receive from their wives and children!

That night, when the lamp is lighted and the children are asleep in their reindeer-skin blankets, the chief shows the tusks and hides he has brought home and the necklace of amber beads which is a present for his wife. Slowly the long winter passes, the women sewing new clothes and the men mending their spears and sharpening their swords ready for next spring, while they tell wonderful tales of their adventures on the last voyage.

The years pass till the chief is too old to lead his men. At last the day comes when his dead body is laid on the funeral pyre and burned to ashes. The sorrowing family drag his ship ashore and raise a great mound to cover it. Soon the widow comes to join her husband and their ashes lie together for a thousand years, till the farmer's dog disturbs their rest.

Such is the story that one of the mounds of the past can tell to those who have learned how to read it.

[The story of Abraham will probably already be known to the children, hence a small part only is told here. The main object of the Children's Story is to give a picture of early nomadic life.]

### CHILDREN'S STORY

Long before people had books, or learned to write, they loved stories. Most of these stories were about brave men who did wonderful deeds. When men learned to write, they put their stories into books, so that the deeds of their heroes should not be forgotten.

The best-known of all the old books is the Bible. It is divided into two parts called the Old Testament and the New Testament.

In the Old Testament we read of famous men and women who lived *before* Jesus Christ came into the world. The New Testament tells of His life, and of people who lived *after* He came. Now Abraham, the hero whose story you are going to hear, lived some 2,000 years *before* Christ was born, that is nearly 4,000 years ago.

Abraham was born in a place called Ur, in the country of Babylonia, which is far away east of Europe in Asia.

It was a sunny land lying between two great rivers, the Tigris and Euphrates, which watered the ground and made plants grow. Babylonia is part of the region that is often called the *Land of the Two Rivers*. This land was one of the first places where the River-Men began to build towns, to make laws, and to punish wrongdoers. Here were some of the first schools where boys learned to read and write.

A few years ago clever men began to dig in the earth over the places where the cities of Babylonia once stood, and they found parts of the cities still there buried underground. They dug away the earth and found out the kind of homes people had when Abraham lived.

The cities had walls round them to keep out robbers. Inside the walls the poorer people lived in tiny huts; the rich people had fine houses two storeys high. The houses were built of sun-baked bricks. In the fields men grew wheat and barley for bread. In a great grave chamber where a king and queen were buried were found pottery, gold and silver vessels, weapons, harps, jewels, beads and other ornaments.

Many people of those times did not live in cities. They liked to keep cattle and sheep and live always in the open air. Abraham was one of these men. He was rich, but his riches were mostly made up of camels, and sheep, and goats and asses. He had, too, many shepherds and herdsmen to look after the animals. Abraham and his people lived in tents, which they could easily put up and take down, for when their flocks and herds had eaten the grass in one place they had to

move on to another. Their tents were made of black cloth woven from goats' or camels' hair. The women wove the hair into strips and sewed the strips together.

The shaded part of the map (blackboard sketch) is called the Fertile Crescent. This is the name that has been given to a vast stretch of grassland shaped like a crescent moon that extends round a part of the desert of Arabia. It was along this Fertile Crescent that the shepherd-men of old wandered with their flocks and herds.

In Babylon men saw how powerful was the sun that kept them warm and made their wheat grow, and how wonderful was the moon that gave them light by night. They made wooden or stone figures which they called their Sun-god and Moon-god, and they built temples where they could go and pray to them. But Abraham believed that there was one God who put the sun in the sky and gave them the moon and stars to help them in watching their flocks at night. One day in a dream God spoke to him and said: "Get thee out of thy country and from thy father's house, unto a land that I will show thee." God told Abraham that He would bless him and all his children and grand-children, and would make them His own chosen people.

Abraham set out with his wife Sarah and all his servants with his flocks and herds. They had to go a long, long journey to a land called Canaan. They could travel only a few miles a day, for they had to feed their camels, sheep, goats and asses by the way. At sunrise, in the cool of the morning, they would pack up their tents and put them on the asses or camels. They always took care to fill their waterskins with fresh water, for in that hot land water was very scarce. They had, besides, a few mats on which to sleep and a few wooden bowls and copper pots. Some of the women and children rode on camels or asses, the rest travelled on foot driving the flocks before them. When the sun became too hot they rested, then towards evening on they all went again, till they came to a grassy place where date palms

grew and where deep wells had been made. Such a place is called an oasis.

The thirsty people and beasts would drink, some of the women lighted fires and cooked some meat, others milked the sheep, goats and asses. Perhaps there were fine ripe dates ready to be gathered, for the wandering tribes liked dates better than any other food. The tents had to be put up, and soon the weary travellers would settle down to sleep, except those who must stay awake all night to keep wild beasts away from their flocks. The women and children slept in the tents, the men under rocks and bushes. The nights in the desert are cold, so the men wore coats made of sheepskin and cloaks made of goats' hair.

Day after day they travelled on from one green oasis to the next. We can picture Abraham, the stern old chieftain, on his tall camel riding in front to show the way, his keen eyes looking out for the land God had promised him.

At last Abraham and his family came to Canaan. They found that some parts of the land were bare and stony, other parts were rich with fields of grain and grassy plains and fruit trees. Through the middle of the country ran the river Jordan, which made the grass grow green in its valley. There were towns in this valley where people worshipped strange gods as they did in Babylon. Abraham and his people would not pray to these gods, so they did not settle in the towns of Canaan, but lived a wandering life apart on the hills. Other tribes called them *Hebrews*, which means *the people from beyond the river*, because they came from the land beyond one of the great rivers of Babylonia.

Now comes a story many of you know. Abraham and Sarah had a little son whom they called Isaac. He was a very precious boy, for God had promised to bless all Abraham's children, and Isaac was the first. How dreadful it must have been to Abraham when he began to think that God was asking him to kill his son!

Abraham must have heard of this terrible

custom when he lived in Babylon, for there the people sometimes killed their babies as gifts to their gods. Abraham took little Isaac to the top of a mountain, built an altar or table of stones, and laid him upon it. He was just about to kill his son and offer him as a gift to God when "the angel of the Lord called unto him out of heaven, and said, 'Abraham, Abraham.' And he said, 'Here am I.' And the angel said, 'Lay not thine hand upon the lad, neither do thou anything unto him.'" Then Abraham saw that his one God was good, and did not wish little boys to be killed for His sake.

The Hebrews looked on Abraham as their great Father. He taught his people to believe in one God and not to worship stone and clay figures. Abraham was wise, for he learned that God did not wish human beings to be sacrificed for His sake.

In many parts of the world there are still tribes of men, who, like Abraham, wander with their camels, cattle, sheep, goats and asses from one green oasis to another. Such wandering tribes are called nomads.

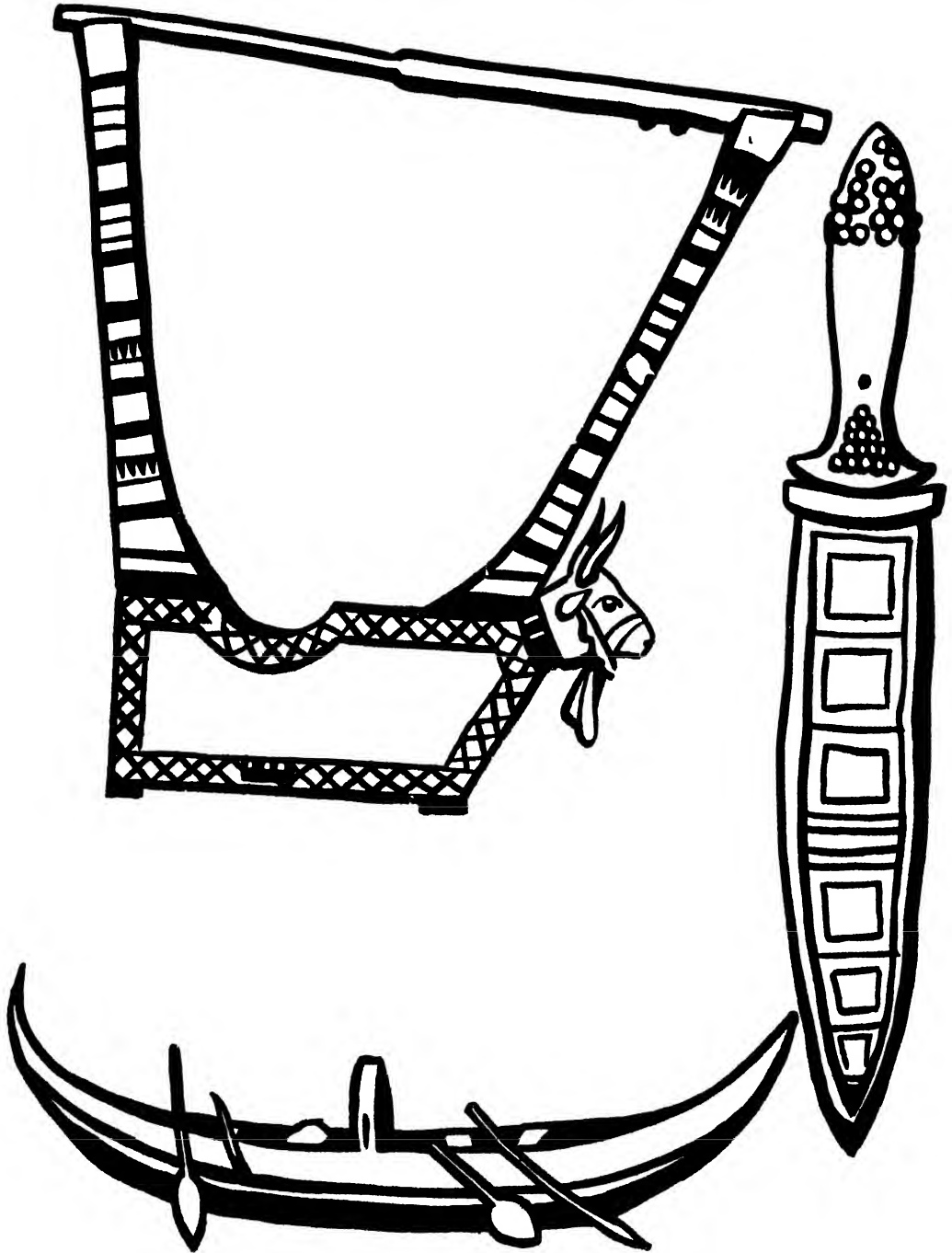
### TEACHING HINTS

**1. Map.**—Draw the map (page 12) on the blackboard, or on a sheet of brown paper to keep for future reference. It will be needed again for the lesson on Joseph. Show the positions of Ur, Babylon, the Fertile Crescent, etc.

**2. Tents.**—Explain that tents such as the Hebrews used are still in use among the Bedouins of the present day in N. Africa, Arabia, and other lands. The tent consisted of walls and roof made of camels' hair cloth, usually black, but sometimes brown in colour. The cloth was supported on posts and secured by ropes fastened to pegs in the ground. (See also the model in the section on Handwork, Vol. I., page 114.)

**3. Time chart.**—Fasten together with paste several strips of brown paper about

**SKETCHES FOR THE BLACKBOARD**



**GOLD AND MOSAIC HARP**

**SILVER MODEL OF A BOAT**

**GOLD DAGGER**

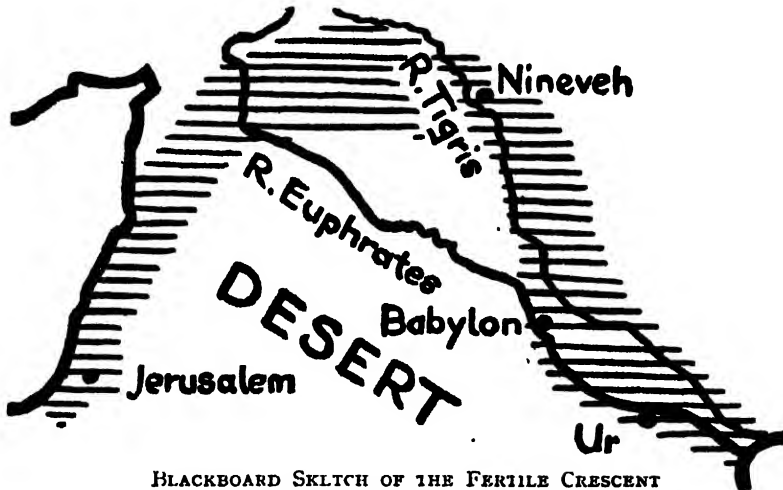


six inches wide to make one long strip. Divide it at equal distances of one foot by upright chalk lines. Each space represents 500 years. Colour the zero line which marks the Birth of Christ. Write *Abraham; Birth of Christ; King George* in the appropriate places. Fasten the *Time Chart* on the wall and keep for future reference and additions. See that children clearly understand the method of reckoning years from the Birth of Christ.

**4. Memory work.**—(a) Abraham was a great chief of the Shepherd-Men. (b) He was born in the sunny land of Babylon, which

a house? (d) Complete the following sentences: (1) Babylon is part of what is sometimes called the ——. (2) The people of Babylon built houses of ——. (3) In the fields they grew ——. (4) Plants grew well in Babylon because there was plenty of — and —.

**6. Blackboard summary.**—Children delight in helping the teacher to prepare a blackboard summary of the lesson. A useful and pleasing plan is to print in capitals the word ABRAHAM in column form, and with the children's assistance construct sentences bearing on the lesson:



BLACKBOARD SKETCH OF THE FERTILE CRESCENT

is part of what is often called the *Land of the Two Rivers*. (c) God spoke to Abraham in a dream and told him to go to a far country called Canaan. (d) Abraham was going to kill his son Isaac and offer him as a gift to God when an angel told him not to hurt the child. (e) Abraham was regarded as the Father of the Hebrews.

**5. Exercises.**—(a) How many years is it since Christ was born? (b) How do we know what Babylon was like when Abraham was living? (c) If you were living in a hot land near a river where there were no large stones and no trees, how could you build

Abraham was a chief of the Shepherd-Men.

Because he trusted in God he left his home at Ur.

Ripe dates could sometimes be found at an oasis.

An angel called to him out of heaven when he was about to kill Isaac.

He knew that the people of Babylon sometimes killed their children.

Abraham is the Father of the Hebrews.

Many wonderful things have been found underground in Ur where Abraham lived.

## II. HAMMURABI

(A WISE KING OF THE RIVLR-MEN)

### PICTURE REFERENCE



KING HAMMURABI RECEIVING THE LAWS FROM SHAMASH,  
THE SUN-GOD

**T**HE Class Picture (No. 13 in the portfolio) shows An Evening Meal in Ancient Babylon. The illustration above shows the upper portion of a shaft of stone or "Stele" on which the laws of Hammurabi were engraved. In the British Museum "Guide to the Babylonian and Assyrian Antiquities" the stele is thus

2000 B.C. described: "On the upper part of the stele is carved a relief in which the king, standing in the traditional attitude of worship with his right arm bared and raised, is represented in the act of receiving the laws from Shamash, the Sun-god. The god wears the horned headdress, symbolical of divine power, and he holds in his right hand the ring and staff emblematic of sovereignty and dominion; and from his shoulders rise flames of fire. The god is seated on a mystic throne, represented in the form of a Babylonian shrine or temple, and his feet are set upon the mountains."

### INTRODUCTION

1200 We have seen that the first known inhabitants of the eastern end of the Fertile Crescent were peoples from the mountains, who reclaimed the marsh land and settled on the fertile plain then called Shinar. These people, the Sumerians, appeared there earlier than 4000 B.C., and they established a strong and original civilisation.

700 To the north of Sumer lived the people of Akkad, the Akkadians, half-settled nomads, who were skilful in the use of the bow. About 600 2750 B.C. there arose in Akkad a noted chieftain named Sargon, who succeeded in making himself lord of the Plain of Shinar. Sargon built up a great nation in Western Asia from the Persian Gulf to the Mediterranean. The Akkadians now forsook their wandering life and settled down as tillers of the land, living in sun-dried brick houses. In course of time the Akkadians were absorbed by the Sumerians and the two became one nation.

0 About 2263 B.C. a tribe of Semites, the Amorites of Syria, descended on

the land. They seized the little villages of Babylon and began to fight their way to the leadership of Sumer and Akkad. After a century of warfare there came one Hammurabi (2123-2080 B.C.) who made Babylon a great city; hence, from about 2100 B.C., we may call the land of Shinar, Babylonia.

Two chief sources of information have survived to reveal to us the deeds and character of this great king: there are a group of fifty-five of his letters, and the monument bearing his laws.

The letters afford a glimpse into the king's busy life. He had a secretary or scribe who wrote letters at his dictation with a reed stylus on a soft clay tablet. The secretary sprinkled the wet tablet with powdered clay to prevent its adhering to the clay envelope which he wrapped round the letter. He wrote the address and sent the letter by a servant to be baked in a furnace. The king's letters were conveyed by swift messengers on foot to the local governors of the Sumerian cities over which Hammurabi ruled; messengers constantly arrived with similarly enclosed letters. The king had his eye upon every corner of the land. Through his board of judges he saw that strict justice was done.

Hammurabi found that there was a serious lack of uniformity in the land in the administration of the law, so he collected all the older written laws, arranged them in order, improved and added to them, and finally issued a great code, or body of laws.

He had the laws engraved on a stone shaft, or stele, nearly eight feet high, and set it up in the temple of the great god Morduk in Babylon. At the top of the shaft was a sculptured scene in which the king was shown receiving the law from the Sun-god, Shamash. The stele was discovered at Susa by a French excavating expedition in December and January of 1901-2, and is now in the Louvre. A copy is preserved in the British Museum.

The inscription several times mentions the fact that the laws were given by

Shamash who sits with his feet on the mountains.

The twenty-eight columns of text contain:—(1) An *Introduction*, in which Hammurabi enumerates the benefits he has conferred upon the great temples and cities of Babylonia and Assyria. (2) The *text of the Laws* by which the Babylonians were to regulate their affairs. (3) An *Epilogue*, calling down a blessing upon any man who should observe the laws, and a series of curses upon any king or governor who should break, modify, or abrogate them.

In the code of laws there are several points especially noteworthy. The idea of responsibility is clearly fixed, *e.g.*, a man who hired an animal was responsible for that animal; if a boat, he was responsible for the boat; if he stored anything for another, he was responsible so long as the object was in his hands. A builder was responsible for the solidity of the house he built, and a physician was held responsible for the life of his patient. We notice the importance of putting everything in writing, *e.g.*, a marriage without a written contract was invalid; a man who took goods on deposit, or an agent who obtained goods from a merchant (if he had no document to show for it) could claim no legal aid in case of disagreement.

The law of retaliation is expressed by the familiar phrase "an eye for an eye, and a tooth for a tooth." An attempt was made to "make the punishment fit the crime." If a house fell and killed the owner the builder was put to death; if the owner's son died, the builder's son was killed. Life was cheap in those days. The penalty for stealing and robbery, for harbouring or assisting slaves to escape from bondage, for kidnapping, and for many other offences, was death.

There are two hundred and eighty-two laws in all, and they form most interesting reading. In the *Epilogue* Hammurabi says:—"The just decrees which Hammurabi, the wise king, established: for the land a sure

law and a happy reign he has procured. Hammurabi, the protecting king, I am. From the black heads, which Bel gave me, to be a shepherd over whom Morduk appointed me, I have not held aloof, have not rested; places of peace I have provided for them; I opened up a way through steep passes and sent them aid. . . . I am the peace-bringing shepherd whose rule is just, the good shadow which is spread over my city; to my heart the people of Sumer and Akkad I have taken, under my protection have I caused them to live in peace, sheltered them in my wisdom, so that the strong may not oppress the weak; to counsel the orphan and the widow, their head have I raised in Babylon; in the temple whose foundations are firm as heaven and earth, to speak justice to the land, to decide disputed questions, to remedy evil, have I written my precious words on my monument . . . at the command of Shamash, the great judge of heaven and earth, shall justice reign in the land. . . . Hammurabi, the king of righteousness, to whom Shamash gave the law, I am."

### CHILDREN'S STORY

We said in the last lesson that in the old land of Babylonia, from which Abraham came, there are two great rivers, the Tigris and the Euphrates. These rivers begin as tiny streams far away in the mountains. During the winter, snow falls on the mountains, and when the warm spring sun shines, the snow melts and runs into the streams. They quickly become full of water and pour down into the great rivers. The water grows so deep that in the land of Babylon it flows over the banks of the rivers and floods the fields. When the floods have gone down the fields are covered with mud left behind by the water. In this mud men can grow fine crops of wheat, barley, dates and other things.

In this *Land of the Two Rivers*, where wheat and barley can be easily grown, men built houses and settled down. In time,

thousands of people lived in this land, and there were many large cities with high walls round them.

About 2,000 years before Christ was born there ruled in one of the cities, called Babylon, a wise king named Hammurabi. He was a great fighter, too, and soon his soldiers had conquered all the other cities near by, and made Babylon the greatest city in the *Land of the Two Rivers*. So great was Babylon that the country was called by the name of Babylonia.

This wise king had long deep ditches (or canals) cut from the river to the fields, so that when the floods came the canals were filled with water. When the floods had gone away the canals were still full. This was a fine thing for the River-Men. When the sun shone fiercely and scorched the ground they could draw water from the canals for their plants.

Hammurabi had great storehouses built in which to put his wheat and barley. That was wise, too, because when the floods were not so good, little wheat or barley would grow. Then the poor River-Men would have gone hungry, if they had not been able to get wheat and barley from the king's storehouses.

Now we said that the king had conquered many cities, but he could not look after them all himself. He set a judge to look after each one to see that people did not break the king's laws by stealing, or fighting, or building unsafe houses, or doing anything that they ought not to do.

Many of the cities were a long way from Babylon, so when the king wanted to tell the judges what to do, he sent them letters. They would seem very strange letters to us, for they looked like thin bricks, or ginger-bread cakes. Men in Babylon did not know how to make paper, but they knew how to make bricks from the river mud, because they always built their houses of bricks. They could not build them of wood, for the only trees in the land were a few date palms, and they could not build them of stone, for there was not a stone to be seen anywhere,

When the king wanted to write a letter he would send for a mud brick that was still soft, and his scribe would scratch on it with a sharp stick what he wanted to say. Then the brick would be baked in the hot sun, or in an oven, till it was hard, and afterwards a man would run with it all the way to the city where the judge lived. Many of these bricks have been found, and if ever you go to the British Museum in London, you must ask to be shown the brick letters which Hammurabi wrote nearly 4,000 years ago.

One day, some people from one of the king's far cities came to him in great trouble. "O king," they said, "we are not happy under the judge you gave us. He is very cruel. All the other judges say that if a man steals some grain he must pay money as a punishment. We were very hungry and stole a little grain, and our judge says we must be put to death. O king, is this fair?"

"No, it is not fair," said the king. "My laws must be the same everywhere in my kingdom."

He sent for his wise men and asked them what was the punishment for stealing grain. Some said one thing and some another. "This is not right," said the king. "We must have the laws written up where everyone can see them."

The king then called together his wise men and told them to carve the laws on a black stone pillar as high as a doorway.

The king had this stone pillar set up in the chief temple of Babylon where any man could, if he wished, go to read what the laws were. We know exactly what this stone pillar was like although it is nearly 4,000 years old. It was carried away by some king to a distant city, and not many years ago some Frenchmen found it buried in the sand. It was sent to Paris in France, where it now is. There is a copy of it in the British Museum. When you are next in London you should go to see it.

Carved on the stone pillar King Hammurabi is shown standing before the Sun-god, who is telling him the laws. The king's right arm is raised, in the way that the people of

Babylon always raised their arms when they prayed to their gods.

The god is seated on a throne. His horned headdress shows that he is a god, and from his shoulders rise flames of fire. In his right hand he holds a staff to show that he is lord



BABYLONIAN BOUNDARY STONE, OR LANDMARK. THIS ILLUSTRATION SHOWS CLEARLY THE BABYLONIAN DRESS OF A MAN ABOUT 1100 B C

of all the land (Sometimes you will see pictures of kings of England in which the king is shown holding a staff) Both the king and the Sun-god are dressed in long, thick, woollen garments, for those were the kind of clothes made in Babylon at that time. Both the king and the Sun-god

have long beards, but their upper lips are shaven.

The rest of the pillar is covered on both sides by the writing of the laws. There are two hundred and eighty-two of the laws in all, and from them we learn many of the ways of the king and the people of Babylon. Here are six of the laws which are written on this famous stone.

1 If anyone has caused a slave of the king or a noble to go out of the gate, he shall be put to death.

2 If a robber has broken a hole in a house, he shall be killed and buried in front of the hole.

3 If a man has rented a field and not made grain to grow in that field, he shall give to the owner an amount of grain equal to that in the next field.

4 If a builder has not made a house firm, and it falls and kills the owner, the builder shall be put to death.

5 If a doctor has treated a man for a wound with a lancet of bronze and has cured the man, he shall receive ten shekels of silver.

6 If he has treated a man for a wound with a lancet of bronze and the man dies, one of the doctor's hands shall be cut off.

Even from these few laws we can learn a great deal about the people of Babylon. We learn that they had slaves, that they had builders of houses, they grew grain in their fields, they had doctors, they had sharp little knives (lancets) made of bronze; their doctors were paid in lumps of silver called *shekels*.

The laws seem very cruel to us now, but then we have had 4,000 years more in which to learn how to be kinder to our fellow men.

### TEACHING HINTS

1. **River floods.**—Put a little earth into a jug of water, stir, and pour the mixture on the doorstep so that the water can drain

away. Note the thin layer of mud that is deposited. Country children will be familiar with the fact that the farmers around manure their lands; in towns many children will know that plants in the garden need manure. Point out that plants will grow well in the fertile flood soil of the rivers of Babylon; no manuring of the soil is necessary. Draw on the blackboard the map of the Two Rivers—the Tigris and Euphrates, page 12.

**2. Canals.**—Show by a simple diagram how a system of canals or ditches can be utilised to store water for watering a field. When the floods have receded and the land becomes dry, water can be dipped from the canals to water the plants. Plants love sun and water. Refer to the greenhouse with its grapes, early tomatoes and strawberries, beautiful flowers, etc. Town children will have seen these things in florists' shops; country children will be familiar with glasshouses

**3. Storehouses.**—Famines are not uncommon in lands which depend on river floods. The snow may be less in some seasons, and the floods then extend over only a part of the accustomed area. It was *wise* to build storehouses. Refer to the squirrel and its nuts; the bees and their honey; the dog and his bone, etc.

**4. Watering the Land.** Refer to the Class Picture of the Egyptian Shadoof (No. 4 in the portfolio), which shows how the Egyptians watered their land. The children should understand that English fields do not need

to be watered, as the climate is temperate and rain falls all the year round.

**5. Writing.**—If the children have not had the lesson on "Writing" in the first year's course (Lesson XI), it will be advisable to take a part of it now. See also the Class Picture No. 10.

**6. Shekel.**—An ancient weight or money unit of the Babylonians, hence also of the Phoenicians, Hebrews, etc. As a *coin*, the shekel is not older than 139 B.C., all payments in earlier times being made by weighing out the metal.

**7. Memory work.**—(a) Hammurabi was a wise king of Babylon. (b) He had canals dug to water his fields. (c) He had storehouses built to hold his wheat and barley. (d) He had his wise laws carved on a great stone pillar. (e) A copy of this pillar, as well as some brick letters that were written for the king, can be seen in the British Museum.

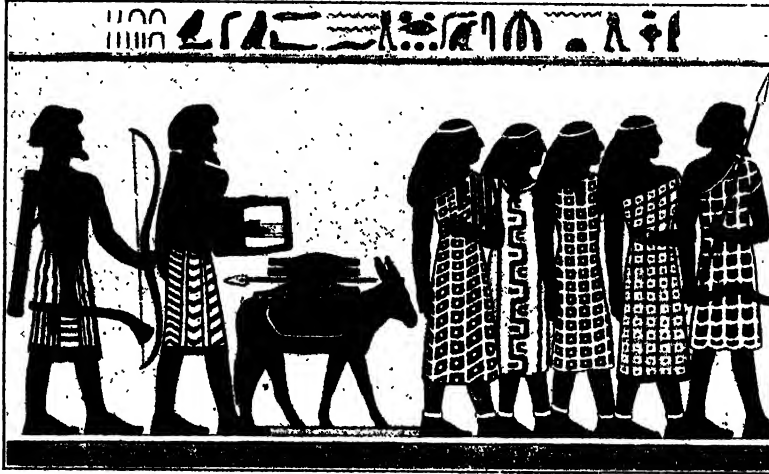
**8. Exercises.**—(a) Why do the rivers of Babylon overflow their banks? (b) Why did the early River-Men choose to live in the land of Babylon? (c) Why is Hammurabi called *wise*? (d) Why was it wise to have canals cut through the fields? (e) If you wanted to dress like King Hammurabi to act in a play, how would you do it? (f) Explain the following: (1) The meaning of the other name for the land of Babylon. (2) How the people of Babylon wrote letters. (3) How they were dressed. (4) What happened if a builder put up an unsafe house. (5) How we know that the people of Babylon made bronze.



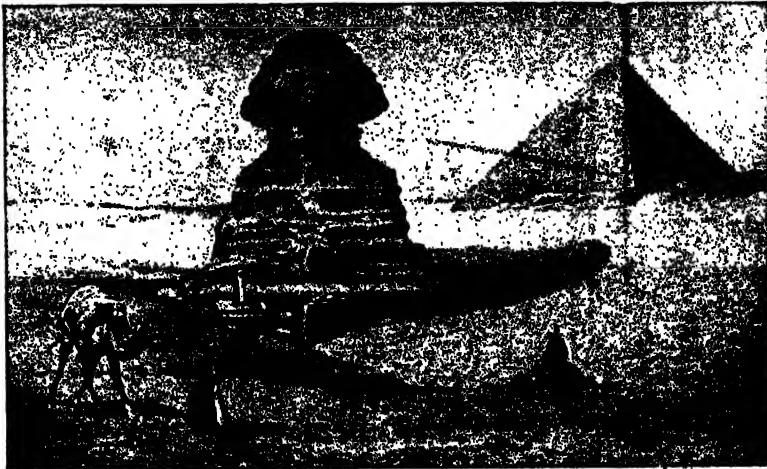
### III. JOSEPH

(THE HEBREW SLAVE WHO BECAME AN EGYPTIAN NOBLEMAN)

#### PICTURE REFERENCE



CANAANITES TRADING IN EGYPT



GREAT SPHINX OF GIZEH

**T**HE Classic Picture (No. 14 in the portfolio) shows Domestic Life in Ancient Egypt. The picture is described in the Reference Book. The illustration above shows a caravan of Semitic travelers in Egypt about 1900 B.C. as they appeared on the estate of a great lord in Egypt. Note the shoes, sandals, and woollen



clothing of "many colours." The men are armed with spears, bows and throwsticks; the one playing the lyre has a waterskin slung on his shoulders.

The lower illustration on page 19 shows the Great Sphinx and the Pyramid of Kafre (Cheops), which lie in the cemetery of Gizeh. A sphinx was in the form of a recumbent lion having a man's head, a ram's head or a hawk's head. It is suggested by Breasted that this famous sphinx represented King Kafre, before whose pyramid it lies as a sentinel guarding the mighty cemetery of Gizeh. The body is one hundred and eighty-seven feet long, and the head is sixty-six feet high.

### INTRODUCTION

The story of Joseph forms a link with ancient Egyptian civilisation. Only a small part of the story is told here, as the children will already be familiar with it. We have seen in the "First Year's Course" that the valley of the Nile was one of the earliest homes of civilisation. The fertile soil brought down by the yearly flooding of the river, together with the soft and genial climate, attracted many different kinds of settlers. The mixture of races thus brought together produced a vigorous and progressive nation.

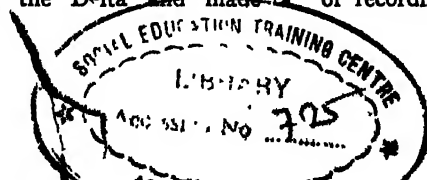
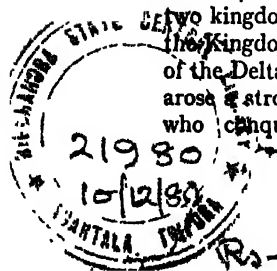
Early settlers in Egypt became agriculturists who grew wheat, barley, flax and various vegetables along the river banks. They lived a simple life like that of the Egyptian "fellaheen" of to-day. They dwelt in villages of low huts made of sun-dried bricks, the only building material readily accessible in that treeless country. In course of time each village was ruled by a chieftain, to whom the villagers paid taxes in grain and other produce, since there was as yet no coinage. Later, the settlers formed a number of independent kingdoms, but about 4000 B.C. these were united into the two kingdoms of Upper and Lower Egypt—the Kingdom of the Valley and the Kingdom of the Delta. About the year 3400 B.C. there arose a strong ruler of the Valley Kingdom, who conquered the Delta and made a

United Egypt. He called himself "Pero," or "Great House," from which comes the familiar title of the "Pharaoh." This title was borne by the rulers of Egypt for 3,000 years.

These early Egyptians rapidly made discoveries which were of paramount importance to the progress of civilisation. They were the earliest people to develop a system of writing. The need of preserving a record of the transactions between a chief and his tenants led to the invention of some sort of recording system. At first a few rude strokes scratched on the wall of a hut were used to show how many measures of grain a particular man had paid, much in the same way as a modern housewife will check the delivery of bags of coal. From these primitive signs was evolved the complex Egyptian writing system already described in the "First Year's Course." (See page 73)

It is to these primitive people, too, that we owe our almanac and our system of recording dates. In place of the lunar calendar used by most primitive races, with its months of varying lengths, they worked out a solar calendar, dividing the year into twelve months, each of thirty days, with a kind of holiday week, five days long, at the end to complete the year. This arrangement, modified by the Romans to include leap year, has come down to us after more than six thousand years.

By the use of the calendar the Egyptians were able to record the day and month in which an event took place, and, later, the years were recorded by giving them names. Each year was given a name after some striking event which took place in it, much as we remember the year 1914 as the year when the First Great War began. Later, the Egyptians found it more convenient to number the years of each king's reign, and to date events as occurring in the first, second, tenth, etc., year of a certain king. Year lists, some of which still survive, were drawn up, and they help us to follow the history of those far-off times. This system of recording time marks the beginning of



history. The year 4241 B.C. is preserved for us as that in which the Egyptian calendar was devised. It is the first recorded event in history.

Beside being pioneers in writing and the measurement of time, the Egyptians early discovered that copper could be reduced from its ore by fire. Doubtless it took many centuries to develop a practical means of smelting copper, but a marked advance was made in the art of living when man fashioned his tools, weapons and domestic utensils from metal.

**The Pyramid Age.**—The first great age of Egyptian history is called the Pyramid Age, after those mighty and characteristically Egyptian monuments which still survive as records of that time. The ancient Egyptians believed in a life after death, and they bestowed elaborate care on the preservation of their dead, for they believed that the souls of the dead would exist only so long as the body remained. They made thoughtful provision to ensure the well-being and comfort of the deceased, and we owe very much of our knowledge of the domestic habits and usages of ancient Egypt to the collection of objects from the tombs—mummified bodies, mummy cases and coffins, articles of dress and food, and of occupation and amusement; figures of protecting gods, amulets, and a multitude of miscellaneous objects.

The body of a human being or animal that has been preserved from decay by means of bitumen, spices and gums is called a mummy. The word is derived from a Persian word meaning *wax* which was used by the Persians in embalming the dead. The corpse was treated with spices, and wound in copious linen bandages, with a mask of linen and stucco on the face. The mummy was laid on its side, with the head on a head rest, in a sarcophagus of wood or stone. The tomb was regarded as a residence of the dead, and was built to shelter and protect the body. The Pyramids, which stretch in a line of about sixty miles on the

western bank of the Nile, are the finest and best-known monuments of Ancient Egypt. This pyramid method of burial lasted for a period of about four hundred years (2900-2500 B.C.). Before that time the custom had grown up of lining the graves with bricks. The structure was at first underground, then above the surface as a square, flat-topped tomb, called a mastaba.

The oldest surviving pyramid is stepped, and is really a collection of six mastabas of diminishing size. The later pyramids had the steps filled in and the sides faced with fine stone. Inside each pyramid was the sepulchral chamber, reached by a passage from the north. Other rooms and passages are present in many pyramids.

The Great Pyramid at Gizeh covers nearly thirteen acres of ground and is four hundred feet high. It consists of more than two million blocks of stone, each weighing about two and a half tons. The mason's work and the engineering are excellent. Copper tools were used in shaping the stone, which was hauled by slaves from the quarries at Tura nine miles away. It was a tremendous accomplishment to organize slave work on such a large scale, and to transport so much material by man power.

Grouped around the pyramids are the tombs of the nobles or of other members of the royal family. The burial chambers in all cases contain many utensils, furniture and books for the use of the dead. Apart from the burial chamber there was a chapel for the use of the relatives. Often the earthly life of the deceased was depicted in relief work on the walls of the chambers of the tombs. These scenes supply us with valuable knowledge of the customs of the time.

It is evident that only a strong ruler could have organised and controlled the vast amount of labour necessary to erect these enormous structures. We find, indeed, that the kings of the Pyramid Age were increasingly powerful monarchs, no longer mere local chieftains, but rulers of a united Egypt, the first great nation made up of

several millions of people. The Egyptians looked upon their king as the incarnation of a god, and regarded him with such reverence that they never referred to him by his name, but spoke of him by the name of his palace, as the "Great House" or the "Pharaoh."

The king held his court at Memphis, where the business of government was carried on, and where scribes received and stored in the royal treasure houses the corn, wine, honey, livestock, linen and other goods which were paid in as tribute by the provinces. This tribute was collected by local officials in the different parts of the

only of wood and sun-dried brick, has crumbled away, while the city of the dead still stands.

The Pharaohs of the Pyramid Age were powerful enough to seek for trade outside Egypt. A relief carved on the wall of a temple in the twenty-eighth century B.C. is the oldest known representation of a sea-going vessel. Egyptian ships visited the Mediterranean, sailing as far as Phoenicia, and they made voyages along the Red Sea. At the same time Egyptian caravans explored the interior of Africa and brought back ivory, ebony, fragrant gums and ostrich feathers. Pictures of these expedi-



EGYPTIAN FUNERAL BARGE

*From a wall painting in an Egyptian tomb*

The mummy, which is under the canopy, is being conveyed by river to the tomb. Mourners weep and pray, slaves row the barge.

land. These men were also judges; each judge had with him for reference a written copy of the Egyptian law (now unfortunately lost).

The city of Memphis consisted of a city of the dead and a city of the living lying side by side. In the great cemetery stood the huge pyramids and the tombs of the nobles into which was put all the architectural and artistic skill of the day. Round them clustered the houses of the royal town—the king's palace amid its orchards and pleasure gardens, the houses of the nobles, each in its garden, and the smaller huts of the people. But the city of the living, built

tions may still be seen painted on the walls of the tombs of the officials who conducted them.

In the tombs, too, may be seen pictures of the everyday life of Egypt. Looking at them we realise how far the Egyptians had advanced from the primitive peasant stage and how like their life was to our own. We see men pursuing the same trades as they follow to-day. The craftsmen were an important class of workmen in Egypt. The potter was highly skilled, and made clay vessels on a revolving wheel, shaping the vessel with his hands as it whirled round. The vessels were baked in rows of closed

clay ovens as tall as a man. Pots and vases were often coloured and glazed. (See Class Picture No. 8.)

The richly-wrought jewellery of Ancient Egypt is hardly surpassed by the work of the best goldsmiths to-day. In the ancient pictures we see men with blowpipes blowing the fire in a clay furnace; a workman pouring out molten metal, and a goldsmith weighing precious stones while a scribe records them.

Carpenters, blacksmiths, coppersmiths, brickmakers, stonemasons, woodcarvers and workers in metal and ivory all had their particular work to do, and, to judge by the wonderful relics handed down to us, they worked exceedingly well.

The baker and the confectioner were always busy, for the Egyptians were fond of cakes made with honey, and other sweet dainties. The basket weaver wove rush mats and sandals, and made ropes and many kinds of baskets.

The hand-made linen found wrapped round the royal mummies is often finer than any machine-made linen to-day. Tapestry was also made, and hung on the walls of the Pharaoh's palace, or stretched out to shade the roof gardens of the nobleman's villa. Stone and wooden spindles have been found, and fine needles of copper and gold.

Nobles and their ladies wore wigs, and sometimes a headdress called a *conic*; the king and queen wore elaborate headdresses. The nobles wore sandals made of plaited papyrus and palm fibre, or of goat skin or gazelle skin. The men carried a staff or walking stick as a sign of authority, and wore rings, anklets, necklets and breast ornaments. The women painted their faces, blackened their eyebrows, and dyed their finger nails and toe nails with the red juice of the henna plant.

**The Middle Kingdom.**—The Pyramid Age lasted as long as there was a strong absolute monarch at the head of affairs, able to control the nobles on whom he relied for

help in the government. But as the power of the Pharaohs declined so that of the nobles increased, till at last they fell to fighting among themselves and finally overthrew the monarchy. The last king of the Pyramid Age fell from power about 2500 B.C. and Egypt was plunged into a state of anarchy.

About 2200 B.C. this chaos began to resolve into order under a family of powerful nobles who ruled at Thebes. Gradually these Theban rulers brought all Egypt under their sway, and it became once more a mighty state with a new capital at Thebes.

During the age of the Middle Kingdom great progress was made in trade and manufacture, in peaceful intercourse with other nations, and in the higher realms of knowledge, conduct and character. This period was the "golden age" of Egyptian literature. Books of all kinds were written, and many of the nobles had large libraries. Portions of these libraries have been found in the cliff tombs as jars filled with rolls of papyrus; these originally stood, neatly labelled, on the library shelves. The jars contain the world's most ancient story books—tales of magic and adventure (the original of *Sinbad the Sailor* among them), songs, hymns and poems, and embryonic science, medicine, astronomy, geometry, algebra and geography.

The Pharaohs of this period reformed the government by taking a census of the population for taxation purposes every few years; they improved the irrigation of their land (always a burning question in rainless Egypt) and they organised a small standing army which began to extend Egyptian power outside the boundaries of Egypt.

**The "Hyksos" or Shepherd Kings.**—The Middle Kingdom was brought to an end about 2000 B.C. by hordes of Asiatic invaders from Syria and Arabia who gradually conquered both Upper and Lower Egypt. These invaders became known as the "Hyksos" or Shepherd Kings. They were proud and cruel, and the Egyptians spoke of them scornfully as the "sand dwellers." A Jewish

writer, Josephus, thus describes the invasion of the Hyksos: "It came to pass, I know not how, that God was averse to us, and there came, after a surprising manner, men of ignoble birth out of the eastern parts, and had boldness enough to make an expedition into our country, and with ease subdued it by force, yet without our hazarding battle. They afterwards burnt down our

By degrees their efficiency grew less; about 1580 B.C. the ruler at Thebes was able to drive them out. He was then proclaimed king and his accession marks the opening of the third great period in Egyptian history.

**The Empire.**—This period is the age of Egyptian greatness. The epithet "empire" instead of "kingdom" marks its wider power.



*[From the picture by Sir Lawrence Alma Tadema, R.A.]*

*[By courtesy of the Corporation of Preston.]*

#### PASTIME IN ANCIENT EGYPT THREE THOUSAND YEARS AGO

cities, and demolished the temples of the gods, and used all the inhabitants after the most barbarous manner."

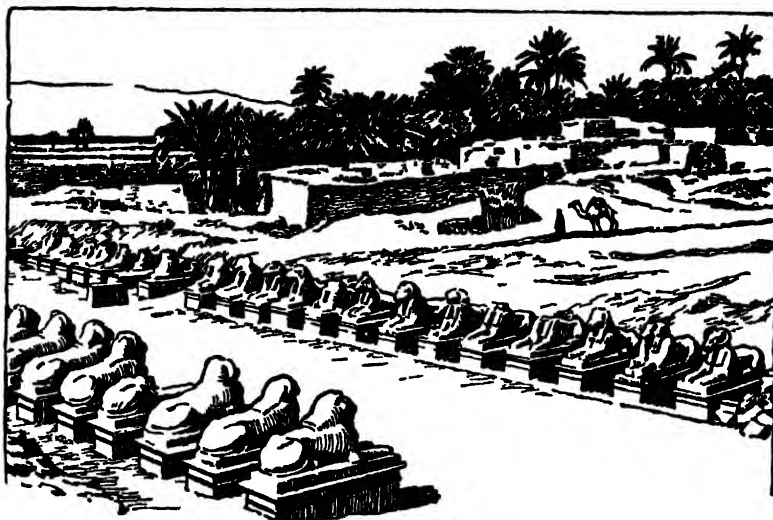
The Hyksos kings established themselves at Memphis, and at first were strong enough to keep in subjection the whole of Egypt, but they never fully conquered the Valley, and native dynasties still existed in Thebes.

The Pyramid Age had dawned as the result of the discovery of metal. The Empire came into being through another great acquisition—the horse and chariot. Till the end of the Middle Kingdom the horse was unknown in Egypt, but the Hyksos were equipped with horses and chariots, which enabled them to conquer the land with ease. The

expulsion of the Hyksos was followed by a period of great military aggression. The possession of cavalry and war chariots enabled the Pharaohs to conquer an empire stretching from the Euphrates in the east, the confines of Asia Minor in the north and as far south as the third cataract of the Nile.

Many great names—Queen Hatshepsut, Thothmes III and Amen-hotep III and IV—are connected with this glorious XVIIIth Dynasty. Hatshepsut, the first woman ruler known to history, and her stepson Thothmes III reigned as joint rulers for

treasures of gold, incense, myrrh trees, ivory, ebony, cinnamon, eye cosmetic, apes and monkeys, dogs and skins, with natives and their children. The Queen erected two huge obelisks (each nearly one hundred feet high) one of which is still standing at Karnak. On the walls of the temple are sculptures showing how these huge stone monuments were towed in great barges from the granite quarries of the First Cataract—a distance of about one hundred and fifty miles. The barge is shown towed by thirty tugboats, each with thirty-two oarsmen.



AVENUE OF RAM-HEADED SPHINXES AT KARNAK

twenty-two years and Thothmes alone for thirty-two years. Hatshepsut was a capable and ambitious woman. Upon her monument, she is depicted in the masculine garb and aspect of a king. She must have had a great influence over her stepson and the acknowledged ruler of Egypt. The Queen cultivated the arts of peace. She completed and decorated the temple in Western Thebes and embellished its walls with scenes associated with her own life. Here is seen the famous sculpture of the great expedition of five ships which sailed by way of the Red Sea to Punt, in Somaliland, bringing back

Thothmes III has been called the Napoleon of Egypt. On the temple walls at Karnak can be read the story of nearly twenty years of warfare in Western Asia. In the end all the nations of the Fertile Crescent paid him tribute. Among the obelisks raised to record his victories was the one now known as "Cleopatra's Needle." During his reign Egypt became enormously rich, and the king spent much wealth in erecting or renewing temples and other buildings, the finest being the great colonnade at Karnak.

Amen-hotep III was a mighty builder. The wealth gained by his great-grandfather

Thothmes III. enabled him to make Thebes a magnificent "monumental city." Avenues of sphinxes, pylons, etc. were added on a vast scale at Karnak. In the western cliffs of Thebes are cut hundreds of tomb chapels belonging to the artists, architects, generals and other great men of the empire. One of the carvings shows how a general saved the life of Thothmes III. when he was elephant hunting in Asia by cutting off the trunk of an enraged elephant which was pursuing the king. Another scene on the tomb of a general shows how he captured Joppa by concealing his soldiers in panniers loaded on the backs of donkeys -- an adventure which afterwards formed part of the story of "Ali Baba and the Forty Thieves."

Beautiful furniture -- chairs covered with gold and silver, jewel boxes and perfume caskets and other such works of art--have been found in these tombs. With each body was placed a copy of the "Book of the Dead," which was a papyrus roll containing prayers and magic charms to aid the departed when he came before the great judge and king Osiris, where his soul was weighed in the balance over against the symbol of truth and justice. Amen-hetep III. caused a series of large scrolls to be engraved with the name and parentage of his queen, followed by texts commem-

orating the boundaries of his kingdom, the formation of a sacred lake at Thebes, a great hunt of wild cattle, and the slaughter by the king himself of one hundred and two lions during the first ten years of his reign.

Amen-hetep IV., who succeeded his father,

was perhaps the most remarkable character in the long line of the Pharaohs. He is the first recorded monotheist. He believed that there was only one god, the Sun-god, *Aten*, and he attempted to impose this belief on his subjects. He commanded that the worship of the old gods should be done away with, he closed their temples, and cast out their priests. He changed his own name, which contained the name of the god Amen, to Aken-aten ("Aten is satisfied"), and moved his capital from Thebes to a new city where the village of Tel-el-Amarna is now. In the ruined tomb chapels of this deserted city we can still read on the walls the beautiful hymns to the Sun-god written by this splendid young visionary.

But Egypt was not ready for such an advanced view of the universe. Moreover, in his preoccupation with religious matters, Aken-aten disregarded the state of Egypt, which was threatened with foes from Asia and Syria. The dispossessed priests plotted



Photo Mansell

#### QUEEN NEFERTITI

*A bust found at Tel el Amarna, Egypt, and now in the Berlin Museum.*

*Nefertiti was the wife of Amen-hetep IV and mother in law of Tut ank amen. She lived in the seventeenth century B.C.*

with the discontented army, and the Empire began to break up.

In the British Museum can be seen part of a collection of the Tel-el-Amarna Tablets, some three hundred clay tablets covered with cuneiform writing of the correspondence of kings and governors of Western Asia with Amen-hetep III. and IV.

At Tel-el-Amarna, too, was found the bust of Queen Nefertiti, the wife of Amen-hetep IV. Few, if any, portraits have come down to us from the ancient world more beautiful than this head of the Egyptian queen.

When Aken aten died in 1362 B.C. the old religion reasserted itself. Its formal and complete restoration was achieved under Tut-ankh-aten (1360-1350 B.C.), who changed his name to Tut-ank-amen, thus showing his submission to and approval of the old religion.

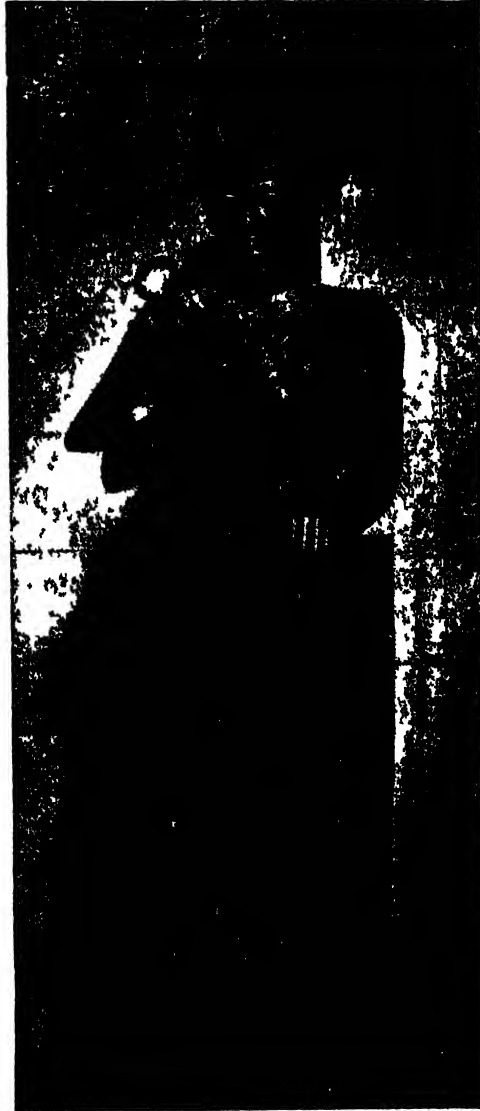
During the nineteenth dynasty, a brief revival of empire took place. Rameses II. was the greatest king of this dynasty. His buildings are spread all over Egypt, his statues are numberless.

He was a brave warrior and a capable ruler, but undoubtedly vain and boastful.

**Decline of the Egyptian Empire.**—After a great and prolonged struggle with the Hittites, the Egyptians regained their hold over Palestine, Syria and Phœnicia. But

their supremacy was short-lived. The end of the nineteenth dynasty (about 1205 B.C.) saw the beginning of a period of rapid decline. The Egyptians had lost their enthusiasm for war, and, as we can see from the wall-paintings of this period, they were enlisting foreigners to serve in their armies. These mercenaries from the Eastern Mediterranean entered Egypt in ever increasing numbers, new powers stripped Egypt of her dependencies, and she was finally reduced. In turn she was conquered by the Assyrians, Persians, Macedonians and Romans.

Thus the history of the three great periods of Egyptian history may be read from the monuments which they have left along the Nile. The cemeteries of Memphis and the pyramids of Gizeh speak eloquently of the wonderful Pyramid Age, the cliff tombs along the Nile tell the story of the Middle Kingdom, and the



RAMESSES II

ruined temples and tombs of Thebes and Karnak speak of the departed glories of the Empire.



**CHILDREN'S STORY**

We are now going to hear of another family of nomads who kept cattle and sheep in the land of Canaan. The father of this family was one of Abraham's grandsons, called Jacob. He had twelve sons, and of these he loved his son Joseph, the youngest but one, best of all. We read in the Bible how Jacob gave Joseph a coat of many colours. It was a long robe made in stripes of red, blue, yellow and green. Joseph was a clever boy who could tell what dreams meant. He dreamed that he would one day become a great lord, and that his father, mother and brothers would all bow down to salute him.

One day, when Joseph's brothers were far from home minding their cattle and sheep, his father sent him to see how they were getting on. These brothers hated Joseph because his father loved him so much, and they hated him the more because of his dream. When Joseph came up to speak to them they took hold of him, stripped off his coloured coat and pushed him down a dry well.

Soon afterwards, a procession of merchants passed by on their way to the land of Egypt. They had camels loaded with spices and other goods which they were going to sell. The merchants also had with them men, women, boys and girls roped together and stumbling along on foot. The merchants were going to sell these poor people as slaves.

Here was the chance to get rid of Joseph. His brothers pulled him out of the well and sold him to the merchants for twenty pieces of silver. So Joseph was roped along with the rest of the slaves, and the caravan set off again on the long, long march to Egypt. Then the brothers dipped his pretty coat in the blood of a kid and brought it home to show their father. When Jacob saw the blood on it he thought that Joseph had been killed by wild beasts. For many days Jacob mourned for his dearest son.

The River-Men, who had been living in

Egypt for many hundreds of years, had found out a great deal, and when the caravan came to Egypt, Joseph saw many strange and wonderful sights. They came to the great river Nile which every year flooded the land as the rivers of Babylon did. On its banks, as far as Joseph could see, were fields of wheat and barley, with ditches round them. Men were working at the shadoofs pouring water from the river into the ditches to keep the fields moist, for the sun is always hot in Egypt, and little rain falls. On the higher ground near the river were villages of small, brick houses.

The caravan had to cross the Nile. Men and camels and goods were carried across in painted barges. How Joseph must have stared in wonder, for he had never seen anything of the kind before! He heard, too, of the great ships which sailed to other lands.

In the distance they saw huge stone buildings called pyramids, where the kings of Egypt were buried. How large they were! The Great Pyramid, which still stands in the desert, is higher than St. Paul's Cathedral. Each pyramid was built to hold a dead king. The great stone blocks used to build the pyramids were dragged along the roads with ropes pulled by hundreds of slaves. Joseph saw, too, the Great Sphinx, the portrait head of a king attached to the body of a lion. This famous sphinx still lies as a sentinel guarding the mighty burial-places of the kings.

At last they came to a great city. Here were the king's palace and many beautiful temples where priests taught the people to worship the Sun-god, the Moon-god, the River-god and others.

Joseph liked looking at the children with their brown skin and straight black hair. The tiny children wore no clothes, but the older ones were dressed like their fathers and mothers in white linen. The girls had dolls and the boys played with balls made of leather stuffed with straw.

The merchants made their way through the streets to the market place. Here men

sat on the ground selling baskets of fish, cakes, bread, vegetables, pots of ointment and other things. They did not use money, but gave one thing for another, such as a basket of fish for a pair of sandals, or some vegetables for a string of beads. There were workshops where smiths were making copper tools, and carpenters were carving chairs and tables, and potters making dishes and cups from clay. There were scribes writing with pen and ink. The Egyptians did not write on bricks as the Babylonians did, for they had found out how to make paper from the papyrus reed. Joseph must have thought how very clever the Egyptians were.

Suddenly the caravan stopped. There was a shout of "Clear the way!" A chariot drawn by two horses drove swiftly past. There were feathers on the horses' heads and rich saddle cloths on their backs. In the chariot stood a tall young man dressed in grand robes with shining jewels. It was the Pharaoh, the ruler of Egypt, whom his people loved and worshipped as a god. Joseph looked into that proud, handsome face, little knowing that one day this king would be his friend.

Joseph was tied up with the other slaves in the market, and was bought by Potiphar, the captain of the king's soldiers.

Potiphar lived in a large house in the midst of a beautiful garden surrounded by a high wall. Here one could sit under the shade of tall date palms and look at the lovely flowers and the ripe figs, or watch the fish swimming in the pool. Inside the house there was plenty to see, for the ceilings, walls and floors were covered with paintings. Then there were tables, chairs and couches. These must have seemed very strange to Joseph, who at home with his father had always sat on the ground and eaten his dinner from a wooden bowl.

Potiphar found Joseph such a good servant that he soon trusted him alone to manage his house. But Potiphar's wife told untrue tales of Joseph and had him put in prison.

Even in prison Joseph did well. He told the other prisoners the meanings of their dreams and they were proud of him. Soon the Pharaoh heard of this wonderful man and sent for him to explain his dreams. Joseph was taken out of prison, dressed in new clothes and brought before the Pharaoh. He said that the meaning of the king's dreams was this: Egypt would have seven years of plenty, when there would be much corn in the land, but afterwards there would be seven years of famine, when very little corn would grow. Pharaoh believed Joseph's words. He set him free from prison and made him a ruler whose duty it would be to look after the corn of the land, so that it should not be used up too quickly.

Joseph had great barns built to store the corn, and when the seven years of famine came round there was still plenty of corn to be had. People came from far and near to buy it. One day ten men from Canaan came to buy. They were Joseph's brothers. He knew them at once, but they did not know him, for he was a great lord, dressed in white linen robes and having on his head a curled and scented wig. Here Joseph's dream came true, for his brothers bowed down before him.

Joseph was a hero. He did not have his cruel brothers put into prison, but he forgave them. He took them to his grand house, where his slaves had made a feast for them. Then he told them who he was, and he sent for his youngest brother, his father, mother and all their relatives and servants to come to live in Egypt.

When Joseph died he was buried like an Egyptian and his body was made into a *mummy*. That is, it was wrapped in linen bandages with spices so that the body was preserved. The Egyptians believed that the soul of a man would not live on unless his body was kept in this way. The pyramids were built to hold the mummies of kings, but the mummies of nobles like Joseph were put away in holes cut in the rocks. The tombs for the mummies were got ready long before the men died, and they were

made beautiful with pictures carved or painted on the walls. If you ever go to Egypt you can walk into some of these tombs and see the pictures, or you may see some of them and many mummies in the British Museum in London.

Jacob's family settled down happily in Egypt and lived on there for four hundred years after Joseph's death. Because one of Jacob's names was *Israel*, the people of his big family were known as the *Israelites*. As years went by the Israelites became so many that one of the Pharaohs was afraid that they might wish to conquer Egypt for themselves. So in order to keep them weak and poor he made them slaves. They had to make bricks and help to build treasure cities for the king. Perhaps you remember how Moses led these slaves out of Egypt back to their own land of Canaan. When they went they took with them the body of Joseph, so that he could be buried in his old home.

### TEACHING HINTS

**1. Map.**—Draw a sketch map of Egypt and Palestine and mark the route taken by the caravans, p. 31. Give the children some idea of the distance (between 200 and 300 miles) and of the desert country traversed. Colour the desert yellow and the narrow strip of cultivation on either bank green.

**2. Shadoof.**—Explain how the Nile annually floods the land. Refer again to the use of canals such as Hammurabi had made in Babylon. The Class Picture, No. 4, illustrates the shadoof. See that children understand why it was (and is) necessary for the fields of Egypt to be constantly watered in summer.

**3. Caravan.**—Explain this method of trading and travelling which still persists in Arabia, Northern Africa, etc. Most, if not all children, will know that the camel is the beast of burden of hot, sandy lands. Many children will have seen a live one at the Zoo. The teacher should point out that camels were more fitted than donkeys for long

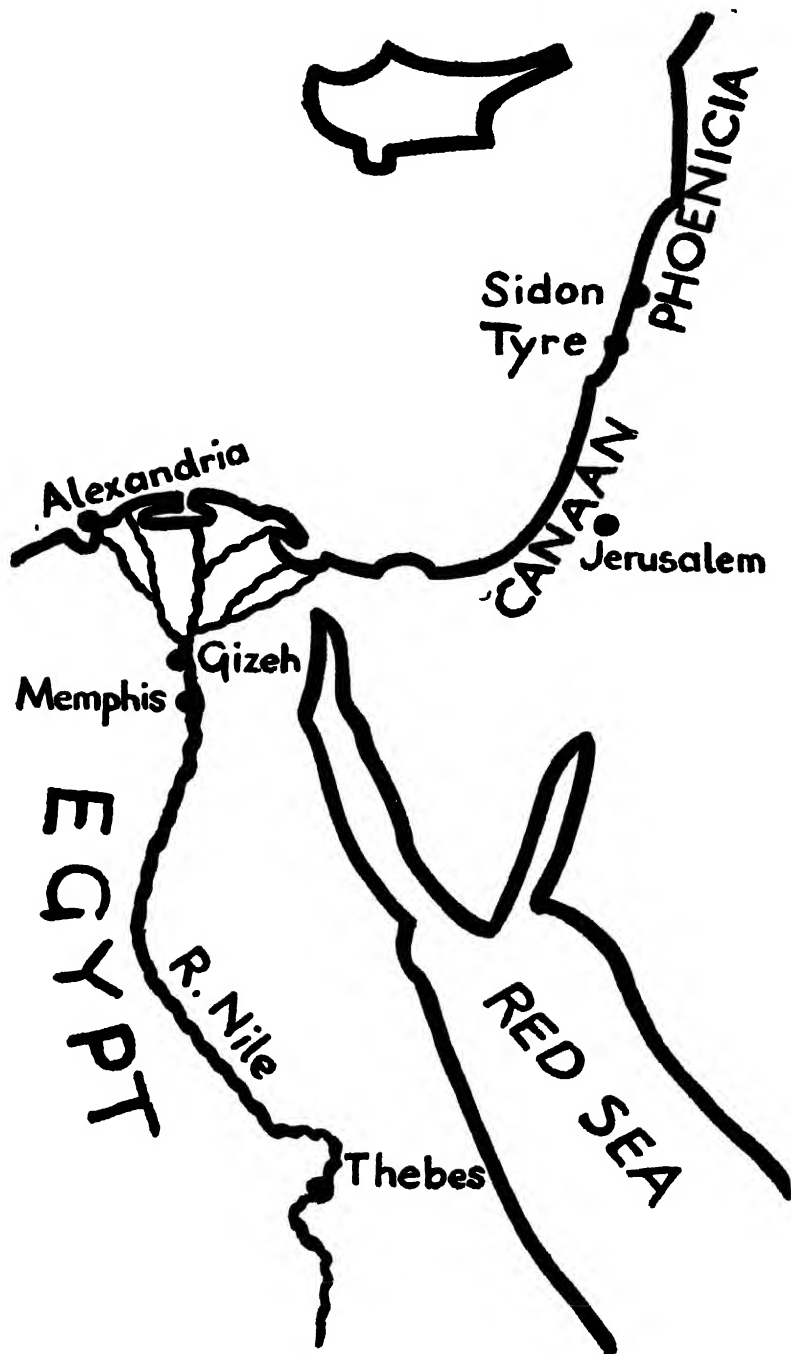
journeys owing to their stronger powers of endurance, greater speed, and faculty of going several days without food or water.

**4. Pyramids.**—Make a paper model of a pyramid. Explain that the pyramids were built of huge blocks of stone much of which had to be transported across the river. Compare the transporting of these stones up inclined roads by hundreds of slaves with the modern methods of transporting stone by horses or machines.

**5. Sphinx.**—In Greek art and mythology the sphinx was a monster having typically a lion's body and wings, and the head and bust of a woman. The most famous Greek sphinx was that of Thebes, whose habit was to propose a riddle to all passers, and upon their failure to guess it to destroy them. The Thebans offered the hand of Jocasta and the throne of Thebes to the man who would rid them of the monster. Oedipus guessed the riddle, the Sphinx slew herself, and he thus became king. The riddle is said to have been: What creature walks in the morning upon four feet, at noon upon two, at evening upon three? The answer is: Man. As a baby he walks on hands and knees; later on his feet, and in old age with a staff.

**6. Time sense.**—The children should be encouraged to trace as many similarities as possible between Egyptian civilisation and our own. Note the fields of wheat, barley and flax; the barges, the markets, the carpenters, potters and workers in jewellery. Point out that the civilisation in Babylon was concurrent with that in Egypt of Joseph's time. Note that in Britain at this time men still lived in caves or the simplest dwellings—pits dug in the ground and covered with branches and leaves, or log huts daubed with mud.

**7. Memory work.**—(a) Joseph was sold by his brothers to some merchants who took



BLACKBOARD SKETCH OF EGYPT AND PALESTINE

him to Egypt (b) In Egypt Joseph saw many strange sights, such as the pyramids, the Great Sphinx, the river Nile, the markets, and the workmen in their shops (c) Joseph became one of the Pharaoh's chief nobles. (d) When his brothers came from Canaan to buy corn, Joseph forgave them for their unkindness and asked his father and all his family to come to live in Egypt (e) Because one of Jacob's names was Israel, the people of his big family were known as Israelites.

**8. Exercises.**—(a) Why did Jacob and his people live in tents? (b) Why did Joseph's brothers sell him as a slave? (c) Why did Jacob think that Joseph was dead? (d) What wonderful buildings did Joseph see in Egypt? (e) How did Joseph come to be the Pharaoh's chief man? (f) How did one of the Pharaohs ill treat the Israelites? (g) Complete this list of things told you about the Egyptians (i) The Egyptians buried their

kings in great stone — (2) The colour of the Egyptians was — and their hair was — (3) In the market place were —. (4) The Pharaoh rode — (5) The Egyptians made the bodies of their dead into —. (6) They built their houses of — (7) In the fields they grew — (8) They wrote with — on —

### 9. Children's summary.—

Joseph was sold by his brothers to some merchants.

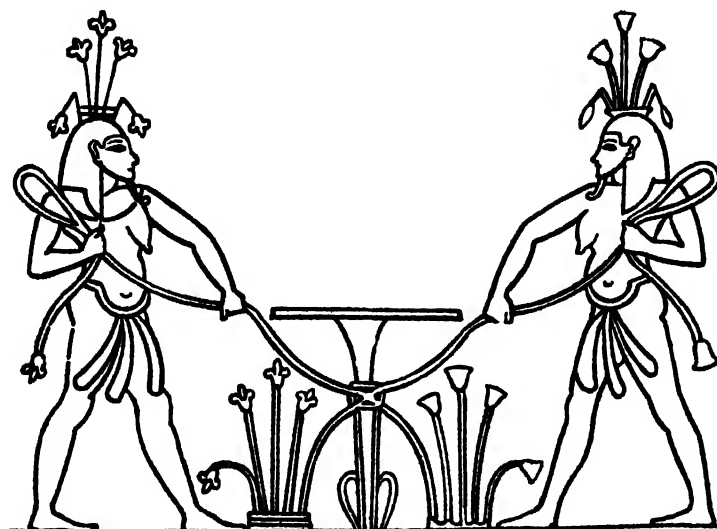
On coming to Egypt they crossed the Nile in barges.

Stones for building the pyramids were dragged along the roads by slaves.

Egypt is a hot land where men dip water from the river with shadoofs.

Pharaoh made Joseph a noble who had the care of the corn.

He sent for his father Jacob to come to live in Egypt.

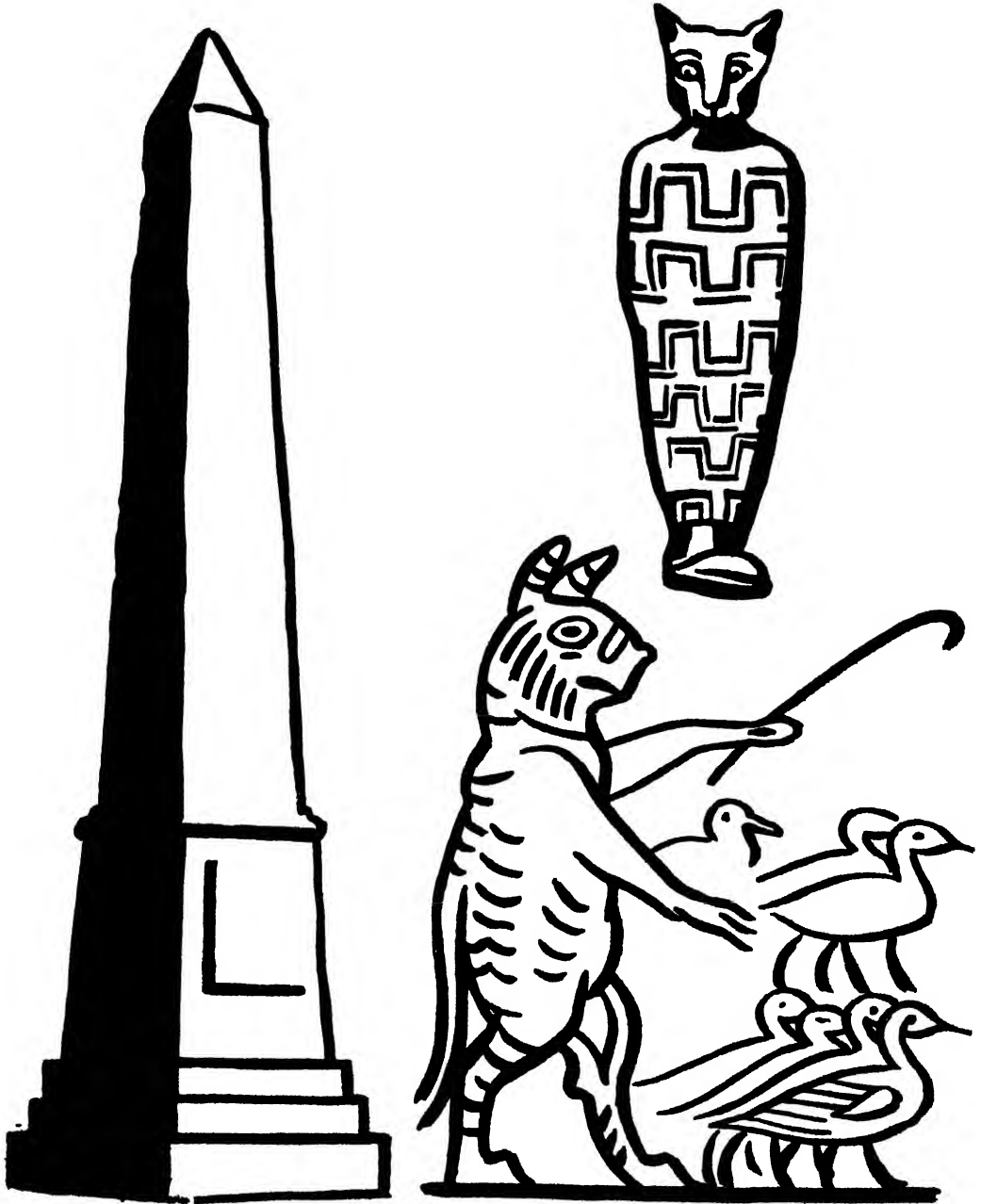


THE GOD OF THE  
SOUTH NILE

THE GOD OF THE  
NORTH NILE

The Egyptians thought that the Nile rose from between two mountains and was divided into two sections, each presided over by a god. The accompanying illustration illustrates the union of Upper and Lower Egypt. The Nile gods are tying the stem of a lotus plant and the stem of a papyrus plant in a knot round the symbol which means 'to unite'.

SKETCHES FOR THE BLACKBOARD



EGYPTIAN OBELISK

MUMMIFIED CAT—BRITISH MUSEUM

CAT DRIVING GESE—FROM A WALL PAINTING

## IV. THESEUS

(THE BRAVE PRINCE)

### PICTURE REFERENCE



THE PARTING OF THESEUS FROM HIS MOTHER

(Class Picture No. 15 in the portfolio)

### INTRODUCTION

**Civilisation comes to Europe.**—Civilisation, which, as we know it, had first appeared in the Near East, began about 3000 B.C. to shift to Europe, and it is in Europe that the world's history has centred for the last twenty-two centuries. This fact is easily explained when we think of the favourable physical and climatic conditions of the continent.

Geographically, Europe enjoys great advantages. No other continent possesses so much seacoast in proportion to its area, and such opportunity for sea traffic. The coastline of Europe is longer than that of all Africa and South America together, while Asia is touched by the sea only at its remote edges. There are, moreover, many rivers in Europe, navigable for long dis-

tances, as contrasted with the few in Asia. Another advantage is the comparative flatness of the continent. There are few mountain barriers, and those that exist, such as the Alps, have many passes by which they may be crossed.

The climate, too, is exceptionally well suited to human needs. It is neither too hot nor too cold, for the temperature is regulated by the Gulf Stream and by the warm western winds which blow over the Atlantic and bring an abundant rainfall. Europe is consequently the only continent without large deserts. It is plain that a region with so many natural advantages would enable men to live in comparative ease and to develop a high civilisation.

**The Mediterranean Basin.**—It was in this extensive inland sea which washes the shores of three continents—Europe, Africa and Asia—that western civilisation arose. The sea is comparatively isolated, for it is shut in by a mountain barrier on the north and by a desert on the south. The climate is midway between the tropical and the temperate. The rainfall is scanty, but the vine and the olive, which can resist drought, thrive freely. These peculiarities mark the Mediterranean basin as a definite and distinct area.

The Mediterranean is particularly well suited for trade, for its broken coastline gives good harbours, and its numerous islands make long voyages unnecessary. Sailors need never lose sight of land, and if shipwrecked can generally reach some island near by. These features made the Mediterranean a "highway of the nations" between east and west.

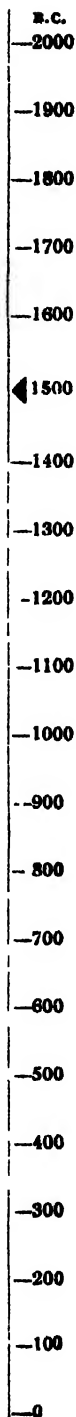
The Mediterranean basin is divided by the long peninsula of Italy into two parts. The western half stretches from Italy to Spain, and the eastern half includes the Adriatic and the Ionian and Aegean Seas. It was in this eastern half that European civilisation began. This early civilisation takes its name from the Aegean Sea and is known as the Aegean civilisation. Crete was its centre.

The Aegean Sea is almost a land-locked body of water. It lies between the Balkan Peninsula and Greece on the west, and Asia Minor on the east. The only opening on the north is the Dardanelles (formerly known as the Hellespont), a narrow strait which opens into the Sea of Marmora, from which the Bosphorus, another strait, leads into the Black Sea. On the south it is shut in by a chain of islands which are scattered like stepping-stones over the Aegean, thus making it possible for a ship to cross from Greece to Asia Minor without losing sight of land. It was among these islands that the Aegean civilisation spread. (It is sometimes called Cretan, since it developed first in the island of Crete.) At the period when the Greeks were beginning to settle in cities, the Cretans were already living a highly cultured city life (c. 1500 B.C.). Their island formed a halfway house between the east and west, and it is easy to see how they were able to profit by the discoveries of older nations, to pass them on to the neighbouring islands, and ultimately to Greece.

The story of Theseus and the Minotaur has been included as a suitable introduction to the early Greeks and the Aegean civilisation.

The ancestors of the Greeks were a branch of the Indo-European race, whose original home was possibly among the forests and grasslands north of the Caspian Sea. These Indo-Europeans swarmed southwards in successive waves and settled sporadically all over the Greek peninsula.

The beautiful Greek myths are of value chiefly in revealing to us the status and development of the mind of the early Greeks. Following the period of pure myth, when the gods were supposed to walk as





men on the earth, we come to the semi-historical time of the Greek heroes, which may be conveniently termed the Heroic Age (c. 1400-1200 B.C.). The term Heroic Age applies to that period immediately preceding and including the Trojan wars.

The figure of Theseus appears in the early centuries of the Heroic Age. During these early centuries, Greece, for the most part, is depicted as a wild country inhabited by crude wandering tribes. The adventures of Theseus on his way from his home at Troezen to Athens describe the surrounding country as being overrun by fierce animals, robbers and tyrants.

Attica, that part of the south-east of Greece which extends into the Aegean Sea, was one of the earliest Greek provinces to exhibit a settled population and progress towards civilisation. At the time of King Aegeas we find Attica well-populated, though divided and disorderly. The town of Athens was already flourishing. The people of Attica lived simple rustic lives; they grew grain, cultivated the olive and raised cattle.

It is related of Theseus that, on his father's death, he undertook the union of the whole of Attica, and put an end to civil war. He removed all civil business to Athens, and strengthened the union by instituting at Athens one common religious feast for all inhabitants of Attica. To this scheme of union the Athenians may be said to owe all their greatness.

**Cretan Civilisation.**—The civilisation of Crete at the time of Theseus appears to have been at its height. The Cretans at that time were a warlike nation with an ordered, though unstable, internal government. They made themselves guardians of the sea, suppressed the Athenian pirates and forced them to pay tribute. Coined money was not common at that time; slaves and cattle were the principal riches, so that it was natural that King Minos should demand a yearly tribute of fourteen slaves. It is not, however, historically clear by what means

Theseus freed his country from a further payment.

The recent Cretan discoveries made by Sir Arthur Evans throw an interesting light on the old legend. At Knossos, about three and a half miles south of Candia, the chief palace of the kings of Crete was found. It was one of the finest buildings of the ancient world. It was not fortified, so we are led to suppose that the Cretan kings relied upon sea power for protection. The palace was



PAINTED JAR WITH PAPYRUS  
RELIEFS (KNOSSOS)

completed about 1500 B.C. at the beginning of the "Golden Age" in Cretan history, a period which lasted about fifty years.

The royal palace was nearly square, about five hundred feet each way, and parts of it were at least five storeys high. The walls of the many rooms and passages were brilliantly decorated. The several passages form a maze which may well be the original labyrinth, the home of the fabled Minotaur. A rough design of a labyrinth also appears on ancient Cretan coins. The marvels of

the Knossos palace include a throne of gypsum, a bathroom fitted with terra-cotta tubs, and a remarkably perfect drainage system. There is an abundance of coloured wall paintings, vases and small figures beautifully modelled in metal or terra-cotta, delicate gold ornaments and well-cut gems.

It is interesting to us to find that the sport of bull wrestling is often depicted. This throws light on the legendary Minotaur, for it is but a short step to imagine a bull with all the cunning of a man, proving more than a match for the Cretan wrestler.

A small terra-cotta figure of a Cretan snake goddess reveals the women's dress to have been surprisingly modern. There we have the corset, the flounced skirt and leg-of-mutton sleeves similar to the French or English costume of the nineteenth century.

### CHILDREN'S STORY

When the River-Men were settling down in the sunny lands of Egypt and Babylon, wandering tribes found their way over the mountains to the warm valleys of Greece. We know very little about these early men, but here is one of their old stories. The people who lived in Greece long, long ago used to sing this story to each other. At last, when they learned how to write, someone put it in a book. The story is so old that we cannot be sure that it is all quite true, so we call it a *myth*. This myth tells us about a hero called Theseus.

When Theseus was a little boy he lived with his mother by the seashore at Troezen. One day on their walks they came to a great stone half buried in the sand. "Can you lift that stone, Theseus, my son?" said his mother.

"I will try," said Theseus; but though he pulled and tugged with all his strength, it was too heavy for him. Many times in their walks they came to the stone, and each time Theseus tried to lift it, but in vain.

One day, when he had grown into a tall, strong youth of about seventeen years, he

said, "Mother, I am sure I could lift the stone to-day."

"We shall see, my son," she answered, with a sad smile.

When they reached the place, Theseus put forth all his strength to shift the boulder. Slowly it moved and turned over on its side. Underneath lay a short sword and a pair of sandals.

"Whose are these, mother?" cried Theseus.

"They are yours, my son," she said. "Your father put them there for you. He is king of the Greek city of Athens. Now you are old enough and strong enough to move the mighty stone, you must leave me and go to Athens to find him."

Theseus was sad to leave his mother, but he was eager to see the world. He put the sandals on his feet and the sword in his belt and set out. He would not go to Athens by ship, which was the safer way, but he chose to walk by the long, rocky mountain road through Greece. In those days Greece was a wild country full of fierce beasts and cruel robbers. But Theseus was a brave youth, and he wanted to fight the robbers and kill the beasts as one of the old heroes used to do. He had many adventures on his way, but he was both bold and wise and managed to escape every time.

This was the last of his strange adventures. Theseus came to the house of a giant who had killed many travellers. This giant used to ask the weary men to sleep in his house, but he had only one bed. If the traveller happened to be a short man, the giant stretched the poor man's limbs till he fitted the bed. If the traveller was tall, the giant cut off his legs to make him the right length.

The giant invited Theseus to spend the night with him. Theseus pretended to be very tired and stumbled to the bedroom. "Friend," chuckled the giant, "you see how it is! This bed of mine is too short for you, yet I can soon make that right." But just as he was going to lay Theseus on the bed he found himself caught in the young man's iron grasp. Theseus bound the giant to the bed, and hacked and hewed at him with his

own axe, till he died the miserable death he had brought on so many others.

At last Theseus came to the city of Athens, and he was invited to a feast at the king's house. At the feast Theseus pulled out his sword to carve himself a piece of meat. The old king knew his sword at once, and he embraced his son with great joy.

The people of Athens were proud of their brave young prince. Yet Theseus thought that they looked sad, and he asked his father why this should be.

monster called the Minotaur. He is as strong as a bull and as clever as a man; the men and maids of Athens are given to him to be devoured."

"I will go myself," said Theseus, "and kill this fierce beast."

When the day came for the men and maidens to leave Athens, all the people went down to the shore to see them go. The ship that took them had black sails as a sign of grief. Sorrow was on every face; Theseus alone was calm and smiling.



ARIADNE, DESERTED BY THESEUS, SLEEPING

*Graeco Roman marble statue in the Vatican.*

"Alas, my son," said the old man, "many years ago I quarrelled with the sea king who lives on the island of Crete. He has more ships and more soldiers than I have, and every year I must send him seven men and seven maidens from Athens, or he would come and conquer my kingdom."

"What does he do with them?" asked Theseus.

"That is the saddest part of all," said the king. "In the island of Crete lives a dreadful

"Fear not, my father," he said to the weeping king. "I know that we shall come safely back."

"Promise me," said the king, "that if you return alive, you will change that black sail for a white one, so that from far off I may see you coming on the sea, and know that you are safe."

Theseus promised, and the ship set sail. When they came to the island of Crete there were soldiers waiting to take them before the king.

Theseus walked first, looking so brave that the sea king asked him who he was.

"I am the prince of Athens," said Theseus boldly, "and I ask to be allowed to go first to meet the Minotaur."

Even the cruel sea king felt sorry for the youth. "Do you know what you ask?" he said. "The sharpest sword cannot hurt the fierce beast. He will tear you to pieces as he has done hundreds of others."

But Theseus was unafraid. "Let me go to him!" he cried.

The Minotaur lived in a labyrinth, which was a cave with many passages, twisting and turning this way and that. It was so great a puzzle that once a man was inside, he could not hope to find his way out again. There was one person who could help Theseus, and this was the sea king's beautiful daughter, Ariadne. She was very sorry for this brave young man, and she came to him in secret. "Prince," she whispered, "take this magic sword which alone can kill the Minotaur. Take also this ball of thread. Tie one end of the thread at the door of the labyrinth and let the ball unwind as you go along the passage. It will show you the way out again."

Her kind words cheered Theseus. He grasped the magic sword and strode into the labyrinth, unwinding the thread as he went. The other men and maidens waited trembling at the door. Soon they heard a

frightful roaring and bellowing. They knew that Theseus had met the monster, and they shivered in terror. Then all was silent and they feared that Theseus was killed. But soon their fears were allayed. Theseus came forth victorious. How glad they were

to see him come striding out of the cave, the thread still clasped in one hand and his blood-stained sword in the other!

Quickly the men and maidens returned to the shore and boarded their ship. Theseus invited Ariadne to go with him, and she gladly did so. How happy they were as they sailed back to Athens! On the way they stopped at a small island, and here Ariadne fell asleep, and Theseus and his friends sailed away without her. Then a terrible thing happened. Theseus *forgot to change the sail!* Every day the old king of Athens used to climb a high rock to watch for the coming of his son's ship. One day, as he strained his eyes, he could see it coming afar off, but alas! the sails were black as death. With a cry of grief the king fell from the rock and was drowned.

It was sad news that greeted Theseus when he landed in Athens. His father was dead. To him it was nothing that he

himself was king. He never forgave himself for the sad forgetfulness that had made him king of Athens.

Theseus was a good king and loved his people. He owned many miles of land outside the city of Athens. He found that the



IVORY AND GOLD STATUETTE OF  
CRETAN SNAKE GODDESS

This pretty little figure stands with each hand grasping a golden serpent. The figure is carved in ivory, while the flounces are edged with gold and the belt is of the same metal. This beautiful model was made some 3,500 years ago.

people of this land were often quarrelling and fighting among themselves. The wise Theseus made a big court of law at Athens where all the people brought their complaints and their quarrels, and a judge decided what should be done. Theseus also invited all the people of his land to join once a year in a great holiday at Athens. On the holiday there were feasts, and processions, and singing and games. In this way the people began to know one another and became friendly.

The people of Athens loved their king very much for they knew he loved them. Even after he was dead they believed that he was still looking after them.

Not many years ago, some clever men found the remains of the sea king's palace on the island of Crete. It was buried in the earth so that it could not be seen until men dug round it. It had many rooms and halls and it was five storeys high. The walls inside the palace were bright with lovely paintings and there was a beautiful white stone throne for the king.

How Theseus must have gazed in wonder at this grand palace, for there was no house like it in Athens. The clothes, too, of the people of Crete were rich with jewels and more brightly coloured than the clothes of Theseus and his friends. The women were dressed like the little statue of the snake goddess. (Draw a sketch on the blackboard.) They wore tight corsets and long flounced skirts. Theseus must have thought them very strange, for his mother used to wear a loose, white robe.

There were shops near the palace, where goldsmiths sat tip, tap, tapping at the shining yellow gold to make beautiful cups, vases and tiny shapes of men and women. There were potters moulding red clay into pots and pans. All these things must have seemed very new and wonderful to Theseus, for the Greeks did not then know how to make such things, and they had no shops. We shall see later how the Greeks became more clever until they were able to build and work like the people of Crete.

## TEACHING HINTS

**1. Map.**—Draw on the blackboard a map showing the southern part of Greece and Crete. Trace Theseus' journey from Troezen to Athens, and the voyage to and from Crete. Point out the land of Attica of which Athens was the chief city.

**2. How a myth is made.**—To illustrate the development of a myth—a story based on fact but embellished by the imagination of the teller of each generation—the following story may be told.

One day a man had a letter from his father which said "I went into the garden one afternoon last week and got my feet wet. I caught a chill and was in bed for a few days."

Many years after this man said to his own little boy, "Be careful that you keep dry. I remember that my father went into his garden and fell into a pond. He caught such a bad cold that he was in bed for a month."

Years later, when this boy had grown up, he said to his own son, "Do not go very near to a pond. I remember that in my grandfather's garden there was a pond with many goldfish. Once as he stood watching the fishes darting to and fro there was a loud noise behind him. He was so startled that his foot slipped and he fell head foremost into the water. He only just managed to scramble out and he caught such a bad cold that he was ill for six months."

More years went by, and this boy became a man. One day he said to his little boy, "My great grandfather had a beautiful garden. In it was a lake with many swans and fishes. One day as my great-grandfather was fishing in it from a boat he heard a strange cracking noise. Looking up, he saw that a bough of an elm tree was just about to fall on his head. He threw down his rod and dived into the pond just in time. But the bough crashed down behind him and injured his leg. Some men who were passing

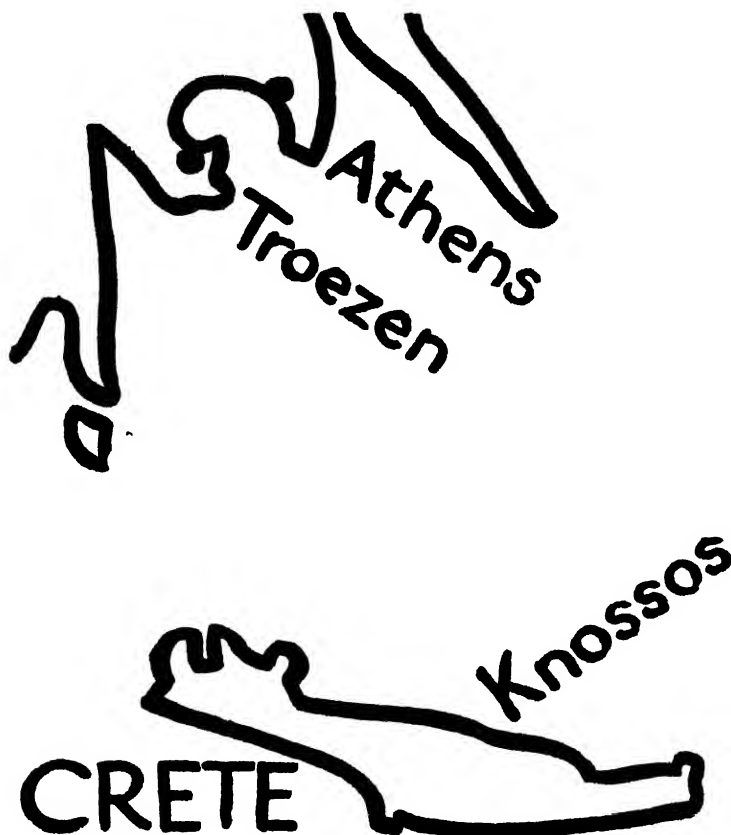
heard his shouts and pulled him out of the water, but he was so hurt and chilled that he was in a hospital for a year after."

How much of this last story is true?

**3. Time sense.**—In order to impress the conception of an earlier age upon the

**4. Comparison.**—Point out that the purpose of the stone was a measurement of ability to travel Present to the children such measurements as these:

(a) When you are clever enough to tell the time you can have a watch.



SKETCH MAP FOR THE BLACKBOARD

children's minds it is useful to ask such questions as:

(a) Why did Theseus' father not leave him a pair of shoes and a gun?

(b) Did Theseus send his mother a postcard when he got to Athens?

(c) Why did the King of Athens not send money to the sea king?

(b) When a boy is tall enough to reach the knocker on the door he may have long trousers.

**5. Special points to notice.**—(a) The use of black for mourning is a very old custom.

(b) The Cretan women's dress resembles that of English women of the nineteenth century (c) Theseus was to Greece what St. George is to us.

**6. Ariadne.**—In Greek mythology she was the daughter of Minos, king of Crete, and Pasiphaë, the daughter of Helios the Sun-god. According to Homer she was slain by Artemis in the island of Dia, near Knossos, before she could reach Athens with Theseus. In the later legend, while asleep on the island of Naxos she was abandoned by Theseus and discovered by Dionysus on his return from India. Enchanted by her beauty, he married her when she awoke. She received as a bridal gift, a crown which was placed amongst the stars, while she herself was honoured as a goddess. Originally a goddess of vegetation, Ariadne is the personification of spring. The festivals in her honour present a double character, the one full of mourning and sadness which represents her abandonment by Theseus, and the other of joy which celebrates her awakening from sleep and her marriage with Dionysus. Thus nature sleeps and dies during winter and awakes in springtime to renewed life.

**7. Memory work.**—(a) Theseus lifted a great stone and found a short sword and a pair of sandals which had been put there by his father. (b) On his way to Athens he

killed a giant who was going to cut off his legs to make him fit into a short bed. (c) With the help of the princess of Crete he killed the Minotaur. (d) His father died of grief when he saw the black sail which Theseus had forgotten to change. (e) When Theseus was king he tried to make his people give up quarrelling. (f) Clever men have found the sea king's buried palace in the island of Crete.

**8. Exercises.**—(a) What is a myth? (b) How did Theseus' father make sure that his son should not travel before he was old enough and strong enough? (c) Why did Theseus' father give him a short sword? (d) How could Theseus have heard of the giant before he came to the giant's house? (e) Why did the king of Crete keep the Minotaur in a labyrinth? (f) What were the good things that Theseus did for his country after he became king? (g) Mention the incidents in the story which tell us that: (1) The Greeks wore sandals on their feet. (2) Table knives were not used at meals. (3) The king of Crete was stronger than the king of Athens. (4) The Greek ships had sails. (5) The people of Crete were rich. (6) The people of Crete were clever workmen.



INLAID DAGGER BLADE DEPICTING A LION HUNT FOUND AT MYCENAE.  
THIS WORK WAS CONTEMPORARY WITH CRETAN ART

SKETCHES FOR THE BLACKBOARD



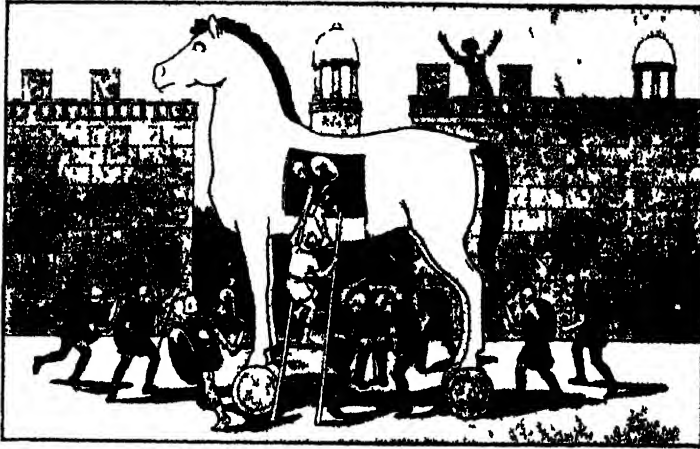
EARLY CRETAN COIN WITH A PICTURE OF THE MINOTAUR  
CRETAN COIN SHOWING THE LABYRINTH  
WILD BULL PICTURED ON A CRETAN GOLD CUP



## V. ULYSSES

(THE CUNNING WARRIOR)

### PICTURE REFERENCE



WOODEN HORSE OF TROY

**T**HE Class Picture (No 16 in the portfolio) is adapted from an engraving on a gem, illustrated above. The Greek heroes descend from a horse by means of a ladder and a rope, on the wall of the acropolis a figure (Cassandra) gives the alarm

### INTRODUCTION

The Greek myths indicate a great difference between the earlier and later centuries of the Heroic Age. They suggest a considerable progress in culture during that period. The two oldest Greek literary works, the *Iliad* and the *Odyssey*, give us a poetical, yet faithful description of the later centuries.

The Greeks at that time do not seem to have been a very numerous people. They lived in small states with central cities.

Their principal occupations were agriculture and cattle raising, other sources of wealth were the chase, fishing and war. Slaves, purchased from sea pirates, or captured in victorious wars, were used for the lower work. Many metals were known, though coinage was little used. The houses of princes were built of stone, they had large and lofty rooms, a garden and halls. The women did much weaving, though the best woven stuffs were obtained from the Phoenicians.

Music and poetry played a large part in the lives of these early Greeks. They accompanied all their feasts and military expeditions. The lyre, flute and pipe were the musical instruments; their songs were of the deeds of living or past heroes. The religious ceremonies consisted chiefly of sacrifices and prayers, but there were few temples.

B.C.  
-2000 Thus the Greeks of this later Heroic Age were a vigorous people, with warlike tastes and simple customs. They lived a care-free existence under a friendly sky.

-1900 It is necessary here to refer to Homer, the reputed author of the *Iliad* and *Odyssey*. Tradition describes him as a blind poet, for blindness is the characteristic of the man unfitted to be a warrior. Some scholars regard Homer, not as an individual, but as a type of wandering bard; others consider him a purely mythical figure. It is interesting to note that the name Homer itself means *piecer-together*. But, although the authorship of the Homeric poems is doubtful, their literary and historical merit remains unassailable. They are the oldest monuments of Greek literature, and have given inspiration to poets

-500 of all ages. In addition, they furnish abundant material for the study of early Greek life. Besides the *Iliad* and *Odyssey*, several other poems are attributed to Homer. Homeric epics were sung all over the Greek-speaking world by the professional bards as national songs. They may be said to be equivalent to our Bible.

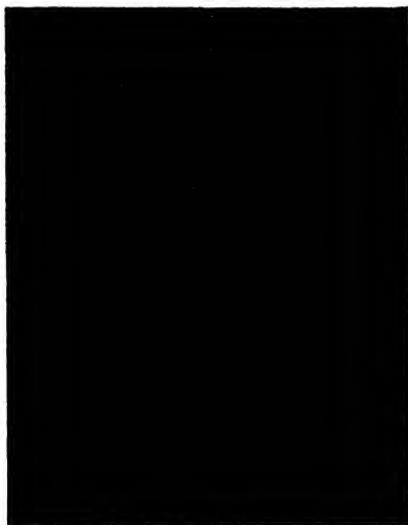
-100 The nucleus of the *Iliad* and *Odyssey* is the story of Troy and the legends that grew up around it. The sack of Troy is one incident in the long

conflict between the encroaching Indo-Europeans, and the Mediterranean races already established in Greece and parts of Asia Minor. It has been proved from excavations that Homeric Troy was the sixth city to stand on that site. Since that time three more cities have followed those.

The kings of Troy were wealthy commercial rulers, for Troy was a centre of trade between Europe and Asia. It was the earliest fortress in the Aegean district, for such a strategic position needed to be defended.

It was natural that the Greeks should look eagerly towards such a splendid prize, and unite their scattered forces for a common aim. The date of the sack of Troy is c 1194 B.C.

The following extracts give descriptions of the palace of Alcinoos (Alcin-o-us), the great king of the Phoenicians and the palace of Ulysses. The teacher can make much use of such extracts as these which give striking pictures of Greek life



HOMER

The Greek represented Homer as an old man, blind, with deeply wrinkled brows. He wears a narrow band confining the hair.

**The Palace of Alcinoos.**—[Odysseus (Ulysses) came in his wanderings to the palace of the great Alcinoos,

king of the Phoenicians, and Homer gives us a very wonderful account of the palace of this king.]

"Meanwhile Odysseus went to the famous palace of Alcinoos, and his heart was full of many thoughts as he stood there or ever he had reached the threshold of bronze. For there was a gleam as it were of sun or moon through the high-roofed hall of great-hearted Alcinoos. Brazen were the walls which ran this way and that from the threshold to the inmost chamber, and round them was a frieze of blue, and golden were

the doors that closed in the good house. Silver were the door posts that were set on the brazen threshold, and silver the lintel thereupon, and the hook of the door was of gold. And on either side stood golden hounds and silver, which Hephaistos wrought by his cunning, to guard the palace of great-hearted Alcinous, being free from death and age all their days. And within were seats arrayed against the wall this way and that, from the threshold even to the inmost chamber, and thereon were spread light coverings finely woven, the handiwork of women. There the Phoenician chieftains were wont to sit eating and drinking, for they had continual store. Yea, and there were youths fashioned in gold, standing on firm bases, with flaming torches in their hands, giving light through the night to the feasters in the palace.

"And he had fifty handmaids in the house, and some grind the yellow corn on the millstone, and others weave webs and turn the yarn as they sit, restless as the leaves of the tall poplar tree: and the soft olive oil drops off that linen, so closely is it woven. For as the Phoenician men are skilled beyond all others in driving a swift ship upon the deep, even so are the women the most cunning at the loom, for Athene hath given them notable wisdom in all fair handiwork and cunning wit. And without the courtyard hard by the door is a great garden, of four plough gates, and a hedge runs round on either side. And there grow tall trees blossoming, pear trees and pomegranates, and apple trees with bright fruit, and sweet figs, and olives in their bloom. The fruit of these trees never perisheth neither faileth, winter nor summer, enduring through all the year. Evermore the West Wind blowing brings some fruits to birth and ripens others. Pear upon pear waxes old, and apple on apple, yea, and cluster ripens upon cluster of the grape, and fig upon fig. There, too, hath he a fruitful vineyard planted, a sunny plot on level ground, while other grapes men are gathering, and yet others they are treading in the

wine press. In the foremost row are unripe grapes that cast the blossom, and others there be that are growing black to vintaging. There, too, skirting the farthest line, are all manner of garden beds, planted trimly, that are perpetually fresh, and therein are two fountains of water, whereof one scatters his streams all about the garden, and the other runs over against it beneath the threshold of the courtyard, and issues by the lofty house, and thence did the townsfolk draw water. These were the splendid gifts of the gods in the palace of Alcinous."

**The Palace of Odysseus.**—[While Odysseus was being driven by the angry gods hither and thither over the seas, his house was invaded by a number of princes who wished Penelope, the wife of Odysseus, to take another husband. So powerful were these wooers that Penelope and her son Telemachus could do nothing to get rid of them. At last the great goddess Pallas Athene, disguised as a Greek captain, came to encourage Telemachus to go to find his father. In the following passage Homer describes the coming of Pallas Athene to the home of Odysseus.]

"She spake and bound beneath her feet her lovely golden sandals, that wax not old, and bare her alike over the wet sea and over the limitless land, swift as the breath of the wind. And she seized her doughty spear, shod with sharp bronze, weighty and huge and strong, wherewith she quells the ranks of heroes with whomsoever she is wroth, the daughter of the mighty sire. Then from the heights of Olympus she came glancing down, and she stood in the land of Ithaca, at the entry of the gate of Odysseus, on the threshold of the courtyard, holding in her hand the spear of bronze, in the semblance of a stranger, Mentis the Captain of the Taphians. And there she found the lordly wooers: now they were taking their pleasure at draughts in front of the doors, sitting on hides of oxen which themselves had slain. And of the henchmen and the ready squires, some were mixing for them wine and water

in bowls, and some again were washing the tables with porous sponges and were setting them forth, and others were carving flesh in plenty.

"And godlike Telemachus was far the first to descry her, for he was sitting with a heavy heart among the wooers dreaming on his good father, if haply he might come somehow, and make a scattering of the wooers there throughout the palace, and himself get honour and bear rule among his own possessions. Thinking thereupon, as he sat among the wooers, he saw Athene—and he went straight to the outer porch, for he thought it blame in his heart that a stranger should stand long at the gates: and halting nigh her he clasped her right hand and took from her the spear of bronze, and uttered his voice and spake unto her winged words:

"Hail, stranger, with us thou shalt be kindly entreated, and thereafter, when thou hast tasted meat, thou shalt tell us that whereof thou hast need."

"Therewith he led the way, and Pallas Athene followed. And when they were now within the lofty house, he set her spear that he bore against a tall pillar, within the polished spear-stand, where stood many spears besides, even those of Odysseus of the hardy heart; and he led the goddess and seated her on a goodly carven chair, and spread a linen cloth thereunder, and beneath was a footstool for th' feet. For himself he placed an inlaid seat hard by, apart from the company of the wooers, lest the stranger should be disquieted by the noise and should have a loathing for the meal, being come among overweening men, and also that he might ask her about his father that was gone from his home.

"Then a handmaid bare water for the washing of hands in a goodly golden ewer, and poured it forth over a silver basin to wash withal, and drew to their side a polished table. And a grave dame bare wheaten bread and set it by them, and laid on the board many dainties, giving freely of such things as she had by her. And a carver lifted and placed by them platters of divers

kinds of flesh, and nigh them he set golden bowls, and a henchman walked to and fro pouring out to them the wine.

"Then in came the lordly wooers; and they sat them down in rows on chairs and on high seats, and henchmen poured water on their hands, and maidservants piled wheaten bread by them in baskets, and pages crowned the bowls with drink; and they stretched forth their hands upon the good cheer spread before them. Now when the wooers had put from them the desire of meat and drink, they minded them of other things, even of the song and dance: for these are the crown of the feast. And a henchman placed a beauteous lyre in the hands of Phemius, who was minstrel to the wooers despite his will. Yea, and as he touched the lyre he lifted up his voice in sweet song."

[Some of the stories concerning the wanderings of Ulysses are told in Vol. VI. See also *Circe and the Companions of Ulysses*, Vol. I., and Class Pictures Nos. 142, 150 and 156.]

### CHILDREN'S STORY

The oldest Greek books are called the books of Homer. They are written in beautiful poetry and they tell the stories of Greek heroes. The books of Homer are so old that we do not know for certain who Homer was. He may have been the man who wrote the poems, or the minstrel who used to sing them as he played on his lyre. From Homer's books we can learn a great deal about the old Greeks, as well as this story of the hero called Ulysses.

After the death of Theseus, as years went by, the rough Greeks learned many things. They killed off most of the fierce wild beasts which prowled about their country, and they built cities to live in. Their houses were of stone, with large rooms and gardens. They built bigger and stronger ships and sailed to other countries to exchange goods with their traders.

There was one rich city that the Greeks wanted very much. It was called Troy. The people of Troy had much gold, silver, jewels

and fine clothes. There were high walls round the city, and the people were always ready to run to the walls and shoot arrows or throw stones to drive away an enemy. The Greeks did not know how they could capture Troy, for they could not break down the walls.

One day a prince of Troy, named Paris, came to visit one of the Greek kings. He fell in love with the king's wife, Helen, who was the most beautiful woman in all the land.

The Greeks called her "Helen of the Fair Hands." Paris used to watch her walking in the garden in her graceful blue dress, with a gold circlet round her long fair hair, and he longed to take her back to Troy with him.

At last he persuaded her to run away from her husband, and one morning when the king awoke he found that Helen and Paris had gone. He was full of sorrow and anger at the loss of his fair queen. When the Greeks heard of it, they felt that this was a good excuse to fight the people of Troy. They vowed to sail to Troy and burn it, and bring back Helen to Greece.

All the Greek warriors in their strong bronze armour said good-bye to their wives and children, and boarded the tall ships where the rowers were waiting to bend to their oars. The sails were hoisted, and the Greek army sailed away to Troy.

Among the warriors was one called Ulysses, the king of the little island of

Ithaca. Ulysses was the wisest and most cunning of the warriors. It was he who showed the Greeks how to take Troy.

They landed and came to the city walls, but they could not get inside, nor could the Trojans drive them away. For ten long years the Greeks tried to take the city. Sometimes the Trojans would stay in their city, and the two armies would shoot arrows at each other. Sometimes they would come out of the city, and the armies would fight

outside. Sometimes two famous warriors would meet and fight alone, and the two armies would stop the battle to watch them.

Still Troy was not taken. Then cunning Ulysses thought of a plan. He told the Greeks to build a huge horse of wood, large enough to carry a number of men inside it. When the horse was built, the best leaders of the Greeks, with many soldiers, climbed inside.

The hidden door of the horse was closed with bolts.

The rest of the Greeks then boarded their ships and sailed away. But they did not go far. As soon as the ships were out of sight of Troy they cast anchor and waited. Only one Greek soldier, named Sinon, was left behind on the shore, and he hid himself in a wood.

How glad the Trojans were as they saw the Greek ships sail away! They thought the war was over. They trooped out of the city, laughing and shouting for joy—and



ATHENA MAKING THE MODEL OF THE WOODEN HORSE  
*Greek Vase Painting (from Capua).*

there stood the wooden horse. What could it be? While they were gazing in wonder at the great wooden creature a shout was heard. Some shepherds had found Sinon and were dragging him to the city.

"Here is a man who will tell us the secret of the wooden horse!" they cried.

Sinon was pushed into the crowd of people round the horse. He pretended to be very frightened. "The wooden horse, O

to go through the gates, the Trojans knocked down part of the city wall. Pushing and pulling, they dragged the horse into the city of Troy.

During the night, when the Trojans were asleep, the hidden door of the horse was opened. Out crept the Greek soldiers. They killed the sentries who guarded the city gates, opened the gates, and lit a fire on the shore. The Greeks in the ships saw the fire



ULYSSES AND HIS DOG

people of Troy," he said, "is a gift to one of the gods. It is made very big so that you cannot take it through the gates of your city. For a wise man has said that if you burn the horse *outside* your city, the gods will help the Greeks to win the war. But if the horse should be taken *inside* your city, the gods will help you."

"We will have the horse in our city!" cried the people of Troy. As it was too big

and sailed quietly back. Quickly they landed and rushed into Troy.

The Trojans were taken by surprise. The victorious Greeks killed hundreds of them and took the rest prisoners. Then the Greek soldiers went into the houses and took away all the beautiful things they could find, and put them in their ships. When there was nothing left, they set fire to the houses, and soon Troy was in a blaze. With the

treasures of Troy and the prisoners, the Greeks boarded their ships once more, and sailed back to Greece, taking with them Helen of the Fair Hands, the cause of all the trouble.

Ulysses, too, started on his way home, longing to see once more his dear wife Penelope. But the winds drove his ship away from the others, and it was many years before he landed on his own island of Ithaca. At last, after twenty years away from home, Ulysses came to his palace, and asked for a lodging there. He was dressed as an old beggar. Only his dog knew that he was really Ulysses. It was a tiny puppy when his master sailed away, but now it was so old that it could give but one yelp for joy, and then it fell dead at its master's feet.

Ulysses found that his palace was crowded with men who wanted to marry his wife Penelope. But Penelope was sure that her husband was still alive and she would not marry again. These men, or suitors, as they are called, were waiting till she should choose one of them. They ate her food and slept in her house, and she did not know how to send them away.

Penelope first told the suitors that she could not marry anyone till she had finished a piece of weaving, for in those days even

queens made their own clothes. All day long she worked hard, and the suitors thought, "She will soon finish the cloth." They did not know that she sat up at night unpicking all she had woven during the day, so that the weaving was never done.

Then her trick was discovered. The suitors were very angry, and said that Penelope must choose a husband at once. Penelope was sad and did not know what to do.

At last she said that she would marry the man who could bend her husband's great bow. That night Ulysses took away all the swords and spears that hung in the palace hall, and hid them. When the next day came each suitor tried in turn to bend the mighty bow, but none could do it. Then Ulysses took up the bow. They laughed to see an old beggar take his turn. But he stepped boldly forward, fitted the string in the notch and bent the bow easily. Then he turned fiercely on the suitors. Quickly he took the arrows and shot them one after another at the men. They could not find swords or spears to hurt him, and many were killed, while the rest ran away. Penelope now saw that the beggar was her own husband. She ran to his arms and wept for joy.

### TEACHING HINTS

**1. Map.**—Draw on the blackboard the map showing the positions of Troy and Athens. Point out the strategic position of Troy on the main trade route between Asia Minor and Europe. (See page 52.)

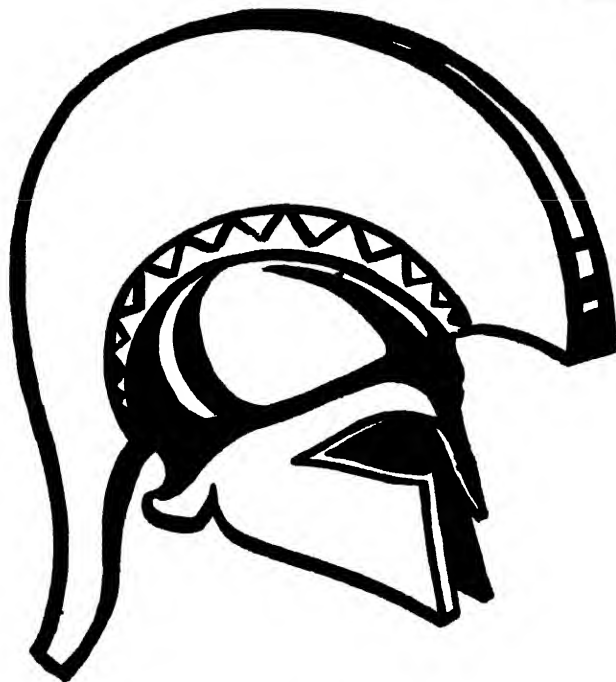
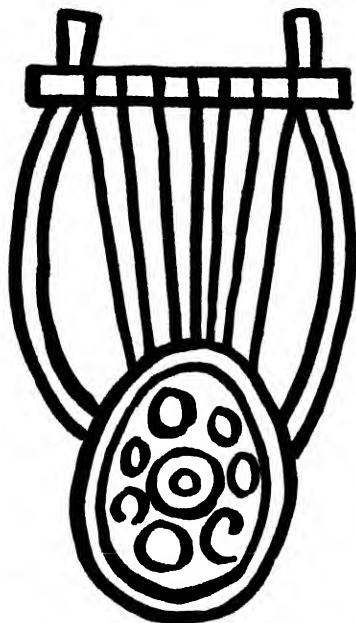
**2. Walls.**—Some children, e.g. those living in York, will be familiar with the fact that cities were once surrounded by walls, but to most children this fact must be explained. Point out the difficulty of taking walled cities before the invention of gunpowder and cannon—"For ten long years the Greeks tried to take the city."

**3. A gift to the gods.**—The children will remember that Abraham was going to offer Isaac as a gift to God; that the Babylonians offered their children to gods. Most people of earlier times offered real things to please their gods, so that the Trojans readily believed the artful story of Sinon.

**4. Wine and oil.**—See Lesson XII. in the "First Year's Course," and Class Picture No. 11 in the portfolio.

**5. Memory work.**—(a) The Greeks wanted very much to win the strong city of Troy.

# SKETCHES FOR THE BLACKBOARD



ANCIENT GREEK LYRE WITH SOUNDING BOARD  
OF TORTOISESHELL

GREEK HELMET c. 500 B.C.

MYCENAEAN HELMET ARMoured WITH BOAR'S  
TUSK

GREEK SHIELD c. 500 B.C.



(b) Paris, a prince of Troy, ran away with a Greek queen known as Helen of the Fair Hands (c) Ulysses, king of Ithaca, told the Greeks to hide some soldiers in a great Wooden Horse. (d) The Trojans dragged the Wooden Horse into the city of Troy, and at night the Greek soldiers came out and took the city. (e) Ulysses wandered about for twenty years before he went home to his wife Penelope, who thought at first that he was a beggar.

**6. Exercises.**—(a) What are the books of Homer? (b) What was a Greek minstrel? (c) Name two reasons why the Greeks wanted to take Troy (d) Why did the Greeks find it so hard to take the city of Troy? (e) What was Ulysses' clever plan for taking Troy? (f) What happened to the city of Troy? (g) How did Penelope trick the suitors who wished to marry her? (h) What was Ulysses' clever plan for driving away the suitors? (i) Mention the incidents in the story which tell us that (1) Cities had walls round them.

(2) Soldiers wore armour. (3) The Greek ships had sails and oars. (4) The soldiers used bows and arrows. (5) The soldiers used spears and swords. (6) The women made their own clothes. (7) Ulysses was a very strong man

**7. Children's summary.**—The following device may be found useful to impress the story on the children's minds and to help them to express their ideas in sentences:

Ulysses was famous for his cunning  
Leaving his wife Penelope he sailed to  
Troy.

Years passed before he thought of a plan  
to take the city.

Standing the Wooden Horse by the city  
gates the Greek army sailed away.

Sinon told the Trojans it was a gift from  
the gods.

Eagerly the Trojans dragged the horse  
into their city

Several years later Ulysses came home as  
a beggar.

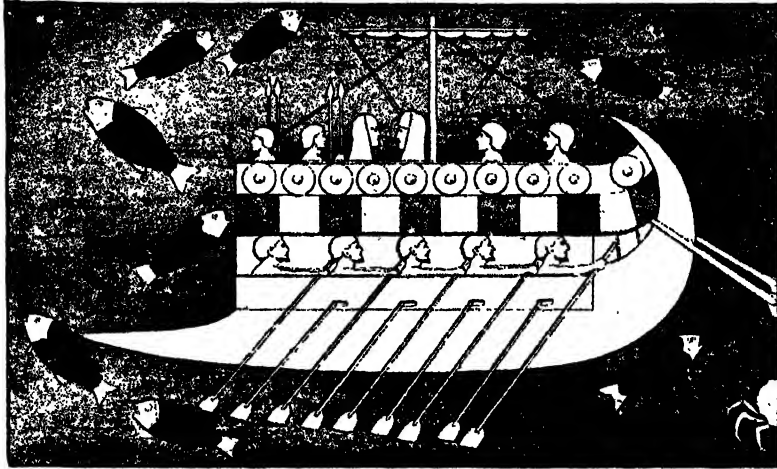


SKETCH MAP FOR THE BLACKBOARD

## VI. SOLOMON

(THE WISE KING)

### PICTURE REFERENCE



PHOENICIAN SHIP

**T**HE Class Picture (p. 17 in the portfolio) is based on the above illustration taken from a palace relief of the Assyrian king Sennacherib who used such a ship. It was rowed by four lines of slaves, two lines on each side of the ship. Sometimes a large square sail was hoisted. The vessel was steered by two long oars. At the prow is a ram; on the raised platform are the fighting men.

### INTRODUCTION

This story of Solomon includes some account of the Phoenicians, the great trading nation of antiquity. The note on the Hittites will help the reader to understand the civilisation of the Canaanites at the time of the Exodus.

**The Hittites.**—Inland from Troy and the Aegean world, settlements of an important group of white peoples have from time immemorial occupied the hills and mountains of Asia Minor. These peoples known as the Hittites formed a link between the Aegean world and the Land of the Two Rivers. Their main occupation was pastoral, but the shepherd life was constantly varied by raids on the coastal plains of the Aegean and the plains of Mesopotamia. The mountains in the north of Asia Minor contain rich deposits of iron, and the Hittites, armed with iron weapons, for a time held dominion over the neighbouring countries. The Hittites now used the horse, and their kings had large bodies of charioteers. It was the constant menace of the Hittites that forced the Assyrians to become a great military power.

About 1925 B.C. the Hittites over-ran and sacked Babylon. The height of their power was reached in the fourteenth century B.C. when the whole region from the Armenian mountains to the desert of Sinai was under their dominion. Their kings erected imposing palaces and temples and built a great wall about their chief city called Khatti. (This ancient capital and wall has recently been excavated.)

When the power of Egypt revived under Rameses II (about 1300-1234 B.C.) the Hittite hosts were defeated and their power rapidly declined. From their contact with Babylon and Egypt the Hittites learned writing, so that they had both a cuneiform and a hieroglyphic system. Fragments of a clay tablet dictionary used by the Hittites have been found and many engravings of hieroglyphs can be seen cut on the face of rocky cliffs or masonry walls in Asia Minor. (The Hittite records in hieroglyphs have not yet been deciphered.)

The Hittites had a particular type of face with a sloping forehead and a prominent aquiline nose. This marked feature of the Hittites was through inter-marriage acquired by the Semites along the eastern end of the Mediterranean, including the Canaanites and the Hebrews.

Perhaps the most important thing to remember about the Hittites is the fact that they began working the iron mines along the Black Sea.

**The Hebrews in Canaan.** When the Hebrew nomads returned from Egypt to Canaan they found it already in possession of people living in strong walled cities with a civilisation 1500 years old. The Canaanites had comfortable houses, government industries, writing and religion. The Hebrew shepherds under their local leaders or "judges" were for centuries unable to capture these Canaanite strongholds, and were obliged to content themselves with taking only the weaker towns.

Where conquest was impossible, however, peaceful penetration succeeded. The Hebrew

invaders gradually adopted the Canaanite civilisation, and by intermarriage acquired the Hittite type of face with the aquiline nose that is still characteristic of the Hebrew race.

This absorption into the Canaanite life was more rapid in the fertile north than in the less fertile south. This made a permanent difference between the city-bred Hebrews of the north and the tent dwelling Hebrews of the south and this difference had important political results.

About 1100 B.C., a new race began to attack the Hebrews. These were the Philistines, who had migrated from Crete. Their aggression threatened the whole Hebrew race, but about 1000 B.C. the Hebrews found a strong leader in Saul, a southerner, who became the first king of Israel. He was eventually defeated, but the struggle was carried on by one of his men at arms, David. He took the Canaanite stronghold of Jerusalem in the South of Canaan, and from this fighting base defeated the Philistines completely, and had himself proclaimed king, with Jerusalem as his capital.

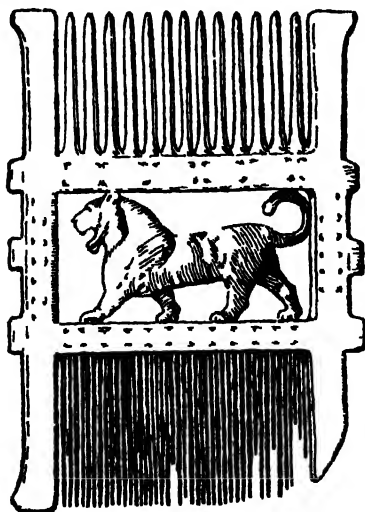
His victory won him the support of the north, and under his rule the two antagonistic regions of north and south were at one. He ruled well, and contracted alliances with his neighbours, notably with Hiram of Tyre, king of the Phoenicians.

**The Phoenicians.** The Phoenicians were a Canaanite branch of the Semitic stock who were well established on the sea coast of Palestine north of Mount Carmel.

Hemmed in as they were by mountains, expansion by sea was more natural than by land, and the Phoenicians became, contrary to Semitic traditions, a seafaring race, their two chief towns were the harbours of Tyre and Sidon. Their name, which means probably "the red men," was given by the Greeks to these sun-tanned sailors who landed on their shores to trade. Their skill in shipbuilding and knowledge of seacraft gave them unequalled opportunities for commerce.

The history of Phoenicia, save for one short period, is that of a subject race. She was in the power of Egypt from 1600-1100 B C. Then, with the collapse of the Egyptian Empire, came a period of independence, when Tyre became the chief city and seat of government, and Hiram, king of Tyre, made his celebrated trading alliance with King Solomon, and the two kings sent a merchant navy to Ophir in Arabia. Then, from 876 till 605 B C., Phoenicia was annexed by all-conquering Assyria. She won freedom in the great rebellion against the tyrant in the seventh century, only to fall successively into the hands of Babylon, Persia, Macedonia, and finally Rome, under whose rule the national characteristics became extinct.

Phoenician trade extended as far west as Spain and the Scilly Isles and as far east, perhaps, as India.



ANCIENT PHOENICIAN COMB OF CARVED IVORY

The articles of trade peculiar to Phoenicia were a purple dye prepared from a shellfish, and large quantities of amber. They also traded in metals, spices, manufactured goods, and "black ivory"—for, like all ancient merchantmen, they were slavers.

They were not great colonists, and, although there were numerous Phoenician trading stations in the Mediterranean, the only town which became a colony was Carthage, on the north coast of Africa, which was founded about 800 B C. and grew to such importance as to be able under Hamilcar and Hannibal, to challenge the power of Rome herself.

Modern civilisation owes much to the Phoenicians. They opened up trade routes in Europe and Asia, and carried Mediterranean civilisation into remote and unexplored regions. They improved the art of shipbuilding, they developed the mechanism of exchange and the system of weights and measures. Above all, they took the symbolic writing of the Egyptians and simplified it into our modern alphabet. (See Lessons X and XI in the 'First Year's Course for Writing and Writing Materials'.)

**Solomon.** On David's death his younger son Solomon, seized the throne from its rightful heir Adonijah. During the forty years of his reign (970-930 B C.) Israel as a united kingdom reached the height of her power, and the Hebrews never forgot "Solomon and all his glory."

Solomon became one of the trading merchants of the east. He made a trading alliance with Hiram of Tyre, and with his help built a magnificent temple at Jerusalem in place of the portable tent which the Hebrews had thus far used. Hiram supplied materials and workmen. Solomon built a fleet which under Hiram's guidance made extensive trading voyages. His wealth enabled him to live in oriental luxury, to keep up which he was obliged to tax his people heavily.

B C	
2000	
1900	
1800	
1700	
1600	
1500	
1400	
1300	
1200	
1100	
1000	
900	
800	
700	
600	
500	
400	
300	
200	
100	
0	

This taxation grew so burdensome that shortly after Solomon's death the ten northern tribes revolted, and once more split away from the two southern tribes. The history of the northern kingdom of Israel, with its many fine towns, and the southern kingdom of Judah, with its one great city of Jerusalem, was thenceforth entirely separate. First the north, and then the south, were conquered by the kings of Assyria and Chaldea, and their people carried into captivity. The northern tribes were assimilated by their conquerors, but the southern tribes, henceforth to be known as the Jews, took the opportunity offered to them by the Persian king Cyrus (who conquered Assyria) to return to Jerusalem, which became the cradle of Christianity.

### CHILDREN'S STORY

When the Israelites came back from Egypt to the promised land of Canaan, they did not find it empty. Many tribes were already living there, and the Israelites had hard work to win the land from them. But at last one of the leaders of the Israelites, called David, won many battles against these tribes. Then the Israelites were able to live in peace with David as their king.

King David began to make plans for the good of his people. He had won the city of Jerusalem and he wanted to make this city splendid with fine buildings. He built himself a palace and he told his son Solomon, who became king after him, to build a beautiful temple, or house of prayer.

Have you ever heard people say of anyone, "He is as wise as Solomon"? This story will tell you why King Solomon was thought to be so wise. When Solomon first became king, he dreamed that one night God appeared to him, and said that he might ask for whatever he wanted, and He would give it to him.

Solomon did not ask for riches, or long life, or victory over his enemies, but he asked God to give him an understanding heart.

God was pleased with this request, and

said that He would make Solomon wiser than any man who had lived before him, and wiser than any man who should live after him.

God promised, too, to give him the things for which he had *not* asked, and to make him so rich and so great that there would be no king like him.

Solomon's first act was to begin building the temple. He needed help, and he sent to ask for it from his father's friend, King Hiram. This king lived in a city called Tyre, in the land of Phœnicia.

The people of Phœnicia were neighbours of the Israelites. They had lived for many years in a narrow strip of land which was beside the sea and to the north of Canaan. This land was rocky and hilly, and there was not much good earth. Only a few people could grow wheat and keep sheep and goats; the others had to find something else to do, and some other way of getting food.

The sea was near, and so they became sailors. They built strong ships having oars and sails. At first they made only short journeys to find food, but gradually they grew braver, and went on longer and longer voyages. From these long voyages they brought back, not only food, but flax and wool, gold and silver, ivory and tin. Tin was very useful, for when it was melted with copper it made bronze, which you will remember was made into tools and weapons.

The flax and wool they made into clothes, which they dyed with a lovely purple dye, made from crushing the shellfish that they found near the seashore. The dye was such a beautiful colour that the kings of many countries chose it for their robes, and we still talk of "royal purple." The Greeks called these traders the "Red Men" on account of their sunburnt skin. They were very glad to see the black-bearded Red Men come in their ships, for they liked to buy their beautiful purple cloth, glass cups, ivory combs, coloured beads, bronze plates, golden bowls and other treasures. But the Red Men were pirates as well as traders, and often they stole men and women, boys and

girls, to sell as slaves. In the markets of Tyre could be seen black slaves from Africa and white slaves from Greece

In the Bible there is a chapter about the Phoenicians (Ezekiel xxvii) and from it we can learn a great deal about these ancient seamen and the peoples with whom they traded. Here are some of the things that the Bible tells us were seen in the fairs of the Phoenicians: gold, silver, tin, lead and brass, horsemen, horses, mules, lambs, rams and goats, ebony and horns of ivory, purple cloth, embroidered work, fine linen, white wool and precious cloths for chariots, emeralds, agates and other precious stones, spices, honey, oil, balm, wine and chests of cedar wood bound with cords.

One specially useful thing the Phoenicians did was to spread the knowledge of writing. They found that writing on clay tablets was too slow for their busy lives, so they wrote on papyrus which they brought from Egypt. But they did not use picture writing, for that too was slow work; they chose instead an alphabet of twenty-two letters which they made up from the old picture writing. These twenty-two letters stood for all the sounds in their speech, and these they could write quickly. In time the Greeks used this alphabet, and from it we get our own A, B, C.

Hiram king of Tyre was very glad to help King Solomon to build the house of God. First he sent him shiploads of stones ready cut for building, and sweet-smelling cedar wood from his forest to make the pillars of the house.

Next, he sent stone cutters to build the house, and skilful men to carve on the pillars beautiful lilies and palm trees and open flowers.

Last of all, he sent goldsmiths who overlaid the floor and the walls of the house with gold, and made gold cups and basins to use inside it.

It took thousands of men seven years to make this beautiful temple. When at last it was finished, Solomon called all the Israelites together and gave it over to the

worship of God. For fourteen days they feasted with great joy.

Solomon did not pay King Hiram in money, instead he paid in wheat, and barley, and wine, and oil.

Then the wise king began to consider what else he could do for his kingdom. He saw what a good thing it would be to have ships like those of Hiram to fetch treasures from other countries.

Again Hiram promised to help him. He sent shipbuilders to teach the Israelites how to build their ships, and sailors to teach them how to sail them.

When the ships were ready, Hiram's fleet and Solomon's fleet set out together to trade far and wide. Every three years the ships would come home with their rich cargoes of gold and silver, ivory, apes and peacocks. They brought so much gold that all the king's drinking cups were made of it, and no one had any use for silver.

We read in the Bible, too, that Solomon had four thousand stalls for horses and chariots, and twelve thousand horsemen.

Then he had a most beautiful throne. The king made a great throne of ivory and overlaid it with pure gold. And there were six steps to the throne, with a footstool of gold which were fastened to the throne, and arms on each side of the sitting place, and two lions standing by the arms. And twelve lions stood there on the one side and on the other and upon the six steps. There was not the like made in any kingdom.

So the promise of God was fulfilled for, as the Bible says, "King Solomon passed all the kings of the earth in riches and wisdom. And all the kings of the earth sought the presence of Solomon, to hear his wisdom, that God had put in his heart."

One person who sought to hear his wisdom was a queen. She was the Queen of Sheba, who far away in her country of Arabia had heard how wise and how rich Solomon was.

"He is the wisest and the richest king on earth," said the queen's courtiers. "That I cannot believe," said the queen. "I will go myself, and see if it is true. I am very wise,

and King Solomon will not be able to answer the hard questions I shall put to him. I am very rich, too, and he will not have such fine things as I have."

She left her palace, and journeyed many miles, riding on a camel, with her soldiers and attendants around her. Behind her came many more camels, carrying sweet-smelling spices, gold and precious stones as presents for Solomon.

When they reached Jerusalem, the queen found Solomon sitting on his throne in the palace. Then she asked him many hard questions, and he answered them all. The king showed her all his treasures, and the beautiful house of God that he had built.

When the Queen of Sheba saw how wise and how rich Solomon was, she said, "I see that the words of my people were true, and I see, too, that they told me only half the truth. You are the wisest and the richest king on earth. Praise be to God, Who hath given you your riches and your wisdom."

The queen gave Solomon the presents she had brought, and he gave her many wonderful gifts in return, allowing her to choose any of his treasures she liked to take home. Then the queen went back to Sheba, and told her people what had happened at the house of the wise King Solomon.

Solomon's Temple stood for three hundred and fifty years, and then, as we shall soon see, the king of Babylon came to conquer Jerusalem.

### TEACHING HINTS

**1. Map.** Draw on the blackboard a sketch map of Palestine, and point out the positions of Judea, Samaria, Phoenicia and Babylon. Note the cities of Tyre and Jerusalem.

**2. Phoenician seamen.**—Note that the Phoenicians were akin to the Israelites as they originally came from the Arabian desert lands. See that the children understand that geographical conditions forced the people to become sailors. Probably, there is in the school a copy of the well-

known picture of the Phoenicians trading in Britain. Explain, if necessary, *royal purple*. Explain, *every three years the ships would come home*. The early seamen, when engaged on long voyages, landed at favourable points, sowed their crops for food, and continued their voyage after the harvest.

**3. Wine and oil.**—Children should understand that the Phoenicians had for centuries been famous as seamen, and cunning workers in textiles, metal, ivory, and glass, at the time that the Israelites were wandering shepherds, or town dwellers fighting to hold what they had taken. Note the payment in kind of wheat, barley, wine and oil. *Wine* is the Mediterranean peoples' *tea and coffee*. Olives, in shape like small plums, supply *oil*, which is used in place of butter. Olives and grapes grow abundantly on the warm hillsides of the Mediterranean countries. [See Lesson XII, *Wine and Oil* in the "First Year's Course," and the Class Picture No. 11.]

**4. Tyre.** Tyre and Sidon, though now connected with the mainland, were originally built upon islands, the Phoenicians preferred such sites, because they were convenient for shipping and easily defended against attack. The ports are now almost silted up, and only a few fishing huts mark the sites of the once famous cities. Purple shell is still plentiful.

**5. Carried away to Babylon.** It was a common practice for conquerors of the time to transport whole tribes to distant countries, and re-people the conquered lands with colonists or strangers.

**6. Memory work.**—(a) Solomon asked God to give him an understanding heart. (b) The Phoenicians helped him to build a beautiful temple at Jerusalem. (c) The Phoenicians were noted seamen who traded in purple cloth, gold, silver, ivory, tin, spices, honey, precious stones and other things. (d) They helped Solomon to build ships.

## VII. SENNACHERIB

(A CRUEL AND TERRIBLE KING)

### PICTURE REFERENCE



SENNACHERIB RECEIVING TRIBUTE

**T**HIS Class Picture (No. 16 in the portfolio) shows the Palace of an Assyrian King. It is fully described in the Reference Book. The also illustration shows Sennacherib, king of Assyria from 705 to 681 B.C., seated upon his throne before the city of Lachish, and receiving tribute. Officers headed by the Grand Vizier, are reporting to the king the events of the siege, and behind them kneel three Hebrew captives. Lachish was a small town of southern Palestine. The scene is engraved on a large slab of alabaster, which with many others adorned the palace at Nineveh.

### INTRODUCTION

In the early civilisation of the Land of the Two Rivers the balance of power lay fairly evenly between the two great kingdoms of Babylonia and Assyria, though the latter

was dominant during the later years. These two races were both of Semitic stock with the long nose and thick lips of the Polish Jew of today. But owing mainly to geographical differences the two races differed widely in their characteristics.

Babylonia was a flat country, hot rainless, and poor in minerals, and the Babylonians were a more or less unwarlike race who developed the arts of peace. Assyria on the other hand was a high table land rich in minerals, timber and stone. It was constantly being invaded by the surrounding hill tribes who were in possession of horses, and the Assyrians adopting their enemies' horse chariots and arming themselves with iron weapons (which they copied from the Hittites) became, in contrast to the Babylonians, a fighting race, who terrorised Western Asia for some ten centuries, from about 1600 to 600 B.C. During the years

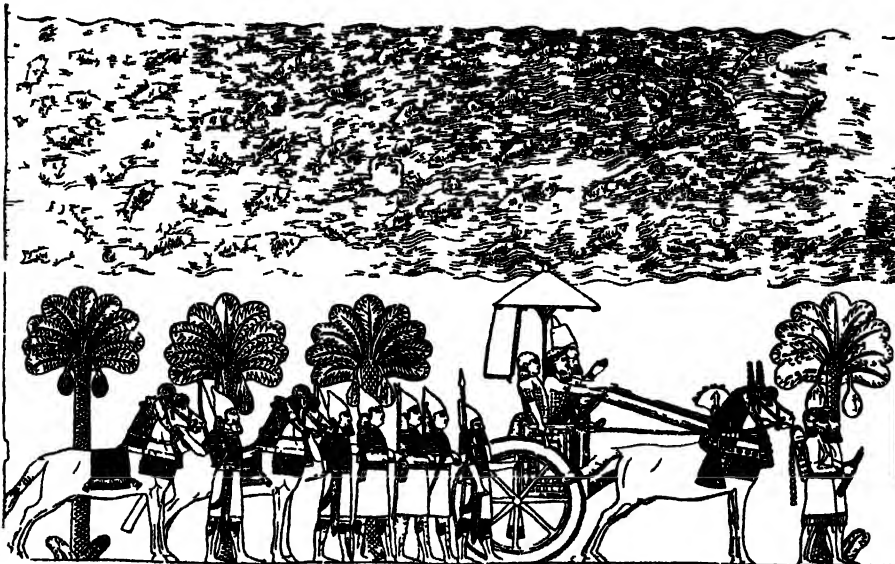


B.C. 742 727 B.C. Babylonia was gradually  
 -2000 subjugated by Tiglath-Pileser III,  
 -1900 kept in subjugation by Sargon II,  
 1800 and following a revolt the capital  
 1700 was finally razed by Sennacherib  
 -1600 soon after 700 B.C.  
 1500 Under Esarhaddon (681-668 B.C.)  
 1400 Assyrian power was at its height,  
 1300 and the policy of conquest, de-  
 1200 population and terrorism ruthlessly  
 -1100 carried out. The frightful atrocities  
 1000 at length caused a general rising of  
 900 despair. Chaldeans, Medes, Persians  
 -800 and Egyptians joined the revolt.  
 700 In 606 B.C. the tyrant city of  
 600 Nineveh was taken and destroyed.  
 -500 So complete was the overthrow of  
 400 the empire that when Xenophon  
 -300 and his ten thousand Greeks passed  
 200 its site two hundred years later, the  
 100 city was only a mound of rubbish  
 -0 and the great empire nothing but  
 a memory.

When not engaged in war, Sen-  
 nacherib devoted himself to the  
 city of Nineveh, which now became

the far-famed capital of Assyria. From his  
 gorgeous palace the emperor ruled the  
 subject peoples of the Fertile Crescent with  
 an iron hand. He maintained a system  
 of royal messengers, and appointed officers  
 at important places on the main roads to  
 attend to the transmission of clay-tablet  
 letters, produce and merchandise. With the  
 plundered wealth of the conquered, the  
 king supported a great fighting army and  
 beautified his buildings.

The Assyrian emperors depended much on  
 foreign skill for their art and industries.  
 The palace entrance was adorned with  
 glazed coloured bricks, an art borrowed  
 from Egypt. Ebony and ivory furniture and  
 beautiful bronze platters were made by  
 Phoenician workmen. On either side of the  
 palace entrance were immense human-  
 headed bulls sculptured from alabaster.  
 Within the palace, along the lower portion  
 of the walls, were hundreds of feet of pictures  
 in relief cut in alabaster. Here were dis-  
 played the great deeds of the emperors in  
 war or in the hunting field. The superb  
 lions and bulls were a triumph of art. The



KING SENNACHERIB IN HIS CHARIOT

Slab from the Great Hall of Sennacherib's Palace at Nineveh. In the British Museum.  
 The scene is on the bank of a river, where Sennacherib is besieging a city.

carved human figures are unpleasing to look at. They are all monotonously alike, cold, hard and unfeeling and all reflecting the tigerish ferocity of the Assyrian.

In his fine gardens at Nineveh Sennacherib planted strange trees and plants gathered

### CHILDREN'S STORY

During the long years that the Israelites were settling down in Canaan changes were taking place in the land of the Two Rivers. About five hundred miles to the north of

Babylon was another great city called Assur, which gave its name to the country of Assyria. Babylon, as you remember, was a flat warm land but Assyria was a highland country where the air was fresh and keen. From early times the people of Babylon and Assyria had been enemies. Many great fights had they fought and sometimes one side won and sometimes the other.

The Assyrians had other enemies too. In the hill country of the north lived the Hittites, who often swarmed down on the fields of Assur and stole the cattle and the grain. Thus, from very early days, the Assyrians had had to fight for their homes. War makes men fierce and cruel, and as the years went by the Assyrians became more and more warlike, till a time came when their king was ready to lead his armies out to conquer many lands.

About seven hundred years before Christ was born Sennacherib ruled in Assyria and he soon made his name feared and hated in all lands of the Fertile Crescent. No soldiers could stand against his soldiers. The Assyrians had learned from the Hittites



COLOSSAL WINGED AND HUMAN HEADS BY THE ASSYRIAN ARTISTS

Is the Lion of the Assyrian King?

Is the Lion of the Assyrian King?

from all parts of the empire. Among them were cotton trees which came from India. Sennacherib says of them, "The trees that bore wool they clipped and they carded it for garments." This is the first mention of the use of cotton in the ancient world.

how to weld iron and make strong spears, swords and shields. Somebody had long since tamed the wild horse, and now the Assyrians had many horses and men in chariots. In these chariots the soldiers would drive swiftly against a foe, shooting their arrows left and right, or they would jump down from the chariots and fight hand to hand with spear and sword. Moreover these terrible fighting men had found out how to make high towers with heavy logs of wood or rams, inside. The soldiers would push these towers up to the walls of a city. Men hidden inside the towers would swing the great ram backwards and forwards against the wall until they either knocked it down or made a hole in it. No city could stand against Sennacherib's archers and spearmen,



SYMBOL OF THE ASSYRIAN SUN GOD  
ASSUR WHO IS SHOWN SHOOTING HIS  
DEADLY ARROWS

his charioteers and battering rams. But above all they feared the cruel king. When his army conquered a city he had the chief men killed in the cruellest way. The treasures of the city were carried away on camels and asses, the houses and temples were burned and the rest of the people were marched across the desert to live as slaves in strange lands.

The Assyrians were proud of their cruel deeds. They carried before them a symbol of their Sun god, as the god of war, who was shown shooting his deadly arrows.

Sennacherib was not content with the city of Assur, so he had a grand new palace built at Nineveh. The gold, silver, bronze and other treasures taken from captured cities were very useful to the king. Glazed bricks

in gorgeous colours faced the walls at the palace entrance. On either side were vast human-headed bulls and lions cut out of stone. Inside the palace were carved hundreds of figures showing the emperor at war or hunting lions. In the British Museum are some of the carvings made by the Assyrians. There is never a smile on the men's faces. They look hard and cold and cruel as they really were.

In the fine garden which Sennacherib laid out he planted strange trees which he gathered from all parts of his great empire. Among them were cotton trees of which the king himself says, "The trees that bore wool they clipped and they carded it for garments." These cotton trees came from India.

To keep his great empire in order King Sennacherib had a plan by which he could send letters swiftly to different cities. The letters were the clay tablet letters such as the Babylonians used. At important places on the main roads the king kept officers to see that messengers were always ready to carry the king's letters forward to the next place. In this way the king received letters from some sixty governors over the lands of the Fertile Crescent.

In his march of conquest Sennacherib came to Canaan. He took one town after another till he had captured and sacked over sixty and sent their peoples away.

When Hezekiah, who was at that time king of Judah, heard that Sennacherib's army was drawing near he sent in terror the largest present he could find to try to make peace. He even took the gold hinges off the doors of Solomon's Temple and sent them to the king. But it was useless. Sennacherib meant to take Jerusalem and he sent boastful messages to the people, saying, "Hearken not to Hezekiah when he persuadeth you saying, 'The Lord will deliver us.' Hath any of the gods of the nations delivered at all his land out of the hand of the king of Assyria?"

But the people of Jerusalem held their peace, for they trusted their king and their God. We read in the Bible how Hezekiah

prayed to God that Sennacherib should not take Jerusalem, and the Lord said, "He shall not come into this city, nor shoot an arrow there, nor come before it with shield, nor cast a bank against it."

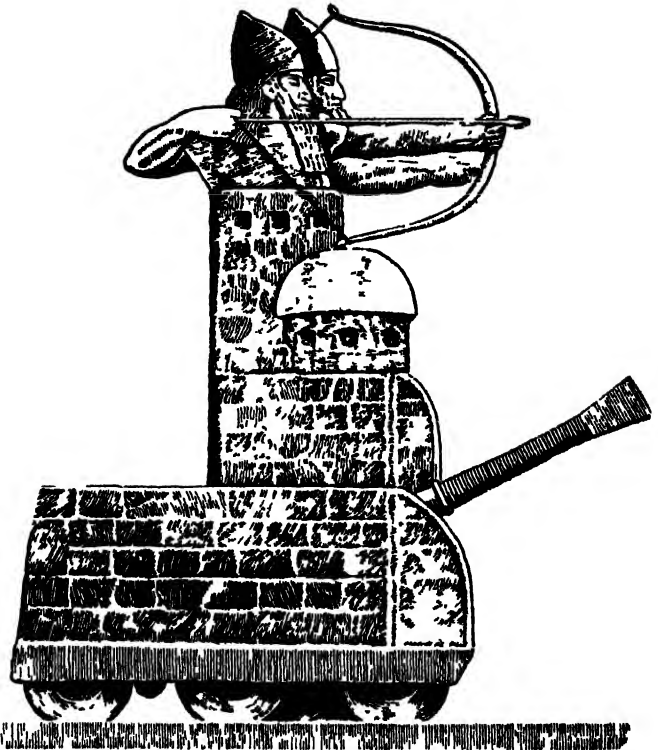
Now Sennacherib and his army were besieging a town not far from Jerusalem. One night a dreadful sickness broke out among them, and thousands of men and horses died. The Bible says, "And it came to pass that night that the Angel of the Lord went out, and smote in the camp of the Assyrians an hundred fourscore and five thousand; and when they arose early in the morning, behold, they were all dead corpses. So Sennacherib, king of Assyria, departed and went and returned and dwelt at Nineveh."

Sennacherib marched against Babylon and completely destroyed that wonderful old city. He even had the water of one of the canals turned over the ruins. This, with his other cruelties, horrified the nations all around, and at last the tyrant met his doom. The Bible tells us, "And it came to pass as he was worshipping in the house of his god that his two sons smote him with the sword." Thus Sennacherib, the terrible fighting king, died at the hands of his own children.

### TEACHING HINTS

**1. Map.**—Draw on the blackboard a sketch map of the Land of the Two Rivers and point out the positions of Assur, Babylon, Nineveh and the Hittite country. Compare the hill country of the north with the plains of the south.

**2. Time chart.**—Note on the wall chart the period of Sennacherib's rule. Let chil-



ASSYRIAN ARMORED "TANK"

The battering ram mounted on six wheels was rolled up to the wall of a city, from the tower, which was as high as the wall, archers shot arrows within the tank. Unseen men worked the ram, which was capped with metal.

dren calculate how many years ago this king lived. Note how many years had passed since Hammurabi ruled in Babylon.

**3. Horses and chariots.** Refer to the Class Picture No. 20 in the portfolio for an illustration of an Assyrian king in his chariot. Note that the horse, which was one of the last of the wild animals to be domesticated, came from Central Asia. It was not yet used for draught purposes but only for fighting. Note particularly the introduction of iron weapons.

**4. Sennacherib and Jerusalem.**—The children will be interested in extracts from the Biblical account as given in II. Kings xix., 14-37. They will also be interested in

Byron's poem which is here quoted for reference:

#### THE DESTRUCTION OF SENNACHERIB

The Assyrian came down like the wolf on the fold,  
And his cohorts were gleaming in purple and gold;  
And the sheen of their spears was like stars on the sea,  
When the blue wave rolls nightly on deep Galilee.

Like the leaves of the forest when Summer is green,  
That host with their banners at sunset were seen:  
Like the leaves of the forest when Autumn hath blown,  
That host on the morrow lay wither'd and strown.

For the Angel of Death spread his wings on the blast,  
And breathed in the face of the foe as he pass'd;  
And the eyes of the sleepers wax'd deadly and chill,  
And their hearts but once heaved, and for ever grew still!

And there lay the steed with his nostril all wide,  
But through it there roll'd not the breath of his pride:  
And the foam of his gasping lay white on the turf,  
And cold as the spray of the rock-beating surf.

And there lay the rider distorted and pale,  
With the dew on his brow and the rust on his mail;  
And the tents were all silent, the banners alone,  
The lances unlifted, the trumpet unblown.

And the widows of Assur are loud in their wail,  
And the idols are broke in the temple of Baal;  
And the might of the Gentile, unsmeared by the sword,  
Hath melted like snow in the glance of the Lord!

**5. Nineveh.**—This city became the capital of Assyria at the time of Sennacherib. It was already a splendid place, but the king had it enlarged to twice its former size by turning the course of a river, beside which on a high mound he had built a grand palace. Ashur-bani-pal, the mightiest Assyrian king and grandson of Sennacherib (he reigned from 669-626 B.C.), had a similar palace on another mound. Here was a great library in which the king had collected ancient Babylonian and Sumerian clay tablets, and here scribes and scholars studied old records and writings. A great collection of 22,000 clay tablets was discovered in the fallen library at Nineveh, where they had been lying for 2,500 years. They formed the earliest library known in Asia, and are now in the British Museum.

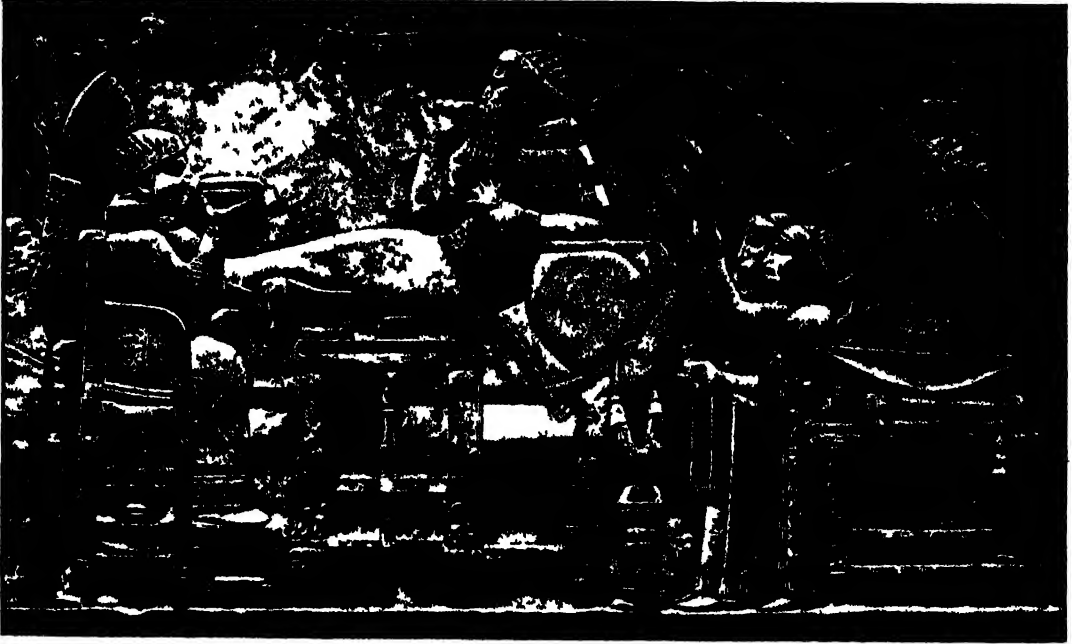
**6. Memory work.**—(a) The Assyrians were fierce warriors who had weapons of iron, horses and chariots and battering-rams. (b) Sennacherib helped to make Nineveh a beautiful city. (c) On all the main roads in his Empire he had officers who looked after the royal messengers. (d) He meant to take Jerusalem, but thousands of his army died during one night. (e) He completely destroyed the old city of Babylon.

**7. Exercises.**—(a) Why did the Assyrians become fond of war? (b) Why were cities guarded by walls no longer secure against the Assyrians? (c) What was the name of the new capital of Assyria? (d) How did Sennacherib make his new city beautiful? (e) How did the king arrange to send his letters to Jerusalem? (f) What did he tell Hezekiah, the king of Jerusalem? (g) Why did Sennacherib leave Jerusalem and return home?

## VIII. NEBUCHADNEZZAR

(THE KING WHO TOOK THE JEWS TO BABYLON)

### PICTURE REFERENCE



KING ASHURBANIPAL IN THE ROYAL PARK AT NINEVEH

**T**HE (Last Picture (No. 19 in the portfolio) shows the Hanging Gardens at Babylon. The above illustration shows King Ashurbanipal, the great king of Assyria in the sixth century B.C., reclining at his ease in his palace at Nineveh. Attendants with fans of palm leaves keep the air cool for their royal master and his consort.

### INTRODUCTION

The Chaldeans were the last Semitic rulers of Babylonia. The capital city of Babylon was rebuilt, but they gave their

own name to the country. The empire included the whole of the Fertile Crescent. Nebuchadnezzar, the greatest of the Chaldean emperors, reigned for forty years (604-562 B.C.). The Bible account depicts his reign as one of immense power and magnificence. Owing to the repeated revolts in the west of the empire, Nebuchadnezzar severely punished the western nations, especially the little Hebrew kingdom of Judah. Jerusalem was destroyed and many Hebrews carried away as captives to Babylon, 586 B.C.

Nebuchadnezzar rebuilt a large part of Babylon, whose marvels so impressed the

B.C.  
—2000 Greek writer Herodotus over a century later. The following extracts from Herodotus will be helpful to the teacher in the lessons on Babylon

—1800  
—1700 **The Great Wall.**—"Assyria possesses a vast number of great cities, whereof the most renowned and strongest at this time was Babylon, whither, after the fall of Nineveh, the seat of government had been removed. The following is a description of the place: The city stands on a broad plain, and is an exact square, a hundred and twenty furlongs in length each way, so that the entire circuit is four hundred and eighty furlongs. While such is its size, in magnificence there is no other city that approaches to it. It is surrounded, in the first place, by a broad and deep moat, full of water, behind which rises a wall fifty royal cubits in width, and two hundred in height. (The royal cubit is longer by three fingers' breadth than the common cubit.)

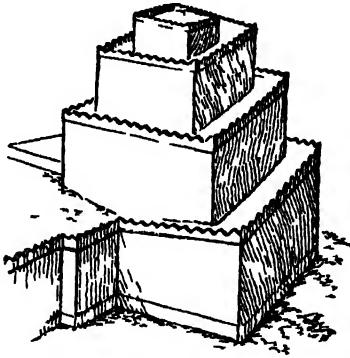
—900 "And here I may not omit to tell the use to which the mould dug out of the great moat was turned, nor the manner wherein the wall was wrought. As fast as they dug the moat the soil which they got from the cutting was made into bricks, and when a sufficient number were completed they baked the bricks in kilns. Then they set to building, and began with bricking the borders of the moat, after which they proceeded to construct the wall itself, using throughout for their cement hot bitumen, and interposing a layer of wattled reeds at every thirtieth course of the bricks. On the top, along the edges of the wall, they constructed buildings of a single chamber facing one another, leaving between them room for a four-horse

chariot to turn. In the circuit of the wall are a hundred gates, all of brass, with brazen lintels and side-posts. The bitumen used in the work was brought to Babylon from the Is, a small stream which flows into the Euphrates at the point where the city of the same name stands, eight days' journey from Babylon. Lumps of bitumen are found in great abundance in this river.

"The city is divided into two portions by the river which runs through the midst of it. This river is the Euphrates, a broad, deep, swift stream, which rises in Armenia, and empties itself into the Erythraean Sea (Persian Gulf). The city wall is brought down on both sides to the edge of the stream: thence, from the corners of the wall, there is carried along each bank of the river a fence of burnt bricks. The houses are mostly three and four storeys high; the streets all run in straight lines, not only those parallel to the river, but also the cross streets which lead down to the water side. At the river end of these cross streets are low gates in the fence that skirts the stream, which are, like the great gates in the outer wall, of brass, and open on the water.

"The outer wall is the main defence of the city. There is, however, a second inner wall, of less thickness than the first, but very little inferior to it in strength. The centre of each division of the town was occupied by a fortress. In the one stood the palace of the kings, surrounded by a wall of great strength and size: in the other was the temple of Zeus, a square enclosure two furlongs each way, with gates of solid brass; which was also remaining in my time. In the middle of the temple there was a tower of solid masonry, a furlong in length and breadth, upon which was raised a second tower, and on that a third, and so on up to eight. The ascent to the top is on the outside, by a path which winds round all the towers. When one is about half-way up, one finds a resting place and seats, where persons are wont to sit some time on their way to the summit. On the topmost tower there is an inner house of the temple, and

inside the house stands a large couch richly adorned, with a golden table by its side. There is no statue of any kind set up in the place."



SKETCH SHOWING HOW THE ASSYRIANS AND BABYLONIANS BUILT TEMPLE TOWERS

**The Land of Babylonia.** 'The whole of Babylonia is like Egypt, intersected with canals. The largest of them all which runs towards the winter sun and is impassable except in boats is carried from the Tigris into another stream called the Euphrates the river upon which the town of Nineveh formerly stood. Of all the countries that we know there is none which is so fruitful in grain. It makes no pretension, indeed, of growing the fig, the olive, the vine, or any other tree of the kind, but in grain it is so fruitful as to yield commonly two hundred-fold, and when the production is the greatest, even three hundred-fold. The blade of the wheat plant and barley plant is often four fingers in breadth. As for the millet and the sesame I shall not say to what height they grow, though within my knowledge, for I am not ignorant that what I have already written concerning the fruitfulness of Babylonia must seem incredible to those who have never visited the country. The only oil they use is made from the sesame plant. Palm trees grow in great numbers over the whole of the flat country, mostly of the kind which bears fruit, and this fruit supplies them with bread, wine, and honey. They

are cultivated like the fig tree in all respects, among others in this—the natives tie the fruit of the male palms, as they are called by the Greeks, to the branches of the date-bearing palm, to let the gallfly enter the dates and ripen them, and to prevent the fruit from falling off. The male palms, like the wild fig trees, have usually the gallfly in their fruit."

**The Boats.**—'But that which surprises me most in the land after the city itself, I will now proceed to mention. The boats which come down the river to Babylon are circular, and made of skins. The frames, which are of willow, are cut in the country of the Armenians above Assyria and on these which serve for hulls a covering of skins is stretched outside and thus the boats are made, without either stem or stern, quite round like a shield. They are then entirely filled with straw, and their cargo is put on board after which they are suffered to float down the stream. Their chief freight is wine stored in casks made of the wood of the palm tree. They are managed by two men who stand upright in them, each plying an oar, one pulling and the other pushing. The boats are of various sizes some larger, some smaller. Each vessel has a live ass on board, those of larger size have more than one. When they reach Babylon the cargo is landed and offered for sale, after which the men break up their boats, sell the straw and the frames, and loading their asses with the skins, set off on their way back to Armenia. The current is too strong to allow a boat to return up stream, for which reason they make their boats of skins rather than wood. On their return to Armenia they build fresh boats for the next voyage.'

**Dress.**—"The dress of the Babylonians is a linen tunic reaching to the feet, and above it another tunic made in wool, besides which they have a short white cloak thrown round them, and shoes of a peculiar fashion, not unlike those worn by the Boeotians. They



have long hair, wear turbans on their heads, and anoint their whole bodies with perfumes. Everyone carries a seal, and a walking stick, carved at the top into the form of an apple, a rose, a lily, an eagle, or something similar; for it is not their habit to use a stick without an ornament."

**A strange custom.**—"They have no physicians, but when a man is ill, they lay him in the public square, and the passers-by come up to him, and if they have ever had his disease themselves or have known anyone who has suffered from it, they give him advice, recommending him to do whatever they found good in their own case, or in the case known to them; and no one is allowed to pass the sick man in silence without asking him what his ailment is.

"They bury their dead in honey, and have funeral lamentations like the Egyptians."

### CHILDREN'S STORY

The empire of Assyria did not last long after the death of Sennacherib. The kings who followed him were as fierce and cruel as he had been, and at last many nations joined together and fought against Assyria. The great city of Nineveh was destroyed and became a heap of ruins. Once again Babylon became the chief city of the Land of the Two Rivers. The new people who now ruled this land were called Chaldeans, and the greatest of their emperors was Nebuchadnezzar, who reigned for forty years.

This King Nebuchadnezzar also had many wars, one of which we must remember. He marched with his army against Jerusalem in the little kingdom of Judah. The Bible story tells us that the walls of Jerusalem were broken down, Solomon's beautiful temple was destroyed and all its treasures carried away by the king. Most of the Jews who were left after the fighting was over were taken away as captives to the land of Babylon.

Here is part of the Bible story: "Nebuchadnezzar king of Babylon came against

the city (of Jerusalem), and his servants did besiege it. And Jehoiachin the king of Judah went out to the king of Babylon, he, and his mother, and his servants, and his princes, and his officers: and the king of Babylon took him in the eighth year of his reign. And he carried out thence all the treasures of the house of the Lord, and the treasures of the king's house, and cut in pieces all the vessels of gold which Solomon king of Israel had made in the temple of the Lord, as the Lord had said. And he carried away all Jerusalem, and all the princes, and all the mighty men of valour, even ten thousand captives, and all the craftsmen and smiths: none remained, save the poorest sort of the people of the land." (II. Kings xxiv. 12-14)

Nebuchadnezzar was not always at war. He found time to build once again the city of Babylon, and he made it even more beautiful and wonderful than Nineveh had been. He re-built the temples of the Sun-god and the Moon-god, and laid out a fine avenue of trees which led from the temples through a grand gateway to the palace. The walls surrounding the palace were covered with many-coloured glazed statues, which showed strange figures of birds, animals and fish, scenes of the chase and war, and solemn processions.

By the side of the river were the wonderful Hanging Gardens, which were the second of the Seven Wonders of the World. It is said that a Babylonian queen, who came from the hill country, grew tired of the hot flat land of Babylon, and longed for the cool air of the hills. So about the palace the king had terraces raised on arches one above the other, higher and higher till they reached the top of the palace. In the terraces were planted bright flowers, palms and ferns. Then the king and queen and their courtiers could rest in the cool shade of the trees high on the terraces of this beautiful garden.

Hundreds of slaves were needed to build the palace, the temples and the Hanging Gardens, and no doubt many of these slaves were the captive Jews.

The city was surrounded by a high wall which was so thick and strong that on the top were built two rows of houses like the houses in a street, and between the houses there was room for a four-horse chariot to turn round. The foot of the wall outside the city was surrounded by a wide deep ditch full of water. In the wall were a hundred bronze gates.

but a stairway wound like a huge snake round and round *outside* the temple from the bottom to the top, with a resting place and seats about half-way up. On the very top was the sacred room of the god.

Next time you look at a church steeple you will remember that the Babylonians first showed men how to build towers.



(By permission of the Illustrated London News.)

#### DOMESTIC LIFE IN ANCIENT BABYLON

This picture is a Babylonian scene in the British Museum.

The great river of the land ran through the middle of the city and divided it into two parts. The streets were wide and straight, and the houses, built of brick, were large and high.

In the middle of the chief temple was a lofty tower which was made up of eight towers resting on the top of each other, the second smaller than the first, and the third smaller than the second, and so on. There was no stairway inside the tower,

The dress and customs of the people in Babylon must have seemed very strange to the Jews. Walking in the streets they would see noblemen wearing short white cloaks over their two long tunics, one of linen and one of wool. Picture a nobleman striding along with his slave behind him holding an umbrella over him to keep off the heat of the sun. He is a tall man, with long hair and beard both carefully curled, and he carries a walking cane with a golden ram's head. a

golden apple, or some other ornament on the handle.

Perhaps he goes to the market place, where he stops to speak to a sick man lying in the open street. The Babylonian custom is to lay out the sick in the market place. Every man who goes by must stop and ask the man what his illness is, and if he has had it himself he must tell the man how he can be cured.

The nobleman strolls along the river bank and looks at the boats. Very curious boats they are too! They are round, something like our washing baskets, and are made with a willow framework over which hides are stretched. Two men steer the boat down the stream, but they cannot row it back again because the river runs too swiftly. How then do they manage to get back home? Well, they always take an ass with them. When their trip down stream is done, they sell the frame of the boat, pack the skins on the ass, and walk back home. When they want to go down the river again they make another framework, stretch on the skins, put the ass aboard, and float down as before.

### TEACHING HINTS

**1. Hanging Gardens.**—These gardens, we are told, consisted of beautiful planted trees and flowers, on the topmost of a series of arches some seventy-five feet high, and in the form of a square, each side of which measured four hundred Greek feet. Water was raised from the Euphrates by means of a screw. (See the Reference Book, No. 19.)

**2. Herodotus.**—If time permits read some of the passages quoted from Herodotus in the "Introduction." Note particularly the passage dealing with the food of the Babylonians—the children are generally very hazy on this matter. Note that "everyone carries a seal." Stone was very scarce in Babylonia and the art of seal cutting on semi-precious stones reached an extraordinary degree of perfection.

### 3. Domestic life in Ancient Babylon.—

This picture, which is based on a Babylonian scene in the British Museum, is thus described by the artist, Mr. A. Forestier. "The master is seen reclining on the couch, while his favourite wife, sitting close to him, before the small table, plays with her little boy. The nurse (in the foreground) holds a baby with whom his sister is seen playing. Two attendants, one at each end of the couch, keep the flies away with their whisks, while the cupbearer fills the master's cup with wine. A little to the left (background) a woman is seen dancing to the accompaniment of harps and flutes and clapping hands. Eunuchs bringing a tray of fruit are coming from the house, and the doorkeeper watches the scene from the doorstep."

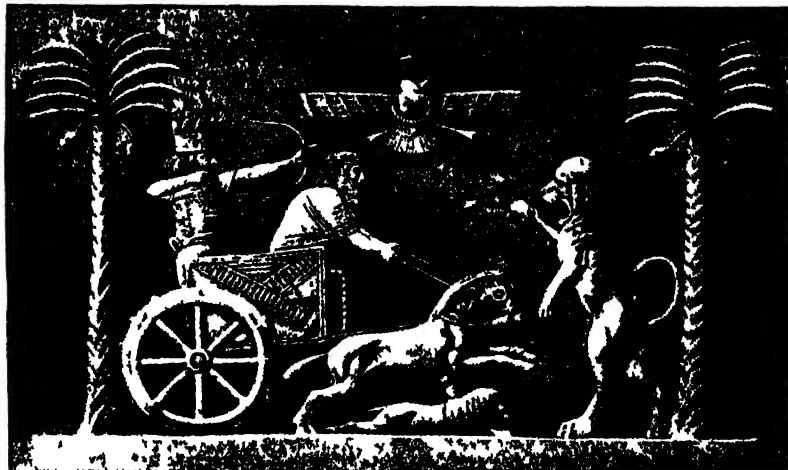
**4. Memory work.**—(a) Nebuchadnezzar, a famous king of the Chaldeans, conquered Babylon. (b) This king destroyed Jerusalem and took away the Jews to live in his own land. (c) The new Babylon was a grand city surrounded by high walls. In it were the king's palace with its Hanging Gardens, and a temple with a lofty tower. (d) Other sights of Babylon were the straight streets and lofty houses; the great river on which were round boats; the market places where sick people were laid out.

**5. Exercises.**—(a) Why was the city of Nineveh destroyed? (b) Why do the Jews specially remember Nebuchadnezzar? (c) How came the Jews to live in Babylon? (d) What were the "Hanging Gardens"? (e) How was the city of Babylon defended? (f) How did people get to the top of the temple tower? (g) Why were sick people put in the market place? (h) Why did boatmen on the river always take an ass with them? (i) Write sentences explaining: (1) How the king of Judah and his people were taken to Babylon. (2) How one of the kings carried out a great work to please his queen. (3) How the walls round Babylon were built.

## IX. CYRUS THE PERSIAN

(THE KING WHO HELPED THE JEWS)

### PICTURE REFERENCE



PERSIAN CYLINDER SEAL

**T**HIS Class Picture (No. 20 in the portfolio) shows an Assyrian King Hunting Lions. It is based on the above pictorial part of a Persian cylinder seal. The king in his chariot is hunting lions in a palm plantation. Cylinder seals were used all over Western Asia for sealing legal and commercial documents. They generally consisted of small, hard, stone rollers on which were engraved legends, or animals of various kinds, e.g. lions, bulls, sheep, goats, etc. To ratify a contract the cylinder bearing the name of the witness or contracting party was rolled over the moist clay of the contract tablet in the space provided for it. Marble, jasper, rock crystal, emerald, topaz, lapis lazuli and other semi-precious stones were employed in the manufacture of seals. The outline of the design was cut with a graver made of metal, and the deeper parts were hollowed out by means of a drill. The hole

pierced through the length of the seal would enable the owner to carry it by a string and it might also be worn as an ornament, or amulet, or talisman.

A number of cylinder seals—Babylonian, Assyrian, Persian, etc., can be seen at the British Museum.

### INTRODUCTION

About the year 2000 B.C. the peoples of the Land of the Two Rivers and the Aegean were threatened by Indo-European tribes from the northern regions of Asia. Kassites seized Babylonia, the Mitanni established a kingdom in Northern Syria, and the Achaeans began their plunder of the Aegean world. During the next thousand years they were followed by other Indo-European tribes, e.g. Medes, Persians, Phrygians,

Lydians, Dorians, Ionians, Sabines, Latins and "Celts."

Thus began the struggle for supremacy between the great white race of the Indo-Europeans of the north, and the Semitic settlers of the Fertile Crescent. In course of time the Indo-Europeans (our own ancestors) extended from the frontiers of India in the east, westward across all Europe to the Atlantic.

These Indo-European tribes were primarily pastoral in habit, but they depended on the ox rather than on the sheep or goat for the necessities of life. From the nomads of the steppes they had learned the use of the horse, and it was probably they who had made the horse known to Assyria and Babylon. These tribes were not nomads like the shepherds of the steppes, for they had invented or learned an extensive agriculture. Barley was their principal grain crop, and from it they made bread and a fermented drink. They possessed rude agricultural tools, as well as wheeled wagons, buildings and furniture. In their earliest raids the warriors had been armed with bronze weapons, but by the time they besieged Troy (c. 1194 B.C.) they had weapons of iron to which they owed much of their success in war.

In this chapter we are concerned with the Medes and Persians who had established themselves on the plateau of Iran to the east of the Land of the Two Rivers, the Medes to the north near the Caspian Sea, and the Persians far south of them in the mountainous country to the north and east of the Persian Gulf.

The Medes soon became politically important, for they joined with the Babylonians, and in 606 B.C. overthrew the tyrant Assyrian city of Nineveh, which for so long had kept all the nations around in terror. Then the Medes began to build up an empire for themselves which lasted for sixty years and included Persia, Assyria proper, and the country as far north as the Armenian mountains and westwards in Asia Minor (over regions which had once been Hittite)

to the river Halys which bordered the Lydian kingdom.

The Lydians of the Aegean coast were a prosperous people, who gained their wealth by commerce between the Aegean world and the Land of the Two Rivers. They were clever and cultivated, for they had adopted the Minoan civilisation; their system of roads, with caravanseries, or inns, for travellers, was far in advance of the times; they probably invented a system of coinage.

During the first half of the sixth century B.C. most of the rich lands of the west, from the Aegean Sea to the head of the Persian Gulf, were shared by the Lydians, the Medes and the Chaldeans. Then the Persians descended upon the lands and quickly established themselves over the whole territory and beyond.

The career of Cyrus, the founder of the great Persian empire, is one of the most amazing in history. It is almost incredible that in so few years he could have developed a small independent kingdom into one of the greatest empires of antiquity.

**Religion.**—The Persians lived as simple peasants on the edge of the Iranian plateau; they tilled their fields and strove to live in obedience to the beautiful religion they and the Medes had brought with them from their northern home. It had been formulated there many centuries earlier by Zoroaster, one of the world's great religious teachers, and it is still the religion of the Parsees in



CYRUS THE GREAT  
AS A GOD

Limestone relief (Persia)

The figure has four wings. A small horn grows out of his temple. The elaborate headdress consists of two horns supporting three solar discs with plumes and serpents.

B.C. India to-day, who, as their name  
 -2000 shows, are descended from the  
 Persians Zoroaster, who is supposed  
 -1900 to have lived somewhere about  
 1000 B.C., taught that there was  
 -1800 one God only, Ahuramazda, Lord  
 of Righteousness, Light and Life.  
 -1700 He, however, was always engaged  
 in a struggle against Ahriman, the  
 -1600 Lord of Evil, Darkness and Death  
 (whom the Jews later knew as  
 Satan). It was man's sacred duty  
 1500 to help in this struggle on the side  
 of good by tilling the desert soil to  
 bring out its goodness, by speaking  
 -1400 the truth and living uprightly him-  
 self, and if need be by fighting loyally  
 -1300 for the king, who represented the  
 Lord of Light on earth. All life,  
 especially the life of the soul, shared  
 -1200 (so Zoroaster taught) in this eternal  
 struggle, and after death man would  
 1100 be rewarded according to the part  
 he had played in it.

Such a creed, one of the highest  
 yet evolved by man, was bound to  
 produce a noble race who needed  
 900 only a leader to make them into a  
 great nation.

900 **Cyrus.**—This leader appeared in  
 700 the form of Cyrus, the king of the  
 tiny kingdom of Elam in Persia.  
 He came to the throne in 553 B.C.  
 -600 and soon succeeded in uniting the  
 scattered tribes of Persia into a  
 single nation. He at once revolted  
 -500 against the Medes, and in three  
 years his peasant soldiers had de-  
 -400 feated the Median king, and he was  
 able to unite Media and Persia under  
 -300 his own leadership. The nations  
 were so completely welded into one  
 by his conquest, that we speak of  
 -200 "the laws of the Medes and Persians"  
 as if they were one people. Susa was  
 -100 the seat of Persian government.

-0 The army which had achieved this  
 was made up chiefly of bowmen

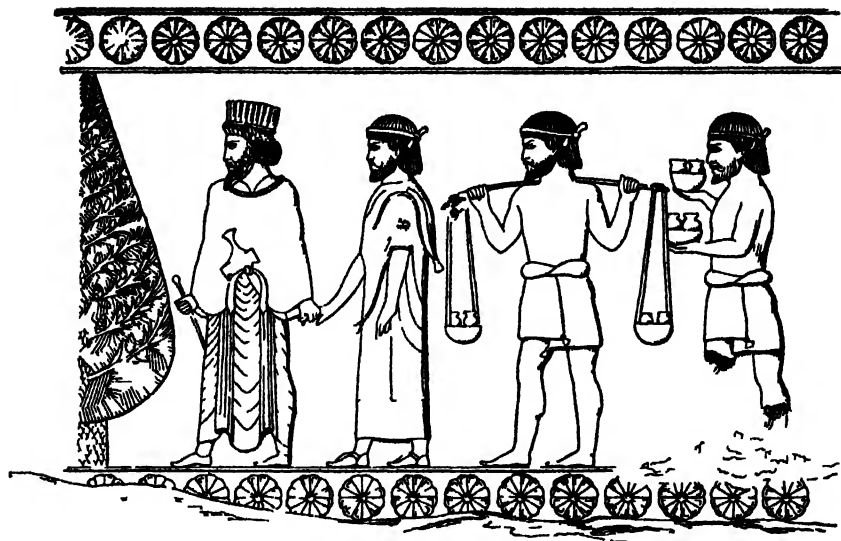
and horsemen. The Persian peasants  
 were remarkable archers, and no foe could  
 stand before the shower of deadly arrows  
 they poured into the enemy ranks. Many  
 Persians were skilled horsemen, too, and  
 the cavalry usually completed the defeat  
 the archers had begun. Skill in archery and  
 good horsemanship were therefore prized by  
 the Persians more than any other quality  
 except honesty. Herodotus says that every  
 Persian boy was taught "to ride, to shoot  
 with the bow, and to speak the truth."

With this well-trained army at his com-  
 mand Cyrus began a career of conquest. He  
 was so successful that the neighbouring  
 nations, including Babylon, Lydia, Egypt  
 and the Greek city-states, became alarmed  
 and formed an alliance against him led by  
 Croesus, king of Lydia. This kingdom had  
 now become so rich and prosperous that  
 Croesus was renowned for his wealth, and  
 "to be as rich as Croesus" is still a proverbial  
 expression. Cyrus immediately marched on  
 Lydia, crossed the Halys, and defeated  
 Croesus 546 B.C.

For six years Cyrus was engaged in stem-  
 ming a Scythian invasion on his eastern  
 frontiers, but in 538 B.C. he was free to turn  
 his attention to Babylon. With surprising ease  
 this city was taken, and in the following year  
 Cyrus sent the exiled Jews back to Jerusalem.

The conquest of Babylon added the whole  
 of the new Babylonian Empire (which  
 extended to the frontiers of Egypt) to that  
 of Persia, and the Persian Empire stretched  
 over the whole of western Asia. When in  
 525 B.C., Cyrus's son, Cambyses, conquered  
 Egypt (the last of the great kingdoms of the  
 old world) the Persian Empire was far  
 greater than any of its predecessors. And  
 such it remained for over a century and a  
 half. This empire held together partly  
 because there was no greater power to  
 destroy it, mainly because of the well-  
 planned government of Cyrus, and of Darius  
 the Great who succeeded Cambyses.

**Government.**—When we think of this  
 great empire stretching over 2,000 miles



#### PERSIAN TRIBUTARIES

*Relief from the Great Hall of Xerxes Persepolis*

The tributaries introduced by a chain bearing with a wand of office bring offerings to the king. What is like a pair of scales is probably a yoke for carrying heavy weights.

and later found its way westward to Europe. The roads were kept in good repair, and shelters for travellers placed at convenient intervals along them. The secret of maintaining the system of roads had been learned from the Lydians. The Royal Road which ran from Susa to Sardis was the wonder of the age.

Another means of communication was by sea.

from east to west it is amazing to reflect that all this territory, with the varying nations it contained was governed by *one man*. Only by great skill in organisation could this have been achieved. The Persian monarch was made king of Babylonia and Egypt but the rest of the empire was divided into twenty "satrapies" or provinces, each with its governor, or "satrap." These satraps so long as they paid regular tribute and sent soldiers to the king's army, were left very much to themselves. But to keep a check on possible revolt, the king kept officials in each state, known by the picturesque name of the "King's Eyes" or the "King's Ears," to report any threatened risings.

Communication between the king and his dominions was kept up by a wonderful system of roads and messengers, which enabled news to be carried surprisingly swiftly. These roads were also excellent trade routes, and many of our present possessions were brought along them first by the Persians. The hen, for instance, was first brought into Western Asia at this time,

In spite of their being an inland nation, the Persians possessed a strong fleet and made themselves supreme in the eastern Mediterranean. Thus yet another avenue of trade was opened up. The surrounding nations traded willingly with the merchants, for the king furnished them with a fine gold coinage (also copied from the Lydians) and allowed his "satraps" to coin silver as well. Darius was lord of the Levantine coast, the fleets of Egyptians, Phoenicians, Lydians and Greeks obeyed his will.

At Susa (the "Shushan" of the Bible) the king lived in stately splendour, but he spent the winter at Babylon, paying occasional visits to his capital city. His sumptuous palaces were built mainly in styles borrowed from the older races. Here were to be found the winged bulls of Babylon alongside the colonnades of pillars from Egypt, and the gorgeously-coloured walls of glazed brick imitated from Assyria. In this way the great civilisations which made up the empire contributed each its share to its life. Babylon was the centre of its commercial life and the greatest market of the world.

In many ways the Persian civilisation in itself was better than all those that had gone before. In the first place, when the necessary fighting was over, the empire was held together by trade and not by war, and the subject peoples no longer lived in terror of sudden raids by ferocious soldiers. Persian rule was the mildest men had ever known. Secondly, the Persian kings were generous to conquered peoples, as we have already seen from Cyrus's humane treatment of the Jews. In particular, they were tolerant of the religious views of the conquered. Probably, this was due to the influence of their own beautiful religion. It is easy to understand how the Persians would feel sympathy for the pure monotheism of the Jews and allow them to return to their sacred city, and re-institute the worship of Jehovah, in readiness for the coming of the Messiah they expected.

### CHILDREN'S STORY

Before we begin this story you must look on the map for the countries called Lydia, Media and Persia. The Lydians, Medes and Persians were peoples who came from the forests and grasslands of Asia. For hundreds of years these people had been pressing westwards towards the land of the Two Rivers. They looked with envy on the fine buildings, the gold and the jewels, and the well watered fields, and slowly they became stronger and stronger in fighting men till they were able to win these lands.

About six hundred years before Christ was born the Lydians had reached Asia Minor and ruled over the coast lands on the borders of the Aegean Sea. They were a clever people who learned much from the wonderful land of Crete. They were famous for their fine roads along which merchants travelled backwards and forwards from their land to distant Babylon. Their merchants had become rich, and their king Croesus (560-546 B.C.) was so rich that to this day we sometimes say of a man that he is "as rich as Croesus."



From the picture  
by Herbert Schmalz

Copyright By permission  
of Landecker & Brown,  
Ltd. London E.C.4. pub-  
lishers of the large engraving

### BY THE WATERS OF BABYLON

Nebuchadnezzar and his army the Jews to Babylon

The Medes, who lived near the Caspian Sea, had won much land from the Assyrians, and beyond them were the Persians, the most powerful people of all. You will see from the map what a great country Persia was. We are now ready to continue our story of the Jews.



When Nebuchadnezzar carried away the Jews to Babylon he did not treat them cruelly. He let them make new homes in his land, and some of them were given important work to do.

But the Jews could not forget that they were in a strange land. They often thought of their lost city of Jerusalem and the beautiful temple on the hill called Mount Zion. When they were asked to sing the joyful songs they used to sing in Jerusalem they could only weep.

"By the waters of Babylon we sat down and wept: when we remembered thee, O Zion.

As for our harps, we hanged them up: upon the trees that are therein.

For they that led us away captive required of us then a song, and melody, in our heaviness: Sing us one of the songs of Zion.

How shall we sing the Lord's song: in a strange land?"

There were with the Jews some holy men called prophets who told them not to forget God in this strange land, for they could pray to Him in Babylon as they prayed to Him in Jerusalem. The Jews in their trouble thought more and more about God than they had ever done before, and they began to see that the God whom they worshipped was not a God for them alone, but for all the people in the world.

They remembered how, long years before, Moses had been sent to lead the Israelites out of the land of Egypt, and they prayed and hoped that God would send some one to lead them back again to their old home of Jerusalem. At last after fifty years a new king ruled in Babylon, and he let the Jews go home.

This king was Cyrus the Persian. At first Cyrus ruled over a tiny kingdom called Elam,

which was in the lofty hill country in the south of Persia. But he gradually got together a strong army of bowmen and horsemen and became the leader of the Persians. In battle the bowmen marched shoulder to shoulder pouring deadly showers of arrows on the foe. Some of his soldiers had learned to fight on horseback. These horsemen were dressed in a strange manner. They wore trousers, which were more convenient for horse riding than the long robes such as the Babylonians wore.

The Lydians, Medes, Egyptians and Babylonians all joined together to keep off the Persians. But it was useless. City after city was captured by Cyrus, till all nations were terrified of the king and his fierce Persian soldiers.

Cyrus was not only a great soldier, he was also clever. One day he had to fight an army that had many more horses than he had. This made the enemy's army stronger than his own. Cyrus, however, had some camels, and he knew that horses hate the sight and smell of these animals. He put the camels in front of his soldiers, and when the horses of the enemy saw and smelt them, they ran away, and Cyrus's army won the battle.

First Cyrus took the land of the Medes and joined that to his own kingdom. Then he marched against Lydia. The rich king Croesus was taken prisoner, but Cyrus was content to take his kingdom and let him go free.

The king was now busy for a few years fighting on the borders of his own lands, and then he marched against Babylon. Nebuchadnezzar was dead and the new king had left Babylon in the hands of a prince called Belshazzar. When one of Cyrus's generals came with an army to the great walls of the city, the gates were opened and the soldiers marched in without any fighting. Cyrus now became king of Babylon, and the Jews wondered whether this new king would be kind to them. They had not long to wait. Almost the first thing Cyrus did was to say, "All Jews may go back to their homes."

How glad they were! Some of them, who had houses and families in Babylon, preferred to stay there, but many started on the long journey to Jerusalem. How grateful they must have been to King Cyrus! In Jerusalem they built a new temple though it was not such a grand one as Solomon had built.

King Cyrus was killed in battle and laid to rest in a massive tomb, which may still be seen in the old capital city of Persepolis. A few years went by and messengers began to arrive in Babylon with sad news from Jerusalem.

"We have rebuilt the temple," they said, "but we have no time to build up the wall round the city to keep away our enemies for they are always attacking us."

Now a Jew named Nehemiah was the king's cupbearer, and when he heard the news he was very sad. That night, when he poured out the king's wine, his face was pale.

The king sat in his hall with his queen beside him. It was a splendid place. The walls and ceilings were covered with glittering plates of gold, and the floor with purple carpets. Winged bulls with human heads stood as sentinels before the silver doors of the hall, and in the court of the palace the bodyguards, their lances ornamented with gold and silver apples, were drawn up. They wore golden breastplates over their purple coats, short swords in golden sheaths glittering with jewels, and high Persian caps.

When the king saw Nehemiah's sad face he said, "O Nehemiah, what sorrow is in your heart?"

Nehemiah was afraid but he answered, "Let the king live for ever. I am sad because the city of my fathers lies in ruins."

"What can I do to help you?" asked the king. Then Nehemiah prayed to God, and said boldly, "O king, send me to the city of my fathers, that I may build it up again."

"Go then," said the king. And Nehemiah rejoiced and went.

When he came to Jerusalem, he set the Jews to build up the wall. Each builder

could work with one hand only, for in the other he held a sword or a spear. The people worked hard, the wall was finished, and the Jews could live in safety inside it.

What rejoicing there was when all was done! In the Psalms we read "When the Lord turned again the captivity of Zion, we were like them that dream. Then was our mouth filled with laughter, and our tongue with singing." All the people crowded to the temple and there the laws of God were read, and the people promised to lead good lives.

It became the custom of all true Jews to go up to Jerusalem at the Great Feasts until seventy years after the Birth of Christ, when Jerusalem was utterly destroyed by the Romans.

The Jews still remember King Cyrus as their great deliverer who set them free from the king of Babylon. They never again had a king or a kingdom of their own. They had something, however, more lasting than a kingdom and that was their religion and the Hebrew Bible. The priests in Jerusalem collected all the laws and old stories and put them into one book which is almost the same book as the Old Testament of our Bible.

**The Persians.** Cyrus's son added Egypt to the great Persian Empire which lasted for more than one hundred and fifty years. We have seen how kind Cyrus was to the Jews, and we know that the Persians did not treat their conquered people cruelly. The Persians were religious people who believed that men must work hard to please the Lord of Light and Life, that above all things they must speak the truth and fight for the king. A very Persian boy was taught "to ride, to shoot with the bow, and to speak the truth." The king's word was sacred. When once he had spoken a command it could never be altered. We often speak of the "laws of the Medes and Persians" as something which cannot be changed. When the fighting was done the kings helped all men to work and trade, they did not rule

by fear as the terrible Assyrians had done. The great empire was divided into twenty parts, over each of which was a governor, or "satrap." In each part the king kept officers who were the "King's Eyes" and the "King's Ears," ever watching and listening to see and hear what was going on.

The Persians kept and extended the grand roads of the Lydians, so that swift messengers could carry news from one part of the empire to another. On these roads were inns where travellers and merchants could rest in quiet and safety, and here fresh horses ready saddled were kept for the royal messengers. The wonder of the age was the Royal Road which led from the king's city of Susa to the city of Sardis in Lydia. The Persians too, had many ships, and they were lords over the ships of the Egyptians, Phoenicians, Lydians and Greeks.

In the next stories we shall learn what happened to the Persians when they fought against the Greeks.

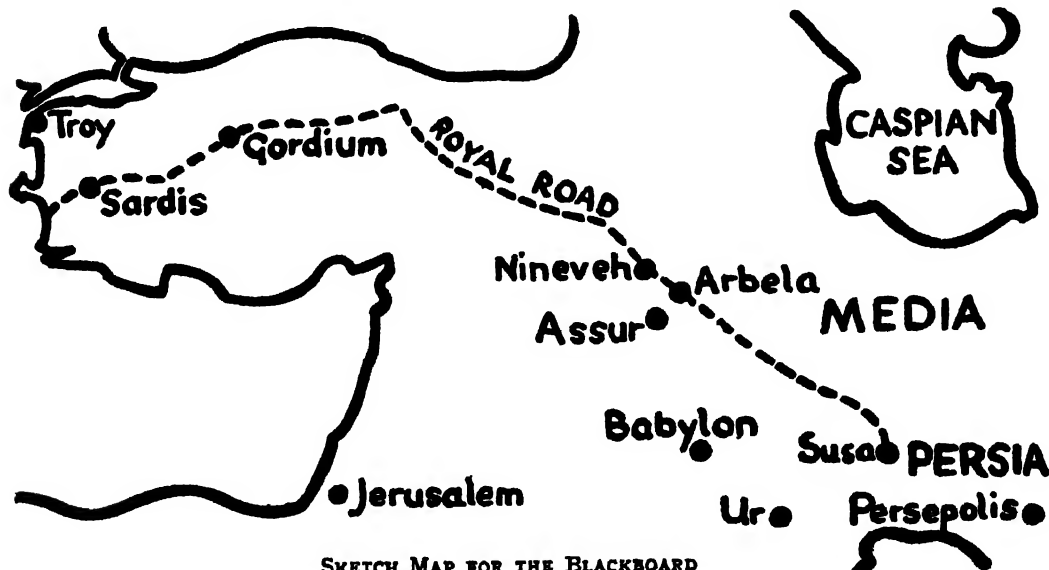
Lydians, Elamites, Persians, Medes and Babylonians. Note the positions of Susa and Sardis, and the Royal Road. As the lesson proceeds shade the portion which represents the extent of the Persian Empire under Cyrus. Egypt was not conquered till the following reign of Cambyses.

**2. The captivity.**—The Babylonish captivity had a marked effect on the Jews. They learned much from the civilisation of the Babylonians. The teaching of the Prophets and the gradual collection of the writings to make the Hebrew Bible influenced the world. When all the Semitic nations (except the Arabs, who remained unconquerable) were swept away, the Jews were held together by the teachings of the Bible. Jerusalem was a nominal capital, their real city was this Book of books. The Jews without a country, or city, scattered throughout the world are linked by the invisible chain of worship to the one God. (Compare the captivity in Babylon with the Israelites in Egypt.)

### TEACHING HINTS

**1. Map.** Draw the map on the blackboard, and point out the countries of the

**3. Persian soldiers.** An illustration of a Persian soldier is given in the Class Picture.



SKETCH MAP FOR THE BLACKBOARD

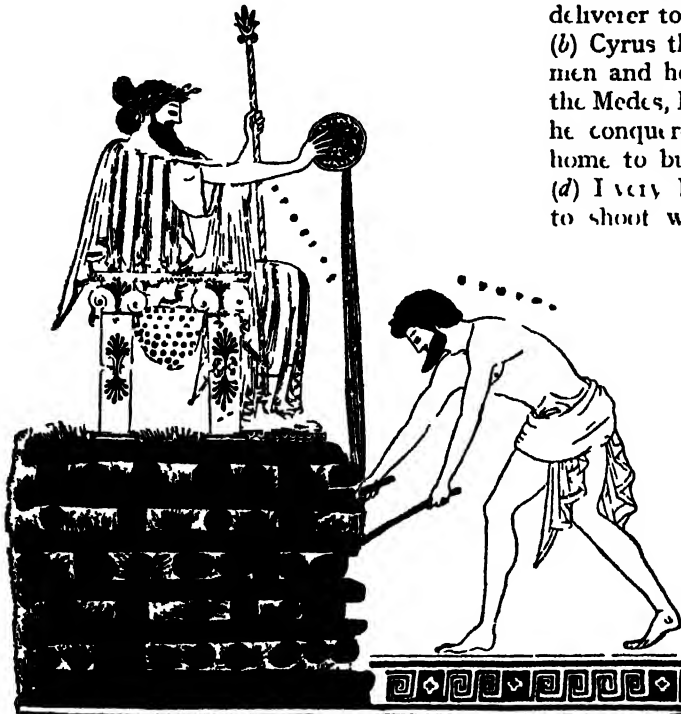
No. 22. Note the trousers and the pointed cap.

**4. Belshazzar.**—This man was the Crown Prince and a noted general. The last of the Babylonian kings, Nabonidas, was more interested in religious and antiquarian pur-

king prays that "he may not give way to sin," but "that the fear of the great divinity" of the Moon-god may "dwell in his heart."

**5. Memory work.**—(a) The Jews in Babylon were sad, but their prophets told them to ask God in their prayers to send a deliverer to let them go home to Jerusalem. (b) Cyrus the Persian, who had many bowmen and horsemen, conquered the lands of the Medes, Lydians and Chaldeans. (c) When he conquered Babylon he let the Jews go home to build a new temple at Jerusalem. (d) Every Persian boy was taught to ride, to shoot with the bow and to speak the truth. (e) The laws of the Medes and Persians could not be changed.

**6. Exercises.**—(a) Why did the Jews in Babylon remember Moses? (b) For what were the Lydians famous? (c) If you wanted to play the part of a Persian soldier, how would you dress? (d) Why were the Jews glad when Cyrus took Babylon? (e) Why was Nehemiah sad when he was pouring out the king's wine? (f) What was the name of the city which Nehemiah called the city of my fathers? (g) What were the first words that a servant said when he spoke to the king? (h) What does this story tell us about carpets? apples? mules? ships? (i) Write sentences to explain the



CROESUS ON THE PYRE

*Attic vase painting, in the Louvre*

Croesus, the king of Lydia, round whose history much legend gathered, is said by Herodotus to have been placed on the pyre by order of his conqueror Cyrus. Cyrus then changed his mind and his servants being unable to put out the flames, Apollo did so, at the invocation of Croesus. This vase seems to illustrate a different version of the story. Here Croesus is shown sitting in state holding a sceptre and pouring a libation from a phial. A slave is doing something to the pyre, but it is not clear what he is doing.

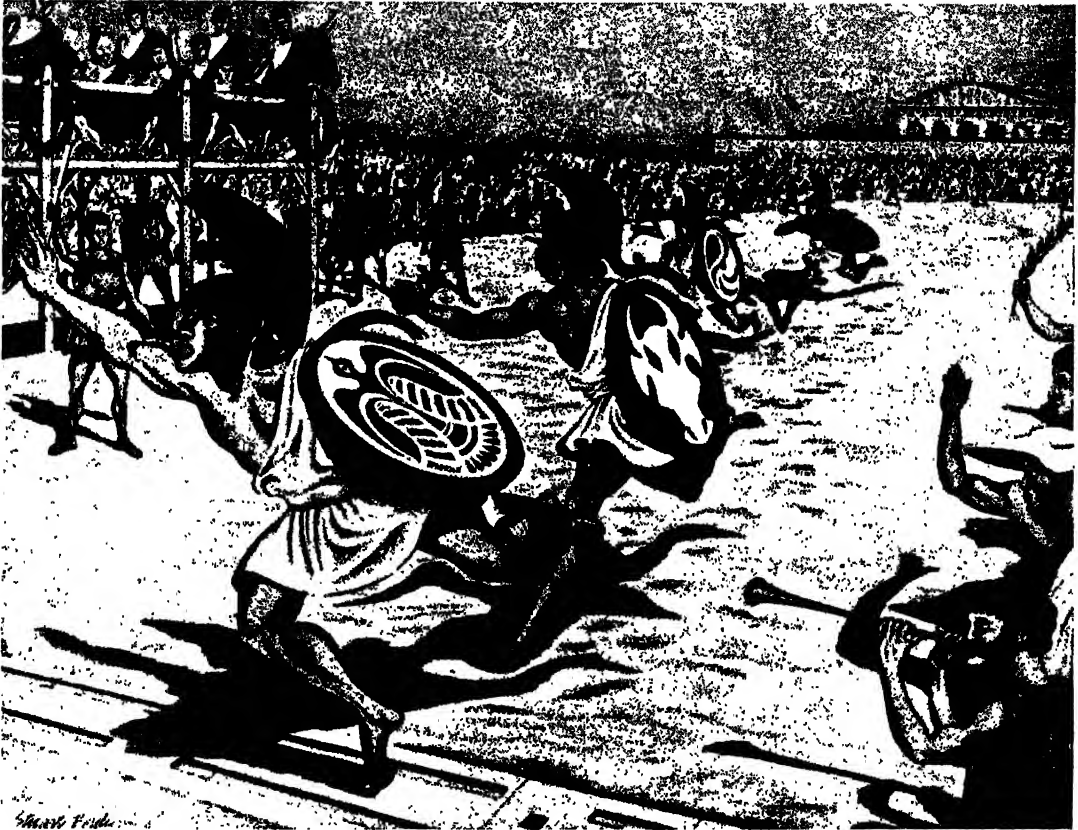
suits than in government, and Babylonia was left in the hands of his son. In an inscription (belonging to the first year of Nabonidas) which has been discovered in the ruins of the temple of the Moon-god at Ur he is called my "first-born son," and the

following: (1) That the Jews in Babylon were sad. (2) That the king of Lydia was very rich. (3) That camels were sometimes used in battle. (4) That Cyrus was kind to the Jews. (5) That a Persian king knew what was going on in every part of his empire.

## X. PHEIDIPPIDES

(THE SWIFT RUNNER)

### PICTURE REFERENCE



FINISH OF THE FOOT RACE AT THE OLYMPIC GAMES  
(Class Picture No. 21 in the portfolio)

### INTRODUCTION

**Hellas, the world's school.**—We have now to trace the rise of Greece, or Hellas as the Greeks called their own land. We have spoken of the great Indo-European invasion which took place roughly during the thousand years from 2000 to 1000 B.C. The

invaders gradually pushed their way into Eastern Europe, driving their flocks before them, with their wives and children in rough carts drawn by horses.

Finding that the land was well-watered (and therefore that pasture was good) they settled in groups of villages. One village in each group, generally by reason of its

better situation, gradually came to be more important than the others, and to be looked on as their capital. The city usually grew up about a hill called the "acropolis," or hill of refuge, to which the people could flee in time of danger. Here were the king's palace and the temples of the gods. Such a group of villages with one central town came to be called a *city-state*.

In time there were hundreds of these Greek city-states scattered throughout the mainland of Greece, on the numerous islands, and along the coasts of Asia Minor and the Mediterranean. But, though all the people who lived in them were Greeks who spoke different forms of the same language, the cities were completely separate, cut off from each other by rivers and mountain ranges. Each had its own government, its own laws and customs, and even its own local god.

**Athens and Sparta.**—The city-states were constantly quarrelling among themselves, and they never formed a united empire like Egypt or Babylonia. The two most important cities, and therefore the two fiercest rivals, were Athens and Sparta. All through Ancient Greek history these two cities were fighting for supremacy. Sparta eventually conquered Athens, because the Spartans were the better soldiers, but Athens had a greater effect on world history, because the Athenians were the nobler race.

The chief cause of this difference is thought to be that the invasion of Greece took place in several great waves. The Athenians came down with the earlier wave of invaders, known as the Ionians, and mingled happily with the peaceful people they found in the east of the peninsula. The Spartans came on a later wave, called the Dorians, and settled in the south, among a fierce people whom they could only subdue by continual fighting. The Athenians lived a more or less peaceful life, but the Spartans were always busy subduing revolts among the conquered people, whom they made their slaves. To enable them to do

this they needed a constant supply of excellent soldiers, with the result that *all the Spartans were soldiers*. Everything else was done by the slaves, or "helots." In the life of a Spartan the service of Sparta came before his own pleasure. The Spartan father carried his new-born child to the Spartan council, and if it was not absolutely strong and healthy it was exposed on the hills or outside a temple to die.

If strong, the boy lived with his mother till he was seven, and was then taken away to the state school (a sort of barracks) to be educated till he was twenty years of age. The education was mainly physical, and was meant to make the boy obedient, able to endure hardship, and ready to fight to the last for his native city. Thus reading and writing were considered unnecessary and were barely taught, but there were endless physical exercises and drills. The boy had plain food and very little of it; he wore only one garment, whatever the weather, and slept on rushes, which he must gather with his bare hands, showing no signs of pain when they were cut by the reeds. If he wanted more food he must steal it, and if caught stealing was flogged *for being caught*! He was also flogged periodically for no reason at all, but to accustom him to pain! The education of girls, too, was on similar lines. Spartan women admired courage in a man more than any other virtue. "Return *with* your shield or *upon* it," a mother would say to her son setting out to battle. She meant, "Return either victorious or dead"—for dead bodies were carried home on their shields. We still speak of hard discipline and strict living as "Spartan."

The result of such training was a race of utterly fearless but uneducated soldiers. A Spartan could do what he was told, but he could not please himself. His whole life was controlled by law. He must marry at thirty, and leave the army at sixty. He must build his house with no other tools than an axe and a saw, and content himself with a log cabin. He must have no gold

or silver money, and the iron coinage of Sparta was so heavy that it took a pair of oxen to carry an amount equal to £50. He must not trade, and as the Spartans hated all strangers, and remained shut up in their city, he saw little of the outside world except when he sallied out to fight. It is not surprising that the Spartans, content with this narrow, uncultured life, have left no literature or art by which we can remember them.

By contrast the life of the Athenians was gracious and beautiful. So far from shutting themselves off from the rest of men, they were eager traders, and, as St. Paul found, "spent their time in nothing else, but either to hear or to tell some new thing." They eagerly welcomed strangers like himself, and listened to anything they had to say of "the good, the true and the beautiful."

The Athenian lived in accordance with these three qualities. Everything he did, from the way he put on his robe to the way he pronounced his words, and everything he had, from the pots and pans in the kitchen to the statue of Hermes at his door, must be perfect.

It is mainly to Athens, and to the treasures of art and literature that she left behind, that we owe our knowledge of Greece and of the Hellenic civilisation. (A fuller account of Athenian life will be given in a later chapter, but enough has been said to show its extreme difference from that of Sparta.)

**The Games.**—Once in four years the differences and disagreements between Athens and Sparta and all the other city-states were forgotten, when the Greeks assembled at the great festival known as "The Games." All the Greek festivals and public holidays were connected with religion, as are so many of our own, e.g. Christmas, Easter and Whitsun. Throughout the year there were special days consecrated to one or other of the many gods of Greece, and the Games were held in honour of Zeus, the king of all the gods, for it was believed that a display

of manly strength was particularly pleasing to him. They took place at Olympia, a plain on the west coast of Greece, under the shadow of Mount Olympus. Hither came Greeks from all parts of the country, from Asia Minor, and from the Greek colonies along the Mediterranean as far west as Italy and Sicily. The Games were open only to those of Greek blood. No criminal might compete. No fighting might break the sacred truce while the Games were being held. At first, they consisted of simple tests of endurance such as the Spartans loved—boxing, running, jumping, wrestling, casting the javelin and throwing the discus. Later, was added chariot racing in great four-horse chariots which thundered along while the driver had much ado to hold the



CASTING THE JAVELIN

horses in check, and the passenger showed his skill by leaping out of the chariot and back while it was going at full speed. Later still, horse racing was added. The reward of the winner was only an olive wreath, but this was prized above all the treasures of Athens, both by its winner and by the city from which he came. The Games attracted, beside the competitors themselves, thousands of visitors, and the plain assumed the appearance of a great fair. Merchants and pedlars displayed their wares, artists and poets their masterpieces. News was exchanged, heralds read out treaties recently concluded between Greek states (for such treaties were frequently made, and as frequently broken), and orators spoke on subjects of general interest. Throughout the month during

which the truce lasted, there was a general sense of unity and fellowship among the Greek community.

As soon, however, as the Games were over and competitors and spectators were at

developing undisturbed, their kinsmen in Asia were not faring so well. Along the coasts of Asia Minor were many Greek city-states which had been conquered by the rich king

Croesus of Lydia of whom mention has already been made. In 546 B.C. Cyrus of Persia conquered Croesus, and these Greek states passed into his hands. But they were not minded to submit without a struggle to this second conquest, and they revolted, sending to their fellow Greeks on the mainland for help. Sparta refused help, but Athens and Eretria sent men and ships. The united army marched on Sardis and burned the city. This act brought on them the wrath of Darius the Great, the successor to Cyrus. He sent out fleets and armies which completely reduced and punished the revolted cities (496-494 B.C.). Then Darius prepared to execute his vengeance on Athens and Eretria.

Envoys were dispatched to demand "earth and water," the sign of submission.

The envoys sent to Athens were put to death, and the Spartans hurled them into a well. The first got the "earth," the second the "water." Such treatment of his envoys further infuriated the king.



THE DISCUS THROWER

Marble statue in the Palazzo Lancelotti, Rome. Copy of a fifth century bronze statue. There is a replica in the British Museum.

home again, the old jealousies and rivalries broke out once more.

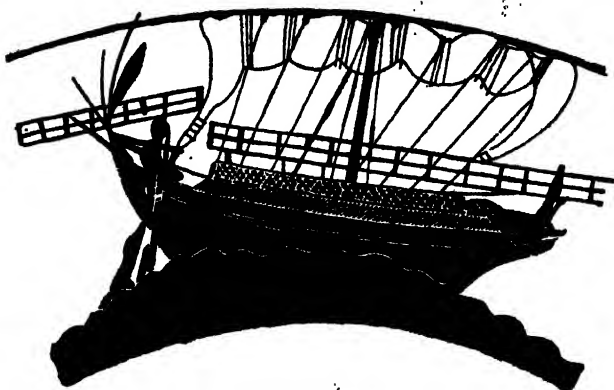
**The Persian invasion (490-479 B.C.).—** While the Greek city-states in Europe were

B.C.  
—2000  
—1900  
—1800  
—1700  
—1600  
—1500  
—1400  
1300  
1200  
—1100  
—1000  
—900  
—800  
700  
—600  
—500  
—400  
—300  
—200  
—100  
—0



The first expedition was wrecked. A second reached Euboea safely and destroyed Eretria (490 B.C.). It then went on to Attica and disembarked in the Bay of Marathon preparatory for the attack on Athens. Pheidippides, a notable swift runner, was sent to Sparta for help, but the Spartans were engaged in a religious festival and could send no assistance for five days. Miltiades, the leading Athenian general, was equal to the occasion. Although he had but a handful of men as compared with the Persian host, he counselled an immediate attack, and marched with his army the twenty-six miles to Marathon. (See map page 90.)

The Persians put all their trust in their bowmen, and their manner of fighting was to pour a hail of arrows into the enemy from a distance, and then, when the foe had been thrown into confusion, to rush upon them and destroy them with lance and dagger. The Greeks, who usually fought hand-to-hand, were more heavily armed than the Persians. Knowing the Persian method of massing their troops in the centre, Miltiades stationed his greatest numbers at the wings, and these having easily defeated their opponents, the whole Greek army fell



EARLY GREEK MERCHANT SHIP  
*From Greek cup of the sixth century B.C.*

on the central body and routed them, 490 B.C.

After this victory, though the Persians were not yet driven out, the Greeks had lost their fear of them. Herodotus says, "they (the Athenians) were the first of all the Hellenes about whom we know who went to attack the enemy at a run, and they were the first who endured to face the Median garments and the men who wore them, whereas up to this time the very name of the Medes was to the Hellenes a terror to hear."

In the great triumph of Athenian valour only one hundred and ninety-two Greeks were slain, and over the fallen heroes a high



THE WARNING OF DARIUS (SCENE ON A VASE, NAPLES)

Darius, seated among his nobles, is warned by one who stands in front of him against the expedition to Greece.

funeral mound (which can still be seen) was raised. The honour of conveying the good news of the victory was given to Pheidippides, who "ran like fire" the twenty-six miles back to Athens. He died from exhaustion after delivering the joyful message, "Athens is saved."

### CHILDREN'S STORY

Many years had passed since the Greeks took Troy. The Greeks still lived in city-states, each with its own ruler, but once every four years the people from all the city states met together with great joy for "The Games." They were held on a wide plain near a river which flows at the foot of Mount Olympus, and for this reason they were called "Olympic Games."

At these Games there were many competitions to see who could run the fastest and the farthest, or who could jump the highest. There were wrestling and boxing matches to see which young man could throw another over or knock him down. There were competitions to see who could throw a spear, or a disc of stone or metal the farthest.

There were chariot races, too, and these were very exciting. A chariot was a wooden carriage drawn by four swift horses. The driver stood up in it to drive and he had a very hard task. The horses galloped fast and he had to guide them carefully round corners, or one chariot would bump into another, and there would be a terrible accident.

Each winner of these races and games was given a wreath of olive leaves, which was more prized by him than much gold. When a young man who had won the olive wreath came home to his own city, all the people came out to meet him, singing and shouting for joy, so proud were they of their hero. Then they would go in a procession to the temple, where the winner would hang up his wreath as a present to the goddess Athena, to thank her for having helped him to win the race.

We shall soon hear the story of a famous race that Pheidippides, a man of Athens, ran alone, but we must first read why he had to run this race.

**Athens.**—Although the people of the Greek cities met together in a friendly way at the Games, they were really very unfriendly when they were at home, and it often happened that they made war on one another.

The two cities that were the most unfriendly were Athens and Sparta. The Athenians and the Spartans were very different in the way they lived and in the things they liked, and when people differ in those ways, they are much inclined to quarrel.

If you had walked through the streets of Athens in those days you would have enjoyed it very much. There were beautiful white marble temples on the hill tops, and fine statues about the city. The jars and vases in the shops and market place were very handsome, and even the pots and pans for the kitchen were worth looking at, they were so shapely and pretty.

The people, who wore long, flowing robes, walked about with happy faces, and they were always ready to have a chat with you. You would have been sure to see some men reading from rolls of papyrus, or hear a poet reciting poetry to his friends.

The Athenians delighted in reading, reciting, play-acting and asking questions. They were ever ready to find out something new, and if you had begun to tell them about



TWO SIDES OF ATHENIAN SILVER MONEY

from the British Museum

On one side is the head of the goddess Athena wearing a crested helmet adorned with three leaves of her sacred olive. On the other side is an owl—Athena's sacred bird—with a spray of two olive leaves and a berry. The letters A Θ E stood for Athena.

your adventures, they would have crowded round to hear all you had to say.

**Sparta.**—If you had then gone for a walk in Sparta you would not have enjoyed it so much. The city was not a fine one. There were few temples and statues to see, for the Spartans had no time to make them. There was nobody to chat with, for the Spartans had no time to talk to strangers.

What were they doing, then, all the day long? They were learning to be soldiers. Every Spartan man was a soldier, and the city was like a great camp. Slaves looked after the sheep and goats, and ploughed the fields; slaves did all the work that had to be done, while the Spartans marched and drilled and learned to shoot their arrows straight.

How old do you think a Spartan boy was when he first began to learn to be a soldier? He was only seven when he was taken away from his mother and sent to a sort of school for soldiers, where he lived a very hard life. He had little food, and for clothes he had only one garment, however cold it might be. He slept on rushes laid on the floor, and if he needed more rushes he had to gather them himself and take care not to cry if the stalks cut his hands. He must never grumble and never cry, and he must always do exactly as he was told.

There was little reading and writing to do at school, but there was plenty of hard drill, so that by the time he was twenty he was ready to join the soldiers.

You see, then, how different were the lives of the Athenians and the Spartans. The Spartans were a brave people, but we remember them only for their bravery. The Athenians loved beauty. The beautiful statues and buildings, the wise books and sweet-sounding poetry of Athens have lasted for over two thousand years.

We must now read of a terrible time when the Greeks were in danger of being conquered by the Persians.

**The Persians.**—Darius the Great, one of the kings of Persia, sent his armies to

Greece. He thought it would be an easy task for them to take first one city and then another, but it was not easy, for the Greeks were brave and clever fighters.

Darius sent messengers to Athens saying, "Give us earth and water." He meant by this, give me earth to show that I am king of your land, and give me water to show that I am king of your sea. But the Athenians threw the messengers into a pit saying, "There is plenty of earth there, take as much as you like."

The king also sent messengers to Sparta saying, "Give us earth and water." But the Spartans threw them down a well saying, "You will find plenty of water down there."

The king was full of anger when he heard the news, and so that he might not forget to punish the Greeks he told his cupbearer to say to him three times at every meal, "Master, remember the Athenians." Each time the king heard the words he grew the more angry. He swore he would burn Athens, and kill all the people or make them slaves. Then he got together a great army which took ship and sailed for Greece. In the year 490 B.C. the Persian troops landed in the Bay of Marathon, which is about twenty-six miles from Athens.

**Pheidippides.**—There was in Athens a young man called Pheidippides, who was the swiftest runner in the city. He had won races in the Games and had received the wreath of olive leaves. One morning, when walking in the market place where people went every day to do their shopping and hear the news, he saw people running to and fro, as they do when they are frightened.

"What is the matter?" asked Pheidippides.

"The Persians have landed at Marathon," was the reply. "We have not enough men to fight them, we shall all be killed."

Just then one of the chief men came out of the council house. "Men of Athens," he shouted, "we must fight, but we need help; who will hurry to the brave Spartans and ask them to help us?"

Pheidippides pushed his way through the crowd. "I will go," he cried. "I will run as I have never run before, and I will be there in two days."

The men of Athens were glad to hear these brave words. They went with him to the city gate, and saw him set off on his great race of one hundred and fifty miles.

All day and all night he ran. There were no good roads in Greece in those days, and Pheidippides had a very rough and difficult journey to make. He had to swim rivers, for there were no bridges, to struggle through forests and marshes, and to climb mountains where there were no paths; but on and on he went, till, at the end of two days, weary and footsore, he reached Sparta.

"O Spartans," he said, "Athens needs your help. Send your soldiers at once to help her against the fierce Persians."

But the men of Sparta answered, "O Pheidippides, we cannot send our soldiers for five days. We are worshipping our gods, and no man may leave the city until the full moon, then we will come gladly."

Sadly Pheidippides turned back to carry the ill news. What a long way it was! How hard he had to struggle to keep himself from falling! Yet, in two days the hero reached Athens and gave his message.

"Very well," said the Athenians, "then we must fight the Persians alone."

The men hastened to fetch their swords and spears, and to buckle on their armour. With stout hearts they marched the twenty-six miles to Marathon. Here they found the Persians resting quietly by the seashore, their ships riding at anchor in the bay. The Athenians halted to see what the Persians would do. Several days passed while the two foes watched each other at a distance. Then the Persians got ready to attack and their long line of bowmen, advancing towards the Greeks, shot their arrows like rain. Now the Athenians did not wait to be killed by arrows. Swiftly down the hill they ran at the enemy, shouting as they went. They ran so fast, and were so eager to fight, that soon the men at each end

of the Persian army were beaten, and fled away to their ships. Only the middle part of the army was left. There was a terrible fight, but in the end the Persians were driven to their ships.

"Run back to Athens, Pheidippides," cried the Greek general, "and tell the people the good news." Away went the swift runner once more, running like fire back to Athens.

But it was the last race of Pheidippides. The two long journeys and the battle had tired him so terribly, that when he reached the market place he fell down. The citizens crowded round the dying hero and tried to revive him. Lifting up his head, he gasped out, "Athens is saved," and then he fell back dead.

Should you ever go to Greece, there, near the Bay of Marathon, you will see a high mound which was raised over the brave Greeks who were killed in the battle.

### TEACHING HINTS

**1. Map.**—Draw the sketch map as shown on page 88 on the blackboard and point out the positions of Mount Olympus, Marathon, Athens, Sparta, etc. Show the route taken by the Persian fleet.

**2. Olympic Games.**—Probably many children have seen a chariot race at the cinema, and they will be very willing to add further details. London children will be familiar with "Olympia." Mention the Olympic Games which are held between representatives of nations at the present time. Note that these games foster friendship and good feeling. Probably some questioning will be necessary for children to appreciate why a simple olive wreath was so highly prized.

**3. Rolls of papyrus.**—Refer again to the Egyptian writing on papyrus. How did the Greeks learn the use of papyrus and where did they get their supplies? (Trade between the two countries.) Note especially that *books*, like those of Homer, have lasted and

that *we* can still enjoy them. The Spartans have left us nothing but a name. (See Lessons X and XI on "Writing" and "Pens, Ink and Paper" in the First Year's Course.)

**4. No good roads in Greece.**—Refer to the map, show how mountainous the country is, and point out the difficulties of Pheidippides' journey.

Although the Spartans were excellent soldiers, they were usually reluctant to fight outside their own borders. They lived by rule, and allowed nothing, not even a national emergency, to interfere with their plans.

**6. Their armour.**—See Class Picture No. 22 for a Persian and a Greek in armour.



SKETCH MAP FOR THE BLACKBOARD

Compare with the famous Royal Road in Darius' own empire, and again mention the use of the swift messengers who could use horses. How are swift messages sent to day?

**5. We cannot send our soldiers.**—Owing to the rivalry between Athens and Sparta neither was very ready to help the other in

**7. Memory work.**—(a) Every four years Greeks from all the city-states met near Mount Olympus for "The Games." (b) The Athenians loved all beautiful things, while the Spartans cared only for being brave soldiers. (c) Darius the Great of Persia sent his armies against the Greeks. (d) Pheidippides ran one hundred and fifty miles to ask the Spartans to help the Athenians. (e) Pheidippides ran from Marathon to Athens to tell the news that Athens was saved.

**8. Exercises.**—(a) Why were the Olympic Games called by that name? (b) What happened when a winner in the Games went to his home? (c) How do we know what Athens was like 2,000 years ago? (d) How were the Spartans taught to be brave? (e) Why did Darius the king grow angry when his cupbearer said at meal times, "Master, remember the Athenians"? (f) Why did Pheidippides run his long race? (g) Sometimes in England to-day men run in a long race called a *Marathon*. Why is it called by this name? How long is a *Marathon* race?

## XI. LEONIDAS

(THE BRAVE KING OF SPARTA)

### PICTURE REFERENCE



GREEK SOLDIER AND PERSIAN

**T**HE Class Picture (No. 22 in the portfolio) shows a Greek Soldier and Persian, adapted from the above illustration. The Greek wears padded bronze greaves, a corselet or breastplate consisting of leather plated with bronze, a bronze shield, and a bronze helmet with a neck-piece and short movable cheek-pieces and adorned with a plume or crest. From the waist a leather garment is worn, falling in a fringe of thongs over the hips. The corselet, in two halves

which are laced together in front and possess flaps coming over the shoulders, is put above this, and a plated belt goes round and braces the whole together. By his left side he wears a short sword.

The Persian is not so well equipped for hand-to-hand fighting as the Greek, for the Persians relied almost entirely on the bow, avoiding when possible hand-to-hand combats. Herodotus thus describes them: "About their heads they had soft felt caps

called *tiaras*, and about their body tunics of various colours with sleeves, presenting the appearance of iron scales like those of a fish, and about the legs trousers; and instead of the ordinary shields they had shields of wickerwork under which they hung quivers; and they had short spears and large bows and arrows of reed, and, moreover, daggers hanging by the right thigh from the girdle." In another passage Herodotus describes a warrior as wearing a cuirass of gold scales underneath, and over the cuirass a crimson tunic.



### INTRODUCTION

The defeat of the Persians at Marathon brought the Greeks only a temporary respite. Ten years later (480 B.C.) another large Persian army gathered from forty-five subject nations, was advancing overland to Greece. They were supported by a huge fleet of a thousand ships, and once again it seemed that Greece was doomed.

But this time the Greeks were better prepared. The Athenians had built a fleet of warships and were now ready to meet their enemies by sea, as well as by land. The weather, too, aided the Greeks, for a

storm destroyed over a hundred of the Persian ships.

Then, while the Athenian and Persian fleets were engaging by sea, the dauntless Leonidas and his four thousand mixed Greek troops held the Persian army at bay at the pass of Thermopylae, or the *Hot Springs*. Here the road between the cliffs and the sea was at one point only about fourteen yards wide, and the Persians, coming through the mountains, were unable to spread out in battle array, and could attack the Greeks only in limited numbers.

There is no knowing how long Leonidas might have held the invaders in check had not a traitorous Greek named Ephialtes shown them a second route over the mountains. Leonidas allowed to escape all but his own band of Spartans and a few others who preferred death to dishonour, and there this gallant band fell fighting to the last. Their bravery stirred all Greece and finally broke the long-standing prestige of Persia.

Xerxes marched on Athens, but before he reached it the bulk of the Athenians had fled from the city and taken refuge on the little islands near by. This they did on the advice of Themistocles, a wise Athenian statesman



THEMISTOCLES SUBJECTED TO OSTRACISM

Potsherd found near the Athenian Acropolis

This potsherd on which has been scratched the name of Themistocles was used to vote against him on one of the occasions when the Athenians voted to decide whether he should be banished into exile.

who had fought at Marathon. This man was the hero of the time. It was he who persuaded the Athenians that a fleet was necessary to repulse the Persians. It was he who had managed the campaign hitherto, and it was his skill which enabled the Greeks to win the great battle which followed.

The stage was now set. On the mainland was drawn up the Persian army beneath the flames of Athens which they had set on fire after killing its remaining defenders. On the islands around crowded the anxious Athenian refugees with rage in their hearts as they watched their homes burn. And in the bay of Salamis lay the three hundred Greek warships facing the huge Persian fleet. The Greeks seemed to have little chance against them, and Xerxes was so certain of victory that he watched the battle from his throne placed on the hills overlooking the bay.

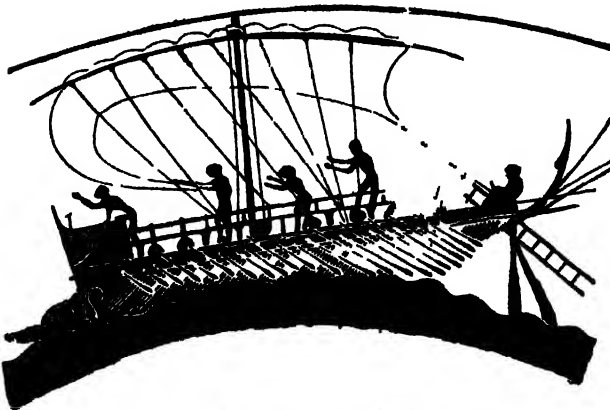
It seemed as if the Greek admirals had lost heart, for they were preparing to flee. In this crisis, Themistocles once again saved the situation. He sent a false message to



Xerxes that the Greek fleet was about to slip away. This had the result he desired of forcing a battle. The Persians surrounded and attacked the Greeks, who were obliged to fight to defend themselves.

**Battle of Salamis (480 B.C.)** — Now was seen once more the advantage of skill over numbers. Xerxes' huge fleet was overcrowded, and the captains, in their desire to get to the front and attract the king's attention by special gallantry, rammed and sank each other's vessels. Moreover, as Herodotus says, "since they (the Greeks) knew how to swim, those whose ships were not destroyed, and who were not slain in hand-to-hand conflict, swam over to Salamis, but of the Barbarians the greater number perished in the sea, not being able to swim."

Ship after ship was wrecked or sunk, and at last the Persians fled. Xerxes sent the fleet to guard the bridge of boats he had left at the Hellespont, and marched back as rapidly as possible with the main army, leaving behind him a powerful force under his son-in-law, Mardonius, to continue the war.



EARLY GREEK SHIP

From a Greek cup of the sixth century B.C.



The next year (479 B.C.) this general made tempting offers of peace to Athens. But the Athenians refused to betray the rest of Greece by making an alliance with Persia, and the Persian army once again marched against Athens and for the second time burned the city (which the Athenians had begun to rebuild) to the ground.

But this was the last Persian triumph. The real crisis of the war had come. Sparta and Athens joined forces, and at the battle of Plataea and the sea fight of Mykale defeated both the Persian army and the Persian fleet. Eleven years after their first invasion the Persians were driven out, never to set foot in Europe again. The miracle had happened! The treasures of Greek civilisation were safe for posterity. It was "a victory for human freedom."

The victory of Salamis was a turning point in the history of Athens, for she was free to build up a maritime empire. The trade of the Aegean gradually came into her hands and she took the place of the commercial cities of Asia Minor.

The Athenians began again under the direction of their wise ruler *Pericles* to rebuild their city, and during the century that followed, often known as the "Golden Age" of Greece (440-330 B.C.), Greece (as represented by Athens chiefly, but also by other Greek cities) was able to develop the art, architecture, literature, philosophy and science from which we have learnt so much, and which have made her "the school of the world."

### CHILDREN'S STORY

After the battle of Marathon, King Darius began to collect a still larger army to march against Athens, but he died before the army was ready. His son Xerxes went on with the work, though it was nearly ten years before he actually set out for Greece. The army marched nearly all the way by land. They had to cross the sea at a narrow place called the Hellespont, and here a long double bridge of boats was made. How long do you think it took the army to cross the

bridge? Seven days and seven nights, with soldiers crossing all the time! What a mighty army!

It was a strange-looking army, too, for there were men from all the forty-five lands the Persians had conquered. The Medes and Persians wore trousers, coats with iron scales on them like fish scales, and soft cloth caps. Some men were dressed in skins or leather, some in brightly-coloured woollen garments, and others in linen clothes. The soldiers from far-away India wore garments of tree cotton. An old writer tells us that a tribe of black men from Africa had skins of leopards and lions tied upon them, and their bodies painted red and white. Upon their heads these men wore the skin of a horse's forehead with the ears and the mane still in place.

The soldiers wore many kinds of coverings for the feet. Some had boots of deer skin; some had boots that reached to the knee, and others had them to the middle of the shin; many wore sandals, while others wrapped the lower part of their legs in red-coloured strips of cloth.

There were all sorts of helmets and shields. There were helmets of brass, of bronze and of wood; caps of cloth and caps of leather. There were shields of wickerwork, ox hide, bronze and wood. Nearly every man in the great army carried a bow and arrows, and in addition there were spears, swords, daggers, axes and clubs.

Some of the horse soldiers, or cavalry, carried no weapons except a dagger, but they used ropes of twisted thongs with a noose at the end. These they threw at the enemy and caught a man or horse in the noose. There were many chariots in the army, some drawn by horses and others by wild asses. Last of all, in their long, flowing robes, came the Arabians mounted on camels. These came last in order that the horses should not be frightened by the camels.

When the army had crossed the bridge of boats, they marched close by the sea in sight of a huge fleet of one thousand of their

ships, which were ready to attack any Greek ships that might venture forth. This great army had many miles to march before reaching Greece and the men had to be fed. Some food they carried with them, but it was not nearly enough for all, so the people who lived in the country through which the army passed had to supply the meals. Heralds had been sent many months before to tell the people to prepare food for the coming army. Then the chief men in the various cities gave out grain to all the houses, and the people made wheat and barley meal for many months. They fattened numbers of cattle and birds. Some birds were kept in cages and others in ponds. For the king's use they made drinking cups and mixing bowls of gold and silver. When the army came to the place chosen, a tent was pitched for the king, but the rest of the army remained in the open air. The food was brought forth and the men ate their fill and afterwards slept. On the next day the tent was taken up and away marched the army, tramp, tramp, all the day long, until they came to the next place where food was to be had.

**Leonidas and his army.**—The Greeks had long known that some day the Persians would come again, so a wise leader told them to work hard and build many warships. When they heard that Xerxes and his great army were on the way, they sent an army to a place called Thermopylae (480 B.C.) where they knew the Persians would have to pass. Thermopylae means *Hot Springs*. It was so called because at this place springs of hot water spouted out of the ground.

This was a splendid place to choose, for there was only one narrow road

with a great cliff towering on one side and the deep sea on the other. Here stood four thousand Greeks with Leonidas, the brave king of Sparta, at their head. With him he had three hundred Spartans, the bravest soldiers in the world. Leonidas and his Spartans took the most dangerous place in front of the army and built up a wall. There they waited quietly for the enemy.

When the Persians came to this narrow pass they could hardly believe their eyes! There in front of them was a tiny army of only four thousand men ready to fight their hundreds of thousands. "They must be mad," said Xerxes, and he sent a messenger to see what the madmen were doing.

When the messenger came back he said, "O king, I rode up and looked over the wall and there I saw many young men combing their hair."

"Why were they doing that?" asked the king. Then a man who knew about the Spartans stepped forward and said, "O king, these men have come to fight us so that we may not pass this way, and I know that they mean to go on fighting till they are all killed, for when the Spartans know that they will soon be killed in battle they always take special care in arranging their long hair."

The king laughed. "I shall not trouble to fight these madmen," he said. "We will wait, and when they see how huge my army is they will run away in fear." So the army waited one day, and two days, and five days later they were still waiting and the Spartans were still there.

Then the king ordered his men to attack, but every time a Persian soldier came near the wall he was killed. At last the king commanded, "Let the Immortals go forth." These were his best soldiers, his own special bodyguard. There were ten thousand of them, and it seemed to their enemies that they never died (an *Immortal* means a man who never dies), for as fast as one fell, another man took his place, so that there were always ten thousand Immortals. They were dressed in brightly coloured garments

glittering with gold, and had golden pomegranates and apples on the butt ends of their spears.

Xerxes was so sure they would break through the Spartans that he sat on his throne to watch the battle. But the Immortals could not beat the handful of Spartans any more than the other soldiers could, and three times during the fight Xerxes jumped up from his seat in agony, for he thought that all his brave soldiers would be cut to pieces. The Spartans had no fear of the Persians. Sometimes they would pretend to run away and then the Persians would rush after them, thinking that they had won the battle. Suddenly, the Spartans would turn round and destroy every man who could be caught.

Then a shameful thing happened. Xerxes was sitting wondering what he could do next to conquer the Greeks and get into their land, when a little man crept up to him.

"Who are you?" asked the king.

"I am a Greek," answered the little man, "but I do not love my people. How much money will you give me if I show you a secret way across the mountains so that you may fall on your enemies from behind and kill them?"

"As much money as you like," cried the king joyfully.

So that night the traitor (for so we call a man who allows enemies to hurt his country for the sake of gold) led the Persians by a steep path over the high mountains.

They crept as silently as they could, but it was a very still night and the dead leaves under their feet rustled.

"What was that?" said some Greeks who were on guard below. But almost before they could seize their arms the Persians were rushing down upon them, and they fled to Leonidas.

"The Persians are coming in the rear," they gasped. Leonidas knew at once what had happened. He knew that they could no longer defend the pass. "All is over. We cannot hope to win," he told the Greeks.

"But there is no need for you all to be killed. Go back to your homes: my Spartans and I will wait here for the enemy, for our law is that no Spartan may ever desert his post."

Most of the Greeks hurried away, but the Spartans turned proudly to face the foe. There was a long fierce battle, which lasted till all the Spartans' spears were broken to pieces. Then the Persians fell on the Spartans, and all were killed except one. When this man went home to Sparta the people called him a coward for coming home alive, when all his comrades had perished.

The Persians now marched on their way to Athens. The poor Greeks knew they could not beat the great army, and most of them fled away in ships to the little island of Salamis near by. There they were safe, but when they looked across the sea to their beloved city, they saw smoke and flames rising from it, and they knew that the Persians had set it on fire.

They could see the great Persian army drawn up, and high on the hills sat King Xerxes on his golden throne, ready once more to watch the battle. It was not a land fight this time, but a sea fight. In the blue waters below lay hundreds of great Persian ships, while facing them were only three hundred and seventy-eight small Greek ships.

But the sea near the island was too narrow for the many Persian ships. They crashed into each other and got in each other's way. The smaller Greek ships turned swiftly this way and that and sank many of them. Some Greek ships were sunk, too, but the Greeks could all swim, for they were used to the sea, while the Persians, who came from countries where there is no sea, could not swim and were drowned.

At last Xerxes saw that the Greeks had won the great sea fight of Salamis. Hastily he ordered the ships that were left to go to the Hellespont and guard the bridge of boats. Then he quickly marched the chief part of his army back home, leaving behind a noted general with many soldiers to fight the Greeks again.

Twice more the Greeks had to fight the Persians, but at last they drove them out of the land and they never came back again.

### TEACHING HINTS

**1. Map.**—Draw the map on the black-board and point out the routes taken by Xerxes' army and fleet.

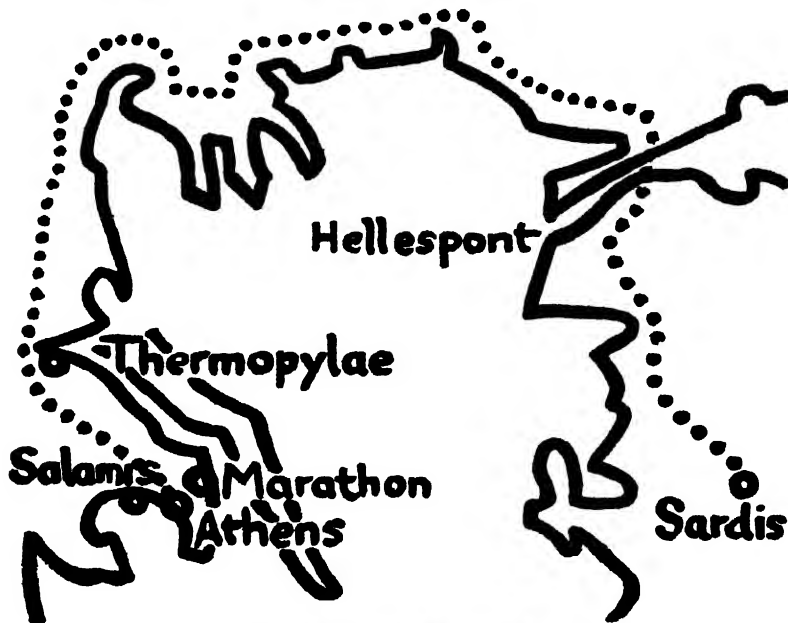
**2. Dress of the great army.**—Children are apt to think that soldiers were always dressed in uniform,—an error that should be corrected. See that children clearly understand that men of all the conquered countries were called in to fight for Persia.

**3. Combing their hair.**—The children will appreciate the calm fortitude with which the Spartans prepared for a death struggle. Refer again to the Spartan mode of life as told in the previous chapter. In the final fight all the Spartans remained at their posts, many of the other Greeks went home.

**4. Memory work.**—(a) Xerxes got together a great army which crossed the Hellespont

by a bridge of boats and marched towards Greece. (b) Leonidas with three hundred Spartans and some other Greeks guarded the road at Thermopylae. (c) The Persians could not pass that way, but a traitor showed them a path over the mountains, and then Leonidas and his brave Spartans were all killed. (d) The Persians burned Athens, but they were beaten at the sea fight of Salamis, and most of the army went home.

**5. Exercises.**—(a) Why were the soldiers in Xerxes' army dressed in various ways? (b) What was the chief weapon that the soldiers carried? (c) How did the army get food while on the march? (d) Why did the Greeks choose Thermopylae for the great battle? (e) Who were the *Immortals*? Why were they so called? How were they dressed for battle? (f) How did the Persians defeat the Greeks? (g) Why is the sea fight of Salamis famous? (h) Explain the following: (1) How Xerxes' army crossed the narrow sea. (2) Why the Spartans were combing their hair. (3) Most of the Persian soldiers could not swim.



SKETCH MAP FOR THE BLACKBOARD

## XII. ALEXANDER THE GREAT

(THE MAN WHO NEVER LOST A BATTLE)

### PICTURE REFERENCE



ALEXANDER THE GREAT ON HIS HORSE BUCEPHALUS

**T**HE Class Picture (No. 23 in the portfolio) is an extension of the above illustration of Alexander the Great taken from a coloured relief of a Greek sarcophagus of the late fourth century B.C.

It was discovered at Sidon. The king is engaged in battle with the Persians; a dead body lies under his horse's feet. He wears the short chiton and chlamys, and the lion's scalp of Hercules over his head.

## INTRODUCTION

The Indo-European tribes who invaded and settled the lands north of the Mediterranean did not all become civilised at the same rate. While the Greeks rapidly developed city life, their northern neighbours were still peasants. The Macedonians who lived in the mountains north of Greece were particularly backward. They could neither read nor write, and their life generally was rough and uncultured.

Gradually the kings of Macedon came into contact with Greek civilisation and became interested in Greek literature and art. Philip of Macedon, father of Alexander, had a Greek education, for he spent some years as a hostage at Thebes. While he was in Greece he saw the helpless condition of the disunited Greek states.

To face the common danger of the Persian invasion they had for once united, but as soon as this danger was removed, the old antagonisms broke out again. In 431 B.C. a war, known as the Peloponnesian War, broke out between Athens and Sparta. By 404 B.C. Sparta had completely triumphed. In a few years, however, Thebes, another prominent state, in her turn conquered Sparta. Then Athens and Sparta allied against Thebes. It was plain that no one state was strong enough to govern the whole of Greece.

The distracted condition of Greece offered Philip an opportunity to secure for Macedonia supreme power over the Greeks. His first step was to prepare an efficient army. He created a standing army of professional soldiers. He taught them to fight in a massed body of spearmen known as the "phalanx," such as he had seen in Thebes, but he made it deeper and more massive, and equipped his soldiers with longer spears. The business of the phalanx was to attack the main body of the enemy while cavalry charged the

flanks. The reliance on massed infantry and cavalry to win a battle was something new in warfare, and another novel feature of the Macedonian army consisted of artillery in the form of huge catapults, which were used to throw darts and heavy stones for three hundred yards. The Macedonian phalanx, with its foot soldiers, cavalry, archers, and machines formed an irresistible fighting force.

Philip's first important success was won



GREEK WARRIORS ARMING

*Ked figured Attic vase at Vienna (about 500 B.C.)*

The interior and part of the exterior of a drinking cup. The circular picture from the interior represents a woman pouring out wine for a warrior to make a libation and drink before he departs.

in Western Thrace. Here he founded the city of Philippi, and secured some rich gold mines, the income from which enabled him to pay his standing army and fit out a fleet to oppose that of the Greeks. Philip then annexed the Greek cities on the peninsula of Chalcidice which served as a base for his navy. Next, he occupied the principal fortress in Thessaly and brought his frontier as far south as the pass of Thermopylae.

Among the Greeks, Philip had many friends who were ready to accept him as a leader who would unite all Greece, but he had also many opponents, of whom the chief was a noted Athenian orator named Demosthenes. This man warned his countrymen of

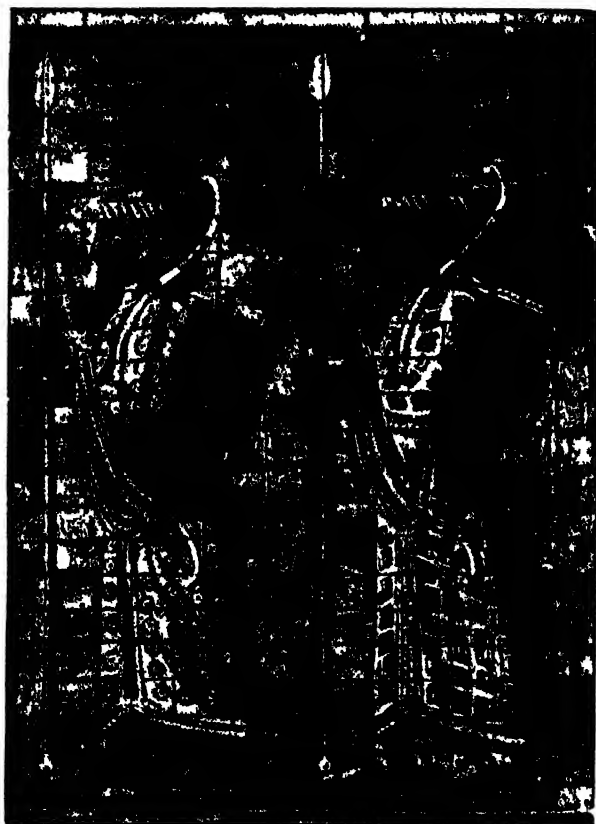
perils, and we still use this name to describe a denunciation directed against one particular person. They had the effect of rousing opposition against Philip, so that it became clear to him that he could become master of Greece only by military conquest.

With his well-trained army Philip entered Central Greece. Athens, Thebes and some smaller states formed an alliance against him, but at the battle of Chaeroneia (338 B.C.) the Macedonians routed the Greeks. Philip now became master of all the Greek states except Sparta, which preserved its liberty. Having conquered Greece, Philip turned his attention to the east. It had been a long cherished desire of the Greeks to attack Persia, and they now provided him with men and ships for the undertaking. Before he could set out he was assassinated (336 B.C.) and the task of invading Asia Minor passed to his brilliant son Alexander.

This man was only twenty years of age at his accession. He had been educated by the great Greek philosopher, Aristotle, who had given him a love for all that was best and noblest in Greece. He was a keen athlete, well-trained in every warlike exercise, he had his father's resolute will and high ambitions. He first showed his mettle by reconquering certain Greek city-states which had revolted on the death of Philip. Thebes was besieged. The city was captured and destroyed and its inhabitants were sold into slavery. The fate of Thebes induced the other states to submit without further resistance. Alexander was then able to take up his father's plan for the invasion of Asia

Minor. In 334 B.C. he marched eastwards with an army of about 35,000 infantry and cavalry, of which 13,500 were Macedonian, and the rest mixed Greek troops.

On his way through Asia Minor he stopped at Troy, where once before the Greeks had fought the people of Asia, and there he dedicated himself as the champion of



PERSIAN ARCHERS

*Relief of Enamelled Tiles from Susa*

The soldiers wear long tunics with broad sleeves, laced shoes, gold bracelets on their arms and pendants in their ears. The headress is a cord, twisted in cable fashion and bound round the head. The butt end of the lance is an apple, the quiver with bow case hangs on the left shoulder.

their danger by a series of burning speeches. "When, Athenians," he cried, "will you rouse and do your duty? Will you always assemble in the market squares to ask each other 'What is new?' What can be newer than a man from Macedon making himself victor of Athens and master of all Greece?"

These speeches are known as the *Philip-*

**B.C.**  
 —2000 Europe against Asia. Then he marched southwards. He defeated an army led by the Persian satraps which was sent to stop him at the river Granicus (334 B.C.), and continued his march through Asia Minor, making himself master of all its cities and its seaports.

—1700 Near the Gulf of Issus (333 B.C.) he met the main Persian army, led by their great king, Darius III., himself. His trained soldiers and swift cavalry easily won the day and the Persians fled across the river Euphrates, from whence Darius sent a letter asking for peace, and suggesting that the Euphrates should be a boundary, all the land west of it to belong to Macedonia.

—1200 This was a generous offer, and Alexander's councillors urged him to accept it. But Alexander would not be satisfied with anything less than the whole Persian empire. He took Phoenicia, where he destroyed Tyre, the ancient Phoenician trading city which the Persians had made the stronghold of their sea power. From there he marched through Palestine into Egypt, where the Egyptians, miserable under Persian rule, welcomed him as a deliverer. —700 On the western mouth of the Nile he laid the foundations of Alexandria to replace Tyre as a trading centre. He peopled the new city largely with —600 Jews whom he had taken prisoners in the capture of Jerusalem. Having thus taken possession of all the eastern Mediterranean seacoast, so that no Persian fleet could land behind him or cut off his retreat, he —400 marched north-east to Persia to complete the conquest of the Persian empire. —200

—100 Marching by way of the Fertile Crescent, he came to the ruins of Nineveh. A few miles away, at Arbēla, the Persian army was

prepared for battle. Darius had an excellent position and a great force, but nothing could stop Alexander's well-trained troops. Once more Darius fled from the battlefield and once more the Persians, deserted by their king, sought safety in flight. After this victory Alexander advanced on Persia proper and occupied the rich cities of Susa, Persepolis and Ecbatana. From Ecbatana Darius fled before the all-conquering enemy. Alexander set off in hot pursuit, but before he could come up with Darius the fugitive king had been taken and stabbed by his own attendants, 330 B.C.

The next six years were spent by Alexander and his soldiers in marvellous adventures in Central Asia. For three years they were engaged in subjugating the outlying provinces of Persia, and to win their submission Alexander married Roxana, the beautiful daughter of a Bactrian chief. He then desired to enter India, and led his war-worn troops through the difficult passes of the Hindu Kush mountains and entered the plain of the Indus basin. Here he was opposed by an army of 40,000 men under Porus, king of the Land of the Five Rivers, and once again he was victorious. He now meant to march on as far as the Ganges, but his men mutinied and he was forced to turn back. On his way home he stopped again at Babylon, and there, in the midst of the tremendous labour of organising and making plans for the extension of his vast empire, he was taken ill and died at the age of thirty-three, 323 B.C.

Alexander had been less than twelve years in Asia, and in that short time he had conquered nearly the whole of the continent as far east as India, and, what was still more important, he had carried Greek civilisation into its very heart. Traces of Greek influence are still to be found in the ancient art of India, and even in that of China and Japan.

He and his men adopted in return many Persian customs (Alexander himself, for instance, married two Persian princesses and many of his officers took Persian wives) and thus was brought about a fusion of east



and west This age is known in consequence as the period of Graeco-Oriental, or Hellenistic, civilisation As examples of this fusion we may notice how Alexander introduced (a) Greek city-states into Asia, and (b) Oriental monarchy into Europe

(a) Alexander made a practice of planting along his line of march cities organised on a Greek model During his campaign no fewer than seventy were thus founded In these cities, which were all trading centres, east and west could meet on terms of friendly

the earth's circumference, *Hero*, who discovered the power of steam and astonished the Alexandrians by making the temple gates open themselves by merely pressing a lever, and many others Here the Hebrew Old Testament was translated into Greek and became accessible to the modern world As Athens declined, the leadership both in trade and culture passed eastward to Alexandria, which became the most important port in the Mediterranean

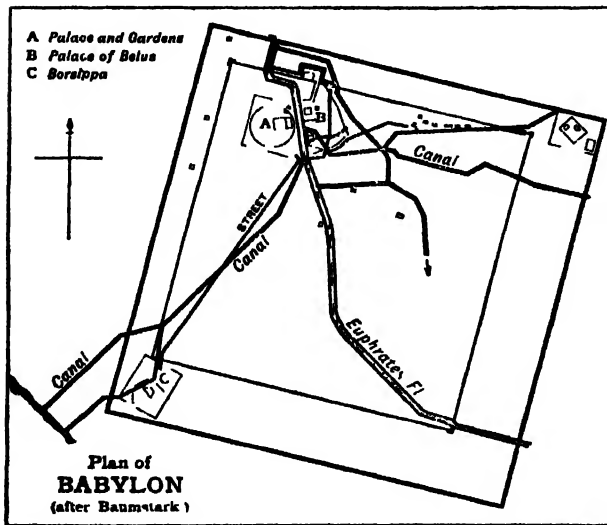
(b) After his conquests in Egypt and the Fertile Crescent, Alexander adopted the title and the pomp of an oriental monarch, he claimed divine descent, and surrounded his court with elaborate ceremonial It was in this way that the eastern ideas of absolute monarchy, and the divine right of kings to rule, first came to the west

The character of Alexander, as will be seen from his story, is difficult to estimate fairly It seems to have been a curious blend of good and bad qualities The one point that stands out clearly is the strength of his personality, which subjugated and held together during his lifetime almost the whole known world. After his death no single man was found able to carry on his work, and his empire was divided into satrapies under semi-independent rulers, who plunged into a long period of civil wars, which only ended when the empire of Alexander

was absorbed by the growing power of Rome.

### CHILDREN'S STORY

Although the Greeks had driven the Persians from their land they could not live in peace together The old quarrels between the city-states started again and a cruel war followed It seemed as if the Greek states would never be united, but at length a foreign king won the land and he ruled all the city-states.



PLAN OF BABYLON

The square A includes the palace in which Alexander died the park surrounding it and the hanging gardens Two lines of wall are represented, as described by Herodotus, who gave the measurement of the outer walls as sixty miles in circumference

equality This was especially true of Alexandria, the greatest of them all named after the conqueror himself It later became the meeting place of many nations, and was famed throughout the world for its great *library*, where was stored the accumulated wisdom of the ages, and its *museum*, an institution which we should now describe as a university. Here assembled all the great men of the age—*Euclid*, whose name is familiar to us in connection with geometry, *Eratosthenes* the geographer, who calculated

This king was Philip, who lived in the mountainous country of Macedon north of Greece. Philip's people were mostly rough peasants who could neither read nor write. They were part of the race who had settled in Greece long years before, and their language was something like the Greek language. Philip trained his men to fight. In those days men of all classes went to fight when they were needed. The peasant came from the field, the shepherd left his flocks, the potter his wheel, the tradesman his shop, to take up the spear, sword and bow. Philip paid some men to remain soldiers, just as is done in England to-day.

These men then became skilful fighters, and it was soon found that Philip's trained army could defeat all others, even when their numbers were much greater than his own. Philip also used cavalry, that is soldiers on horses, and he had besides huge machines, called catapults, that could throw darts and heavy stones further than a man could shoot an arrow with his bow.

With this army Philip conquered the Greek city states, and then he prepared to march with Macedonians and Greeks into Asia and face the Persians. Here was a change. The Greeks were going to Persian lands instead of the Persians coming to Greek lands. Before Philip could set out he died and his son Alexander became king.

**Alexander's two treasures.**—Alexander is always called *The Great*, and we shall hear in this story how he earned that title.

When he was a young man the people of Macedon were very proud of him. They liked to talk about their handsome prince with the curly golden hair and clear skin. When he looked at them they felt that 'they must do whatever he wished. His eyes were strange, for one was blue and the other black.

There were two treasures that Alexander loved more than anything else. One was a book and the other was a horse.

The book was one you have heard of already. It was the story of Troy, written by the poet Homer. It was given to Alex-

ander by a learned Greek, who taught him not only to read and write, but also to love the Greek heroes and everything the Greeks had that was wise and beautiful. Alexander loved this book so much that he took it with him everywhere, even putting it under his pillow at night. He had read it so often that he knew much of it by heart, and he longed to go to Troy to see for himself the places where the heroes had done their great deeds.

Once, after a battle, a beautiful casket, or box which had been captured from the enemy was brought to him. Showing it to his friends he asked them "What shall I keep in it, as my most treasured possession?" Some suggested one thing and some another. At last when all had spoken, Alexander said, "I shall put in it the book of Troy then the most beautiful of all poems will be kept in the most beautiful of all caskets."

The name of his horse was *Bucephalus* or 'Bull's Head' because it had a mark shaped like a bull's head on its coat. This is the story of how Alexander came to possess it. One day there appeared at his father's court a stranger leading a beautiful black horse. When the king saw it he wished to buy it, for he had never seen so fine a horse. "How much will you take for him?" he asked. "Three thousand pounds," replied the stranger. "That is a very large sum," said the king. "Let us take him to a level place and try his paces."

But the horse was so fiery that no one could mount him, or even come near him. He reared and plunged and rolled his eyes till at last King Philip cried out, "Take him away. How dare you offer a wild beast for sale?"

Then Alexander, who was watching eagerly, said, "What a fine horse they are running because they are too ignorant and cowardly to manage him!"

"Do you think," asked the king sternly, "that you know more than those who are older than you? Do you think that you could manage the horse better?"

"This horse," answered the young prince, "I could manage better than any one else. If I cannot, I will pay you the price of the horse." The king agreed, and all the court waited to see what would happen next.

Alexander ran straight up to the horse, took him by the bridle and turned him to the sun, for he had noticed that the horse's shadow dancing before his eyes frightened him and made him restive. He spoke gently to Bucephalus and patted him, till he saw that he no longer snorted wildly. Then, dropping his cloak, he lightly leaped upon the horse's back. He held the reins tightly, and as the horse was no longer ill-tempered, but only eager to gallop, he let him go and urged him to full speed.

King Philip and his courtiers at first held their breath in terror, but when Alexander wheeled the horse round and rode proudly back to them, they burst into a loud cheer.

**How Alexander conquered Persia.**—When Philip died and Alexander became king of Macedon and Greece, he at once made up his mind to conquer Persia. This was a bold plan. The Persian king, Darius III., had thousands of soldiers, while Alexander had only hundreds. Alexander's army, however, was well trained, and he set out on the great adventure.

To reach Persia his soldiers had to cross the sea at the Hellespont, where many years before the Persians had come into Greece over their great bridge of boats. They landed near Troy, and Alexander was able to fulfil his wish of seeing that city. At Troy he was shown some ancient armour which, he was told, had belonged to some old Greek heroes. It is said that Alexander took some of it away with him to remind him of the great deeds of the heroes, and to give him courage to follow their brave example.

The army marched through Asia towards Persia, and as they approached each city, Alexander sent messengers on ahead to say, "Open your gates!" If the gates were opened, the soldiers marched in quietly, but if the people refused to open their gates,

the soldiers broke down their walls and destroyed their city.

In one town named Gordium, so runs an ancient story, Alexander was shown a chariot which was tied to a temple pillar with a knot of bark so cunningly made that no end could be seen. "Whoever unties the knot," said the townspeople, "will be lord of all the world."

Alexander puzzled over the knot for a while, then calmly drew his sword and cut it in two. The people took this as a sign that he would conquer the Persians. Alexander always found some simple way such as this of overcoming a difficulty.

When King Darius III. heard of Alexander's coming, he ordered his generals to gather an army and drive away the invaders. But Alexander and his men easily defeated this army, and the Persian king was obliged to collect another, and to lead it against the Macedonians himself.

The Persian army was very great. There was so much luggage that six hundred mules and three hundred camels were needed to carry it all. The Persian king felt so sure of victory that he invited his mother, his wife and others of his family to watch the battle.

The two armies met near the river Issus in a narrow place between the mountains and the sea. The Persian soldiers could not stand against the Macedonians, and Alexander's men were able to cut their way through to where the Persian king stood in his high chariot. When Darius saw them coming near, he was filled with terror, and, throwing aside his royal cloak, his bow and arrows, urged his charioteer to whip up the horses and race from the battlefield. His soldiers, when they saw their king deserting them, fled too, and the Macedonians had the victory.

While the soldiers were busy plundering the Persian camp, Alexander went to the king's tent, which he found full of rich furniture of every description. There he found prepared for Darius a golden bath, with golden water pots and golden boxes



DARIUS AT THE BATTLE OF ISSUS

*Portion of a mosaic from Pompeii*

Alexander is forcing his way to Darius who in terror stretches out his hand while the charioteer whips up the horses

of ointment such as the Persians loved. Alexander bathed in the golden bath, and he and his courtiers enjoyed the splendid banquet which had been prepared for the Persian king. "This it is to be a king indeed," said Alexander as he looked round on the rich treasure, and the many slaves.

While he was dining, Alexander heard sounds of weeping and, on asking what it was, he was told that Darius' mother and his wife were sorrowing believing him dead. Alexander went to them himself to tell them that the king was still alive, and he treated them with all possible kindness.

After the battle of Issus the army marched back to the coast and destroyed most of the city of Tyre. This city, you will remember was one of the two great ports of the Phoenicians. Alexander destroyed the city because he wanted to make sure that a Persian fleet should not cut off his path back to Greece. Then his army marched southwards through Palestine on to Egypt, which for many years had been subject to Persia. The Egyptians welcomed Alexander with joy as the man who would set them free from Persian rule.

While in Egypt, the thought came into Alexander's mind to build a city called after himself. One night he dreamed that an aged man appeared to him and told him that it

should be built at the mouth of the Nile, and when he awoke he obeyed the dream. He had brought with him many Jews whom he had taken when he captured Jerusalem, and these Jews and other captives were set to work to build a great city, which he called Alexandria.

In time this city became even greater than Athens, and a larger port than Tyre, and all those who passed up and down the Nile stayed at Alexandria on the way. On an island called Pharos, which protected the harbour, a vast stone lighthouse was built to guide sailors. It, too, was called the Pharos, and for sixteen hundred years it stood the greatest lighthouse in the world. The city still stands to-day and its name reminds us of this famous young king.

From Egypt, Alexander marched back along the edge of the Fertile Crescent to conquer Persia. Soon the two armies met again, this time at a place called Arbela. As Alexander rode into battle in a beautiful embroidered cloak and a golden helmet with two white feathers, an eagle flew over his head. "You will win the battle," said the priest who in white robes and gold crown rode by his side.

The words came true. Once more the cowardly King Darius fled. Alexander pursued him but before he could overtake him Darius was killed by his own soldiers who despised him for his cowardice.



SILVER COIN OF ALEXANDER THE GREAT

*In the British Museum*

On one side is the head of Hercules wearing the lion's skin with the forelegs tied under the chin; on the other side is a seated figure of the god Zeus who holds an eagle in his right hand, while his left rests on a sceptre.

But even yet Alexander was not satisfied and led his men on and on till they came to far-away India. Here in his last great battle Alexander's men had for the first time to fight against elephants, which the Indians used as well as horses. Again Alexander won the victory, but his men would go no farther. "Take us back to Macedon," they said, "for we have not seen our homes for ten long years."

Alexander did not want to turn back, but there was no help for it. Before he left India, a sad thing happened. His faithful Bucephalus, who had been his friend and companion in all his journeys, died from hard work and old age. Alexander deeply mourned his loss, and caused a city to be built in memory of the gallant horse.

Alexander's battles were now over. On his way home he stopped at Babylon, and there he fell ill. It was soon seen that he was dying, and when they heard the sad news his soldiers asked to be allowed to say good-bye to their captain.

One by one they crept softly into his tent and filed past his bed, gazing at him for the last time. Alexander was too ill to speak, but as each man passed by he gave him his hand.

Alexander was a great king who ruled over a vast empire. The people of the East in the many cities that he had built learned much about the wonderful Greeks. They learned something about their books, their thoughts, their ways of building their beautiful statuary, their clothes and their whole way of living. Some of these things have lasted in the East to this day, and it is more than two thousand years ago since Alexander founded those cities.

### MORE STORIES TO TELL

(From Plutarch's "Life of Alexander")

*The Birth of Alexander* —At the time when Alexander was born his father, King Philip, had just captured a city, and while there he received three messengers. The first

announced that one of the Macedonian generals had won a battle, the second that the king's racehorse had won a victory at Olympia, the third that Alexander was born. He was delighted at such news, and still more so when the soothsayers told him that his son, whose birth coincided with three victories, would surely prove invincible.

*Stories of his childhood* —Alexander's childhood was marked by great ambition. When asked if he would run in the foot race at Olympia, he replied, "Yes, if I have kings to contend with." Whenever he heard that his father had taken a city or won a victory, he would chafe at the news and say to his friends, "Boys, my father will forestall us in all things, he will leave no great deeds for you and me to achieve."

*Later incidents and sayings* —Plutarch gives many instances of Alexander's nobility of character. Before setting out on the Persian campaign, he gave such rich presents to all his friends that one of them protested, "My king, what have you reserved for yourself?"

"My hopes," replied Alexander.

As a rule, he was generous to the vanquished, so much so, that the Persian who reported to King Darius Alexander's courteous treatment of the Persian royal ladies, exclaimed to the king in admiration, "Alexander is as gracious a conqueror as he is a terrible enemy."

To his soldiers he was always considerate. Once, when he and his men were suffering from thirst, a helmet of water was brought to him on the march. He took it, but, seeing the eyes of his thirsty soldiers enviously watching him, he handed it back untouched. "If I alone drink it," he said, "all these soldiers will be discontented." The soldiers seeing this noble self-denial, bade him lead them on boldly, saying that they felt neither hunger nor thirst so long as they had such a king to lead them.

On another occasion one of the common soldiers was driving a mule laden with gold belonging to Alexander, but as the animal became too weary to carry it, he unloaded the gold and carried it himself. Alexander saw him toiling under his burden and said to him, "Be not weary yet, but carry it a little way farther to your own tent; for I give it to you."

He showed the greatest respect for the characters of other great men. Seeing a statue of Xerxes thrown down and trampled upon by his soldiers, he stopped and said to it, "Shall we leave thee lying there, because of thy invasion of Greece, or shall we set thee up again, because of thy magnificence and greatness of soul?"

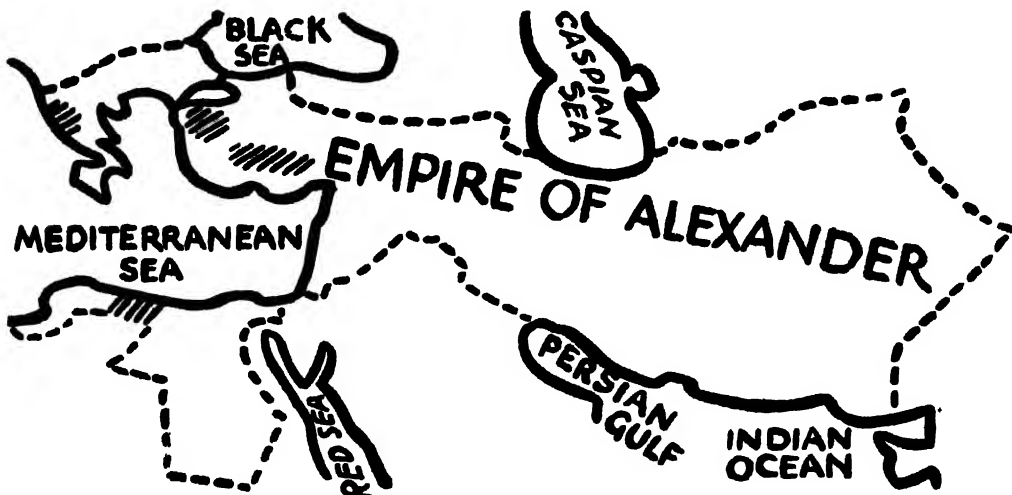
When the Greek philosophers and statesmen were paying Alexander visits of congratulation only one of them, Diogenes, failed to appear, and Alexander, who had heard of his great fame, went himself to visit him. He found the philosopher lying on the ground basking in the sun. As Alexander and his train approached he sat up and looked at them. "Hail, Diogenes," said Alexander, "is there anything that I can do for you?" "Yes," answered Diogenes, "you can stand a little on one side, and not

keep the sun off me." Alexander, instead of being angered by this reply, was deeply impressed by the philosopher's words which showed that he despised all earthly greatness, and as he departed he said to those around him, "Say what you will, if I were not Alexander I would be Diogenes."

### TEACHING HINTS

**1. Map.** Draw the outline of the map on the blackboard. As the lesson proceeds add the place names mentioned in the story, and colour the lands conquered by Alexander. At the beginning of the lesson revise the names and positions of places already known, e.g. Greece, Egypt, Palestine, Asia Minor, Babylon, etc

**2. Army.** Children do not generally realise that the armies of early days were mostly made up of ordinary folk drawn from their various occupations. They will readily understand how much more skilful Philip's regular army would become than an army of untrained civilians. Mention how valuable to Philip it was to find gold mines in Thrace.



SKETCH MAP FOR THE BLACKBOARD

**3. Place names.**—When opportunity occurs useful revision can be given by looking in a map for place names which have historic interest, e.g. Alexandria and Philippi.

**4. Gordian knot.**—This incident will probably need some explanation to make the point clear, but it is worth while, because it provides an example of Alexander's characteristics.

**5. Luxury.**—We have already had several instances of oriental luxury, e.g. Solomon and Nebuchadnezzar. The children should understand the source of much of the Oriental wealth, e.g. the heavy taxation and the loot of war. When such facts are understood there will be little inclination on the children's part to think of the 'glories' of war.

**6. Lighthouse of Alexandria.** An island called Pharos protected the harbour of Alexandria, to which it was joined by a causeway. A vast stone lighthouse, also called Pharos, was built on the island after 350 B.C. It was three hundred and seventy feet high and had over thirty storeys. This Pharos tower, the first of its kind, influenced the later buildings of both Christian church spires and Mohammedan minarets. It stood

for sixteen hundred years, until its fall in A.D. 1326.

**7. Memory work.**—(a) Philip of Macedon conquered Greece and ruled the land. (b) Alexander the Great, the son of Philip, was a clever young man who had been brought up like a Greek. (c) He led an army across the Hellespont into Asia to conquer the Persians. (d) He defeated the Persians in many battles. King Darius III ran away and was at last killed by his own followers. (e) Alexander ruled a great empire in Western Asia and helped other nations to learn about the clever Greeks.

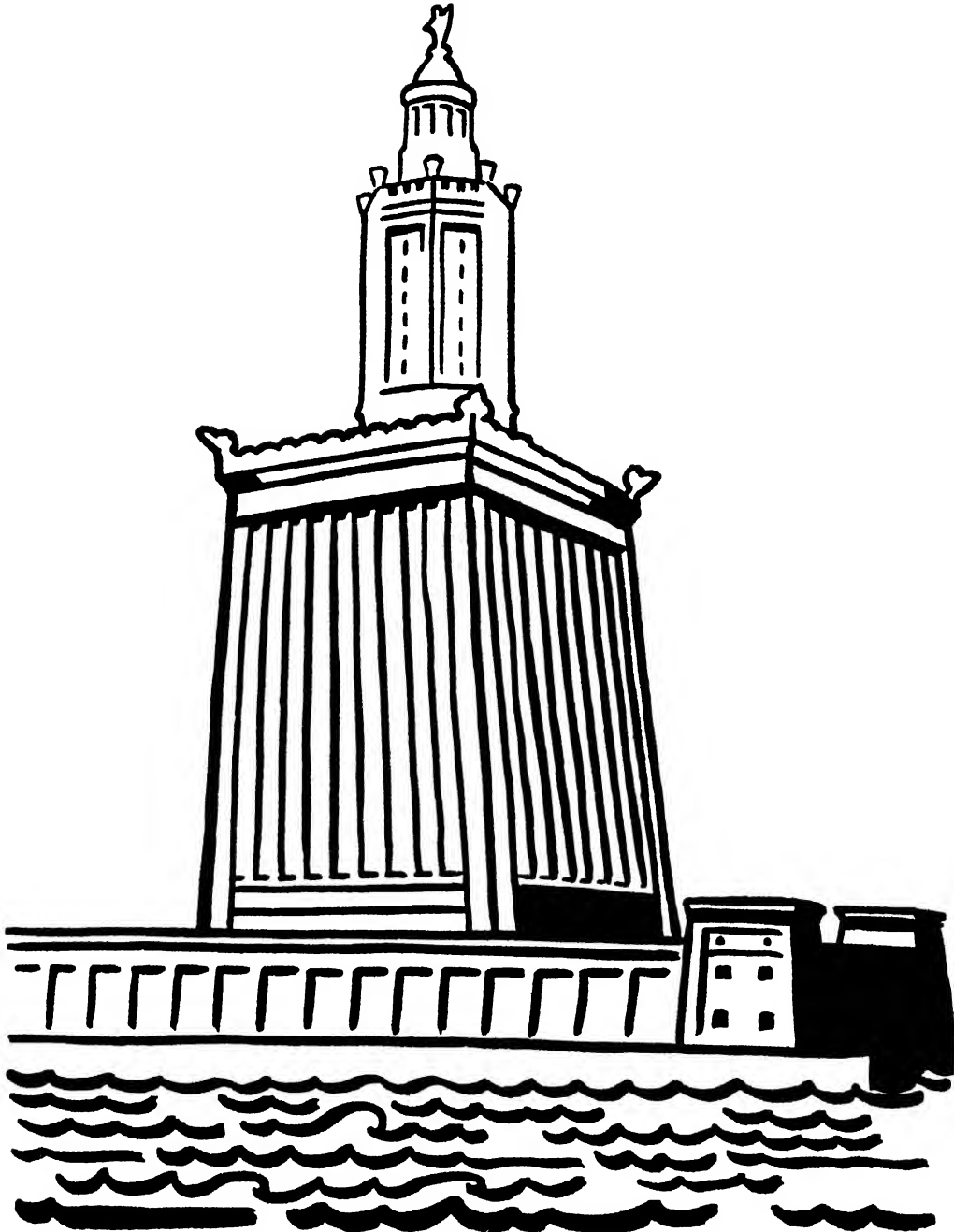
**8. Exercises.**—(a) Why was Philip of Macedon able to win the land of Greece? (b) What were Alexander's two great treasures? (c) Tell how Alexander first rode his famous horse. (d) Why was Alexander glad to go to Troy? (e) What happened at the battle of Issus? (f) The battle of Issus was fought in the year 333 B.C. How long ago was that? (g) Why did Alexander destroy the city of Tyre? (h) Which new city took the place of Tyre as a port? (i) Why did Alexander turn back from India? (j) Give all the names you can why Alexander is called *Great*.

ALEXANDER THE GREAT  
Head of a statue of Centaurio



This head belongs to a statue more than five feet high, which once held in its left hand a shield, and in its right a spear. The statue is probably a centaurio.

SKETCHES FOR THE BLACKBOARD



THE PHAROS, OR LIGHTHOUSE, OF THE HARBOR OF ALEXANDRIA



## XIII. A BOY IN ATHENS

### PICTURE REFERENCE



GREEK FAMILY MEAL

**T**HIS Picture (No. 24 in the portfolio) shows a Rich Man's House in Ancient Greece. There is a reproduction of it on page 110. The above illustration, taken from a relief on a tomb, depicts a Greek Family Meal. The man reclines on a couch and his wife sits on a chair. To the right is a descendant, or a guest, fully covered in his mantle. To the left is an attendant wearing a tunic.

The plate on page 109 shows Toys and Games of Ancient Greece. The two women in the middle of the picture are playing knuckle-bones, a favourite game of Greek women and children. Each woman has five knuckle-bones, and the one whose turn it is to play has caught three on the back of her hand, the two which are falling to the ground she would have to pick up without shaking off those already on the hand.

In one corner of the picture a woman is pushing a child in a swing, and in another

corner a woman is whipping a top. On the trefoil-tipped jar at the top of the illustration a child is sitting in a high chair, and two children are playing with drawcars. The terra cotta doll on the left has jointed arms and legs.

### INTRODUCTION

**Childhood.** The children's story tells of life in Athens during the greatest period of her history, the "Golden Age," roughly, from 440 to 330 B.C. The aim has been to tell the story of a typical Greek boy of this period from birth to early manhood, selecting only the most important and interesting details.

All children were not welcomed with such joy as the one described in the story. A child who was not wanted, e.g. a sickly child or perhaps a girl, was "exposed" and left to die in a large earthenware pot at the street corner, or near a temple. This custom,

horrible as it may seem to us, was allowed by law.

The practice dates from a time when food was scarce and life was a terrible struggle. Exposure was not frequent on the part of true Athenian citizens, and generally the child was found and brought up as a slave. A child who escaped this fate was usually entrusted to a foster mother, who cared for it in infancy. It was wrapped in swaddling clothes, and laid in a cradle, which was generally shaped like a shoe.

Till the age of seven, boys and girls lived together in the women's part of the house,

but it was expected that all citizens (that is all those who had both parents actually born in Athens) should be educated. The Athenians as a whole were highly cultivated and had excellent taste in art, architecture and the theatre. It was by the public wish that the new city built after the Persian invasion should be erected regardless of cost, and beautified by the greatest artists. The result was that Athens became the most beautiful city in the world, famed everywhere for its temples, its statues and its public buildings. In the theatres only the best plays were tolerated—and there never



TOYS AND GAMES OF ANCIENT GREECE

which was separate from the men's quarters. Here the daughters of the house remained till they were of marriageable age, when they were given to some man of their father's choice.

The son, however, passed at the age of seven into the care of a "pedagogue," or personal attendant. This man, who was usually a slave, accompanied him to and from school, and attended to his manners; seeing, for instance, that he used his left hand for bread and his right hand for other food, and generally behaved properly before his elders.

Education was not compulsory at Athens,

was such an exacting audience as the Athenians themselves.

The foundations for this good taste were laid at school. The children learned to read by chanting the syllables, *b-a, ba, b-e, be*, till they had mastered them. They learned to write by tracing and re-tracing the letters on their waxed tablets; later, they were allowed to use the more costly papyrus paper. (See the Class Picture No. 10.) There was much learning by heart. Many boys could repeat the whole of the *Iliad* and *Odyssey*, for it was thought that the knowledge of the heroic deeds of their ancestors would best develop the characters

of the boys. Great attention was paid to pronunciation, for a well-bred man was expected to speak perfectly.

Music was also taught, both playing the lyre and singing to the flutes. Physical exercises were important, especially swimming in the rivers. Later on, the subjects of arithmetic and drawing were added to the curriculum, and the Greek children, like their elders, were fond of modelling in clay or wax.

**Family life.**—Greek families generally took their meals together. If, however, there were male guests at the house (and the Athenians loved company at meals), the women and children did not appear. The guests and host reclined on couches, and it was a

point of good breeding to be able to lie down gracefully. A guest's feet were washed by slaves with scented water, or wine and water. The meal was served on small tables which were placed beside the couches. It began with the more solid food, such as poultry, fish and vegetables. (Meat was rarely eaten.) Then the room was swept to remove the bones and other refuse which had been simply dropped on the floor, and water was brought round for the guests to wash their hands, as, knives and forks being unknown, food was taken in the fingers. Now followed a course of fruit, sweetmeats, cheese and salt. To "eat a man's salt" is a proverb derived from the Greeks. Last of all came the drinking of wine, when every man was expected to



A RICH MAN'S HOUSE IN ANCIENT GREECE

(Class Picture No. 24 in the portfolio)

show his wit in conversation. Singing, listening to music and watching dancing often accompanied this part of the meal.

An Athenian citizen's house was an unpretentious building. It was generally made of sun-dried bricks one or two stories high, built round a courtyard. The outside walls facing the streets were covered with stucco, or simply whitewashed. The front of a house was practically a blank wall, which might show one or two narrow slits some nine feet from the ground. Passing through the door one entered a passage which led to the courtyard, from which could be seen practically every room, and to pass from one room to another, except by way of the courtyard, was generally impossible. One of the largest rooms was the dining room, the others, which were more like cells than rooms, were used as sleeping compartments, storerooms, kitchens, etc. It should be remembered that an Athenian lived so much in the open, and was so much occupied in public and private business and in meeting friends at the gymnasium, that his house was little more than a place in which to sleep. As most houses were built of sun-dried bricks they soon perished, consequently there are few reliable sources from which information can be gathered of the exact details of Athenian houses.

The flimsy nature of the walls is well illustrated by the fact that if a burglar wished to break into a house, he generally did so by digging a hole through a wall, and the Greek word for burglar is consequently *wall-digger*. In front of the house stood an emblem

of Hermes, which was regularly a bearded bust upon a squared pillar of stone. The knocker on the door consisted commonly of the ring in a lion's mouth. The original purpose of this form of knocker was to scare away evil influences, and it was usual to place over it an inscription such as, "Let no evil enter here." A porter who was a slave, attended to the door, and he was usually accompanied by a dog. On the floor of the passage was often inscribed the word "Welcome" — a word frequently seen on our modern doormats.

Though windows were practically unknown in the lower rooms, there might be unglazed casements in the upper story. The roof was commonly flat and served as a vantage ground for viewing processions in the street. Lines (which were seldom necessary) consisted



SCHOOL IN ATHENS DURING THE "GOLDEN AGE"

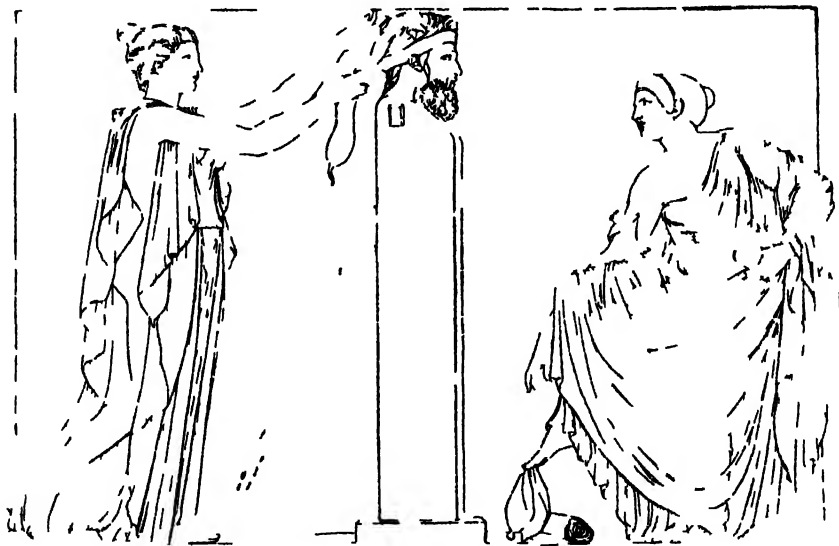
These pictures were painted round the middle of a shallow bowl

of wood or charcoal burnt in braziers, which men carried to the place where they were needed. Chimneys as we understand them were unknown. In the kitchen was a fixed fireplace provided with some sort of flue.

The houses were scantily furnished. There were chairs, stools and couches in the living rooms, the bed frames were covered with canvas or leather thong stretched from side to side on which was laid a flock mattress, pillow filled with wool or feathers, and coverlet of wool or skins dyed with purple.

could be worn separately, but though a man might go anywhere in his mantle only, to appear on an important occasion in his tunic alone would be thought very ill-bred.

It was important that the mantle should be beautifully draped, and much practice was needed to obtain the right effect. It must reach half way down the shins and must fall in graceful slanting folds across the body. This garment was simply an oblong of woollen material not sewn at all



DECORATING A HEERM

*Græco Roman Relief at Munich (first century B.C.)*

The Heerm is a small table, the top of which was carved into a head and shoulders. The man in the center is a tunic in a corner was represented in this form in a public way and is a relief.

and other colour. Small tables were used for meals, writing was done not on a table but upon the right knee. Carved wooden chests served as wardrobes. Other articles of furniture consisted of lamps (see black-board sketch), baskets, hand mirrors of polished bronze, and, above all, an abundant variety of vessels in bronze, silver and earthenware.

**Dress.**—Men's dress consisted of two garments, the tunic and the mantle. Either

but draped across the back, one end being brought over the left shoulder and tucked under the arm to hold it in place, and the rest brought round the right side, either under the arm so as to leave it free, or over it, as in the draped figure in the picture. The free end was then thrown over the left arm or shoulder.

The tunic might have two armholes or only one. The man of leisure mostly wore the first kind, and the workmen, who needed greater freedom, the second.

Women's dress was more varied than that of men. It consisted also of two garments, but these were longer and fuller. Sometimes there were sleeves and there was always a girdle. The Athenian woman wore her hair in a loose knot at the back or on the top of her head, and secured it with ribbons. Altogether her dress was graceful and becoming.

It must not be supposed that all these garments were white. They were sometimes coloured purple, red, and green. Yellow, however, was used only by women. There were also fashions in cloaks, shoes, and hats, but the majority of the citizens wore the plain white woollen mantle which was admirably suited to the warm and sunny climate.

Hats were rarely worn except by travellers in the country. The simplest form of foot covering was the sandal, but there were also various forms of shoes and boots. The feet were worn in travelling and hunting. Black, white, or red shoes were often used by guests going to a dinner party.

A typical citizen would wear a seal ring, partly for ornament and partly for use, and he would usually carry a stick when out walking.

**The men.**—It was customary to rise at daybreak and literally to break the fast with a few crusts of bread dipped in wine. Nothing more was eaten till the midday meal. A citizen visited his best friends at sunrise. When he went to the market he was accompanied by one or two slaves who acted as carriers or errand bearers. He would pass down between various colonnades among the statues of gods and famous men and under the plane trees. The markets were arranged much as they are in England and elsewhere to-day. At dawn the countrymen brought in supplies of wine and vegetables for the retail dealers of the stalls. Each section of the market was given to special commodities, thus a buyer would know where to go for bread, fish, cheese, vegetables, oil, etc. The market would

resound with the cries of the vendors as they shouted their wares. Fish was a highly important article of food, and when a fresh catch arrived at the market a bell was rung to notify the would-be purchasers.

After visiting the market and doing any other business he might have on hand the citizen would go where he was certain to meet friends with whom he could converse on the news of the day, political or philosophical matters. Perhaps he would stroll in the colonnades or to the gymnasium or to the shops of the barbers, perfumers, shoemaker, doctors, waiting room, or some such place where it was customary to go to meet one's friends. It should be noted that the Athenians of this time had not usually the club and lath which are associated with the Romans. For the first part of a man's life he bathed at a public place, procured from a line, veiled on a stand. An attendant poured water over him from a bronze or earthenware vessel. After rubbing himself with scented olive oil and afterwards scraped himself with a curved bronze instrument called a *strigil* (See blackboard sketch).

**Military service.** Men were liable to military service from the ages of eighteen to sixty. There was no regular uniform, but each man supplied his own armour and equipment according to his fancy. The outfit described in the *Iliad* consists of a tunic of a well-to-do citizen. There were only about a thousand cavalry in the Athenian army. The poorer foot soldiers had to be content with a sword and javelin and a light shield of wood or wickerwork. They might have no shield at all and fight with bow and arrows, sling or spear.

There was a navy of some three hundred or four hundred warships. In addition to sails the vessels were rowed by two or three banks of oarsmen, some of whom were Athenians but most of whom were foreigners and slaves. There was no regular navy, but the ships were commanded by the rich citizens who equipped them. Each ship, however

had experienced sailors on board, and the great strength of Athens lay in her navy.

**The women.**—At Athens, more than anywhere else in Greece, the woman was confined mainly to the house. A girl might learn to read and write and play a musical instrument but it was not considered necessary for her to do so. Her whole business was to learn her domestic duties, to spin, weave and work embroidery, and teach and direct her slaves. She rarely left the house and then only in company of an elder female.

She had little opportunity for falling in love, and her marriage, which might take place anywhere between the ages of fifteen and twenty, was arranged by her father, or

where the bridegroom and best man were standing to take her home. A procession, preceded by flute players, was formed; people in the streets cheered, and so the bride went to her new home. On the following day, "unveiling day," the newly married couple received friends and were given wedding presents of vases, dishes, sandals, soaps, perfumes, combs, mirrors, spinning implements and other toilet and domestic articles.

### CHILDREN'S STORY

You have been hearing a great deal about Greece and of some of her heroes such as Theseus the brave prince, Ulysses the



MARRIAGE PROCESSION

*Attic painting on a toilet jar in the Louvre (5th century B.C.)*

The bridegroom leads the bride by the left hand. The gods who presided over marriage were Apollo and Artemis. Apollo holds a laurel branch. Artemis a bow and quiver. On the right the father and mother of the bridegroom are conversing before the door of his house.

guardian, who was prepared to give her a dowry. A solemn "pledging" was made before witnesses when the amount of the dowry was agreed upon, and the only ceremony was the "fetching home," which took place some time after the "pledging," at nightfall by torchlight. The groom, wearing a wreath, arrived with his parents, friends and best man at the home of the bride, which was decorated at the door with olive boughs. Men and women on this occasion partook together of the wedding feast, which included a cake made chiefly of sesame seeds and honey. During the feast the bride was veiled, and the bridegroom might never have seen her face. At nightfall a flute player arrived, the two mothers took torches and conducted the bride to a vehicle,

cunning warrior, Phidippides the swift runner, and Leonidas the brave king of Sparta. Let us see what it was like to be a boy in Athens during the 'Golden Age,' when the war with the Persians was over, and a grand new city had been built over the ruins of the old one.

One day a man called Cleon was walking to his home in Athens. When he reached the house, he saw tied to the door knocker a branch of the olive tree. He smiled happily, for he knew that his wife had borne him a son. He hurried inside to hear all about it. The old nurse was then washing the baby in olive oil—which was used instead of soap. Afterwards she wrapped him round and round in long swaddling clothes and put him into a cradle shaped like a shoe. She hung

the cradle up and rocked it to and fro, while she sang the baby to sleep.

When he was ten days old the nurse brought him out to show him to his father. Many friends and neighbours came in to see the new baby and to bring it presents. They had a feast, for which a special cake had been baked, and after the feast the baby was given his name. He was called Clitus, after his grandfather.

When little Clitus was about a year old, his mother had another baby. This time it was a daughter, and instead of an olive branch, a piece of wool was tied to the door knocker, so that the neighbours should know that the child was a girl. When Clitus and his sister were old enough they played many jolly games together in the courtyard. Their father's house of sun-dried bricks was built round a yard. From the yard you could go into the dining room, or the kitchen, or one of the tiny bedrooms. There were no windows for them to look out of, so sometimes they went up steps to the flat roof, from which they could look down on to the gay crowds below. Many of their toys were like yours. They had tops, balls and hoops, dolls and toy carts, a swing and a seesaw. They had pets too. Clitus had a dog, and his sister a tortoise. There were ducks in the ponds and pretty birds in cages. Sometimes their mother and a friend played knucklebones together in the courtyard, or joined with the children in whipping their tops.

In the evening, when they were tired of play, nurse would tell them stories of "Once upon a time." Many of these stories were *Aesop's Fables*, for Aesop was a Greek. So well did he tell the stories that we still like to hear them. There are "The Dog and the Shadow," "The Fox and the Grapes," "The Hare and the Tortoise," and many, many more. How many of them do you remember?

**Clitus at school.**—When Clitus was seven years old he went to school. He was now too big for a nurse, so he had an old manservant

to look after him. This man walked behind him to see that he arrived safely, and did not stop to play by the way. The manservant carried a long stick in one hand, while in the other he held Clitus's writing tablet and his lyre.

A picture which was painted round a beautiful Greek bowl shows Athenian boys learning their lessons. It shows the manservant, who remained in the schoolroom during the lessons. One boy is seen learning to sing to the tune played on the pipes by a master. Another boy is having his written exercise corrected. The boy wrote with a pointed stick, or stylus, on a small wooden board smeared with wax. It was something like writing with a pencil on a piece of bread spread thickly with butter. In another scene a boy is learning to play on a seven-stringed lyre, and another boy is reciting poetry which the master has written on a roll of papyrus. Perhaps the poetry is about Troy or the wanderings of Ulysses, written by the poet Homer. (See Class Picture No. 10.)

Clitus's sister did not go to school. She always stayed at home, where she learned to cook, to spin and to weave. Her nurse taught her to read and to play the lyre, but she could never do these things so well as her brother because she did not go to school.

**Dinner time.** Each morning, after school was over, Clitus went home to dinner. There were no clocks by which they could tell the time, but in the yard there stood a tall stick which cast a shadow when the sun shone on it. They could tell by the length of the shadow what time it was. Let us suppose that we are present with a Greek family at dinner. The father is reclining on a couch with his elbow on a cushion. Greek gentlemen generally lay down, or reclined at their meals in this way. Their food was served to them on small tables which were placed beside the couch. The mother is sitting on a chair, and the father is handing a dish. Behind her stands a servant who is going to help them to wine, and behind the father stands a guest or a



relation Under the couch a dog is eating something which has been thrown on the floor, for at meal times in Greece one always threw bones and odds and ends on the floor. There were no knives and forks. Food was taken in the fingers and when the meal was over a slave brought in bowls of water for washing the hands.

If you were present you would notice how the Greeks were dressed. The men generally wore two garments, an under tunic and a mantle or cloak of wool. The boy wearing the tunic which is sewn only at one shoulder and is held at the wrist by a girdle. The father is in his cloak slip from his shoulders, for the weather is hot and few clothes are needed indoors. The visitor who has just arrived has wrapped his cloak carefully round him. His cloak was merely a long piece of cloth. It had no sleeves or buttons like our cloaks.

The mother is wearing sandals, but the boy and the visitor have bare feet. Out of doors men generally (but not always) wore sandals. When young men wanted to look very smart they put on boots, which might be black, white or red. If they were going for a long walk in the country they might wear long boots.

Clitus would wear a tunic which might be red or blue. How quickly he could dress in the mornings! The Greeks got up very, very early. They were really up with the sun. For breakfast they had a few crusts of bread dipped in wine and nothing more till the shadow of the stick showed it was middy.

For dinner the family had many of the things we eat to day, such as fish, fowl, meat and vegetables, fruit, cheese, bread and sweetmeats. They had no tea or coffee, so they all drank wine made from grapes which grew plentifully on the sunny hillsides. They had no sugar, so they used honey instead, and in place of butter they had olive oil. Goats were reared on the grassy hillsides, so the children had plenty of goats' milk.

Olive oil, the oil pressed out from the fruit of the olive tree, was very useful to the

Greeks. They not only used it instead of butter and soap, they also put it into their lamps to give light at night.

**Growing up.**—As Clitus grew older he spent much time at the gymnasium, a large open field where men went to practise running, jumping, wrestling, boxing and other such exercises. He liked swimming very much and often went with his friends for a swim in the cool river. Sometimes on holidays, he would walk with his father to the market. What a din there was there! Men and women at their stall were shouting out 'Buy oil' 'Buy bread' 'Buy vinegar' 'Buy charcoal'. Most of the things that were eaten or used at home were to be seen in the market. Then it was pleasant to walk round the shops, the barbers, the perfumers, the shoemakers, the saddlers and wine sellers. In every shop were groups of men talking together about the news. There were no newspapers in those days and people talked a great deal more to one another than they now do in England.

When Clitus was eighteen he went into the army and learned to drill and march and fight. He had splendid armour. He wore a shining breastplate round his chest and below that a kind of leather skirt. On his legs were greaves or plates of bronze, and on his head a shining bronze helmet with a great nodding plume.

Look again at the picture of the Greek soldier (No. 22 in the portfolio) and you will see what Clitus looked like in armour. He carried a sword and a great bronze shield, and as his father was a rich man he was able to give Clitus a horse to ride. How proud of him his father and mother must have been the first time their grown up son rode home in his glittering new armour! Clitus's sister clapped her hands as she looked at her handsome brother.

The sons of rich men must have had a very good time in Greece during the "Golden Age." What a pity there were so many slaves as well!

## TEACHING HINTS

**1. Olive.**—The story of "Wine and Oil" is told in Lesson XII of the First Year's Course. It is illustrated by a Class Picture, No. 11 in the portfolio. A Greek lamp is shown in the blackboard illustrations. Greek lamps were made of terra-cotta, bronze and marble. The essential parts of a lamp are (1) the container for the oil formed by the body of the lamp and fed from an opening above, (2) the nozzle for the insertion of the wick. The nozzle generally had the form of a projecting spout, but the arrangement varied considerably in different lamps. The lamps might either be simply placed on a candelabrum or suspended from it.

**2. Child's name.**—The ceremony of naming the child at the tenth day might be compared with the Christian ceremony of baptism. A Greek boy was frequently named after his paternal grandfather, so that a pedigree was apt to run thus: Aristides, Iysimachus, Aristides, Iysimachus—and so on.

**3. Aesop's Fables.**—The mention of these well known stories helps the child to acquire the "true sense" of history. Aesop (c. 620-560 B.C.) the traditional author of the famous collection of fables, was a native of Phrygia and originally a slave in Samos. He is said to have won the favour of Croesus, king of Lydia, who employed him on important missions. Tradition represents him as very ugly but very witty.

**4. Clocks.**—The Athenians had a simple method of calculating the time of day by observing the length of the shadow of a vertical stick, cast by the sun which threw the shadow upon a marked floor. The time was denominated by the length of the shadow recorded in feet. A guest would be invited to come to dinner when the shadow was "ten feet" or "twelve feet," as the case might be.

Children will be interested to experiment with a stick in this way.

**5. Toys and games.**—Herodotus tells a curious story to the effect that the Lydians invented dice, knucklebones, balls and other playthings to help them pass a time of famine, by playing and eating on alternate days. "In the reign of Atya the son of Manes, their king, there came to be a grievous dearth over the whole of Lydia, and the Lydians for a time continued to endure it, but afterwards as it did not cease they sought for remedies, and one devised one thing and another of them devised another thing. And then were discovered they say the ways of playing with the dice and the knuckle bones and the ball and all the other games excepting draughts (for the discovery of this last is not claimed by the Lydians). These games they invented as a resource against the famine and thus they used to do: on one of the days they would play games all the time in order that they might not feel the want of food, and on the next they ceased from their games and had food, and thus they went on for eighteen years.

Games played with knucklebone (small bones forming part of the ankle joint in cloven footed animal) were extremely common. Imitations in stone and bronze were used in addition to the natural bones. Among women they were a favourite plaything. We read of a boy who gained eighty knucklebones as a writing prize. The game was called "five stones," a name still given by children of to-day to a similar game. A Greek writer thus describes it: "The knucklebones are thrown up into the air, and an attempt is made to catch them on the back of the hand. If you are only partially successful you have to pick up the knucklebones which have fallen to the ground without letting fall those already on the hand. It is above all a woman's game."

**6. Dress.**—The earliest dress of women which is represented in the art of historical Greece is the Dorian *chiton* or tunic. It was an oblong piece of heavy woollen cloth,

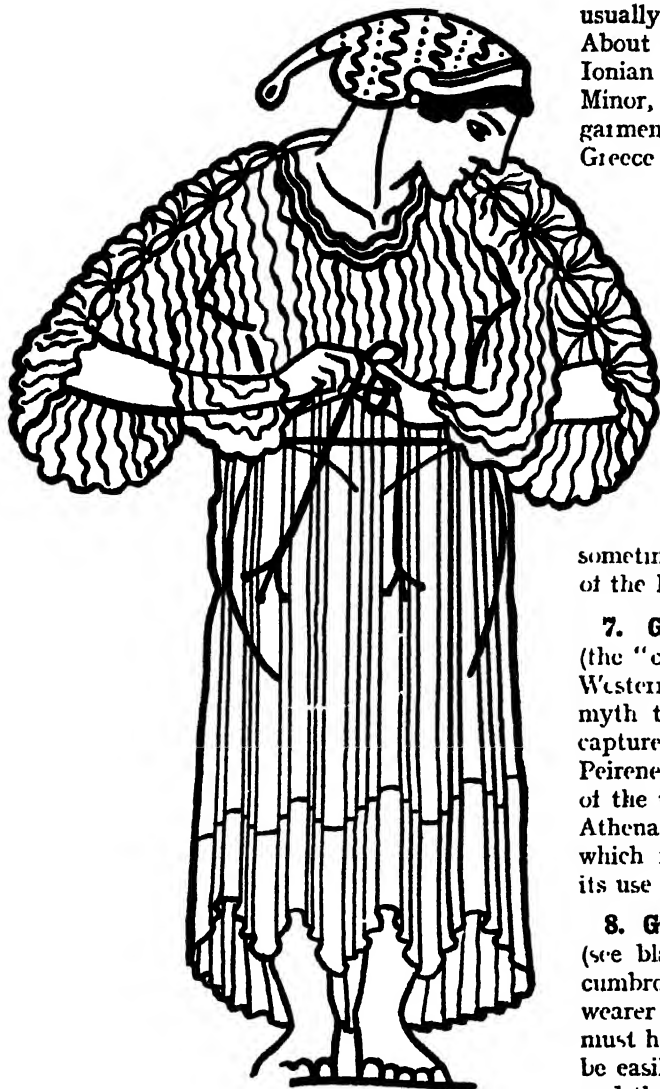


FIG. C

GREEK DRESS

measuring rather more than twice the height of the wearer, and about twice the span of the arms. This cloak was folded as shown in Fig. A. The material fell into position about the figure, leaving the arms bare, as in the picture, which is taken from a painted toilet box, Fig. B. A girdle was

usually worn to keep the open edges together. About the middle of the sixth century the Ionian tunic was introduced from Asia Minor, and became the ordinary undergarment of women in Italy, as well as in Greece throughout the classical period.

It was more voluminous than the Dorian tunic, made of thinner material, closed at the side, and sewn or pinned up on the shoulders to make wide sleeves. Its design is shown in a drawing inside a cup which represents a woman dressing. She holds up the loose folds above her waist while she ties her girdle, which divides the garment, as it were, into a skirt and blouse. (See Fig. C.) The whole figure was often wrapped in a cloak which was sometimes drawn over the mouth and the top of the head for outdoor wear. (See Fig. D.)

**7. Greek coins.**—An important currency (the "colts" of Corinth), used especially in Western Greece, took its type from the local myth that the winged horse Pegasus was captured by Bellerophon at the fountain Peirene, which flowed from the acropolis of the town. On the reverse is the head of Athena wearing a helmet of the pattern which is known as Corinthian because of its use here. (See blackboard sketches.)

**8. Greek helmets.**—The Corinthian helmet (see blackboard sketch) at its best was a cumbrous piece of armour. The ears of the wearer were covered, and the ill-fitting shell must have sat loose upon the head, so as to be easily displaced by a sudden turn. This and the chafing of the metal were obviated in some degree by a lining of felt or leather, which was sewn inside the helmet in the rows of holes along the edges.

The Attic helmet, which gets its name from its use on the coins of Athens, appeared first in the sixth century B.C., and in the fourth was the usual type. It is lighter than the Corinthian, and resembles a cap with appendages to protect the neck, cheeks and nose. The ears were thus left free.

# SKETCHES FOR THE BLACKBOARD

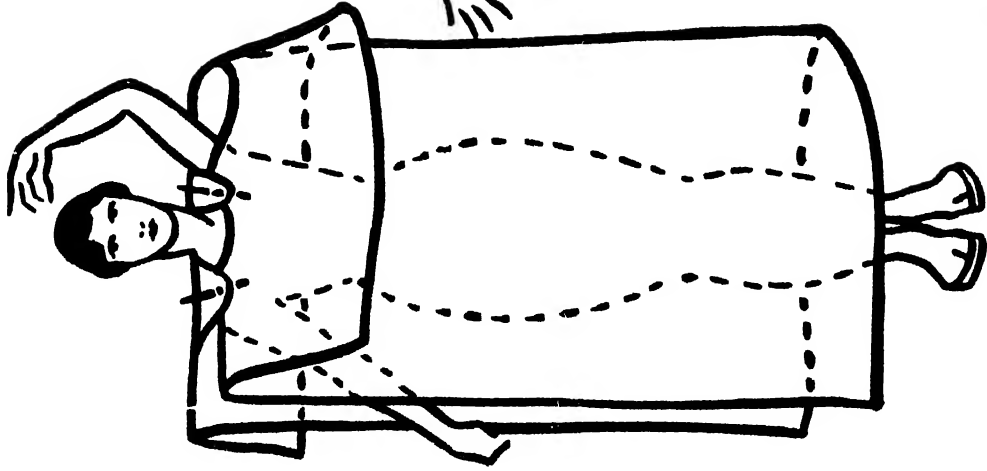


FIG A

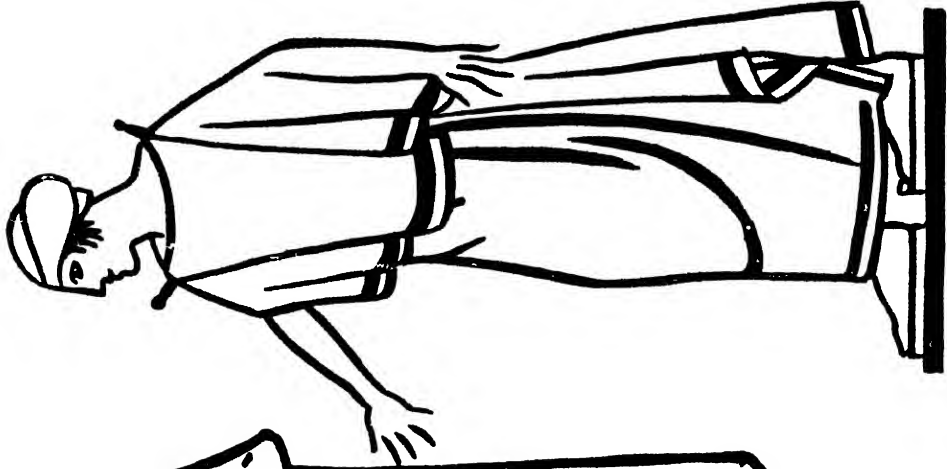


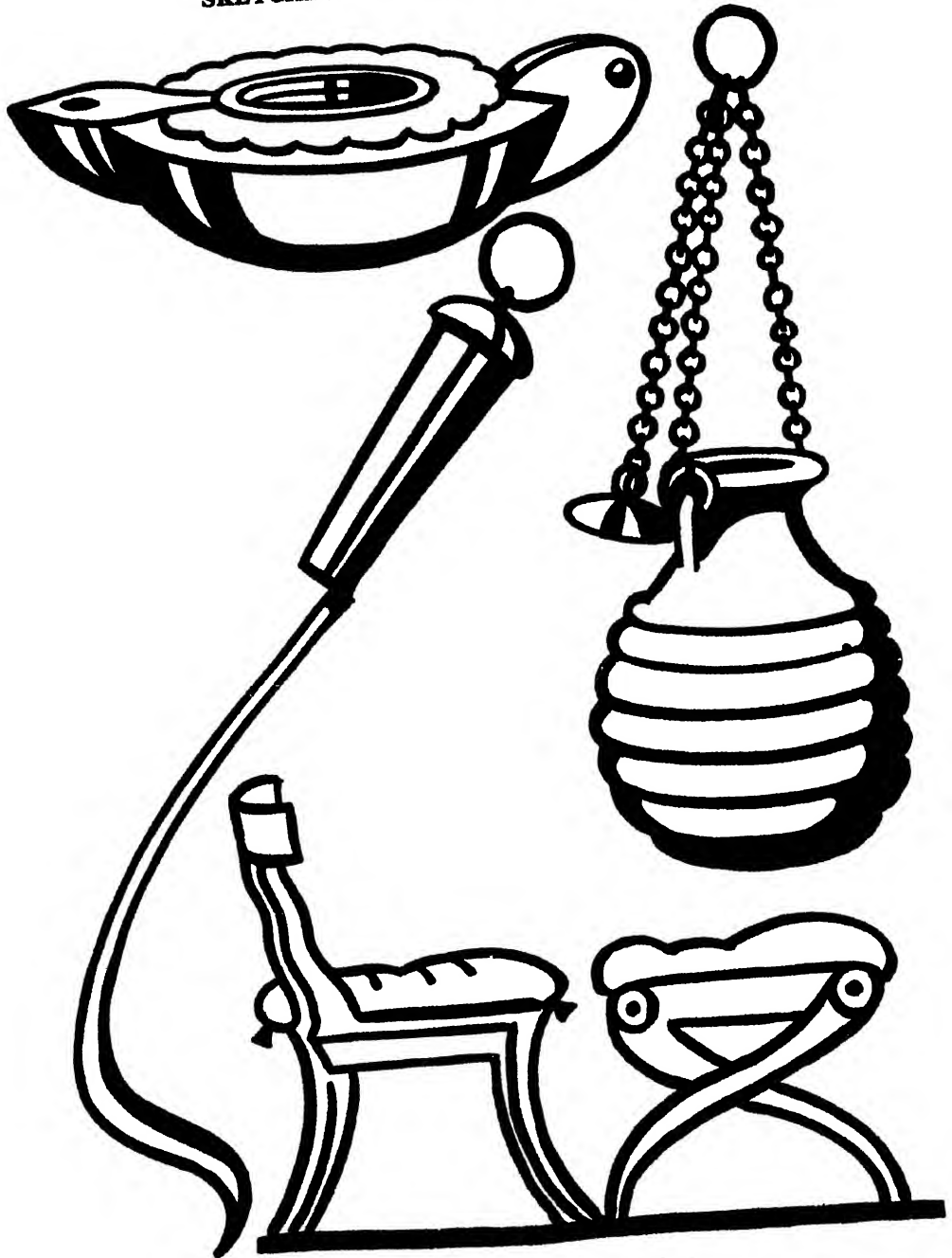
FIG B

GREEN DRESS



FIG D

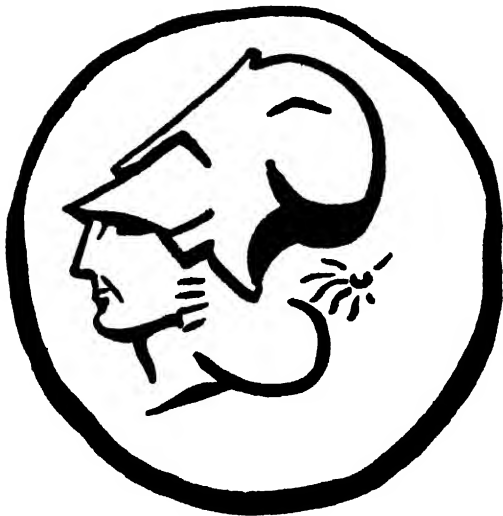
SKETCHES FOR THE BLACKBOARD



LAMP  
BRONZE STRIGIL

OIL FLASK  
CHAIR AND STOOL

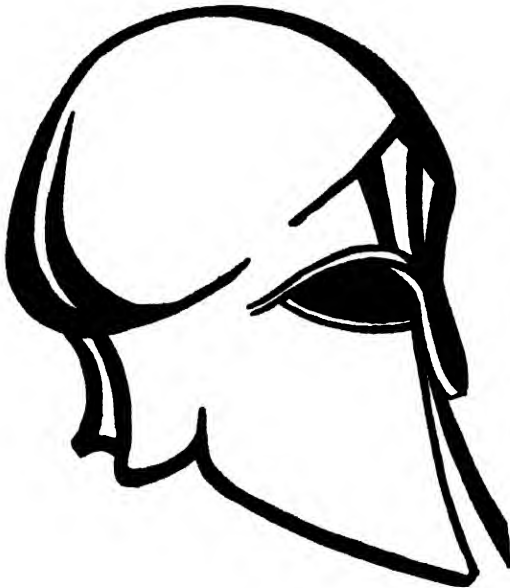
SKETCHES FOR THE BLACKBOARD



A



B



CORINTHIAN COIN: A—HEAD OF ATHENA  
CORINTHIAN HELMET



B—WINGED HORSE PEGASUS  
ATTIC HELMET FROM MACEDONIA

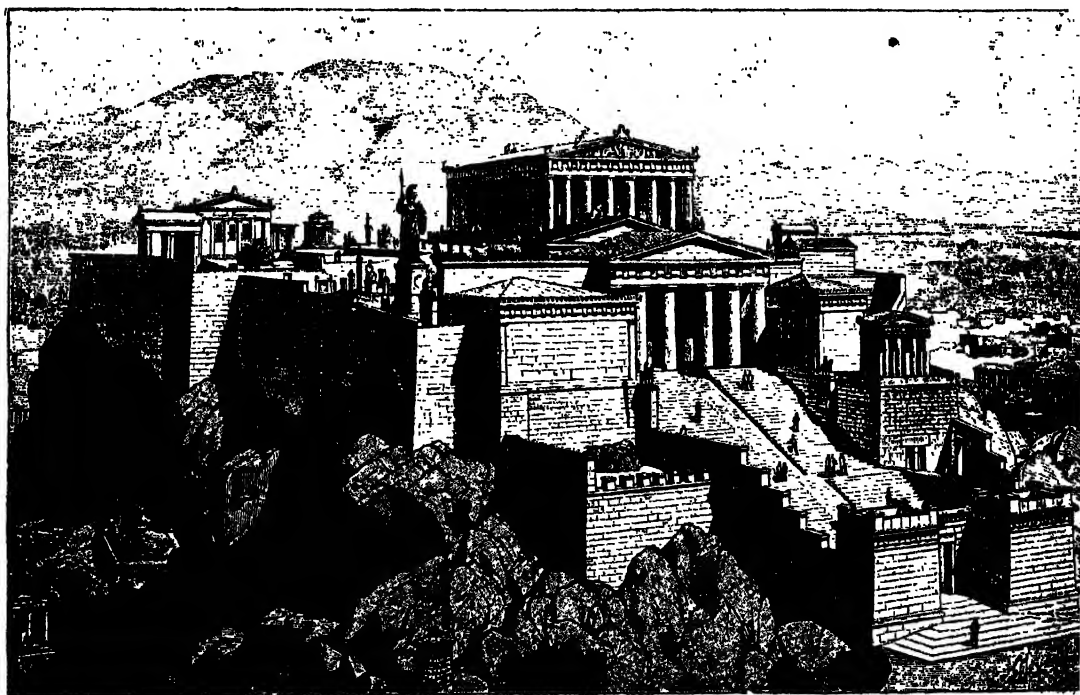
## XIV. ATHENS IN THE AGE OF PERICLES

**THE Acropolis.**—Like most Greek cities, Athens had grown up round a natural rocky hill which lent itself conveniently to fortification. The name acropolis was originally applied to the site of such a hill stronghold; later, it came to mean the citadel itself, which gradually became a religious and political centre. The term is now specially given to the acropolis of Athens, which is known as *the* Acropolis. Before the Persian War, the Acropolis was covered with a miscellaneous assemblage of temples, houses and other buildings, but the city was twice burnt by the Persians, so that the Athenians had the opportunity, during the years of prosperity which followed the Persian wars, of entirely rebuilding the

Acropolis and of making it the most perfect group of buildings the world has ever seen.

This rebuilding took place during the fifty years of prosperity and imperial expansion which elapsed between the end of the Persian War (490-480 B.C.) and the beginning of the Peloponnesian War (431-404 B.C.). This period marks the highest perfection of Athenian art, architecture, and, indeed, of all forms of self-expression. It is known as the Age of Pericles, after the great ruler, who, during his period of office (443-429 B.C.), raised Athens to her highest power and glory.

The rebuilding of the Acropolis was organised by Pericles and superintended by Pheidias, his friend and the greatest sculptor



RESTORED ACROPOLIS

of ancient times. The illustration shows a restoration of the hill top with its buildings. An ascent of seventy broad marble steps led up to the Propylaea or entrance gate, the pride of every Athenian. It resembled a triumphal arch, with halls on each side, one of them containing a picture gallery. Passing through the Propylaea the visitor was confronted by a colossal bronze statue of Athena, seventy feet high and the work of Pheidias. The gilded tip of the goddess's spear was visible to a home-coming Athenian while still far out to sea.

To the right stood the Parthenon, the temple of Athena Parthenos (the Virgin). Like all Greek temples it was a partly roofless chamber, surrounded by a covered colonnade with a gable or pediment at the entrance. Such a colonnade is found in most Greek temples. It formed a covered walk open to the sun, where one might walk or sit in comfort, looking out over the city. In the Parthenon the colonnade was ornamented by a carved frieze running round the temple wall under the roof. This frieze was the work of Pheidias and his assistants, and represents the Panathenaia or yearly procession in honour of Athena. This glorious sculpture, which expresses so fully the Greek ideal of physical perfection, is known to us through the "Elgin Marbles," portions of the sculptures which, with the help of Lord Elgin, were brought to England during 1800-12 and are now in the British Museum, where a model of the Parthenon and of the Acropolis as a whole may also be seen.

Inside the temple, dimly lighted by holes in the roof, and by light reflected from the marble walls and ceiling, stood another statue of Athena also by Pheidias, and this statue was made of wood covered with plates of gold and ivory. Behind the temple proper was a second chamber used as a treasury, where was stored part of the enormous wealth which came to Athens through successful wars, through trade, and through tribute from subject states, and which made possible these vast building schemes.

Among the other buildings of the Acropolis was the great open-air theatre of Dionysus. During the yearly festival which was held in early spring in honour of that god, the whole of Athens would crowd into the tiers of stone seats that still rise in an irregular curve of about two-thirds of a circle up the side of the Acropolis hill. There for three days they would sit and watch the performances—a set of three tragedies in the morning and a comedy in the afternoon. These plays were originally religious in nature, though a good deal of local colour was introduced, especially in the comedies. There were also competitions, and at the end of the festival a prize was given to the authors of the best tragedy and comedy, to the best actor, and to the citizen who financed and produced the best piece.

It gives us some idea of the public spirit, religious zeal and artistic ability of the Athenians when we reflect that the men who planned the Acropolis on such a sweeping scale, wrought it, paid for it a sum equal to over six million pounds of our money, and yet were content to live themselves in small unornamented houses in narrow and often dirty streets, so that the traveller was often fain to ask, as he picked his way through the dusty lanes, whether this was indeed Athens. But he had only to lift his eyes to the Acropolis to have his doubts resolved. The orator Demosthenes in later years put the passionate pride of the Athenians in this great national achievement into words when he said, "Athens still keeps everlasting possessions; on the one side the memory of her exploits; on the other the beauty of the monuments dedicated in those olden days—yonder Propylaea, the Parthenon, the Colonnades."

**Great men of the Periclean Age.**—Great achievements require great men to conceive and execute them. During this short period Athens produced an amazing number of famous characters—poets, artists, statesmen, philosophers—who all contributed their share to the world's heritage.



First comes PERICLES himself, the presiding genius of the age. This great leader and patriot was elected military commander-in-chief in 460 B.C. and for thirty one years, till his death in 429, was the true ruler of Athens. His power depended chiefly on the respect which the Athenians had for his noble character. They knew that he had their interests alone at heart, and they trusted him to use for his country's glory only the great power with which he was entrusted.

The character of the man, which so closely resembles the character of the Athenian nation as a whole, may be judged from the funeral speech which he made over the Athenian heroes who fell at the beginning of the Peloponnesian War. The whole speech is recorded by Thucydides the historian, but only a portion of it can be given here.

"When the moment came he stepped forward from the graveside on to a high platform made for the occasion, so that his voice might carry over the crowd, and spoke as follows. 'My first words shall be for our ancestors, for it is both just and proper that at a time like this our tribute of memory should be paid to them. They are worthy of our praises, for they enlarged the empire which we hold to-day. Of the battles which we and our fathers fought, bravely withstanding barbarian or Greek, I do not wish to say more. I wish rather to show the spirit in which we faced them, and the way in which we rose to greatness. Our laws give equal justice to all, and we welcome and honour talent in every branch. We have no black looks or angry words for our neighbour if he enjoys himself in his own way, and we keep from the little mean-spirited acts which cause annoyance. We are reverent and obedient to those set in authority and to the laws. No other city provides such beauty in its public buildings to cheer the heart and delight the eye. Moreover, the city is so large and powerful that all the wealth of all the world flows into her. Our military training, too, is

different. The gates of our city are flung open to the world, nor do we prevent our visitors from seeing what an enemy might care to copy. For we do not trust in arms and armour, but in our own warlike spirit. So, too, with education. Our enemies toil from early boyhood in search of courage, while we, free to live and wander as we



PERICLES

*Found in the British Museum*

Plutarch says that nearly all the portraits represented Pericles wearing a helmet, because his head was misshapen. In his own time he was called "bulb head."

please, march out none the less to face the self-same dangers. Our citizens attend to both public and private duties, and we think him useless who keeps apart from public life. We are most adventurous in action, but consider well beforehand. The bravest surely are those who have the

clearest vision of what is before them, glory and danger alike, and yet go out to meet it. Such then is the city for whom lest they should lose her, these men died a soldier's death. For if I have chanted the glories of the city, it was these men and men like them who made her what she is.'"

With Pericles must be associated his friend PHIDIAS, the world famous sculptor who collaborated with him in his plans for beautifying Athens. He was responsible as we have already seen, for the two great statues of Athena in the Acropolis, and he superintended the carving of the Parthenon frieze. He seems to have had the power of communicating his skill and ideas to his pupils, since it is impossible to tell which sections of the Parthenon are his work and which are by his pupils. His greatest achievement was the gold and ivory statue of Zeus at Elis which overlooked the plain where the Olympic Games were held and which was reckoned as one of the Seven Wonders of the World.

**Dramatists**—Four names survive as representing the best of the Greek playwrights of the age—AESCHYLUS, SOPHOCLES and EURIPIDES who were tragedians and ARISTOPHANES whose plays were chiefly amusing comedies. It must not however be supposed that these four represent the whole of Greek drama. It is only by chance that their work has survived rather than that of the many other, and possibly greater, dramatists of the period.

Be this as it may, however, these plays as we have them are the foundation of our modern drama. They are of very fine quality with a poetry and depth of thought that still fascinates the great minds of our age, while the dramatic stories they tell grip the imagination of ordinary men and women. It is a pity that so few have survived out of the enormous quantity of dramas that were written. We are told that Sophocles alone produced one hundred and thirty plays of which unfortunately only seven have survived.



SOCRATES

**Historians**—HERODOTUS is often called the Father of History, for he was the first to write history as we know it. He gathered his information from monuments and inscriptions, traditions, the works of other Greek writers and his own observations on his many travels. The selections given in this book afford an excellent idea of his method, which is to amuse as well as to instruct.

While Herodotus' history is mainly devoted to an account

of the Persian War, that of THUCYDIDES tells the story of the Peloponnesian War. His history is perhaps the best Greek prose ever written, it contains many fine speeches (such as the Funeral Speech already quoted) and brilliant character sketches of the men of his day. His great mind and clear perception of the true meaning behind events make him in this respect the greatest historian of the ancient world.

**Orators**—The period saw the careers of many great orators, for the gift of oratory was much prized and carefully cultivated by the Athenians. They had a passion for lawsuits, and hired trained speakers to plead for them or to write their speeches. Of these orators the only one who need be mentioned is DEMOSTHENES who has already been referred to in the story of Alexander as using all his eloquence to warn the Athenians of the danger of Macedonian invasion.

**Philosophers**—The greatest of the Greek philosophers and the man destined to have the greatest influence on posterity was SOCRATES. Ugly and ungainly in appearance he yet had a beautiful character and disposition and a keen mind which even the quick-witted Athenians found too sharp for them. Although a sculptor by trade, he spent most of his time in the market place, engaging people in conversation and forcing them to think deeply on such subjects as truth and justice. His age did not appreciate him or his methods which they thought likely to stir up discontent among the Athenians and on a charge "of corrupting the youth of the city" he was condemned to death and forced to drink poison (the usual method of execution).

But his work was carried on by his pupil PLATO, who has preserved for us many of Socrates' conversations which would otherwise have been forgotten since Socrates himself wrote nothing. Plato's most important work is *The Republic*, the greatest work of political philosophy ever written, and still a source of inspiration to thinkers of to day.

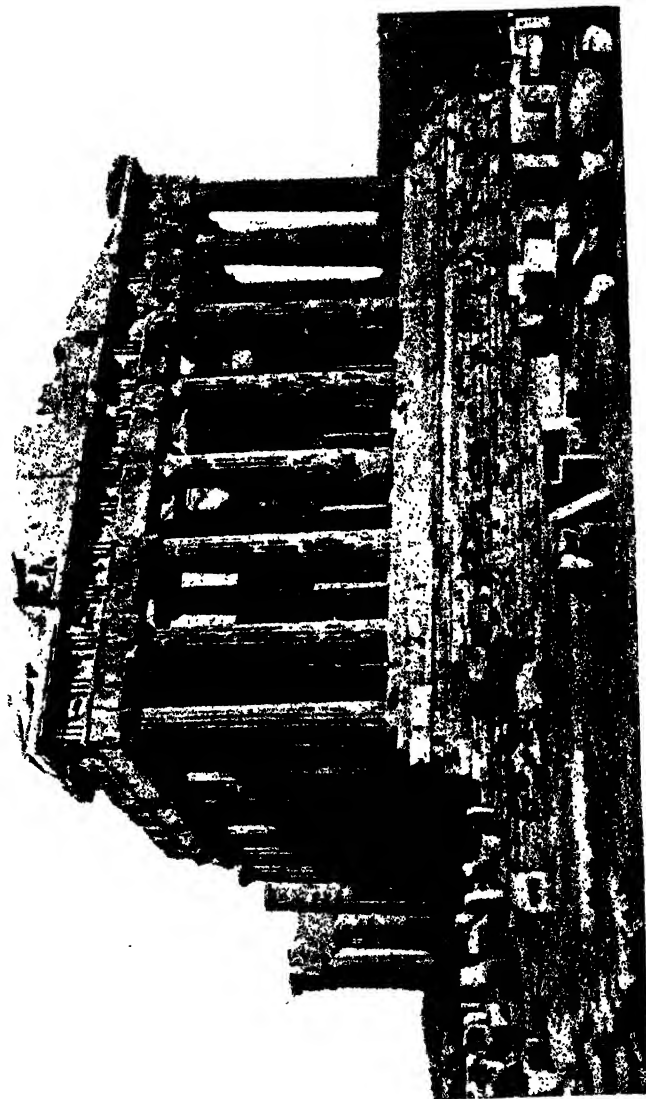
Plato's own disciple was ARISTOTLE who, as we have seen, was tutor to Alexander the Great. Aristotle was the scientist *par excellence*, and for two thousand years he has been a mine of ideas to men of all countries.

### CHILDREN'S STORY

There were many clever men living in Greece during her "Golden Age." Among these was Herodotus, a famous writer of

history. He was born in a Greek city, Halicarnassus, in Asia Minor, which was then under Persian rule. The first half of his life was spent in travel. About 446 B.C. he went to Athens and there made friends with some of the wise Greeks living at that time. He travelled in Persia, Egypt, Italy, Sicily and other lands. During his travels he made careful enquiries about the manners, customs and stories of the people whom he visited. Afterwards he wrote in Greek his wonderful books of history. His chief idea was to tell the story of the great struggle between the Persians and the Greeks. It is Herodotus who tells us so clearly the stories of Marathon, Thermopylae and Salamis. He was the first man to write history according to a plan, and he is always looked upon as the Father of History. The following accounts are taken from his books.

**A story of Croesus, the rich king of Lydia** — Croesus having heard that Alcmaion did him service sent for him to Sardis. And when he came he offered to give him a gift of as much gold as he could carry away at once upon his own person. With a view to this gift, its nature being such, Alcmaion made preparations and used appliances as follows: he put on a large tunic leaving a deep fold in the tunic to hang down in front, and he drew on his feet the widest boots which he could find, and so went to the treasury to which they conducted him. Then he fell upon a heap of gold dust and first he picked in by the side of his legs so much of the gold as his boots would contain. And then he filled the whole fold of the tunic with the gold, and sprinkled some of the gold dust on the hair of his head, and took some into his mouth. And having so done, he came forth out of the treasury, with difficulty dragging along his boots, and resembling anything in the world rather than a man, for his mouth was stuffed full, and every part of him was swelled out. Upon Croesus came laughter when he saw him, and he gave him all that gold and much more."



THE PARTHENON (PRESENT STATE)

**The crocodiles of Egypt.**—"Of the crocodile the nature is as follows: during the four most wintry months this creature eats nothing. She has four feet and is an animal belonging to the land and the water both, for she produces and hatches eggs on the land and the most part of the day she remains upon dry land but the whole of the night in the river, for the water in truth is warmer than the unlouded open air and the dew. Of all the mortal creatures of which we have knowledge this grows to the greatest bulk from the smallest beginning, for the eggs which she produces are not much larger than those of geese and the newly hatched young one is in proportion to the egg but as he grows he becomes as much as seventeen cubits long and sometimes yet larger. He has eyes like those of a pig and teeth large and tusky, in proportion to the size of his body but unlike all other beasts he grows no tongue neither does he move his lower jaw but brings the upper jaw towards the lower being in this too unlike all other beasts. He has moreover strong claws and a scaly hide upon his back which cannot be pierced and he is blind in the water, but in the air he is of very keen sight. Since he has his living in the water he keeps his mouth all full within of leeches and whereas all other birds and beasts fly from him the crocodile-bird is a creature which is at peace with him seeing that from her he receives benefit. For the crocodile having come out of the water to the land and then having opened his mouth (thus he is wont to do generally towards the West Wind), the crocodile bird upon that enters into his mouth and swallows down the leeches and he being benefited is pleased and does no harm to the crocodile bird.

Now for some of the Egyptians the crocodiles are sacred animals, and for others not so, but they treat them on the contrary as enemies. Those however who dwell about Thebes and about the lake of Moiris hold them to be most sacred, and each of these two peoples keeps one crocodile selected from the whole number, which has been

trained to tameness, and they put hanging ornaments of molten stone and of gold into the ears of these and anklets round the front feet, and they give them food appointed and victims of sacrifices and treat them as well as possible while they live, and after they are dead they bury them in sacred tombs, embalming them.

**The gnats of Egypt**—"Against the gnats, which are very abundant, they have contrived as follows: those who dwell above the fen land are helped by the towers to which they ascend when they go to rest, for the gnats by reason of the winds are not able to fly up high. But those who dwell in the fen land have contrived another way instead of the tower and this it is: every man of them has got a casting net, with which by day he catches fish but in the night he uses it for this purpose: that is to say he puts the casting net round about the bed in which he sleeps and then creeps in under it and goes to sleep and the gnats if he sleeps rolled up in a garment or a linen sheet, bite through these but through the net they do not even attempt to bite.

#### **The building of the Great Pyramid.**

After Kaire ascended the throne he brought them to every kind of evil for he shut up all the temples, and having first kept the people from sacrifices there, he then bade all the Egyptians work for him. So some were appointed to draw stones from the stone quarries in the Arabian mountains to the Nile, and others he ordered to receive the stones after they had been carried over the river in boats, and to draw them to those which are called the Libyan mountains, and they worked by a hundred thousand men at a time, for each three months continually. Of this oppression there passed ten years while the causeway was made by which they drew the stones, and it is made of stone smoothed and with figures carved upon it. For this, they said, the ten years were spent, and for the underground cham-

bers on the hill upon which the pyramids stand, which he caused to be made as burial chambers for himself in an island, having conducted thither a channel from the Nile. For the making of the pyramid itself there passed a period of twenty years, and the pyramid is square, each side measuring eight hundred feet, and the height of it is the same. It is built of stone smoothed and fitted together in the most perfect manner, not one of the stones being less than thirty feet in length.

On the pyramid it is declared in Egyptian writing how much was spent on radishes

and onions and leeks for the workmen and if I rightly remember that which the interpreter said in reading to me this inscription, a sum of one thousand six hundred talents of silver was spent. And if this is so, how much besides is likely to have been expended upon the iron with which they worked, and upon bread and clothing for the workmen, seeing that they were building the works for the time which has been mentioned and were occupied for no small time besides, as I suppose, in the cutting and bringing of the stones and in working at the excavation under the ground.

## MORE STORIES TO TELL

### 1. THE GODDESS HOLDA AND THE FIRST FLAX-GROWER

**I**N a beautiful valley among the Swiss mountains there lived a peasant and his wife. The peasant was well content with his simple life. He spent his days watching his little flock of sheep as they grazed on the pine clad slopes and at nightfall he returned to the wooden hut that he had built in the shadow of the snow clad mountain tops.

But his wife was an ill tempered woman. She did not like this quiet life, and was for ever scolding. "Why did you bring me to this lonely place?" she would ask. "I have no fine clothes like the women in the village down yonder and there is often not enough to eat."

Then the peasant would take down his cross-bow and set off to hunt for the wild goats that lived in the mountains. If he were lucky enough to shoot one, he would bring it home for supper.

One day, as he was following a goat, it led him up and up the mountain till he came to a place where he had never been before. He had climbed so high that the green slopes

were left behind and all around was glistening ice and snow.

Suddenly, to his amazement he saw before him a doorway leading into the mountain. Summoning up his courage, he entered and found himself in a great hall. It was supported by crystal pillars and the floor was heaped with precious treasures and glittering jewels. In the middle of the hall, surrounded by lovely maidens in silvery garments, stood the most beautiful lady he had ever seen.

Overcome with fear and shame, the peasant fell upon his knees and begged the lady's pardon for thus rudely breaking into her palace. As if in a dream he heard her soft voice bidding him have no fear. "I am the goddess Holda," she said, "the queen of the skies. Rise up, and choose which of my treasures you will have to take away with you."

The peasant gazed around but so many splendid things met his eyes that he knew not which to choose. At last his glance fell on a little bunch of flowers in the lady's hand. "I would like those," he said.

"You have chosen wisely," said the lady with a gracious smile as she gave him the

nosegay, "they are the flowers of the flax, and while they remain fresh in your care you will never die. Here too is a bag of their seed. Sow this seed, and tend it with care, and then watch to see what will happen."

Still wondering if he were not dreaming, the peasant returned home, and told his adventures to his wife. But she only scolded him. "You foolish fellow!" she cried, "you might have brought me home a golden bracelet, or a silver girdle, instead of a bunch of witched flowers and a bag of worthless seeds."

The peasant, who was used to her ways, only smiled and went out to sow his seeds. He tended them well, and was rewarded by seeing them sprout into hundreds of little green shoots. These shoots soon grew into plants with flowers of a heavenly blue.

When the blossom was over, and the seed had come, the peasant once again met the goddess Holda walking in the fields. She showed him how to gather the flax, to soak the stems so as to get out the fine shiny threads in them, and to weave these threads together into linen. All the countryside soon heard of this wonderful new material and came to buy it. Soon the peasant was a rich man and his wife was so busy spinning flax into linen that she had no time to be cross.

In this way many happy years passed, till the peasant's wife died and he himself grew very old. One day he noticed that the fairy flowers, which had remained fresh for so many years, were at last beginning to fade. "My time has come," said the old man.

He said farewell to his friends and set off up the mountain. A hunter saw him enter the cave in the ice, and he was never seen again. All over the world to-day grows the flax plant with the blue flowers, which the goddess Holda gave to the peasant.

## 2. THE STORY OF PHAËTON

Phaëton was a beautiful youth whose father was Apollo, the god of the Sun. One day another youth laughed at him and said, "You are not telling the truth when you say

that your father is a god; your father is only an ordinary man." This made Phaëton very angry and he made up his mind to visit the Sun-god, and ask him if he were really his father.

He went to the land of the sunrise, where stood the palace of the Sun, in which Apollo clothed in purple sat on a golden throne that glittered with diamonds. The light was so dazzling that the youth could not come near the throne. Beside the golden throne stood the fair forms of the Day, the Month, the Year, the Hours and the Seasons.

Apollo, seeing the youth dazzled with the splendour of the scene, asked him why he had come.

In a trembling voice the youth replied, "O Light of the great world, tell me if you are really my father."

Then Apollo put aside the rays of light which shone around his head, and said to the youth, "Come nearer to me."

Phaëton came towards Apollo, and Apollo embraced him saying, "You are really my son, and to prove this I shall let you have anything you ask me for."

"My father," replied Phaëton, "let me drive the chariot of the sun through the skies for one day."

Apollo was very sorry that the boy had asked this, for he knew how hard it was to drive the horses of the Sun.

"No one but myself," said Apollo, "can drive the flaming chariot of the Sun. The first part of the road is so steep that the horses can hardly climb it; the middle part is high in the sky, so high that it almost makes me afraid when I look down and see far below me the earth and the wide sea. The last part of the road is a steep slope and I have to drive most carefully. And all the time the heaven is turning round, carrying the stars with it. On each side of the road are fearful monsters. Thou must pass the horns of the Bull, in front of the Archer, and near the jaws of the Lion. In one place the Scorpion stretches out his arms, in another the Crab puts forth his claws. Beware, my son, for fear that you go to your death."

But the boy had made up his mind, and at last Apollo led him towards the beautiful chariot. It was made of shining gold; the axle was of gold, the pole and the wheels of gold, and the spokes were of silver. Along the seat were rows of diamonds and precious stones, which shone like fire in the brightness of the Sun.

While the boy gazed in delight and wonder the beautiful Dawn threw open the purple gates of the East, and showed the pathway covered with roses.

The stars fled away, and last of all went the Daystar. Then the lovely Hours harnessed the fiery steeds, and Apollo, anointing the face of his son with ointment so that he should not feel the heat, told him to hold the reins firmly. Taking the rays of light from his own head, Apollo placed them on the head of his son, giving him this last advice, "Keep away from the North and the South; keep in the path between, for in the middle you shall be safe."

The boy thanked his father and sprang lightly into the golden chariot, grasping the reins with delight. But the horses felt that the load they drew was lighter than usual, and dashed away from the road. For the first time the Great Bear, far away in the North, was scorched with heat, and the Serpent which is coiled round the North Pole frozen and harmless, felt life coming back to him.

When Phaëton looked down and saw far below him the vast earth and the wide sea he grew pale, and his knees shook with fear. He did not know whether he should pull the reins tight or let them loose. He forgot the names of the horses.

Then he saw monsters all over the face of

the heavens; the Scorpion with his great claws and tail made him so afraid that he dropped his reins, and could no longer guide the horses. The horses now galloped where they wished, sometimes high in the sky, sometimes almost touching the earth. The moon with wonder saw her brother's chariot below her own.

The clouds smoked; the forests on the mountains burned, the fountains and rivers dried up. The world seemed on fire. So hot was it that the people of Africa were burned black, and they are black to this day.

Three times Neptune, the Sea-god, tried to raise his head above the water, and three times he had to shrink back because of the heat.

The Earth, scorched and burning, prayed to Jupiter, asking him to end her pain by killing her with one of his thunderbolts. Even the North and South Poles were smoking. These poles held up the palace of Jupiter, and if they fell everything would be destroyed. Jupiter heard her prayer, and telling all the gods that everything would be burned up unless he destroyed Phaëton, thundered through the sky. Then seizing a lightning bolt he hurled it at Phaëton.

The youth, struck by the lightning, fell from the chariot with his hair all on fire. Like a shooting star he fell towards Earth, making a bright track through the air as he fell. A great river received his burning body and the fairies of the stream wept over him.

His sisters, the daughters of the Sun, mourned for him by the banks of the stream, and were changed into poplar trees.

So died Phaëton, the beautiful child of the Sun, because he tried to do a task too hard for him.





**SECOND YEAR'S COURSE  
OF HANDWORK  
FOR THE HISTORY LESSONS**

### ABRAHAM

The Children's Story in the first history lesson deals with early life in Canaan, and stresses the conditions under which the people contemporary with Abraham lived. The children are given a glimpse of the nomadic tribes, their tents, their flocks and herds and their families. The information is largely associated with Bible lessons, so that the teacher will be able to use some of the material to assist with religious teaching, for children are at times prone to associate life in Canaan with that of twentieth-century England. Further correlated handwork exercises will be found in Volume I. under the historical section, "The Land that Never Changes"; while in scenic group models, the camel and driver given in the geographical section No. 9, "The Hot Dry Lands," will be found useful.

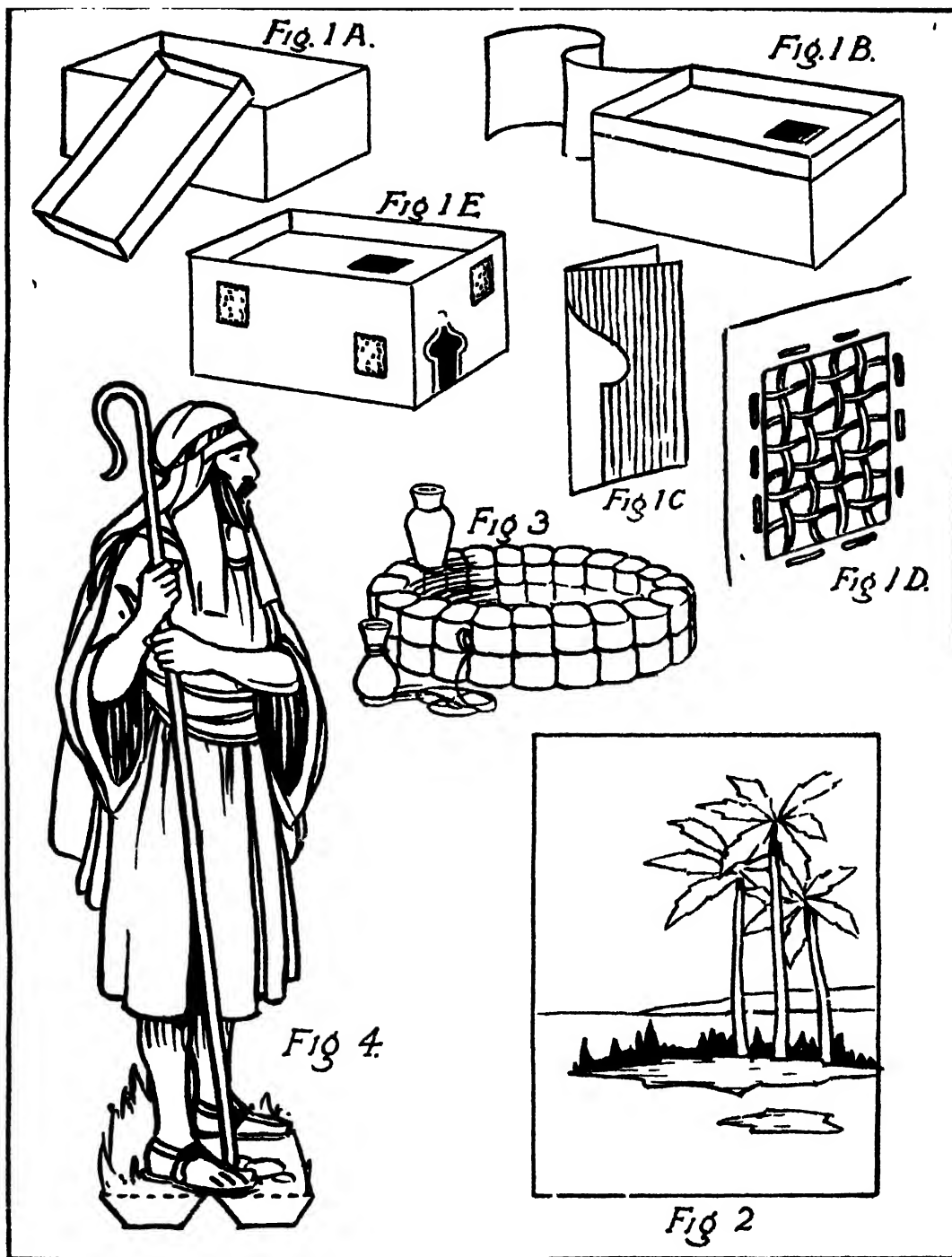
The first handwork exercise described on the plate is that of a typical eastern house, rectangular in shape, with the characteristic flat top, such as that on which the spies of Old Testament history were hidden by the faithful Rahab. For this model an old card board box is utilised: if several boxes of varying size are used, the results will be all the more satisfactory, for the houses may be grouped, when completed, to form a village, and the differing sizes will add variety to the group. The box (Fig. 1 A) is inverted so that the solid base is upward, and the lid is stuck to this base, Fig. 1 B. Before sticking, cut a small square opening out of the lid, place the lid in position and trace round the opening; finally cut a similar hole out of the base of the box. The two holes will then correspond when the lid is stuck down. Next, take a long strip of brown paper, or yellow tinted paper, the exact height of the box, and paste it round to cover the card-

board. If brown or pastel paper be used, colour may be added with pastels. The door may be cut on folded paper as shown in Fig. 1 C, and pasted on to the walls. The younger children may be allowed to add the windows to the house by simply drawing them in pastel, but older children should cut out one or two rectangular spaces, pierce the edges with holes, and sew on strands of raffia, weaving over and under, Fig. 1 D. As before mentioned, the completed houses (Fig. 1 E) might be assembled to form a group, and one or two camels with camel drivers will give a realistic finish.

Fig. 2 shows an attractive cut-out of an oasis that the children will enjoy making, especially if the bright colours indicated be used. First of all, on the background sheet a piece of pale blue paper is pasted for the sky, and below the horizon orange or yellow paper is pasted to represent the sand. The narrow strip of the distant hills is of a pale purple colour. The dark blue strip for the water is fringed with portions of green paper, then the brown stems of the palm trees are added. To the ends of these stems, masses of dark green foliage, worked in free cutting, are stuck to overlap somewhat.

Fig. 3 is a plastic model of an eastern well that gives scope for brick building. The children should prepare a supply of cubical bricks by pressing masses of clay on the modelling board. The bricks are assembled to form a well head as shown, and finally one or two water jars are added.

Fig. 4 shows a cut-out of an eastern shepherd, ready for tracing and duplicating. After being painted in shades of pale yellow, a number of sheep traced from the plate in Volume I., page 513, might be assembled about the shepherd to form a group.



# PLATE I

- FIG 1 AN EASTERN HOUSE MADE FROM A CARDBOARD BOX
- FIG 2 PAPER-CUTTING SCENE OF AN OASIS
- FIG 3 PLASTIC MODEL OF AN EASTERN WELL
- FIG 4 PAPER CUT-OUT OF AN EASTERN SHEPHERD

### HAMMURABI

This chapter deals with the life and times of King Hammurabi, one of the first law-givers mentioned in history. (For handwork lessons in connection with the cuneiform writing of the Babylonians, see Volume I., page 121.) In the oral lesson an account is given of the stele showing Hammurabi receiving the laws from the Sun-god. Most of the handwork exercises given on the accompanying plate are based on this interesting archaeological specimen.

At intervals throughout the historical series, illustrations of cut-outs of figures in contemporary dress are given. These are drawn in bold lines so that the teacher may trace and hectograph them for class use. Several such pictures may be incorporated into a useful Time Chart to aid in the visual teaching of the history, and to give the children a clearer conception of the time periods involved.

The first model suggested is a comparatively simple one—that of Hammurabi's chair or throne as seen on the stele. Older children might be allowed to draw the development on plain paper, using rulers for measurements. Younger children should use carton paper ruled in 1 in. squares. The development on squared paper is seen in Fig. 1 A. The seat (Fig. 1 B) is an oblong of paper 2 in. by 1 in., having two 1 in. square flaps. It will be advantageous if the development of the seat be made below the drawing of the chair (Fig. 1 A), for the children will then see the relation of its measurements to those of the back of the chair into which it is to fit. While the chair is still in the flat, its decoration should be added. As will be seen, the design is a com-

paratively simple one, consisting of rectangular masses. In order to simulate beaten gold, the panels might be of a yellow colour alternating with black. The body of the chair should also be painted black. In fixing together, one flap of the seat should be pasted into position and held securely while setting, then the seat should be "squared" and the other flap fixed, Fig. 1 C.

The next exercise is a plastic model of the stele. In order that the final result may be on a large scale, the children should be allowed to work in pairs. The first part of the model is a regular cylinder, which is produced by rolling a mass of clay on to the modelling board, Fig. 2 A. When sufficient regularity has been attained, gentle pressure is applied at one end during the rolling. This will produce the spindle shape, Fig. 2 B. The tapered end is rounded off and cut as shown in Fig. 2 C to produce a small platform. It is on the background of this platform that the group, shown in the enlarged sketch Fig. 2 D, is built. "Built" is a suitable expression, for the children take small masses of clay, model them into the shapes required, and press them gently on to the background in the following sequence: king's head, body and right arm with sceptre, left arm and hand, and finally one side of the rectangular seat. The god may be added independently. For detail work the point of the modelling tool is used, and the body of the shaft is impressed with cuneiform characters, Fig. 2 E. When dry, the whole is painted black.

Fig. 3 shows the cut-out of a Babylonian figure which should be painted in bright browns, yellows and reds.

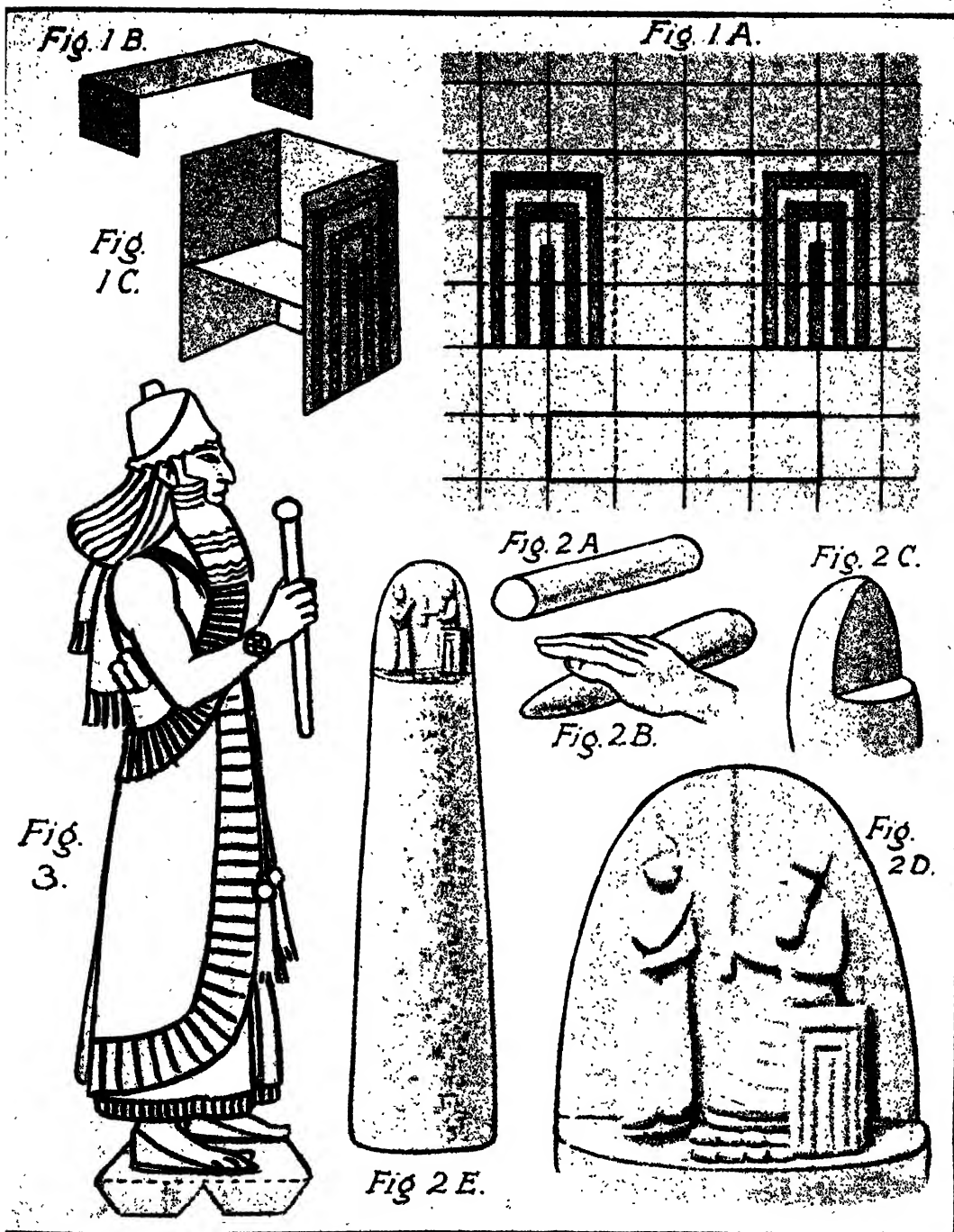


PLATE II.

- FIG. 1. PAPER MODEL OF HAMMURABI'S CHAIR  
 FIG. 2. PLASTIC MODEL OF THE STELE  
 FIG. 3. CUT-OUT OF A BABYLONIAN MAN

## JOSEPH

This lesson is closely associated with the Bible lessons given in the classroom. In addition, the children gain a glimpse of life in Ancient Egypt, hence our suggested hand-work exercises are connected with this aspect. In Volume I. various exercises associated with early life in Egypt have been given under such titles as "The Clever River-Men," "The Land of No Rain," and "The Land that Never Changes." Some of these models might be used to amplify those given on the accompanying plate. The co-operative spirit is one to be encouraged in the school, and the models made by the younger children might be shown to illustrate the lesson under consideration. If the younger children know that their models are to be used in this way, it will give them a greater incentive to produce good work.

The top picture on page 19 in this volume is an illustration of Canaanites trading in Egypt. Fig. 1 A shows how the lyre may be utilised as an exercise in paper cutting. On a folded piece of tinted paper the outside of the lyre shape is cut freely with the scissors. Next, holding the solid shape, the inside line is cut. The inside is removed, the narrow shape remains, and this is opened out to form the symmetrical lyre, Fig. 1 B. This may be mounted on to a background sheet, and the strings added in pencil lines. More proficient children should use the shape as a pattern, and trace it on to medium card. When this is cut out, two or three strings may be added with needle and thread.

No lesson on Ancient Egypt would be complete without models of the Pyramid and the Sphinx. To make the Pyramid (Fig. 2 A) a rough mass of clay or plasticine is taken and pressed on one sloping side downwards on the modelling board to produce a flat triangular surface. By rotating

the model and pressing on its three other sides in succession, the four triangular planes are produced, Fig. 2 B.

The well-known Sphinx in its weather-beaten, eroded condition, makes a simple and appropriate plastic model. A triangular body shape, with two outstretched paws is built up (Fig. 3 A), and this is surmounted by a spherical head and two side pieces. The children now model this to shape, cutting it here and there with the modelling tool to give the figure its ancient appearance, Fig. 3 B.

Fig. 4 shows a paper-cutting scene which might form the cover design for a scrapbook of brown paper leaves to hold the child's collection of Egyptian pictures. Begin with a rectangular sheet of pale blue paper, sticking it on to a large brown sheet, then add, in the following order, a yellow rectangle for ground, a pyramid in orange and dark brown, a sphinx in white drawing paper crayoned as realistically as possible, and finally the sand dune shapes in orange coloured paper. It will be noticed in the diagram that certain of the pieces overlap. This method helps to give a sense of completeness to the finished picture.

A simple model of a Nile boat may be made from stout paper or thin card and a match-box case. Two similar strips of the shape shown in Fig. 5 A are cut and stuck to the sides of the box (indicated by dotted lines). The two curved ends of the paper sides are bent inwards and pasted together on their inner edges to form the bow and stern, Fig. 5 B. A kindergarten stick is thrust down the centre of the box, and rigging is added with needle and thread. A sail is cut on folded paper, Fig. 5 C. The completed model is illustrated at Fig. 5 D.

The figure of the Egyptian (Fig. 6) is coloured in orange, red and black tints.

Fig. 1 A.



Fig. 1 B.

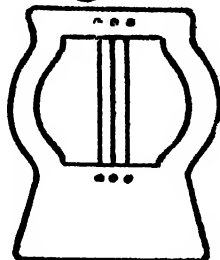


Fig. 4

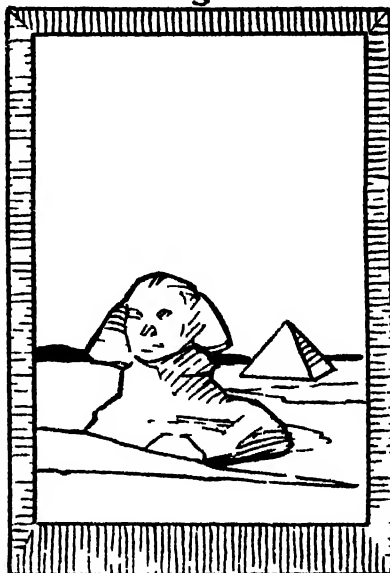


Fig. 3 A.



Fig. 3 B.



Fig. 2 A.

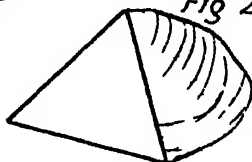


Fig. 2 B.

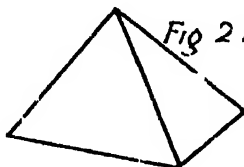


Fig. 5 A.



Fig. 5 D.



Fig. 5 C.

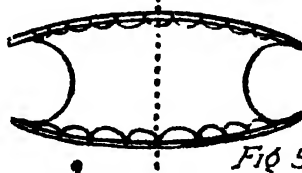


Fig. 5 B.

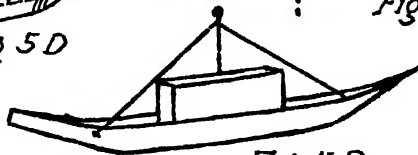


Fig. 6.



PLATE III

- FIG 1 EGYPTIAN LYRE IN CARDBOARD  
 FIG 2 PLASTIC MODEL OF A PYRAMID  
 FIG 3 PLASTIC MODEL OF THE SPHINX  
 FIG 4 EGYPTIAN PAPER-CUTTING SCENE  
 FIG 5 EGYPTIAN BOAT MODELLED IN CARD  
 FIG 6 PAPER CUT-OUT OF AN EGYPTIAN



### THESEUS

In this lesson the children get a glimpse of early Greek life and mythology. Exercises dealing with the Greeks proper will be given at a later stage when their authentic history is being studied. Children enjoy illustrating stories that are told in the classroom, and this is an example where to a knowledge of good literature, is added knowledge of historical value.

The story opens with the significant discovery by the Greek boy Theseus of the great stone buried in the sand. Beneath the boulder he found a short sword and a pair of sandals. The first model illustrated is that of the Greek sword and its scabbard. For practical reasons the scabbard is made first. The children take a strip of thin card, score it down the middle with a light cut, and fold it as shown in Fig. 1 A. Four tabs or flaps are left when cutting to shape, and these are folded round to close the scabbard. To close the end two decorative pieces (Fig. 1 B) are cut (or rather one is cut and used as a pattern to cut the other) on folded paper to secure a symmetrical result. Two small rectangles are pasted to the front and the back of the other end (Fig. 1 C). Next the Greek short sword is cut, again on folded paper, the children taking care that the broadest part of the blade is of the right size to slip into the scabbard (Fig. 1 D). The scabbard should be painted a bright yellow colour to represent gilt, with black decoration; the blade of the sword may be stained with school ink to represent steel and the handle painted yellow and dark brown. When dry the sword is placed inside its scabbard, Fig. 1 E.

In addition to the sword, a pair of sandals was discovered by the young Greek. The sandals will form an exercise in plastic modelling. With the point of the tool a foot shape is marked on the modelling board and tiny pellets of clay are fixed to cover the shape (Fig. 2 A). When the space is filled the irregular surface is smoothed with the bill of the thumb to form a flat sole, Fig. 2 B. A curved ankle piece is now fitted round the heel as shown in Fig. 2 C, and this is pierced to receive two threads. The model should be saved for a day or two to harden, after which it may be painted a dark brown colour.

The famous bed of the giant Procrustes forms our next model. Fig. 3 A shows the development of the main portion of the bed, which is of a shallow box lid shape. Some of the children might be allowed to use a small box lid for the purpose. The development of the legs is shown in Fig. 3 B and one of them is shown fitted to the under side of the lid in Fig. 3 C. These legs as they are would be of too plain a character so the children should arrange to make four decorative ends for the corners. One decoration is prepared by cutting on folded paper, Fig. 3 D. The decoration is folded, placed against a leg, and tested to see that it fits correctly and projects a little at the top. This being correct, it is used as a template, or shape, for producing three others, which are fixed into position as shown in Fig. 3 E. A simple design in paint or crayon can be used to complete the model.

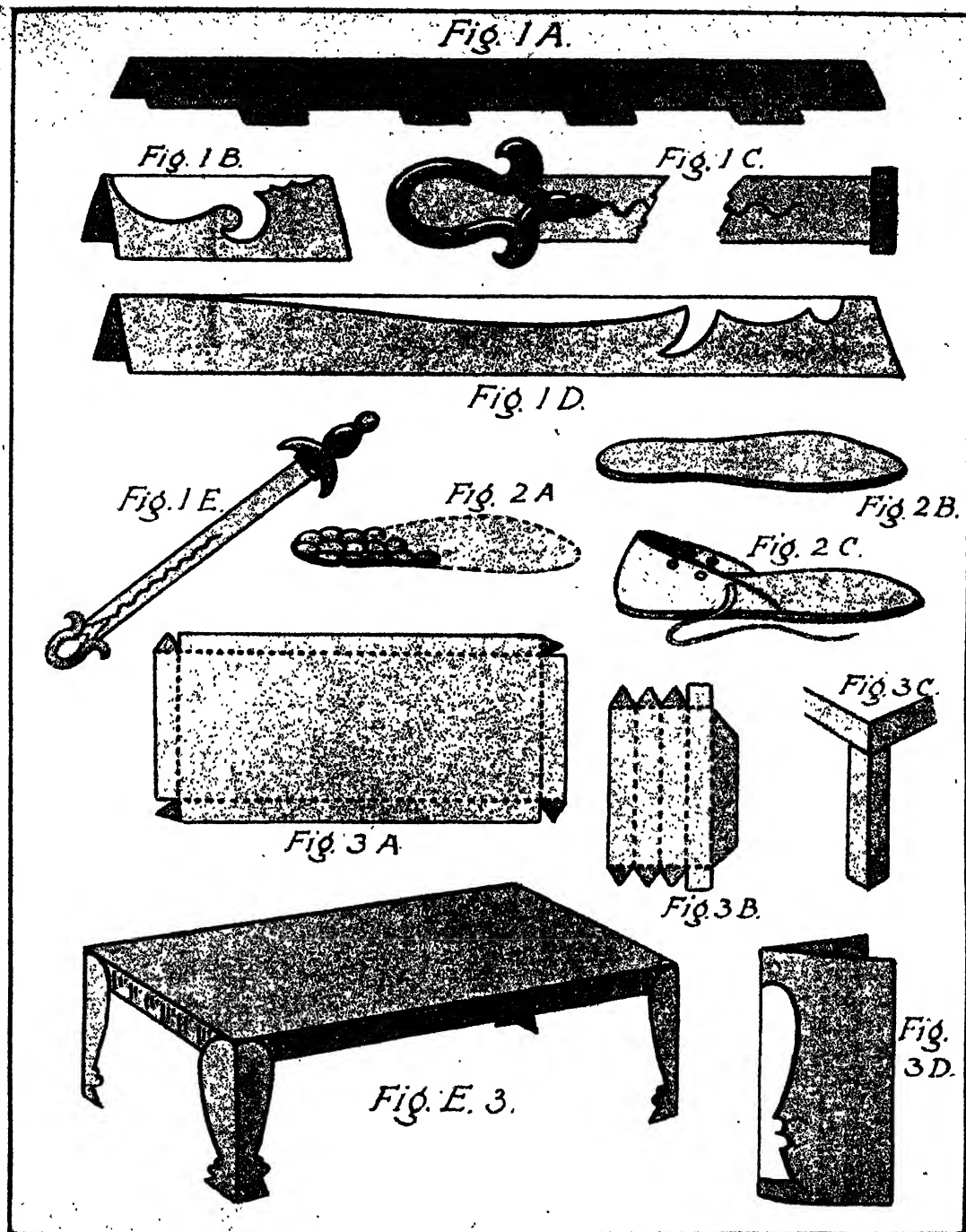


PLATE IV.

- FIG. 1. GREEK SWORD AND SCABBARD MADE IN PAPER  
 FIG. 2. PLASTIC MODEL OF SANDAL  
 FIG. 3. GREEK BED IN CARD

### ULYSSES

The children are here dealing with the stories of the Greek heroes and in particular the story of the famous Greek warrior Ulysses and the taking of Troy. The use of the gigantic wooden horse, conceived by the ingenuity of Ulysses, and the clever manner in which it was used in the sacking of Troy by the Greeks is one of never fading interest to young children and one that may be well illustrated by them.

The accompanying plate shows how the children may make a model of the famous Wooden Horse of Troy. For this purpose a cylindrical mantle box, a rectangular box lid, and some thin cardboard will be needed. (In some schools the caretaker will be able to supply a number of empty mantle boxes.) The complete mantle box is taken and either a square portion is cut away as shown in Fig 1 A or, if the cutting is too difficult a task for young fingers, a square patch of black paper is stuck on to it. If the cutting method is used the portion removed should have a flap of gummed paper stuck to its lower edge, after which it is hinged to open and close in the manner shown. If a patch be stuck on, then a separate door is cut and fixed on to the body of the box. The next step is to prepare a paper or card gauge which is made in the following manner. Take an old piece of paper or card and cut from it a rectangular portion of exactly the same length as the diameter of the cylindrical box. We have designated this as  $x$  inches on the sketch Fig 1 B. Naturally this will be done by experiment, and will call for a certain amount of judgment on the part of the children. The children now take the gauge, and placing it upon cardboard, draw a rectangular shape of three sides only,

and using this as a base build upon it the shape of the horse's head, neck and chest as shown in Fig 1 C. It will be noticed that small triangular flaps are left within the figure shape. For less proficient children, the teacher might trace and duplicate the head shape. For the rear end of the horse, a tail shape as shown in Fig 1 D is prepared, but this is a simple matter, as it fits only along the back and one flap down.

Before fixing the head and tail the legs must be dealt with. Fig 1 E shows these, which, as will be seen, are provided with large triangular flaps at each hoof. Two of each shape are cut, and may be applied to the sides of the mantle box either by paper fasteners (when it will be necessary to remove the box ends to fix them) or by adhesive. When the legs are placed in their correct positions, the children return to the head and tail shapes. These are stuck with adhesive to the middle line of the top of the box, as shown in Fig 1 F. Note that in fixing the small triangular flaps these are turned alternately to the front and back. Now comes the final mounting of the model horse. A box lid is taken, and four slits are made on its top. Through the slits the triangular flaps for the hoofs are thrust, bent backwards and stuck. Three kindergarten sticks are pushed through the lid to form axles (Fig 1 G) and cardboard wheels are added to them, a hole is made in the front to take a piece of string for pulling the horse along. Finally, a small ladder of kindergarten sticks and match stalks is reared against the body. When completed the model may be painted in cream or pale brown colour, with the mane and tail black.

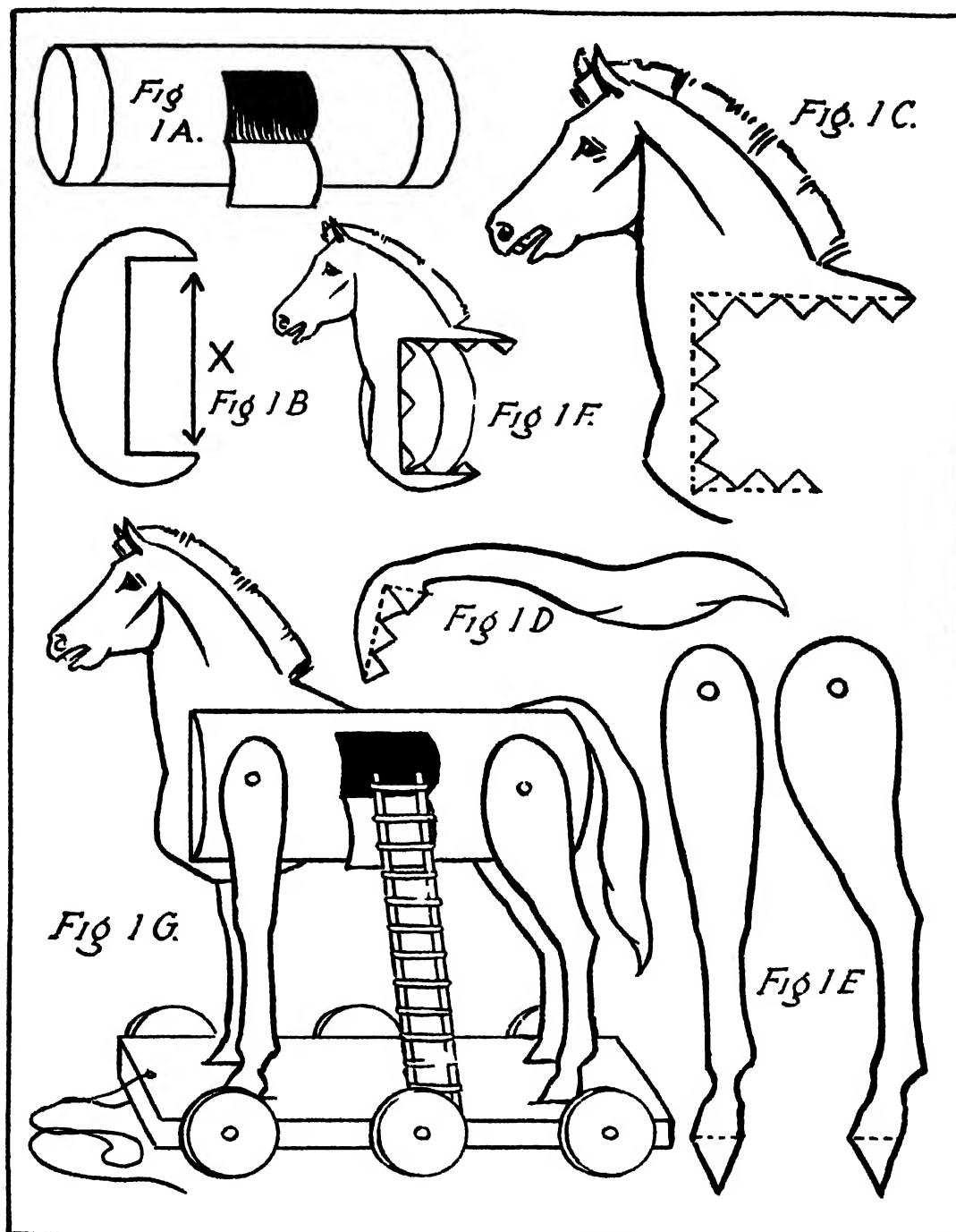


PLATE V

TOY PROJECT ASSOCIATED WITH THE WOODEN HORSE OF TROY

### SOLOMON AND SENNACHERIB

These lessons deal with the wise King Solomon and the cruel and terrible King Sennacherib.

The first model shown is that of an Assyrian battering ram, the prototype of the armoured tank of the World Wars. The illustration is taken from an ancient Assyrian wall sculpture, the children should be reminded of this, for it is far to assume that the upper platform would accommodate considerably more than the two archers shown in the illustration on page 6. For this model a rectangular box (Fig. 1 A) may be used. It is inverted, so that the lid now forms the base. The lid is also inverted, and in order to attach it to the edges of the box, the sides of the box and the lid are covered with brown paper stuck round to hold both together. The back end of the box is removed, and the front end is cut away as shown in the diagram to receive the battering ram. Next, four kindergarten sticks are thrust through—one in the body of the box, and three through the inverted lid. The sticks are fitted with pairs of card board wheels. Two holes are made at the front, and through these a cord is passed. The ram itself (Fig. 1 B) is modelled of clay, bored with two holes and put away to harden. Fig. 1 C shows how the ram is fitted to the box, the kindergarten stick acting as an axle, the other hole being threaded with a cord for manipulating the ram upwards and forwards. (The children can put their hands inside the box through the open end for the purpose of fixing.) Next, the tower part is developed, Fig. 1 D. The distance  $x$  in is equal to the width of

the end of the box, the horizontal dotted line shows where the box top will fit. This shape is fixed round the box in the manner shown in the sketch of the finished model (Fig. 1 E), and the whole should be coloured with brown and black pastel.

The winged Assyrian bull is a helpful plastic model to use in connection with this lesson. To a shaped body part (Fig. 2 A) four legs, a head and two wings are added. This is modelled into shape, details being marked with the point of the tool. When the bull is completed a fifth leg, characteristic of the sculpture of this age, is added to the front, so that from the horizontal view, the creature is shown as having four legs. Naturally this will amuse the children.

In connection with the story of King Solomon we have selected a plastic model of a Phoenician vessel. In the "Hadow Report" on the junior school it is suggested that the evolution of house building may well be illustrated with models. The growth of ship building from the primitive dugout to the modern liner might well be illustrated in a similar way. The first stage in modelling the Phoenician ship is to build up a long, narrow, rectangular slab. To one end is fitted a conical ram and to the other a conical prow. Short rectangular slabs are fitted cross ways, Fig. 3 A. To these slabs a long shallow tray is fitted (Fig. 3 B), and tiny circular shudds are pressed on to the sides of it. The model is completed by adding several match stalk and paper oars, a large steering oar at the prow, and a kindergarten stick mast with a paper sail and cotton rigging, Fig. 3 C.

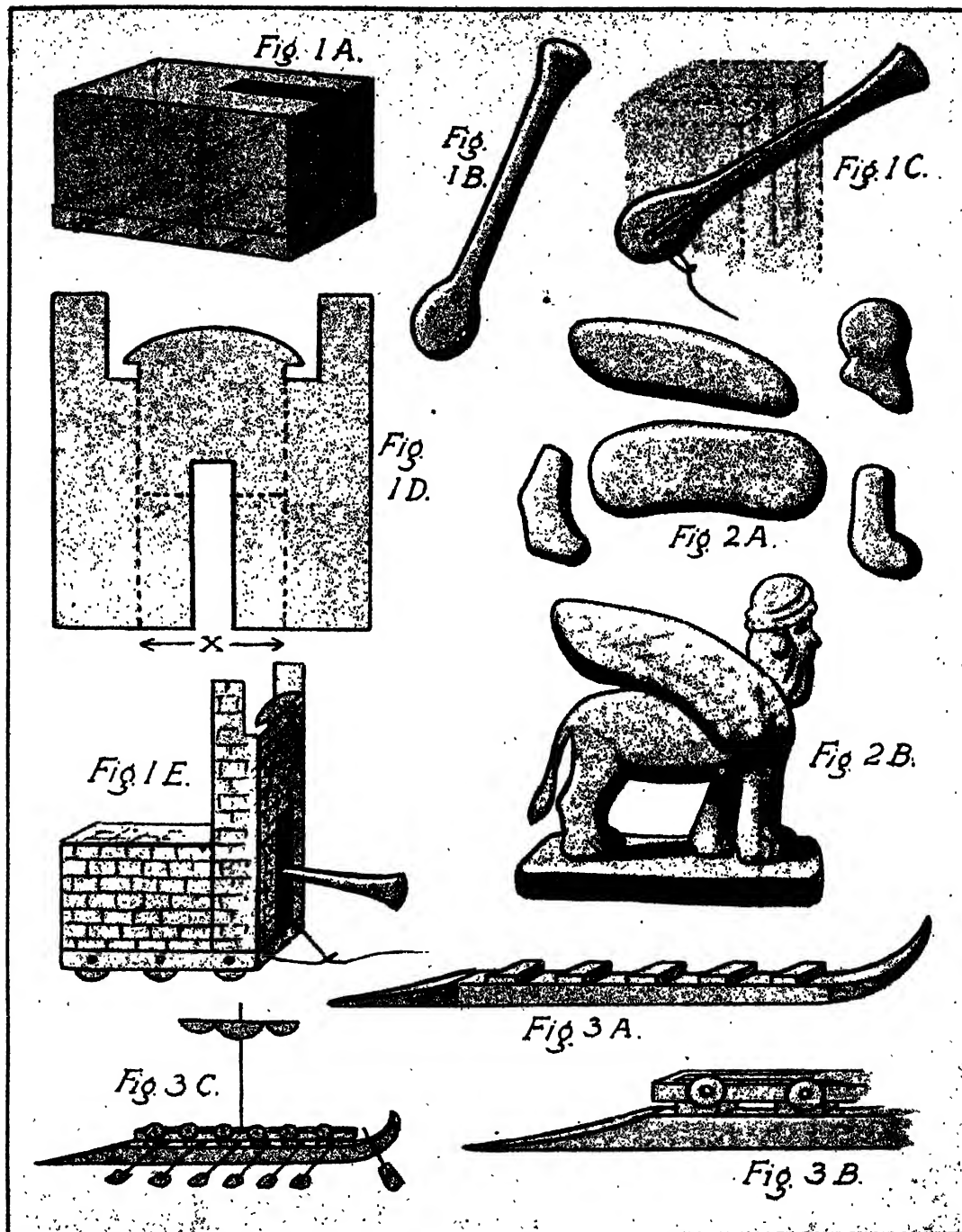


PLATE VI.

- FIG. 1. ASSYRIAN BATTERING-RAM MADE FROM A CARDBOARD BOX  
 FIG. 2. ASSYRIAN WINGED BULL MODELLED IN CLAY  
 FIG. 3. MODEL OF A PHOENICIAN SHIP

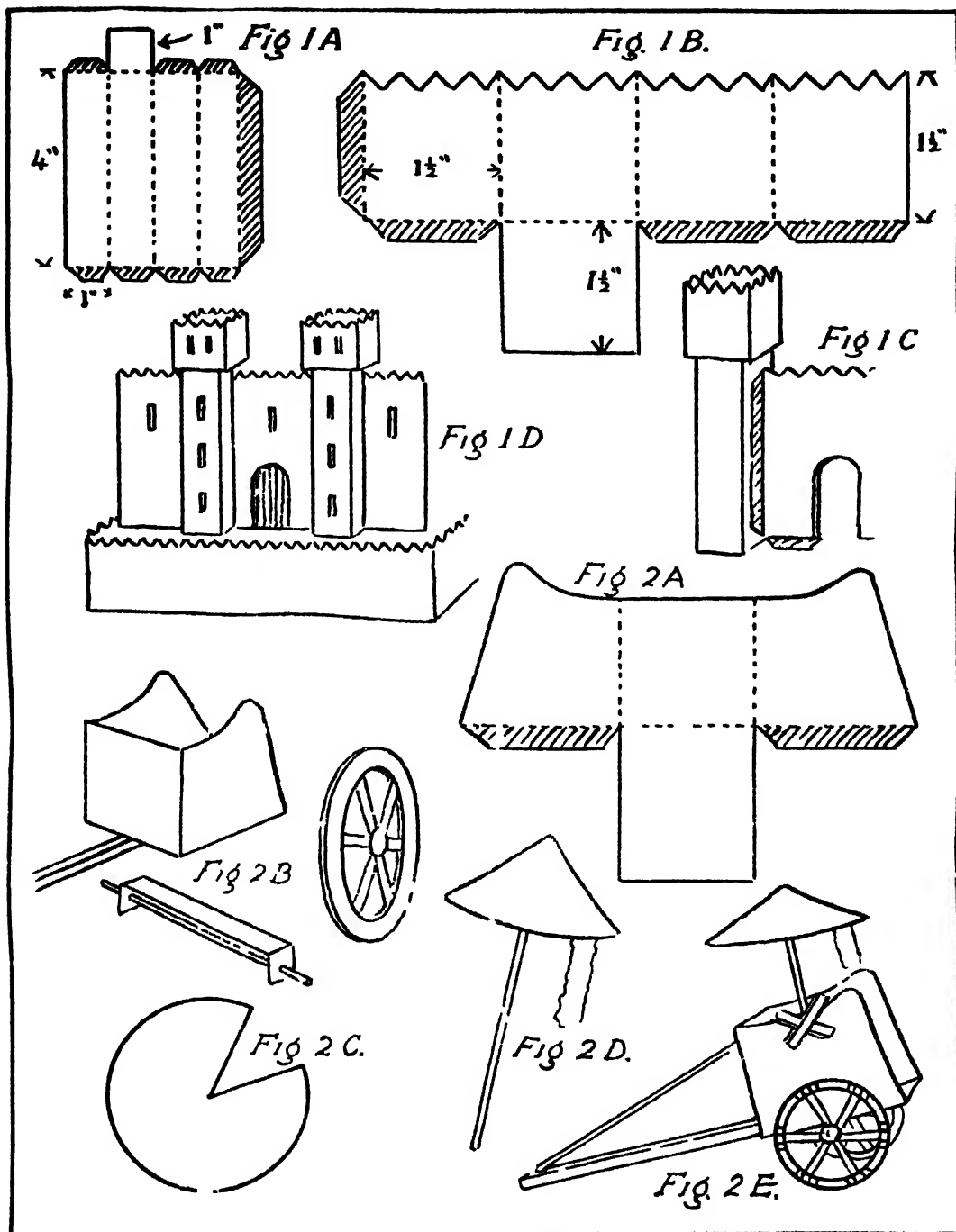
### THE ASSYRIANS

Ruthless as the Assyrians were in destruction they were also great builders. From their wall sculptures, crude as they are in some respects, yet singularly truthful and beautiful in others, we are able to obtain information as to the general form of their buildings and city walls.

The first model, that of a city gateway, is a comparatively simple one to make, for it will be noticed that it is practically all based upon the square and the rectangle. For younger children and more backward classes, the teacher might use carton paper ruled in 1 in. squares to simplify the task of measuring. Fig. 1 A shows the development of one of the pillars of the archway. It consists of four sides 4 in. by 1 in., a square end of 1 in. with flaps of  $\frac{1}{4}$  in. which are fitted as shown in the diagram. At the top of this pillar a larger and overhanging tower is needed. The development of this is shown in Fig. 1 B. It consists of four square sides of  $1\frac{1}{2}$  in. each and a  $1\frac{1}{2}$  in. square base, together with  $\frac{1}{4}$  in. fixing flaps. The pillar is glued together, then the tower (which has its top and open edges cut in characteristic zig zag pattern) is glued to the pillar. Two of these pillars are made and the next task is to make the central portion containing the doorway. This is a sheet of fairly stout cardboard, cut with a zig zag top, about 4 in. wide, and high enough to reach almost to the top of the pillars. It is provided with flaps at the two sides and base, and is attached to the middle of the pillars as shown in Fig. 1 C. In the model the flaps are gummed behind so that they will not show. Two shorter widths of card are cut similarly to be attached to form the outside walls of the gate. The doorway itself should now be

cut away. All the assembled parts are next glued on to the bottom of an inverted box (Fig. 1 D), round the edges of which a long projecting strip of stout paper, cut with the zig-zag edge, has been stuck. The whole is tinted a pale drab colour, with black markings to represent stonework.

The Assyrians were great lovers of hunting, for which sport they used the horse chariot. A model chariot appears in the section of Volume I., page 126, under the chapter "Horses and Chariots". A further model is illustrated here in the accompanying plate. Fig. 2 A shows the development of the body of the chariot, which consists of three sides, a base and fixing flaps. In order that the two curved sides may be symmetrical in the finished model, the children should draw a paper shape of one side, place it in position on the cardboard and trace round it. Then for the other side reverse the paper shape and again trace round it. The body is glued up, a kindergarten stick is glued on the under side and two wheels of card are fitted as shown in Fig. 2 B. Next a characteristic sunshade is required. This is a circle of cardboard with a segment removed (Fig. 2 C) and its edges pasted together. Within the point a small portion of plasticine is stuck, and into this a kindergarten stick is thrust (Fig. 2 D) and a rectangular piece of paper is attached at the back. In order to fix the stick, a piece of cork is glued to the base of the chariot. To complete the model, a narrow strip of paper is pasted from the shaft to the front of the chariot, and two crossed quivers are stuck to the chariot side, Fig. 2 E. The whole of the model is painted brown and yellow, and the sunshade red.



# PLATE VII

FIG. 1 AN ASSYRIAN CITY GATE MODELLED IN CARDBOARD  
 FIG. 2 AN ASSYRIAN CHARIOT MODELLED IN CARDBOARD



## NEBUCHADNEZZAR AND CYRUS

The Children's Story in the historical section deals with the lives of Nebuchadnezzar, the king who took the Jews to Babylon, and of Cyrus the Persian, the king who helped the Jews. They are told that Nebuchadnezzar was famous as the builder of a new and wonderful city of Babylon, with its temple and palaces, its avenues of trees, its high walls with houses on the top, its grand bronze gateways and its many coloured glazed statues. It is therefore appropriate that in this handwork lesson on the architectural aspect should be stressed.

The usefulness of co-operative work in the classroom has already been noted. As there is a considerable amount of work to be done in the making of a Babylonian temple, it is advisable that it should be treated as a group model by the whole class. Alternatively, two or three such models only should be made, the class being divided into sections each working under a team leader. As will be seen from Fig. 1 A the basis of the model consists of three or four shallow boxes one set upon the top of another to form tiers. The boxes should be covered with white cartridge paper if water colours are to be used for the final decoration of the model, or with brown paper if pastels are to be used. Older children should be allowed to construct the box shapes in thin cardboard or stout paper. The Babylonian buildings exhibit peculiar sloping side walks or *ramps*. These ramps, which are wedge-like shapes, must next be considered. Taking a side of the lowest box, a diagonal is sketched lightly on it (Fig. 1 B), and from this, using its exact measurement, a triangular shape is

cut (Fig. 1 C) of which the vertical side is equal to the height of the box side. This shape is used as a pattern, and a triangle (a) is drawn on the paper. Fig. 1 D shows how to this are added a rectangle, another triangle and an end and flaps to produce the ramp. Four of these are cut and stuck to the box sides, Fig. 1 E. Having completed the lower ramps of the first box, the process is repeated with the next box, and so on with the remainder. To finish off the model, a dome of clay is prepared and fixed to the middle of the top box, Fig. 1 F. The whole may now be painted a stone colour (Chinese white plus a little yellow) to represent a building. Details can be added with grey water colour.

The second exercise shown is that of a Persian winged sphinx to be modelled in clay or plasticine. This is made in a similar manner to that illustrated in the previous plate the main difference being that this figure is shown in a recumbent position. To achieve this after the body has been modelled the two front legs are stretched forwards and the two rear ones bent at the joint.

A lesson on the Persians would not be complete without reference to the pomp of yesterday. Figs. 3 A and 3 B show cut outs of a Persian nobleman and his servant with the customary sunshade of those days. The figure should be traced and hectorographed for the children to cut out and colour in bright red, yellow, purple and blue. To make the handle of the sunshade rigid, gum a kindergarten stick on one side of it.



PLATE VIII.

- FIG. 1. BABYLONIAN TEMPLE MODELLED IN CARDBOARD  
 FIG. 2. PERSIAN WINGED SPHINX MODELLED IN CLAY OR PLASTICINE  
 FIG. 3. PAPER CUT-OUT OF A PERSIAN NOBLEMAN AND ATTENDANT

## ALEXANDER THE GREAT

The Children's Story in this chapter partly deals with the war between the Greeks and Persians. The children will be interested in the daring deeds of the Greek heroes, and the purpose of this handwork lesson is to illustrate some of the soldiers' equipment. The Class Picture No. 22 will be helpful in this lesson. The teacher should not fail to utilize the evolutionary aspect of the matter. The children should be led at this stage to take a retrospective view of their history lessons. They have seen how the earliest men used roughly hewn stones, fashioning them into tools and weapons; later they learned how a beginning was made in the smelting of metals. The equipment of the Greek soldier exemplifies a great advance in the mastery of working in metal. In the equipment of the Greek soldier the children may be led to appreciate something of the Greek cult of the beautiful. The illustrations still available on Greek vases, which can be seen in our museums, give us unmistakable proof of the Greeks' love of the beautiful.

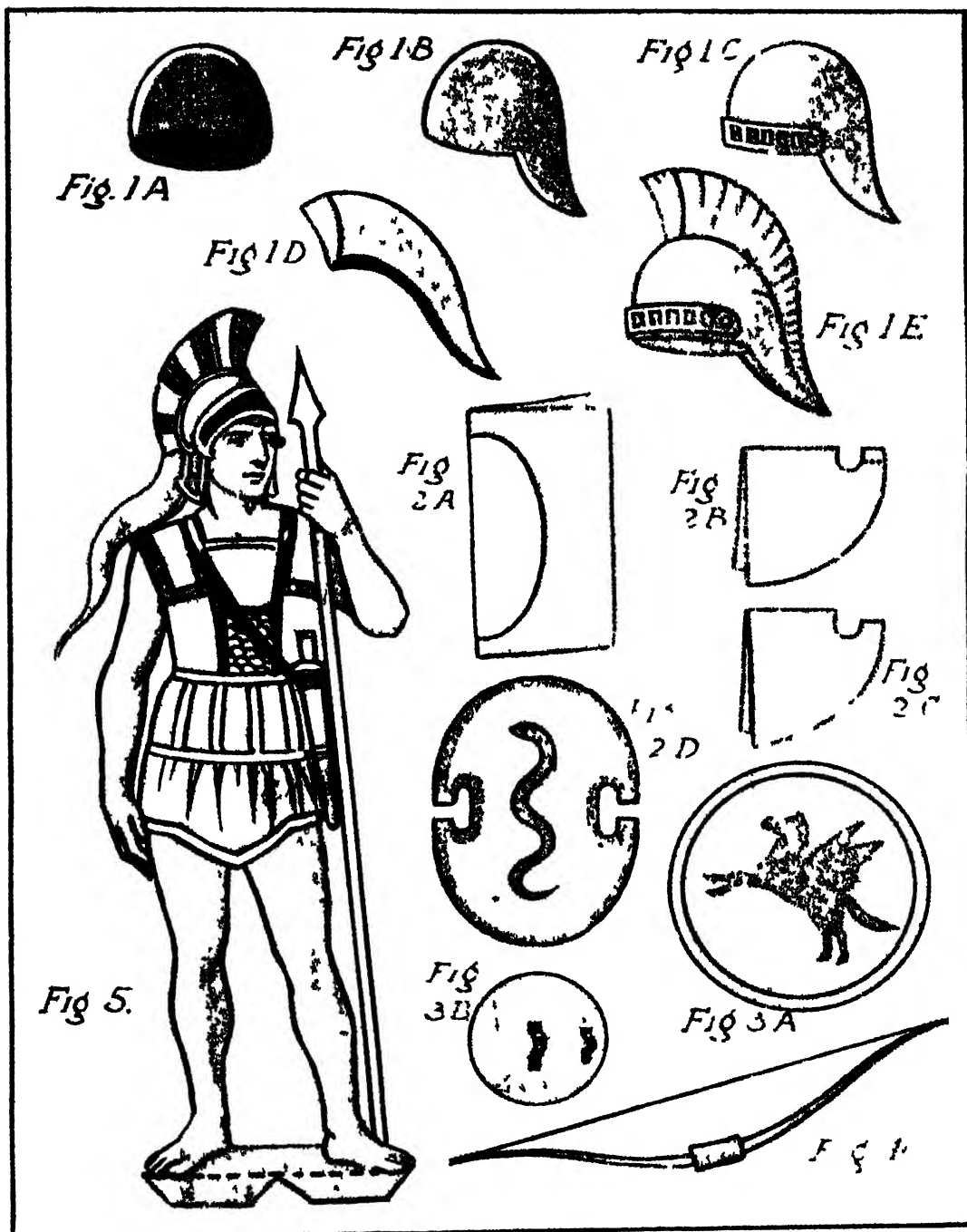
The first model illustrated on the accompanying plate is that of a Greek soldier's helmet modelled in clay or plasticine. If the latter be used, yellow to represent gilt will be preferable for the helmet, and bright red for the plume. Take a ball of plastic material in the palm of the left hand, rotate it, and at the same time insert the right thumb into the top to produce a hollow hemispherical shape as seen in Fig. 1 A. A flattened pointed leaf-like shape is pressed out and fixed to the back of the helmet, Fig. 1 B. To the shape so made, a narrow strip is fixed and decorated with incised ornament to produce the effect of the folded-up chin strap, Fig. 1 C. Next (Fig.

1 D), a wedge-like strip, fairly solid, is modelled quite straight, and afterwards bent to the shape of the back of the helmet. When complete, it is fixed carefully to the helmet, and is marked with the point of the needle tool. If the model be made of clay, it should be put away to harden, and when thoroughly dry it should be tinted with yellow water colour, the plume being coloured a bright red or blue.

The next model, a Greek shield, takes the form of a paper-cutting exercise. On a folded sheet of stout paper an oval shape is cut (Fig. 2 A) and allowed to remain folded. This oval shape is again folded, Fig. 2 B. A rounded portion is cut away carefully with the scissors. This portion that is cut should be about  $\frac{3}{8}$  in. from the edge. The small straight part beyond the dotted line is also cut away. The resulting shape will be similar to that shown in Fig. 2 C. When this is opened out, the result will be the finished shield shape (Fig. 2 D) which is painted yellow, with a brown border and a brown snake pattern such as was commonly used in those days.

Fig. 3 A shows another type of Greek shield. This might be made from the lid of a round cardboard box, or cut directly from cardboard. It is provided with a dark border and a black silhouette of Pegasus, the winged horse. Two strips of paper are fixed behind the shield for holding it, Fig. 3 B. (The smaller one was used for grasping the shield; through the larger one the forearm was thrust.) The Greek bow was usually made of deer antlers held together by a metal socket. This model (Fig. 4) should be made with clay on a fairly large scale.

A cut-out of a Greek warrior for tinting is shown in Fig. 5.



# PLATE IX

- FIG 1 PLASTIC MODEL OF A GREEK HELMET  
 FIGS 2 AND 3 GREEK SHIELDS MADE BY PAPER CUTTING  
 FIG 4 MODEL OF A GREEK BOW  
 FIG. 5 A CUT OUT OF A GREEK WARRIOR

### A BOY IN ATHENS

Having studied the Greeks in war, it is only fitting that a lesson should be devoted to their domestic life. The historical section, Chapter XIII., treats of Greek social life in an interesting manner that the children will appreciate.

The first model shown takes the form of a paper-cutting exercise of a Greek vase. It will be remembered that some vases were given in the First Year's Course, but here a more difficult pattern is attempted, and the children are required to add decoration. On a folded sheet of pale brown or buff paper the main shape is cut, Fig. 1 A. This is first opened out; then folded narrow strips of pale yellow paper are cut, measured carefully, and superimposed on the neck and base as indicated by the dark portions of the illustration. The plate on page 109 of this volume gives illustrations of some decorated jugs or vases, typical of those used in a Greek household. The next model is that of such a jug to be constructed in clay and afterwards coloured. Fig. 2 A shows the main parts of this model,—a short cylinder, a sphere and a circular slab. The sphere is rolled first and to this the cylinder is added. By placing the right little finger on the cylinder top and rotating the whole, applying pressure, the cylinder will be gradually hollowed. (There is no need to hollow the sphere, which may remain solid.) The joint of the cylinder with the sphere is smoothed out, the top of the lip is depressed a little at front and back. To fix the base the jug is placed gently upon it,

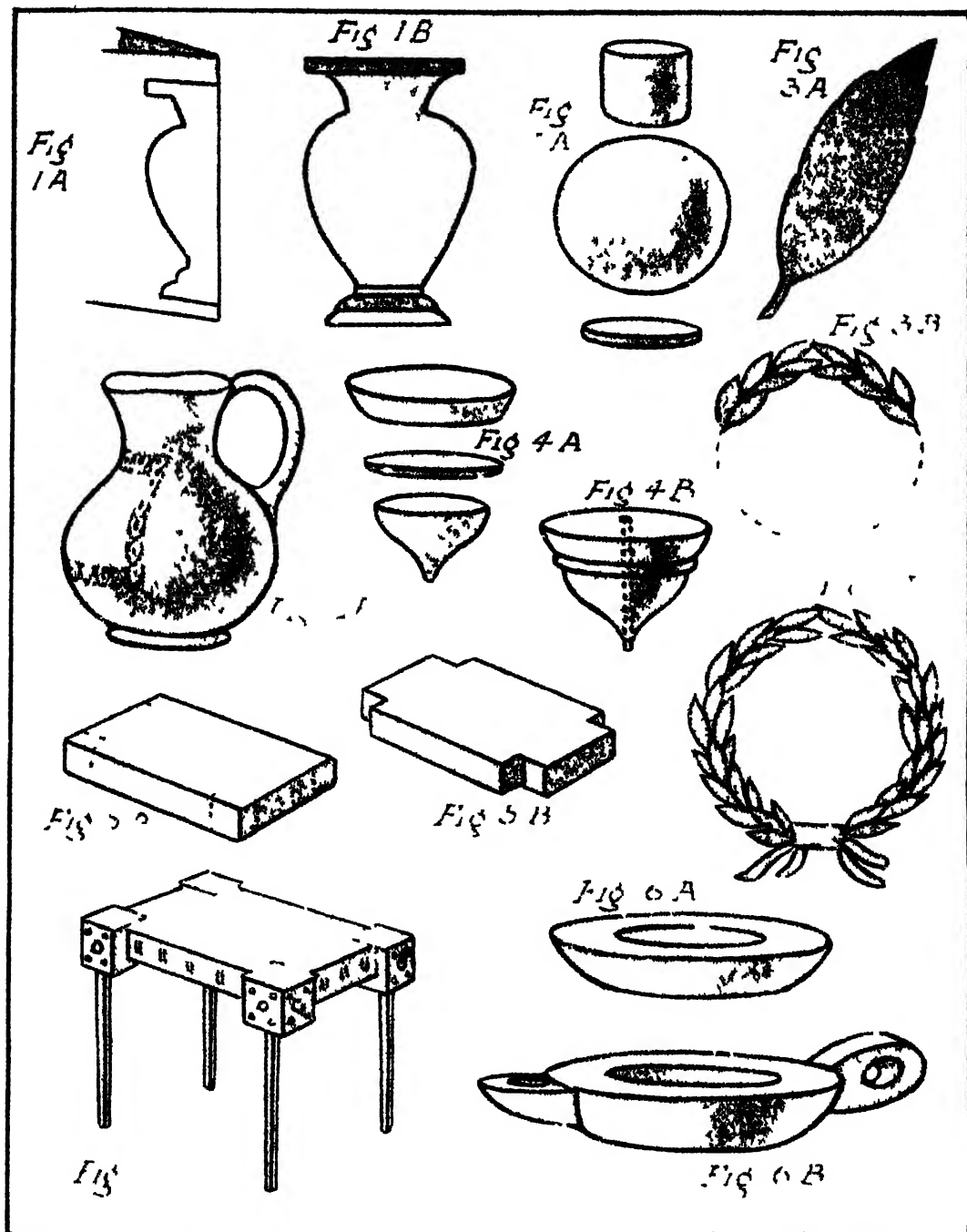
and pressing a little, it is slowly rotated to join the two together. A snake-like handle is rolled and fixed as shown in Fig. 2 B. With the point of the modelling tool, a neat pattern is incised; the dry model is painted black, the design an orange colour and the inside of the neck a reddish-orange.

Fig. 3 A shows the initial stages of a co-operative paper-cutting model to illustrate a wreath of olive leaves, the prize of an Olympian prize-winner. The children cut leaf patterns in green tinted paper Fig. 3 A. On a large sheet of paper the teacher sketches lightly in chalk a circle Fig. 3 B. The children next arrange their leaves carefully to overlap and form the completed wreath, Fig. 3 B. At the bottom strips of bright red paper are used to represent the binding. Several of these wreaths would make a pretty wall decoration.

Fig. 4 A shows the several parts of a clay model of a boy's top. These are held together by a match stick, Fig. 4 B.

To make a plastic model of a Greek table first prepare a rectangular slab, Fig. 5 A. From the corners (Fig. 5 B) cut away cubes, and afterwards insert larger cubes into the recesses, Fig. 5 C. Match sticks or short lengths of kindergarten sticks, are thrust into these to act as legs, and an incised pattern is added.

The model of the Greek lamp is made by modelling a shallow saucer shape (Fig. 6 A) and fixing to it a solid handle and spout. A hole should be made with a bent piece of wire to connect the spout with the interior.



# PLATE X.

- FIG 1 A GREEK VASE IN PAPER CUTTING
- FIG 2 PLASTIC MODEL OF A GREEK JUG
- FIG 3 CO-OPERATIVE PAPER-CUTTING—A WREATH OF OLIVE LEAVES
- FIG 4 PLASTIC MODEL OF A BOY'S TOP
- FIG 5 PLASTIC MODEL OF A GREEK TABLE
- FIG 6 PLASTIC MODEL OF A GREEK LAMP



**THE SECOND YEAR'S COURSE  
OF  
ENGLISH**





*From the picture by J. I. Lewis*

*[By permission of the East Gallery]*

THE COURTYARD OF THE COPTIC PATRIARCH'S HOUSE IN CAIRO

## THE TEACHING OF LITERATURE

**Scope of the work.**—A General Introduction on the "Teaching of English in the Primary School" is given in Volume I., page 131 of the Encyclopaedia. The accompanying Model Lessons on story-work for the second year follow closely the lines laid down in the General Introduction. These lessons are intended as a guide to reading in the classroom, the exercises being designed to cover all the essential points in the study of prose.

The material selected for reading should always be of the highest literary merit compatible with the age of the child. It should be chosen from a variety of authors, both old and new, for stories which are "written up" by one person, however well done, detract from the interest and educative value which is provided by the varying styles of different authors. Variety is to be found among the Model Lessons in this volume, where each story supplies a fresh outlook from the one preceding.

The exercises following the reading are intended to help the teacher in keeping some check on the value of the children's private study, and to encourage deeper comprehension. They cover oral discussion and simple written exercises which bear directly upon the story, and they are designed to bring out its full value and to provide for language study through the direct medium of the text. Unfamiliar words and phrases which occur in the story are brought up for discussion; word-study, memory work, tests of reading and exercises for composition are also supplied.

In addition to these more general exercises the intensive study of a passage chosen from the story has been developed. The method adopted for the study of such a *Marked Passage* is based on the article "Language

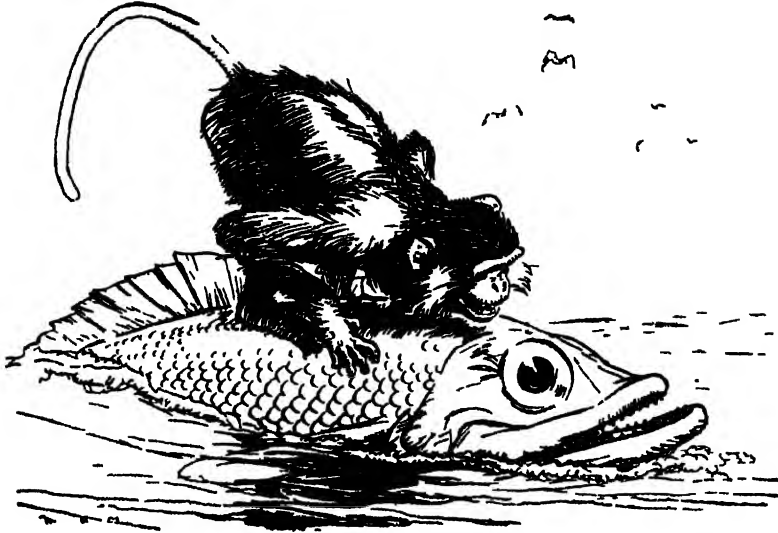
Study" in the *Handbook of Suggestions for Teachers* issued by the Board of Education. An important extract from the Handbook is quoted in the General Introduction on page 133 of Volume I. of the Encyclopaedia.

The Model Lessons which follow are in the form of stories with their accompanying exercises. They are an advance in difficulty upon those given for the First Year's Course. The general exercises which are set out in detail on page 136 of Volume I., are modified and supplemented to suit the older child. In the treatment of the *Marked Passages* grammatical terminology has been avoided, and may be introduced at the discretion of the teacher. The questions are framed to give the child-mind exercise in handling the following points of language: (a) *grammar* nouns, pronouns, adjectives, adverbs, verbs, possessive case; (b) *word-study* -synonyms, words of opposite meaning, choice and arrangement of words, alternative expressions, direct and indirect speech; (c) *punctuation*--capital letters, full stop, comma, question mark, inverted commas, apostrophe.

The Model Lessons are included in a series of four books of pupils' readers compiled by the Editor and published by Messrs. Macmillan & Co. Ltd., under the title of *Literature Old and New*.

Following the Model Lessons in this section are six original Plays which may be acted with the simplest stage properties, such as are easily obtainable in the classroom. The illustrations at the head of each play offer suggestions for costume. Two of them, *Sleepy Cecily* and *The Burnt Cakes* are specially suitable for boys. Articles on the production of Plays which cover the four years in the primary school are included in Volumes VI. and VII.

## MODEL LESSONS



### THE JELLYFISH TAKES A JOURNEY

ONCE upon a time the jellyfish was a very handsome fellow. His form was beautiful, and round as the full moon. He had glittering scales and fins and a tail as other fishes have, but he had more than these. He had little feet as well, so that he could walk upon the land as well as swim in the sea. He was merry and he was gay, he was beloved and trusted of the Dragon King. In spite of all this, his grandmother always said he would come to a bad end, because he would not mind his books at school. She was right. It all came about in this wise.

The Dragon King was but lately wed when the young Lady Dragon his wife fell very sick. She took to her bed and stayed there, and wise folk in Dragonland shook their heads and said her last day was at hand. Doctors came from far and near, and they dosed her and they bled her, but no good

at all could they do her, the poor young thing, nor recover her of her sickness.

The Dragon King was beside himself.

"Heart's Desire," he said to his pale bride, "I would give my life for you."

"Little good would it do me," she answered. "However, if you will fetch me a monkey's liver I will eat it and live."

"A monkey's liver!" cried the Dragon King. "A monkey's liver! You talk wildly, O light of mine eyes. How shall I find a monkey's liver? Know you not, sweet one, that monkeys dwell in the trees of the forest, whilst we are in the deep sea?"

Tears ran down the Dragon Qu'en's lovely countenance.

"If I do not have the monkey's liver, I shall die," she said.

Then the Dragon went forth and called to him the jellyfish.

"The Queen must have a monkey's liver," he said, "to cure her of her sickness."

"What will she do with the monkey's liver?" asked the jellyfish.

"Why, she will eat it," said the Dragon King.

"Oh!" said the jellyfish.

"Now," said the King, "you must go and fetch me a live monkey. I have heard that they dwell in the tall trees of the forest. Therefore swim quickly, O jellyfish, and bring a monkey with you back again."

"How will I get the monkey to come back with me?" said the jellyfish.

"Tell him of all the beauties and pleasures of Dragonland. Tell him he will be happy here and that he may play with mermaids all the day long."



PERSIMMONS



MERMAID

"Well," said the jellyfish, "I'll tell him that."

Off set the jellyfish; and he swam and he swam till at last he reached the shore where grew the tall trees of the forest. And, sure enough, there was a monkey sitting in the branches of a persimmon tree, eating persimmons.

"The very thing," said the jellyfish to himself; "I'm in luck."

"Noble monkey," he said, "will you come to Dragonland with me?"

"How should I get there?" said the monkey.

"Only sit on my back," said the jellyfish, "and I'll take you there; you'll have no trouble at all."

"Why should I go there after all?" said the monkey. "I am very well off as I am."

"Ah," said the jellyfish, "it's plain that you know little of all the beauties and pleasures of Dragonland. There you will be happy as the day is long. You will win great riches and honour. Besides, you may play with the mermaids from morn till eve."

"I'll come," said the monkey.

And he slipped down from the persimmon tree and jumped on the jellyfish's back.

When the two of them were about halfway over to Dragonland, the jellyfish laughed.

"Now, jellyfish, why do you laugh?"

"I laugh for joy," said the jellyfish.

"When you come to Dragonland, my master, the Dragon King, will get your liver, and give it to my mistress the Dragon Queen to eat, and then she will recover from her sickness."

"My liver?" said the monkey.

"Why, of course," said the jellyfish.

"Alas and alack," cried the monkey. "I'm grieved indeed, but if it's my liver you're wanting I haven't it with me. To tell you the truth, it weighs pretty heavy, so I just took it out and hung it upon a branch of that persimmon tree where you found me. Quick, quick, let's go back for it."

Back they went, and the monkey was up in the persimmon tree in a twinkling.

"Mercy me, I don't see it at all," he said. "Where can I have mislaid it? I should not be surprised if some rascal has stolen it," he said.

Now if the jellyfish had minded his books at school, would he have been hoodwinked by the monkey? You may believe not. But his grandmother always said he would come to a bad end.

"I shall be some time finding it," said the monkey. "You'd best be getting home to Dragonland. The King would be loath for you to be out after dark. You can call for me another day. *Sayonara.*"

The monkey and the jellyfish parted on the best of terms.



JELLYFISH

The minute the Dragon King set eyes on the jellyfish, "Where's the monkey?" he said.

"I'm to call for him another day," said the jellyfish. And he told all the tale.

The Dragon King flew into a towering rage. He called his executioners and bid them beat the jellyfish.

"Break every bone in his body," he cried; "beat him to a jelly."

Alas for the sad fate of the jellyfish! Jelly he remains to this very day.

As for the young Dragon Queen, she was fain to laugh when she heard the story.

"If I can't have a monkey's liver I must needs do without it," she said. "Give me my best brocade gown and I will get up, for I feel a good deal better."

#### FROM THE STORY

**1. Do you know?**—What is the colour of a jellyfish? Has a jellyfish a tail and fins? Can a jellyfish swim? Can a jellyfish walk? Do doctors nowadays bleed their patients? Where do monkeys live?

**2. Put in the describing-words.**—He had — scales and fins and a tail. "Heart's Desire," he said to his — bride, "I would give my life for you." "Monkeys dwell in the trees of the forest, while we are in the — sea." "Now," said the King, "you must go and fetch me a — monkey." The Dragon King flew into a — rage. Alas for the — fate of the jellyfish!

#### **3. Put together.**—

The jellyfish	went forth and called to him the jellyfish.
His grandmother	was fain to laugh when she heard the story.
The Dragon	was a very handsome fellow.

The monkey

The young Dragon Queen

always said he would come to a bad end. was sitting in the branches of a persimmon tree, eating persimmons.

**4. Tell me.**—What did the Queen want to cure her of her sickness? Why was the jellyfish the only fish who could get what she wanted? How did the jellyfish persuade the monkey to come with him? Why did the monkey want to get back quickly to the persimmon tree? Why did the jellyfish leave the monkey behind? What do you think is the meaning of *Sayonara*? How did the jellyfish become a jelly? What happened to the Dragon Queen?

**5. Marked passage.**—Read the passage on page 158, and then think about it with the help of these questions.—

*Once upon a time the jellyfish was a very handsome fellow.*

What kind of a story usually begins with *Once upon a time*? What other words often begin a story of this kind? Where do jellyfishes live? Are they very handsome? What word means the opposite of *handsome*?

*His form was beautiful and round as the full moon.*

Which word shows that the *form* belonged to the *jellyfish*? What does *form* mean here? What does *form* mean in this sentence?—They sat down on an old form. Which words describe the *form* of the jellyfish? Does the moon always look round? Does the *full* moon always look round? Fill the gaps in these sentences: 1. His face was as — as a berry. 2. The duck is as — as a lily. 3. The crow is as — as night.

*He had glittering scales and fins and a tail as other fishes have, but he had more than these.*

Who is meant by *he*? Has a jellyfish scales, fins and a tail? Of what colour are the scales of a fish? Which word describes

the scales? Of what use are the fins? Think of another word for *glittering*. What is meant by *these*? Think of a fish that has scales, fins and a tail.

*He had little feet as well, so that he could walk upon the land as well as swim in the sea.*

Have you ever seen a fish with feet? Which word describes the feet? Think of another word for *little*. Do you know a creature that can walk upon the land as well as swim in the sea? Make sentences containing these words—1. walk in, 2. walk under, 3. walk round.

*He was merry and he was gay, he was beloved and trusted of the Dragon King.*

Which word is used to mean the jellyfish? Which words tell you more about the jellyfish? How do you know that you are merry

and gay? (A comma marks the pause when you are reading aloud.) Why is there a comma after *gay*? Make a sentence to tell what the Dragon King thought about the jellyfish. Why do the words *Dragon King* begin with capital letters?

*In spite of all this, his grandmother always said he would come to a bad end because he would not mind his books at school.*

Why does the word *In* begin with a capital I? What is meant by *all this*? Was she the Dragon King's grandmother? What does *mind his books* mean? What is a boy called who minds his books? Make a sentence telling in her own words what his grandmother said about the jellyfish to one of her friends. Begin your sentence *His grandmother said, ' . . . '*



### THEOPHANIA

**P**EIER-WISI was a clever young peasant who lived in a little village that looked like a dumble in the hillside. He owned fifty mooing cows, one

hundred baaing sheep, forty grunting pigs, two hundred clacking fowls - and a bellowing bull. And he prophesied that in ten years' time he would have doubled these numbers.

But with all this wealth, Peter-Wise lacked the most important creature of all—a wife. Without a wife, what is the use of fifty cows, one hundred sheep, forty pigs, two hundred fowls—and a bull?

Now, Peter-Wise declared that he would not marry a maiden who was less than seventeen or more than twenty-two years old, and in the village there were only six girls between these ages who were not already betrothed or wed. Of these six, therefore all of whom, being brought up on cream and honey and wheaten bread and saffron cake and wild strawberries, were bonny and plump and fair to see Peter-Wise decided to choose the cleverest, who, nevertheless, must be just the least bit less clever than he was. So, to discover which was the cleverest, for, busy man that he was with his cows and his sheep and his pigs and his fowls—and his bull, he had not the time to woo each separately, he resolved to set them three tasks: one to try their fingers; one to try their brains; one to try their imaginations; and to marry her who succeeded best in the three.

So Peter-Wise summoned Mary and Sally and Polly and Minnie and Lucy, and Theophania, called Tiffany for short—these were the names of the girls—and said to them:

“Children, I will marry whichever of you can perform to the best advantage these three tasks: first, to darn a hole in the heel of a sock; secondly, to open, without touching the keyhole, the big barn door which is always locked; thirdly, to catch the moon and put it into a washtub.”

Mary and Sally and Polly and Minnie and Lucy said: “Oh, the sock is easy enough, but the door and the moon—”

Theophania, called Tiffany for short, said: “The door and the moon should be easy enough, but the sock—”

The three trials were to take place in the morning, afternoon and evening respectively. So in the morning the six maidens assembled in Peter-Wise's parlour—Mary and Sally and Polly and Minnie and Lucy in their best

flowered prints—Tiffany in a green smock. Tiffany had brown eyes, but the eyes of the others were five different shades of blue; speedwell, cornflower, lupin, forget-me-not, and chicory.

Peter-Wise gave them each a sock, out of which he had cut the heel, and left them for an hour to darn the hole. When he came back the six socks were lying on the table in a heap, finished. He examined them carefully. Then he said:

“Five of these socks are so perfectly darned that not one exceeds another in excellence. The sixth, however, is very badly done—a mere cobbler. Come forward in turn, and let her who darned *this* sock claim it.”

Mary tripped forward, looked at the sock, turned up her nose a little and shook her pretty head. “Not mine,” said she. Then came Sally and Polly and Minnie and Lucy, also turning up their noses a little and shaking their pretty heads and saying: “Not mine,” “Not mine,” “Not mine,” “Not mine.” Lastly, with a twinkle in her eye, came Theophania, called Tiffany for short.

“Mine,” she said. “I never, never shall be able to darn.”

“The first task is over,” announced Peter-Wise. “This afternoon meet me outside the big barn door, which is always locked, at three o'clock.”

And away trotted Mary and Sally and Polly and Minnie and Lucy and Tiffany.

At three o'clock they met outside the big barn door, wearing pink and yellow and blue and white and green sunbonnets, and fluttering together like butterflies, except Tiffany, who did not wear a bonnet at all, and she stood by herself, thinking.

Peter-Wise said: “This door, as you know, is always kept locked. Here is the key. Now, let me see which of you can open it without touching the keyhole, for I assure you it can quite easily be done.”

“How can we open a locked door without a key?” said Mary and Sally and Polly

and Minnie and Lucy in dismay, and each thought—"It is useless trying the handle—besides, I should look so foolish, and the others would jeer."

But Tiffany—who always thought her own thoughts, not other people's—thought something quite different.

"We give it up," sorrowfully said Mary and Sally and Polly and Minnie and Lucy.

"And you?" asked Peter-Wise of Tiffany.

Tiffany thought: "Because the door has always been locked before, that doesn't prove it is locked to-day. Anyhow, here goes!" And she marched up to the big barn door, turned the handle, and opened it wide!

"Oh!" cried Mary and Sally and Polly and Minnie and Lucy. "But it is always locked!"

"It wasn't to-day," said Theophania, called Tiffany for short; and she could not help laughing, kindly, at the five expressions of surprise on the five fair faces.

"The second task is over," said Peter-Wise. "Now go and borrow your mothers' washtubs, wait till the moon rises, catch it, and put it in the tub. Then come and fetch me."

"But," said Tiffany, "there is only one moon."

"Exactly," he replied, "therefore only one of you can succeed."

Mary and Sally and Polly and Minnie and Lucy whispered together.

"He is making sport of us," they agreed. "Not even Tiffany can catch the moon. We must give it up." And each of them said in her heart: "After all, so-and-so would make a much better husband."

So they gave it up.

But in the evening Tiffany came to Peter-Wise and said:

"I have caught the moon and put it in to mother's washtub. Come and see."

"Caught the moon!" exclaimed Peter. "But there it is up in the sky!"

"Not at all," replied she. "That is not the moon."

The night was still and warm. Peter-Wise followed Tiffany to a water meadow, in the middle of which was her mother's washtub.

"There!" she cried, pointing. "Go and see if the moon isn't in that tub."

So he went up to it, looked over the edge, and there, sure enough, was the round silver moon shining up at him.

"Well, but there are not two moons," he said, looking at the other moon in the sky.

"How foolish you are!" said Tiffany. "That moon in the sky is just the reflection of the real moon in this tub."

Peter-Wise was determined to make sure so he took a penny out of his pocket and dropped it into the tub. It fell through the moon with a splash!

"Oh-ho!" he exclaimed. "Whoever heard of a penny falling through the moon? This moon is made of water."

"Nobody ever tried to throw a penny through before," said Tiffany.

Then Peter-Wise kicked the tub, and the moon began to wobble. A piece of it splashed over the edge on to his boots.

"Whoever heard of the moon being spilt?" he asked.

"Nobody ever tried to spill it before," said Tiffany.

Peter-Wise stroked his chin.

"I have it!" he cried, and grasping the tub, heaved it sideways and upset the mock moon on to the grass, where with little watery sighs it slowly disappeared.

"So much for your moon," said he. "And behold its reflection is still in the sky!" But Tiffany only laughed and laughed and laughed.

"Yes," said Peter to himself, "she is certainly the cleverest girl in the village, but just the least bit less clever than I am. I will marry her." And aloud he said:

"Theophania, you shall, in spite of the sock and the moon that was not a moon, be my wife."

"Peter-Wise," she answered, "you shall not win me so easily. There is a task that



you shall perform for *me* before I will marry you."

"Well, that is only fair, after all," said he, rather taken aback.

"It is quite out of the question for me to marry you before I can darn a sock," she continued, "but in six years I shall have perfected myself in that difficult art. Will you wait for me six years?"

This she said to try his love.

"I will wait," said he, who really loved her, and knew something about women.

Now, at the end of three months Peter-Wise was still waiting for Theophania, and she realised that he would keep his word for the rest of the six years. But meanwhile she had learnt to darn as beautifully as Mary and Sally and Polly and Minnie and Lucy, who by this time were betrothed respectively to John and James and William and Tom and Adam. So she came to him one day with an example of her darning, and said:

"Peter, it has not taken me so long to learn to darn as I thought it would. How would it be if we were married *before* the six years are up?"

"We will get married whenever you please, dear heart," he said, not surprised.

"Well, then," she replied, "--to-morrow."

And they were married at eleven o'clock the next morning.

#### FROM THE STORY

**1. Do you know?**—What is a dimple? Of what time does a man speak when he prophesies? What is double the number of forty? What is the colour of saffron cake? When you do arithmetic are you using your brains or your imagination? When you make up a fairy story are you using your brains or your imagination? What is another name for the parlour of a house? How does your sock look when you have cobbled the hole in it? How does your sock look when you have darned the hole in it? In what other substance besides water can you see your reflection?

#### 2. Put together.—

Bellowing	cows.
Round, silver	sheep.
Pink and yellow and blue and white and green	pigs.
Bonny and plump and fair	fowls.
Mooing	bull.
Grunting	girls.
Baaing	man.
Clacking	sunbonnets.
Busy	moon.

**3. Put in the name-words.**—But Peter-Wise lacked the most important creature of all, a ——. He resolved to set them three tasks: one to try their fingers; one to try their brains; one to try their ——. When he came back the six socks were lying on the table in a ——, finished. Mary tripped forward, looked at the sock, turned up her —— a little, and shook her pretty head. "That moon in the sky is just the —— of the real moon in this tub."

**4. Marked passage.**—Read the passage on page 163, and then think about it with the help of these questions. —

*Then Peter-Wise kicked the tub, and the moon began to wobble*

Why do the words *Peter-Wise* begin with capital letters? Why is there a comma after *tub*? What made the moon *wobble*? What was really *wobbling*? What toy have you seen *wobble*?

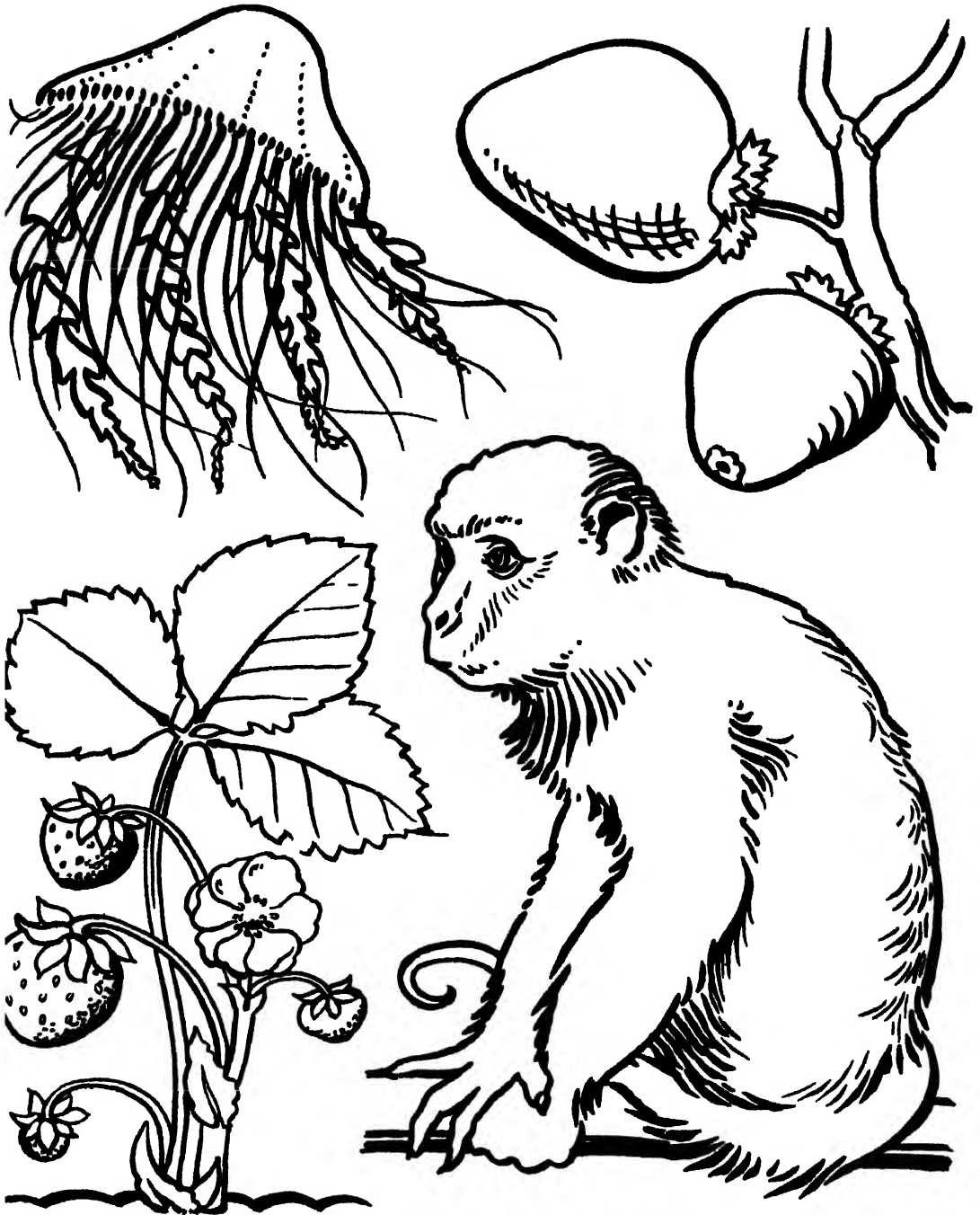
*A piece of it splashed over the edge on to his boots.*

What is meant by *it*? Why did it *splash*? Do you think that when the water stopped wobbling the piece of moon that had splashed over was still missing? What *edge* is meant? Who is meant by *his*? Which word shows to whom the *boots* belonged?

"Whoever heard of the moon being *spilt*?" he asked.

Why are the lifted commas " " used? Why is the mark ? used? Who is meant by *he*?

SKETCHES FOR THE BLACKBOARD



JELLYFISH—SEE PAGE 158  
WILD STRAWBERRIES—SEE PAGE 162

PERSIMMONS—SEE PAGE 159  
MONKEY—SEE PAGE 159

"Nobody ever tried to spill it before," said Tiffany

Where are the lifted commas " used? Where are the lifted commas " used? Why was this a good answer to his question?

*Peter-Wise stroked his chin.*

Why do you think he did this? What other things do people sometimes do for the same reason?

*"I have it!" he cried, and grasping the tub, heaved it sideways and upset the mock moon on to the grass, where with little watery sighs it slowly disappeared*

Did Peter-Wise mean, "*I have the moon,*" or "*I have an idea,*" or "*I have the tub?*" Why is the mark ' used? Think of another word to use instead of *grasping* What did

he really upset when he heaved the tub sideways? Why is the moon called *mock*? Which place is meant by *where*? Is it prettier to say *with little watery sighs*, or *with the sound made by water sinking into the ground*? What word tells you *how* it disappeared? What word means the opposite of *slowly*? Do you think that the ground of the meadow was damp or dry?

**5. Make sentences telling.**—(a) what Peter-Wise wished his wife to be like; (b) of the first task that Peter-Wise set the girls; (c) of the second task he set the girls; (d) of the third task he set the girls; (e) why Tiffany told Peter-Wise that he must wait for her six years.

**6. Draw.**—A pig. A strawberry. A key and a keyhole. A washtub.



### SEPTIMUS SEPTIMUSSON

#### PART I

THE wind was screaming over the marsh. It shook the shutters and rattled the windows, and the little boy lay awake in the bare attic. His mother

came softly up the ladder stairs shading the flame of the tallow candle with her hand.

"I'm not asleep, mother," said he. And she heard the tears in his voice.

"Why, silly lad," she said, sitting down on the straw bed beside him and putting

the candle on the floor, "what are you crying for?"

"It's the wind keeps calling me, mother," he said. "It won't let me alone. It never has since I put up the little weathercock for it to play with. It keeps saying, 'Wake up, Septimus Septimusson, wake up, you're the seventh son of a seventh son. You can see the fairies and hear the beasts speak, and you must go out and seek your fortune.' And I'm afraid, and I don't want to go."

"I should think not indeed," said his mother. "The wind doesn't talk, Sep, not really. You just go to sleep like a good boy, and I'll get father to bring you a gingerbread pig from the fair to-morrow."

But Sep lay awake a long time listening to what the wind really did keep on saying, and feeling ashamed to think how frightened he was of going out all alone to seek his fortune—a thing all the boys in books were only too happy to do.

Next evening father brought home the loveliest gingerbread pig with currant eyes. Sep ate it,

and it made him less anxious than ever to go out into the world where, perhaps, no one would give him gingerbread pigs ever any more.

Before he went to bed he ran down to the shore where a great new harbour was being made. The workmen had been blasting the big rocks, and on one of the rocks a lot of mussels were sticking. He stood looking at them, and then suddenly he heard a lot of little voices crying, "Oh, Sep, we're so frightened, we're choking."

The voices were thin and sharp as the edges of mussel shells. They were indeed the voices of the mussels themselves.

"Oh dear," said Sep, "I'm so sorry, but I can't move the rock back into the sea, you know. Can I now?"

"No," said the mussels, "but if you

speak to the wind—you know his language and he's very fond of you since you made that toy for him—he'll blow the sea up till the waves wash us back into deep water."

"But I'm afraid of the wind," said Sep, "it says things that frighten me."

"Oh, very well," said the mussels, "we don't want you to be afraid. We can die all right if necessary."

Then Sep shivered and trembled.

"Go away," said the thin sharp voices. "We'll die—but we'd rather die in our own brave company."

"I know I'm a coward," said Sep. "Oh, wait a minute."

"Death won't wait," said the little voices.

"I can't speak to the wind, I won't," said Sep, and almost at the same moment he heard himself call out, "Oh, wind, please come and blow up the waves to save the poor mussel."

The wind answered with a boisterous shout—

"All right, my boy," it shrieked, "I'm coming." And come it did. And when it had attended to the mussels it came and whispered to Sep in his attic. And to his great surprise, instead of covering his head with the bedclothes, as usual, and trying not to listen, he found himself sitting up in bed and talking to the wind, man to man.

"Why," he said, "I'm not afraid of you any more."

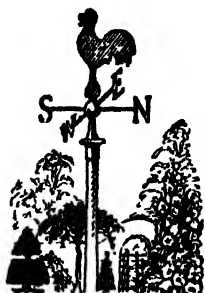
"Of course not, we're friends now," said the wind. "That's because we joined together to do a kindness to some one. There's nothing like that for making people friends."

"Oh," said Sep.

"Yes," said the wind, "and now, old chap, when will you go out and seek your fortune? Remember how poor your father is, and the fortune, if you find it, won't be just for you, but for your father and mother, and the others."

"Oh," said Sep, "I didn't think of that."

"Yes," said the wind, "really, my dear fellow, I do hate to bother you, but it's better to fix a time. Now when shall we start?"



WEATHERCOCK

"We?" said Sep. "Are you going with me?"

"I'll see you a bit of the way," said the wind. "What do you say now? Shall we start to-night? There's no time like the present."

"I do hate going," said Sep.

"Of course you do!" said the wind, cordially. "Come along. Get into your things, and we'll make a beginning."

So Sep dressed, and he wrote on his slate in very big letters, "Gone to seek our fortune," and he put it on the table so that his mother should see it when she came down in the morning. And he went out of the cottage and the wind kindly shut the door after him.

The wind gently pushed him down to the shore, and there he got into his father's boat, which was called the Septimus and Susie, after his father and mother, and the wind carried him across to another country and there he landed.

"Now," said the wind, clapping him on the back, "off you go, and good luck to you!"

And it turned round and took the boat home again.

When Sep's mother found the writing on the slate, and his father found the boat gone they feared that Sep was drowned, but when the wind brought the boat back wrong way up, they were quite sure, and they both cried for many a long day.

The wind tried to tell them that Sep was all right, but they couldn't understand wind-talk, and they only said, "Drat the wind," and fastened the shutters up tight, and put wedges in the windows.

Sep walked along the straight white road that led across the new country. He had no more idea how to look for *his* fortune than you would have if you suddenly left off reading this and went out of your front door to seek *yours*.

However, he had made a start, and that is always something. When he had gone exactly seven miles on that straight foreign road, between strange trees, and bordered

with flowers he did not know the names of, he heard a groaning in the wood, and some one sighing and saying, "Oh, how hard it is, to have to die and never see my wife and the little cubs again."

The voice was rough as a lion's mane, and strong as a lion's claws, and Sep was very frightened. But he said, "I'm not afraid," and then oddly enough he found he had spoken the truth—he wasn't afraid.

He broke through the bushes and found that the person who had spoken was indeed a lion. A javelin had pierced its shoulder and fastened it to a great tree.

"All right," cried Sep, "hold still a minute, sir."

He got out his knife and cut and cut at the shaft of the javelin till he was able to break it off. Then the lion drew back and the broken shaft passed through the wound, and the broken javelin was left sticking in the tree.

"I'm really extremely obliged, my dear fellow," said the lion warmly. "Pray command me, if there's any little thing I can do for you at any time."

"Don't mention it," said Sep with proper politeness. "Delighted to have been of use to you, I'm sure."

So they parted. As Sep scrambled through the bushes back to the road he kicked against an axe that lay on the ground.

"Hullo," said he, "some poor woodman's dropped this, and not been able to find it. I'll take it along—perhaps I may meet him."

He was getting very tired and very hungry, and presently he sat down to rest under a chestnut tree, and he heard two little voices talking in the branches, voices soft as a squirrel's fur, and bright as a squirrel's eyes. They were, indeed, the voices of two squirrels.

"Hush," said one, "there's some one below."



SQUIRREL

"Oh," said the other, "it's a horrid boy. Let's scurry away."

"I'm not a horrid boy," said Sep. "I'm the seventh son of a seventh son."

"Oh," said Mrs. Squirrel, "of course that makes all the difference. Have some nuts?"

"Rather," said Sep. "At least I mean, yes, if you please."

So the squirrels brought nuts down to him, and when he had eaten as many as he wanted they filled his pockets, and then in return he chopped all the lower boughs off the chestnut tree, so that boys who were *not* seventh sons could not climb up and interfere with the squirrels' housekeeping arrangements.

Then they parted, the best of friends, and Sep went on.

"I haven't found my fortune yet," said he, "but I've made a friend or two."

And just as he was saying that, he turned a corner of the road and met an old gentleman in a fur lined coat riding a fine, big, grey horse.

"Hullo!" said the gentleman. "Who are you, and where are you off to so bright and early?"

"I'm Septimus Septimusson," said Sep, "and I'm going to seek my fortune."

"And you've taken an axe to help you carve your way to glory?"

"No," said Sep, "I found it, and I suppose some one lost it. So I'm clinging it along in case I meet him."

"Heavy, isn't it?" said the old gentleman.

"Yes," said Sep.

"Then I'll carry it for you," said the old gentleman, "for it's one that my head forester lost yesterday. And now come along with me, for you're the boy I've been looking for for seven years—an honest boy and the seventh son of a seventh son."

So Sep went home with the gentleman, who was a great lord in that country, and he lived in that lord's castle and was taught everything that a gentleman ought to know. And in return he told the lord all about the ways of birds and beasts—for as he understood their talk he knew more about them

than any one else in that country. And the lord wrote it all down in a book, and half the people said it was wonderfully clever, and the other half said it was nonsense, and how could he know. This was fame, and the lord was very pleased. But though the old lord was so famous he would not leave his castle, for he had a hump that an enchanter had fastened on to him, and he couldn't bear to be seen with it.

"But you'll get rid of it for me some day, my boy," he used to say. "No one but the seventh son of a seventh son and an honest boy can do it. So all the doctors say."

So Sep grew up. And when he was twenty-one—straight as a lance and handsome as a picture—the old lord said to him

"My boy, you've been like a son to me, but now it's time you got married and had sons of your own. Is there any girl you'd like to marry?"

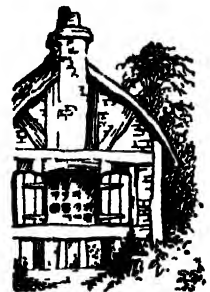
"No," said Sep, "I never did care much for girls."

The old lord laughed.

"Then you must set out again and seek your fortune once more," he said, "because no man has really found his fortune till he's found the lady who is his heart's lady. Choose the best horse in the stable, and off you go, lad, and my blessing go with you."

#### FROM THE STORY

**1. Do you know?**—What plants grow on a marsh? Where is the attic of a house? Where are the shutters of a house? What is a straw bed? What does a weathercock show? What things do you find at a fair? What is the use of a harbour? Why do people put wedges in their windows? What work does a forester do? What is the meaning of the word *Septi*? Can you



WINDOW-SHUTTERS

guess from the story what the names *Septimus Septimisson* are supposed to mean?

**2. Put together. —**

Gingerbread	coal.
Bare	horse.
Straight	attic.
Fur-lined	pig.
Grey	road.

**3. Put right.** - The workmen | brought nuts down to Sep. Sep | had a hump. The wind | had been blasting the big rocks. Sep's mother | found the boat gone. Sep's father | found the writing on the table. The squirrels | carried Sep across to another country. The lord | wrote on his slate in very big letters, "Gone to seek our fortune."

**4. You are told. —**

**Then put in the describing words—**

(a) Sep's house had ladder stairs.

Sep slept in a bare attic on a straw bed

They used candles.

(b) When the wind had attended to the mussels it came and whispered to Sep in his attic.

The wind tried to tell his father and mother that he was all right.

(c) Sep set free the lion. Sep stopped other boys from climbing up to worry the squirrels.

(d) Sep said that the axe was not his own, but that he was trying to find the owner of it.

Sep's father was a --- man.

The wind had a --- nature.

Sep was a --- boy.

Sep was an --- boy.

**5. Tell me.**—What did the wind say to Sep? What did the mussels want Sep to do? How did the wind and Sep become friends? How did Sep get over to a foreign country? What made Sep's father and mother think that he was drowned? What did Sep do for

the lion? How did Sep make friends with the squirrels? Why did the lord take Sep home to live with him?

**6. Marked passage.**—Read the passage on page 169, and then think about it with the help of these questions.—

*So Sep went home with the gentleman, who was a great lord in that country, and he lived in that lord's castle and was taught everything that a gentleman ought to know.*

To whose home did they go? By what other name is *the gentleman* called in this sentence? Think of another word for *great*. By what other name is the *home* called? (To show that the *castle* belongs to the *lord*, we may say: *the castle of the lord*; or: *the lord's castle*.) Write in the form using the one lifted comma and the s: 1. the home of the gentleman; 2. the duties of a lord.

*And in return he told the lord all about the ways of birds and beasts—for as he understood their talk he knew more about them than anyone else in that country.*

For what things did Sep tell the lord these things *in return*? Who is meant by *he*? Put the proper names for the words in italics: for as *he* understood *their* talk *he* knew more about *them* than anyone else in the country. Would it be correct to write *he understood there talk*?

*And the lord wrote it all down in a book, and half the people said it was wonderfully clever, and the other half said it was nonsense, and how could he know.*

What is meant by *it*? Who could *the people* be? *The other half*—of what? How did he know? What is *nonsense*? Does *nonsense* mean the same as *no sense*?

*This was fame, and the lord was very pleased.*

If no one had troubled to read the lord's book, should we say, *This was fame*? Are people usually pleased to be famous? Think of another word for *pleased*.

*But though the old lord was so famous he would not leave his castle, for he had a hump that an enchanter had fastened on to him, and he couldn't bear to be seen with it*

What word means the opposite of *old*? What is another name for *an enchanter*? Who is meant by *him*? Say *couldn't* in full. Why do you think the old lord couldn't bear people to see his hump?

**7. Make sentences telling.**—(a) why Sep could see the fairies and hear the beasts

speak; (b) how Sep told his mother that he had gone away to seek his fortune; (c) what Sep heard in the wood when he had gone seven miles on the straight foreign road; (d) why the old lord sent Sep away on his travels again.

**8. Draw.**—A candle. A boat. A slate with the words on it: GONE TO SEEK OUR FORTUNE. A wedge. An axe. A leaf of a chestnut tree. (For the drawing of a gingerbread pie, see page 177.)



### SEPTIMUS SEPTIMUSSON

#### PART II

**S**O Sep chose a red horse and set out, and he rode straight to the great city, that shone golden across the plain, and when he got there he found every one crying.

"Why, whatever is the matter?" said Sep, reining in the red horse in front of a smithy, where the apprentices were crying on to the fires, and the smith was dropping tears on the anvil.

"Why, the Princess is dying," said the blacksmith, blowing his nose. "A nasty, wicked magician—he had a spite against the King, and he got at the Princess when she was playing ball in the garden, and now she's blind and deaf and dumb. And she won't eat."

"And she'll die," said the first apprentice. "And she is such a dear," said the other apprentice.

Sep sat still on the red horse thinking. "Has anything been done?" he asked.



"Oh yes," said the blacksmith. "All the doctors have seen her, but they can't do anything. And the king has advertised in the usual way, that any one who can cure her may marry her. But it's no good. Kings' sons aren't what they used to be. A silly lot they are nowadays, all taken up with football and cricket and golf."

"Humph," said Sep, "thank you. Which is the way to the palace?"

The blacksmith pointed, and then burst into tears again. Sep rode on.

When he got to the palace he asked to see the king. Every one there was crying too, from the footman who opened the door, to the king who was sitting upon his golden throne looking at his fine collection of butterflies through floods of tear.

"Oh dear me, yes young man," said the king, "you may see her and welcome, but it's no good."

"We can but try," said Sep. So he was taken to the room where the Princess sat huddled up on her silver throne among the white velvet cushions with her crown all on one side, crying out of her poor blind eyes, so that the tears ran down over her green gown with the red roses on it.

And directly he saw her he knew that she was the only girl, Princess as she was, with a crown and a throne who could ever be his heart's lady. He went up to her and knelt at her side and took her hand and kissed it. The Princess started. She could not see or hear him, but at the touch of his hand and his lips she knew that he was her heart's lord, and she threw her arms round his neck, and cried more than ever.

He held her in his arms and stroked her hair till she stopped crying, and then he called for bread and milk. This was brought in a silver basin, and he fed her with it as you feed a little child.

The news ran through the city, "The Princess has eaten," and all the bells were set ringing. Sep said good-night to his Princess and went to bed in the best bedroom of the palace. Early in the grey morning he got up and leaned out of the

open window and called to his old friend the wind.

The wind came bustling in and clapped him on the back, crying, "Well, my boy, and what can I do for you? Eh?"

Sep told him all about the Princess.

"Well," said the wind, "you've not done so badly. At any rate you've got her love. And you couldn't have got that with anybody's help but your own. Now, of course the thing to do is to find the wicked Magician."

"Of course," said Sep.

"Well, I travel a good deal—I'll keep my eyes open and let you know if I hear any thing."

Sep spent the day holding the Princess's hand and feeding her at mealtimes, and that night the wind rattled his window and said, "Let me in."

It came in very noisily and said, "Well, I've found your Magician—he's in the forest pretending to be a mole."

"How can I find him?" said Sep.

"Haven't you any friends in the forest?" asked the wind.

Then Sep remembered his friends the squirrels, and he mounted his horse and rode away to the chestnut tree where they lived. They were charmed to see him grown so tall and strong and handsome, and when he had told them his story they said at once—

"Oh yes! delighted to be of any service to you." And they called to all their little brothers and cousins, and uncles and nephews to search the forest for a mole that wasn't really a mole, and quite soon they found him, and hustled and shoved him along till he was face to face with Sep, in a green glade. The glade was green, but all the bushes and trees around were red-brown with squirrel fur, and shining bright with squirrel eyes.



MOLE

Then Sep said, "Give the Princess back her eyes and her hearing and her voice."

But the mole would not.

"Give the Princess back her eyes and her hearing and her voice," said Sep again. But the mole only gnashed his wicked teeth and snarled.

And then in a minute the squirrels fell on the mole and killed it, and Sep thanked them and rode back to the palace, for, of course, he knew that when a magician is killed, all his magic unworks itself instantly.

But when he got to his Princess she was still as deaf as a post and as dumb as a stone, and she was still crying bitterly with her poor blind eyes, till the tears ran down her grass-green gown with the red roses on it.

"Cheer up, my sweetheart," he said, though he knew she couldn't hear him, and as he spoke the wind came in at the open window, and spoke very softly, because it was in the presence of the Princess.

"All right," it whispered, "the old villain gave us the slip that journey. Got out of



WILD BOAR

the mole skin in the very nick of time. He's a wild boar now."

"Come," said Sep, fingering his sword hilt, "I'll kill that myself without asking it any questions."

So he went and fought it. But it was a most uncommon boar, as big as a horse, with tusks half a yard long; and although Sep wounded it, it jerked the sword out of his hand with its tusk, and was just going to trample him out of life with its hard, heavy pig's feet, when a great roar sounded through the forest.

"Ah! would ye?" said the lion, and fastened teeth and claws in the great boar's back. The boar turned with a scream of rage, but the lion had got a good grip, and it did not loosen teeth or claws till the boar lay quiet.

"Is he dead?" asked Sep when he came to himself.

"Oh, yes, he's *dead* right enough," said the lion; but the wind came up puffing and blowing, and said:

"It's no good, he's got away again, and now he's a fish. I was just a minute too late to see *what* fish. An old oyster told me about it, only he hadn't the wit to notice what particular fish the scoundrel changed into."

So when Sep went back to the palace, and he said to the King:

"Let me marry the dear Princess, and we'll go out and seek our fortune. I've got to kill that Magician, and I'll do it too, or my name's not Septinius Septimusson. But it may take years and years, and I can't be away from the Princess all that time, because she won't eat unless I feed her. You see the difficulty, Sire?"

The King saw it. And that very day Sep was married to the Princess in her green gown with the red roses on it, and they set out together.

The wind went with them, and the wind, or something else, seemed to say to Sep, "Go home, take your wife home to your mother."

So he did. He crossed the land and he crossed the sea, and he went up the red-brick path to his father's cottage, and he peeped in at the door and said:

"Father, mother, here's my wife."

They were so pleased to see him—for they had thought him dead—that they didn't notice the Princess at first. When they did notice her they wondered at her beautiful face and her beautiful gown; but it wasn't till they had all settled down to supper—boiled rabbit it was—that they noticed Sep feeding his wife as one feeds a baby, and they saw that she was blind.

And then all the story had to be told.

"Well, well," said the fisherman, "you and your wife bide here with us. I daresay I'll catch that old sinner in my nets one of these fine days." But he never did. And Sep and his wife lived with the old people. And they were happy after a fashion—but of

an evening Sep used to wander and wonder, and wonder and wander by the seashore, wondering as he wandered whether he wouldn't ever have the luck to catch that fish.

And one evening as he wandered wondering he heard a little, sharp, thin voice say:

"Sep, I've got it."

"What?" asked Sep, forgetting his manners.

"I've got it," said a big mussel on a rock close by him, "the magic stone that the Magician does his enchantments with. He dropped it out of his mouth and I shut my shells on it—and now he's sweeping up and down the sea like a mad fish, looking for it—for he knows he can never change into anything else unless he gets it back. Here, take the nasty thing, it's making me feel quite ill."

It opened its shells wide, and Sep saw a pearl. He reached out his hand and took it.

"That's better," said the mussel, washing its shells out with salt water.

"Can I do magic with it?" Sep eagerly asked.

"No," said the mussel sadly, "it's of no use to any one but the owner. Now, if I were you, I'd get into a boat, and if your friend the wind will help us, I believe we really can do the trick."

"I'm at your service, of course," said the wind, getting up instantly.

The mussel whispered to the wind, who rushed off at once; and Sep launched his boat.

"Now," said the mussel, "you get into the very middle of the sea—or as near as you can guess it. The wind will warn all the other fishes." As he spoke he disappeared in the dark waters.

Sep got the boat into the middle of the sea—as near as he could guess it—and waited.

After a long time he saw something swirling about in a sort of whirlpool about a hundred yards from his boat, but when he tried to move the boat towards it her bows ran on to something hard.

"Keep still, keep still, keep still," cried thousands and thousands of sharp, thin, little voices. "You'll kill us if you move."

Then he looked over the boat side, and saw that the hard something was nothing but thousands and thousands of mussels all jammed close together, and through the clear water more and more were coming and piling themselves together. Almost at once his boat was slowly lifted—the top of the mussel heap showed through the water, and there he was, high and dry on a mussel reef.

And in all that part of the sea the water was disappearing, and as far as the eye could reach stretched a great plain of purple and grey—the shells of countless mussels.

Only at one spot there was still a splashing.

Then a mussel opened its shell and spoke.

"We've got him," it said. "We've piled ourselves up till we've filled this part of the sea. The wind warned all the good fishes—and we've got the old traitor in a little pool over there. Get out and walk over our backs—we'll all lie sideways so as not to hurt you. You must catch the fish—but whatever you do don't kill it till we give the word."

Sep promised, and he got out and walked over the mussels to the pool, and when he saw the wicked soul of the Magician looking out through the round eyes of a big finny fish he remembered all that his Princess had suffered, and he longed to draw his sword and kill the wicked thing then and there.

But he remembered his promise. He threw a net about it, and dragged it back to the boat.

The mussels dispersed and let the boat down again into the water—and he rowed home, towing the evil fish in the net by a line.

He beached the boat, and looked along the shore. The shore looked a very odd colour. And well it might, for every bit of the sand was covered with purple-grey mussels. They had all come up out of the sea—leaving just one little bit of real yellow sand for him to beach the boat on.

"Now," said millions of sharp thin little voices, "kill him, kill him!"

Sep drew his sword and waded into the shallow surf and killed the evil fish with one strong stroke.

Then such a shout went up all along the shore as that shore had never heard; and all along the shore where the mussels had been, stood men in armour and men in smock frocks and men in leather aprons and huntsmen's coats and women and children—a whole nation of people. Close by the boat stood a King and Queen with crowns upon their heads.

"Thank you, Sep," said the King, "you've saved us all. I am the King Mussel, doomed to be a mussel so long as that wretch lived. You have set us all free. And look!"

Down the path from the shore came running his own Princess, who hung round his neck crying his name and looking at him with the most beautiful eyes in the world.

"Come," said the Mussel King, "we have no son. You shall be our son and reign after us."

"Thank you," said Sep, "but *this* is my father," and he presented the old fisherman to His Majesty.

"Then let him come with us," said the King royally, "he can help me reign or fish in the palace lake, whichever he prefers."

"Thankee," said Sep's father. "I'll come and fish."

"Your mother too," said the Mussel Queen, kissing Sep's mother.

"Ah," said Sep's mother, "you're a lady, every inch. I'll go to the world's end with you."

So they all went back by way of the foreign country where Sep had found his Princess, and they called on the old lord. He had lost his hump, and they easily persuaded him to come with them.

"You can help me reign if you like, or we have a nice book or two in the palace library," said the Mussel King.

"Thank you," said the old lord, "I'll come and be your librarian if I may. Reigning isn't at all in my line."

Then they went on to Sep's father-in-law, and when he saw how happy they all were together he said:

"Bless my beard, but I've half a mind to come with you."

"Come along," said the Mussel King, "you shall help me reign if you like . . . or . . ."

"No, thank you," said the other King, very quickly, "I've had enough of reigning. My kingdom can buy a President and be a republic if it likes. I'm going to catch butterflies."

And so he does, most happily, up to this very minute.

And Sep and his dear Princess are as happy as they deserve to be. Some people say we are all as happy as we deserve to be—but I am not sure.

#### FROM THE STORY

**1. Do you know?** What is a smithy? Why is there a fire in a smithy? What is an anvil used for? What is an apprentice? Where does a mole live? What do you see which shows where a mole lives? Are there wild boars in England to-day? What is a reef?



SMITHY

**2. Pick out all the words which tell you about:** throne; cushions; eyes; gown; roses.

The Princess sat huddled up on her silver throne among the white velvet cushions with her crown all on one side, crying out of her poor blind eyes, so that the tears ran down over her green gown with the red roses on it.

**3. Put together.—**

The footman	fastened teeth and claws in the great boar's back.
The king	washed its shells out with salt water.
The lion	looked out through the round eyes of a big finny fish.
Sep and his wife	opened the door.
The mussel	was looking at his fine collection of butter- flies.
The wicked soul of the Magician	lived with the old people.

**4. Tell me.**—Why was every one in the city crying? Why were all the bells in the city set ringing? What did Sep ask the wind to help him to do? What were the three creatures the Magician turned into? What did Sep do after he had married the Princess? How did Sep find the Magician's pearl? Who helped Sep to catch the Magician in the end?

**5. Marked passage.**—Read the passage on page 172, and then think about it with the help of these questions.—

*The news ran through the city, "The Princess has eaten," and all the bells were set ringing.*

Is it really true to say, *The news ran through the city*? Who do you think would run? What was *the news*? Why should the bells be set ringing at the news? What bells would they be? Do you think the noise of the bells might have worried the Princess? Does *the bells were set ringing* mean the same thing as *the bells were rung*?

*Sep said good-night to his Princess and went to bed in the best bedroom of the palace.*

Make a sentence telling what Sep might have said to the Princess when he said good-night; begin your sentence: *Sep said, "—."* Why should he be given the best bedroom?

*Early in the grey morning he got up and leaned out of the open window and called to his old friend the wind.*

What word means the opposite of *early*? Why is the morning called *grey*? At what time is the morning *grey*? About what time must Sep have got up? Think of one word that means *got up*. Which word tells you about the *window*? Which word describes the *friend*? Make a sentence telling what Sep said when he called the wind; begin your sentence: *Sep cried out, "—."*

*The wind came bustling in and clapped him on the back, crying, "Well, my boy, and what can I do for you? Eh?"*

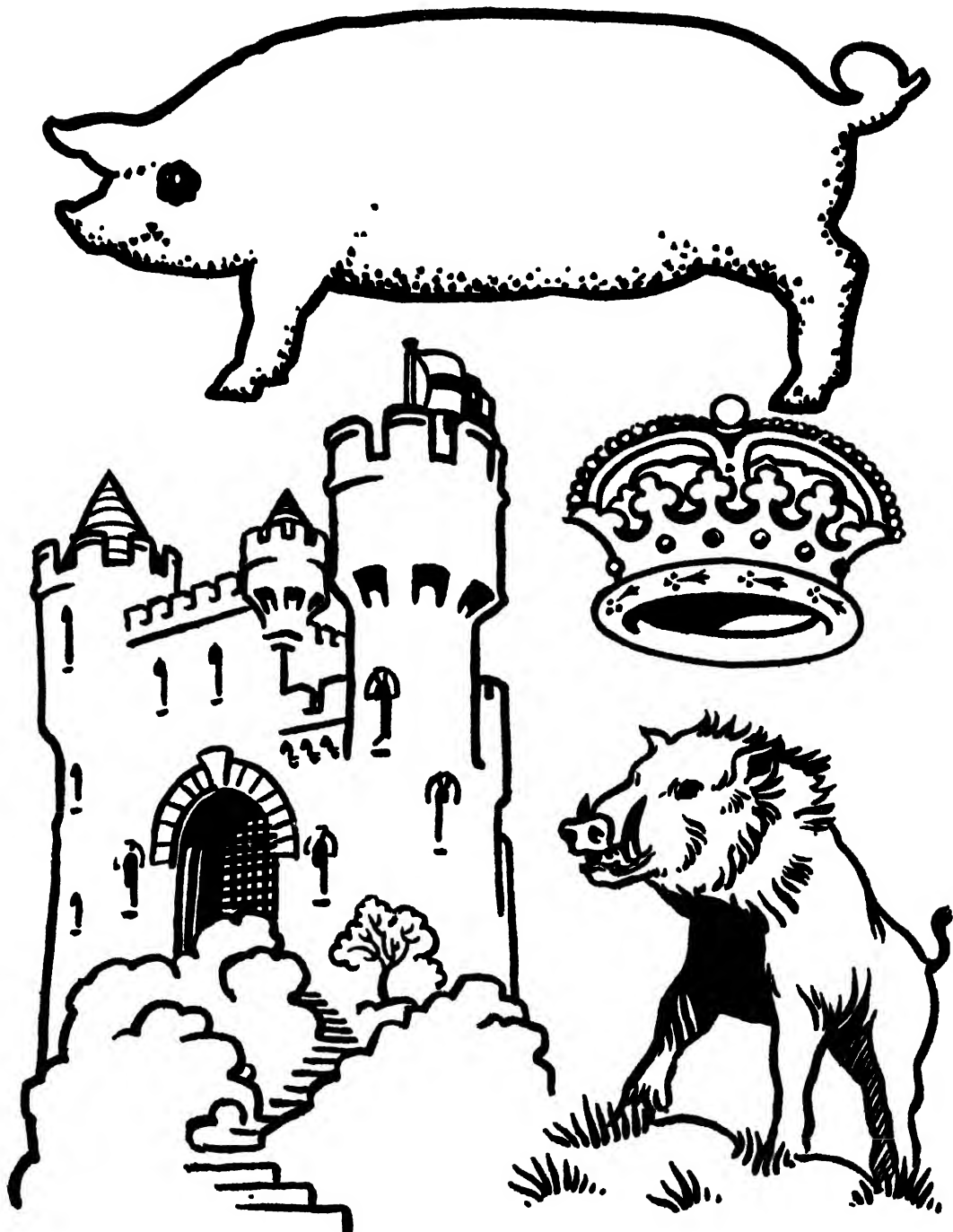
Why is the wind said to *bustle*? Which of these words could you use in speaking of the wind?—*creep, rush, squirm, rustle, slide, hush*. Have you ever felt the wind clap you on the back? Did the wind talk like an old person or like a young person? Why is this mark ? used at the end of the sentence? Why are lifted commas like these " " used in this sentence? Why is *Well* written with a capital *W*? Which two words mean *Sep*?

*Sep told him all about the Princess*

Who is meant by *him*? What things would Sep tell him?

**6. Make sentences telling.**—(a) what sad thing had happened to the Princess, (b) why Sep was given the best bedroom; (c) why the King allowed Sep to marry the Princess; (d) what happened to the mussels.

# SKETCHES FOR THE BLACKBOARD



GINGERBREAD PIG—SEE PAGE 167

CASTLE—SEE PAGE 169

CROWN—SEE PAGE 171

WILD BOAR—SEE PAGE 173

## SIX SIMPLE PLAYS FOR THE SECOND YEAR'S COURSE



### THE CLEVER COBBLER

This is a one-act play. Read it straight through, then choose the actors to read the spoken parts aloud, playing the actions as they are told.

*People in the play.*—THE COBBLER. THE BUTCHER. THE BAKER. THE GREENGROCER. THE CANDLESTICK MAKER. MRS. HURRY-BUSTLE.

*Things wanted in the play.*—A shoe. A pair of red slippers. A large shopping bag. A purse full of coins. Paper for wrapping parcels. Articles to represent:—a string of sausages, a

loaf of bread, a basket of strawberries, a china candle-stick.

*Scene.*—The market-place in Tinytown, with five shops arranged in a half-circle in this order: Cobbler, Butcher, Baker, Greengrocer, Candlestick Maker. (Each shop may be a desk, with the name of the shopman—for example, BONES THE BUTCHER—written on a sheet of paper pinned to the front of the desk.) Each shopman has in his shop paper for wrapping and the article he sells. The Cobbler has both the shoe and the red slippers.

[The shopmen are sitting in their shops.]

*Candlestick Maker.* I don't know what has come over the folks of Tynytown. No one seems to do any shopping at all

*Butcher* It is dreadful I haven't sold a piece of meat since yesterday morning

*Baker.* All my bread has gone stale, and I see no sense in baking any more

*Greengrocer* I have had to live on apples and oranges all this week, because I have no money to buy any other food. Something must be done about it, or we shall all starve

*Candlestick Maker* I don't see what we can do. We can't make people buy our goods. I expect I shall die first, because I am so old. I will invite you all to my funeral

*Cobbler.* What a gloomy old fellow you are, *Candlestick Maker!* Always looking on the dark side of things

*Candlestick Maker* Well, Master *Cobbler*, since you're so free with your remarks, have you anything to suggest?

*Cobbler* Of course I have

*All the Shopmen* What is it?

*Candlestick Maker* Some stupid notion, I'll be bound

*Cobbler* Oh well, if you don't want to hear

*All except the Candlestick Maker* We do! we do!

*Butcher* Never mind old Candles, he is always crotchety, tell us your idea

*Cobbler* Supposing I were to send each of you a customer within the next half-hour, wouldn't you say I had a great brain then?

*Candlestick Maker* More like a swelled head, I should say

*Baker* Do be quiet, Candles. Tell us your idea, *Cobbler*

*Cobbler* Very well. Come over here, and I'll whisper it, because Candles doesn't want to hear.

*[The Shopmen leave their shops and crowd round Cobbler, all except Candlestick Maker who sits still, muttering to himself]*

*Cobbler.* Old Mrs. Hurrybustle came along this morning. She was in a hurry as usual, and she brought a shoe to be mended. She

is coming back at half-past two to fetch it, and when she comes -

*[While Cobbler has been talking, Candlestick Maker has been creeping quietly up to listen. Cobbler looks up and sees him near]*

Hullo, what do you want?

*Candlestick Maker* Oh, I was just having a little walk, that's all

*Cobbler* I'll whisper the rest, so that he can't hear

*[Cobbler whispers to the other Shopmen. Candlestick Maker stands by looking very disappointed]*

*Greengrocer* Well, *Cobbler*, you are a very clever fellow. We will certainly do as you suggest

*Cobbler* Here comes the old lady. Go back to your shops, all of you. *Butcher*, you take the shoe

*[Cobbler gives the shoe to Butcher. All the Shopmen go back to their shops. Mrs. Hurrybustle comes bustling in, carrying the shopping bag in the purse. She says to Cobbler's hop and knocks]*

*Mrs. Hurrybustle* Good afternoon

*Cobbler* Have you done my shoe?

*Cobbler* I am very sorry, madam, it is not quite finished. I needed some lard to grease it with, so I sent it along to the butcher's next door

*Mrs. Hurrybustle* How provoking! Just when I'm in such a hurry too! I'll call in and get it

*[Butcher passes shoe to Mrs. Hurrybustle as to butcher's shop and back]*

*Mrs. Hurrybustle* Good afternoon. *Butcher* The *Cobbler* tells me he sent my shoe on to you to be greased

*Butcher* I'm sorry, Mrs. Hurrybustle, I haven't it with me just now, I sent it on to the baker next door to be warmed so as to melt the grease. But wouldn't you like a string of these fine pork sausages just fresh in?

*[Butcher holds up sausages]*

*Mrs. Hurrybustle* They do look very nice. Perhaps as I'm here I might as well take them.

*[Butcher wraps up the sausages, Mrs. Hurrybustle pays and puts them in her bag]*



**Butcher.** Good afternoon, Mrs. Hurrybustle.

**Mrs. Hurrybustle.** Good afternoon.

[*Baker passes the shoe to Greengrocer. Mrs. Hurrybustle goes to Baker's shop and knocks.*]

**Mrs. Hurrybustle.** Good afternoon. I've called for my shoe. The cobbler sent it to the butcher, and the butcher says he has sent it on to you.

**Baker.** I am very sorry, madam, but it got a little stained in the oven, so I sent it to the fruit shop to have the stain taken out with lemon juice. But won't you buy something while you are here? What about some bread for tea?

**Mrs. Hurrybustle.** Well, I declare! I had forgotten to get any! What a good thing you reminded me!

[*Baker wraps up the loaf; Mrs. Hurrybustle pays and puts it in her bag.*]

**Mrs. Hurrybustle.** Good afternoon, Baker.

**Baker.** Thank you, madam. Good afternoon, madam.

[*Mrs. Hurrybustle goes to the fruit shop and knocks.*]

**Mrs. Hurrybustle.** Good afternoon, Greengrocer. I have called for my shoe. The cobbler sent it on to the butcher, the butcher sent it on to the baker, and the baker says he has sent it on to you.

**Greengrocer.** I am so sorry, madam, I'm afraid your shoe is not here at the moment. The stain would not come out with lemon juice, so I sent it round to the candlestick maker, to—er—to—er—to ask his advice! But won't you taste one of these strawberries, madam, all freshly picked this morning?

[*Greengrocer offers Mrs. Hurrybustle a strawberry. She eats it.*]

**Mrs. Hurrybustle.** They certainly are delicious. I must have a pound of them. What a lot of things I seem to be buying to-day! And I did not mean to do any shopping. I must stop to arrange my parcels a little.

[*While Mrs. Hurrybustle is arranging her parcels, the Greengrocer tries to pass on the shoe to Candlestick Maker, but he will not take it.*]

**Candlestick Maker.** No, it is a stupid idea, I won't join in your silly plan.

**Greengrocer.** Very well then. I shall take the shoe back to the cobbler. But you are acting very foolishly, you know, and you'll be sorry.

[*Greengrocer takes the shoe back to Cobbler.*]

**Mrs. Hurrybustle.** Why, it's four o'clock! It is my tea time, and I am so hungry.

[*Greengrocer gives Mrs. Hurrybustle the basket of strawberries and she pays him.*]

**Mrs. Hurrybustle.** Thank you, good afternoon.

**Greengrocer.** Thank you, madam, good afternoon.

[*Mrs. Hurrybustle goes to the Candlestick Maker's shop and knocks.*]

**Mrs. Hurrybustle.** Have you got my shoe? Please give it to me at once.

**Candlestick Maker.** No indeed, I would not be so silly—

**Mrs. Hurrybustle (losing her temper).** You call it silly to give me my shoe? You are a very rude old man, and I shall never visit your shop again. I was going to buy a china candlestick for my best bedroom, but now I shall not buy anything at all.

[*Mrs. Hurrybustle marches back to the Cobbler's shop muttering to herself.*]

He is a very, very, very rude old man.

[*Outside the Cobbler's shop she bumps into Cobbler who has come out to meet her.*]

**Mrs. Hurrybustle.** Oh! I beg your pardon. I was so angry with the Candlestick Maker that I did not see where I was going.

**Cobbler.** Don't be angry with him. He is only a poor old man without much sense. Won't you come into my shop and rest for a while? Your shoe has come back.

**Mrs. Hurrybustle.** Thank you very much. What a relief it is to meet a polite shopman after that impertinent Candlestick Maker!

[*She goes up to the shop.*]

What pretty little red slippers!

**Cobbler.** I think they would look very well on your pretty little feet.

*Mrs. Hurrybustle.* How kind of you to say so. I really think I must buy them.

[*Cobbler wraps up the slippers and the shoe; Mrs. Hurrybustle pays and puts the parcel in her bag.*]

*Mrs. Hurrybustle.* You are the most obliging of all the shopmen in the town, Cobbler. But they are all very kind. I must tell my friends how obliging they all are—except that horrid Candlestick Maker.

[*Mrs. Hurrybustle goes out. The shopmen all come out of their shops.*]

*Butcher.* Every one of us has sold something. Three cheers for the clever Cobbler. Hip! Hip!

*All.* HURRAH!

*Candlestick Maker.* Cobbler, you were right and I was wrong. I am sorry I was so ill-natured.

*Cobbler.* That's quite all right. I am only sorry you have not sold anything.

[*Mrs. Hurrybustle comes running in again. She goes to the Candlestick Maker's shop.*]

*Mrs. Hurrybustle.* I think I will have that candlestick, after all.

*Candlestick Maker.* Allow me to make you a present of it, madam.

*Mrs. Hurrybustle.* Oh how good of you! You are the kindest of all these kind shopmen of Tynytown. In future I shall do all my shopping here, and tell my friends to do so too. And you may send me a dozen candlesticks to-morrow.

*Cobbler.* Three cheers for Candles! Hip! hip!

*All.* HURRAH!

[*The shopmen make a half-circle round Candlestick Maker and Mrs. Hurrybustle.*]

*Cobbler.*

Our story has told  
How tricks may win gold;

*Candlestick Maker.*

But I think you will find  
It pays best to be kind.

*Mrs. Hurrybustle.*

Won't you all come to tea  
At my cottage with me?

*All.* Hurrah!

[*They dance out—Mrs. Hurrybustle with the Candlestick Maker who carries the candlestick, and the rest follow in pairs.*]





## FAIRYFOOT

This is a one-act play. Read it straight through, then choose the actors to read the spoken parts aloud, playing the actions as they are told.

*People in the play.*—COOK. KITCHENMAID. PRINCE PIP. PRINCESS FAIRYFOOT. KING OF AMSTERDAMSTER. QUEEN OF AMSTERDAMSTER.

*Things wanted in the play.*—A pastry board and rolling pin. A plate. Some patty tins with tarts in them. Some cake. Two pairs of very large shoes. Materials for cleaning shoes. A signet ring. A small bottle filled with water. A pencil and paper.

*Scene.*—The kitchen of the palace of Amsterdamster. There are a table, two chairs, and a cupboard which stands for an oven.

[Cook is rolling out pastry on the table. Kitchenmaid is cleaning a large pair of shoes.]

*Kitchenmaid.* Poor Princess Fairyfoot!

How heavy her large feet must be! These shoes of hers are bigger than my father's.

*Cook.* It's hard on the King and Queen too. There they are, spending all their money trying to find someone who can make her feet even one size smaller.

*Kitchenmaid.* I don't see why it should worry *them* so much. The Princess is the one who really suffers—no dances, poor thing, as her feet make her so tired; no handsome Prince to dance with.

*Cook.* That's just the trouble. While the Princess's feet are so large no really good Prince is likely to marry her, and then who is to be king and wear the crown of Amsterdamster after the old king dies?

*Kitchenmaid.* I hadn't thought of that. There certainly can't be many men, Princes or no, who would want a wife with feet like this.

[*Kitchenmaid holds up shoe*]

*Kitchenmaid.* It puzzles me why they called her Fairyfoot. It only seems to make things worse.

*Cook.* I think they hoped her name would encourage her, that she would try to live up to it, you know.

[*Kitchenmaid giggles.*]

*Kitchenmaid.* She has not only lived up to it, she has lived *past* it.

[*Prince Pip knocks at the door*]

*Cook.* Now who can that be at this time in the morning? Run to the door, Kitchenmaid, and see who is there.

[*Kitchenmaid goes to the door, opens it and looks outside.*]

*Kitchenmaid.* Why, it's a strange boy!

*Cook.* Ask him in.

*Kitchenmaid.* Come in, Dirty-face.

[*Prince Pip comes in. He is poorly dressed. He has a ring on his finger and a bottle of water in his pocket*]

*Cook.* What do you want, young man, at the palace of Amsterdamster?

*Prince Pip.* If you please, ma'am, I was hoping that you might be in need of a scullery boy. I will work hard and well for small wages.

[*Cook stops her work and looks at him*]

*Cook.* Well, you look a likely lad. What's your name?

*Prince Pip.* Pip, ma'am.

*Cook.* Pip what?

*Prince Pip.* Just Pip, ma'am.

[*Kitchenmaid giggles*]

*Kitchenmaid.* Orange Pip or Apple Pip?

*Cook.* Be quiet, Kitchenmaid. The lad has a right to whatever name he chooses. Poor boy, he looks hungry and tired. Yes, you can stay here, we can find you plenty of work to do.

*Prince Pip.* Thank you very much, ma'am.

[*Cook hands him a piece of cake.*]

*Cook.* You may eat this piece of cake. Then sit down and finish cleaning that pair of shoes. Kitchenmaid, you run along and scrub the saucepans. I must finish these tarts for the Princess's eleven o'clock lunch. She will be here asking for them in a few minutes. We are all behind with the work to-day.

[*Prince Pip eats the cake. He sits down and polishes the shoes. Kitchenmaid leaves the room. Cook puts the tarts in the oven and hides the table*]

*Prince Pip.* Oh, what lovely big feet this lady has!

*Cook.* Don't be rude, boy. Those are the shoes of the Princess Fairyfoot.

*Prince Pip.* In my country everyone has beautiful big feet like these.

*Cook.* Yours are not very big.

*Prince Pip.* That is why I could not stay in my own country.

[*Prince Pip sighs deeply*]

*Cook.* You are a strange boy. What is your country?

*Prince Pip.* I come from the kingdom of Trampletown, which is over the mountains, many miles from here. There everyone has feet not less than sixteen inches long, and seven inches wide.

*Cook.* Well I never!

[*The Princess comes in. She wears a very large pair of shoes*]

*Princess.* Are my tarts ready, Cook?

[*Cook opens the oven door and looks inside*]

*Cook.* They will be ready in three more minutes, your Highness.

[*Princess sees Prince Pip.*]

*Princess.* Who is this person?

*Cook.* He is the new scullery boy, your Highness.

[*Prince Pip gets up from the chair, bows to the Princess, and stands looking at her feet*]

*Princess.* What are you staring at, Scullery Boy?

*Prince Pip.* Oh, your Highness, I was gazing at your beautiful feet.

[*Princess bursts into tears.*]

*Princess.* C-c-cruel b-b-boy. How d-d-dare you laugh at me!

[*She dries her eyes angrily.*]

*Princess.* Send him away! He shall not work here!

*Prince Pip.* Indeed, your Highness, I am not laughing at you. I come from the Kingdom of Trampletown over the mountains, where everyone has the most lovely large feet. My own were even larger than yours till, by a sad misfortune, I paddled in the magic pool of Shrinkem. Then my feet became the foolish size you see them now, and I, the rightful Prince of Trampletown, was turned out of my own kingdom for ugliness.

*Princess.* You a Prince! I cannot believe it.

*Prince Pip.* Your Highness, here on my ring you see the seal of the royal crown of Trampletown.

[*Prince Pip shows her the ring*]

*Princess.* This is most extraordinary. What is your name, Prince?

*Prince Pip.* I was christened Augustus Reginald Theobald Marmaduke Trampletown. But since I lost my throne I have been called Pip.

*Princess.* Prince Pip, will you share my tarts with me?

*Prince Pip.* Thank you, Princess.

[*Prince Pip places a chair for the Princess. She sits down on it, and he sits on a chair by her*]

*Cook.* They are ready now, your Highness.

[*Cook takes the tarts from the oven, puts them on a plute and gives them to the Princess*]

*Princess.* Thank you, Cook.

[*The Princess and the Prince sit and eat the tarts.*]

*Princess.* I want to hear more about the magic pool of Shrinkem which made your feet small. For five years my father has been trying to find something which would make mine even one size less.

[*Prince Pip takes a bottle of water from his pocket.*]

*Prince Pip.* In this bottle, Princess, is some of the water of that magic pool. I kept it in case it might come in useful one day. If you would allow me to sprinkle some on your feet, they would immediately become as small as you wish, though to me they are much more beautiful as they are.

*Princess.* Oh, wonderful Prince! Pray sprinkle my feet at once with your magic water.

[*Prince Pip kneels at her feet. He sprinkles a little water from the bottle on each foot*]

*Princess.* Oh! Oh! I can feel them shrinking!

[*Princess kicks off her shoes*]

*Princess.* Look! How wonderful!

*Cook.* Well I never!

*Prince.* Are they small enough yet?

*Princess.* A little more, please.

[*Prince sprinkles on a little more water*]

*Prince.* That is a good size, I should think.

*Princess.* That is just as I have always wanted them to be. They are now as tiny as any lady's in the land. Cook, run and fetch me a pair of shoes the right size, and ask the King and Queen to come here at once.

[*Cook runs out*]

*Princess.* Prince Pip, how can I ever thank you?

*Prince.* To be allowed to kiss your hand, most beautiful Princess, would be far more than I deserve.

[*He kisses her hand. The King and Queen come running in. The Cook carries a pair of shoes the right size, the Kitchen-maid comes last*]

*Queen.* What's the matter?

*King.* What is the meaning of this unseemly commotion?

*Princess.* Look Mamma, look Papa, at my teeny weeny little feet!

*Queen.* My precious child!

[*She embraces the Princess*]

*King.* Most remarkable! My dear, I congratulate you, I have never seen a smaller pair of feet in my life.

[*He embraces the Princess*]

*Kitchenmaid.* Goodness me!

*Cook.* Here are the shoes, your Highness, they are the smallest size made.

*Prince.* Please allow me the honour of putting them on for you.

[*Princess sits down. Prince kneels and puts on her shoes*]

*Queen.* Who is this young man, my dear?

*Princess.* Dear Mamma and Papa, this is Prince Augustus Reginald Theobald Marmaduke of the kingdom of Trampletown. It is he who has given me such lovely little feet.

*King.* Noble Prince of Trampletown, you are a splendid fellow; you have fulfilled the dearest wish of our lives. We offer you our heartfelt thanks, and the hand of our cherished daughter in marriage.

*Prince.* Your Majesty, I could wish for no greater happiness, if the Princess is willing.

*Princess.* Oh, YES.

*Kitchenmaid.* Hooray!

*King.* Then we will make immediate preparations for the wedding. Shall we say Tuesday week?

[*He turns to the Queen.*]

*King.* What do you think, my dear?

*Queen.* Tuesday week would do very well, I think. We should have time to run up a wedding dress by then.

[*She gets out a pencil and paper and writes as she talks*]

*Queen.* Cook, you must arrange for the wedding breakfast.

*Cook.* Yes, your Majesty.

*Queen.* Now, what would you all like? Prince, as the bridegroom you should have first choice. What do you say?

*Prince.* I am specially fond of mince pies.

*Queen.* Mince pies, certainly. And you, my child?

*Princess.* Jelly, please.

*Queen.* Mince pies and jelly. I shall choose trifle, and I know the King will want sausage rolls. Then of course we must have sandwiches and wedding cake. And there is plenty of ginger wine in the cellar.

*Kitchenmaid.* Oooo!

[*Princess begins to skip about*]

*Princess.* Oh, I can dance now!

[*They all take hands and skip round the table, singing to the tune of Little Bo-Peep.*]

The Princess's feet  
Have grown so neat  
That she dances as light as a feather.  
She's given her hand  
To the Prince of the land,  
And they mean to go dancing together.

The King and the Queen  
With smiles are seen,  
For they share in the joy of their daughter;  
They are blessing the day  
Which brought in their way  
The Prince and his wonderful water.

The maid and the cook,  
How happy they look!  
And all are a-gurgle with laughter.  
The cook says she'll bake  
A grand wedding cake,  
And they'll happily live ever after.





*People in the play.*—MUNCH. GRUMBLE. A FAIRY VOICE.

*Things wanted in the play.*—A cooking pan. A spoon. A poker. A black sausage-shaped balloon on a long string, with a nose clip—like those found on artificial moustaches—fixed at one end of the balloon. A small elfin doll on the end of a long wire.

*Scene.*—The living room of a poor hut. Two stools stand one on each side of the fireplace. (The fireplace may be made by covering a clothes horse or easel with a tablecloth, leaving an uncovered space at the bottom to serve as the grate, which may be filled with red paper for flames, with a pocket lamp placed to shine through it.)

[*Munch and Grumble are seated one on each side of the fire. Munch is warming his hands. Grumble stirs something in the pan; she holds in her hand the string of the balloon, which is hidden somewhere in the room.*]

*Munch.* Oh dearie, dearie me! Only fivepence left in the stocking foot, and it is New Year's Eve to-morrow!

*Grumble.* What would I not give for a fine fat goose to turn on my spit? Here have we had nothing but gruel for the last ten days! Never was there such bad luck as ours!

*Munch.* And neighbour Crabtree tells me that his wife is cooking a pullet for supper this very night.

*Grumble.* A set of trotters would do for me, or a pound of fine, fresh tripe.

*Munch.* Even a black pudding would be welcome.

*Grumble.* Why do you tease me with such notions? I would give the world for a good rich, black pudding.

**Munch.** The world? . . . Yes, if you had it!

**Grumble.** Now, don't be grumpy, Munch.

**Munch.** And what about you Grumble? You bite my head off every minute of the day!

**Grumble.** You idle good-for-nothing! Hold your tongue! What do you do but warm your fingers, while I stir and stir at this stupid pot?

**Munch.** Do not let us quarrel, goodwife. We have little enough. Let us keep our tempers at least.

**Grumble.** All very well for you.

**Munch.** Nay-nay now! What do you say to a game of wishing?

**Grumble.** Wishing, forsooth! Of what use to wish? Will wishing make the fire burn faster?

**Munch.** Ah, indeed you are right! But though we are poor we may see our wishes in the fire.

**Grumble.** Stuff and nonsense!

[*Munch peers into the fire*]

**Munch.** But I can! I can see a great castle with soot-black walls and glowing windows! Inside the people are dancing. Listen! You can hear the rustle of their feet. . . .

**Grumble.** Foolish man! It is only the whisper of the falling ashes. See! I push your castle with the poker tip, and it is gone!

[*Grumble pokes the fire*]

**Munch.** But there is a cave now, all hung with coloured lanterns, and piled round with boxes of good food, and casks of wine . . . I see strings of onions hanging from the rocky roof, and hams, and sides of bacon.

**Grumble.** Stupid creature! Ah! If only we were rich, and you could buy all you see!

**Munch.** Yes, if we were rich!

**Grumble.** We would have a fine house, and garden, a pig, and a cow!

**Munch.** A horse and trap . . .

**Grumble.** New gowns . . .

**Munch.** And a . . .

**Grumble.** But what is the use of wishing, and staring in the fire? We are poor, and have nothing!

**Munch.** Do not say nothing, wife. We have our snug cottage and there is meal in the barrel yet.

**Grumble.** Meal! Why, you stingy thing! A good piece of roast meat would be more use than all your starings in the fire.

[*Munch suddenly points into the fire.*]

**Munch.** Why, wife! Look! Look!

**Grumble.** What now?

[*She peers into the fire. Someone behind the fireplace drops the doll on the end of the wire into the grate, in front of Munch and Grumble, and moves the doll up and down*]

**Munch.** In the fire . . . something is stirring among the coals, something small and bright . . . see it slips out between the bars, stands on the hearth!

**Grumble.** It sparkles like a red hot coal!

**Munch.** It is an elf . . . a mannikin!

**Fairy Voice** (*from behind the fireplace*). Good evening, good people. What is all this talk of wishes?

**Munch.** Why, my goodwife and I were but thinking how we wished we were rich.

**Grumble.** Yes, little master. If we had our wishes we might be happy at last!

**Fairy Voice.** You would do little good with your wishes, I am sure. Why, you argue so, you could not agree what to wish for!

**Munch.** That would I, master!

**Fairy Voice.** Try then! I will give you three wishes. See what use you can make of them.

[*The doll is pulled up and disappears.*]

**Grumble.** Upon my word! Strange doings in one's own house! Appearings and disappearings!

**Munch.** But he gave us three wishes . . . What shall we have? Think, wife, think!

**Grumble.** I would have wealth, plenty of money to buy what we desire.

**Munch.** But without health of what use would the money be to us? We could not



enjoy the good thing, if we were aching with rheumatism

*Grumble* Dear me! How hungry I am! I wish we had a good black pudding for our supper to-night

*[Grumble pulls the string attached to the balloon so that it comes bounding along into her lap.]*

*Munch* Woman! What have you done? . . . You have wasted a whole precious wish! Why can you not keep a still tongue in your head? But women are all the same! Chatter! Chatter! Chatter! I am sure I wish the pudding would stick to your foolish nose!

*[Grumble turns aside and quickly clips the balloon to her nose.]*

*Grumble* Mercy on me! Wretch! See what you've done! I cannot pull it off!

*Munch* Alas! There goes our second wish! Plague on my stupid tongue! I have wasted a wish now!

*Grumble* Pull it off! Pull it off!

*[Munch tries to pull it off her nose.]*

*Grumble* Oh! Oh! You hurt!

*Munch* It will not come off. Then it must stay. See, wife Grumble we will wish for riches, and you shall ride in a glass coach, and have a golden case to put over your pudding nose.

*Grumble* What! Do you think that I will go through life with this black tail on my face . . . for all the world like an elephant in a circus tent? You booby! It is your fault! And you shall wish it away, or I will never speak to you again!

*Munch* But, my dear . . . the riches! Our heart's desire!

*Grumble* I tell you I *must* be rid of this horrible thing! What does anything else matter? Wish, booby wish!

*Munch* I—I—Well then, I wish that the pudding would fall off your nose.

*[Grumble puts up her hands and pushes off the balloon.]*

*Grumble* I am free!

*Munch* And there is an end of our wishing!

*[The elfin doll is again dropped into the grate.]*

*Fairy Voice* And much good it has done you! Can you not be content with what you have, and not spend your time in grumbling, and idle words?

*Munch* Let us have one more wish!

*Grumble* Just one, kind elf!

*Fairy Voice* Not one . . . You must find your wishes in the fire in future.

*[The elfin doll disappears.]*

*Grumble* And that is that! We are no better off than before; all through your ill temper, and hasty words!

*Munch* Well, wife, we have each other. Let us try to be content, and work for our wishes.

*Grumble* Well, I will try.

*Munch* And so will I. We will try together!

*[They stand up hand in hand.]*

*Munch*

I wish I were I wish I were, I wish I were a king

I wish I could, I wish I could do some exciting thing

I wish I had, I wish I had a thousand pounds to spend

I wish my dreams of Make Believe would never, never end

*Grumble.*

If wishes were horses then beggars would ride

I'd have a car lined with velvet inside! You'd have an aeroplane, I should be clever,

We'd eat cakes and ices for ever and ever.

*Both together.*

But as magic comes only through fairies and elves,

We'll work for our wishes, and earn them ourselves!

*Munch* Now let's eat the black pudding



## THE BURNT CAKES

*People in the play* — A COTTAGER HIS WIFE  
A WANDERER

*Things wanted in the play* — A bowl in a spoon  
Several biscuits A sword

*Scene* — A poor cottage kitchen. It has one door and a fire burns on the hearth. There is a table in the middle of the room and a stool by the hearth.

[*Wife is making cakes at the table*]

*Wife* Dear! dear! My goodman is late again! His dinner will be spoiled. I am glad I thought of making these cakes which he can take with him to the forest.

[*Wife puts down the cakes in front of the fire and stirs some broth in a basin*]

But indeed I fear for him every day when he is away from me. With the land full of these dreadful Danes there is no knowing if he will ever come back safely.

[*Wife puts her apron to her eyes*]

Bad times! Alas! One never knows when the house may not be burned over one's head. If only our king could drive them out! They say he is a good man and a learned as a priest. How I should like to see him!

[*There is a knock at the door*]

Who is there?

*Cottager (speaking from outside)* It is I, goodwife, and a guest. Unbar the door. We are weary and hungry.

[*Wife opens the door. In come the Cottager and Wanderer*]

*Cottager* Ah! It is good to be at home!  
*Wanderer* You have a snug cot here, and the fire is very welcome. Good day to you, mistress.

*Wife* And who may this be?

*Cottager* Hush, wife! He is a stranger who is my very good friend.

*Wife* Friend! forsooth! One has need of friends in these evil times. (*She whispers*) But I like not the look of him. His sword is hacked and worn, and his shoes are ragged. He is a fighter and no peaceful man.

[*Wanderer sits on the stool by the fire*]

*Cottager* Silence, Wife!

*Wife* And look how he stares and stares in the fire as if he were not here!

*Cottager* He is very weary. Give him food and let him rest. I must away back to the forest. There is work to be done.

[*Wanderer eats soup from the bowl*]

*Wife* And you will leave this man here?

*Cottager* He will not harm you. He has fled from the Danes and must be hid for a while. Take care of him.

[*Cottager goes out*]

*Wife* Well, so I am to look after this great staring gaby of a man and he has eaten half the broth already. Here, you! What is your name?

*Wanderer.* I have lost it, good woman  
But I shall win it back again . . . some  
day. (*He sighs*).

*Wife.* Law save us! The man is daft!  
. . . Well, if you will cumber my hearth  
with your great limbs you may as well  
earn your place. Watch those cakes for me  
while I go to draw water from the well.  
See that they do not burn

*Wanderer.* Willingly, dame.

[*Wife goes out*]

*Wanderer (talking to himself)* Ah! If I  
could lure the Danes into the marshes, and  
bring up my men through the tall reeds, and  
surround them! . . . But my enemies are  
so many, and so strong, and we are so few,  
and very weary. . . . But we are English-  
men. It is our country that we are trying  
to save from their cruel claws. . . . We  
*must* drive them out! We *must* win. . . .  
Yet we are beaten up and down the land,  
and I am forced to hide in this poor hut  
like a rabbit in its hole. . . . It seems that  
I shall never succeed. The Danes will go  
on their fiery way until there is not a church  
left standing, or a free man left alive through  
the length and breadth of England. . . .  
I have no hope left. . . . A poor king,  
indeed! A ragged starving creature with  
no home, no hope . . . but I *will* not give  
up till my life is done. I *will* try once more  
. . . I *will* drive them off!

[*Wanderer jumps up and waves his sword*  
*Wife comes in and sees him*]

*Wife.* What in the world? . . . Is the  
man mad? Talking to himself in an empty  
house! And my cakes, my beautiful cakes!  
Burnt to a cinder! Oh! You idle good-for-  
nothing creature you! Take that!

[*Wife bores the Wanderer's ears*]

*Wanderer.* I—good dame, I am truly  
sorry! . . . It was very foolish of me. I  
was thinking. I fear I am a poor thing  
indeed. I cannot even watch cakes.

[*Cottager comes in.*]

*Wife.* A fine friend this! Here I left him  
for two minutes to watch my cakes, and he  
let them spoil! But I boxed his ears for him!

*Wanderer (laughing).* Right heartily!

*Cottager.* Boxed his ears! You are mad!  
. . . Don't you know who . . . ?

*Wanderer.* Hush! Your wife chid me  
for idle dreaming, and she was right. I  
have dreamed enough. I must *do*, even if  
it is only a little thing, like minding cakes.

*Wife.* A little thing that my cakes are  
spoiled!

*Wanderer.* Forgive me, dame.

*Cottager.* She shall ask your pardon on  
her knees. This is the King, wife.

*Wife.* Alas! And I have boxed his ears!

*Cottager.* Forgive her, master.

[*They both kneel before the King*]

*King.* She must forgive me. She has  
done me a service, waked me smartly from  
my dreams. I shall go out now, I have a  
new plan. I mean to drive the Danes into  
the sea,—and free England!





## THE SHOP-WINDOW FAIRY

*People in the play.*—SHOP-WINDOW FAIRY (a fair-haired girl dressed in white with gauze wings, holding a wand tipped by a golden star). SOLDIER DOLL (a very small boy in a scarlet uniform). SAILOR DOLL (a medium-sized boy in a sailor suit). RED RIDING HOOD DOLL (a black-haired little girl in a red cape). JACK-IN-THE-BOX (a very small boy dressed in a gay tricoloured costume. His box is gaily painted and must be large enough for him to sit inside with the lid down). DINAH, THE BLACK DOLL (a little girl with a black stocking covering for her face and hands, dressed in red gingham with a yellow fichu). THREE MANDARIN DOLLS (three little boys of about the same size dressed in crêpe paper mandarin costumes). DUTCH DOLL (a small fair girl dressed in Dutch fashion, with clogs). CLOWN DOLL (a little boy dressed as a circus clown, with a rice-powdered face). PINKIE (a girl in a light frock to represent an ordinary doll). ROSEBUD (another ordinary doll). LITTLE BEGGAR GIRL (a big girl, in contrast to the "dolls". She should be dark-haired, wearing an outer garment of rags and patches which conceals a pretty party frock beneath. Her white socks are covered by black ones full of rents, and her white slippers are hidden in Jack's box).

*Scene.*—A shop window late at night when the shop is closed. At the back of the stage stands a gaily ornamented fir tree. The Shop-Window Fairy and several of the other dolls stand on green stools under the tree so that they appear to be dangling from it. The other dolls are arranged as in a shop window.

[The curtain rises to music, which gradually dies away. Then heavy footsteps and

a policeman's whistle are heard off-stage. There is a tiny flutter among the dolls, and a murmur of "Sh!" The sounds die away, and the Jack-in-the-box noisily bumps up his lid.]

*Jack (thumping the side of his box).* Bang it! Bang it! Has he gone by?

*Soldier (coming stiffly to attention).* Yes, he has; but he may come back if you make so much noise. We shall have to fasten your lid down so that you cannot come out.

*Dutch Doll.* That would serve him right. He is so noisy.

*Jack (in alarm).* Don't, oh, please don't do that. I really will be good. I will keep very quiet and you won't know I am here.

*Fairy (slowly waking up).* Why, where am I? . . . Oh, yes, I remember. . . . What did the Fairy Queen say? That I was to go into exile from Fairyland. . . . But what a noisy place this is! This punishment is surely worse than I deserved.

[Fairy comes down from the tree and steps to the centre of the stage, and sings. The other dolls nod their heads sympathetically in stiff doll fashion. At the end of the verse and refrain they pirouette jerkily round and drop back into their original positions.]

*Fairy (sings, to the air of "I've Got a Pain in my Sawdust", by Warner and Wade.)*

Oh, once I was seated in Fairyland Court,  
 And dreaming of real-world delight.  
 To see little children I thought would be  
 sport,  
 And really a wonderful sight.  
 But, ah, woe is me, for a shop-keeper heard  
 The wish I had murmured aloud;  
 And, lo, on that day, I was brought here to  
 stay,  
 In the midst of this babbling crowd.

*All the Dolls.*

Oh, deary me, I am homesick,  
 That's what's the matter with me.  
 Though it is gay Christmas season  
 I'm just as sad as can be;  
 Shut up in here, where my beautiful wings  
 Seem like two useless and burdensome things,  
 No longer the heart in my fairy breast sings;  
 Oh, but I'm dreadfully homesick!

*[Fairy glides back into her place in the tree.  
 The three Mandarins patter down-  
 stage.]*

*Mandarins (all together).* You should have  
 come from China, as we do, then you wouldn't  
 mind the noise. Why, it's as quiet as any-  
 thing here, compared with China.

*[The Mandarins dance in Chinese fashion  
 to the "Chinese Dance" from the  
 "Casse-Noisette Suite" by Tschaiowsky.  
 They sway their arms, heads and upper  
 part of their bodies in time to the music.  
 They then speak all together in a  
 sing-song voice, without music.]*

*Mandarins.*

In gay Cathay  
 So far away,  
 Alas, we have no Christmas Day!

*The Dolls (speaking to one another in  
 surprise).* What! No Christmas Day!

*Mandarins.*

So you see  
 We'd rather be  
 In the happy land of Christmas tree.

*The Dolls (nodding their heads).* In the  
 happy land of Christmas tree.

*[The Mandarins patter back to their places.]*

*Fairy.* I don't agree with you at all. I  
 think this is a dreadful place. Oh, how I  
 wish I were back in Fairyland!

*Red Riding Hood (coaxingly).* Please don't  
 say that. You can't think how glad we all  
 are to have you here. A real fairy in our  
 shop! Why, it's something we shall never  
 forget.

*Fairy.* But it's such a dull place. And  
 the worst of it is that everything is only  
 make-believe.

*Rosebud.* Make-believe? Nonsense! Look  
 at those red candles. Don't tell me that they  
 are make-believe.

*Fairy.* Why, of course they are. They  
 should be fireflies and glowworms; living  
 candles, not dead waxen things. Our fire-  
 flies flit about from tree to tree, but your  
 candles can't jump about at all. They stay  
 just where you put them. Dull, I call it.  
 Everything is dull here.

*Pinkie.* I am so sorry that you find this  
 place dull. Now I love being here. It was  
 dull in that old factory where I was made,  
 if you like. But here . . . oh, it's so  
 exciting. Every time a little girl comes  
 into this shop, my heart goes pit-a-pat.  
 For some day, sometime, a little girl is  
 certain to buy me. And then I shall  
 have a real Mamma. Oh, how I want a  
 Mamma.

*Fairy.* What a funny thing to want.  
 Now if you wanted something sensible,—  
 like a bit of the rainbow to slide down on—I  
 could understand it.

*Jack.* You are silly! Your chatter annoys  
 me. Bang it! bang it!

*[Jack thumps on the side of his box.]*

*Red Riding Hood.* Oh, Jack dear, please  
 don't make such a noise, or you'll bring  
 the watchman back.

*Dinah (shaking her finger at him).* Now,  
 honey, you just must be good.

*Sailor.* If customers knew him as well  
 as we do, I'm sure he wouldn't sell.

*Soldier.* But for all that, he may be the  
 first to go. You never can tell.

*Rosebud.* I am afraid it is the quiet ones  
 who stay in the shop the longest.

*Clown.* Won't someone come and wind me up so that I can walk about too?

[*Sailor winds him up. The Clown tumbles down stage and handsprings back to his place.*]

It's good to be awake again. How I hate the daytime!

*Fairy.* I have never seen a clown before. How comical he is!

*Dinah* (*secretly*) Ah, sure 'nough, I guess I daunces good as he does. Look at me!

[*Dinah dances a cake walk round the tree. The other dolls clap her in wooden fashion.*]

*Sailor.* I should love to be sold too.

*Soldier.* And I certainly don't want to be left here a'l by myself.

*Pinkie.* I long to see what the outside world is like.

*Jack.* And I'd like to go to a house where there are lots of boys to play and make a noise with.

*Three Mandarin* (*to each other*) We wish someone would buy us too.

*Red Riding Hood.* I don't think any little girl will buy me now, because I've lost my little doll and my more.

*Fairy.* You all seem to agree with me that this shop life is very dull.

*Koschut.* No we all like the shop, but we are curious to see what is outside.

*Fairy.* What strange creature you are! Do you all want to be sold?

*The Dolls* (*all together*) Yes we do!

*Fairy.* I am a true fairy with magic power. With a wave of my wand your wishes can be granted.

*The Dolls* (*all together*) Oh!

*Three Mandarin.* We want to stay together always, please remember that.

*Fairy* (*as she waves her wand*) May all your wishes come true! To-morrow you will all be sold!

*The Dolls* (*all together*) Hurrah! hurrah!

[*They all dance about in their own fashion — the Clown turns somersaults and Dinah cakewalk. Jack beats his box for a drum. As they parade they sing to the air of "I'm Called Little Buttercup" from "H.M.S. Pinafore".*]

### *The Dolls*

We're going to be sold, you see,  
Going to be sold, you see;  
That's why we're singing for joy  
We shall soon find ourselves,  
Leaving these dusty shelves

### *Soldier and Sailor*

Bought by a girl or a boy,  
We're going to have mothers,  
And sisters and brothers,  
Who'll play with us every day

### *Koschut and Pinkie*

We'll wear fluffy dresses  
And learn to read and write,  
And that is the reason we say

### *The Dolls all together*

To-morrow the happy day,  
Yes, that's the happy day  
Speed then O hours and pass by  
We shall hear many feet  
As though the city street  
People come listening to buy.

*The Dolls* (*when the door is closed*)  
The alarm sound is that of fate  
Which sounds louder and louder

*Fairy.* Listen! What is that?

*Soldier.* It sounds like a child weeping in the street.

*Sailor.* Not at this hour of the night, surely!

*Dinah.* Yes, it is.

*Fairy.* Run and see what it is, one of you.

[*Clown runs off.*]

*Dinah Doll.* Children should all be married by now. I expect it's only the wind.

[*Clown runs in.*]

*The Dolls* (*all together*) What did you see?

*Clown* (*impressively*) I looked through a pane of the big shop door, and I saw a little girl weeping. Her clothes are ragged and old, but she is very pretty.

*Fairy.* Why didn't you bring her in?

*Clown.* I couldn't, because the door was locked.

*Fairy.* Then I will wish it open for you.

[*Fairy waves her wand.*]

Now, clown, go and fetch her.

*Rosebud.* Oh, wonderful Fairy, why have you come to live in a shop?

*Fairy.* Well, you see, the shopkeeper sent to the queen of the fairies to ask for one of us as an ornament for his window at Christmas time. I had been naughty, so she chose me, and sent me here as a punishment. Here I must stay until the queen forgives me and allows me to go back to fairyland.

[*Clown returns, leading the Beggar Girl by the hand. She rubs her eyes, and sobs once or twice, then stares about her in astonishment.*]

*Beggar Girl.* Where am I? Am I dreaming?

*Sailor.* She is a very pretty child.

*Pinkie.* And she has such a sweet smile.

*Dutch Doll.* She would look lovely dressed in silk and satin.

*Rosebud.* Just what I was thinking.

*Beggar Girl.* The dolls seem to be talking. What a funny dream I am having!

*Fairy.* This is no dream, little girl.

*Beggar Girl.* Oh, the Fairy is speaking! Did you speak, Fairy?

*Jack (banging his box).* Bang! Bang! She thinks that nobody can speak but herself!

*Fairy.* Come and tell us your troubles, little girl.

*Dinah.* Why do you cry in the middle of the night?

*Beggar Girl.* Because I have no home to go to, and I was cold. Don't send me away again, please!

[*She begins to cry again.*]

*Three Mandarin.* Oh, poor little girl!

*Rosebud.* Fairy, can't you help her?

*Soldier.* Yes, with some of your magic.

*Fairy (doubtfully).* I don't know quite what to do to help her. I could change her into a doll.

*Beggar Girl (in alarm).* Oh, but I should hate that!

*Fairy.* Well, I could make her a fairy.

*Beggar Girl.* But I want to be a little girl.

*Fairy.* What do the rest of you think?

*Red Riding Hood.* Change her rags into lovely clothes, first of all.

*Dutch Doll.* A fine idea!

*Rosebud.* Make her look so beautiful and sweet that some nice people will want to adopt her.

*Fairy.* Those are good wishes, and very easy to perform.

*Beggar Girl.* Oh, what a wonderful dream this is! I hope I never wake up.

*Fairy.* Jack, you can be really useful for once. Bring me your box.

[*Jack steps out of his box; several dolls drag it to the centre of the stage.*]

*Fairy.* Step inside, little girl, and you shall see my fairy power.

[*Beggar Girl hesitates, but finally steps inside. She crouches down and Jack shuts the lid over her.*]

Now as I work my magic spell, each of you speak your Christmas wish to her.

[*The Fairy waves her wand as each doll says her wish.*]

*Rosebud.* I wish her to have a dainty little dress.

*Pinkie.* And I should like her to have some pretty slippers on her feet.

*Jack.* And I wish for some buckles to match them.

*Dutch Doll.* I would like her to have some pretty white socks.

*Red Riding Hood.* My wish is for her to have a beautiful hat.

*Clown.* And mine . . . but how can a boy know what a girl likes,--I wish that she may be very happy in her own way.

*Fairy.* Is that all?

*Sailor.* Oh, Fairy, you had better wish for us boys. I can't think of a thing.

*Three Mandarin.* We wish a purse of gold for her.

*Fairy.* And I wish for her all that you have not thought of.

*The Dolls sing to the chorus of "Swing Song" from "Veronique".*

Sing high; sing low;

Sing high; sing low;

Oh, sing of the magic that Fairies know.

In mystic rhyme,  
In tune and time,  
All magic enchantment has surely to go.

Sing high, sing low,  
Sing high, sing low,  
Behold what we sing you most surely is so  
Now I say 't,  
His done its part  
Come, open the lid, the results we'd know

[*Lil is anxious to hear as the Fairy opens the lid. They fall back with exclamations of surprise and delight as the Beggar Girl steps out in her party frock and slippers.*]

*Clown* Oh Fairy, how beautifully you have managed everything!

*Punkie* I am sure everyone will be wanting to adopt her.

[*The Beggar Girl has been admiring herself. She then looks to the Fairy and takes her hand.*]

*Beggar Girl* How can I thank you, Fairy dear? I am too happy to speak.

*Fairy* (*drawing the Beggar Girl to her feet*) Don't kneel to me child. I don't deserve it. I have been so cross all day.

*Roschid* But you are not cross now?

*Fairy* I am very happy now to have made you all so happy.

*Beggar Girl* (*opening her arms to the dolls*) When the shop opens I will buy you all!

[*Dolls sing to the air. "I'm calling little Buttercup."*]

To day is the happy day,  
Yes it's the happy day,  
Now all our wishes come true  
Bought by a man in a kilt,  
Leaving the shop behind,  
Singing we dear Fairy to you!

[*They murmur. She and gradually become as they place the Beggar Girl within them. The curtain falls to music.*]



## SLEEPY CECILY



*People in the play*—**RUPERT** (the son of a Cavalier gentleman. He wears a velvet suit with a lace collar and cuffs and should have long curly hair) **ROSEARLT** (Rupert's sister. She wears a stiff silk dress, with puffed sleeves, a high waist and white cuffs and collar) **BABY CECILY** (the youngest sister. She wears

a long cotton frock with a plain white collar and a round white cap) **THE ROUNDHEAD CAPTAIN** (a boy wearing a tunic, breeches and long boots. Round his waist is a leather belt with a sword in it, and on his head a steel cap. This may be made of cardboard painted silver and is in the form of a round cap with side



pieces) TWO ROUNDHEAD SOLDIERS (boys dressed like the Captain, but without swords) SIR RICHARD LOVELACE (a Cavalier) (He wears a satin doublet and breeches with a lace collar, and a broad rash round his waist. Over his shoulder is a scarf. He has a broad felt hat with a feather in it, and a long curled wig) FOUR CAVALIER SOLDIERS (they are dressed like Sir Richard, only more simply) THE COLONEL (the children's father) A MAID (dressed in a long plain frock with a fichu, and a white cap and apron)

*Scene*—The children's room in the Colonel's house. There is a door on the left and a French window at the back of the stage with curtains hanging over it down to the ground. The window may be made by means of a large sheet of light blue cloth or paper, with strips of white or grey paper pasted across it to represent bars. Under the window is a small window seat. When the curtains are drawn back so that the window seat shows there is room for someone to stand behind them without being seen. There are cushions on the seat, and an armchair on the right of the stage.

*[It is evening. The curtains are drawn well across, and Baby Cecily is lying curled up on the cushions of the window seat behind the curtains. Rupert is sitting on the floor playing with some toy bricks and Margaret sits in the chair embroidering a scarf.]*

**Rupert.** Look, Margaret, I have divided my bricks into two parties. These are the Roundhead soldiers, and those over here are the King's army.

**Margaret.** Which is Father's troop of horse?

**Rupert.** These bricks at the end here. Now we will have a grand battle. Margaret, come and move the Roundheads for me.

**Margaret.** No, Rupert, I have no time to play with you. This embroidery must be finished by to-night.

**Rupert.** Why by to-night?

**Margaret.** In case Father should come home as he promised. I am embroidering a scarf for him to wear when he rides with the King, and if he comes to-night I want him to take it away with him. So you see I have no time for play.

**Rupert.** Then Cecily must play with me. Where is she?

**Margaret.** She was sitting on the floor

just now, playing with her doll. She can't be far away.

**Rupert.** Cecily! Where are you?

*[The curtains part and Cecily's sleepy face peeps out.]*

**Rupert.** Come out and play soldiers with me.

**Cecily.** No, I'm too sleepy. I was fast asleep till you woke me up.

**Rupert.** You are always asleep. It will do you good to come out and play.

*[He pulls her out.]*

**Margaret.** Don't be unkind, Rupert.

**Rupert.** She is lazy and must be taught better.

*[Cecily begins to cry.]*

**Cecily.** You horrid boy! I shall go away and hide where you can't find me.

*[She runs out.]*

**Rupert.** Silly little thing!

*[He goes back to his bricks.]*

**Margaret.** It is best to leave her alone, I think. Old Hodge the gardener brought news this morning.

**Rupert.** Did he? What was it?

**Margaret.** He said he had heard that there were troops about.

**Rupert.** Ours, or the rebels'?

**Margaret.** Both, he said.

**Rupert.** Then there will be a battle. How splendid! I shall go out and watch.

**Margaret.** Oh no! You might be killed.

*[Sir Richard Lovelace appears in the doorway and stands listening. He has his arm in a sling and appears very weary.]*

**Rupert.** Of course I shan't be killed. You'll have to get used to my going to war when I'm a man, you know.

**Margaret.** But you are not a man yet. Oh, Rupert, promise me not to go out if there is any fighting.

*[She kneels beside him and puts her arms round him.]*

Promise, Rupert.

**Sir Richard.** You would not have your brother a coward, little lady?

*[Both children jump up.]*

**Margaret.** Who are you, sir?

*Sir Richard.* A friend of your Father. Sir Richard Lovelace is my name. Your servant, Mistress Margaret, and yours, young gentleman

[*He bows to the children*]

*Rupert* (*running up to him*) We have often heard of you

*Margaret.* Oh, sir, you are wounded. Pray come in and sit down

*Sir Richard* I think you

[*The children lead him to a chair. He sits down as if exhausted*]

*Margaret* Have you news of our Father and of the King's army, sir?

*Rupert* (*eagerly*) Has there been a battle?

*Sir Richard* It was only a skirmish between my men and a bunch of the rebels.

But we were tired and they outnumbered us three to one, and in the end they had the best of it. We were forced to ride for our lives. Some of them followed me but I think I have shaken them off.

*Margaret* Oh, I am so glad. Now you can rest here in safety.

*Rupert* Tell us about the battle, sir.

*Sir Richard* We were riding through the wood over there, when

[*There is a tramping of feet outside*]

*Sir Richard* Hark! What is that?

*Captain's Voice* (*outside*) Halt!

*Sir Richard* (*springing up*) My pursuers have followed me here. Where can I hide?

[*All three look round*]

*Rupert* Behind the curtains, quick!

*Sir Richard* It is a poor hiding place but there is no better.

*Margaret* Someone is coming. Oh, hurry!

[*Sir Richard goes behind the curtains. The children arrange them carefully. Just as they have finished the Maid runs in, very frightened*]

*Maid* Miss Margaret! Master Rupert! There are soldiers downstairs!

*Margaret* What do they want?

*Maid* They are looking for Sir Richard, —I can't remember his other name.

*Rupert* How many are they?

*Maid* A captain and four men.

*Rupert* Are they armed?

*Maid* Oh yes, Master Rupert. They have steel helmets, and the Captain has the wickedest looking sword you ever saw.

*Margaret* Go down quickly, Mary, and tell them we are coming.

[*Mary goes out*]

Now, Rupert, we must be very brave. Mother is dead and Father is away. Only you and I are left to save Sir Richard. Remember, his life is in our hands.

[*They go out hand in hand. After a few moments, Cecily's head appears in the doorway*]

*Cecily.* They have gone away at last. Now I can go back to my warm little nest.

[*He goes to the curtain, draws the curtains back a little and climbs on to the cushion*]

[*Yawning and stretching*] Ah! Ah! Ah!

[*She pulls the curtains across*]

*Voice of the Captain* (*at the door*) This way, men!

[*There is a tramping of feet. The Captain enters with his sword drawn. The two soldiers follow him and the children and the Maid bring up the rear*]

*Captain* This is the last room. We will end our search of the house here. Now men, do your duty. There are few hiding places in it so you will have an easy task.

[*He moves round the room tapping the wall and stamping on the floor*]

*Captain* (*to the children*) You are sure that no one has been to the house to-day?

*Children* (*together*) No one, sir.

*Captain* If you are lying to me it will be the worse for you. It would be a pity to hang such pretty children. (*To himself*) I made sure Lovelace would have taken refuge here. He cannot be far off at my rate. I dare not let him slip through my fingers, for it is said that he carries important messages to the King. (*Aloud*) Well, my men, have you finished your search?

*First Soldier* There are only the curtains, sir.

[*The soldiers go towards the curtains*]

*Rupert (in spite of himself)* Oh, don't look there!

*Captain* Aha, little man, now you have let the cat out of the bag. So he's behind there, is he? Very well, we'll soon have him out.

[*Margaret runs to the curtains and stands with her back to them, her arms stretched out across them.*]

*Margaret* No, he's not here, I tell you! He's not here!

*Captain* Stand away, child!

[*He moves Margaret away.*]

Now, men, stand one each side ready to seize him. Are you ready?

*Second Soldier* Yes, Captain.

[*The children clutch each other.*]

*Captain* Now Sir Richard, out you come!

[*He strides to the curtain and flings them open, showing little Cecily just as she is.*]

*Maid* )

*Margaret* ) *Cecily!*

*Rupert* )

[*Cecily sits up and rubs her eyes.*]

*Cecily* You bad wicked children to wake me up again just when I was having the loveliest dream!

[*She looks up and sees the soldiers.*]

Oh! Murguet! Murguet!

[*Margaret kneels beside her and hugs her.*]

*Margaret* There there, darling, don't be frightened. No one shall hurt you.

*Captain* No, indeed. Why I'd as soon think of hurting my own little daughter Bess. What a false alarm!

[*He kneels down beside Margaret and helps to comfort Cecily.*]

*First Soldier* Poor little maid.

*Second Soldier.* It was a shame to wake the pretty den.

[*Cecily has stopped crying. The Captain sits up.*]

*Captain* Well, men, the man we want isn't here, that's certain. That finishes the house. We must continue our search outside before it grows quite dark. We shall need some lights as it is.

*Margaret* Mary shall get you some torches.

*Captain* I thank you, Mistress.

[*The Captain and his men go out with the Maid. Rupert and Margaret wait till they have gone and then fall on their knees one each side of Cecily, who is still sitting on the window seat.*]

*Margaret* Oh, Cecily, how ever can we thank you?

*Rupert* I shall never forget as long as I live that awful moment when the Captain drew the curtains! Well, I shall not tease you about being sleepy again.

*Cecily* What are you talking about? What have I done?

*Sir Richard (appearing between the curtains behind her)* Your sleepiness has saved my life, little Mistress Cecily.

*Cecily (sitting up at him)* Margaret, who is it?

*Margaret* It is Sir Richard Lovelace, dear, one of Father's friends.

*Cecily* What lovely curls!

*Margaret* Oh Cecily, how rich!

*Sir Richard* Nay, he may well admire them. But for her, the man that wears them would soon be pinning away in a dark dungeon. Have you a pair of scissors, Mistress Margaret?

*Margaret* Yes, they are here by my sewing. Rupert, keep watch by the door lest they should return.

[*Rupert goes to the door. Sir Richard sits on the window seat and takes Cecily on his knee. Margaret gives him the scissors. He cuts off a lock of his hair and puts it to Cecily.*]

*Sir Richard* There, Mistress Cecily, keep this in memory of the soldier whose life you saved.

[*There is a noise of shutting and scuffling outside. The children cling to Sir Richard.*]

*Voice of the Colonel* In their hands behind them and let me look at them. Roundheads, as I live! What do you do here in my house? Bring them into this room.

*Rupert.* That is Father's voice.

[*The Colonel comes in followed by his four soldiers. Two soldiers hold the Captain, and two the Captain's men.*]

*Rupert.* Father! You have caught them!  
*Colonel.* Yes, my boy. I found these Roundhead fellows in my house and we very soon had hold of them

[*Margaret runs to the Colonel*]

*Margaret.* Oh, Father, how glad we are to see you!

*Colonel.* And I am glad too, my children. But who is this? Sir Richard! My friend, I rejoice to see you

*Captain.* A plague upon them! He was there after all!

*Colonel.* So it was you they were after, Lovelace

*Sir Richard.* Yes, and they would have had me, too, but for this little lass of yours.

*Colonel.* Why, what did Cecily do?

*Cecily.* I went to sleep

*Colonel* (*laughing*). That is nothing unusual, little one

*Margaret.* You see, Father, Sir Richard hid behind the curtains, and we went down to keep the soldiers from finding him, if we could

*Cecily.* Then I came in and when I found the others had gone, I went to my little warm nest and fell asleep

*Sir Richard.* And I held my breath for fear of waking you

*Captain* (*to himself*). Foolish man that I am! My soft heart has cost us our lives.

*Colonel.* But still I do not understand

*Rupert.* Then the Roundheads came in, and after searching everywhere else they went to the curtains. And when I saw what they were going to do I cried out to them not to open the curtains. Oh, sir, will you

forgive me? My thoughtlessness might have killed you.

*Sir Richard.* I have nothing to forgive. But let us finish the story. The Captain drew back the curtains, and found

*Cecily.* Me, fast asleep

*Rupert.* As usual

*Colonel.* And so my little Cecily saved a brave man's life. This story has a happy ending. But now we must see about some supper. Men, take the prisoners away and lock them up

[*The soldiers prepare to lead the Roundheads away*]

*Cecily.* Where are they going, Father?

*Colonel.* To prison, sweetheart

*Cecily.* Oh, no! You mustn't send my nice Captain to prison. He was so kind when I was frightened. Please let him go, Father. He hasn't done any harm at all

*Colonel.* What do you say, Sir Richard?

*Sir Richard.* Cecily is our heroine for to-day. I think we must take her word as law

*Colonel* (*turning to the Captain*). You are the second man who owes his life to Sleepy Cecily. Release them, my men, and let them leave the house. Good day to you, Captain

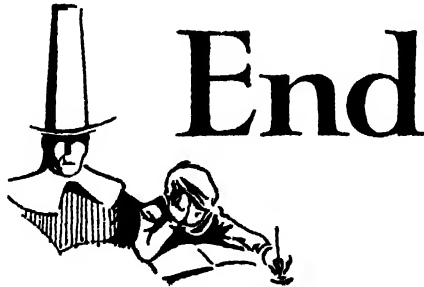
*Captain.* Good day, Colonel.

[*They salute. The captain and his men march out*]

*Colonel.* And now, Sir Richard, you must stay and sup with us and we will drink the health of my little daughter.

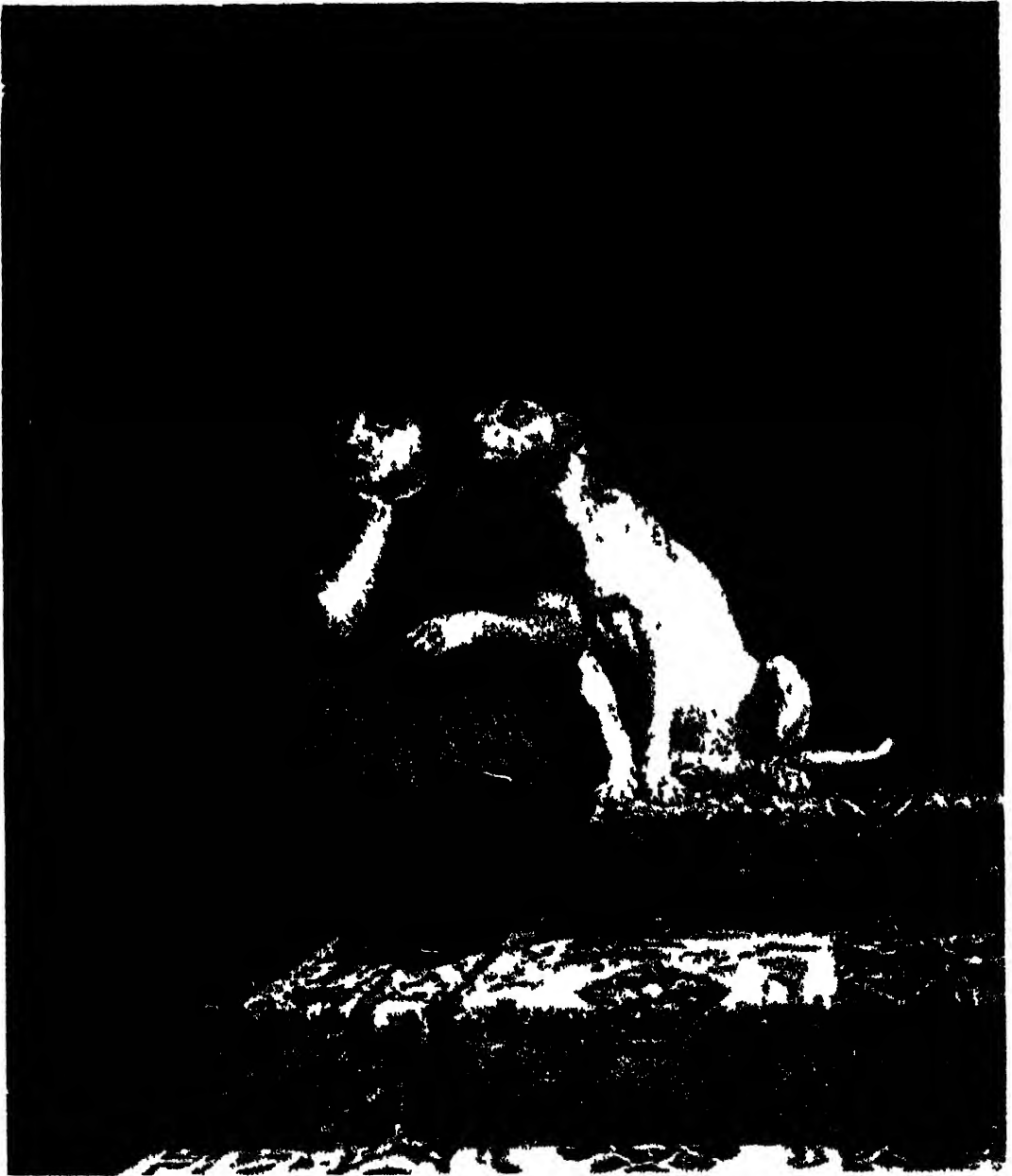
*Cecily* (*climbing into the window seat*). Now I can really go to sleep at last.

*Rupert.* Oh, sleepy Cecily!





**SECOND YEAR'S COURSE  
OF  
POETRY**



*After the painting by Brian Irvine R.A.*

**SYMPATHY**

*(By permission of Messrs T. Agnes & Sons)*

## POEMS FOR THE SECOND YEAR'S COURSE



**T**HE teacher will find it useful to read again the Introduction on "The Teaching of Poetry" in Volume I. When beginning a class lesson on poetry it is well to make some effort to attune the minds of the children to sympathetic consideration and reception of poetic ideas. To appreciate poetry the pupils must be in the mood for it. It is difficult after the eager competition of a drill lesson, for example, to settle down quietly to the study of a poem, and it is advisable to prepare for it by an arresting introduction—a short story to lead up to the subject, or the presentation of a picture to excite curiosity. Sometimes it may be convenient to play on the piano a well-chosen piece of music, and at any rate the teacher can begin by reciting a suitable poem or extract.

The *Notes* which are appended to the poems are intended to help the teacher in presenting the matter to the children and the questions are typical of those which might be asked to help the children fully to appreciate the

language, beauty and music of the poems. It should be remembered that blackboard sketches in my lesson are valuable not only to serve as illustrations of particular points, but to arrest the attention and keep the children eager.

There are certain figures of speech and other grammatical devices frequently met with in poetry, and although it is unnecessary to refer to them specifically in a lesson, it is advisable for the teacher to recognise them, as this will assist in making the explanations clear.

**Rhyming lines.** It is customary to mark the lines with letters of the alphabet in this way:

"The sheep are coming home in flocks,	a
Hark the bells on every fall!	b
Flock by flock and fleece by fleece	a
Wandering wide a little piece	a
Thro' the evening red and still,	b
Stopping where the pathways cease,	a
Cropping with a hurried will	b



Not all poetry is rhymed. Shakespeare's plays, for instance, are written in unrhymed or *blank* verse. Modern poets sometimes write in blank verse, but more frequently in rhymed verse, although their arrangement of rhyming lines varies greatly.

**Repetition.**—Repetition adds force to a word or phrase, "like a blacksmith repeating his blows on an anvil." It gives expression to intense feeling, and often aids in conveying musical sounds such as one hears in the sounds of the wind, the waves, the forest trees and the songs of birds. Frequently the repeated lines at the ends of stanzas form a *refrain*. This refrain is sometimes like a word dance having no sense but much feeling, such as: "Hey nonny nonny"; "Fa la la"; "Derry down day."

**Simile.**—Note the line: "And the coat I wore was thin as my supper the night before." Here there is a comparison made between a *coat* and a *supper*. These are two different things, but they are alike in both being *thin*. A statement of some point of resemblance supposed to exist between two things that differ in other respects is called a *simile*. Take another example: "She plucked me a rose like her wild-rose cheek." This, too, is a figure of speech called a simile. The delicate colour is the point of resemblance supposed to exist between the rose and the cheek.

**Stanza, verse, foot.**—A *stanza* is the name for each group of verses into which a poem is divided. A *verse* of poetry is a line consisting of a certain number of metrical feet. A *foot*, the unit of verse, is the group of syllables made up of one stressed syllable and one or more unstressed syllables. Thus in the first verse of *To Daffodils* there are four feet, each foot having one stressed syllable preceded by an unstressed syllable: Fair Dáf | fodils, | we wéep | to sée |

**Onomatopoeia.**—Many poets take particular delight in using words in which the

*sound* is an echo to the *sense* which the words are meant to convey. This Figure of Speech is called *onomatopoeia*. (On-o-mat-o-pē'-ya—name-making.) Poetry is full of this music of words. We readily recognise the imitative intent in such words and phrases as: croaking frogs; cawing rooks; clucking hens; neighing horses; mewing cats; yelping dogs; grunting pigs; quacking ducks; lowing oxen; bleating sheep; cuckoo; peewit; twitter. Words which are the imitations of sounds are called *onomatopoeic* words.

**Alliteration** is the repetition of the same letter or syllable, usually at the beginning of two or more words near together:

"Of still sea and sky  
Stands single a thistle."

By alliteration the poet smooths the edges of words and makes soft musical sounds.

**Music.**—Let the children say the following words in a loud whisper and suggest that they should listen to the music in them:

Ripple; gurgle; bubble; swish; murmur; lily; daffodil; bluebell; marigold; cuckoo; thristle; nightingale; starling; twitter; warble; twinkle, whistle; chirrup.

Read softly and lightly the following lines inviting the children to listen quietly:

"Faintly as tolls the evening chime,  
Our voices keep tune and our oars keep time.  
Soon as the woods on shore look dim,  
We'll sing at St. Ann's our parting hymn.  
Row, brothers, row, the stream runs fast,  
The Rapids are near, and the daylight's past."

Tell the children that a man who can put words together musically is called a poet. Sometimes a poet will try to put into words the song of the birds, or the brook, or the

wind Here is a tiny poem which tries to say in words the song that the wood pigeon sings to his mate

"Coo pe coo, Coo pe coo,  
Me and my poor two,  
Two sticks across, and a little bit of moss,  
And it will do do do "

**Stories.**—As already noted, it will frequently be found useful to introduce a poetry lesson by a short story. The illustration at the head of this introduction suggests the story of Orpheus which might be told briefly to the pupils

A very old story is told of a famous man named Orpheus to whom the great god Apollo gave a golden harp. 'Every day he made soft music with his golden harp, and sang beautiful songs such as no one had ever heard before. And whenever Orpheus sang everything came to listen to him, the trees bowed down their heads to hear, even the clouds sailed along more gently and brightly in the sky when he sang, and the stream which ran close to his feet made a softer noise to show how glad his music made it.' This man is sometimes called the "Father of Poetry," because the songs that he sang to the music of his harp were the best songs that had ever been heard.

### SONGS



#### I SALLY IN OUR ALLEY

Of all the girls that are so smart  
There's none like pretty Sally,  
She is the darling of my heart,  
And she lives in our alley  
There is no lady in the land  
Is half so sweet as Sally,  
She is the darling of my heart,  
And she lives in our alley

Of all the days that's in the week  
I dearly love but one day—  
And that's the day that comes betwixt  
A Saturday and Monday,  
For then I'm drest all in my best  
To walk abroad with Sally,  
She is the darling of my heart,  
And she lives in our alley

When Christmas comes about again  
 O then I shall have money;  
 I'll hoard it up, and box it all,  
 I'll give it to my honey;  
 I would it were ten thousand pounds,  
 I'd give it all to Sally;  
 She is the darling of my heart,  
 And she lives in our alley. . . .

*Henry Carey.*

*Note.*—Many poems have been set to music because they are truly songs. "Sally in Our Alley," a simple love lyric, is full of music. The theme itself is musical, and music is also made by the smooth flow of the lines. Many of the words, such as "darling," "heart," "snart," have open vowels suitable for singing; note, too, the liquid sound of the *l* in "Sally" and "alley."

"There is no lady in the land  
 Is half so sweet as Sally."

The children should repeat such words and lines as the above in a soft monotone, dwelling on them, but not singing them. Notice that the last lines of every stanza are the same, and thus form a kind of refrain, which is characteristic of songs. "One day" and "Monday" are unusual rhymes, and the grammar is faulty in—"Of all the days that's in the week."

Henry Carey is singing of a young man who had little money or education, whose sincere devotion to his beloved Sally has immortalised him. Carey, who died in 1743, was also in his day a musician of note.

Which lines are repeated in every stanza? Where did Sally live? What is meant by "alley"? Which day did Sally's sweetheart love best? What did he do on that day? What was he going to do at Christmas

time? Which lines do you like best? Do you like honey? Why is Sally called "my honey"? What is another word for "bewixt"? What is another word for "hoard"?

## 2. APRIL SHOWERS

The leaves are fresh after the rain,  
 The air is cool and clear,  
 The sun is shining warm again,  
 The sparrows hopping in the lane  
 Are brisk and full of cheer.

And that is why we dance and play,  
 And that is why we sing,  
 Calling out in voices gay,  
 We will not go to school to day  
 Nor learn anything!

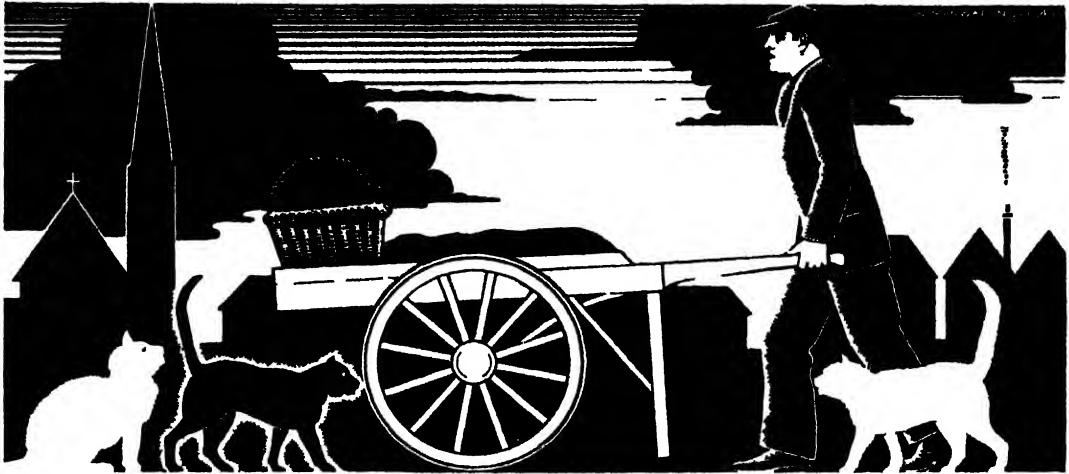
It is a happy thing, I say,  
 To be alive on such a day.

*James Stephens.*

*Note.*—This is a delightful little song with the freshness and gaiety of spring in it. The short lines intensify the lively, frisking rhythm, and the sentiments of the children in the poem are in accordance with it. The word "brisk" is an example of onomatopoeia. Note how the sound of the word conveys the sense. Note, too, in this poem the alliterative "cool and clear," and the repeated words, "And that is why." Mr. James Stephens is a well-known writer of prose and poetry.

How are the sparrows described? Why are the leaves fresh? What is the sun doing? Play at hopping like a sparrow. How do the children feel? Why did they say that they would not go to school? Describe an April shower in which you have been caught.

### RHYMES



Nursery rhymes are the folk songs of poetry. Many of them are very old. Children of long ago singing them at their games taught the rhymes to smaller brothers and sisters. Mothers sang them to their babies. They are the simple and sometimes crude expression of spontaneous feeling—laughter or sorrow, achievement or mishap—and like many primitive songs they often centre round birds and animals. Civilisation tends to separate man from nature. In very early days people and animals lived more on a level. It is common to find in the rhymes conversation between man and creature: "Pussy cat, pussy cat, where have you been?"

There is no complexity of rhythm or great length of line in a simple rhyme. The words are often onomatopoeic, as in "ting dong bell" and "hickory dickory dock," and there are usually examples of repetition.

#### 3 CAT'S MEAT

Ho, all you cats in all the street,  
Look out, it is the hour of meat!

The little barrow is crawling along,  
And the meat-boy growling his fleshy song.

Hurry Ginger! Hurry White!  
Don't delay to court or fight!

Wandering labby, vagrant black  
Yambic from adventure back!

Slip across the slurring street  
Meat! Meat! Meat! Meat!

Lift your tail and dip your feet  
Find your jenny—Meat! Meat!

Where's your mistress? I can't purr  
Pennies emanate from her!

Be to her, for she is late,  
Perfectly affectionate!

(You, domestic Pinkie Nose,  
Keep inside and warm your toes.)

I hurry, flurry in the street  
Meat! Meat! Meat! Meat!

*Harold Monroe*

*Note*—This poem has a strong appeal for children. The rhythm of the lines suggests the stalking cats. There are many onomatopoeic words. Let the children repeat "crawling," "growling," "yambic," "flurry,"

"purr." The first and second stanzas are slow-moving and should be spoken clearly, but the poem must be speeded up as its excitement grows. Notice the alliteration in "slip across the shining street," and the repetition of the word "meat," which gives the impression of excitement increasing to frenzy. "Fate" and "affectionate" are awkward rhymes and must not be stressed. There is humour in the gently contemptuous reference to "Pinkie-Nose." Notice the author's knowledge of cats—"Lift your tail and dip your feet." Many of the words in the poem are striking and original. The meat-boy sings a "fleshy" song, the cats "yamble," pennies "cmanate." They serve to portray a bold and realistic picture of the scene, quickly imagined and enjoyed by a child.

What does the meat-boy sing? Which words describe him walking down the street? What cats come upon the scene? What have they been doing? What must they do now? How can they persuade their mistresses to buy them some meat? Which pussy does not trouble about the meat-boy? What does "vagrant" mean? How do the cats look when they approach the barrow? Which stanza do you like best? Play at being the meat-boy. Make the sound of a cat purring.

#### 4. FAN THE FILLY

*Bumpety, bumpety, bump.*

The horses run down the green hill.

There's Fan the wild filly again at her tricks!

She rears at the fence and she knocks down the sticks

To get at the hay at the base of the ricks.

*Bumpety, bumpety, bump.*

*Bumpety, bumpety, bump.*

The horses run down the green hill.

They're all of them wanting a share of the hay,

The Roan and the Dapple, the Black and the Bay,

They follow the filly and gallop away.

*Bumpety, bumpety, bump.*

*Bumpety, bumpety, bump.*

The horses run up the green hill.

For old Farmer Brown has come out with his man

To halter the mischievous filly called Fan,  
And sell her for gold at the Fair if he can.

*Bumpety, bumpety, bump.*

*Bumpety, bumpety, bump*

The horses run up the green hill.

But where there were five there are now only four,

For Fan the wild filly will gallop no more,  
She stands in the shafts at a gentleman's door.

*Bumpety, bumpety, bump.*

*Wilfred Thorley.*

*Note.*—This is not an old rhyme, but it resembles one. It has a refrain which can be said by the whole class while one boy or girl recites the verses. Stress the consonants in the refrain so as to bring out the resemblance between the words and their meanings. The poem has a galloping rhythm in it, which runs along like Fan the wild filly herself. A filly is a young female horse. Notice that the beginnings of the stanzas resemble one another, and should be recited with stressed accents to carry on the impression of "*Bumpety, bumpety, bump.*" This is the sound of the hoofs thudding down the green hill away from angry Farmer Brown. There are many instances of alliteration which helps the galloping of the lines—

"the Black and the Bay,

They follow the filly and gallop away."

Of what does the rhythm of this poem remind you? Which lines are almost alike in every stanza? What is a filly? What does Fan do? What does Farmer Brown

do? Why will Fan gallop no more? Find words in the poem that describe the filly. What is a "Fair"? What is "hay"? What is a "rick"? Draw a picture of the horses. Play at being Fan. (Two children play—one is Fan and the other is Limer Brown. When in the playground let all the children run—' *bumpety, bumpety, bump* ')

### 5 THE MUFFIN MAN

When the nursery corners are sleepy dim,  
And it isn't quite time for tea,  
And the shadows and things are very grim,  
And there's nobody there but me,  
I wait in the window to hear his feet  
Clackety, clackety down the street  
And I love the sound of his ding-dong bell  
And his "Muffins O Muffins O Muffins to sell."

He always comes in the wind or wet  
On the fog or the bitter cold  
He's my greatest friend though we haven't met  
And he's ever so big and old  
For the dark is a little bit lonely and  
When you've no one else and you wish you had  
And I think he knew for he ring his bell  
And shouts to me, "Muffins O Muffins to sell."

*Madeleine Nightingale*



*Note*—A muffin man's bell in the road sounds KIANG king king DING-dong dong, MUF-fins o! MUF-fins o! MUF-fins to SELL! Notice that the rhythm of this poem is the swinging of the bell. It is brought out again in "clackety, clackety down the

street." \*This poem is made up of contrasts. The first half of each stanza is wistful and quiet and should be sharply contrasted with the ringing of the bell in the second half. Let the pupil say the first four lines whisperingly and fearfully, gradually raising the voice to the last line, in which all the class join stressing the rhythm to make the line sound like a bell ringing.

What is a nursery? What is the nursery like before tea time? Which words describe the sound of the muffin man's footsteps? What does the muffin man call? What is a muffin? What kinds of weather has the muffin man to face? Why did the little girl like to hear him ringing his bell? Why does she call him her greatest friend? What line describes the muffin man? Play at being a muffin man. Play at being the little girl. Which boy's name rhymes with dim? Which girl's name rhymes with bell?

### 6 FISH AND APRIL FISH

On April Day on April Day  
There came to me a letter  
A letter and a fish  
And somebody I don't know who  
Wrote in the letter what to do  
And said I I would wish a wish  
(And never lose my little fish)  
Some evening when the moon was blue  
It would come true

On April Day on April Day,  
All by myself I hid away  
My letter and my fish  
I was so secret, no one knew  
The funny things I had to do  
Not what I wished for nor my wish  
I haven't lost my little fish  
So if to night the moon is blue  
It will come true

*L. Randall*

*Note*—This poem has a pretty rhythm and rhyme scheme. It is a child's song and the singing effect is accentuated by the

short lines. It should be recited mysteriously and with suppressed excitement. April Day is April Fools' Day, April 1st. There is humour in this poem. The author is laughing at the child in a gentle way. The teacher will probably find several pupils who do not discover the humour in the last two lines.

What present was sent to the child? What was she told to do? Which lines say what she did on April Day? When would the wish come true? Why is the writer of the poem laughing at the child? What have you ever done on April Day? Why must you keep your wishes secret?

### OF FAIRIES



Many forms have issued from Fairyland—brownies, elves, goblins, fays--and they range from tiny creatures in human shape that haunt the flowers, to beings of the ordinary size of men and women. Some are described as of extraordinary beauty, modern fairies in particular being generally represented as tiny, dainty creatures. Writers from Shakespeare downwards have entertained their fellow-men with songs and stories of intrigues among fairies themselves, and of the effects of their interference in human affairs. The christening of the Sleeping Beauty was attended by many good fairies, who gifted her with excellences physical and moral. Their good work was almost undone by the jealous bad fairy, who sought to call down untimely death upon the maiden's fair head, a sentence

commuted to sleep for a hundred years. (See Vol. VI., p. 80.) Cinderella's fairy god-mother assisted the ill-used and neglected step-daughter, so that she eventually became the bride of a prince. Rumpelstiltskin industriously spun flax into gold out of pity for a lady in distress, but was shrewd enough to drive a bargain with her for his pains. An old tract says of Puck or Robin Goodfellow—

“Thou hast the power to change thy shape  
To horse, to hog, to dog, to ape.”

Ariel was the dainty servant of a very clever man. Santa Claus himself is a kind of Christmas fairy, confining his good deeds to children. Fairy stories in prose and poetry enrich the literature of many peoples, and paintings of these fascinating beings

take their places among the world's works of art. "This sportive, beneficent, invisible population of the air and earth" has been long established in the creed of childhood. Of the fairy poems in this book, the first two are written by Miss Rose Fyleman, a modern poetess with a delicate appreciation of the "little people."

7. A FAIRY WENT A-MARKETING

A fairy went a marketing -  
She bought a little fish,  
She put it in a crystal bowl  
Upon a golden dish.  
An hour she sat in wonderment  
And watched its silver gleam,  
And then she gently took it up  
And slipped it in a stream

A fairy went a-marketing  
She bought a coloured bird;  
It's in the sweetest whistle song  
That ever she had heard  
She sat beside its painted cage  
And listened half the day,  
And then she opened wide the door  
And let it fly away

A fairy went a-marketing  
She bought a winter gown  
All stitched about with gossamer  
And lined with thistle-down.  
She wore it all the afternoon  
With prancing and delight,  
Then gave it to a little frog  
To keep him warm at night

A fairy went a-marketing  
She bought a gentle mouse  
To take her tiny messages,  
To keep her tiny house.  
All day she kept its busy  
feet  
Pit patting to and fro  
And then she kissed its  
silken ears,  
Thanked it, and let it go

*Rose Fyleman.*



*Note.*—This pretty poem teaches children to be kind to little creatures. The fish, the bird, the frog and the mouse gave the fairy joy, and in return she showed them kindness. The tender words illustrate the gentleness of the fairy —

"She gently took it up  
And slipped it in a stream . . ."  
"And then she kissed its silken ears."

Draw the pupils' attention to the colour in the pictures of the fish and bird

"She put it in a crystal bowl  
Upon a golden dish . . .  
And watched its silver gleam

"She bought a coloured bird . . .  
She sat beside its painted cage

The third stanza emphasises the fragile, dainty figure of the fairy, adorned with gossamer and thistle-down. Only the most delicate of creatures could array itself in cloth so fine as to be "stitched about" with the filmy thread of the spider. The fairy delighted in her new gown, but gave it away because she could not bear 'to see a frog cold. The last stanza is a charming conception of a gentle mouse with silken ears and 'busy feet pit patting to and fro." The repetition of 'tiny' intensifies the smallness of the fairy. Let the pupils softly repeat "sweetest, shrillest song," to imitate the music of a bird.

How do you know that the fairy was very kind? What did she buy at the market? Which words in the poem suggest colour? Which line tells you that the fairy was very small? What is gossamer? How do you know that the fairy liked her new gown? Why did she buy a mouse? Draw a picture of the mouse running errands for the fairy. Which words describe the bird's song? Which word in the fourth stanza sounds exactly what it means? What do we learn from the fairy? (Several children can play



at marketing. One can be the fairy and others can pretend to sell the things the fairy bought.)

#### 8. FAIRIES BY THE SEA

Crowds of them and crowds of them  
All among the tide,  
On big waves and little waves,  
Having such a ride!  
Creeping up the crinkly sand,  
Dancing on the rocks,  
Crowds of them and crowds of them  
In creamy curly frocks.

Rows of them and rows of them  
Fifty thousand score,  
Glittering and twinkling  
All along the shore;  
Sands to dig I knew there were,  
Shrimps to catch for tea;  
No one told me I should find  
*Fairies* by the sea.

*Rose Fyleman.*



*Note.* This poem has a light, dancing rhythm, suggestive of the splash of wave on pebble. The tiny fingers of foam that play upon the sand, the froth around rocks, and the tumbling crests of waves are not "white horses" but fairies "in creamy, curly frocks." This poem lends itself admirably to recita-

tion. "Crowds of them" should be spoken softly at first and more emphatically afterwards. The repetition intensifies the effect. Let the pupils repeat the pretty line, "Creeping up the crinkly sand," so as to catch its music. Notice also the alliteration in the last line of the first stanza—"creamy curly frocks." The little child in the poem finds the seaside even lovelier than she expected, for not only were there sands and shrimps but also twinkling fairies—"Fifty thousand score."

Where are fairies found by the sea? Describe the fairies. How many are there? What do children do at the seaside? Write all the words beginning with *cr*. Tell of anything that you know is crinkly. Tell of anything that glitters. Tell of anything that twinkles. (There are illustrations of a shrimp and a shrimp catcher on page 215.)

#### 9. THE LIGHT-HEARTED FAIRY

Oh, who is so merry, so merry, heigh-ho!  
As the light-hearted fairy? heigh-ho!  
Heigh-ho!  
He dances and sings  
To the sound of his wings,  
With a hey, and a heigh, and a ho!

Oh, who is so merry, so merry, heigh-ho!  
As the light-hearted fairy? heigh-ho!  
Heigh-ho!  
His nectar he sips  
From the primrose's lips,  
With a hey, and a heigh, and a ho!

Oh, who is so merry, so merry, heigh-ho!  
As the light-footed fairy? heigh-ho!  
Heigh-ho!  
The night is his noon,  
And his sun is the moon,  
With a hey, and a heigh, and a ho!

*Anon.*

*Note.*—This is a merry poem with a dancing rhythm. The gaiety is enhanced by

the short lines and alliterative refrains, suitable for singing. This fairy takes his pleasures at night, for—

"The night is his noon,  
And his sun is the moon."

Notice the example of personification, a figure of rhetoric which ascribes life to inanimate things. The primrose becomes a maiden with honeyed lips.

What makes this poem sound gay? Write out the refrain of the poem. How do you know that the fairy danced at night? What does he sip? What is the taste of nectar? What music does he hear? Which words suggest gaiety in the poem? Repeat daintily the words "airy," "fairy," "merry." (There is an illustration of the primrose on page 215.)

#### 10. VERY NEARLY!

I never *quite* saw fairy-folk  
A-dancing in the glade,  
Where, just beyond the hollow oak,  
Then broad green rings are laid,  
But, while behind that oak I hid,  
*One day I very nearly did!*

I never *quite* saw mermaids rise  
Above the twilight sea,  
When sands, left wet 'neath sunset  
skies,  
Are blushing rosily:  
But—all alone, those rocks amid—  
*One day I very nearly did!*

I never *quite* saw Goblin Grim,  
Who haunts our lumber room  
And pops his head above the rim  
Of that oak chest's deep gloom.  
But once—when Mother raised the  
lid—  
*I very, very nearly did!*

*Queenie Scott-Hopper.*

*Note.*—There is a distinct and separate picture for the imagination in each stanza of this poem. The first is of fairies in a

woodland glade; the second of mermaids, twilight seas and beautiful sunsets; the third of Goblins that haunt the dark rooms of childish memories. The first stanza, describing fairies in the glade, should be said in a light, dancing tone of voice.

"The fairies are exquisite dancers," says Sir James Barrie. "They hold their great balls in the open air, in what is called a fairy ring. For weeks afterwards you can see the ring on the grass. It is not there when they begin but they make it by waltzing round and round. Sometimes you will find mushrooms inside the ring, and these are fairy chairs that the servants have forgotten to clear away. The chairs and the rings are the only tell-tale marks these little people leave behind them, and they would remove even these were they not so fond of dancing that they toe it till the very moment of the opening of the gates."

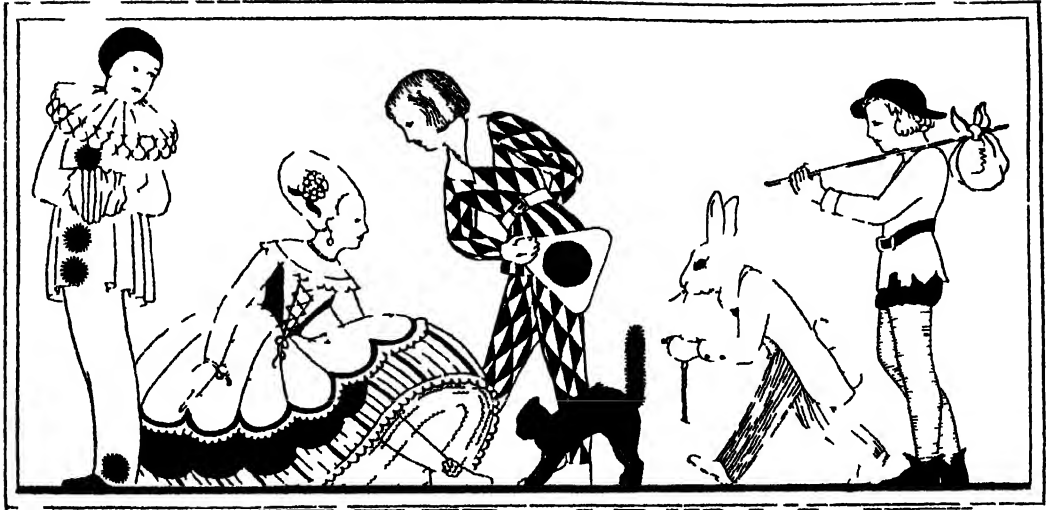
The second stanza should be spoken more slowly than the first, because mermaids are not so sprightly as fairies.

"Sands, left wet, 'neath sunset skies," is a line to linger over. Note the alliterative *s*.

Goblin Grim and the "deep gloom" of the last stanza suggest a low, mysterious rendering. This Goblin Grim is Puck or Robin Goodfellow appearing again, full of wiles to frighten the simple. He is waiting to pop up his head with a frightful grimace out of the oak chest in the ghostly lumber room, and terrify a small child. The child lives in the world of imagination and its goblins are more real than his own brothers and sisters.

Where do fairies dance? What is a glade? What is a fairy ring? Name six words that rhyme with glade. How would you know a mermaid if you really saw one? What effect has the sunset on the sands? Where does Goblin Grim live? What does he do? What were the things that the little child very nearly saw? (Some children can play at dancing like the fairies in a ring while others peep on them from behind a chair which serves as an oak.)

## OF PEOPLE



## II SOOCEP

Black as a chimney is his face,  
And ivory white his teeth,  
And in his brass bound cart he rides  
The chestnut blooms beneath

Soocep Soocep! he cries and brightly peers  
This way and that to see  
With his two light blue shining eyes  
What custom there may be

And once inside the house he'll squat  
And drive his rods on high  
Till twirls his sudden sooty brush  
Against the morning sky

Then 'mid his bulging bags of soot,  
With half the world asleep  
His small cart wheels lum off again,  
Still hoarsely bawling,  
'Soocep!'

Walter de la Mare



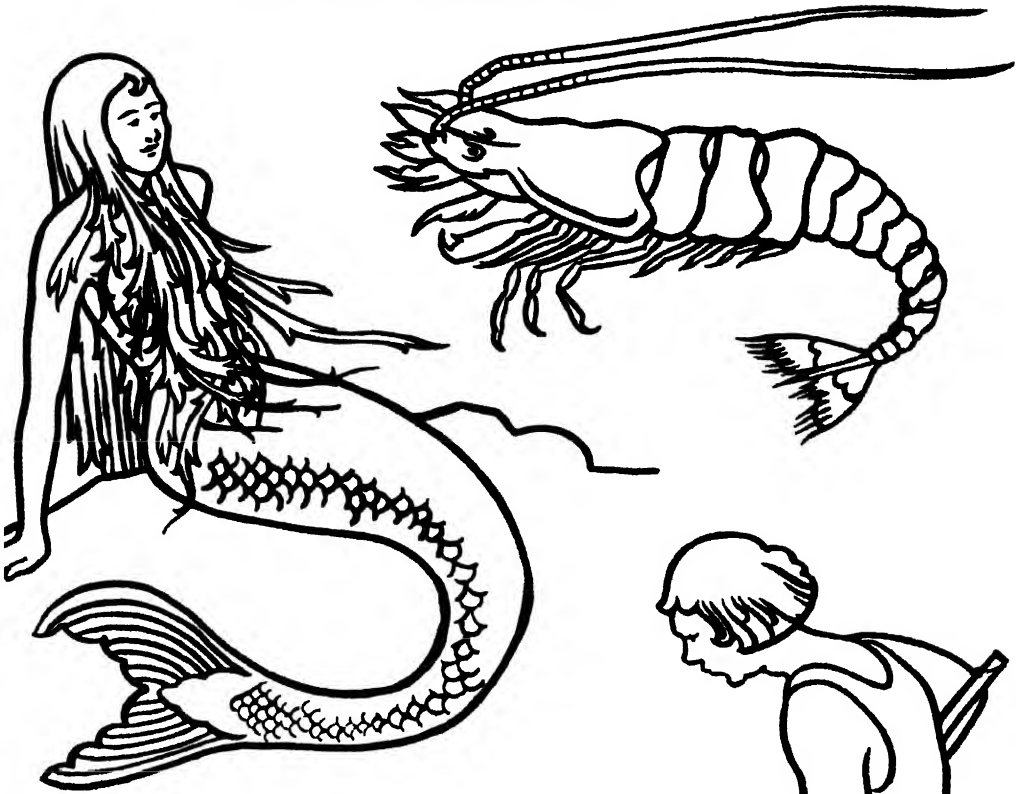
*Note* Mr de la Mare's poetry is full of clever word painting, with plenty of colour. His 'Soocep' has a black face, white teeth and light blue shining eyes. He rides in a "brass bound cart" and brightly peers this way and that. In the third stanza are some onomatopoeic words which express their meanings by their sounds.

"He'll squat,  
And drive his rods on high  
Till twirls his sudden sooty brush

Let the pupils repeat 'sudden sooty brush' and 'bulging bags' and try to find out for themselves that the alliteration adds boldness to the picture. Note the simile used to describe the 'Soocep's' face. Note, too, the use of the word 'sudden.' Probably some children will have watched a chimney from the outside, waiting for the sudden appearance of the sweep's broom.

Which lines describe the "Soocep"? At what season of the year do chestnut trees bloom? Which lines tell us that the 'Soocep' is at work very early in the day? What

# SKETCHES FOR THE BLACKBOARD



MAID (VERY NEARLY)  
ROSE (THE LIGHT-HAIRED FAIRY)



SHRIMP (FAIRIES BY THE SEA)  
SHRIMPING (FAIRIES BY THE SEA)

colours would you want to paint a picture of him in his cart? What words describe his brush and bags of soot? Which line describes his voice? Where have you seen the "Soocep"? What are *bulging* bags?

## 12. TIRED TIM

Poor tired Tim! It's sad for him.  
He lags the long bright morning through,  
Ever so tired of nothing to do,  
He moons and mopes the livelong day.  
Nothing to think about, nothing to say;  
Up to bed with his candle to creep,  
Too tired to yawn, too tired to sleep:  
Poor tired Tim! It's sad for him.

*Walter de la Mare*

*Note.*—In this short poem the rhythm gives the impression of weariness. There are no short lines to break the monotony of the long ones. The poem should be recited slowly and some of the words drawnl. Tired Tim "lags" and "moons" and "mopes" and "creeps." The poet is mildly sarcastic when he pretends to be sorry for Tim, for he is really laughing at him. The repetition of "nothing" emphasises the emptiness of Tim's existence.

Why is Tim so tired? What does he do all day? What does he do at night? What is he too tired to do? How does this poem make you feel? What causes this feeling? Write down the sleepiest line of all.

## 13. DANNY MURPHY

He was as old as old could be,  
His little eye could scarcely see,  
His mouth was sunken in between  
His nose and chin, and he was lean  
And twisted up and withered quite,  
So that he couldn't walk aright.

His pipe was always going out,  
And then he'd have to search about  
In all his pockets, and he'd now

—O, deary me! and, musha now!—  
And then he'd light his pipe, and then  
He'd let it go clean out again.

He couldn't dance or jump or run,  
Or ever have a bit of fun  
Like me and Susan, when we shout  
And jump and throw ourselves about:  
—But when he laughed, then you could  
see

He was as young as young could be!

*James Stephens.*

*Note.*—"Danny Murphy" is the portrait of a gentle old man almost blind. There is suggested comparison with a decayed tree in the line "Twisted up and withered quite."

Danny is Irish by name so his exclamations are Irish, and because he is so old his words should be "mowed" —mouthed or mumbled—quaveringly. Notice that the poet describes his appearance first, then his most noticeable habit, and lastly the rare, vital part of him which peeps out occasionally like the sun from behind a cloud. Danny's laugh is as natural and infectious as a child's. Mr. James Stephens has painted an appealing figure in these three short stanzas.

How do we know that Danny was very old? What was his chief trouble? What did he say? Why could he never "have a bit of fun"? Describe Danny's laugh. Why do we love this old man? What other words will rhyme with now? (This poem would serve as a useful example of a simple rhyme scheme—*a, a; b, b, c, c*)

## 14. PEDLAR JIM

A dusty road is mine to tread,  
From grey of dawn to sunset red,  
And slow my pace because, alack!  
I've all my wealth upon my back

'Tis honest toil for homely fare,  
A penny here, a sixpence there,  
Or maybe, on my lucky days,  
A seat beside the goodwife's blaze.

With fairy tales and legends gay  
 I cheer the lasses when I may,  
 And oft the little children  
 cry,  
 "Be sure you call as you pass  
 by."

*Florence Hoare.*



*Note.*—The poem of "Pedlar Jim" is slow-moving because Jim, like a snail, goes heavily laden. There are no short lines to hasten the rhythm or relieve the monotony of the pedlar's daily plodding from village to village. A pedlar is a travelling vendor of small wares usually carried in a pack. The words in this poem are simple and fitting for an honest, plain man. Notice the expressions characteristic of country people — "lasses," "goodwife's blaze,"

"homely fare." We have here a humble, contented character, satisfied to gain a little here and there for his living, and welcomed by the women and children for his friendly gossip and stories. Poets reveal to us many of the hiding-places of beauty, for they perceive it in insignificant persons and objects that we ourselves unseeing should have passed by.

Why does the pedlar walk slowly? Where does he like to sit? Why do the girls and boys like him to call? What might he carry in his pack? What does he charge for his wares? Which lines tell of his weary journeys? What kind of man do you think the pedlar is? When does he begin his travels every day? When does he end his travels every day? What is another name for "lasses"? What is another word for "blaze"?

## FLOWERS AND BIRDS



Many sweet songs have been sung about Nature, and every poet loves and studies her; for a poet is one who:

"Wantons with the February winds,  
 And toys with March's forward daffodils,  
 He is an April fool each cuckoo-call  
 Can set a-ga-ging, and he falls in love  
 With every lamb that frisks its pretty  
 tail."

As an introduction to one of the poetry lessons in this section it might be helpful to tell in a few words the story of Narcissus. The Greeks believed that some of the flowers and trees were once human beings. The sweet-scented narcissus is said to have been a beautiful youth, whom the gods changed into this delicate flower. Narcissus was loved by a nymph called Echo, for whom he did not care. Because of his indifference, Echo grieved and died, and the gods deter-

mined to punish Narcissus by causing him to fall in love with his own reflection. When Narcissus caught sight of his face mirrored in a clear pool, he thought it was the face of a lovely maiden, whom he besought to leave her watery home and dwell with him. In every sheet of water he saw, as he thought, the same fair lady, and his fruitless love for her made him pine away. At length one evening, when he was leaning over the rocks by the riverside and pleading in a faint voice, the gods took pity on him. He vanished, and in his stead was found growing a clump of white flowers with rushlike leaves. Ever since then, this flower has been called a narcissus, in memory of the handsome youth.

### 15. POPPIES

The poppies in the garden, they all wear  
frocks of silk,  
Some are purple, some are pink, and others  
white as milk,  
Light, light for dancing in—for dancing when  
the breeze  
Plays a little two-step for the blossoms and  
the bees:  
Fine, fine for dancing—all frilly at the  
hem.  
Oh! when I watch the poppies dance I long  
to dance like them.

The poppies in the garden have let their silk  
frocks fall  
All about the border paths; but where are  
they at all?  
Here a frill, and there a flounce—a rag of  
silky red,  
But not a poppy-girl is left; I think they've  
gone to bed;  
Gone to bed and gone  
to sleep and weary  
they must be,  
For each has left her  
box of dreams up on  
the stem for me.

*frida Wolfe.*



*Note.*—Stories of flowers have been told both in prose and verse. Two in this section were written by Mrs. Frida Wolfe, and children will enjoy them both. The first is about poppies in a garden. The poppies in the poem are not flowers but sprightly maidens dancing a two-step with the bees to the light music of the wind. They are dressed in pretty frocks—

“All frilly at the hem . . .  
Here a frill and there a flounce.”

Some flaunt purple, some pink, and others wear dresses “white as milk.” (They are Shirley poppies, not the ordinary red variety.) When they are tired of dancing, the poppy-maidens shed their frocks and go off to bed, leaving “boxes of dreams” behind. The rhythm of the poem dances like the music of the breeze, and the repetition—

“Light, light for dancing in,”  
“Fine, fine for dancing”

intensifies the effect. Notice the repetition again in the second stanza to accentuate the departure of the poppy-girls—

“Gone to bed;  
Gone to bed and gone to sleep—.”

From the seeds of the “boxes of dreams” a chemist can distil a juice called opium which induces sleep and dreams. This poem is specially suited for recitation in early summer when poppies are easily obtained.

What are the poppies in the poem supposed to be? What colours would you want from your paint box to paint them? Which lines describe the poppy frocks? What is the breeze doing? What kind of music do the lines of poetry make? What are the poppies doing? What happens when they are tired? What is a “box of dreams”? Why is it called by this name?

## 16. THE BEE AND THE FLOWER

The bee buzz'd up in the heat,  
 "I am faint for your honey, my sweet."  
 The flower said, "Take it, my dear,  
 For now is the spring of the year.  
     So come, come!"  
     "Hum!"

And the bee buzz'd down from the heat.

And the bee buzz'd up in the cold  
 When the flower was wither'd and old,  
 "Have you still any honey, my dear?"  
 She said, "It's the fall of the year,  
     But come, come!"  
     "Hum!"

And the bee buzz'd off in the cold

*Lord Tennyson.*

*Note* - Lord Tennyson, a great lover of Nature, has many exquisite word pictures of flowers and the countryside in his poems. See the section of Tennyson's poems beginning on page 236. The "Bee and the flower" is a tiny song full of the humming of the bee. Notice the onomatopoeic words—

"So come, come!"  
 "Hum!"

And the bee buzz'd down from the heat"

Let the pupils softly practise "Hum," dwelling on the last letter to imitate the buzzing of the bee. The fall of the year is autumn. The introduction of conversations between the bee and the flower gives interest to the poem.

Which lines in this poem sound like the humming of bees? What does the bee say to the flower in the first stanza? What does she answer? What was the flower like when the weather turned cold? What did the bee say in the second stanza? What did the flower answer? Why did the bee buzz off in the cold at the end of the poem? When is the fall of the year? Where does the bee live during the winter?

## 17. FOUR AND EIGHT

The Foxglove by the cottage door  
 Looks down on Joe, and Joe is Four.

The Foxglove by the garden gate  
 Looks down on Joan, and Joan is Eight.

"I'm glad we're small," said Joan, "I love  
 To see inside the fox's glove,  
 Where taller people cannot see,  
 And all is ready for the bee,  
 The door is wide, the feast is spread,  
 The walls are dotted rose-red."  
 "And only little people know  
 How nice it looks in there," said Joe.  
 Said Joan, "The upper rooms are locked  
 A bee went buzzing up - he knocked  
 But no one let him in - so then  
 He tumbled gaily down again."

"Oh, dear!" sighed Joe, "if only we  
 Could grow as little as that bee,  
 We too might room by room explore  
 The Foxglove by the cottage door."

The Foxglove by the garden gate  
 Looked down and smiled on Four and  
 Eight.

*ffrida Wolfe.*



*Note* - This is another pretty flower study by Mrs. ffrida Wolfe, the theme in this poem being foxgloves. Joe is four years old and



stands nearly as high as the foxglove by the cottage door. Joan who is eight cannot see over the foxglove by the garden gate. To the children, the foxglove spires are mansions containing many chambers. In the lower storeys every room has been made ready for a visiting bee:

"The door is wide, the feast is spread,  
The walls are dotted rosy red"

The upper rooms, however, are locked -

"A bee went buzzing up he knocked,  
But no one let him in, so then  
He bumbled gaily down again."

Foxgloves are plants with tall stems having many flowers on each stem. Each flower is similar in shape to one finger of a glove, and is usually spotted with red. The poem can be recited naturally and effectively by three children taking the parts of narrator, Joan and Joe. This is another poem to take in early summer when foxgloves can be readily obtained.

Describe a foxglove. Why were Joan and Joe glad that they were small? What did they think the foxglove flowers were? Describe what they saw in the flowers. Why did the bee "bumble gaily down"? What did Joe wish? Which words rhyme with "glove," "bee," "locked"? Reference might be made to the incident in *Alice in Wonderland* where Alice became very small

#### 18. THE THROSTLE

"Summer is coming, summer is coming.  
I know it, I know it, I know it.  
Light again, leaf again, life again, love  
again."  
Yes, my wild little Poet.

Sing the new year in under the blue.  
Last year you sang it as gladly.  
"New, new, new, new!" Is it then so new  
That you should carol so madly?

"Love again, song again, nest again, young  
again,"

Never a prophet so crazy!  
And hardly a daisy as yet, little friend,  
See, there is hardly a daisy.

"Here again, here, here, here, happy  
year!"

O warble unhidden, unbidden!  
Summer is coming, is coming, my dear,  
And all the winters are hidden.

*Lord Tennyson.*

*Note* — Many English birds make beautiful music. The skylark, the song thrush, the blackbird and the nightingale are especially famous singers, and their songs have been the inspiration of many poems. A story is told of some rough English diggers working on the goldfields in Australia. The hardships that they had endured had made rude men of them. They had long forgotten their parents and their English homes, and were consumed with greed for the gold to find which they toiled unceasingly and over which they quarrelled and fought. One day two or three diggers announced that they were going to see a lark, and invited others to join them.

"What are they after?" said one man to his friend, hesitating over the invitation.

"Can't say. Let's go and see."

So the little party set out. They walked for seven or eight miles through terrible heat until they came to a rough farm with two barns by it and a fence around.

"This is the place," said the leader.

They went through the gate into the yard, and there saw fifteen or twenty other diggers lolling about in different attitudes of patient expectation. While they waited, a thin little woman came out of the house, carrying in her hands a covered wire cage containing a small brown bird. The diggers moved forward and clustered round her.

"What are they looking at?" said the man who had spoken first.

"At the lark," answered his friend.

"Lark? What lark? I can see only a bird," was the reply.

"Well, and isn't a lark a bird?"

"What, have we come all these miles in the sun just to see a bird?"

"Stow your noise," interrupted a digger, gruffly. "He's going to sing."

The woman had set the cage on a table and removed the cloth from it. After a little fluttering and an uncertain note or two, as if trying to recall a tune, the tiny occupant of the cage burst into full-throated song. He sang of the sweet English spring of green fields and blue skies, of his mate upon her nest in the wheatfield of love and joy and happiness and all the beautiful things of heaven and earth.

While the lark sang, the gold diggers stood silent and enthralled, and before he had ended, the tears were rolling down some rugged cheeks. These rough men were living over again the long forgotten when as fair-headed boys they had roamed the daisied meadows of England and played innocent games to the piping of a thousand songsters.

When the little musician quivered, fluttered, sank his rapturous trills to a few soft notes and finally lapsed into silence, the diggers broke into hoarse exclamations of wonder and delight. They pressed upon the woman offering her gold in return for her bird. She knew what it cost them to part with their hard-earned treasure and flushed gratefully at their eagerness, but shook her head.

"I am only a poor woman," she said. "Do not tempt me with so much money, for I cannot bear to part with him. Six larks were sent to me from England and five died on the passage out. You are welcome to come and hear his song when you please, but I will never sell him."

Such was the charm of the lark's song in a land where sweet bird voices are very scarce.

"The Thrush," by Lord Tennyson is the interpretation of a thrush's song, and is full of bird music. The song is found in the lines between inverted commas. The other lines are the poet's comments. He calls

the bird "little friend," "wild little Poet," and, because the thrush has forgotten the winter and is full of the joy of life, "crazy prophet." Although his song is uninvited it is none the less welcome. Much of the music of the poem is made by the frequent repetition of words and phrases. There are a few difficult words in the poem: prophet, "crazy," "unchidden," carol, "warble." These words may be explained but it is not really necessary to do so, for the children will be able to enjoy and appreciate the poem when they hear it recited and learn to recite it themselves, in such a way as to imitate, as far as may be, the song of the thrush.

#### TO GRAY ROBIN

Gray Robin is seen no more  
He is gone with the snow  
For winter is over  
And Robin will go

In need he was fed, and now he is fled  
Away to his secret nest  
No more will he be fed  
Poking for crumbs  
No longer he comes  
Beseeching our hand  
And showing his breast  
At window and door  
Gray Robin is seen no more

Blithe Robin is heard no more  
He gave us his song  
When summer was over  
And winter was long  
He sang for his bread and now he is fled  
Away to his secret nest  
And there in the green  
Early and late  
Alone to his mate  
He pipeth unseen  
And swelleth his  
breast,

For us it is over —  
Blithe Robin is heard no more

Robert Bridges



*Note.*—Dr. Robert Bridges, the late Poet Laureate, was educated at Eton and Oxford and afterwards studied medicine at St Bartholomew's Hospital, London. He held posts at the Children's Hospital, Great Ormond Street, and at the Great Northern Hospital, but retired from the medical profession at the age of thirty-eight and devoted himself to poetry. It was long before his genius was generally recognised, for his work was original and distinctive. His standards of workmanship were high and lovers of good work have accepted him as "the most scholarly, most classical and most artistic of modern poets." He became Poet Laureate in 1913 and died in 1930. His study of "Gay Robin" is very different from Tennyson's "Throstle." The actual song of the bird is imitated in the poetry of Tennyson, but here, "Gay Robin is seen no more." He has gone away to "his secret nest," and the poet's tender memory describes the bird's winter visits to "window and door." This poem reveals a writer who has watched and loved "blithe Robin," shown him kindness, and observed his tameness, his pretty "pipe" and coloured breast. The short lines of poetry suit the bright, quick bird. The long lines of the stanzas feelingly express sorrow at the bird's departure.

What colours would you choose with which to paint a robin? Where is Robin gone? What did he do in the winter? What is he doing now in spring and summer? What does "pipeth" mean? Find a word in the poem meaning the same as "gay." Why is the robin called "gay"? Which lines suggest sadness? Why is the robin's nest called "secret"? Tell all you know about a robin.

## 20. ROBIN REDBREAST

Good-bye, good-bye to Summer!  
For Summer's nearly done;  
The garden smiling faintly,  
Cool breezes in the sun;

Our thrushes now are silent,  
Our swallows flown away,—  
But Robin's here in coat of brown,  
With ruddy breast-knot gay.  
Robin, Robin Redbreast,  
O Robin dear!  
Robin singing sweetly  
In the falling year.

Bright yellow, red, and orange,  
The leaves come down in hosts;  
The trees are Indian Princes,  
But soon they'll turn to Ghosts;  
The scanty pears and apples  
Hang russet on the bough;  
It's Autumn, Autumn, Autumn late,  
'Twill soon be Winter now.  
Robin, Robin Redbreast,  
O Robin dear!  
And welladay! my Robin,  
For pinching times are near.

The fireside for the Cricket,  
The wheatsack for the Mouse,  
When trembling night-winds whistle  
And moan all round the house;  
The frosty ways like iron,  
The branches plumed with snow,—  
Alas! in Winter, dead and dark,  
Where can poor Robin go?  
Robin, Robin Redbreast,  
O Robin dear!  
And a crumb of bread for Robin,  
His little heart to cheer.

*William Allingham.*

*Note.*—There are many pleasing pictures in "Robin Redbreast," some of which the pupils will like to draw. The first is of the garden, represented as a person "smiling faintly" because the vivid heat of the sun is now tempered by "cool breezes," and the cheery voices of the thrushes and swallows are silent. Breaking the silence comes the robin's sweet song—

SKETCHES FOR THE BLACKBOARD



SWALLOW (ROBIN REDBREAST)  
BEE AND FOXGLOVE (FOUR AND EIGHT)

CRICKET (ROBIN REDBREAST)  
INDIAN PRINCE (ROBIN REDBREAST)

"Robin, Robin Redbreast,  
O Robin dear!  
Robin singing sweetly  
In the falling year."

Robin is pictured as a gentleman in a brown suit with gay, red tie. The trees have become Indian Princes in their brightly coloured robes, and will turn to thin grey ghosts when the leaves have fallen. Repetition—"It's Autumn, Autumn, Autumn late"—intensifies the sad foreboding and makes a wail in the music. The last stanza is a picture of winter, with—

"The frosty ways like iron,  
The branches plumed with snow."

The music of the wind runs through the lines—

"When trembling night-winds whistle  
And moan all round the house."

A cricket is a jumping, chirping insect, something like a grasshopper. One kind infests kitchens and fireplaces, and, though harmless, annoys people by its incessant chirping. The harvest mouse lives mainly on wheat. It is tinier than the house mouse, and is the only British animal with a prehensile tail. It builds a round nest between the corn stalks. (There are blackboard sketches of a cricket and an Indian Prince on page 223.)

What season of the year does the first stanza describe? What are the signs by which you know it? Where have the swallows gone? Why are the trees described as Indian Princes? When are the trees like ghosts? Name all the colours mentioned in the poem. Which lines sound like the song of the winter wind? Write down two lines which describe winter. What does Robin sing? What are "pinching times"? Where does the Cricket hide? Where does the Mouse live? Supposing you were going to draw a picture of this poem, what would you put in it? Which words in this poem rhyme with "dear"?

### STORIES



**King Arthur.**—Before the invention of printing, stories and legends were handed on by word of mouth. They were sung by

wandering minstrels, or narrated in verse form in war camps and at home round the fire in the evening twilight. Such stories

put into poetry are called ballads. Some of the best-known of British legendary stories are the tales of King Arthur. The following legend may be told as an introduction to a poetry lesson in this section.

Arthur was the son of Uther Pendragon, king of Britain many years after the Romans had left the country. Merlin the Wizard helped Uther to win the favour of the lady who became his Queen, and in return their son Arthur was given to Merlin to bring up. Soon afterwards Uther died, and the country was overridden by lawless nobles who would have murdered Arthur had they known of his existence. Merlin placed the baby as a stranger in the family of a knight named Sir Hector who brought him up with his own son Kay.

Some years later, when Arthur had become a young man, Merlin advised the archbishop of Britain to call all the nobles together and hold a service in the abbey at Westminster on Christmas Day, "to pray heaven for peace and deliverance from ruin." On leaving the abbey after the service the nobles saw an anvil set on a great stone, and wedged in the anvil, as though driven in by a giant, was a strong sword. Pressing around to see this marvel more closely, they found written on the stone—"Whoso can draw forth this sword is rightful king of Britain born." All the nobles tried in turn without success to wrench the sword from the anvil, and they stood there glowering fiercely upon each other and muttering in jealous apprehension. Finally the archbishop suggested that a great tournament should be held at Eastertide, and then once again all might tug at the sword for the crown of Britain.

Easter approached, and Sir Hector, Sir Kay and Arthur, now a young man, fair and of noble proportions, set out on horseback from home to take their parts in the tournament at Westminster. They had gone some distance and were nearing the field of their destination when Sir Kay discovered to his intense mortification that he had accidentally left his sword behind. Arthur immediately offered to return and

fetch it. He hurried back, but found the house deserted, bolted and barred. Everyone had gone to see the tournament. Pausing silent and troubled, Arthur suddenly remembered the story he had heard of a sword in an anvil at a field near Westminster, and he decided to try and obtain the blade for his foster brother. Unseen of any, he found the anvil in the field, and without staying to read the inscription on the stone, seized the sword and gave it a pull. Immediately it came out in his hand!

Full of joy that he had found a sword for Sir Kay, Arthur galloped away and overtook Sir Hector and his son before they had arrived at the jousting field. Laughingly he handed Sir Kay the sword. Sir Kay took it with expressions of gratitude, then started and stared at the sword, and the fresh pink of his face changed to white. He asked Arthur how he had come by it, and Arthur told him. "O father!" cried Sir Kay, showing him the sword, "am I to be king of Britain?" In serious tones Sir Hector asked to be told the whole story, and when he had heard it, dismounted and bade his son do likewise. Then both paid homage to Arthur. In course of time the other nobles of Britain also acknowledged Arthur as their king and he was crowned by the archbishop.

## 21. THE BABES IN THE WOOD

My dear, do you know  
How a long time ago,  
Two poor little children  
Whose names I don't know  
Were stolen away  
On a fine summer's day,  
And left in a wood,  
As I've heard people say;

And when it was night,  
So sad was their plight,  
The sun it went down  
And the moon gave no light!

They sobbed and they sighed  
And they bitterly cried,  
And the poor little things,  
They lay down and died.

And when they were dead,  
The robins so red  
Brought strawberry  
leaves,  
And over them spread;  
And all the day long  
They sang them this  
song—  
"Poor babes in the wood!  
Poor babes in the wood!  
And don't you remember  
The babes in the wood?"



*Note.*—Another very old ballad is called "The Babes in the Wood." The story is sad but interesting. The unfortunate Babes inherited rich property, and their uncle, the next of kin, hired men to take them into a wood and murder them. In the wood the ruffians quarrelled as to whether they should kill the children or not, but finally went off and left them to die of starvation. The old ballad is told shortly in the poem given above in this section. Notice the narrative style of writing—"My dear, do you know? . . ."

The first stanza should be recited in a conversational tone. The second begins softly, becomes agitated where—

"They sobbed and they sighed  
And they bitterly cried"—

and ends softly and slowly. The alliteration, "sobbed and sighed," intensifies the sound and meaning. The robin's song is made imitative and musical by repetition.

What happened to the babes? What frightened them? Why did they die? What song did the robins sing to them? What work did the robins do? Name several words which rhyme with "night."

## 22. FIVE LITTLE BROTHERS

Five little brothers set out together  
To journey the live-long day,  
In an odd little carriage, all made of leather,  
They hurried away, away—  
One big brother and three quite small,  
And one wee fellow, no size at all.

The carriage was dark and none too roomy,  
And they could not move about;  
The five little brothers grew very gloomy,  
And the wee one began to pout;  
Till the biggest one whispered: "What do  
you say?  
Let's leave the carriage and run away."

So out they scampered, the five together,  
And off and away they sped.  
When somebody found the carriage of leather,  
Oh, my! how she shook her head!  
'Twas her little boy's shoe, as everyone  
knows,  
And the five little brothers were five little  
tocs!

*Lila Wheeler Wilcox.*



*Note.*—When baby's feet are being dried after his bath, his mother takes each toe in turn and sets him chuckling with—

"This little pig went to market,  
This little pig stayed at home,  
This little pig had roast beef,  
This little pig had none;  
This little pig cried, 'Wee, wee!' all the  
way home."

The poem of "Five Little Brothers" is somewhat suggestive of this old nursery rhyme. It is a pretty story, prettily told, and appeals to children. The rhythm seems to patter along, assisted by the descriptive words—

" They hurried away, away—  
—Out they scampered, the five together."

The word "little" often repeated makes the brothers seem very tiny. The poem lends itself effectively to recitation because it is dramatic. It is a favourite with children.

Describe the five little brothers. Of what material was their carriage made? Why did they grow restless? What did the big brother whisper? Who found the leather carriage? Why did she shake her head? Draw the little carriage. Which word rhymes with leather? Find two words in the poem which should be said quickly. Which word is repeated many times? Why?

### 23. DAN THE COLT

When over the hill top the red sun is dropping,  
And fowls to their perches fly up in a row,  
The horses look up from the fields they are  
cropping

To hear the glad sound of a voice that they  
know,

*Hallo ' and Hallo '*

*Bay, Roan, Black and Dapple, it's homeward  
you go!*

The gate will swing open and there he'll be  
leaning,

And calling aloud on the dusky night air;  
And all the old horses will know what he's  
meaning,

And hurry to pass by the stableman there.

But, Johnny, beware!

Of Dan the young colt with his flying black  
hair.

For Dan the young colt isn't fond of the  
stable,

He knows that the morning means harness  
for all,

And surely he'll swerve by the gate if he's  
able,

And laugh at poor stableman John and  
his call

To stand in the stall  
With dry hay and oats from the bin by the  
wall.

Bay, Dapple, and Roan lead the way, but  
young Blacky

Half-way to the gate will remember, I  
know,

The halter that's hidden by sly Master Jacky,  
And over the field like an arrow he'll go,

With a neigh saying *NO!*

*I'll lie all night long where the clover-buds grow.*

*Wilfrid Thorley.*

*Note.*—This fine poem has a galloping rhythm which suggests fresh air and a rush of wind. "Dan the young colt with his flying black hair" is full of life and loves the wide fields and juicy herbage. He has no wish to spend the night in the stable—"With dry hay and oats from the bin by the wall." So when John the stableman calls all the horses in, and Jacky stands by with a halter behind him, Dan will "swerve by the gate" instead of going through it—

"And over the field like an arrow he'll go,  
With a neigh saying *NO!*

*I'll lie all night long where the clover-buds  
grow."*

A "halter" is a rope or strap with a noose or headstall for horses and cattle. A "bay" is a reddish-brown horse, a "roan" has its chestnut coat thickly interspersed with white, grey or black, and a "dapple" is a grey horse with darker spots.

The picture of the waiting stableman is made more vivid by the onomatopoeic phrases—"swing open," "calling aloud," "dusky night."

There is colour in the line—"Over the hill-top the red sun is dropping"; and alliteration adds movement to the description of the "fowls" that "fly up in a row."

"Like an arrow" is a simile. Let one of the boys bring a bow and arrow to school and demonstrate how swiftly the arrow flies. Let the children tap out the strong accents



on their desks as they recite one of the stanzas; this will help them to appreciate the rhythm of the galloping horses.

Of what does the swing in the long lines of this poem remind you? When do fowls fly up to their perches? What does the stableman call to the horses? Why does Dan the Colt prefer to sleep in the meadow? Why is Master Jacky called "sly"? What is another name for Jacky? What does the colt do when he is near the gate? What is a halter? What food does the colt like best for supper? Which two lines do you like best?

#### 24. A SONG OF THE GREENAWAY CHILD

As I went a-walking on *Lavender Hill*,  
O, I met a Darling in frock and frill;  
And she looked at me shyly, with eyes of blue,  
"Are you going a-walking? Then take me too!"

So we strolled to the field where the cowslips grow,  
And we played—and we played for an hour or so,  
Then we climbed to the top of the old park wall,  
And the Darling she threaded a cowslip ball.

Then we played again, till I said—"My Dear,  
This pain in my side, it has grown severe;  
I ought to have told you I'm past three score,  
And I fear that I scarcely can play any more!"

But the Darling she answered,—“O no! O no!  
You must play—you must play.—I shan't let you go!”  
—And I woke with a start and a sigh of despair  
And I found myself safe in my grandfather's-chair!

*Austin Dobson.*

*Note.*—Kate Greenaway was a noted British artist of the latter half of the nineteenth century. Her earlier pictures were limited to valentines and Christmas cards, but in 1877 she exhibited at the Royal Academy. She became very popular for her drawings of girls and boys dressed in early nineteenth-century costume. The childish figures and charm of composition make the pictures quaint and attractive. For a long time *Kate Greenaway* frocks were the fashion for little girls.

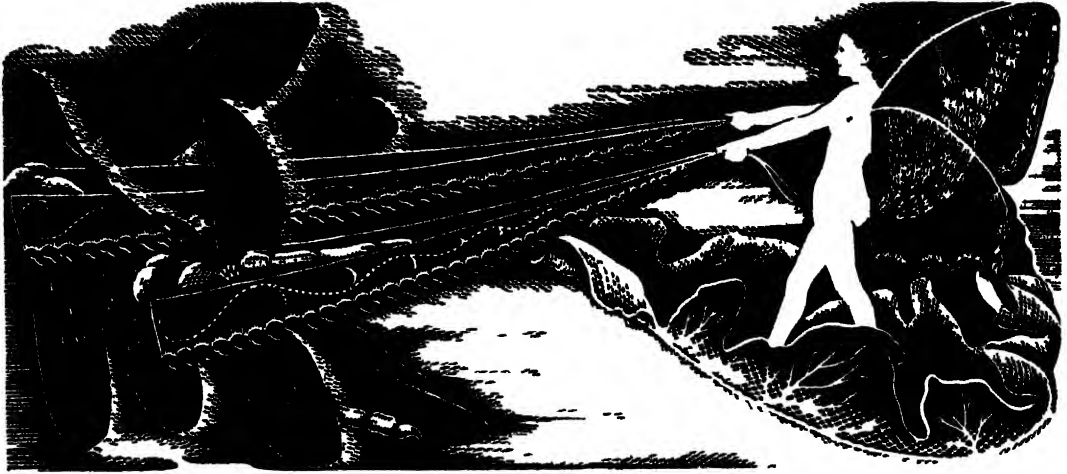
In the poem there is a joyous lilt combined with a certain sedateness of line which seems to suggest the natural child in the old-fashioned frock. The music of the words brings a wish to trip along—"A-walking on Lavender Hill"—with the Darling and grandfather. The word "Darling" used for the child suggests her charm. The repetition, "And we played—and we played," transforms the play into hearty romping. "Grandfather" had forgotten that he was old until he felt the pain in his side; but the child could not realise his limitations, and the final effort to please her woke him—"With a start and a sigh of despair."

It will be necessary to give the children a description of a Greenaway frock. There is a blackboard sketch of cowslips on page 235. Many children will not know how a cowslip ball is made.

Tell the story of the grandfather's dream. How old is three score? Why is the child called "Darling"? What kind of clothes would you like to wear? Two children can play at strolling along. Probably some of the children can describe a "grandfather's-chair."



## LET'S PRETEND



## 25 CATCHING FAIRIES

They're sleeping beneath the roses  
 Oh kiss them before they rise  
 And tickle their tiny noses  
 And sprinkle the dew on their eyes  
 Make haste, make haste,  
 The fairies are caught,  
 Make haste

We'll put them in silver cages,  
 And send them full dress to court  
 And maids of honour and pages  
 Shall turn the poor things to sport  
 Be quick, be quick!  
 Be quicker than thought,  
 Be quick

Their scarfs shall be pennons for lancers,  
 We'll tie up our flowers with their curls  
 Their plumes will make fans for dances,  
 Their tears shall be set with pearls  
 Be wise, be wise,  
 Make the most of the prize:  
 Be wise

They'll scatter sweet scents by winking  
 With spurs from under their feet,  
 They'll save us the trouble of thinking  
 Their voices will sound so sweet  
 Oh, stay, oh stay!  
 They're up and away  
 Oh stay!

*William Cory*



*Note*—This poem is so musical that it might be called a singing game. The children

in the poem pretend that they have caught some fairies and eagerly announce what is to be done with them. The fairies are daintily described—"Sleeping beneath the roses." Each stanza concludes with a child's call as musical as the trill of a bird. Note the alliteration and repetition in the last three lines of each stanza. The children propose to send the fairies "in silver cages" to court, where they will amuse the king's pages and the maids of honour. A "lancer" is a soldier of a cavalry regiment armed with lances, and a "pennon" is a long, narrow flag, the military ensign of the lancers. The "plumes" of the fairies are their feathered wings. "Court plumes" are an ornamental bunch of ostrich feathers worn by ladies in their hair when they are presented to the king and queen. The children say that the voices of the fairies are so sweet that, like music, they bring rest from "the trouble of thinking." Then, alas! they escape.

Where did the children find the fairies? What did they do before waking them up? What were they going to do with them when they were caught? What are "lancers"? What are the fairies' "plumes"? Describe one of the fairies. What would you do if you caught a fairy?

## 26 THE CARAVAN

If I could be a gypsy boy and have a caravan  
I'd travel all the world I would, before I  
was a man,  
We'd drive beyond the far blue hills—us two,  
my horse and me  
And on and on and on and on until we  
reached the sea.

And there I'd wash his legs quite clean and  
bid him come inside,  
Whilst I would stand upon the roof and scan  
the flowing tide,  
And he and I would sail away and scour the  
Spanish main,  
And when we'd swept the Spaniards out we'd  
p'r'aps sail home again.

Or if my horse was very tired of ships and  
being good,  
And wanted most to stretch his legs (as  
many horses would)  
We'd call a whale to tow us to a desert island  
beach,  
And there we'd search for coconuts and have  
a whole one each.

If I could be a gypsy-boy I wouldn't bring  
a load  
Of pots and pans and chairs and things and  
sell them in the road  
Oh, if I was a gypsy-boy and had a caravan  
I'd see the whole wide world, I would, before  
I was a man.

*Madeline Nightingale*

*Note* In this poem the poet pretends to be a gypsy boy with a caravan and is fired with desire to—

' Travel all the world  
Drive beyond the far blue hills  
And on and on and on and on

until at last he reaches the sea. The caravan is then to do duty as a ship. The horse's feet are washed, he is taken inside, and from the roof of the caravan ship the gypsy boy gazes over "the flowing tide." Of course they sail to the Spanish main and make themselves famous. Afterwards they enlist the services of a whale to tow them to "a desert island beach."

The story is a pretty fancy in a racy kind of rhythm suggesting the fast travelling of youthful imagination. The repetition of "on and on" emphasises the miles traversed. Little natural touches keep the identity of the speaker in front of the reader—"We'd search for coconuts and have a whole one each." The teacher might wish to explain the meaning of sweeping the Spanish main. This could be readily done if the children know anything of the stories of Drake and Raleigh. There is a blackboard sketch of a whale and a coconut palm on page 235.

What is a caravan? What people mostly live in caravans? What do these people sell? How far was the gypsy-boy going to drive? What did he do with his horse before they set sail in the caravan? How far were they going to sail? How would they reach the island of coconuts? Which line gives you the impression of travelling a very long way?

Children will like the alliteration in—"Toss in the air, with a twist and a twirl." There is a blackboard sketch of a shuttlecock on page 235.

Where is the Opposite Side? What strange things happen in that land? Why do the toys play with the children? Write the lines describing what the shuttlecocks do. Why would it be jolly to visit the Opposite Side?

## 27. THE OPPOSITE SIDE

Have you heard of the land called the Opposite Side?

The streets are ever so big and wide,  
And the houses are full of lovely toys  
That have such fun with the girls and boys.

The tops take the boys and spin them round,  
With their feet in the air and their heads on the ground.

The shuttlecocks seize a plump little girl  
To toss in the air, with a twist and a twirl.

The soldiers of tin are as fierce as can be,  
And shoulder a mus-ket at each boy they see.  
But—this is a secret—whatever betide  
I'd love to visit the Opposite Side!

*L'loria Sandström.*

*Note*--What wonders are pictured on "The Opposite Side" of the earth by a child's imagination! Everyone must be upside down and walking on his head. Manners and customs cannot possibly resemble those on this side the equator. The enterprising youngster wishes that he could burrow a long tunnel through from north to south and find out what is at the other end. The poet pretends that she knows something of this strange region. All the toys there live in houses and play with the girls and boys—the very opposite of what happens here. The tin soldiers are not at all docile and obedient but fierce and quarrelsome. "The Opposite Side" is full of surprises yet so fascinating that—

"Whatever betide  
I'd love to visit the Opposite Side."

## 28. WISHING

Ring ting! I wish I were a primrose,  
A bright yellow primrose blowing in the spring!

The stooping boughs above me,  
The wandering bee to love me,  
The fern and moss to creep across,  
And the elm tree for our king!

Nay, stay! I wish I were an elm tree,  
A great lofty elm tree, with green leaves gay!  
The winds would set them dancing,

The sun and moonshine glance in,  
And birds would house among the boughs,  
And sweetly sing!

Oh--no! I wish I were  
a robin,

A robin or a little wren,  
everywhere to go;  
Through forest, field  
or garden,  
And ask no leave or  
pardon,

Till winter comes with  
icy thumbs  
To ruffle up our wing.

Well--tell! Where  
should I fly to,  
Where go to sleep in the  
dark wood or dell?

Before a day was over,  
Home comes the rover,  
For mother's kiss, —  
sweeter this

Than any other thing!

*William Allingham.*



*Note.*—This is another gay singing game. The child pretends to be first—"A bright yellow primrose blowing in the spring." Above him wave the branches of the elm tree; he is encircled with moss and fern and visited by the wandering bee. On second thoughts, however, he would prefer to be the "great, lofty elm tree" itself, with leaves dancing in the wind—"And birds would house among the boughs." This idea sets him wishing to be a robin—"A robin or a little wren, everywhere to go." The drawback to a bird's jolly life is the problem of finding a lodging place at night. So, before the day closes, the pretended robin returns to his human form and ends his wanderings at home. The children will like to study the rhyme scheme of this poem, and find the words rhyming with "across," "boughs," "thumbs" and "this." Notice that winter is represented as a person "with icy thumbs."

What does the child wish to be first? Describe the primrose in the wood. Write down the lines describing the elm tree. Why does the child wish to be a bird? What makes him change his mind? What does he finally think is best? What would you wish to be, and why?

## 29. SOLDIERS

We be the King's men, hale and hearty,  
Marching to meet one Buonaparty;  
If he won't sail, lest the wind should blow,  
We shall have marched for nothing, O!  
Right fol-lol!

We be the King's men, hale and hearty,  
Marching to meet one Buonaparty;  
If he be sea-sick, says "No, no!"  
We shall have marched for nothing, O!  
Right fol-lol!

We be the King's men, hale and hearty,  
Marching to meet one Buonaparty;  
Never mind, mates; we'll be merry, though  
We may have marched for nothing, O!  
Right fol-lol!

*Thomas Hardy.*

*Note.*—The finest marches are played by military bands, walking at the heads of their regiments. "Soldiers" is a jolly marching song, suitable for singing when playing at soldiers. It was supposed to be sung by the king's men when they were preparing to fight the great French general Napoleon Buonaparte, who was threatening to invade England by crossing the Channel with his army in a fleet of flat-bottomed boats. The invasion, however, never took place. It will be necessary for a clear understanding of the poem to tell the children about this proposed invasion. The rhythm of the poem is very marked and is intensified by repetition--

"We be the King's men, hale and hearty,  
Marching to meet one Buonaparty."

Similarly, the last lines and the refrain, "Right fol-lol," emphasise the tread of a body of men.

Thomas Hardy was one of England's greatest poets and novelists. He was a native of Dorsetshire, and the scenes of his novels were confined to Wessex, his home-province. As a young man, he studied architecture. All of his novels attain a very high level of imaginative and technical excellence, but some people think that they are surpassed by his poetry. His best work is *The Dynasts*, an epic-drama finished in 1908, "a noble contribution to world literature." *Tess of the D'Urbervilles* is the most famous of his novels. Running through all his work is a note of fatalism, a tragic recognition of the futility of human life which he sees as something "pitifully transient against the eternal impassivity of nature."

Of what does the music of this poem make you think? Who was "Buonaparty"? Why did the soldiers sing—"We shall have marched for nothing, O!"? Which word rhymes with "Buonaparty"? Which lines are repeated in the poem? What is the name of the poet? The children will like to march round the room while reciting the poem. There is a blackboard sketch of Buonaparte's hat on page 241.

30. CHOOSE YOUR CALLING

How would you like to be a farmer's boy?

Riding on a mare,  
Carting in the hay,  
Ploughing with a pair,  
Grooming down the bay,  
Hoing through the corn,  
Minding solemn cows,  
Scaring crows at morn,  
Feeding of the sows,  
Sowing, mowing, reaping Hoy!

What a jolly life for a farmer's boy!



How would you like to be a joiner's boy?

Sawing up the pine,  
Planing at the deal,  
Making windows fine  
Turning round the wheel,  
Hammering the nails,  
Boring with the brace,  
Lining up the rails,  
Fitting wooden lace  
Gluing, glazing, nailing Hoy!

What a jolly life for a joiner's boy!

How would you like to be a grocer's boy?

Standing in a store,  
Cutting up the ham  
Sweeping round the floor,  
Selling pounds of jam,  
Writing down the bill,  
Lying up the rice,  
Changing from the till,  
Shouting out the price  
Talking, smiling, bowing Hoy!

What a jolly life for a grocer's boy!

How would you like to be a blacksmith's boy?

Turning up your sleeves,  
Knocking out a shoe,  
Hammering with ease,  
Fitting horses true,  
Blowing out the sparks,  
Mending iron pots  
Having merry larks,  
Making hoops for tots,



Knocking, blowing, mending - Hoy!  
What a jolly life for a blacksmith's boy!

*By permission.*

*Note* This is a fine poem for a boy to recite, as it is full of spirit and energy. The short lines produce an effect of briskness and action. "Wooden lace" is a metaphor, suggesting a comparison between fretwork and lace. Ploughing with a "pair" is, of course, a pair of horses, "deal" is a piece of sawn fir or pine wood, a "brace" is a revolving tool for boring, "glazing" is covering a painted surface with a thin coat of a different transparent colour to modify the tone. The concluding lines of the stanzas summarise their individual attractions. The first is breezy and full of fresh air, the second is careful, delicate and manipulative; the third is suave and polite, and the fourth strong, active and noisy.

What things are done by a farmer's boy? Why does a joiner's boy have a jolly life? Why must a grocer's boy talk, smile and bow? What work is done by a blacksmith's boy? If you had to choose your calling out of these four, which would you like to be, and why? What makes this a jolly poem?

31. THE FAIRIES

Up the airy mountain,  
Down the rushy glen,  
We daren't go a-huntin',  
For fear of little men,  
Wee folk, good folk,  
Trooping all together,  
Green jacket, red cap  
And white owl's feather!

Down along the rocky shore  
Some make their home,  
They live on crispy pancakes  
Of yellow tide foam  
Some in the reeds  
Of the black mountain lake  
With frogs for the watch-dogs,  
All night awake.

High on the hill-top  
 The old King sits;  
 He is now so old and gray,  
 He's nigh lost his wits.  
 With a bridge of white mist  
 (Columbkil he crosses  
 On his stately journeys  
 From Sheveleague to Rosses;  
 Or going up with music  
 On cold, starry nights,  
 To sup with the Queen  
 Of the gay Northern Lights.

They stole little Bridget  
 For seven years long;  
 When she came down again  
 Her friends were all gone.  
 They took her lightly back,  
 Between the night and morrow,  
 They thought that she was fast asleep,  
 But she was dead with sorrow.  
 They have kept her ever since  
 Deep within the lake,  
 On a bed of flag leaves,  
 Watching till she wake.

By the craggy hill-side,  
 Through the mosses bare,  
 They have planted thorn-trees  
 For pleasure here and there  
 Is any man so daring  
 As dig them up in spite,  
 He shall find their sharpest thorns  
 In his bed at night.

Up the airy mountain,  
 Down the rushy glen,  
 We daren't go a-hunting  
 For fear of little men;  
 Wee folk, good folk,  
 Trooping all together;  
 Green jacket, red cap,  
 And white owl's feather!

*William Allingham.*

*Note.*—"The Fairies" is a poem full of music with light, dancing, fairylike rhythm, and describes the little men who live among mountains near the seashore. Parents tell

their children such strange stories about these tiny people that they are afraid to venture—

"Up the airy mountain,  
 Down the rushy glen,"—

in case they meet the "wee folk." Some, they say, live on the rocky shores by the sea, and others on the reedy margin of the mountain lake. Their king is very old and grey, but still goes journeying across the hilltops on bridges of mist, to visit the Queen of the Northern Lights. One little girl, Bridget, was stolen by the fairies, who kept her for seven years. When she returned "her friends were all gone" and she died of a broken heart. Any man who dares to interfere with the fairy thorn-trees planted "by the craggy hill-side" will be punished by finding thorns in his bed.

All this dainty gossip is told in sweet, musical words and phrases—"airy mountain," "rushy glen," "wee folk," "crispy pancakes," "yellow tide-foam," "craggy hill-side," "cold, starry nights." The picture painted of the fairies is a fascinating one. They roam about in little troops all dressed alike—

"Green jacket, red cap,  
 And white owl's feather."

Their homes are vividly sketched and coloured. Their stately old king who has "nigh lost his wits" is a reverend figure. They are mischievous to steal little children, and spiteful towards meddling people; but still they are "wee folk, good folk," and charm the hearts of young and old.

Write down lines describing the fairies. What kind of music does the poetry make? Where do the fairies live? Tell all you know about the Fairy King. Write the story of little Bridget. Which lines show that the fairies are spiteful? Write a line with colour in it. What are the fairies' "watch-dogs"? What would you do if you met the "wee folk"?

SKETCHES FOR THE BLACKBOARD



COCONUT PALM (THE CARAVAN)  
SHUTTLECOCK (THE OPPOSITE SIDE)

WHALE (THE CARAVAN)  
COWSLIP (A SONG OF THE GAFENAWAY CHILD)



## POEMS BY LORD TENNYSON



A short biography of the famous Victorian poet Lord Tennyson is given in Volume VI. The following simple account will serve for the children's introduction to this section.

One of the greatest English poets was Alfred Tennyson, who became Lord Tennyson. He was born in a country rectory in Lincolnshire, in the year 1809. While he was only a schoolboy, he helped his brother to write a book of poetry. He wrote the first book of poems that were his very own while he was at college, and another one soon after leaving college.

Some people writing in the papers said that they did not like his poetry. But he did not sulk about this, or give up in despair and say that he would never write any more poetry, as some people might have done. He tried very hard to make his poems better. He learned all he could, especially about the sun, moon and stars, and the beautiful things on the earth. And he tried, too, to choose his words more and more

carefully. He worked hard for ten years, and when he was thirty-three years of age he published some more poems. These were so beautiful that people then said that he was the greatest living poet, and a few years later he was made Poet Laureate. Tennyson must have been very glad that he had tried so hard to succeed.

He lived for many years in the Isle of Wight, and if you go there, you may see a noble stone cross near the top of one of the high cliffs not far from a place called Freshwater. That cross marks the spot where Tennyson used to sit or stand every day, gazing out over the sea, or looking down on the trees in his own garden on the other side of the cliffs.

Tennyson was one of the finest-looking men in the world. He was very tall, and he had a great shock of rough, dark hair; bright, laughing, hazel eyes, and a musical voice.

Tennyson was always seeking for beautiful words, and trying to fit them together to

make sweet-sounding music. In the poem called "The Brook," you will see how Tennyson chose words to sound like running water.

32. THE BROOK

I come from haunts of coot and hern,  
I make a sudden sally,  
And sparkle out among the fern,  
To bicker down a valley.

By thirty hills I hurry down,  
Or slip between the ridges,  
By twenty thorns, a little town,  
And half a hundred bridges.

Till last by Philip's farm I flow  
To join the brimming river:  
For men may come and men may go,  
But I go on for ever.

I chatter over stony ways,  
In little sharps and trebles,  
I bubble into eddying bays,  
I babble on the pebbles.

With many a curve my banks I fret  
By many a field and fallow,  
And many a fairy foreland set  
With willow-weed and mallow.

I chatter, chatter, as I flow  
To join the brimming river:  
For men may come and men may go,  
But I go on for ever.

I wind about, and in and out,  
With here a blossom sailing,  
And here and there a lusty trout,  
And here and there a grayling

And here and there a foamy flake  
Upon me, as I travel  
With many a silvery waterbreak  
Above the golden gravel,

And draw them all along, and flow  
To join the brimming river:  
For men may come and men may go,  
But I go on for ever.

I steal by lawns and grassy plots;  
I slide by hazel covers;  
I move the sweet forget-me-nots  
That grow for happy lovers.

I slip, I slide, I gloom, I glance,  
Among my skimming swallows,  
I make the netted sunbeam dance  
Against my sandy shallows.

I murmur under moon and stars  
In brambly wildernesses;  
I linger by my shaggy bars;  
I loiter round my cresses;

And out again I curve and flow  
To join the brimming river:  
For men may come and men may go,  
But I go on for ever

*Lord Tennyson.*

*Note.*—"The Brook" is part of a longer work describing the inmates of Philip Willows' farm "where brook and river meet." Along the margin of the brook the poet and his friend Edmund as youths were wont to stroll, stopping at the farm for a chat with old Philip and his daughter Katie—

"Her eyes a bashful azure, and her hair  
In gloss and hue the chestnut."

By the brook the two friends parted—

"I to the East  
And he for Italy—too late—too late."

They never met again, for Edmund died in Italy, and when the poet returned later to the brook, old Philip too was dead, and

Katie had gone to Australia So he sat on a stile—

"Bowling o'er the brook  
A tonsured head in middle age forlorn"—

when suddenly a maiden approached, and stood waiting to pass

"Her eyes a bashful azure, and her hair  
In gloss and hue the chestnut"

Questioning her in wonderment the poet discovered that she was Katie's daughter. Katie and her two children had returned from Australia and bought the farm that old Philip had tenanted. So the poet received a hearty welcome there.

The stanzas of "The Brook" peep out here and there in the narrative just as the sparkling water gushes up in the green meadows. "The Brook" is full of the music of a stream music cunningly made by the skilful use of onomatopoeic words, alliteration and smoothly running rhythm.

The brook begins as a little rannel among the quiet haunts of coot and heron ("Coot" are swimming and diving birds, and "heron" are long-legged wading birds; see black board sketches on page 241.) As the volume of the brook increases so its pace quickens.

"By thirty hills I hurry down,  
Or slip between the ridges"

Contrast "the brimming river" with the description of the brook in the third stanza, and note the delicate alliteration in the lines

"By many a field and fallow,  
And many a fairy forland"

The brook's "forlands" are very tiny compared with those overlooking the sea, so they are delightfully described as "fairy." The frequent repetition suggests the eternity of the running water.

"Men may come and men may go,  
But I go on for ever"

"Fallow" is uncultivated land; a "thorp" is a village or hamlet, "eddyng bays" are small whirlpools; "willow-weed" or willow-herb is a plant that generally grows near water, and has willowlike leaves and pale purple flowers, "mallow" is a plant with a hairy stem and leaves, and purple flowers.

Let the children repeat the following words, trying to show the meanings by the sounds—"chatter," "bicker," "sparkle," "bubble," "babble," "pebble," "slide," "murmur," "linger." Several words in the poem will need to be explained, but explanations should not be laboured, or the delightful music will be spoiled for the children.

What does the music of this poem suggest to you? Write out the stanza which sounds like water running over stones. How is the river different from the brook? Where do the brook and river meet? What lines in the poem are repeated? How long does the brook go on running?

### 33 CRADLE SONG

What does little birdie say  
In her nest at peep of day?  
Let me fly, says little budie,  
Mother, let me fly away.  
Birdie, rest a little longer,  
Till the little wings are stronger.  
So she rests a little longer,  
Then she flies away.

What does little baby say  
In her bed at peep of day?  
Baby says, like little budie,  
Let me rise and fly away.  
Baby, sleep a little longer,  
Till the little limbs are stronger.  
If she sleeps a little longer,  
Baby too shall fly away.

*Lord Tennyson*

*Note*—"Cradle Song" has a lively rhythm as of a young thing wide awake and trying to throw off restraint. The short lines are

suggestive of quick movement, and the language is carefully chosen to fit the little creatures it describes. The constant repetition of "little" emphasises the helplessness of the baby bird and child—"little birdie," "little wings," "little longer," "little baby," "little limbs." There is music in the repetition:

" ' Let me fly,' says little birdie,  
 ' Mother, let me fly away.' "

Notice the beauty of phrasing in "peep of day," "rest a little longer," "sleep a little longer." Many words and phrases in the first stanza recur in the second, as notes of music are repeated in a song. This cradle song is not of the usual kind, suggestive of a mother rocking her child to sleep; on the contrary it is the awakening of the little one, eager and full of life, at the "peep of day."

Which word in this poem is often repeated? What does the birdie say to its mother? What does the mother say to the birdie? What does "peep of day" mean? What does mother tell her baby in the early morning? Where is the baby when the mother is talking? Why is the poem called "Cradle Song"?

### 34. SWEET AND LOW

Sweet and low, sweet and low,  
 Wind of the western sea,  
 Low, low, breathe and blow,  
 Wind of the western sea!  
 Over the rolling waters go,  
 Come from the dying moon, and blow,  
 Blow him again to me;  
 While my little one, while my pretty one,  
 sleeps.

Sleep and rest, sleep and rest,  
 Father will come to thee soon;  
 Rest, rest, on mother's breast,  
 Father will come to thee soon;

Father will come to his babe in the nest,  
 Silver sails all out of the west

Under the silver moon;  
 Sleep, my little one, sleep, my pretty one,  
 sleep.

*Lord Tennyson.*



*Note.*—One of Tennyson's longer poems is called "The Princess." It describes a college for women from which all men were debarred entry on pain of death. Princess Ida was the Principal, and her aim was to educate her sex to equality with the male sex. She had been betrothed in childhood to a neighbouring prince, and in order to gain access to her, he disguised himself as a woman, and, with two friends similarly disguised, he was enrolled as a college student. In the story of their betrayal and the consequences Tennyson expressed his views on woman's place and mission.

"One  
 Not learned, save in gracious household  
 ways,  
 . . . Interpreter between the Gods and  
 men."

"The Princess" is divided into sections, each of which is introduced by a song. One of these is "Sweet and Low." It is sung to her babe by a woman whose husband is sailing home "out of the west." There is a gentle rocking in the rhythm. The words are soothing and quiet—"sweet and low," "sleep and rest"—and the repetition and alliteration add to the crooning sleepiness of the song. A gentle blowing sound is suggested by the alliteration in—"Wind of the western sea." "Babe in the nest" is a metaphor implying a comparison between

the sleeping child and a baby bird. This poem has been set to music by Sir Joseph Barnby, and is probably his most popular composition.

Who is singing this song? Where is baby's father? Of what does the music of the lines remind you? Write down words which should be said softly. Which line has the gentle blowing of the wind in it? Little groups of words are called *phrases*. Which phrase reminds you of a rough sea? Why are the ship's sails called "silver sails"? With what is the baby in its cradle compared? Which are your favourite lines? (The children will like to repeat such phrases as—"dying moon," "rolling waters," "silver sails," "breathe and blow.")

### 35 THE OWL

When cats run home and light is come,  
And dew is cold upon the ground,  
And the far-off stream is dumb,  
And the whirling sail goes round,  
And the whirling sail goes round,  
Alone and warming his five wits,  
The white owl in the belfry sits.

When merry milkmaids click the latch,  
And rarely smells the new-mown hay  
And the cock hath sung beneath the thatch  
Twice or thrice his roundelay,  
Twice or thrice his roundelay,  
Alone and warming his five wits,  
The white owl in the belfry sits.

*Lord Tennyson*



*Note*—"The Owl" is a tiny song describing the daybreak. Its details reveal a close

observation of Nature. Alone in the belfry sits the white owl, "warming his five wits" and regardful of the signs of morning. He sees light spread over the land from the east. The cats run home, the earth is cold with dew, the river is silent, wafts of scent float up from the new-mown hay, the milkmaids enter the cowsheds, and two sounds only fill the air—the whurr of the windmill's sails and the crowing of the cock. The repeated lines in each stanza emphasise their echoing noise amid the surrounding quiet. The "belfry" is a space where the bells are hung in a church tower.

Palgrave said that Tennyson's work lay "somewhere between that of Virgil and Shakespeare, having its portion in the inspiration of both." Shakespeare's song "Winter" compares in some respects with Tennyson's song "The Owl." There is similarity in rhythm, language and type of observation. Here is the first stanza of "Winter":

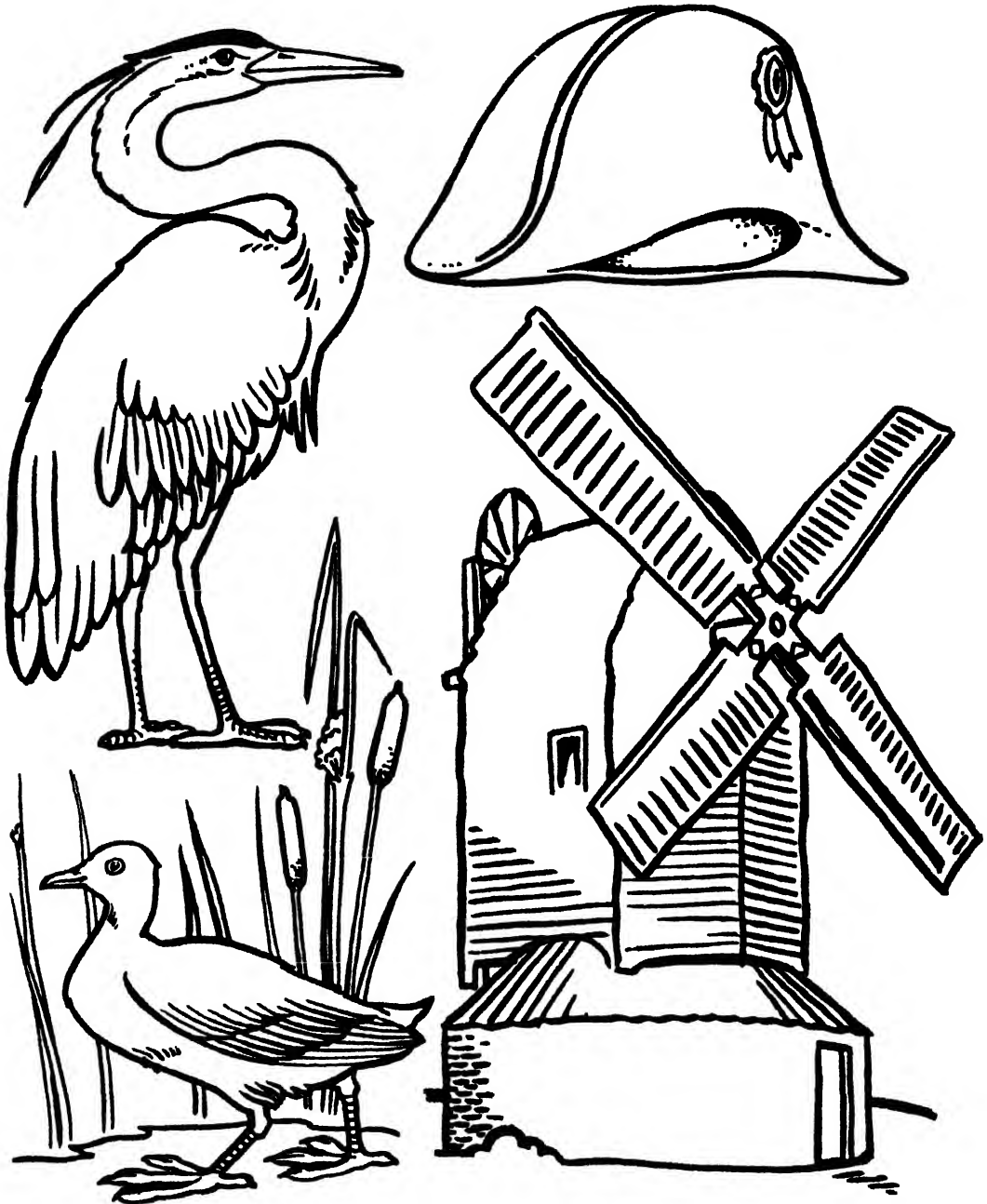
"When icicles hang by the wall  
And Dick the shepherd blows his nail  
And Tom bears logs into the hall  
And milk comes frozen home in pail,  
When blood is nipt, and ways be foul,  
Then nightly sings the staring owl  
    Tuwhoo!  
Tuwhit! tuwhoo! A merry note!  
While greasy Joan doth keel the pot."

Other poems by Lord Tennyson in this volume are "The Bee and the Flower" and "The Thrush" (see Nos 16 and 18, "Of Flowers and Buds").

Where does the owl live? Which word describes the noise made by the windmill's sails? Which word describes the music of the cock's crow? By what signs does the owl know that morning has come? Which lines describe the owl? When does an owl sleep? Which lines in the poem suggest noise? Which words rhyme with "come," "hay," "wits"?

It will be advisable to tell the children why the owl is called wise.

SKETCHES FOR THE BLACKBOARD



HERON (THE BROOK)  
COOT (THE BROOK)

BUONAPARTE'S HAT (SOLDIER'S)  
WINDMILL (THE OWL)

## SIX NOTABLE PICTURES FOR ORAL AND WRITTEN COMPOSITION

### 1. THE PRINCESS AND THE FROG



*From the picture by W. R. Symonds.*

*[By permission of the Bradford Art Gallery.]*

THE PRINCESS AND THE FROG

LET the children examine the picture (No. 146 in the portfolio) in silence, and then invite them to tell all they can about it.

What is the title of the picture? What is a princess? Do you know the name of a princess? What is a prince? Does the princess in the picture look like a princess of to-day? Describe the dress of the princess in the picture? What is the name of the fur on her cloak? At what is the princess looking? What is resting beside the frog? On what is the princess sitting? Is the fountain empty or full of water? Where does the water come from? What is the metal figure meant to represent? Does the picture show summer or winter? What are the names of the birds in the picture? At what time of the year do we see swallows? What are the swallows doing?

### STORY

One summer evening a princess was playing with a golden ball in the palace gardens. Close by a fountain poured out sparkling water. She threw her golden ball in the air and caught it again, laughing joyously as it gleamed in the evening sunshine. At last she tossed it so far that she could not catch it. The ball rolled to the edge of the fountain, and sank into the water.

The princess ran to the fountain and gazed in, looking for her treasure, but the water was so deep that she could not see the bottom. She burst into tears. Just then a frog put his head out of the water, sat on the edge of the fountain and spoke to her in a croaking voice. "Princess, why do you weep?" he asked.

"Because I have dropped my golden ball into the fountain and cannot get it back," sobbed she.

"If I fetch it for you," said the frog, "will you love me and let me live with you? May I eat from your golden plate and drink from your golden cup? Will you let me sleep at night upon your silken pillow?"

"What a horrid frog!" thought the

princess. "Ah! but he'll never be able to get into the palace; and I do so want my golden ball." She shivered as she looked at him, and then said, "Very well, I promise what you ask."

The frog dived under the water and soon came up again carrying the golden ball in his mouth. The princess seized the ball, and without a word of thanks ran back to the palace.

"Princess, princess, take me with you!" called the frog. The ungrateful princess paid no heed, however, and ran on till she was safely inside the palace.

That evening, as the princess was eating her supper, there was a strange noise, tap-tap, tap-tap, as if someone were coming up the marble staircase. Then there came a gentle knock at the door.

"Go and see who it is, my dear," said the king to his daughter.

The princess opened the door and looked out. There on the landing sat the frog, whom she had quite forgotten.

"Keep your promise, princess," he croaked.

"Oh no! no!" cried the princess. She shut the door in haste, and went back to her supper.

"Who was it, my dear?" asked the king.

"There is a horrible little frog at the door," she replied. "He fetched my ball out of the fountain for me, and now he says that I have promised he may eat out of my plate and drink out of my cup and sleep to night on my pillow."

"A promise is a promise," said the king.

"Daughter, you must let the frog come in."

The door was opened, and the frog hopped up to the princess' chair. "Lift me up, lift me up," he croaked.

The princess was obliged to pick him up between her finger and thumb, and place him on the table.

"Now push your golden plate near me so that we may eat together," said the frog.

When he had eaten, he said, "Tilt your golden cup that I may drink."

The princess was in tears, but she had to keep her word.



When bedtime came she carried the frog up to her bedroom where he slept all night on her silken pillow.

As soon as daylight came the frog jumped off the bed, hopped downstairs and out through the palace door. He has gone thought the prince's joyfully. I shall be troubled no more by the hateful creature.

She was mistaken, however. That night at supper time there came again the tap tap up the stairs and the gentle knock on the door. Once more the princess was forced to allow the frog to eat from her plate, drink from her cup and sleep on her silken pillow. In the morning he went out as before and came the third night as usual to share her food, her drink and her bed.

On the fourth morning when the princess woke she found a handsome young prince standing at the head of her bed. She opened wide her blue eyes and gazed at him in wonder.

"I am prince," he said. "I am the frog from the fountain. A spiteful witch changed me into a frog, and the spell could not be broken until a princess should take me from the fountain and let me share her bed for three nights. You have broken the spell at last. I love you. Will you be my bride and come away with me to my kingdom?"

"Oh yes, I will," said the princess, calling for her maids to dress her quickly. When she went downstairs he found the Frog Prince waiting her. A splendid coach stood at the door and gaily dressed servants greeted their prince and princess with happy smiles. The king and queen gave their blessing. The bridal pair seated themselves in the coach. The coachman cracked his whip. Away went the horses, and the Frog Prince with his lovely princess set out for home.

*Questions to follow the Story Telling.* It is an excellent plan to follow the telling of

a story to a class by asking a number of questions on it. By this plan the teacher will discover whether the children have been paying full attention to the reading. The teacher will be able to ascertain whether any parts of the story have not been thoroughly understood, also it will then be possible to explain the meanings of any difficult words or phrases.

Such questions as the following have not been appended to all the stories, but the teacher will find no difficulty in framing them.

At what time of the year did the princess see the frog? Why was the prince's glad to see the frog? What made the frog talk to the princess? What did the frog say it would do for her? What did the prince's have to promise the frog? What did the princess say to herself when the frog said "Will you love me and let me live with you?" What did the prince's do directly the frog brought her golden ball out of the water? What did the frog call out as the princess ran back to the palace? When did the princess hear strange tapping at the door? Who told the prince's to open the door? What did the frog say to the princess when he opened the door? What did the princess say to the frog? What did the king say to the princess when she told him about the frog getting her ball out of the fountain? What happened when the princess opened the door again? From what did the prince's and the frog eat? From what did they drink? How may we know that the princess did not like eating and drinking with the frog? What did she do at bedtime? What happened in the morning? When did the frog go to the palace again? What happened on the fourth morning? What did the prince say to the princess? Who had turned the prince into a frog? What is a bride? What is a coach? Where did the bride and the Frog Prince go?

## 2. OUR ANCIENT WORD OF COURAGE: FAIR SAINT GEORGE



*From the picture by Georges Scott in the Paris Salon.]*

"OUR ANCIENT WORD OF COURAGE, FAIR ST. GEORGE":  
THE PATRON SAINT OF ENGLAND

LET the children examine the picture (No. 147 in the portfolio) in silence, and then invite them to tell all they can about it.

What is Saint George doing? What protects Saint George? Describe his armour.

What is carried on his arm? On which arm? Why on the left? What is the use of a shield? What does Saint George hold in his right hand? What protects his right hand? Is the lance straight in the picture? Why is the lance bent? What has Saint George

done with the lance? (He has thrust it through the dragon's mouth and pinned him down to the ground.) Was this an easy thing to do? Look at Saint George again. With what else is Saint George armed? How is the hilt of the sword shaped? (In the shape of a cross.) What does Saint George wear over his armour? Why does the cloak stream out behind him? (Because Saint George has rushed swiftly on the dragon, and the cloak flies back in the wind.) Of what colour is the saint's hair? (It is bright auburn in colour, and curling.) What can you see surrounding his head? (A halo or aureole.) What does this show? (That he is a saint.) What look is on the saint's face? (A look of stern determination to conquer the dragon.) How does it show this? (His brows are bent and frowning, his blue eyes flash, his mouth is firmly closed, his face is rigid.) How does Saint George ride his horse at this moment? (He has risen in the stirrups.) Why has he done this? (To have more power to pin the dragon down.) Describe the horse. (A large white horse, very powerful.) What is it doing? (In the act of springing over the dragon. Describe its trappings. (They are of red leather ornamented with gold.) What do you see over his hind quarters? Of what is the saddle cloth made? (It looks like red velvet fringed with gold.) Describe the dragon. (He is black and scaly like a reptile, he has four feet each with five wicked-looking sharp claws, and a long scaly tail.) How do you know he can fly? (He has black wings looking like the wings of a huge bat—very ugly.) What sort of a head has the dragon? (A huge reptile-looking black head, ugly green eyes, huge gaping jaws with immense teeth, long red tongue.) Why are you sure the dragon will die? (Because the lance has transfixed his head.) What can you see at the right hand corner of the picture? (A human skull and leg bone.) Why do you think the artist painted these close to the dragon? (They are symbols of death.) Of what is the dragon the symbol? (He is the symbol

of the power of evil which must be destroyed by the power of good.) By looking at the picture tell about what time of the day the dragon was killed. (Near sunset.) How can you tell this? (The little clouds in the sky are painted with sunset colours, and the light of the setting sun glows on the walls of the building near the centre of the picture. Does the sunlight fall on the castle on the left? (No, it is in shadow.) After looking all round the picture, tell if the scene looks like England. (There is shown a castle which is built in a different style from those that remain in England.) What do you see in the right hand bottom corner opposite the skull? (The name *Georges Scott* painted on a scroll.) Who do you think Georges Scott is? Does a painter usually put his name on his picture? In what country is George spelled with an s at the end of the word? (In France it is written Georges.) Do you think from this the artist is a Frenchman? (Yes, it is a French Christian name.) What country does the picture show perhaps? (Probably France, especially as castles like the one painted on the left are seen in France, with towers like pepper pots.) Do you think his surname is French or British? (It is a British surname.) Where was the picture exhibited? (In the Paris Salon—the equivalent of the Royal Academy in London.)

### STORY

This story was written more than 300 years ago by a famous English poet named Edmund Spenser. It is found, among others, in a long poem which tells of a Fairy Queen who had at her command twelve brave knights endowed with magic powers. At that time a fierce dragon was ravaging the land; his cruelty had forced a noble king and queen to take refuge in a tower surrounded by a wall of brass. This king and queen had one child, Una, who came to the court of the Fairy Queen, begging her to send one of her knights to rescue Una's parents. A youth, known as the Red-Cross

Knight, was given to her, and together they set out in search of the dragon.

As Una and the Red-Cross Knight rode on their way they came near her father's wasted lands and the brazen tower in which her parents were imprisoned.

"Dear Knight," said Una, "we are now come where our peril must begin," and warning him that they might encounter the dragon at any moment she prayed him to be constantly on his guard.

As she spoke, the maiden pointed out the tower, and at the same time a hideous roar filled the air with horror. They looked up and beheld the dragon stretched out on the sunny side of a hill. The moment that the monster saw the knight's shining armour, he raised his great frame and hastened towards them as if delighting in the prospect of fresh prey.

Then the knight bade Una leave him and withdraw to a hill at a little distance, where she could watch the fight and yet be secure from danger. The dreadful beast came on steadily, half walking, half flying in his haste. He covered the ground quickly, and as he went, cast a huge shadow over the wasted land.

As the dragon approached the knight, he reared on high his monstrous body, which looked the more horrible that it was swollen with wrath and venom. It was covered with brazen scales, so closely placed that nothing could pierce them, and the dragon shook the scales until they sounded like the clashing of armour. He had wings which he spread out like great sail, and when these smote the air, the clouds fled in terror before them, and the heavens stood still in astonishment. His tail was twisted in a hundred folds, and lay over his scaly back, and when he unfolded its coils and displayed its full length, it swept the land behind him for three furlongs. At its extremity were inserted two deadly stings, sharper than the sharpest steel. And still sharper and more cruel were his claws, so cruel and ravenous, that all they touched, and all they drew within their reach, suffered certain destruction.

But most fearful of all was the dragon's head. It had deep-set eyes, that burned with rage, and shone forth like shining shields; in his gaping jaws were set three rows of iron teeth. From these trickled the blood of the creatures he had lately devoured, while from between his jaws issued clouds of smoke that filled the air with sulphurous stench. Such was the foe the Red-Cross Knight must face and conquer. On came the dragon, raising his haughty crest, shaking his scales, and hastening so joyously to the combat, that the knight inwardly quaked for fear.

And now began the first of three days' mortal strife. The Red-Cross Knight couched his lance and ran fiercely at his foe. The lance did not wound, but it annoyed the dragon: he turned aside, and as he turned, swept both the horse and its rider to the ground. In a moment the knight had risen, and renewed the attack. Never before, although many a knight had fought with him, had the dragon felt such force in the arm of a foe, and yet the deadly thrusts glanced back from his well-armed breast, leaving him unhurt.

But the knight's persistent attacks roused the monster's rage. He spread his great wings, and lifting himself into the air swooped down upon his foe, and seized both horse and man in his cruel claws. He carried them an arrow's shoot, when their fierce struggles obliged him to let them fall; and the knight, putting the force of three men into a single blow, once more aimed his lance at the impenetrable scales. Again the blow glanced aside, but this time it glided close under the dragon's upraised wing, and there inflicted so sore a wound, that the monster, unaccustomed to pain, roared aloud with a noise like that of the ocean in a wintry storm.

The weapon stuck in the dragon's flesh, until he contrived to tear it out with his claws, whereupon black blood streamed forth from his wound, and flames of fire from his nostrils. In his rage, he flung his great tail about: it twisted round the

horse's legs, and the steed in its effort to get free only became the more entangled, and at length was forced to throw the knight. Quickly he arose, and laying hold of his powerful sword, struck the dragon a blow that seemed as if it must prove fatal. But the hardened iron took little effect upon the still more hardened crest, although it fell with a force that made the dragon careful to avoid its blows.

The knight grew angry when he saw his strokes of no avail, and struck again with greater might, but the steel recoiled, leaving no mark where it had fallen.

Now the dragon was suffering from the wound under his wing, and impatient of the pain, tried again to rise into the air. But the injured wing impeded his effort, and full of rage and disappointment, he uttered a roar such as had never before been heard, and once more sent out flames of fire. These came right into the face of the knight, and making their way through his armour, burned him so sorely that he could hardly endure its weight. Faint and weary, burned, and sore with his wounds, worn out with heat and toil, and with the very arms he bore, death seemed to him much easier than life. "But death will never come when needs require," and his despair well nigh cost him dear.

The dragon, seeing his discomfiture, turned upon him, and smiting him with his tail, felled him to the ground. Very near, then, was the knight to the death he coveted. However, it so happened that, unknown to him, a well of rare virtue lay close by. Its waters could cure sicknesses, make the aged young, wash sinful crimes away, and even restore the dead to life. In the happy days before the accursed dragon had brought ruin to the land, it had been called the Well of Life; and though he had defiled its sacred waters with innocent blood, it still retained many of its ancient virtues. Into this spring the knight fell.

And now the sun began to set, and Una, watching from her hill, saw her champion fall, and saw, too, that the monster swelled

out his proud breast, and clapped his great wings as if in victory. Little knowing the boon that had befallen her knight, the maiden grew very sad at heart, thinking all was lost. No sleep was possible to her. With folded hands, on lowly knees, she spent the long anxious hours in earnest prayer.

When morning came, Una arose and looked anxiously around to see if, haply, she might discover the warrior still alive, for with the morning new hopes frequently arise. By and by, to her great joy, she saw him start up, all fresh and invigorated by the powers of the wondrous well. The dragon was confounded at the sight, and knew not whether this was his foe of yesterday, or another come to take his place, when the knight uplifted his bright blade, and struck the monster a blow upon the skull, which wounded him in right earnest.

Whether the sword had received some secret virtue from the waters of the well, or whether they had only increased the strength of the knight's right arm, none can tell, but never before had a blow taken such effect on the cruel monster. He yelled aloud as if he were a hundred lions all in one, he tossed his great tail aloft, and scourged the air into a tempest, and flung about its mighty length, so that it overthrew high trees, and tore rocks into pieces. Then advancing his tail high above his head, the dragon struck the knight and smote him to the ground. The cruel sting pierced through his shield and fixed itself in his shoulder. There it remained, causing him very severe pain.

The knight was nearly overcome, but more mindful of the issues involved in the combat than of his own suffering, he rose and tried to free himself. Unable to loose the sting, and inflamed with wrath and anguish, he struck the dragon on the tail, and at one blow cut off five of the mighty joints. Deeply enraged, the creature thought to avenge himself once for all, and gathering himself up, fell fiercely on the knight's shield, and kept fast hold of it.

And now was the Red-Cross Knight terribly encumbered. Three times he strove to release his shield from the dragon's clutch, and three times failed. In despair he summoned his trusty sword to his aid, and laid about with it so ruthlessly that at length the creature was forced to withdraw one foot in order to defend himself. Then the knight directed all his blows against the other foot, still fast fixed on the shield, until, by happy fortune, the sword fell upon the ankle joint and severed it.

Upon this there burst forth from the beast such smoke and flames and brimstone as to dim the light of heaven itself and force the warrior to retreat, lest he should be scorched alive. As he did so, his weary feet slipped, and he fell down, sore terrified with the dread of shame.

Now it chanced that close by where he fell there grew a goodly tree, laden with apples. Great virtue had belonged to this tree, and even now there trickled forth from it a stream of balm that fell on the ground and watered it as if with dew. This little stream imputed life and long health to all whom it benefited, and into its soothing power the knight fell, on this, the close of the second day's fight.

Once more his life was saved, for the dragon, who was of death and darkness, dared not approach aught life-giving. And now the daylight began to fade, and Una, seeing her lord again fall and lie motionless, knowing not that he lay in the healing balm, was once more stricken with sore afflict, and watched and prayed for him all through the weary darkness.

When morning again dawned Una saw her knight arise healed and refreshed, ready for renewed combat. And the dragon, who had lain waiting for the day that he might destroy him, grew afraid when he beheld his foe as fresh as if he had not fought at all. Nevertheless, he advanced, full of his wonted pride and rage, with jaws wide open, thinking to devour his foe at the first encounter.

But the knight was prepared to meet

him; thrusting his keen lance between the monster's open jaws, he ran it through his mouth, and wounded him with a mortal wound. Then the dragon fell, and as he fell the earth groaned as if unable to support his weight. And the valiant knight himself trembled, so huge and hideous did the slain dragon look.

Una, who had seen all from her hill, dared not at first approach, but at length finding that the huge mass made no movement, she shook off her terror, and, drawing near, saw that the terrible monster was indeed dead. Then praising God, she thanked her brave champion for the great deliverance.

The sun had scarcely risen above the eastern horizon, when the watchman who stood on the battlements of the brazen tower, saw the last breath of the monster fade away, and knowing then that the dragon was dead, shouted out the glad tidings.

The king heard the shout, and rose in joyful haste, although for his feebleness he could not make much speed, and looked forth to see if the tidings were indeed true. When he found that they were, he commanded the brazen gate, long closed, to be thrown open, and peace and joy to be proclaimed throughout the land for the dragon was slain! Then the trumpets sounded the happy victory, and the people, with one accord, assembled as in solemn festival, to rejoice over the fall of the great and terrible beast.

From the tower came forth the king and queen, clad in worn and sober garments. Grave nobles attended them, and a band of young men, bearing laurel boughs, followed in glad procession. Headed by the king these made their way to the Red-Cross Knight, and, prostrating themselves before him, loudly proclaimed him their lord and patron, casting their laurels at his feet.

As they did so, there issued from the brazen gate maidens adorned with garlands, bearing sweet-sounding timbrels, and dancing as they went, while with them were children who sang to the maidens' music.

This second procession wended its way until it came where Una stood, and there they stayed and sang aloud her praises, and set a green garland on her head, crowning her "'twixt earnest and 'twixt game."

Last of all came the mob, hurrying to see the dragon-slayer, whom they looked upon as sent from heaven, and at whom they stared with gaping wonder. But when they arrived where the dead dragon lay they were filled with fear. Some, indeed, were so terrified that they fled away; others pretended to conceal their fear, while one who wished to be thought wiser than all the rest, suggested that the dragon might not be really dead. At this another immediately declared that he could see fire sparkle in his eye, while a third was persuaded he had seen the monster wink. Others, more bold, stood near its carcase, in order to measure how many acres it covered.

Thus the people flocked about the dead dragon, while the king and his train were entertaining the knight with gifts of ivory and gold. After thanking him a thousand

times, and embracing their fair daughter Una, the king and queen conducted them to the palace, while the people strewed the way with their garments and shouted aloud for joy.

Now when the Red-Cross Knight had rested and been feasted, the king and queen called upon him to relate the story of his adventures. Tears ran down their cheeks as they listened, and when he had ended, the king again welcomed him to the palace, and spoke of his resting there from all further toil. Then the king called for Una, his only daughter, and with his own hands betrothed her to the knight.

After this George was no longer known as the Red-Cross Knight, but as St. George, the slayer of the dragon—the great Saint George whom England has made her patron saint.

#### Sentence making.

1. Tell why we think that Saint George was very brave.
2. Tell how Saint George was cured of his wounds.
3. Tell all you can about a dragon.



## 3. IDUNA AND THE APPLES OF YOUTH



*From the picture by J. Doyle Penrose]*

IDUNA AND THE APPLES OF YOUTH

*[By permission of the Artist]*

**L**et the children examine the picture (No. 148 in the portfolio) in silence, and then invite them to tell all they can about it.

How many people are there in this picture? Do you think it is a picture of long ago? Why? Where do you think the people are? Why is it so dark? On what is the beautiful lady sitting? What has she in her hand? What is the strange box beside her? Of what do you think it is made? What is inside it? Do you think her dress pretty? Of what stuff is it probably made? How is it fastened? How do you fasten your dress? What does she wear near her waist? Of what are belts generally made now? How does she wear her hair? With what is it bound? How are the men dressed? What do they wear on

their heads? Have all the helmets wings? What weapons have the men? What is lying by a rock on the right hand side? Is the dress of the men under the trees the same as that of the others? How are their legs covered? What is the name of the little animal on the left? What flowers do you think are growing? Do you think that the men were happy with their presents? Do they look grateful to the lady? Who was the artist who painted this picture?

### STORY

Through the thick branches of the great trees of the forest of Asgard walked a beautiful lady. Her golden hair, in two long plaits, reached nearly to her feet, while her



lovely dress, with laced bodice, was lifted from the ground on one side by a belt of jewels. In her hand she held a casket, covered with precious stones and a sparkling light shone around her as she walked.

This lady was Iduna, the daughter of the Sun and Moon who had given her a magic casket filled with golden apples. The wonderful thing about the casket was that it was never empty for as soon as one apple was taken out another came in its place. Then too they were magic fruit, which when given to the old, would restore their youth and strength. So the old warrior gods came riding to Asgard to receive from Iduna the gift of the magic apples. When they arrived Iduna was seated on a rock in a grassy clearing of the forest. Beside her a graceful fawn was sniffing at the precious casket while with bright eyes, it watched the strangers in their shining coats of mail.

How stiffly they knelt before the fair Iduna! and how shaky were the hands stretched out to receive her gift! Immediately they felt the touch of the fruit a swift change came over them. They were no longer bent and weary. Youth returned to them. They were straight and active once more. They bowed their heads, from which the snow of age had gone, in thanks to the lovely lady who had wrought this amazing change.

Time went by, and a great sorrow came upon the people of Asgard. Iduna was lost and no one could find her. Brage, her husband who sang the most beautiful songs that could ever be heard, was so sad and lonely that he wept all day for his dear wife. Not alone was he in his grief, for the gods were growing old once more and there was no one to give them the apples of youth.

When Odin, the great Father of the gods, saw the unhappiness of his people, he determined to find out who was the cause of all this trouble. Someone must have taken Iduna away so that they could steal the golden apples from the casket which she always carried with her. But who could

it be? Who, in Asgard, was wicked enough to do such a cruel thing? Odin sat long thinking. On his shoulders were perched two ravens, which came every day to tell him of all that passed in Asgard. The Father of the gods listened to each of them and then he sent for his brother Loki.

Now Loki was bad. He was so sly that when he did an evil deed, he hid it so cleverly that very seldom did any one suspect him. But Odin's ravens, who flew everywhere, saw a great deal more than anyone else and they had whispered a secret to their master.

Loki was very much frightened when he received the message to appear before his king-brother. He trembled and shook for like most wicked people he was a great coward, especially when he feared that his badness had been found out.

With downcast head he stood before the throne, and in a stern voice the Father of the gods spoke to him.

Loki, he said, you are accused of stealing Iduna from her home here in Asgard. My people suffer greatly because of her loss. Our enemies, the Giants of the Frost, are swarming over the country. Their arrows of ice and their storms of hail will soon destroy all living things. The gods are helpless, for they are too old now to have power and strength enough to defend us. Ruin is come upon us because of the loss of Iduna and her casket. Hasten, then, confess where you have hidden her, so that we may have her restored to us. If not, Thor shall strike you with his lightning."

Loki was so scared that he stammered out the truth. It seemed that one day he walked far beyond Asgard, on and on into the country, until he was quite weary. He had been so occupied in plotting and planning wickedness that he had not noticed where he was going. Before him lay a grove of oak trees and he decided to rest for a while under one of the trees before retracing his steps. He had been sitting only a few minutes when in the blue sky he saw an eagle flying towards him. In an instant

it swooped down and seized him in its sharp talons. Then Loki knew that it was his enemy, the great giant, who had taken this form in order to capture him.

He screamed with fear as he was carried up into the air, while the sharp talons pierced him through and through. Mad with pain, he promised to give the eagle anything that was in his power, to obtain his freedom. Then the crafty giant, who hated Odin and all the gods of Asgard, said, "I will grant you your life on one condition. Iduna must be given to me."

Loki, being a coward, eagerly agreed to this plan and was set free. When he was once more safe in Asgard, he went to see Iduna. She was alone, for Brage had gone to a great meeting of the gods to sing some of his wonderful songs. With soft words Loki enticed the gentle lady to go with him beyond Asgard where the great ash tree grew. There among the branches the giant, once more in the form of an eagle, was waiting, and when he espied Iduna with Loki he flew down and carried off Iduna by her glittering belt.

Odin was terribly angry when he heard the story. In a voice of thunder he exclaimed, "Go you to the land of the giant and bring back Iduna, or Thor shall scorch you to death with his lightning." Shivering and shaking at the thought of once more putting himself in the power of the giant, Loki begged a boon from Odin. "Let me," he said, "have the power to change me into an eagle, and let me have the power to change Iduna into a nut."

The favour was granted and Loki at once became an eagle, the better to reach the dominions of the giant. There he found Iduna, fastened with chains to a tree, and weeping sorely because of the trouble she knew there must be in Asgard. Quickly he changed her into a nut, and taking her in his claws prepared to fly back to their home.

At that moment there was a mighty flap of wings and the robber giant appeared. Quickly, as quickly as the lightning flashes from Thor's sword, Loki flew off with the nut held firmly in his claws.

Then there was such a race in the air as can hardly be imagined. Faster and faster they flew, Loki with the precious nut, and his enemy close behind.

Nearer and nearer they came to Asgard. Loki screamed for help and Thor with his lightning brought down the giant scorched and dying, and with his mighty hammer made an end of him.

So Iduna returned to Asgard and once more there was peace in the land. The gods received her apples of youth and becoming young and strong again they drove away the fierce Frost Giants. The snow and ice melted and there was sunshine and warmth in Odin's dominions.

#### **Sentence making.**

1. What do you know about the magic apples?
2. Tell how Iduna was stolen from Asgard.
3. Tell how Iduna was brought back to Asgard.



## 4. THE LAMENT FOR ICARUS



*From the picture by Herbert J. Draper*

*by permission of the National Gallery*

## THE LAMENT FOR ICARUS

**L**ET the children examine the picture (No 149 in the portfolio) in silence and then invite them to tell all they can about it

At what are the three women looking? On what is the young man lying? To what

are his arms fastened? What do you think has happened to him? Where do you think the maidens live? (They are sea nymphs) What is one of them holding in her hand? What can you see at the foot of the rocks? How do people fly now? What might the

sea nymphs have thought was lying on the rock? (A large bird.) What is one of them trying to do? Who painted this picture? Where can the original painting be seen? What was the young man's name? Is it an English name? What is a "lament"?

### STORY

This is the wonderful story of a young man named Icarus who long, long ago flew with the wings of an eagle high upwards towards the sun.

In the old days when Greece was in its glory, a king called Minos reigned in Crete. He governed his people wisely, and made good laws to help them to live peaceably together. He founded a fleet of ships, not only to defend his island but also to enable his people to trade with other countries.

Being so clever himself, Minos was always searching for those who could add to his knowledge. He invited builders and artists to come to Crete to show him their wonderful work. One of the most important of these was Dedalus, a clever artist and builder, who adorned his buildings with fine statues and beautiful designs.

When the first Cretan ships were made, it was Dedalus who fashioned the sails for them, so that the winds should carry them along like white winged seagulls on the crest of the waves. Dedalus made a wooden cow for the queen. This was so lifelike that when it was placed in a meadow near the palace a country maid came running along with a pail in her hand for the milk she expected it to give.

Now in the country of Crete there lived a terrible monster called the Minotaur. It was half a man and half a bull and so fierce that everyone fled before it, for it killed all who came near it. No one had been able to destroy it, for only a man possessed of a magic sword would ever be able to do so. Worse than all, every nine years seven handsome youths and seven beautiful maidens had to be given to the beast to satisfy its hunger.

Minos, the king, ordered Dedalus to make a den among the rocks for the Minotaur, so that it should no longer prowl through the land. Dedalus made a wonderful maze or labyrinth. Hundreds of winding passages were cut in the rock so cleverly that a stranger who entered the labyrinth could never find his way out again. There in the winding passages he was in the power of the Minotaur, and perished miserably.

Dedalus did not spend all his time on building and sculpture. He longed to be able to fly in the air with wings like a bird. Day after day he thought of this, and for a long time watched the flight of birds to see how they used their wings to fly. Over and over again he tried to find out their secret, but without success.

His young son, Icarus, would listen intently when his father talked to him of his hopes. "When you have found out the secret, my father," he said, "we will fly away together and visit all the islands that lie in the great sea. We will mount up high in the clouds so that we can visit the sun and the golden land that is seen in the west when evening comes."

His father promised that the boy's wish should be granted, and he worked night and day to make wings with which he could fly. One day Dedalus fastened a grand pair of wings on his shoulders, and, wonderful to tell, found that at last he was able to fly. Like a bird he circled round and round, and then mounting higher flew far above the highest trees into the soft white clouds.

His joy was very great, and Icarus clapped his hands as he saw his father flying upwards like a huge bird. However, it was not long before a great trouble came to them both. Dedalus had been so busy learning the way to fly that he had neglected the king's work. Minos had entrusted him with the task of adorning a new council chamber with paintings of flowers and animals, such as Dedalus alone could do. The work was to be finished for a great festival that was to be held. The time was drawing near and Dedalus had forgotten all about his work.

He knew it would be impossible to do such delicate painting in a short time, and he dreaded the king's anger. Perhaps it would mean a terrible death for himself and his son. They might even be cast to the Minotaur. The only thing to be done was to fly out of the country, away from the punishment that would most certainly come to them if they stayed. Dedalus called his son and told him what had happened.

"Icarus," he said, "the danger is great. We must go quickly. We will put on our wings and fly away over the sea to Sicily. There we will stay till the king's anger has passed." Icarus agreed. Like most boys he was longing to see other lands, and he was not at all frightened to travel in such a way. He trusted his father and felt sure that he would be safe.

Dedalus fastened with wax on the boy's shoulders the beautiful wings that had once belonged to a great eagle. Then he put on his own wings and lightly they mounted into the air. Over the sea they sped, but young Icarus, growing bold, flew higher towards the sun. Graceful as any bird he sped along in its shining beams. But his wings were fastened by wax to his shoulders and as he flew upwards the hot sun melted

the wax. His beautiful wings fell off, and poor Icarus dropped far below into the deep sea. His body was tossed hither and thither by the waves, which at last cast it upon a rock where the sea nymphs lived.

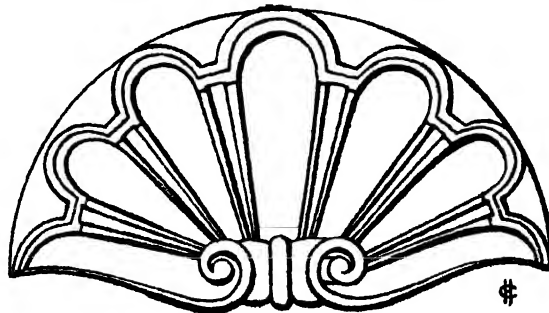
The wind carried the eagle's wings along until they too came to the rocky island. Gently the sea nymphs lifted the body of Icarus all dripping with water and covered with seaweed, and making the eagle's plumage into a downy bed they laid the body upon it. His arms they put through the straps of leather which Dedalus had so cunningly made, and there Icarus lay, as if sleeping.

Then the sea nymphs sang a song telling of his youth and beauty. They lamented his loss in such sweet melodies that the breezes carried the strains to Dedalus and soothed his sorrow.

The island on which Icarus was cast was ever after called Icaria, and the sea was called the Icarian Sea, so that the flying boy should never be forgotten.

#### **Sentence making.**

1. Tell why Dedalus is famous.
2. Tell how Icarus was killed.
3. Tell all you can about the sea nymphs.



## 5. ULYSSES AND THE SIRENS



*From the picture by J. W. Waterhouse*

*[By permission of Miss J. W. Waterhouse]*

## ULYSSES AND THE SIRENS

**L**et the children examine the picture (No. 150 in the portfolio) in silence, and then invite them to tell all they can about it.

In what ways is this a strange picture? What do you notice about the man standing up in the centre of the ship? Does he look like an Englishman? How is he dressed? What do you think the birdlike women are doing? Does the man look as if he is trying to get away from the mist of the ship? Do the men who are rowing take any notice of the birdlike women? Look at the heads of the men and tell what you notice about it. What do you see beyond the ship? What birds do you know that live on rocks beside the sea? Where do you think the birdlike women live? Tell all you can about the ship.

**STORY**

You already know how the cunning Ulysses helped the Greeks to build the Wooden Horse so that they were able to

take the city of Troy (See History section, page 47). The war, you will understand, lasted ten long years and then Ulysses and his companions began their journey by sea to the island of Ithaca, where Penelope was waiting patiently for her husband. Ulysses had many wonderful adventures on the way home and this picture portrays one of the most wonderful. He had already been warned that near an island by which his ship would pass there lived some beautiful creatures called Sirens. These creatures had the heads of lovely women and the feathered bodies of birds. The sirens sang like women but with birdlike voices, their songs were the sweetest that ever man could hear. They were enchanted songs, too, for all who heard them were drawn nearer and nearer to listen. Sailors passing by in ships, seeing the women-birds and hearing their sweet songs, were certain to land on the island, and immediately they stepped from their vessel on to the shore they died. The island was

white as ivory with the bones of those who had fallen into the power of the Sirens.

Now Ulysses, as you know, was a clever man. He knew that if his men heard the songs of the Sirens they would be lured nearer and nearer to the island and then they would land and all would be lost. He knew too that even he himself could not resist the singing of the beautiful creatures, so he thought of a clever plan to save his men and himself. First he ordered his men to fill their ears with wax so that they could not hear the singing; then he ordered them to bind him tightly to the mast of the ship so that he could not get away. "No matter how I plead or command," he told them, "you must not set me free until we have safely passed the island."

The sailors obeyed. Ulysses was firmly fastened to the mast of the ship and then, the men bending to their oars, the ship flew like a white bird past the island of death. They did not go swiftly enough, however, for the Sirens saw them. Sweetly they sang their wonderful melodies. Softly and tenderly they begged Ulysses to rest awhile. In song they urged him to taste the delightful foods that they could offer him.

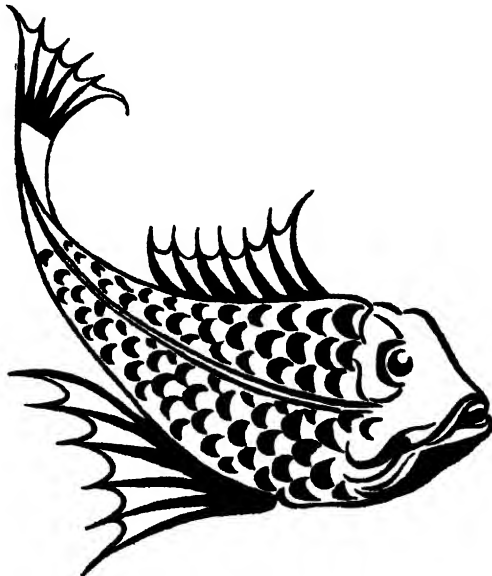
Then, when they saw the ship sailing on,

they surrounded it with flapping wings, while with marvellous sweetness they pleaded to them to stop and rest. It was all so wonderful that Ulysses could not restrain himself. The charm was greater than he could bear. With frantic cries he begged his crew to unfasten the cords that bound him; but as their ears were stopped they heard nothing. He made wild signs to them to wait and listen to the Sirens' voices. They took no heed of him, however, but sped on. What a terrible trial it was for Ulysses, as he strained to break away from his bonds! But how thankful he was afterwards that his men had so faithfully obeyed him.

As the ship sailed away he heard the last songs of the Sirens, now changed into a wail of disappointment, and he knew that the danger was over. Then the sailors unbound Ulysses and took the wax from their ears. The Sirens had lost their victims this time; their songs had been in vain.

#### **Sentence making.**

1. Tell all you can about the Sirens.
2. Tell why Ulysses let his men fasten him to the mast of his ship.
3. Tell how the sailors got safely past the Sirens.



## 6. ORPHEUS AND HIS LYRE



ORPHEUS AND HIS LYRE

**L**ET the children examine the picture (No. 151 in the portfolio) and then invite them to tell all they can about it.

**STORY**

The story of Orpheus is a very, very old one that was told to boys and girls of Ancient Greece, long, long ago. Orpheus was a great musician. His mother, the goddess Calliope (the Beautiful Voiced) had taught him to sing and play upon the lyre when he was a little boy. As he grew to youth and manhood there was no one in the world whose music could be compared to his in charm and excellence.

"Orpheus is singing!" the wild beasts roared, and, leaving their dens, they sought the spot where the master musician played.

"Orpheus sings!" murmured the deer and other timid animals. Forgetting their fear, they, too, sought out the singer.

"Hark! Orpheus is singing!" chanted the birds. They flew in silence to where he sat, listening to the voice that surpassed that of the finest singer in the feathered world.

"This is Orpheus singing!" said the flowers, lifting their lovely blossoms to catch each wondrous note.

One day, as Orpheus wandered singing and playing beside a stream, he met the nymph



Eurydice. She was so beautiful that Orpheus stopped his music to gaze on her. "I love you, Eurydice," he sighed. "Will you marry me?"

"I love you, too, Orpheus," replied Eurydice, smiling. "Never have I heard music so wonderful as yours."

So Orpheus and Eurydice were married. They were very happy as they wandered together through the sunny meadows and leafy woods of Greece. Then one day Eurydice was bitten by a poisonous snake, and, sad to say, she died.

"Eurydice, Eurydice! Come back to me!" cried poor Orpheus. He was so distressed that he could no longer play and sing. "Where are you, Eurydice? Where are you, Eurydice?" was his mournful cry.

The Ancient Greeks believed that when people died they went to a country beneath the earth to live with Pluto, the King of the Underworld. "I, too, will go to the Underworld," said Orpheus. "I will beg King Pluto to allow Eurydice to come back with me."

A long and dangerous journey lay before the dauntless musician. When he had found the entrance to the Underworld, a huge cave in a steep cliff side, he entered boldly into the gloom beyond. Down, down he went, until at last he came to a sluggish, black river.

"This is the Styx," said Orpheus. "Nine times it encircles the Underworld, the Land of the Dead. Somehow I must get across."

As Orpheus stood on the river bank wondering how he could cross, he saw a boat approaching through the gloom. "Go back, rash man!" exclaimed Charon, the ferryman. "No living man may cross this river."

Then Orpheus, knowing the power of his music, began to play and sing. When Charon heard that magic music, he brought his boat close to the bank and rowed Orpheus across the gloomy Styx.

King Pluto's palace now stood before Orpheus, but the entrance gate was guarded by Cerberus, the three-headed dog. When the creature saw the stranger it opened its three huge mouths, and barking with a sound like thunder, it prepared to spring.

"Quiet, Cerberus!" said Orpheus, as he began to play his lyre.

Again his magic music proved its worth. The terrible three-headed dog sank down in silence, and Orpheus passed safely by.

Soon he was inside the palace and, groping his way along the dimly-lit corridors, he came at length to the dark hall where King Pluto sat upon his jet-black throne.

"What are you doing here, live man?" demanded the King.

"I have come to seek my wife, Eurydice," Orpheus replied. "I pray you let her come back to me."

"That is impossible," said the King. "Eurydice is dead."

Again Orpheus began to play and sing, and again the magic of his music worked. King Pluto's face grew kinder and his voice softer. At length he said, "I grant your request, Orpheus. You may have Eurydice back, but remember this. Should you look on her face before she is upon the earth, she must return to me, and never while you are alive will you see her again."

Brimming over with joy, Orpheus turned round at the King's command. "Eurydice is following," King Pluto said.

Out of the hall walked Orpheus and along the corridors, playing and singing as before. After him came Eurydice. Orpheus longed to turn to look at her, but he remembered what King Pluto had said. His magic music took them safely past Cerberus, and Charon rowed them across the Styx. Then began the steep upward climb to the earth above.

Up, up strode Orpheus. How hard was the climb! How he longed to give Eurydice a helping hand! Suddenly a great fear beset him. Suppose Eurydice was not following after all? The next moment he had turned to see. There were three bright flashes of blue lightning, and three loud peals of thunder. "Oh, Orpheus, what have you done?" Eurydice cried in agony. "Farewell!" And in a moment she was gone.

Poor Orpheus! He did his best to get Eurydice back again, but this time his efforts failed. Then his music lost its magic power, and for many a long year he wandered sad and lonely about the earth.

**SECOND YEAR'S COURSE  
OF  
COMPOSITION**



*[Photograph D. McLeish]*

LOOKING UP FLEET STREET FROM ST CLEMENT DANES

*[This church was almost completely destroyed by enemy aircraft in 1940]*

# THE SECOND YEAR'S COURSE OF COMPOSITION

## INTRODUCTION

**T**HE teacher will find it helpful to read the *Introduction* to The First Year's Course of Composition which begins on page 169 of Volume I. The plan of the lessons for the second year follows closely on that of the first year. Here are set out a collection of selected stories which the teacher can first read to the children and afterwards utilise for oral

and written exercises. The exercises are carefully graded to cover a simple course of grammar and composition. (See Contents.) A list of words, arranged in groups for spelling and composition, is included at the end of the lessons. The exercises marked with an asterisk at the end of each section are a little more difficult than others in the course. They are intended for those members of the class who are sufficiently far advanced to write simple sentences without assistance.

## 1.—THE STORY OF THE DANDELION

(Capital Letters and Full Stops)



## INTRODUCTION

**A** SHORT talk on the home, dress and mode of life of the Red Indians forms a pleasing introduction to this lesson. A comprehensive account of these people is given in the geography section, and a blackboard sketch of a Red Indian smoking a peace pipe is shown on page 273 of this volume. Mention should be made of the peace pipe, which Shawondasee smokes as

he lies in the sun. A reference to *Hiawatha* as the source of this story will provide a setting for the study of the lesson (see descriptive geography Chap. I). The children should understand that the south wind is warm and blows from the south to the north, while the north wind is cold and blows from the north to the south. Explain the meaning of a prairie,—a vast grassy meadow. See that the children realise the significance of the change in colour of the

maiden's hair from yellow to white. Encourage them to tell all they have noticed about a dandelion before proceeding with the reading. Many children may have puffed away the feathery seeds of a dandelion to the familiar words: "She loves me, she loves me not." The name dandelion is derived from the French *dent de lion* (lion's tooth), an appellation given on account of the toothlike lobes of the leaves.

### STORY

The Red Indians who live in America tell a charming story about the dandelion. In the far south where the summer never ends lives Shawondasee, the South Wind. Shawondasee is a fat and lazy man; all day long he lies in the warm sunshine, listless and careless. The smoke from his pipe fills the air with a soft haze, smoothing the outline of the rugged hills.

Once as Shawondasee lay gazing northward, he saw far away on the prairie a maiden standing all alone. She was tall and slender, clad in robes of brightest green, and her hair was coloured yellow like the rays of the sun. As Shawondasee looked upon her, he loved her. Day by day he lay and gazed at her and sighed with love. But he was too fat and lazy to bestir himself and woo her.

One morning when he looked northward he saw that the maiden's yellow hair had turned white. The lazy Shawondasee was heartbroken, for he thought that his brother, the cold North Wind, had laid his icy hand upon her and turned her tresses white with snow. Shawondasee sighed so heavily with sorrow that the white locks of the maiden were all blown away, and the air seemed full of snowflakes. The maiden had vanished for ever.

Poor Shawondasee did not know that he had loved no maiden, but a prairie dandelion, whose white feathery head he had puffed away with sighing. Still he sits and sighs for his loved one with the green robe and the yellow hair.

### ORAL WORK

- Where do the Red Indians live?
- What do you know about Red Indians?
- What does the beginning of the story tell you?
- Who is Shawondasee?
- Describe Shawondasee.
- How does Shawondasee spend his time?
- What does the middle of the story tell you?
- What is a prairie?
- What did Shawondasee think he saw on the prairie?
- Why did he sit and sigh?
- Why did he not go to the maiden and woo her?
- What change did he see in her?
- What did he think had happened?
- How did the maiden lose her hair?
- What does the end of the story tell you?
- Retell the story.
- Children ask questions.

### WRITTEN WORK

#### I. Children's drill.

- Write your name. Write the date.
- Dictation.*—The South Wind still sits and thinks of his dear one with the green robe and the yellow hair.

#### II. Exercises on capital letters.

*Definition*—Names of people, places, days and months begin with capital letters. The single letter *I* is always a capital.

- A. Write on the blackboard:
  1. The people who tell this story are called red indians.
  2. The red indians live in the country of america.
  3. The man's name was shawondasee.
  4. He sat and gazed at the maiden from monday to saturday.
  5. On sunday morning he found that her hair had turned white.

- 6 Now he sits from January to December sighing with sorrow.
- 7 But I think shawondasee was very foolish.

The children must rewrite these sentences, putting in the capital letters.

*Definition*—A sentence begins with a capital letter and ends with a full stop

B Write on the blackboard

- 1 the maiden was standing alone on the prairie
- 2 she was tall and slender
- 3 she was dressed in robes of brightest green
- 4 her hair was coloured yellow like the sun's rays
- 5 one morning her yellow hair had all turned white
- 6 the maiden was really a dandelion

The children must rewrite the above sentences putting in the capital letters and full stops

C Write on the blackboard

- 1 the boy next door has three sisters May, Mary and Lucy
- 2 I hope I shall win a prize this term
- 3 on Monday my brother John is going away
- 4 we have our summer holidays from June to August
- 5 Betty said I had taken her ball
- 6 on Saturday Henry and I always play cricket

The children must rewrite these sentences correctly

### III \* Sentence making.

Tell in one sentence how Shawondasee spent his time

Describe the maiden that Shawondasee thought he saw

Tell in one sentence what change came over the maiden

## 2.—THE LION IN LOVE

(Subject and Predicate)

### INTRODUCTION

THIS story will require little explanation. Run over with the children the characteristics of the lion, which are those of the cat,—strong teeth and sharp claws, a cat could not catch mice without her claws and teeth. The lion lives in the forest and therefore would be most likely to meet a woodman. See that the children realise what is the occupation of the woodman and the use of his axe.

### STORY

Once a lion fell in love with the beautiful daughter of a poor woodman. He went to her father and said 'My dear sir, I wish to marry your lovely daughter. Will you give your consent?'

The poor woodman was most surprised and perplexed. He did not know what to reply, for though he could not bear to give his only daughter to be the wife of a lion, yet he dared not offend so powerful an animal.

At last he said to the lion 'My daughter is very young and timid and you are so strong and fierce that you would not make a good husband for her. However, if you will first have all your teeth drawn out and your nails cut you shall have her, for then she will no longer be afraid to marry you.'

The lion was so much in love that he agreed. His teeth were all drawn out and his nails were cut off. Then, when the woodman saw that the lion was powerless, he killed him with his axe and so rid his daughter of an unwelcome husband.

### ORAL WORK

What does the beginning of the story tell you?

To whom did the lion go?

What did the lion wish?

What does the middle of the story tell you?

Why did the woodman not reply at once?

Why was the woodman afraid to offend the lion?

What do you think would have offended the lion?

Tell what the woodman replied.

What did the lion agree to do?

What does the end of the story tell you?

Retell the story.

Children ask questions.

The woodman	were drawn out.
His teeth	were cut off.

The children must put the correct naming-part (or subject) with each stating-part (or predicate).

B. Write on the blackboard:

1. The bird —.
2. The train —.
3. The boat —.
4. Water —.

The children must supply a stating-part (or predicate) to each of these sentences.

C. Write on the blackboard:

1. — wished to marry the woodman's daughter.
2. — killed the lion with his axe.
3. — are seen in the field in spring.
4. — is the hottest month of the year.

The children must supply a naming-part (or subject) to each of these sentences.

### WRITTEN WORK

#### I. Children's drill.

Write your full name. Write the date. Write the names of this month and the next.

*Dictation.*—The lion was so much in love that he agreed to have his teeth drawn out and his nails cut off.

#### II. Exercises on subject and predicate.

*Definition.*—Every sentence is made up of a naming-part (or subject) and a stating-part (or predicate).

A. Write on the blackboard:

The daughter	fell in love.
His nails	did not know what to reply.
A lion	was very young and timid.

#### III. Sentence making.

Tell in one sentence why the lion went to see the woodman.

Tell what the woodman told the lion.

Tell why the woodman's daughter did not marry the lion.



## 3.—THE HANDSOME STAG

(Nouns)



## INTRODUCTION

A BLACKBOARD sketch of the head of a stag to show his antlers is given on page 273. Probably many children will have seen their reflections in pools, question them as to what condition the water must be in to give a distinct reflection—it must be clear and still. Country children will be acquainted with hunting in many districts, but to others this will need explanation. A blackboard sketch of a huntsman's horn is given on page 273. It is the duty of the huntsman to lead the chase, the horn is used as a signal to the hounds, telling them what to do. The hounds are a special breed of smooth-coated dog, and must be very well trained for scent and speed. They have a curious voice which is known as "baying."

## STORY

A stag was one morning drinking at a forest pool, when he caught sight of his reflection in the clear water.

"What a handsome beast I am!" he thought. "My antlers branch from my head like young trees, my neck is strong, my coat is smooth and glossy; my eyes sparkle like

stars. I am a fine fellow! I only wish my legs were more shapely. They are so long and thin that I am ashamed of them."

Just then the stag heard the sound of the huntsman's horn, and the voices of the hounds. He dashed away through the forest, borne swiftly along by the long thin legs that he scorned. Gradually the forest grew thicker, till at last his great spreading antlers caught in the branches of a tree. He strove madly to escape, while the baying of the hounds drew nearer and nearer. Alas! his struggles were in vain, his antlers held him fast and he was caught by the huntsman and his hounds.

"How foolish I have been!" cried the dying stag. "I see now that my splendid horns are the cause of my death, while my thin legs would have saved me!"

The things we prize most are not always the best for us.

## ORAL WORK

What was the stag doing at the beginning of the story?

What did the stag do in the middle of the story?

What happened to the stag at the end of the story?



Which part of himself did the stag prize most?

Why did the stag run away?

How was he held fast in the forest?

Which parts of himself did the stag find to be of most use to him?

Why did the stag say he had been foolish?

Retell the story

(Children ask questions)

### WRITING WORK

#### I Children's drill.

Write your name Write the day of the week Write the name of the story

*Dictation* The things we prize most are not always the best for us

#### II Exercises on nouns.

*Definition* — A name word or noun is the name of something

A Write the following on the blackboard *antlers, trees, eyes, stag, death, water, hounds, coat, legs, pool*

A came down to a to drink and saw himself in the He admired his spreading, his smooth and his sparkling but he felt ashamed of his they were so long and thin When he was forced to run away from the, however, he found his long were very useful while his became caught in the — and were the cause of his

The children must write and complete the above story, using the name words (or nouns) from the given list

B Write the following on the blackboard

- 1 The huntsman chases the (pig, stag, cow)
- 2 The huntsman blows a (whistle, trumpet, horn)
- 3 (Donkeys, Dogs, Rabbits) are used for hunting

4 A donkey has long (hair, whiskers, ears).

5 The (nose, coat, eye) of a horse is smooth and glossy.

The children must write and complete the above sentences with the appropriate name words (or nouns)

#### III \* Sentence making.

Describe a stag

Write two sentences about hunting

Tell how the stag met his death

## 4 THE FOX AND THE ASS

(Verbs)

### INTRODUCTION

**R**UN over with the children the characteristics of the lion, the ass and the fox. Bring out in particular the stupidity of the ass contrasted with the astuteness of the fox. There is a blackboard sketch of an ass in a lion's skin given on page 273. Explain why the lion is called the king of the beasts.

### STORY

An ass one day found a lion's skin. He wrapped himself in it and pretended to be the lion himself. He ran about the forest in his new coat frightening the other animals. As soon as they saw him they fled in terror, for they thought he was really the king of the beasts.

Presently the ass met a fox. Anxious to frighten him too the ass rushed at him and tried to roar. But the fox stood quite still, with a grin on his face.

"My friend," said the fox, quietly, "if you had only kept silent, I might have thought you were a lion as the other animals did. Directly you began to bray, I knew you for what you are — a donkey."

We must mind what we say, as well as what we do.

## ORAL WORK

What does the beginning of the story tell you?

What is another name for an *ass*?

Whom did the ass pretend to be?

What did the other animals think of him?

What did the other animals do when they saw the ass?

Who is the "king of the beasts"?

What does the middle of the story tell you?

Whom did the ass meet?

What did the ass do when he met the fox?

Why did the fox grin?

What does the end of the story tell you?

What do we learn from this story?

Retell the story.

Children ask questions.

Cats  
Dogs  
Fires

bark.  
tick.  
crow.

The children must put the correct stating-word (or verb) with each name-word (or noun).

B. Write on the blackboard: *frightened, stood, found, met, thought, ran.*

One day an ass — a lion's skin. He — about the forest and — all the other animals. They — he was really the lion. Then the ass — a fox. But the fox — quite still with a grin on his face.

The children must write and complete the above passage with the correct stating-words (or verbs) from the list.

C. Write on the blackboard:

1. Donkeys (sing, bray, talk).
2. Lions (quack, cry, roar).
3. The ass (wrapped, kept, stood) himself in the lion's skin.
4. The ass (danced, rushed, rose) at the fox.
5. "You are a donkey," (kept, thought, said) the fox.

The children must write and complete the above sentences with the appropriate stating-words (or verbs).

III.\* **Sentence making.**

Tell in two sentences how the ass pretended to be a lion.

Tell in two sentences how the fox found out that he was not a lion.

Tell what you know about a donkey.

## WRITTEN WORK

I. **Children's drill.**

Write the date. Write the name of the story. Write a name for the ass.

*Dictation.*—We must mind what we say, as well as what we do.

II. **Exercises on verbs.**

*Definition.*—The chief word in the stating-part (or predicate) of a sentence is called the stating-word (or verb).

A Write on the blackboard:

Lions	luzz
Cocks	inew.
Bees	burn.
Clocks	roar.



## 5.—THE WISE MAID OF WESSEX

## PART I

(Adjectives)



## INTRODUCTION

**I**N connection with this story it will be necessary to tell the children that England was at one time divided into many kingdoms, each ruled by a particular king. If it is convenient to do so, point out the kingdom of Wessex on the map, and the town of Winchester where King Ine is said to have had his palace. There is a blackboard sketch of the Wise Maid holding a bundle of tow in her hand on page 273.

## STORY

Long ago, in the south of England, there was a kingdom called Wessex. It was ruled by King Ine, a brave and handsome man who had one great failing. He had a very bad temper. He was ashamed of this fault, and made up his mind to marry some wise maiden who would cure him.

One afternoon he rode out from his palace at Winchester into the great forest. Feeling thirsty, he stopped at a woodman's hut and asked for some milk. The milk was brought to him by the woodman's pretty

daughter Edith. The king drank it, and handed back the empty mug to Edith saying, "I am King Ine of Wessex. If you can empty all the seas of the world with this mug, I will make you my queen."

Edith went into the hut and brought out a handful of tow, or loose threads of rope. This she offered to the king. "If you can stop up all the rivers of the world with this tow, I will do as you wish," she said.

No woman had ever given him such a clever answer.

"You are the wise maid for whom I am searching," said King Ine. He set Edith on his horse before him and rode back to Winchester to make her his queen.

## ORAL WORK

Of whom does the beginning of the story tell you?

Of whom does the middle of the story tell you?

What does the end of the story tell you?

What great fault had the King of Wessex?

What did he make up his mind to do?

How did the king meet Edith?

What did the king tell Edith to do with the mug?

What did Edith tell the king to do with the tow?

Why did the king make Edith his queen?  
Retell the story.

Children ask questions.

King Ine was a — and — man, but he had one — failing. He had a very — temper. He made up his mind to marry some — maid who would cure him of his fault. By her — answer the king knew that Edith was fit to be his queen. If she had given him a — reply he would not have married her.

The children must write and complete this passage with adjectives from the given list.

### WRITTEN WORK

#### I. Children's drill.

Write the day of the week. Write the name of the month. Write the name of the story.

*Dictation.*—A wise maid makes a good wife. The king knew this, and chose the clever daughter of a woodman to be his wife.

#### II. Exercises on adjectives.

*Definition.*—A descriptive-word (or adjective) tells you more about a name-word (or noun).

A. Write the following on the blackboard:

Great	man
Creamy	maiden
Handsome	forest
Loose	mug
Pretty	milk
Empty	threads of rope

The children must write the nouns with their correct adjectives.

B. Write the following on the blackboard:

1. — grass.
2. — cat.
3. — fairy.
4. — sky.
5. — baby.
6. — hair.

The children must supply an adjective to each of the above nouns.

C. Write on the blackboard: *brave, foolish, wise, great, clever, handsome, bad.*

#### III.\* Sentence making.

Tell how the king met Edith.

Make a sentence telling what tow is.

Tell why the king married a woodman's daughter.

### 6.—THE WISE MAID OF WESSEX

#### PART II

(Synonyms and Opposites)

#### STORY

**B**EFORE Edith and King Ine were married, the bride said to her bridegroom, "It is well known that you have a hasty temper. If I should ever make you angry and you should send me back to my father, will you promise me that I may take a parting gift home with me?"

"Such a thing will never happen," said Ine. "I love you far too dearly to quarrel with you. Nevertheless, if I am ever so foolish as to send you home, I promise that you may take with you whatever you value most."

Then the marriage took place and for a time all went well; until one day Edith disagreed with her husband. The king was so angry that he ordered her to return home. That night Edith put some medicine into the king's wine, so that he fell into a heavy sleep. Then she ordered the servants to carry him gently to her father's hut.

When the king awoke next morning he was amazed to find himself in the hut in the forest.

"Who brought me here?" he bawled in a great rage.

"I did," replied his wife, quietly. "You are my parting gift, and the treasure that I value most."

At her loving words, all the king's anger died.

"Truly," said he, as he kissed her, "I am a fortunate man, for my wife is the dearest as well as the wisest maid in Wessex."

### ORAL WORK

What did Edith say to the king before they were married?

What did the king promise his bride?

What happened one day?

What did Edith do before she left for her father's hut?

What did King Ine ask the next morning?

What did his wife reply?

What does the end of the story tell you?

Retell the story

Children ask questions.

### WRITTEN WORK

#### I. Children's drill.

Write your name. Write the date. Write the names of the last three days of the week. Write the names of the first three months of the year.

*Dictation.*—One day the king was angry with his wife. He ordered her to return to her own home in the forest. When she left, she took the sleeping king with her, who was himself her parting gift and the treasure she most prized.

#### II. Exercises on synonyms and opposites.

A Write on the blackboard: *softly, prize, dropped, present, quick, shouted, silly.*

1. King Ine had a hasty temper.

2. "I shall never be so foolish as to send you home," he said.

3. He fell into a heavy sleep.

4. "Who brought me here?" he bawled in a great rage.

5. "I did," replied his wife, quietly.

6. "You are my parting gift, and the treasure that I value most."

The children must rewrite the above sentences, replacing the underlined words with words of similar meaning from the list.

B Write on the blackboard: *great, cruel, small, lovely, weary.* The children must write words of similar meaning to these.

C. Write on the blackboard. *weak, long, wise, sour, smooth, heavy.*

1. King Ine was foolish, but Edith was —.

2. A tree trunk is rough, but glass is —.

3. In England, summer days are —, but winter days are short.

4. A man's arms are strong, but a child's are —.

5. A purse is light to carry, but a trunk is —.

6. A lemon is —, but sugar is sweet.

The children must complete these sentences with words of opposite meaning from the given list.

D Write on the blackboard: *up, in, little, black, thick.*

The children must write words of opposite meaning to these.

#### III. \*Sentence making.

Tell what promise the king made to his bride.

Tell how Edith took the king to her father's hut.

Tell what you think happened after the king had forgiven his wife.

# SKETCHES FOR THE BLACKBOARD



HEATH

ANTLERS—See page 267  
THE WISE MAID OF WESSEX—See page 270

HUNTSMAN'S HORN—See page 267  
ASS IN A LION'S SKIN—See page 268  
RED INDIAN WITH PEACE PIPE—See page 264

## 7.—THE GREEDY NOBLEMAN

(Simple Analysis)



## INTRODUCTION

**T**HERE is little in this story that children will not understand. The essential point of the story,—the motives of the two men in presenting their gifts to the king,—should be made clear, for children are appreciative of generous sentiments. It should be remarked that the king was delighted, not with the turnip itself, for he gave that away again, but with the kindly thought of the gardener. The children will need to be told that an English crown is a five-shilling piece, which is now not minted. Notice the synonyms in this story,—horse, steed; present, gift; large, great. There is a blackboard sketch of a turnip on page 283.

## STORY

There was once a king who was dearly loved by his subjects. To show their love for him they would often bring him presents, the best that they could afford. A certain poor gardener in his kingdom grew a very fine turnip, and he decided that this turnip would make a splendid gift for the king. It was so large that he could not carry it, but it had to be taken to the palace in a cart.

The king was delighted with the gardener's gift, and presented him with five hundred crowns as a reward.

Now there was at the court a greedy nobleman. When he heard the story of the gardener's reward he said to himself, "If the gardener received five hundred crowns for his turnip, what a great treasure the king would give me if I brought him a valuable horse!" Going to his stables, the nobleman selected his finest steed, and took it to the king.

"I shall be greatly honoured if your majesty will accept this horse as a gift," said he.

"I am delighted to accept your gift," replied the king, "but pray allow me to make you a present in return." So saying, he ordered his servants to give the nobleman the great turnip he had received from the gardener. Thus the king punished the greedy nobleman, who had hoped to profit by his pretended generosity.

## ORAL WORK

What does the beginning of the story tell you?

What did the gardener decide to do with his turnip?

Why did the gardener give his turnip to the king?

How do you know that it must have been a very large turnip?

What did the gardener receive from the king?

Who heard what had happened?

What did the nobleman say to himself?

What did the nobleman do?

Why did the nobleman give his horse to the king?

What did the king say to the nobleman?

What does the end of the story tell you?

Retell the story.

Children ask questions.

### WRITTEN WORK

#### I. Children's drill.

Write the date. Write the names of the first four days of the week. Write the names of the last four months of the year.

*Dictation.*—A poor gardener had grown a very fine turnip. The turnip was so large that a man could not carry it, and it had to be laid in a cart.

#### II Exercises on simple analysis.

(This Lesson is a continuation of Lesson 2, page 266, where the definition and first exercises on subject and predicate are given.)

A. Write on the blackboard:

*Naming-part (Subject) Stating-part (Predicate)*

The gardener	dearly loved their king.
The nobleman	was very large.
The king	took his turnip to court.
The turnip	was delighted with the gift.
The people	was punished for his greediness.

The children put the correct subjects and predicates together.

B. Write on the blackboard:

1. The children went out to play.
2. Little Jack Horner sat in a corner.

3. Little Boy Blue lay under the haystack
4. Red Riding Hood took her basket.
5. The king lives at Buckingham Palace.
6. Birds build their nests in trees.

The children must divide these sentences into subject and predicate.

C. Write on the blackboard:

1. — had grown a fine turnip.
2. — rewarded the gardener.
3. — heard the story of the gardener's reward.
4. — took his horse to the king.
5. — gave him the gift of the poor gardener.

The children must insert the subject to each of these sentences.

D. Write on the blackboard:

1. Little Bo-Peep —.
2. Cinderella —.
3. Boys and girls —.
4. Buttercups and daisies —.
5. My baby sister —.

The children may finish these sentences in any way they please.

#### III.\* Sentence making.

Make a sentence describing a turnip.

Make a sentence describing a fine horse.

Make a sentence telling why the nobleman is called *greedy*.

## 8. —THE FAT HENS AND THE LEAN HENS

(Singular and Plural Nouns)

### INTRODUCTION

THIS lesson may well open with an informal discussion on hens and chickens,—where they live, what they eat, what they give us. Many children will know the chief points to consider in choosing a chicken for the table. Some will have



watched the cooking of a chicken, and all will have something to contribute on the subject of hens and eggs. Encourage the children to say why a thin creature should be called a "scarecrow". It may be necessary to explain "scarecrow" to town children; there is a blackboard sketch on page 283.

### STORY

A number of hens once lived together in a farmyard. Some of them were plump, while others were lean. The fat hens were fond of making fun of their lean sisters. "You poor skinny things!" they would say. "You are more like scarecrows than hens." And they called them "rags and bones" and other rude names.

One day the farmer's wife came into the yard to choose some hens for her cooking pot. "I will not have those thin birds," she said to herself, "for they are not worth eating. These fine fat hens, however, will make us a splendid dish." She caught up the fat hens and took them into the farmhouse.

As they were carried into the kitchen to be killed and cooked for dinner, the fat hens wished that they had not been so foolish as to laugh at the lean hens, who were left alive and happy.

Never laugh at those who seem poorer than you are.

### ORAL WORK

What does the beginning of the story tell you?

Why did some of the hens laugh at the others?

What used the fat hens to say?

Who came into the yard one day?

Why did she come into the yard?

What did the farmer's wife say about the lean hens?

What did she say about the fat hens?

What happened to the fat hens?

What happened to the lean hens?

What does the end of the story tell you?

Retell the story.

Children ask questions.

### WRITTEN WORK

#### I. Children's drill.

Write the name of the story. Write the date. Write the names of the hottest months of the year. Write the names of the coldest months of the year.

*Dictation.*—This story teaches us never to laugh at those who seem poorer than we are, for they may be more fortunate than we are in the end.

#### II. Exercises on singular and plural nouns.

A. Write on the blackboard:

1. A name-word (or noun) which means two or more things usually ends in *s*.

<i>One thing</i>	<i>Two or more things</i>
One hen	Two hens
One boy	Two ---
One coat	Three ---
One room	Four ---
One day	Five ---
One house	Six ---
One ball	Seven ---
One desk	Eight ---

The children must complete the list of simple plurals.

2. A name-word that is hard to say with *s*, takes *es* when it means two or more things.

One box	Two boxes
One inch	Two ---
One bush	Seven ---
One brush	Four ---
One glass	Twelve ---
One kiss	Two ---

The children must complete the list of plurals which take *es*.

B. Write on the blackboard: A name-word which ends in *y* (except *ay*, *ey* and *oy*)

changes the *y* to *ies* when it means two or more things.

One lady	Two ladies
One fairy	Two —
One fly	Nine —
One penny	Eleven —
One army	Two —
One navy	Two —

One girl	Three —
One puppy	Five —
One bush	Nine —
One pansy	Four —
One fish	Eight —
One hoop	Six —

The children must complete the list of miscellaneous plurals.

The children must complete the list of plurals.

C. Write on the blackboard:

One ass	Two —
One pencil	Six —
One boy	Three —

### III.\* Sentence making.

Describe the hens that lived in the farm-yard.

Which hens did the farmer's wife choose, and why?

Which were the luckier hens in the end, and why?

## 9.—BRER RABBIT AND BRER TORTOISE RUN A RACE

### PART I

(Singular and Plural Sentences)



#### INTRODUCTION

**T**HE children will be familiar with the rabbit, but few will have seen a tortoise. It should be pointed out that not all tortoises can swim. A black-board sketch of the race between the rabbit and the family of tortoises is given on page 283. "Brer" is a word of negro origin, and means brother. See that the children

understand the significance of the Rabbit's remark: "If we had a race, I could sow barley as I went along and it would be ripe for you to cut when you came by."

#### STORY

Brer Rabbit could generally get the better of any animal, but old Brer Tortoise was just as cunning as he was, and one day he

made Brer Rabbit look very foolish. This was how it happened.

Brer Rabbit was saying to Brer Tortoise, "How slowly you crawl! If we had a race, I could sow barley as I went along and it would be ripe for you to cut when you came by."

"I could beat you if you ran on land and I swam in the water," replied Brer Tortoise.

"I don't believe you," said Brer Rabbit, "you are just as slow in the water as on land."

"Very well, let's try it," answered Brer Tortoise.

Brer Rabbit looked scornful, but he agreed to the idea. "I will run five miles along the river bank," said he, "and you shall swim five miles down the river."

"We'll have the race to-morrow," said Brer Tortoise.

The two animals measured five miles along the river bank, and put up a post at every mile.

Now Brer Tortoise had a wife and four children, all so like him that you couldn't tell one from the other. All tortoises are very much alike. That night old Brer Tortoise called up his family, and told them exactly what to do to help him. "If you do as I say," said he, "I shall be able to win the race."

### ORAL WORK

What does the beginning of the story tell you?

What did Brer Rabbit boast that he could do?

How did Brer Tortoise reply to Brer Rabbit's boasting?

What did the two animals agree to do?

How did they measure the distance for the race?

What do you know about tortoises?

What did Brer Tortoise do that night?

Retell the story.

Children ask questions.

### WRITTEN WORK

#### I. Children's drill.

Write the date. Write the title of a fairy story. Write the title of a poem. Write the names of the days of the week which begin with T.

*Dictation*—Now Brer Tortoise had a wife and four children, all so like him that you couldn't tell one from the other. That night old Brer Tortoise called up his family and told them what to do to help him.

#### II Exercises on plural sentences.

*Definition*—Stating-words (or verbs) often have to be changed when we speak of two or more things.

##### A Write on the blackboard.

<u>is</u>	changes to	<u>are</u>
One <u>hat</u> <u>is</u> there		Four <u>hats</u> <u>are</u> there
One <u>boot</u> <u>is</u> here		Two <u>boots</u> <u>are</u> here
Where <u>is</u> the <u>box</u> ?		Where <u>are</u> the <u>boxes</u> ?
There <u>is</u> a <u>ball</u>		There <u>are</u> some <u>balls</u>
One <u>boy</u> <u>is</u> <u>standing</u>		Six <u>boys</u> <u>are</u> <u>standing</u>
by		ing by
One <u>lady</u> <u>is</u> here		Three <u>ladies</u> <u>are</u> here

The children must complete the plural sentences, by changing the underlined singular nouns and verbs into the plural.

##### B Write on the blackboard

<u>was</u>	changes to	<u>were</u>
One <u>boy</u> <u>was</u> in and the other <u>was</u> out.		Two <u>boys</u> <u>were</u> in and the others <u>were</u> out.
In the meadow <u>was</u> a little <u>house</u>		In the meadow <u>were</u> some little <u>houses</u> .
There <u>was</u> only one <u>primrose</u> .		There <u>were</u> only four <u>primroses</u> .
Mary <u>was</u> a fine <u>girl</u>		Mary and May <u>were</u> fine <u>girls</u> .
Where <u>was</u> he?		Where <u>were</u> they?
The <u>dog</u> <u>was</u> at home.		The <u>dogs</u> <u>were</u> at home.

The children must complete the plural sentences, by changing the underlined singular nouns and verbs into the plural.

C. Write on the blackboard:

Where <u>has</u> my	Where <u>have</u> my
<u>brother</u> gone?	<u>brothers</u> gone?
One <u>cow</u> has white	Four <u>      </u> <u>      </u>
<u>feet</u> .	white feet.
One <u>boy</u> has measles.	Two <u>      </u> <u>      </u>
	measles.
He <u>has</u> toothache.	They <u>      </u> toothache.
The <u>ball</u> has gone.	The <u>      </u> <u>      </u> gone.
The <u>goat</u> has shaggy	The <u>      </u> <u>      </u>
<u>hair</u> .	shaggy hair.

The children must complete the plural sentences by changing the underlined singular nouns and verbs into the plural.

D. Write on the blackboard:

1. Where is my hat?
2. The dog is tired.
3. The cat was hungry.
4. The book is green.
5. The girl has mumps.
6. The horse was old.
7. The master has left.

The children must change these sentences into the plural.

E. Write on the blackboard:

1. The boys are noisy.
2. The desks were dirty.
3. The babies have chickenpox.
4. The hens were fat.
5. The fairies have a happy time.

The children must change these sentences into the singular.

### III.\* Sentence making.

Tell what Brer Rabbit and Brer Tortoise agreed to do.

Tell how the two animals prepared for the race.

What do you know of Brer Tortoise's family?

## 10.—BRER RABBIT AND BRER TORTOISE RUN A RACE

### PART II

(Sentence Making)

#### STORY

EARLY next morning, Brer Tortoise put his wife at the starting post, and one of his children at each of the mile posts, while he himself sat down beside the winning post and waited.

Presently along came Brer Rabbit, laughing to himself to think how easily he was going to beat Brer Tortoise. He saw Mrs. Tortoise in the water and, thinking it was Brer Tortoise, cried out, "Are you ready? Go!"

Off went Brer Rabbit along the bank, while Mrs. Tortoise quietly slipped into the water and swam back home. At the first mile post Brer Rabbit found the eldest little tortoise popping his head out of the water.

"Goodness me!" said Brer Rabbit. "Old Brer Tortoise swims faster than I thought."

When he found the next little tortoise at the next mile post, he was still more surprised. When he found a tortoise at the third post, he gasped, and when he found one at the fourth he began to feel faint.

"I must put on more speed," he thought. He laid back his long ears and flashed along the last mile like a streak of lightning. As he reached the winning post, puffing and panting, up popped the head of old Brer Tortoise as cool as you please.

"Why, Brer Rabbit," said he, "I thought you were never coming! Did you stop for a rest on the way?"

Brer Rabbit had no breath left to answer. He went sadly home, feeling ashamed of himself. Old Brer Tortoise went home chuckling, however, and he and his wife and his four children had a good laugh over the trick they had played.

## ORAL WORK

What did Brer Tortoise do with his wife and children?

Where did he go himself?

Why did Brer Rabbit laugh?

Whom did Brer Rabbit see in the water?

Whom did Brer Rabbit think he saw?

What did Brer Rabbit find at the four mile posts?

What did he find at the winning post?

What did Brer Tortoise say to him?

What does the end of the story tell you?

Retell the story.

Children ask questions.

## WRITTEN WORK

## I. Children's drill.

Write the date. Write the names of the months which begin with *M*. Write the names of the days which begin with *S*. Write your address.

*Dictation.* When he found the next little tortoise at the next mile post, he was still more surprised. When he found a tortoise at the third post, he gasped, and when he found one at the fourth he began to feel faint.

## II. Exercises on sentence making.

A. Write on the blackboard:

1. animal was a Brer Tortoise cunning
2. agreed and to Brer Rabbit race Brer Tortoise a run
3. alike are very tortoises all much
4. wife four Brer Tortoise children a had and
5. the win Brer Rabbit he race easily would thought

The children must re-arrange the above sentences, inserting stops and capitals.

B. Write on the blackboard:

1. The two animals measured - - -.
2. Brer Tortoise called his family and - - -.
3. He put one of his children - - -.
4. Brer Rabbit flashed along - - -.
5. Brer Tortoise and his family - - -.

The children must complete these sentences in any way they please.

C. Write on the blackboard:

1. A stitch in time - - -.
2. Make hay - - -.
3. Little Boy Blue - - -.
4. Little Bo Peep - - -.
5. Simple Simon - - -.

The children must finish these well-known sentences.

D. Write on the blackboard:

1. Tell in one sentence how Brer Tortoise placed his wife and children.
2. Tell how Brer Rabbit was surprised.
3. Tell why Brer Rabbit went home feeling ashamed.

## 11. -THE STUDENT AND THE PEARS

(Adverbs)

## INTRODUCTION

THE children should be encouraged to tell all they know about weddings and wedding feasts. Ask them to suggest the different things the student might have had to eat if he had been able to go to the wedding. There is a blackboard sketch of a pear on page 283.

## STORY

A young student was one day invited to a wedding feast. He dressed himself carefully in his best clothes and set out joyously to walk to the house where the wedding was to be held. He had not gone far when he came across a basket of fine, ripe pears which someone had carelessly left on the path.

"I must not eat anything now," said the student to himself, "or I shall not enjoy the wedding feast." So he thoughtlessly flung the pears into a muddy ditch and walked briskly on. Soon he came to a river

which he had to cross. The bridge, however, had been entirely blown away in a storm. The river was deep and flowed swiftly, so that the student could not go any farther.

"No, I cannot get across," murmured the student despairingly. "There is no feast for me. I must go home again."

Thinking regretfully of his lost feast, he turned sadly home. He walked slowly along, looking for the ditch in which he had thrown the pears. Then he knelt down, and pulled them out one by one, wiped them gently on his handkerchief, and ate them thankfully.

"This is a lesson to me," he said, "never to spoil good food."

Waste not, want not.

#### ORAL WORK

What does the beginning of the story tell you?

What did the student find?

What did he say to himself?

What did he do?

What did he find when he came to the river?

Why did he go home again?

What did he do on his way home?

What lesson did he say he had learnt?

Retell the story.

Children ask questions.

#### WRITTEN WORK

##### I. Children's drill.

Write your full name. Write your address. Write the date. Write the name of the story.

*Dictation.*—The river was deep, and the bridge had been blown away in a storm, so that the student could not get across.

##### II. Exercises on adverbs.

*Definition.*—An adverb tells you more about the stating-word (or verb).

A. Write on the blackboard: *swiftly, thankfully, carelessly, despairingly, thoughtlessly, joyously, gently.*

1. He set out — to walk to the wedding.
2. Someone had — left a basket of pears on the path.
3. He — flung the pears into a ditch.
4. The river flowed —.
5. "No, I cannot get across," he murmured—.
6. He wiped the pears — on his handkerchief.
7. He ate them —.

The children must write and complete the above sentences with adverbs from the list.

##### B. Write on the blackboard:

1. He dressed himself (carefully, gently, quietly) in his best clothes.
2. He walked (madly, faintly, briskly) on.
3. The bridge had been (sadly, entirely, slowly) blown away.
4. He thought (carelessly, regretfully, finely) of his lost feast.
5. He turned (sadly, entirely, carefully) home again.
6. He walked (angrily, lovingly, slowly) along looking for the ditch in which he had thrown the pears.

The children must write and complete the sentences with the appropriate adverbs.

##### C. Write on the blackboard:

1. The sun shines —.
2. The birds sing —.
3. The doctor spoke —.
4. The children laughed —.
5. He carried the eggs —.

The children must complete these sentences with any adverb they please.

##### III.\* Sentence making.

Make a sentence telling what the student did with the pears the first time.

Make two sentences telling what the student did with the pears the second time.

Make two sentences telling what you think the student ought to have done with the pears the first time.

## 12.—HOW THE SULTAN FOUND AN HONEST MAN

(Pronouns)



## INTRODUCTION

A BLACKBOARD sketch of a man in Turkish costume is given on page 283. The children will require to know that the king of Turkey was called a sultan, and that the vizier was his chief lord. The children will all have seen the night watchmen who sit in their huts in front of a brazier, guarding the workmen's tools and the excavations of the roads in England.

## STORY

A sultan who ruled in Turkey had a room full of treasure, and wanted a watchman to guard it. "I must be careful not to choose a thief," thought he, "or I shall be robbed by my own watchman. I want an honest man. How can I find an honest man?" He sent for his vizier, who held the highest office in the land, and asked him what he was to do.

"Prepare a great feast at the palace," said the vizier, "and invite to it every man who would like to be the sultan's watchman. At the end of the feast, ask your guests to dance, and you will soon see which of them are honest men."

The sultan took this advice, made ready the feast, and invited the guests. As each

one arrived, he had to walk through a long dark passage. On each side of the passage were open sacks of gold and silver coins. At the far end, the guests came to three steps, which led into a hall where the sultan was holding the feast.

When every man had eaten his fill, the sultan rose from his seat. "Now, my friends," he said, "give me the great pleasure of seeing you dance." Nobody moved. Then all the guests began to make excuses,—all except one man, who came out from among them and danced a little jig up and down the hall.

"That is the honest man," said the vizier. "All your other guests have robbed you. They filled their pockets with gold and silver coins from the sacks in the dark passage. If they had danced they would have jingled like money boxes. This honest fellow did not touch the money that was not his, and so was not afraid to dance."

The good vizier was afterwards rewarded, and the honest man became the sultan's watchman.

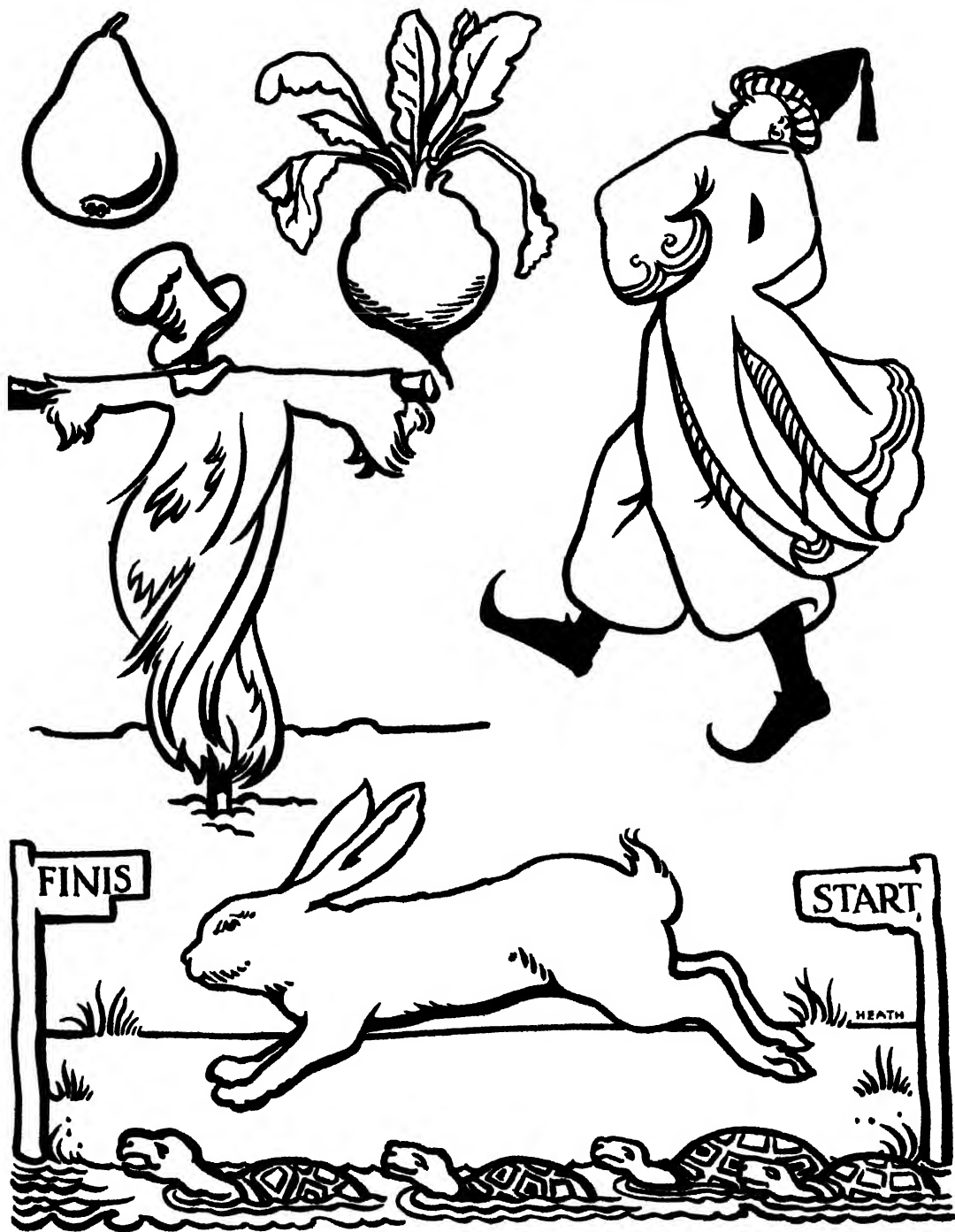
## ORAL WORK

What does the beginning of the story tell you?

What is another name for a *sultan*?

Why did the sultan send for his vizier?

# SKETCHES FOR THE BLACKBOARD



PEAR—See page 280

SCARECROW—See page 276

TURNIP—See page 274

THE HONEST MAN—See page 282

BRER RABBIT AND BRER TORTOISE RUN A RACE—See page 277



What does the middle of the story tell you?

Whom did the sultan invite to his feast?

Where had the guests to walk before they came to the hall?

Why did the guests refuse to dance?

What does the end of the story tell you?

How did the sultan know which was the honest man?

Retell the story.

Children ask questions.

2. As each guest arrived, *the guest* had to walk along a dark passage which had sacks of coins on each side of *the passage*.

3. The guests who had stolen money were afraid to dance, as *the guests* knew *the money* would jingle in their pockets.

The children must write and complete the above sentences, substituting pronouns for the words in italics.

### WRITTEN WORK

#### I. Children's drill.

Write the name of your school. Write the name of your road. Write the name of the story.

*Dictation.*—An honest man is afraid of nothing.

#### II. Exercise on pronouns.

*Definition.*—A pronoun is a word that is used instead of a name-word (or noun).

A. Write on the blackboard:

1. A sultan had a room full of treasure, and (she, he, it) wanted a watchman to guard (him, her, it).
2. When the guests had eaten, the sultan asked (them, him, her) to dance, but (he, they, she) refused.
3. Only one man danced a little jig, and the sultan gave (them, him, it) the post of watchman.
4. The sultan was pleased with the wise vizier and rewarded (them, her, him).

The children must write and complete the above sentences with the appropriate word.

B. Write on the blackboard:

1. The sultan wanted to find an honest man, so *the sultan* sent for the vizier and asked *the vizier* what *the sultan* was to do.

#### III.\* Sentence making.

Tell why the sultan wanted a watchman.

Tell what the guests did as they came down the dark passage.

Tell why the honest man was the only one who was not afraid to dance.

### 13.—THE VAIN JACKDAW

#### (Choice of Words)

#### INTRODUCTION

A PRELIMINARY talk on both the jackdaw and the peacock will be necessary, especially to town children. A blackboard sketch of a jackdaw is given on page 291, and one of a peacock on page 179 in Volume I of this series.

#### STORY

There was once a jackdaw who was not satisfied with his plain black feathers. He wished that other birds would think him something better than a jackdaw. So he picked up some beautiful feathers that had fallen from a peacock's tail and carefully stuck them on his own back.

He then ran in amongst a party of peacocks as if he were one of them. But they did not receive him kindly. "Who is this absurd creature pretending to be one of us?" the peacocks cried to each other. Then they turned on the jackdaw, and

pecked him so hard that he flew away as fast as he could

He then went back to his own family, the jackdaws, but they, seeing his strange feathers, would have nothing to do with him 'This bird is not one of us,' they said, and turned their backs on him. Thus the vain jackdaw lost all his friends.

If we pretend to be better than we are, we shall be found out.

### ORAL WORK

What does the beginning of the story tell you?

What did the jackdaw wish?

What did he do to obtain his wish?

What does the middle of the story tell you?

Why did the jackdaw not stay with the peacocks?

To whom did the jackdaw go next?

What did the other jackdaws say to him?

What does the end of the story tell you?

Retell the story.

Children ask questions.

### WRITTEN WORK

#### I Children's drill.

Write the date. Write your address. Write the title of any book you know. Write the title of a poem. Write the names of the months which begin with *M*.

*Diction.* The vain jackdaw lost all his friends. If we pretend to be better than we are, we shall be found out.

#### II Exercises on the choice of words.

A Write on the blackboard

1 As black as —

2 As red as a —

3 As white as a —

4 As thin as a —

5 As slow as a —

The children must supply an appropriate word.

B Write on the blackboard

1 The children — a long piece of seaweed on the rocks.

2 On the mountain stood a tall and — castle.

3 The merry children came tumbling out of school.

4 The man played — music on his violin.

5 The — cottage stood on the side of a — hill.

The children may supply any words they please (1 or sketch of seaweed see page 291.)

C Write on the blackboard

1 The boy went *gayly* home for the holidays.

2 Evenings in early summer are often *chilly*.

3 The old man went *sorrowfully* on his way.

4 The jackdaw *wished* to be thought better than he was.

5 All the flowers were of the most *lovely* colours.

6 He was a *courageous* soldier.

The children must change the italicised words for others similar in meaning.

D Write on the blackboard

1 He was a *tall old* man.

2 Four *pretty* maidens stood at the door of the house.

3 The stream was both *narrow* and *hallo*.

4 The father *frowned* at his son.

5 What struck him most was their *happy* faces.

The children must change the italicised words for others of opposite meaning.

#### III \* Sentence making.

Tell how the jackdaw showed that he was vain.

Tell how the peacocks received the jackdaw.

Tell how the jackdaw lost all his friends.

## 14. THE PRINCESS OF THE IVORY CASTLE

(There and Their)



## INTRODUCTION

**I**I will be necessary to tell the children from what animal ivory is obtained and to describe it. They will be familiar with the ivory handles of teapots and knives, and will then have no difficulty in imagining a castle of "gleaming white ivory." Discuss with them the appearance of reflections in pools, rivers and lakes, which way up does a reflection appear?

## STORY

The Emperor of China was out hunting one hot day when he became very thirsty. He stopped beside a pool and began to drink out of his hands. As he stooped over the clear water he saw in it the face of a beautiful maiden and, thinking that she must be standing behind him, he turned round to look at her.

There was no one to be seen. He turned back and looked into the water. There again was the beautiful face. He called to his noble lords and showed them the face of the maiden in the water.

"That is the face of the Princess of the Ivory Castle," said one, "but no one knows where her castle stands."

"I will find it, though I should spend my whole life in the search," said the emperor. "The princess who lives there must be my bride."

For three years the emperor travelled through the world seeking the Princess of the Ivory Castle. At last he came to a dip in the hills in which lay a lake. Looking into its still water, the emperor saw a castle of gleaming white ivory. He looked up, expecting to see the castle standing on the hills above him but the hills were bare.

"How foolish I have been!" he cried. "The Ivory castle is in the water." With these words he dived into the lake.

At the bottom he found the Ivory castle, and the princess waiting for him at its gate.

"I have always loved you," she said, "ever since I saw your face in the pool three years ago. I will gladly be your wife."

Full of joy, the emperor led her out of the lake and married her, and they lived happily together all their days.

## ORAL WORK

What does the beginning of the story tell you?

What did the emperor see in the water?

Why did he turn round?

What did his lords tell him?

What does the middle of the story tell you?

To what place did the emperor come at last?

What did the emperor see?

What did he say?

What does the end of the story tell you?

### WRITTEN WORK

#### I. Children's drill.

Write the date Write the names of the months that begin with *J* Write the title of the story. Write your full name and address

*Dictation* — As he stooped over the clear water, he saw in it the face of a beautiful maiden, and, thinking that she must be standing behind him, he turned round to look at her

#### II Exercises on there and their.

A. Write on the blackboard.

There is used to mean a place, e.g. I went there yesterday

There is also used with was, were, is, and are e.g. There is a star in the sky

Their always stands before a noun to show that it belongs to some other people or things e.g. John and Mary gave me their pencils

1 — was an old woman who lived in a shoe

2 My aunt had a house near by, so I took the child —

3 Poppies soon shed — — petals

4 Rose and May had left — — book, at home

5 — — in the water was the beautiful face

6. "The princess who lives — — must be my bride," said the king.

The children must fill the gaps with either there or their.

B. Write on the blackboard:

1 Make two sentences using the word then

2 Make two sentences using the word there

#### III \* Sentence making.

Tell how the emperor fell in love with the princess

Tell why the emperor travelled about for three years

Tell how the emperor got into the Ivory Castle

### 15. —MAY DAY

(Capital Letters and Inverted Commas)

#### INTRODUCTION

**T**HE subject of May Day provides ample opportunity for informal conversation between teacher and pupils. In medieval England May Day was a great public holiday. All classes of the people, young and old alike, were up with the dawn, and went a Maying in the woods. Branches of trees and flowers were borne back in triumph to the towns and villages, the centre of the procession being occupied by those who shouldered the maypole, which was gay with ribbons and wreaths. The children will be able to furnish the names of plants, animals and birds to be found in May. There is a blackboard sketch of a cuckoo on page 231.

#### MAY DAY

Good morning, lords and ladies, it is the first of May,

We hope you'll view our garland, it is so sweet and gay

The cuckoo sings in April, the cuckoo sings in May,

The cuckoo sings in June, in July she flies away.

The cuckoo drinks cold water to make her  
sing so clear.

And then she sings Cuckoo! Cuckoo! for  
three months in the year.

I love my little brother and sister every day,  
But I seem to love them better in the merry  
month of May.

### ORAL WORK

What is the date of May Day?

What is another name for a garland?

Of what is a garland made?

In what months does the cuckoo sing?

What does the poet say makes the cuckoo  
sing so clear?

What game is played on May Day?

### WRITTEN WORK

#### I. Children's drill.

Write the date. Write the name of the  
story. Write the names of the months in  
which the cuckoo does not sing. Write the  
address of your school.

*Incitation.*--Many years ago one of the  
happiest days in the country was May Day.  
The children gathered the may blossom that  
covered the hedges and made it into a  
garland, which they carried from house to  
house, singing their songs and hoping to  
receive pennies.

#### II. Graded exercises on capital letters and inverted commas.

A. Insertion of a capital letter for the  
first word of each verse.

Write on the blackboard:

1.      boats sail on the rivers,  
         and ships sail on the seas;  
         but clouds that sail across the sky  
         are prettier far than these.
2.      down in a green and shady bed  
         a modest violet grew;  
         its stalk was bent, it hung its head,  
         as if to hide from view.

B. Insertion of (a) a capital letter for the  
first word of each verse; (b) other necessary  
capitals.

Write on the blackboard:

1.      dull november brings the blast—  
         hark! the leaves are whirling fast.  
  
         cold december brings the sleet,  
         blazing fire, and christmas treat.
2.      the cuckoo sings in april, the cuckoo sings  
         in may,  
         the cuckoo sings in june, in july she flies  
         away.
3.              minnie and winnie  
                 slept in a shell.

C. Insertion of inverted commas.

Write on the blackboard:

1.      Little lovely lady,  
         You must be a queen,  
         In your yellow satin  
         And your gown of green  
         But the stately lady  
         Bowed her gracious head,  
         I was made a tulip,  
         Not a queen she said.
2.      Are you ready? the Snowdrop asked,  
         'Tis time to start, you know  
         Almost, my dear! the Scilla replied,  
         I'll follow as soon as you go.

D. Insertion of (a) a capital letter for the  
first word of each verse; (b) inverted commas.

Write on the blackboard:

1.      and while on her pillow she softly lay,  
         she knew nothing more till again it was  
         day;  
         and all things said to the beautiful sun,  
         good morning, good morning, our work  
         has begun!
2.      home they brought her warrior dead  
         she nor swoon'd nor utter'd cry:  
         all the maidens, watching, said,  
         she must weep or she will die.

E. Insertion of (a) a capital letter for the first word of each verse; (b) inverted commas; (c) any other necessary capitals.

Write on the blackboard:

1. a jolly old sow once lived in a sty,  
and three little piggies had she;  
and she waddled about saying, umph!  
umph! umph!  
while the little ones said, wee! wee!
2. the sunbeams came to my window,  
and said, come out and see  
the sparkle on the river,  
the blossoms on the tree!

### III.\* Sentence making.

Tell what you know about May Day.

Describe a may tree in bloom.

Describe a game you play out-of-doors in the summer.

## 16.—THE DOG AND THE WOLF

### (Conversations. Part I.)

#### INTRODUCTION

IT will be necessary to tell the children about the wolf, the ancestor of the dog. The wolf-hound, which is popular among dog-lovers to-day, bears the closest resemblance to its wild cousin. There is a blackboard sketch of a wolf on page 291.

#### STORY

A lean and hungry wolf one day met a fine, fat dog. "You have plenty to eat, brother, I can see," said the wolf. "Where do you find your food? I spend all the night hunting and catch barely enough to keep me alive, while you, who never hunt at all, are as plump as a chicken."

"I work for my master," replied the dog, "and in return he feeds me, and very well, too. I have also a warm kennel to live in, and everyone in the house makes a fuss of me."

U—VOL. 2

"What work do you do?" asked the wolf.

"I guard the house at night, and keep away thieves," said the dog.

"Could I do the same?" the wolf asked.

"Yes, indeed," answered the dog. "Come with me, I will find you a good master."

So the dog and the wolf set off together for the town. On their way the wolf noticed a worn place in the hair on the dog's neck.

"Why is the hair on your neck so worn away, brother?" asked the wolf.

"Oh," said the dog, carelessly, "that is the mark made by my collar. My master puts a chain on me and keeps me fastened up all day."

The wolf stopped. "Ah, my friend," said he, "I shall not come with you. You may keep your good food. I would rather be hungry and able to please myself, than be a prisoner however well-fed."

#### ORAL WORK

What does the beginning of the story tell you?

Describe the wolf.

Describe the dog.

Of what did the wolf complain?

What did the dog tell the wolf?

Why did they set off together?

What did the wolf notice as they went along?

What did the dog say about his neck?

What does the end of the story tell you?

Why did the wolf call the dog a *prisoner*?

Retell the story.

Children ask questions.

#### WRITTEN WORK

##### I. Children's drill.

Write the date. Write the name of the story. Write a name for the dog. Write a name for the master. Write the names of the last two months in the year.

*Dictation.*—It is better to be poor and free, than rich and a prisoner.

**II. Exercises on conversations.****A Write on the blackboard**

- 1 'how fit you are!' said the wolf,  
"I wish I could be the same"
- 2 "I work for my master," replied the  
dog
- 3 "what work do you do?" asked the  
wolf
- 4 "I guard the house at night," answered  
the dog
- 5 "come with me," said the dog, "I will  
find you a good home"
- 6 "ah, my friend," said he, "I shall not  
come with you"

The children must write the above sentences putting in the capital letters.

**B Write on the blackboard**

- 1 I spend all the night hunting, said the  
wolf You never hunt at all
- 2 As well as my food, I also have a warm  
kennel said the dog
- 3 The dog said, I keep away thieves

- 4 Could I do the same? the wolf asked.
- 5 Yes indeed, replied the dog
- 6 Why is the hair on your neck worn  
away? asked the wolf.
- 7 Oh! said the dog, carelessly, that is  
the mark made by my collar

The children must write the above sentences, putting in the inverted commas.

**C Write on the blackboard**

- 1 I say to my dog, "—"
- 2 My dog says to me, "—"
- 3 I very morning I say to my friends,  
"—"
- 4 The butcher says, "—"
- 5 The greengrocer says, "—"

The children must write and complete the above passages with the spoken words

**III \* Sentence making.**

Tell in what ways the dog was lucky  
Tell in what way the wolf was lucky.  
Write three sentences about a wolf

**17.- THE RED CREEPER**

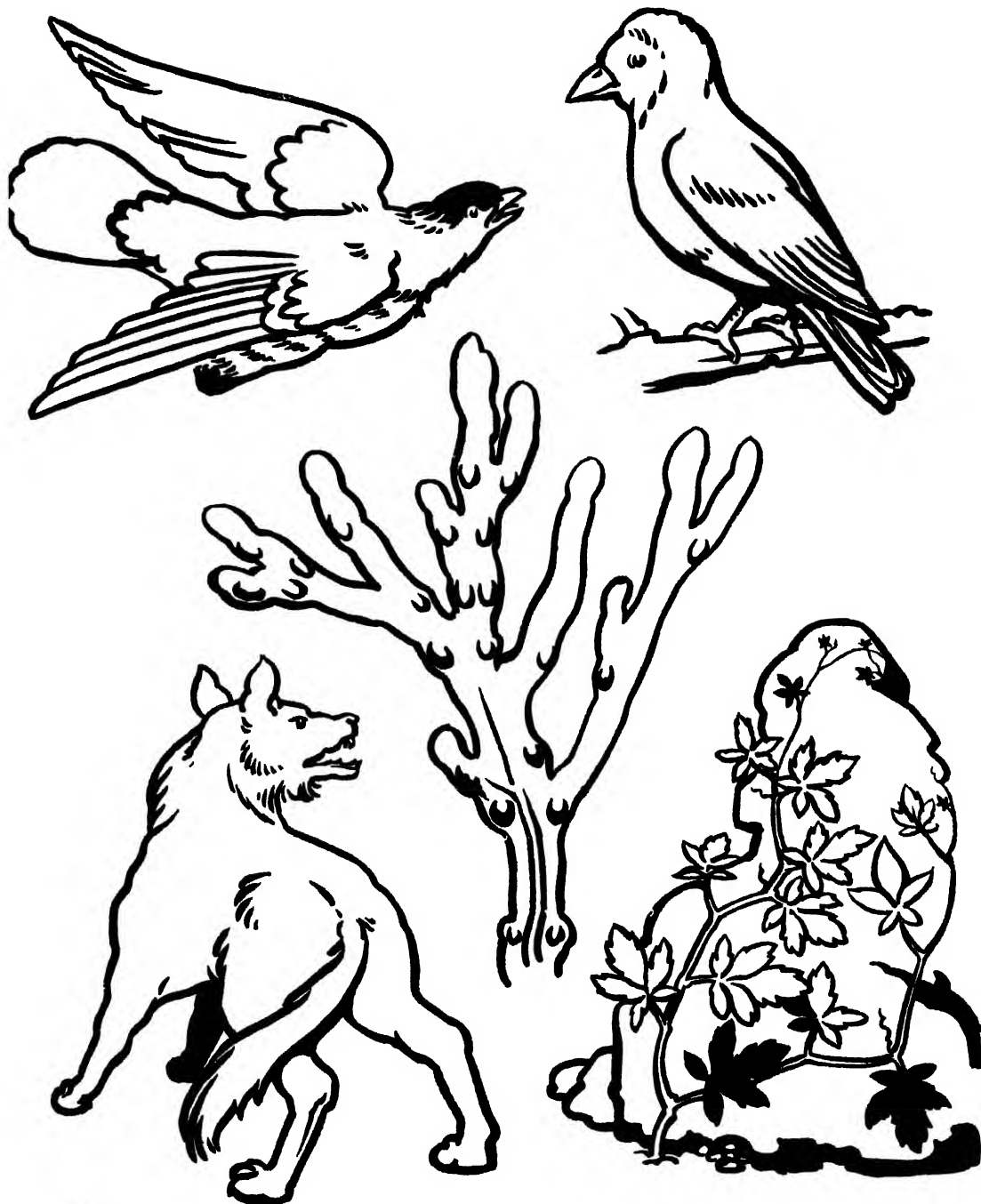
(Conversations. Part II.)



EVERYONE knows the Virginia creeper, whose leaves show many lovely shades of red in autumn. The children of Poland are told this charm

ing story of why the creeper changes colour. When God made all the plants, He painted their flowers last of all. As He passed by, all the little flowers stretched out their

# SKETCHES FOR THE BLACKBOARD



HEATH

CUCKOO—See page 287

WOLF—See page 289

JACKDAW—See page 284  
SEAWEED—See page 285

VIRGINIA CREEPER—See page 290



stalks to Him, so that He should see and paint each one in lovely colours.

Among the plants was a small creeper which grew at the foot of a large, bare rock. She was too shy to stretch out her tiny flower to be painted, so it was left green, and the creeper felt very sad about it when she saw the radiant colours of the other flowers.

After God had passed, the sun came up, the birds sang, and butterflies flitted to and fro. The old rock began to crack and scorch in the hot sunshine. "This heat is terrible!" he groaned. The creeper heard him muttering to himself, and felt so sorry for him that she forgot her own trouble. "I will cover him with my leaves," she thought; "they will shade him and keep him cool." So she grew and grew till the old rock was quite covered.

Soon after, an angel came that way to see the wonderful colours God had painted. When he saw the tender green leaves of the Virginia creeper spread so lovingly over the face of the bare rock, he cried, "This plant has no coloured flowers, but it is the most beautiful of all!"

The little creeper blushed a lovely crimson when she heard the angel praise her, and every year she remembers and blushes again.

#### ORAL WORK

Describe the Virginia creeper.

Where do you find the Virginia creeper growing?

What happens to the creeper at the end of the summer?

Which part of the plants did God paint last?

What did the flowers do?

What happened to the creeper?

Why did she feel sad?

What did she do to show her pity for the rock?

Who came by soon after?

What did the angel say?

What does the end of the story tell you?

Retell the story.

Children ask questions.

#### WRITTEN WORK

##### I. Children's drill.

Write the date. Write the name of the creeper. Write the names of the autumn months.

*Dictation.*—Everyone knows the Virginia creeper, whose leaves show many lovely shades of red in autumn. She was too shy to stretch out her tiny flower to be painted, so it was left green.

##### II. Exercises on conversations.

A. Write on the blackboard:

1. please paint me blue, said the cornflower.
2. i like red best, observed the poppy.
3. why are your flowers still green? asked a butterfly.
4. the creeper replied, alas! i was too shy to stretch out my stalk.
- 5 i am nearly scorched, muttered the rock.
- 6 this heat is terrible! he groaned.
7. she said to herself, i will cover him with my leaves.

The children must insert the necessary inverted commas and capital letters.

B. Write on the blackboard:

1. The creeper said that she wished she had been painted.
2. The old rock said that he was beginning to crack.
3. The creeper said that she was sorry for the old rock.
4. The creeper said she would keep him cool with her leaves.

The children must put the above sentences into direct speech.

##### III.\* Sentence making.

Tell what the Virginia creeper is like in summer and in autumn.

Tell how the flowers got their colours.

Tell why the angel praised the creeper.

## GROUPED WORDS FOR SPELLING

**T**HIS list of words will be useful for spelling drill, for transcription and for oral and written composition. It is not advisable to use the list for mechanical spelling, a practice which is opposed to right principles of education. The learning to spell isolated words unintelligently is wearisome and almost useless. The reasonable way of grasping the meaning of words is by their use. To this end the words are arranged in associated groups which will appeal to the child's intelligence. Words strange to the learner are met with in company with others that are known. In a composition lesson on the fishmonger, for example, the teacher asks the children to supply the names of the fish that they have seen in a fishmonger's shop. The names of the most common fish are written on the blackboard, the children are invited to give sentences containing the words, they may write some of the sentences and in the same or a subsequent lesson they write the names in their notebooks. Every word so written will have some meaning for the child. Strict supervision is needed to see that no word is written incorrectly in the notebook, and it is essential that the spellings should be revised at frequent intervals. Sometimes pictures can be utilised in connection with the spelling lesson and often it is possible for children to demonstrate in dumb show the meaning of certain verbs, for example *throw*, *doze*, *recline*, *whistle*. The list of words in Volume I, page 172 should be used for revision purposes.

**1 The Classroom:** easel, blackboard, guard, shovel, coal scuttle, mantelpiece, picture, timetable; satchel, compass, crayon, chalk, lead pencil

**2 Breakfast:** coffee pot, cocoa, bacon, liver, rasher, poached eggs; bloater, kipper, haddock, toast, marmalade, grapefruit, prunes; porridge, bread and milk.

**3. Dinner:** napkin, carvers, tumblers, knives, tureen, ladle, soup, cauliflower, cabbage, spinach, potatoes, pudding, dumplings, pie, tart, lemonade, gingerbeer, water.

**4 Tea:** teapot, saucer, cream, honey, preserve, teacake, scone, crumpet, muffin, sponge finger, chocolate biscuit, currant bread

**5 Picnic:** basket, hamper, cardboard plates, thermos flask, cucumber sandwich, hard boiled eggs, lettuce, sausage roll, turnover, spirit stove, kettle, matches

**6 The Fishmonger:** conger, cod, whiting, skate, sprats, cockles, prawns, shrimp, winkles, mackerel, turbot, salmon, sole, plaice, herring

**7 The Poulterer:** poultry game, goose, gosling, duck, duckling, turkey, pigeon, pheasant, partridge, hare, rabbit

**8 The Grocer:** oatmeal, cornflour, grapes, sultanas, currants, raisins, margarine, lard, nutmeg, cloves, mustard, sago, rice, tapioca

**9 The Greengrocer:** gooseberry, raspberry, strawberry, pear, orange, banana, lemon, damson, greengage, cherry, walnut, Brazil nut, chestnut, coconut, almond, onion, celery, radish, parsnip, turnip, parsley, mushroom, carrot, Brussels sprouts, marrow

**10 The Corn Chandler:** wheat, rice, maize, oats, rapeseed, bran, bulgur, meal, oilcake, linseed, straw, haricot bean, dog biscuits

**11 The Ironmonger:** kettle, saucepan, preserving pan, stewpan, steamer, strainer, bucket, pail, bowl, carpet sweeper, hearth brush, blacklead, polish, paraffin, mangle, wringer

**12 The Jeweller:** watch, clock, bracelet, necklace, pendant, brooch, bangle, diamond, ruby, emerald, coral, cutlery, silver, gold, bronze

13. **The Draper** : velvet, flannel, holland, canvas, calico; handkerchief, cotton, elastic; stockings, gloves; blanket, bedspread, tablecloth, curtain, duster, towel.

14. **The Chemist** : soap, sponge, toothpaste, toothbrush; lint, bandage, vaseline, scissors; pills, bottle, medicine.

15. **The Chimney Sweep** : fireplace, hearth, chimney stack; brush, Turk's head, scraper; yearly, spring cleaning, soot.

16. **The Butcher** : beefsteak, mutton, liver, loin, lamb, veal, knuckle, cutlet, kidney, dripping, suet, sweetbread, venison, sausage, brawn, tripe.

17. **The Stationer** : foolscap, typing paper, exercise book, pencil; indiarubber, eraser; postcard, lettercard; newspaper, magazine; string, paper fastener, sealing wax; lending library.

18. **The Dressmaker** : thimble, bodkin, needle, thread; fit, gather, seam, tack, stitch, material, button, loop, collar, bodice; machine, tape measure.

19. **The Policeman** : helmet, tunic, armlet, waterproof, truncheon; lantern, electric torch; beat, patrol; constable, inspector, police station.

20. **The Sailor** : ashore, afloat; mast, rigging, sail, funnel, cabin; vessel, barge, liner, steamer; captain, crew, pilot, blue-jacket, compass, wheel.

21. **The Soldier** : rifle, bayonet, bullet, cannon, shell; uniform, drill, squad; private, corporal, sergeant, major, colonel, general, field-marshal.

22. **Buildings** : abbey, cathedral, church, chapel; college, school, hospital; laundry, factory, warehouse; theatre, cinema; hotel, garage.

23. **The House** : kitchen, scullery, bath-room, dining room, drawing room, parlour, attic, garret, tool shed, bicycle shed, coal shed, greenhouse, dustbin, cistern, boiler.

24. **The Railway Station** : engine driver, fireman; porter, collector, guard; furnace, tender, footplate; signal, whistle; truck, carriage; ticket, luggage, platform.

25. **The World** : island, mountain, valley, valleys, plain, moor; water, sea, ocean, waves, billows; shore, beach, coast; shingle, pebble, seaweed; cliff, gulf; port, dock, harbour, pier; spring, brook, stream, river; volcano.

26. **The Country** : field, pasture, meadow, park; forest, wood; road, lane, path; hedge, fence, stile, ditch; earth, soil.

27. **The Farm** : stack, rick, barn; cowshed, pigsty, hencoop, stable; manger, trough; plough, harrow; reaping machine, threshing machine, shovel, pitchfork, billhook.

28. **The Weather** : rain, hail, sleet, snow, frost, ice; wind, breeze, draught, storm, gale; thunder, lightning, rainbow; light, shadow.

29. **Animals** : cattle, bull, bullock, calf, calves, sheep, ram, ewe, lamb; horse, mare, colt, foal, pony; mouse, dormouse; squirrel, hedgehog.

30. **Birds** : blackbird, sparrow, starling, hawk, cuckoo, heron, lapwing, seagull, robin, peacock, peahen, magpie, bullfinch, canary, parrot.

31. **Wild Flowers** : cowslip, foxglove, cornflower, poppy, hawthorn, hemlock, speedwell, plantain, clover, chickweed, buttercup, dandelion, primrose, bluebell, groundsel, nettle, thistle, bramble.

32. **Garden Flowers:** tulip, iris, snow-drop, daffodil, hyacinth, honeysuckle, carnation, hollyhock, violet, marigold, aster, stock, wallflower, candytuft, lupin.

33. **Insects:** dragon fly, caddis, gnat, fly, flies, bluebottle; caterpillar, maggot, grub, cocoon, butterfly, moth, glow-worm; bee, drone, wasp, hornet; wireworm, beetle, ladybird, earwig, cricket, grasshopper, cockroach.

34. **The Body:** head, scalp, tongue, brain; heart, lungs, stomach; shoulder, elbow, wrist, thumb, nail, knuckle, palm; forehead, eyebrow, eyelashes, eyelid; foot, ankle, sole, heel, toe.

35. **Relations:** baby, babies; son, daughter; uncle, aunt, nephew, niece, cousin; husband, wife; brother, sister; woman, women; gentleman, lady, ladies.

36. **Amusements:** cricket, golf, football, Rugby, hockey, tennis, snowballing, marbles, kite.

37. **Badges of Girl Guides:** Knitter, Printer, Horsewoman, Housekeeper, Boat-wain, Sportswoman, Dancer, Domestic Service, Milliner, Cobbler, Toymaker, Laundress, Dairymaid, Needlewoman, Motorist.

38. **Wolf Cubs:** Cubmaster, Scoutmaster, Patrol Leader, Weaver Guide Orderly, Watcher, Emblem.

39. **Brownies:** Senior Citizen, Examiner, Recruit, Thrift, Nightingale, Fairy, Armlet.

40. **Scout Badges:** Ambulance, Camper, Gardener, Signaller, Cyclist, Missioner, Carpenter, Watchman, Marksman, Handyman, Woodman, Miner, Bugler, Pilot, Fireman, Boatman, Mason, Pioneer, Pathfinder, Swimmer.

41. **Countries, etc.:** Canada, Canadian; Asia, Asiatic, China, Chinese, India, Indian; Africa, African; Wales, Welsh; Ireland, Irish; Scotland, Scottish; England, English.

42. **Arithmetic:** whole, half, halves, quarter; pair, couple, dozen, score, gross; top, bottom, middle; inch, foot, yard; acre, mile; ounce, pound, pint, quart, gallon; peck, bushel; first, second, third, fourth, fifth, sixth, seventh, eighth, ninth, tenth, eleventh, twelfth.

43. **Time:** morning, daybreak, dawn, sunrise, twilight; noon, midday, sunset; spring, summer, autumn, winter; Christmas, Easter, Whitsun.

44. **Qualities:** clean, dirty, punctual late; gentle, rough, rude, polite, thrifty, wasteful; calm, restless, silent, noisy industrious, idle; tall, short; rough, smooth; old, young, loud, quiet; hungry, thirsty; right, wrong.

45. **Adverbs, etc.:** here, there, where; once, twice, thrice; they, their, theirs, them; who, whose, whom, which, what, this, that, these, those.

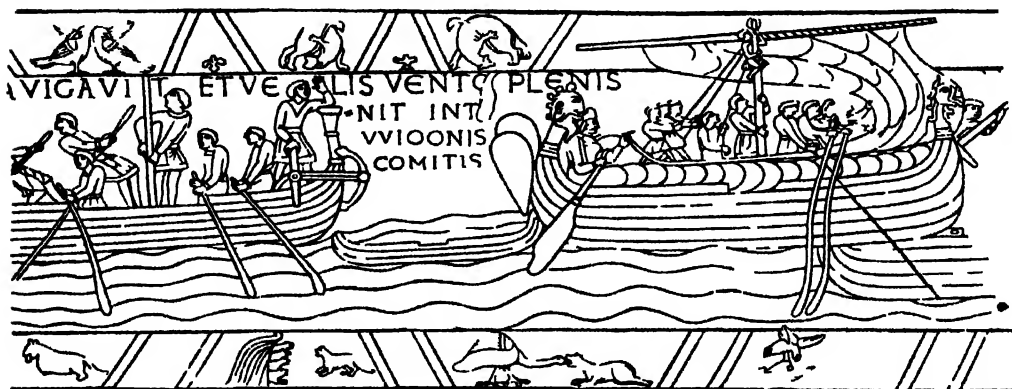




**SECOND YEAR'S COURSE  
OF  
NEEDLEWORK**



HAROLD TAKING LEAVE OF EDWARD SETTING OUT ON HIS JOURNEY



HAROLD SAILING FROM LONDON TO NORMANDY



HAROLD RECEIVING THE CROWN  
SCENES FROM THE BAYeux TAPESTRY

# SYLLABUS OF THE SECOND YEAR'S WORK

**Type of pattern.**—Adaptation of square and rectangular shapes, to make patterns of simple articles and garments having slanting lines and easy curves

## Articles or garments made. —

1. With convex, or outer, curves Egg cosy, tea cosy, oval cushion, tray cloth, doll's or baby's bonnet

2 With concave, or inner, curves — Feeders, pinafores, bags of all kinds

*Experimental work* Doll dressing

*Knitting* Various articles and doll's clothes in plain and purl on two needles

## Processes.

1 Running narrow ( $\frac{1}{2}$  in) hems round outer curved edges

2 Facing with  $\frac{1}{4}$  in tape along inner curved edges

3 Running hems round inner curved edges

4 Sewing on bag handles made of bands of hemmed strips of material

5 Sewing on tape for straps

## Stitches.

1 Hemming

2 Adaptation of previous stitches to new requirements, decorative stitchery, etc

3 Simple decoration by means of stick printing alone, or outlined with stitches or by line designs in running or darning

**Materials.** As in previous year Donkey-boy cloth. Dyed Russian crash

## INTRODUCTION

During the second year in the primary school the child should show an increasing colour sense. She will be more deliberate

in choosing coloured materials and will probably be able to give a reason for her choice of both texture and colour. This opportunity of personal choice encourages forethought and reasoning in the child. Too often, after careful planning and cutting of a pattern, the teacher decides upon the materials, colours and decoration without reference to the child's wishes.

The range of materials used is limited when a uniformity of texture is required. The textures of easement cloth, linen, unbleached calico, and coarse gingham, however, are similar when the right kinds of each are purchased. This gives a choice of four materials with a correspondingly greater choice of colours. *Cotton a Broder* is at once used for sewing and towards the end of the year stranded cotton may be substituted.

Decorative articles and garments, not only of a constructive character like the decorative stitchery used in connection with a process, but also in the nature of applied ornament, may now be considered. Here again is ample opportunity for training in forethought and purpose, for such decoration can be used only when there is both space and previous provision for its inclusion. Simple embroidery in running stitch is suitable and easy. Initials may be sewn upon bags and other articles to denote ownership or simple pictures may be worked in running and darning to depict the purpose of the article. For a more formal type of pattern printing sticks may be used on borders and for all over patterns, and charming effects can be obtained by outlining the stamped patterns with stitches. Although this method of decoration tends to be somewhat mechanical, it serves the purpose of cultivating regularity of stitch.



Generally, all the articles and garments made must be saleable, therefore the teacher should be acquainted with the local labour conditions and the children's home circumstances, for these conditions, unfortunately, often limit the scope of the needlework, and it is necessary to bear them in mind when preparing a course of work.

The value of keeping notebooks and of drawing the patterns to scale is extremely

doubtful. In the primary school children should keep the actual patterns they use, and write upon them the simple directions for their use. For all processes involving measurement of inches, or fractions of inches, a marker should still be used, but the gradual use of a tape measure is recommended towards the end of the year. Rulers should never be used, except when required for pattern making.

## SUGGESTED COURSE OF LESSONS FOR THE FIRST TERM

(First Half of Term)

### LESSON 1

**Pattern-making.** The article chosen is a curved bag to hold knitting, it has a handle and is decorated by a picture in running stitch. Such bags are of standard size, so the children are given definite instructions regarding the measurements. The children make the pattern of the bag in this lesson, the details of which are given on page 302.

### LESSON 2

**Cutting out.**—The children cut out their bags. Plain and purl knitting may be taught by the group method. The children should make simple articles in alternate rows of plain and purl before attempting any form of ribbing.

### LESSON 3

**Turning down curved hems.**—The children turn down  $\frac{1}{4}$  in. hems round the curves of their bags, and securely tack the first turning. The details of this lesson and the next are given on page 305.

### LESSON 4

**Second turning of curved hem.** A demonstration on fixing the second turning of the hem, which should be  $\frac{1}{4}$  in. in width, is now given.

### LESSON 5

**Practical work.** The children fix their curved hems.

### LESSON 6

**Hemming stitch.**—The details and demonstration of this lesson are given on page 306.

### LESSON 7

**Practical work.**—The children commence hemming.

### LESSON 8

**Practical work.**—The children continue their hemming.

### LESSON 9

**Decorated top hems.**—The children now turn down 1 in. hems along the top of both halves of their bags. The teacher revises

## SECOND YEAR'S COURSE OF NEEDLEWORK 301

the method of securing hems by borders of decorative stitchery. Free choice is given to the children of simple borders for this purpose.

### LESSON 10

**Practical work.**—The children continue the work of holding their hems in place by means of stitchery borders. Special attention must be paid to the arrangement of corners which make a neat finish.

### LESSON 11

**Practical work.**—The children continue their stitchery borders. The more forward pupils may proceed with knitting.

### LESSON 12

**Making the handle.**—This constitutes the first attempt at making anything in the nature of a band. The details of this lesson are given on page 309.

(Second Half of Term)

### LESSON 13

**Practical work.**—The children proceed with making the band for the bag handle. The edges may be either oversewn with cross-stitch, or may be held together with the stitch already used on the wide hem at the top of the bag.

### LESSON 14

**Practical work.**—The children finish the handle and continue with knitting.

### LESSONS 15 and 16

**Decoration in running stitch.**—The teacher conducts a discussion on the pictures or initials which may be worked in running stitch on each side of the bag. The details of these lessons are given on page 311.

### LESSON 17

**Practical work.**—The children work in running stitches over their patterns.

### LESSONS 18 and 19

**Practical work.**—The children continue both needlework and knitting.

### LESSON 20

**Making up the bag.**—A demonstration of the method of assembling the three pieces to form the bag is now given. The details of this demonstration are given on page 312.

### LESSONS 21 and 22

**Practical work.**—The children make up their bags.

### LESSON 23

**Pressing.**—The children finish and press their needlework and knitting.

### LESSON 24

**Experimental work.**—This consists of pattern making, using dolls. The details of the demonstration are given on page 316.

Experimental work may take place at the end of a term, or at any other time when the children's interest seems to flag. It acts as a mental stimulant; it is productive of new ideas and fresh thought about the work in hand, and it gives reality to the scheme.

The use of dolls in this lesson serves to show the relationship between the shape of the body and a flat pattern. This forms a preparation for the work of the third term. A holiday comes now, and it is hoped that the lead given by the teacher on these lines will be followed by the children in experiments at home. The teacher may ask the children to bring their efforts to school during the first days of the new term. A small exhibition of holiday work gives interest to all.

## NINE LESSONS IN DETAIL FOR THE FIRST TERM



A GROUP OF ARTICLES CONSISTING OF A TEA COSY, TEA-POT HOLDER AND TRAY CLOTH, TO SHOW PROGRESSIVE WORK

**N**INE lessons, the organisation and arrangement of which are set out in detail, are now given in the order in which they will be required. The illustrations are of the actual material used for demonstration purposes, whether of paper or stuff. Blackboard drawings and previously prepared diagrams are not required for young children's work.

### MAKING THE PATTERN OF A CURVED BAG TO HOLD KNITTING

(Details and Demonstration of Lesson 1.)

#### PREPARATION

*Previous knowledge.*—Making a pattern of a folded bag.

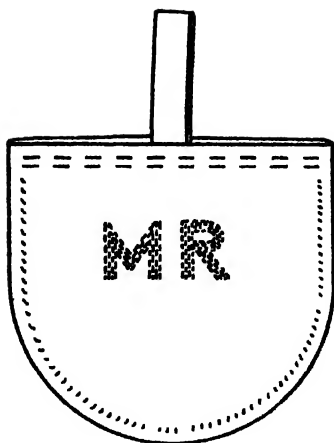
*Aim.*—The aim of this lesson is to teach the following points:—pattern making along progressive lines; how to fold paper in order to produce curves; training children in accuracy, and in the belief of fitness for a special purpose.

*Teacher's requirements.*—A finished bag containing knitting. A 24 in. ruler. Blackboard and chalk. Plain white paper, 25 in. by 20 in. in area. A piece of material, 40 in. by 20 in. in area. Pins, drawing pins and scissors.

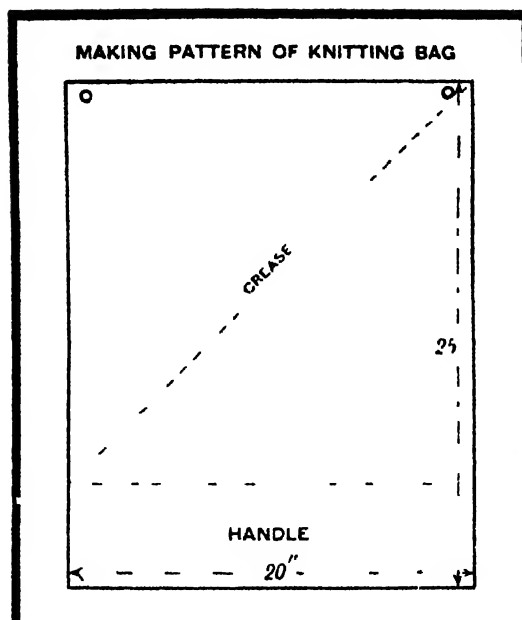
*Children's requirements.*—Pieces of plain white paper, 12½ in. by 10 in. in area. Pencils and scissors.

#### INTRODUCTION

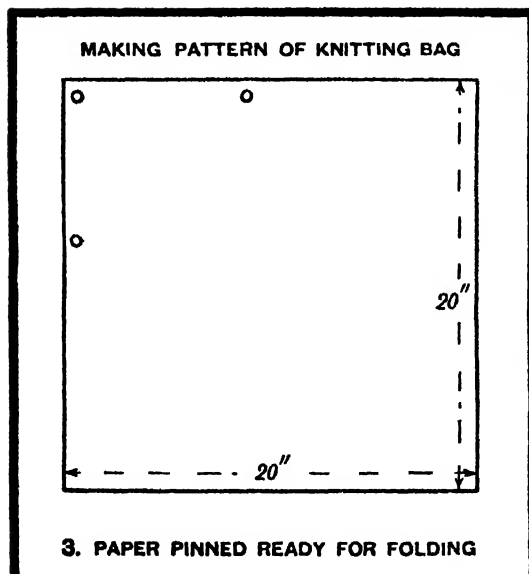
Show the class the finished knitting bag; question them to arouse their interest and



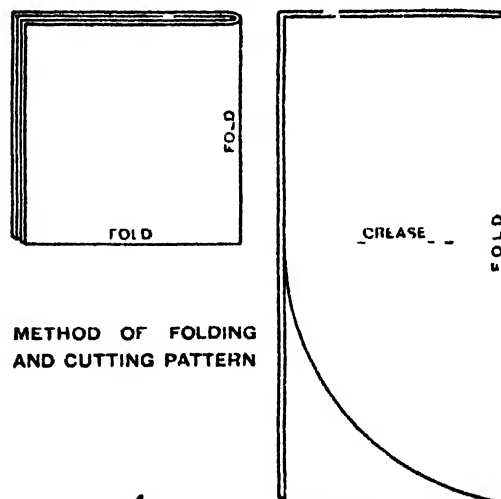
1. KNITTING BAG



2



3. PAPER PINNED READY FOR FOLDING



4

MAKING THE PATTERN OF A CURVED BAG TO HOLD KNITTING

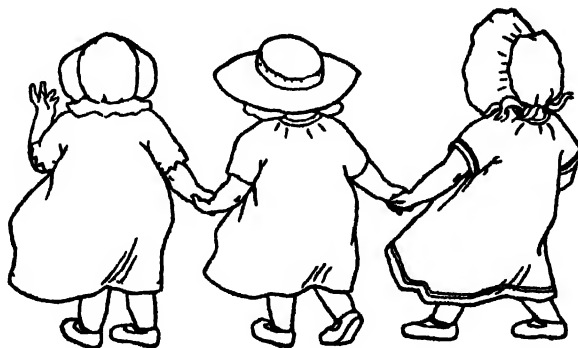
to discover whether they realise the reason for using a curved bag for the purpose of holding knitting. Tell them that it has a single handle because one of this description hangs easily on the arm, or on a corner of a chair back, or the arm of a chair, also the wool will pull out of the top of the bag without becoming entangled with the handle. Revise the reasons for first making a pattern by questions to the class.

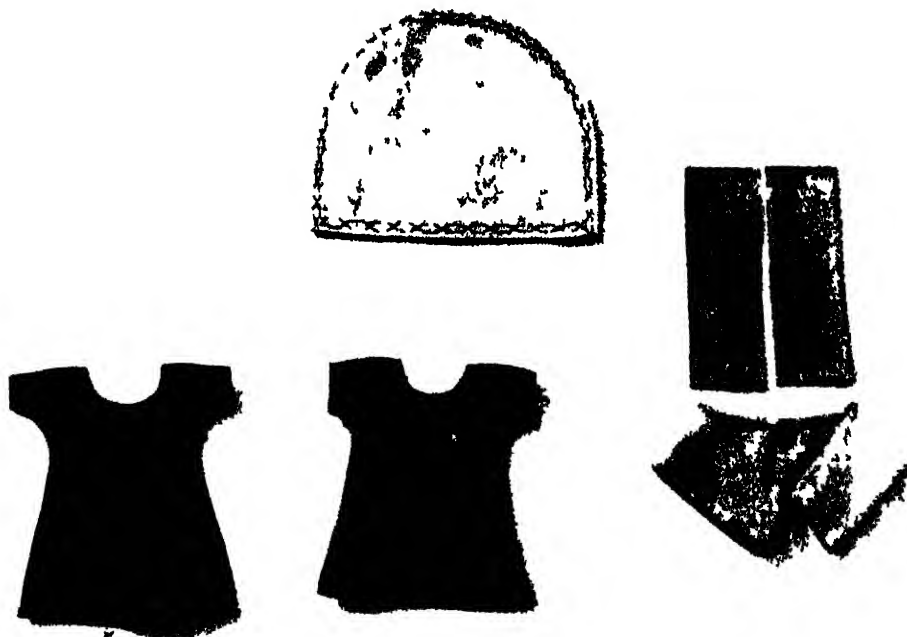
### PRESENTATION

Hold up the finished bag, and ask the children to say what shape it is,—square. Ask them to look at the pieces of paper with which they are provided, and to say what shape they are, oblong. Point out that a square is shorter than an oblong, and place the finished bag over a piece of paper belonging to a child in order to make this clear. Then tell the children that the extra piece of paper is to make the pattern of the handle of the bag. Also point out that two pieces are required to make the sides of the bag, but, because they are alike in shape, only one piece of pattern is necessary from which to cut out.

The children are now to make one piece of the pattern. Pin the demonstration paper on the blackboard so that the lengthway is down the length of the board. Tell the children to place their pieces of paper upon their desks or tables in exactly the

same position. The paper now has to be made square, by questions revise the method of doing this,—folding the paper diagonally, from the top left hand corner towards the lower right hand side. Cut off the surplus piece of paper, and write upon it the word "handle." Unfold the paper and smooth out the diagonal (the teacher will call it "slanting") crease. Place three drawing pins into the paper upon the board, one at the top left hand corner, one slightly to the left of the centre at the top, and one slightly less than half-way down at the left hand side. This will be found to facilitate the folding process, which must be performed upon the board, and not in the teacher's hand, if the children are to see clearly what is being done. Fold the paper into four, first from the right hand edge to left hand edge, and then from the edge nearest the body, to the edge farthest away—at the top. Supervise the children's folding. Unfold to half, keeping the folded edge to the right hand. Supervise this carefully. A crease is now to be seen across the paper. Draw a curve from the left hand edge of the crease, to the fold at the lower right hand corner, using a brightly coloured chalk. The children must now draw a similar curved line, the teacher helping where necessary. When all the children have finished this, demonstrate cutting along the curved chalk line, open out the pattern, and write upon it, "Pattern of bag (cut two pieces)." Let the children cut their patterns and write upon them





CHILDREN'S WORK TO ILLUSTRATE THE TREATMENT OF CURVE ON DOLL'S DRESS A HEM  
COLLAR AND A SET OF CUFFS AND CUFFS

## MAKING A HEM ALONG A CONVEX CURVE

(Details and Demonstration of Lessons 3 and 4.)

### PREPARATION

*Previous knowledge* —Turning up a narrow hem along a straight edge

*Aim* The aim of this lesson is to teach the following points — a practical method of neatening a curved edge when the curve is convex in shape, training in dexterity of handling and in observation

*Teacher's requirements* A finished bag A partly-turned hem along a curved edge, upon a piece of material to be passed round Markers. A large working specimen, i.e. the bag previously cut out, one piece of which

has the hem (measuring two inches) already finished off Blackboard and bar from which to suspend the work Pins, black two ply wool for tacking

*Children's requirements* —The work in hand and the usual tools and markers.

### INTRODUCTION

Point out the two kinds of hems on the finished bag and ask a child to tell the class how the straight hem was turned Question the children to ensure that the difference in shape of the straight and curved edges has been observed, and tell them that turning along a curved edge is not so easy, because of the difference in measurement between the raw edge and the measurement  $\frac{1}{2}$  in. inside it This is more clearly shown by measuring round the demonstration piece with a length of wool.

**PRESENTATION**

Revise the method of turning over the raw edge on to the wrong side, towards the body, using the marker for measuring  $\frac{1}{4}$  in., and tacking the turning in place with ordinary tacking cotton. Let the class tack the first turning on one piece only, which will probably take up the whole of the remainder of Lesson 3.

The demonstration of turning up hems is continued in Lesson 4, and the method of fixing the second turning is shown. Demonstrate as follows—Measure the second turning with the marker as before and hold it in place with pins placed in an upright position through the turnings. Let the children do this, giving help where necessary. Then show the tacking of the hem along the edge, using stitches  $\frac{1}{4}$  in. in length; longer stitches will not hold the hem down sufficiently firmly. As part of the hem needs to be pleated to make it fit nicely.

**APPLICATION**

Ask the class to think of any garments which might have to be treated in this way.

**HEMMING**

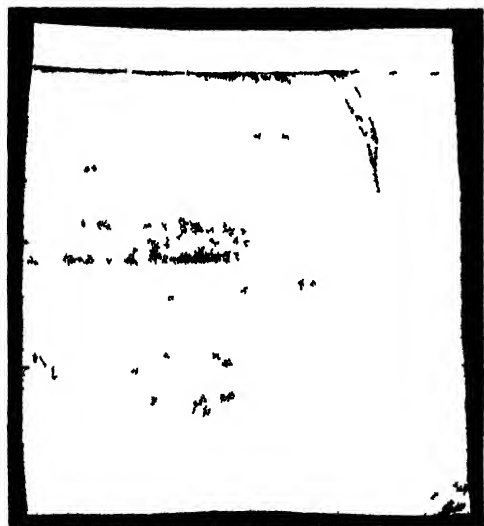
(Details and Demonstration of Lesson 6.)

**PREPARATION**

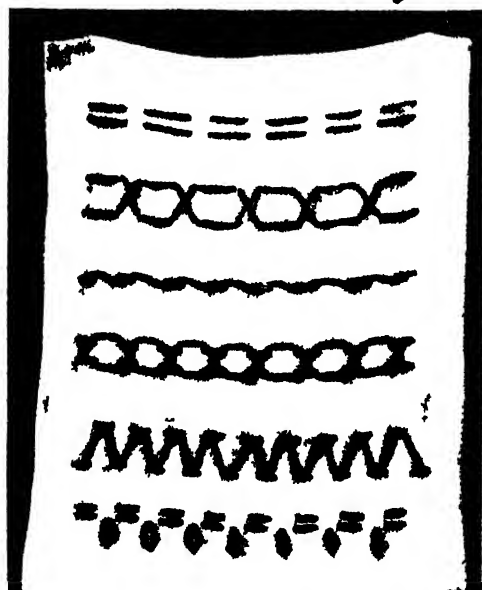
*Previous knowledge*—Holding a hem in place by means of running.

*Aim*—The aim of this lesson is to teach the following points: another method of holding a hem in place, training children in dexterity of handling.

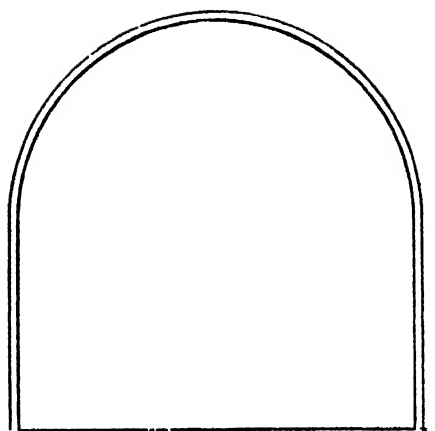
*Teacher's requirements*—Finished big Blackboard and bar from which to suspend the demonstration specimen. The demonstration specimen, one piece of which has the hemming worked, the tacking not being



A teaching specimen to illustrate the teaching of hemming. Materials used are soft unbleached calico faced on one side with leno in bright green to differentiate between right and wrong sides. The wool is four ply red wool. A demonstration needle is used, also blanket pins.

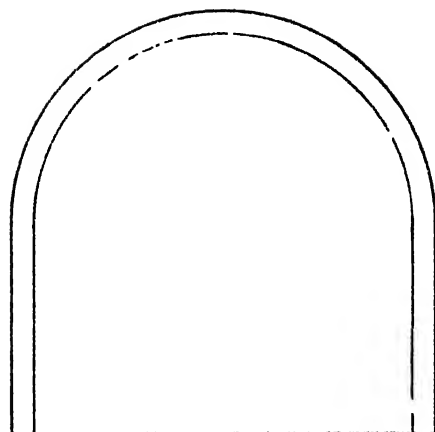


A teaching specimen for use in a lesson on decorative stitching. Material used is house flannel stitched with scarlet and black rug wool. Space is left for further stitches to be shown.



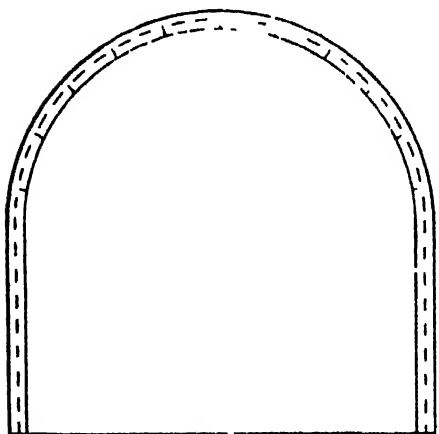
1. COTTON PLACED ROUND EDGE

Mark to show length of edge

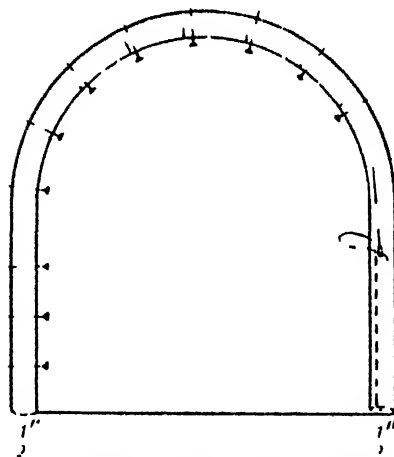


2 COTTON PLACED  $\frac{1}{2}$ " INSIDE

Mark on cotton  $\frac{1}{2}$ "



3. FIRST TURNING ( $\frac{1}{4}$ " ) EASED ON CURVE



4 SECOND TURNING EASED PINNED AND TACKING BEGUN

MAKING A HFM ALONG A CONVEX CURVE



removed. Demonstration needle and four-ply red or orange wool

*Children's requirements*—The work in hand.

### INTRODUCTION

Question the children in order to revise the previous methods of holding down hems. Tell them that they are now to be shown another way which they will find more useful when they make garments. It is a stitch which goes right over the inner fold of the hem, and therefore it is better to use this stitch on articles which have frequently to be washed and ironed, as the hem edge is kept flatter and is more easily ironed.

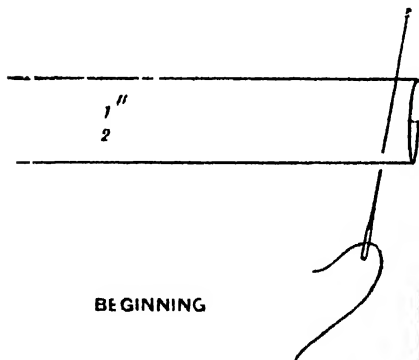
The children are not likely to know very much about washing and ironing, but they will all have seen the processes at home, and this consideration of hems which are

easily ironed will arouse interest and observation. Show them the finished bag and the demonstration piece.

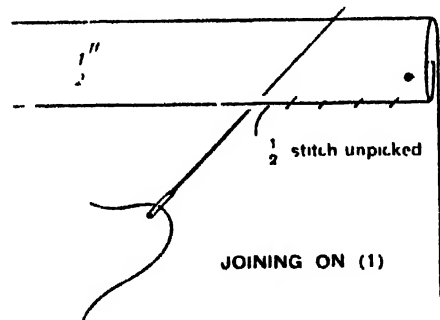
### PRESENTATION

Hang up the finished demonstration piece, and suspend the working piece from the board, showing clearly the method of holding the work, i.e. with the outer edge of the work away from the body, the bulk of the work towards the body, and the hem lying across the two first fingers of the left hand, with the fingers held slightly apart. Let the children hold their work, while the teacher supervises and helps where necessary. Some children will no doubt find this very difficult.

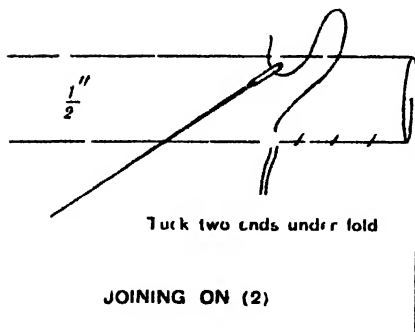
*Fastening on*—Demonstrate the fastening on of the hemming stitch, by inserting the



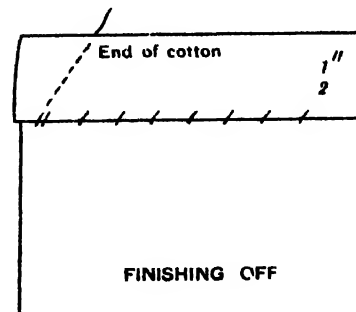
BEGINNING



JOINING ON (1)



JOINING ON (2)



FINISHING OFF

### HEMMING

## SECOND YEAR'S COURSE OF NEEDLEWORK 309

needle between the hem fold and material in a slanting direction towards the right hand. Stroke the end of thread out of sight.

*Making the stitch.*—Put the needle into the material only, just underneath the hem fold, push it partly through in a slanting direction towards the left hand, and bring it out again on the wrong side through all the turnings, a little way along. Demonstrate two or three stitches, after which the class may begin their hemming.

The teaching of the method of joining thread and fastening off will be deferred until a later lesson, until the necessity for so doing arises. For convenience, however, the details are given here.

*Joining the thread.*—Make a whole stitch and then unpick half, so that the thread is through the back of the hem only. Cut the thread, leaving a very short end ( $\frac{1}{2}$  in.). Place the newly threaded needle into the place in the hem turning where the previous stitch came out before it was unpicked, then continue the stitch exactly as before.

*Finishing off.*—When the end of the hem is reached, work one stitch in the opposite direction, thus making a V, and then another stitch over the previous one; next put the needle in between the thicknesses, and bring it out on top of the hem edge. Cut off the thread closely.

The direction and appearance of the stitch should be the same on each side, but no result of this kind is evident in the children's work or is indeed to be expected for a long period; neither is the size of the stitch to be criticised. Hemming is admittedly a difficult stitch, and where the teacher feels that the children are not capable of its use at this age, a decorative stitch, such as cross stitch, or Y stitch, may be substituted, the method of demonstrating being similar.

### MAKING A HANDLE FOR A BAG

(Details and Demonstration of Lesson 12.)

#### PREPARATION

*Previous knowledge.*—Fastening a purse by means of a cord. Oversewing.

*Aim.*—The aim of this lesson is to teach the following points: a practical method of making a handle for a bag to hold knitting; encouragement in habits of tidiness.

*Teacher's requirements.*—The bag, showing the handle sewn in position. A working specimen—the piece which was cut from the specimen bag. Blackboard and chalk. Marker. Needle, red and black wool and pins.

*Children's requirements.*—The work in hand and tools.

#### INTRODUCTION

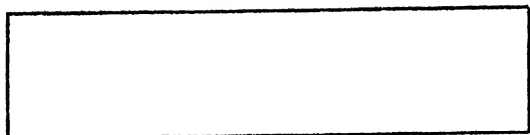
Display the finished bag with the handle attached, and revise by questions the reason for having one broad handle, this having been previously discussed during the lesson on making the pattern.

#### PRESENTATION

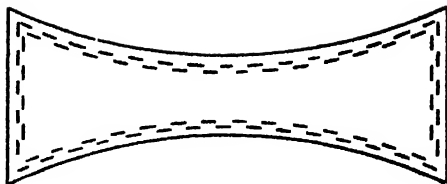
Demonstrate the first turning made on the four sides of the piece of material for the handle. By means of questions revise the turning of four sides,—first the two long and then the two short sides, in order to make easier the arrangement of corners. Revise also the need to tack turnings in order to keep them firmly fixed. Tack the turnings and let the children proceed with their own turnings, making them  $\frac{1}{4}$  in. wide.

This process may take up the remainder of the lesson, so that the demonstration may have to be extended into the lesson following.

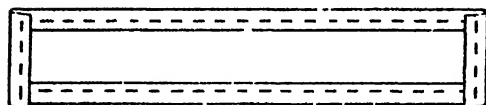
Pass round the finished bag and tell the children to look closely at it; then ask



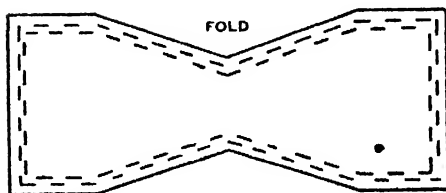
Handle 10" x 2 1/2"



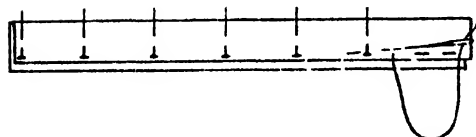
CURVED HANDLE



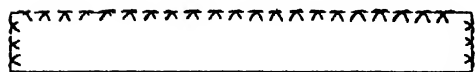
First turning  $\frac{1}{4}$ " tacked



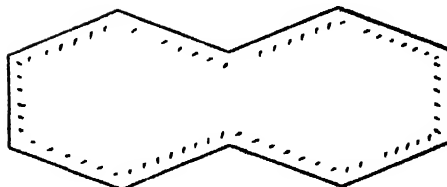
SHAPED HANDLE



Handle folded and pinned for tacking



Handle oversewn with cross-stitch



SHAPED HANDLE WITH EDGES HEMMED

MAKING A HANDLE FOR A BAG

which child is able to tell how the raw edges have been hidden. It is quite probable that some child will have observed this, therefore allow her to come out and show on the large specimen what has been done. Show how this process may be made easy by placing the strip flat upon the desk with the short sides lying to the right and left. Take a corner of the strip in each hand, and fold over lengthwise to the opposite corners, which lie farthest away from the body, fitting the edges together nicely. Supervise this process carefully in the children's work. Pin through the two thicknesses of the strip near the edges—to keep them together, placing the pins in an upright direction. Tack the edges together, the long side first, and then the two short ends; the tacking need not be fastened on or off securely. The children proceed to tack their edges together, and when the majority have finished, demonstrate securing the edges by means of oversewing in cross stitch, or by a simple tacking or running stitch border all round. Show examples of each and let the children choose the stitch they desire to use.

## APPLICATION

Whenever a strong handle or a band for fastening purposes is required, double material should be used; then it is firm and does not crumple in the same way as when single material is used. Question the children to find out whether they know of any other instances where this kind of band is used.

## DRAWING AND WORKING A PICTURE AND INITIALS IN RUNNING STITCH

(Details and Demonstration of Lessons 15  
and 16.)

### LESSON 15—DRAWING THE PICTURE AND INITIALS

*Previous knowledge.*—Tacking-stitch border.

*Aim.*—The aims of this lesson are threefold:—to give an idea of a simple method of

ornamenting a bag to denote ownership; to develop originality and ingenuity, and to teach the meaning of suitability to purpose as regards design for needlework.

*Teacher's requirements.*—Finished bag, with decoration in running stitch. The working specimen, which includes the two finished pieces of the bag. Needles, wool in two colours, and bar from which to suspend work. Blackboard and coloured chalk.

*Children's requirements.*—The work in hand. Well-sharpened pencils. Markers as previously used.

## INTRODUCTION

Show the finished bag and ask the children what they are able to see upon it. Interest is given if the decoration had not been put on for the last lesson, so that the children have to look for something that was not there before. There are initials on one side, and a picture of a ball of wool and a pair of knitting needles on the other. The initials show to whom the bag belongs, and the picture the purpose for which the bag is intended.

## PRESENTATION

First show the children the undecorated demonstration bag, and ask them where would be the best place on which to work a picture. This would be on the plain part, so that it will relieve the plainness, but the picture must not be worked all over or the appearance might be muddled and spoilt. So that before the picture can be drawn, the size of the part upon which it is to be put must be considered, in order that it shall be exactly the right size for the bag. The picture can then be drawn to fit into the space, just as it is shown on the finished bag. The teacher will now draw a picture of a ball of wool and knitting needles upon the working specimen. Show the children very clearly how the space must be occupied, discuss with them various other pictures which they might like to draw, and then

allow their imagination and originality to have free play. Let them pencil faintly any picture they like on one side of the bag. Upon the reverse side of the bag they may draw their initials large enough to take approximately the same amount of space as the picture. The working of the running stitch will take place during the following lesson, when everyone has drawn the picture and the initials.

#### LESSON 16.—WORKING THE PICTURE AND INITIALS IN RUNNING STITCH

The organisation of this lesson has been described in the previous lesson. The children should have their bags with drawings of both picture and initials in faint pencilling.

#### INTRODUCTION

Show the finished bag, and question the children in order that they may observe that running stitch has been used to outline the drawing.

#### PRESENTATION

Suspend the working specimen from the hanging bar, or blackboard, and work running stitches all round the outlines of the ball of wool and the needles, putting a double line for each needle. The size of the stitches should equal half the length of the first piece of the marker, or half the width of the hem round the curve (i.e.  $\frac{1}{2}$  in.). To commence, put the needle in from the back, or wrong side, leaving an end of thread to be oversewn into the running stitches later, and make the stitches equal in size, on both right and wrong sides. Join the thread if necessary, and finish off in the same way. The children should then outline their own pictures, the teacher supervising and helping. Work the initials in three or four rows of running to gain a more solid effect. To finish off, turn the work to the wrong side, and oversew the back of the stitches with the ends of thread.

#### APPLICATION

This stitch can be used in many more ways. Suggest other ideas for pictures from finished articles, illustrations, or by drawing on the blackboard. Such things as a ship (using rows of alternate stitches to depict the sea), a cricket bat and ball, a needle and a reel of cotton readily suggest themselves; also short sentences such as "Sleep well" on a nightdress bag.

*Results.*—The results of this type of lesson will probably fail to come up to the teacher's expectations, some of the drawings being too small, others too large. Also a slight grubbiness is obviously unavoidable where pencils have to be used. This, however, may be removed by the teacher by the application of a small amount of powdered magnesia, which should be left on for two or three days; the articles should then be shaken to remove the powder, leaving the work much cleaner. The children will enjoy this form of sewing as it gives their imagination full play and develops their inventive powers.

#### MAKING UP THE KNITTING BAG

(Details and Demonstration of Lesson 20.)

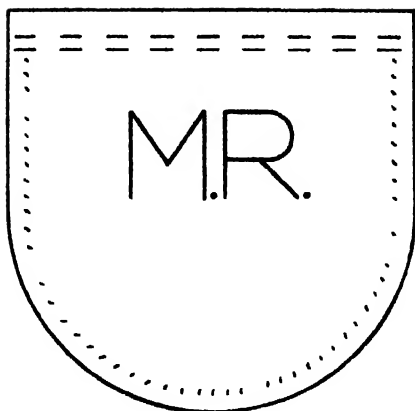
#### PREPARATION

*Previous knowledge.*—Joining two pieces of material together by means of running stitch.

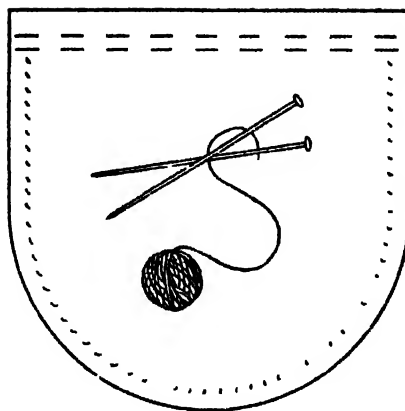
*Aim.*—The aim of this lesson is to teach the following points:—a good and easy method of making up a bag with a handle; the need for accuracy; neatness of finish.

*Teacher's requirements.*—The finished bag. The three pieces of the demonstration specimen. Needle, pins and wool.

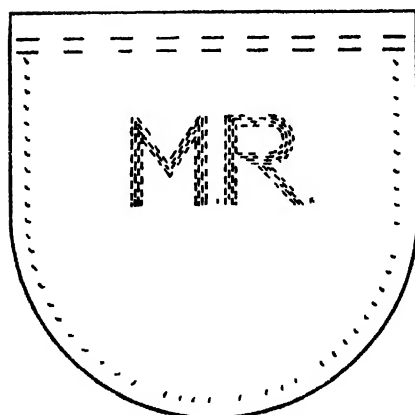
*Children's requirements.*—The work in hand and tools.



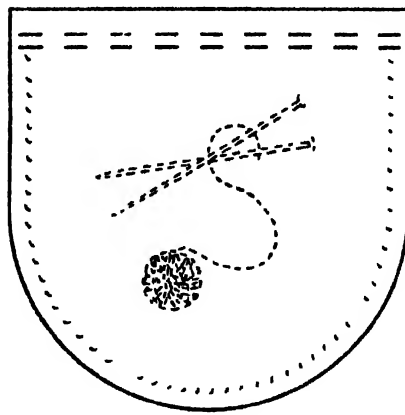
1 Initial drawn on one side



2 Picture drawn on the other side

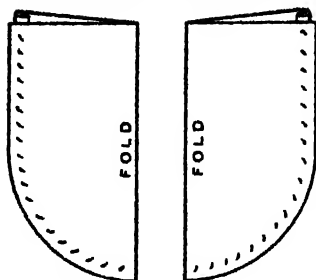


3 Initial worked in running stitch

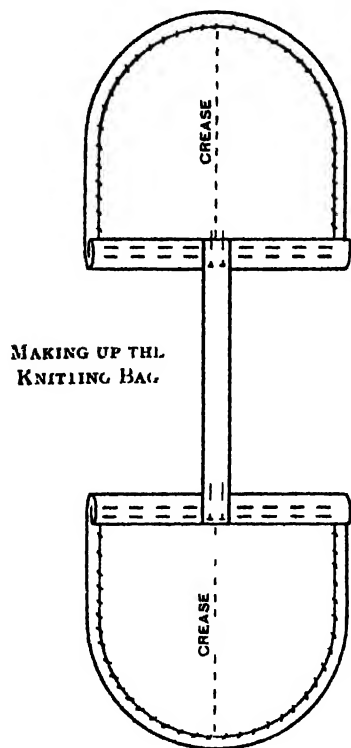


4 Picture worked

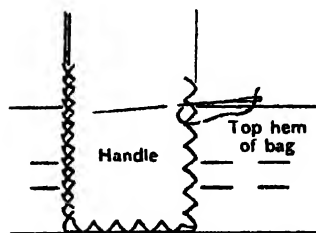
DRAWING AND WORKING A PICTURE AND INITIALS IN RUNNING STITCH



Pieces folded to find centre



Handle pinned to bag



Section shewing handle being sewn to top hem of bag

## INTRODUCTION

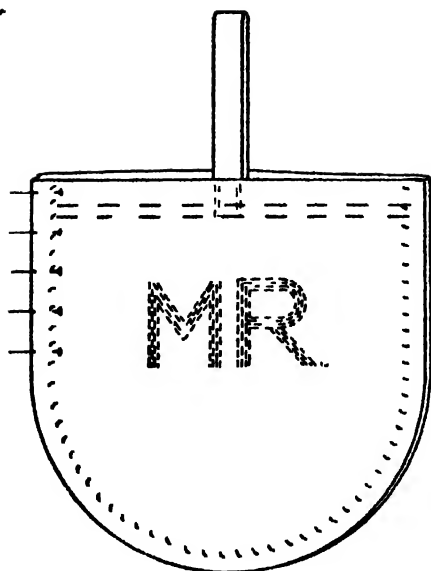
Tell the class that the bags, some of which are nearly finished, have now to be sewn together like the bag which they have seen on a good many occasions, but not quite in the same way as the joining together which they have previously done.

## PRESENTATION

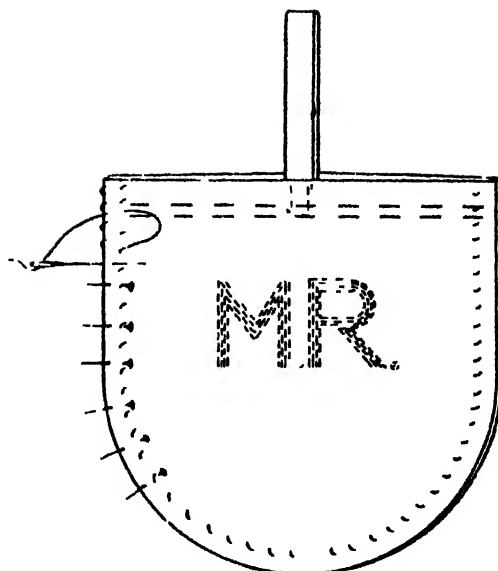
*Attaching the handle.*—Using the working specimen, which is first held in the hand and then pinned upon the board, fold each piece in half and crease it, putting a pin on the creases in an upright position through the top hem. This marks the centre of each side, and is necessary for the accurate fixing and sewing on of the handle. Fold the handle in half lengthways and crease it. Place the middle crease of each end of the handle, to the middle crease of each piece of the bag, on the wrong side (or inside), so that the end edges of the handle lie in a straight line with the inner fold of the hem. Pin through all thicknesses of both handle and bag, again putting the pins in an upright position. The children may now proceed to do this, the teacher supervising.

To sew the handle in position, put the needle up through the hem to come out at the junction of the handle and bag at the edge of the hem. Run all round through all thicknesses in a square, keeping the stitches very even on both sides, and to finish off put the needle through the hem in the reverse way to that in which the running was begun, and cut off the surplus thread.

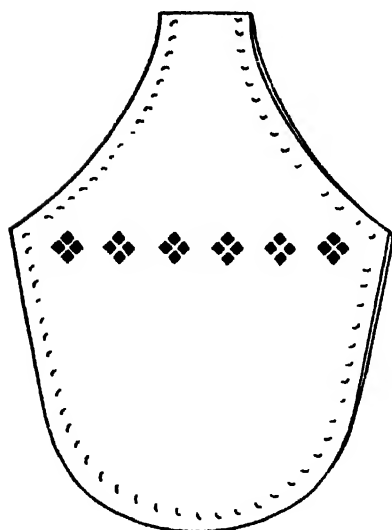
*Joining the bag.*—This will be found to be very easy now that the handle has been applied. Place the pieces together to fit exactly, and pin in the same way as when fixing the handle, placing the pins 2 in. apart. Join up the bag by first tacking through the centre of the two hems, using stitches  $\frac{1}{4}$  in. in length, and then oversew to form crossed stitches over the hem edge. The stitches should be  $\frac{1}{8}$  in. in length, distance apart, and depth.



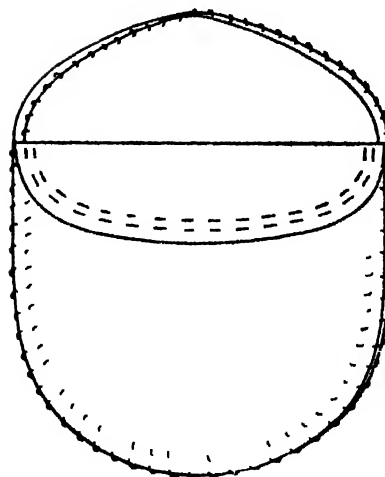
1. PINNING THE KNITTING BAG TOGETHER



2. OVERSEWING IN PROGRESS



3 CURVED BAG DECORATED WITH  
STICK PRINTING



4 CURVED BAG WITH FLAP

### MAKING UP THE KNITTING BAG



**APPLICATION**

Question the children to discover whether they have ever observed any other articles which could be made up in this way. Ask them whether they know why the handle was sewn on before joining up the bag (because it is always easier when fixing a handle to deal with flat pieces than with round objects which cannot be laid flat upon a table).

**EXPERIMENTAL WORK****MAKING THE PATTERN OF A DOLL'S PINAFORE**

(Details and Demonstration of Lesson 24.)

**PREPARATION**

*Previous knowledge.*—Making a flat pattern of a curved bag.

*Aim.*—The aims of this lesson are:—to give some idea of the relation between a flat pattern and the shape of the body; to teach the meaning of width and length related to the body; to give facility in handling paper and scissors; to train the power of observation.

*Teacher's requirements.*—A medium sized doll, wearing a simple pinafore of unbleached calico. A piece of paper equal in area to the size of the pinafore. Pins, tape measure and coloured pencil. Scissors.

*Children's requirements.*—Their own dolls. Pieces of paper of approximately the correct size for their dolls (if they are 12 in. square, sufficient margin will have been given to allow for sizes of most dolls). Pins, tape measures, pencils and scissors.

**INTRODUCTION**

Place the doll without the pinafore in a convenient position on the table or teacher's desk, and ask the children to give the names of all the garments that can be seen on the doll. Ask them if they can think of any garment which they sometimes wear, but

which the doll is not wearing. They will probably give the required answer—a pinafore. Let them give the reason for wearing a pinafore, and tell them that they are now to be shown how to make the pattern of it.

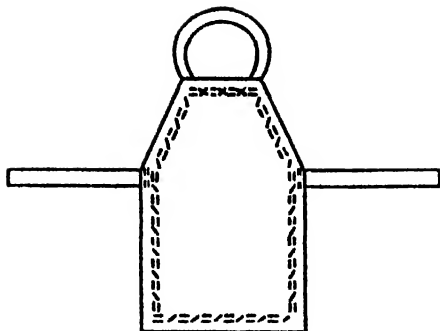
Usually they have made a pattern by folding a piece of paper, and drawing on it the lines which give the shape, but now they are going to begin to make patterns of clothes, which are shaped to fit various parts of the body. Place the pinafore upon the doll, and question the class regarding the parts of the body which the pinafore is required to fit, i.e. across the chest, which is called the *width*, and from the chest to the knee, called the *length*. Thus the parts of the dress requiring protection are covered by a garment which is the right size, or which is said to fit, by being cut the correct width and length, according to the size of the person for whom it is being made.

**PRESENTATION**

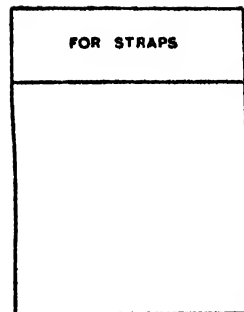
Take the pinafore off the doll, and hang it in such a position that all the children may see its shape. Take the piece of paper which is to become the pattern, and fold into half lengthways, to mark the centre. Pin into the desired position on the doll, with the crease line to the middle of the doll. This is done because nearly everyone is alike on both left hand and right hand sides, and therefore only one half of the pattern need be shaped and the other side can be cut from it. Then mark with a pencil round the right-hand half, making it the shape required,—not too close to the arm hole so that the pattern is too wide, and not too far round to the back,—and making it long enough to cover the frock. Supervision will be necessary at this stage, although it is not so important during this type of lesson, for some laxity in this respect is desirable in order to foster originality of ideas. When this has been done, remove the paper from the doll and fold it in half again. Then cut right through the two thicknesses of paper. This will produce a whole pattern; show



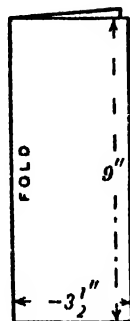
Doll wearing pinafore



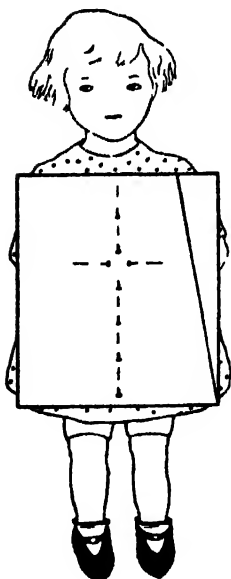
Pinafore opened out



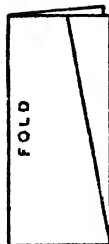
Paper for pattern



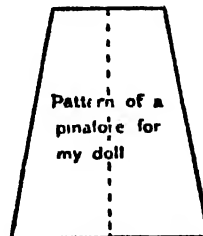
Paper folded in half



Paper pinned on doll and  
shape drawn on right-hand half



Cut along line to make  
pattern



Finished pattern

FINISHED PINAFORE AND THE MAKING OF AN ALTERNATIVE PATTERN

this by pinning the pattern on to the doll, and then over the actual pinafore. The children may cut their patterns, and write their names on them, and the words, "Pattern of a pinafore for my doll."

The cutting of an alternative shape of pattern is shown on page 317.

### APPLICATION

Tell the class that whenever a pattern of

a garment is made, its shape and size must belong to the part of the body for which it is meant, i.e. it must be the correct width, or size across, and also the correct length, or measurement down. Let the children place tape measures across each other's chests and downwards from chest to knee, and suggest that they try at home to make pinafore patterns for small brothers or sisters, or for their friends.

## SUGGESTED COURSE OF LESSONS FOR THE SECOND TERM

(First Half of Term)

During the first half of this term, the children may make some small articles or garments, choosing their own materials and using the stitches already learnt at school or in the home.

### LESSON 1

**Discussion.**—A selection of articles should be shown typical of those which the children may wish to make. After adequate discussion the children should make their choice.

### LESSON 2

**Pattern-making.**—The children make their patterns. Those who have already made patterns at home may choose their material and cut out their articles entirely unaided. The teacher should help only when asked to do so.

### LESSON 3

**Stitches.**—There should be a discussion with regard to the stitches to be used. The teacher may question the class to discover the number of stitches known, and make a list of them on the blackboard, so that every child will know the names. They may then begin to make their articles.

### LESSONS 4 to 11

**Practical work.** The children continue to make their articles. The teacher's help, advice and encouragement should be freely given when required.

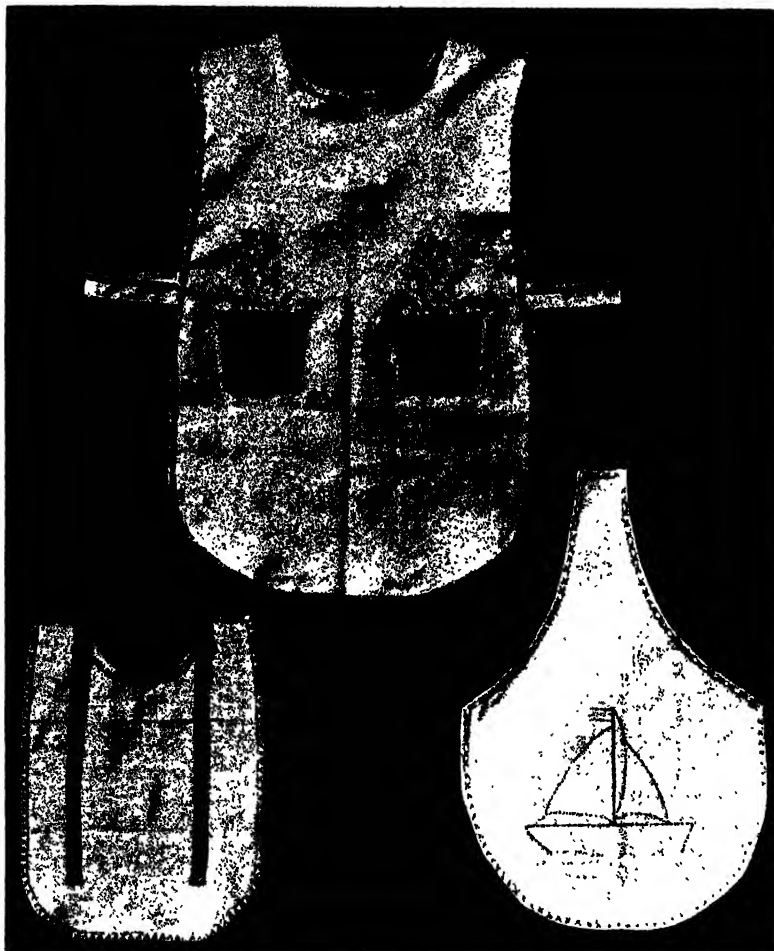
### LESSON 12

**Pressing.** The children should press their work and arrange a small exhibition of it for everyone to see.

The children will love this type of work and the informal natural atmosphere which is created. They are now actually sewing because they really wish to make something for themselves by their own efforts. Many of them will gain the self-confidence which is an important possession in craft work of any kind.

(Second Half of Term)

During this half term the first actual garment is constructed. This is a baby's feeder, which is very suitable, and gives scope for new processes,—such as the management of a convex curve, the use of tape, and stick-printing as a form of ornamentation.



A GROUP OF ARTICLES TO SHOW TREATMENT OF CURVES —  
A PINAFORE, A FEEDER AND A BAG

### LESSON 13

**Pattern-making.**—The children make the pattern of the feeder. The details of this lesson are given on page 320.

### LESSON 14

**Cutting out.**—The teacher may now arrange for the class (either in pairs or in fours) to cut out the feeder from one or two large pieces of material. The other members of the class are occupied with knitting; they may make vests in purl and plain ribbing

for dolls or for babies, and in finer wool than has hitherto been used.

### LESSON 15

**Turning hems.**—The children continue to cut out their feeders, and commence to turn down  $\frac{1}{4}$  in. hems along each side.

### LESSON 16

**Practical work.**—The children now fix the hems, which may be held in place according to their own desires.

**LESSON 17**

**Practical work.**—The children turn  $\frac{1}{4}$  in. hems along the shoulder edges of the feeder and a wider hem at the base. An alternative treatment which appeals to the slower workers is a fringed edge, the width of the fringe being 1 in. or less. The actual fraying out should not be done until the decoration has been finished.

**LESSON 18**

**Neatening the neck curve.**—A demonstration of the use of  $\frac{1}{4}$  in. tape for neatening the neck curve is now given. The details of this lesson are given on page 324.

**LESSON 19**

**Practical work.**—The children continue to neaten the necks of their feeders with tape. The previous lesson may have to be continued, and will certainly need to be revised.

**LESSON 20**

**Practical work.**—Needlework and knitting.

**LESSON 21**

**Stick printing.**—The teacher now gives a demonstration of stick printing for use in border patterns on the feeders. The details of this lesson are given on page 326.

**LESSON 22**

**Experimental work.**—The children may now experiment on scraps of material.

**LESSON 23**

**Practical work.**—The children should apply the knowledge gained from the lessons on feeders. Others continue with knitting.

**LESSON 24**

**Pressing.**—The children must now finish off and press their work.

## THREE LESSONS IN DETAIL FOR THE SECOND TERM

**THESE** three lessons, like the detailed lessons given at the end of the First Term's work, are now given in the order in which they will be required.

### MAKING THE PATTERN OF A FEEDER

(Details and Demonstration of Lesson 13.)

#### PREPARATION

**Previous knowledge.**—Making the pattern of a bag, and also the pattern of a doll's pinafore, shaping it upon a doll.

**Aim.**—The aims of this lesson are:—to teach a method of making a pattern of a feeder by paper folding; to train children in observation and accuracy.

**Teacher's requirements.**—A finished feeder hung up in a convenient position. A pattern of the feeder. Red chalk, blackboard, drawing pins, scissors. A piece of plain white paper for demonstration purposes, cut twice the size of the feeder, i.e. 24 in. by 20 in.

**Children's requirements.**—Pieces of paper 12 in. by 10 in. Pencils and scissors.



A GROUP OF FEEDERS SHOWING A VARIOUS TREATMENT OF DECORATION

**INTRODUCTION**

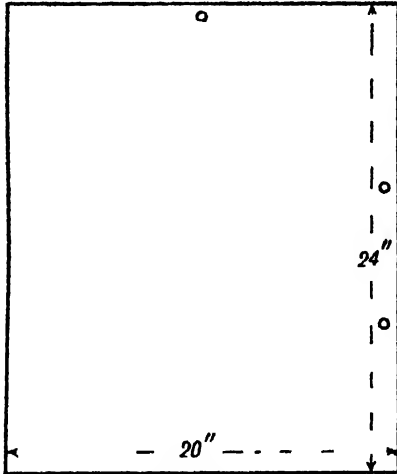
Show the children the finished feeder, placing it on a child. Tell them that such an article is not used by children as old or as big as they are, but by little children who are not able to feed as cleanly as older ones. A feeder thus protects the clothes just below the chin, when the child is feeding. Hang the feeder in a position convenient to all. State that you have cut the paper the right size for them as no special baby could be measured.

Y—VOL. 2

**PRESENTATION**

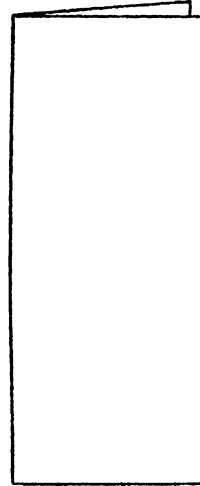
Pin upon the board the oblong of paper to be used for demonstration purposes, with lengthway downwards, using three pins as illustrated. Fold the paper in half lengthwise, keeping the fold to the left hand side. The children may now place and fold their papers upon the desks, the teacher supervising. Fold the paper again into three, lengthwise, making two creases, and then into three across the width, again making two creases.

# MAKING PATTERN OF A FEEDER



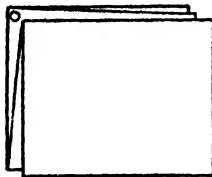
PAPER SIZE 24" X 20" FOR DEMONSTRATION

# MAKING PATTERN OF A FEEDER



PAPER FOLDED IN HALVES

# MAKING PATTERN OF A FEEDER



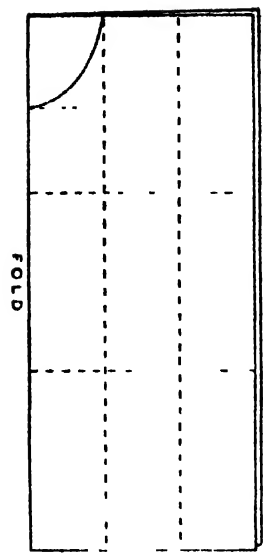
PAPER FOLDED IN THREE LENGTHWISE

# MAKING PATTERN OF A FEEDER

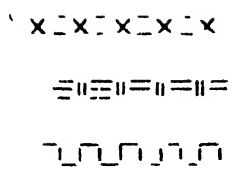


PAPER FOLDED IN THREE ALONG WIDTH

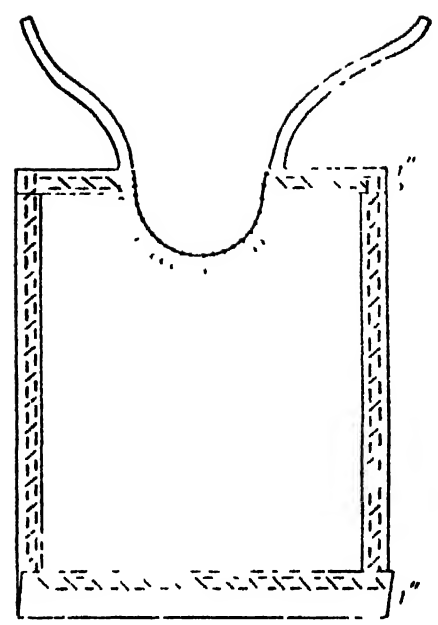
MAKING THE PATTERN OF A FEEDER



Size 12" x 10"

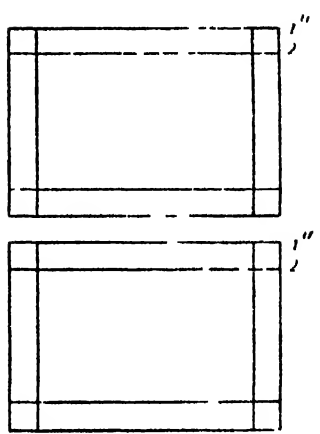


Three alternate borders

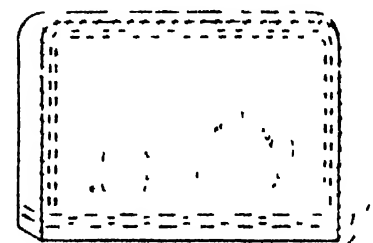
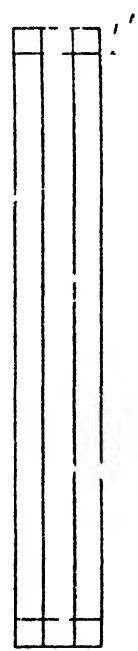


Finished Feeder

MAKING PATTERN OF FEEDER

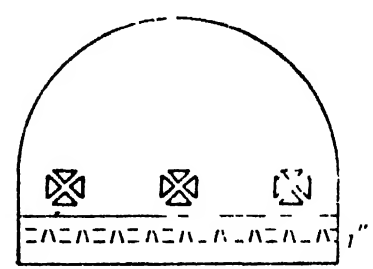


Pieces needed for first tea cosy



Finished Tea Cosy

MAKING PATTERN OF TEA COSY



Tea Cosy decorated with stick printing

MAKING PATTERNS OF A FEEDER AND TEA COSY



The children may now crease their papers, the teacher helping if necessary.

*To shape the neck curve.*—Show, by placing a flat piece of paper against a child's chest, that the part which touches the throat will not lie round it unless the paper is specially shaped by a curve. The teacher may tear the paper away from the throat in order to make a roughly shaped curve. Tell them that the curve is now to be drawn. Measure down the fold to a point half-way between the edges of the paper and the first transverse crease, and draw a line to the first vertical crease. Curve from the point where the first vertical crease touches the edges, to the line at the fold. Open out the pattern to half, keeping the fold at the left hand, and cut through the neck curve on double paper, so that the curve is the same shape and size on both halves. The pattern is now ready for cutting out in material.

### APPLICATION

Question the class to discover if they can think of any other garment which needs to be cut on double paper in order to produce two halves of equal shape and size.

## II

### NEATENING A CURVED EDGE BY MEANS OF FACING WITH TAPE

(Details and Demonstration of Lesson 18.)

#### PREPARATION

*Previous knowledge*—Turning down a hem along a curved bag (a convex curve).

*Aim*—The aim of this lesson is to teach the following points:—a practical method of dealing with a concave curve; the use of narrow tape for neatening purposes; training in resourcefulness and observation.

*Teacher's requirements.*—A demonstration specimen, 20 in. by 18 in., made of unbleached

calico, to give a clear idea of wrong and right sides; it should be cut to represent the neck curve of the feeder (the curve needs to be fairly shallow); the shoulder hems should be turned down and hemmed on to the right side. A length of brightly coloured wool braid 1 in. wide. Wool in contrasting colours, black wool for tacking. Needle, pins, scissors.

*Children's requirements*—The work in hand and tools. 25 in. of cotton tape,  $\frac{1}{4}$  in. wide

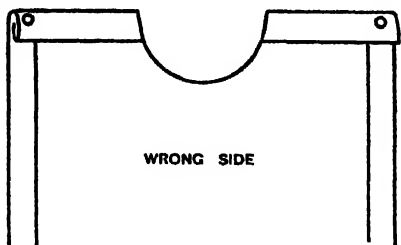
### INTRODUCTION

Ask the children whether they remember turning down a hem along an edge which was not straight, but curved in shape. The knitting bags which they made were curved. Show a bag and the feeder, and ask the class to observe the difference in the shape of the curve; the bag curves outwards, the neck of the feeder inwards, so that it fits round the baby's neck. On the bag, the raw edge was too large to lie down flat when turned down, but on the neck curve of the feeder the edge will be found to be too small to lie flat; it has therefore to be specially treated

### PRESENTATION

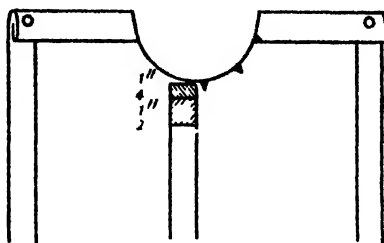
*Snipping the curve*—Pin the demonstration piece upon the blackboard, with the neck curve at the top and the wrong side facing the class. Tell the children to place their feeders on their desks in exactly the same position. Supervise this (the right side of the children's work will be the side away from which the hems are turned, and therefore will be placed downwards on the desk). In order to make the raw edge lie flat when turned down, it is necessary to cut it down; this will make small openings which allow the intervening pieces to lie flat. The process is called snipping, and has always to be done round a curve of this shape. Show how the snipping is done, using a marker to measure the depth of the snips,—

# NEATENING THE NECK CURVE



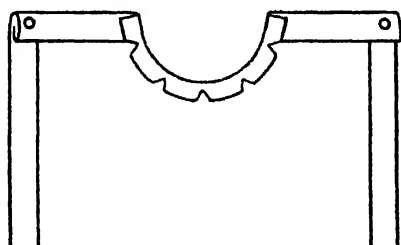
1 FEEDER WITH WRONG SIDE SHOW'NG

# NEATENING THE NECK CURVE



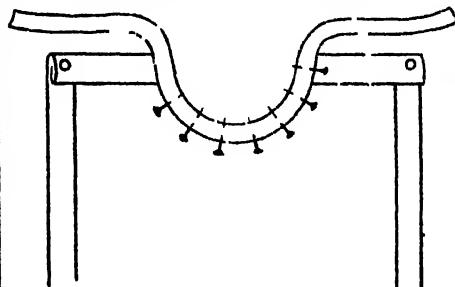
2 SNIPPING ROUND THE CURVE

# NEATENING THE NECK CURVE



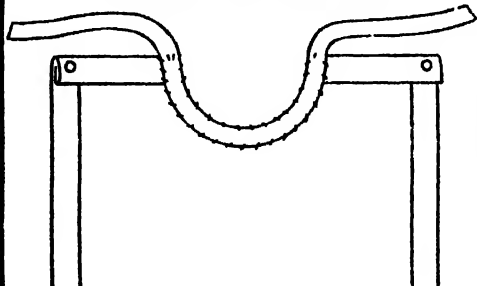
3 EDGE TURNED DOWN FOR  $\frac{1}{4}$ "

# NEATENING THE NECK CURVE

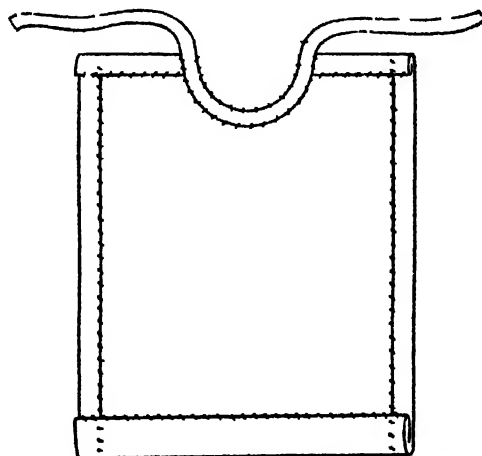


4  $\frac{1}{4}$ " TAPE PINN'D ROUND CURVE

# NEATENING THE NECK CURVE



5. FINISHED EFFECT



6 FINISHED FEEDER WRONG SIDE

NEATENING A CURVED EDGE BY MEANS OF FACING WITH TAPE

snip almost to the depth of the first division on the marker. The class may snip the raw edge along curves, the teacher helping. Tack the raw edge over on to the wrong side, making it lie as flat as possible, using small tacking stitches and ordinary tacking cotton. The children may tack the turnings in place.

*Pinning the tape in position.*—Find the middle of the length of tape by creasing, and pin it to the middle of the feeder, so that one edge of the tape comes to the fold at the edge of the curve. The tape is straight, so that it will be a little troublesome to make it lie flat round the curve. Continue to pin the tape over the raw edge so that it lies flat along the lower edge and is slightly frilled in appearance along the edge which comes to the fold. The children may now proceed to do this. Demonstrate the holding in place of the tape at the lower edge by means of hemming, which has already been learned. The class may hem the tape in place,—this will make it necessary to carry over the remainder of the lesson into another period.

When all the hemming is completed, revise oversewing. Tell the children that another use for this stitch is to sew on tape to the edge. Demonstrate this, showing that the garment should be held with the wrong side to the worker, so that the loose edge of the tape may be evenly eased. Hem down the tiny pieces of the feeder at the ends of the neck to the tape, working from the right side.

### APPLICATION

Invite the children to suggest further uses for tape which might be applied in a similar manner.

### STICK PRINTING

(Details and Demonstration of Lesson 21.)

### PREPARATION

*Previous knowledge.*—Making up designs for borders to be worked in tacking stitch.

*Aim.*—The aims of this lesson are:—to teach a method of decoration by means of printing with specially prepared blocks; to give an idea of spacing and proportion in the arrangement of units to form border patterns.

*Arrangement of lesson.*—This lesson will consist of a series of short demonstrations to groups of from six to ten children. No special apparatus is necessary apart from a few printing sticks and a feeder prepared for the printing of the border pattern. The children will also work in small groups owing to the necessity for the teacher's supervision, and the difficulty of providing every child with a set of printing sticks and colours.

### PRESENTATION

Show the children the printing sticks, which are made of specially prepared smooth wood cut into shapes at both ends. Show also the article to be decorated with a simple border pattern, prepared for printing by having two rows of tacking as guides between which the pattern is to be made, and pencil spots the required distance apart for the spacing of the shapes. This must be thought out and the preparation completed before the printing can be done, the spacing depends upon the shape of the article, and the area available.

*Method of printing.*—The colour, which should have been prepared before the lesson, must be of a permanent nature, e.g. aniline dye, or spirit stains such as are used in staining leather. Make small pads of two or three thicknesses of felt, flannel, or even blotting paper, and on to them pour a very little colour, a separate pad being required for each colour. Pin the article to be decorated quite straight, and with the right side uppermost, on a drawing board covered with new blotting paper. Hold the stick in an upright position and place the chosen end first on the pad of colour, and then on the correct spot on the article to be printed. This must

be done quickly and firmly; the stick must be removed by an upward movement,—it should not be drawn across the surface of the material. The stick must be cleaned with turpentine after use. In this case very simple borders, using one or two shapes, only should be used. The teacher prints on the feeder, or on other articles, until everyone has been shown the method. Then those members of the class who are ready to do so may print their own patterns. As there are generally nine simple shapes to each set of sticks, four children can print at a time if they are arranged at the teacher's table, the rest of the class being engaged upon either needlework or knitting.



SOME SIMPLE SHAPES

BORDERS USING SHAPES SHOWN ABOVE



## SUGGESTED COURSE OF LESSONS FOR THE THIRD TERM



STICK PRINTING

THE first half of this term may be given to decorative stitchery, the children making articles for household or classroom use. The articles may be made of linen, dyed Russian crash, donkey-boy cloth, or other material not hitherto used during this year. The texture and colouring of the materials selected should possess a decorative and aesthetic value. The shape of the articles should be extremely simple,—square or oblong. Articles which readily suggest themselves are tray cloths, cushion covers, table cloths, runners and centres, chair backs, toilet covers, cot covers and perambulator covers.

From their experience with printing sticks for border patterns the children will realise how such a pattern is formed; they may now extend their experience in this direction by stitchery, using any stitch known to them. The edges of these articles may be neatened by fraying or by a hem of suitable width, secured in any way that seems desirable to both child and teacher. Materials like dyed Russian crash and donkey-boy cloth, are narrow in width, and may therefore remain neatened by a selvedge thread on two sides, provided that the width adapts itself to the required size, leaving only two edges to be neatened.

In order to lessen the difficulty of cutting out these various articles, the children must understand that if they are making articles for the home they must bring patterns of the size required, or at least the measurements written down.

Any unfinished knitting may be continued at odd moments. Then the child may make any knitted article she wishes, using any other stitches she has learned at home.

### LESSON 1

**Discussion of work.**—The teacher should show a selection of suitable finished articles, also materials and threads from which the children may make their choice. If any scraps of material are available, let the children take them home to show their parents, in this way encouraging a spirit of co-operation between school and home life. Ask the children to bring from home the pattern or size of the article they wish to make. An excellent plan is for the teacher to duplicate lists of suggestions for articles and probable prices for the parents to see. The required size can then be written against the chosen article on each child's list. It is recommended to provide a wide choice. The children may continue their knitting during the odd moments of this lesson, and begin their new garments.

### LESSON 2

**Pattern making and cutting out.**—The teacher must correct patterns and the children begin to cut out their articles; they will have to be dealt with individually for some time. Since the correction of patterns and cutting out will probably extend into the fourth or fifth lesson, those who are not cutting out at first must be provided with knitting, or some other occupation. As the children cut out their articles they may proceed to turn hems and to tack them, using either a marker, or, if they are able, a tape measure for this purpose.

### LESSON 5

**Decorative stitchery borders.**—The details and demonstration of this lesson are given on page 329.

### LESSON 6

**Practical work.**—The children continue their work, which will be in all stages of progress, and the teacher continues to deal with them individually. The specimen containing borders in stitchery and the finished articles should be displayed during the whole series of lessons.

### LESSON 7

**Border design.**—The children, having designed a border pattern by means of working practice designs on scraps of material, present them to the teacher for her approval. The teacher will give a demonstration on the arrangement of border designs upon various articles, the details of which are given on page 330.

### LESSONS 8 to 11

**Practical work.**

### LESSON 12

**Pressing.**—The children press and finish off their needlework and knitting.

## TWO LESSONS IN DETAIL FOR THE THIRD TERM

**T**HESSE two lessons, like the other detailed lessons are now given in the order in which they will be required

### DECORATIVE STITCHERY BORDERS (Details and Demonstration of Lesson 5.)

#### PREPARATION

*Previous knowledge* Tacking stitch used decoratively, and working pictures and initials in running stitch. Stick printing.

*Use.* The aim of this lesson is to teach the following points: the further application of tacking stitch for the actual enrichment of pieces; the uses of colour for decorative purposes; training in resourcefulness in using stitches already known by placing them at new angles for decorative purpose.

*Teacher's requirement.* A finished article similar to those which the children are making and teaching specimens which were used in the previous lesson on. The arrangement of border design. Blackboard chalk, etc. Needles and wool.

*Children's requirements.*—Work in hand and tools.

#### INTRODUCTION

This lesson is really a continuation of the previous one, and is the practical application of the drawing of border designs in stitchery on material. Return the children's papers of designs which have been marked, and give the necessary comments.

Then pin up on the blackboard the unfinished article to be worked.

#### PRESENTATION

Question the children to draw attention to the fact that they have at some time previously worked patterns of one kind or another upon articles. Remark that when straight patterns are to be used a better and cleaner way than pencilling lines is to tack or crease them.

*Method 1.* Tacking the guiding lines. Pin the demonstration piece upon the blackboard and show guiding lines by means of a line of tacking 2 in. below the hem (using fine wool) with a second line 1 in. below the first giving a space of 1 in. between the two lines for the working of the border. Tack the two short sides and then the two long sides of the border 1 to go all round. In dealing with corners the simplest plan is to cross the lines of tacking which causes the corner automatically to form a right angle.

*Method 2.* Creasing the guiding lines. Crease the material as for turning a hem where the border is to be worked open out and it is ready for the decorative stitchery. This method is more suitable for small articles, as the creases do not remain for very long.

Show both methods and tell the children to choose the way they find more easy using markers or tape measures to obtain even distance from the edges of the hem.

The stitch to be shown is catch stitch which is already used upon the hem, and variations of any stitches known, however, are equally suitable. Demonstrate the working of the stitch as follows:—Place the needle in from the back of the article and bring it out a little distance from the corner on the line of tacking nearest the hem leaving the end of thread to be darned later.

into the stitches on the wrong side. Put the needle in  $\frac{1}{4}$  in. down from right to left, so as to make a stitch in a slanting direction towards the inner line of tacking; then pick up a piece of material about half the length of the slanting stitch. Work the slanting stitches all the way along, picking up on the tacking line and below it alternately.

*The corner.*—The arrangement of this will be rather difficult and the children will need individual help, as the stitches used will differ both in shape and size, and no hard and fast rule can be given to children of this age. They must, however, be told that the arrangement of the pattern at a corner is important, and they should be encouraged first to draw the probable arrangement on paper, when it will be found less difficult to copy in stitchery. Work all round the hem in catch stitch, and then all along the inner tacking thread. Work a row of upright stitches in between these two rows to connect them, and so complete the border.

If the article is to be decorated down the short sides only [see method (1), page 332], work the stitchery from inner fold of hem to opposite fold of hem, and fasten off by turning the material and darning the ends of thread into the stitches on the wrong side. When squares are formed [see method (3), page 332], single guiding lines may be creased. These may be worked as a double row of large running stitches, one double row starting in the centre of a side, and a second double row placed between the centre row and the inner hem fold, so as to make four divisions along each side, or sixteen divisions in all. The end of thread on the wrong side must be darned in to finish them off neatly. Corners or spaces may be further enriched by Y stitches as illustrated on page 333 - *Simple Spot Pattern*.

### APPLICATION

The class should be reminded that the methods shown of working designs may be applied to the decoration of many articles

and garments, and that good effects are to be gained only by carefully thinking out:— (a) the placing of the design according to the size and shape of the article; and (b) careful and accurate stitchery, using good colours.

## ARRANGEMENT OF BORDER DESIGNS

(Details and Demonstration of Lesson 7.)

### PREPARATION

*Previous knowledge.*—The use of units to form border designs by means of stick printing; filling in a space to be decorated by a picture worked in running stitch.

*Aim.*—The aims of this lesson are:—to teach simple rules for the placing of patterns; to develop powers of imagination, observation and accuracy.

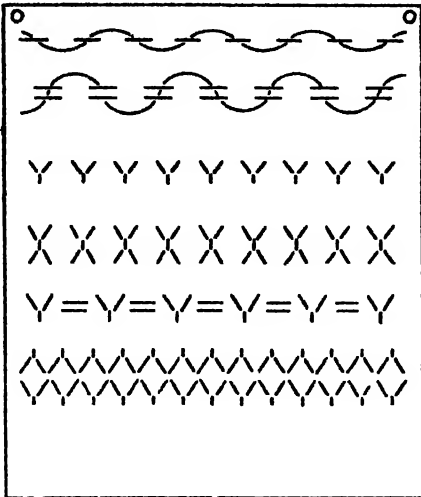
*Teacher's requirements.*—A finished article similar to that which the children are making (a cushion cover measuring 18 in. by 12 in. is taken as an example). Illustrations showing two other possible arrangements of designs. Blackboard and chalk. Drawing pins. An unfinished piece of a cushion cover of the same size as the finished one. Needles and wool of a contrasting colour.

*Children's requirements.*—The work in hand, and a piece of plain paper, 18 in. by 12 in. Pencils.

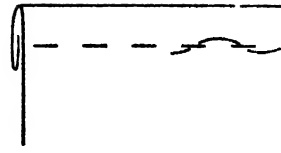
### INTRODUCTION

Show the finished cover, of which the hems are 1 in. wide, turned on to the right side, and held in place by Y stitch which is similar to catch stitch. Point out the borders, which lie the width way of the cushion, 3 in. in from the side hems, and 1 in. wide. They are formed of two rows of catch stitch, joined by upright tacking stitches. Tell the class that they are to be shown how to place the design in different ways upon a cushion cover.

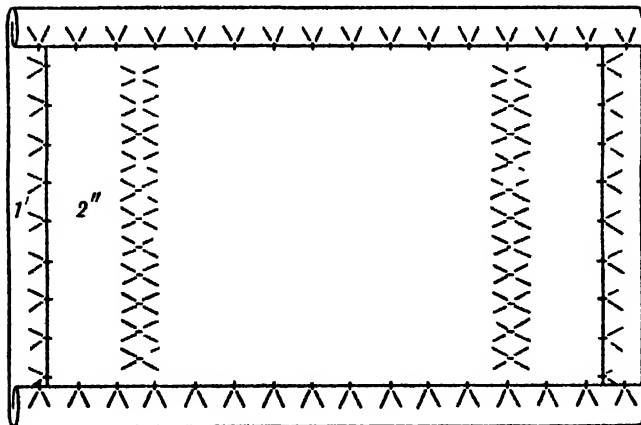
# DECORATIVE STITCHERY



DEMONSTRATION OF DECORATIVE BORDERS

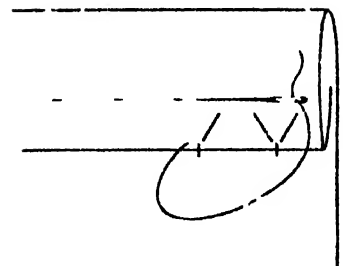


Wrong side showing end worked into stitches



CUSHION COVER 18" X 12" DECORATED WITH Y STITCH

DECORATIVE STITCHERY BORDERS



Detail of Y stitch



**PRESENTATION**

Pin the finished article in a convenient position, and the unfinished article upon the blackboard. Remind the children that the amount of space available for the borders depends upon the shape and size of the article,—whether square or oblong large or small. These points must be considered before putting any stitching upon the articles, because the size of the stitches must be chosen so that the finished effect is right.

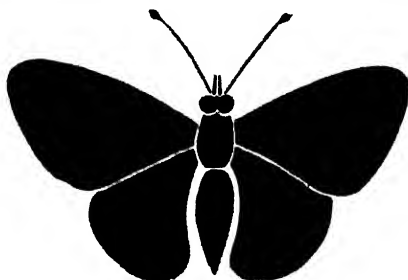
In this case, tacking-stitch borders can be put in various positions in the space, which everyone can see is bounded by the hems. There are three ways of arranging borders of stitchery:—

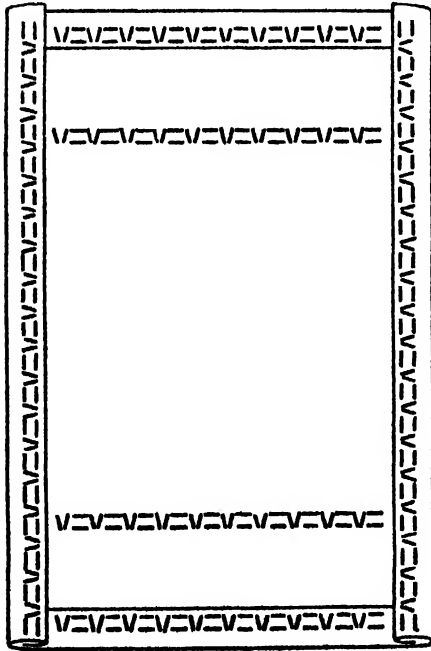
- (1) They may lie along the two ends, as shown upon the finished cushion cover.
- (2) The border may go all round below the hems. Show this effect to the class by means of illustrations passed round, or by drawing upon the blackboard.
- (3) The available space may be divided into squares. Show this effect also by illustrations.

Tell the children they must think out for themselves which method they would like to use on their own work. A few children may possess independent ideas about the arrangement of designs, and they must be allowed to apply them provided they are correct in the essential details, i.e. that the lines of construction are followed. Ask the children to draw borders of stitchery upon the papers with which they are provided, taking not only those illustrated, but any which appeal to them, using creases to produce faint lines which will act as guiding lines. The creasing may have to be demonstrated, but the children should know by this time what is meant by straight lines without the necessity for being shown how to produce them. When the drawings are finished they must be collected and marked by the teacher, who will give them out again at the commencement of the next lesson.

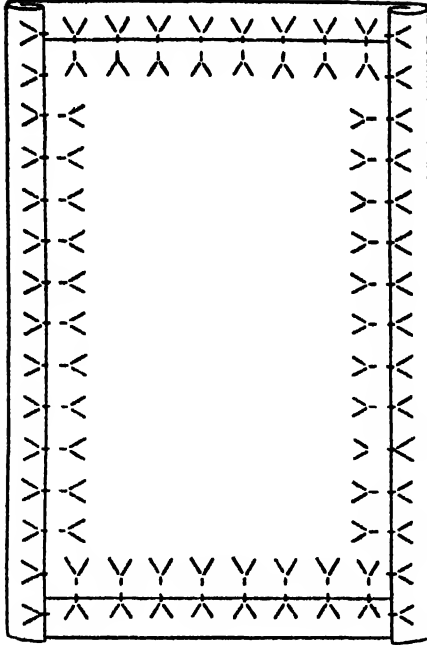
**APPLICATION**

Draw one or two different shapes on the blackboard, and ask members of the class to come out and show where border designs might be worked. This will awaken their minds to further possibilities.

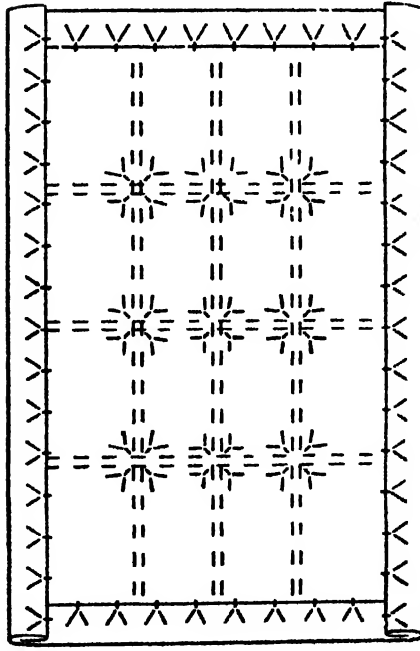




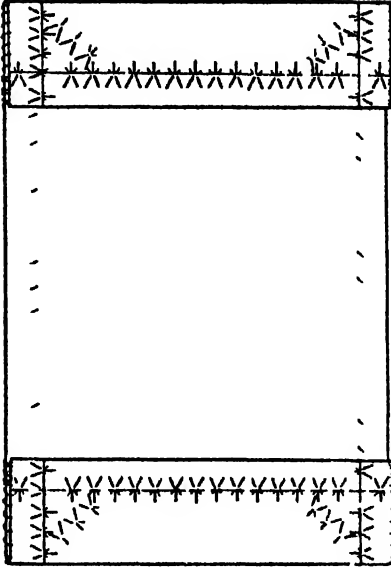
BORDER ROUND CUSHION AND 2 IN DOWN EACH SIDE



BORDER ROUND HEM AND 1 IN ROUND INSIDE



SIMPLE SPOT PATTERN



BOOK COVER DECORATED WITH BORDER DESIGN

VARIOUS VINTAGE BOOK DESIGNS



# **SECOND YEAR'S COURSE OF NATURE STUDY**

Here are six Class Pictures (Nos. 123-128 in the portfolio) associated with the Second Year Course. They are fully described in the Reference Book.



From the picture by Millet

THE SOWER

[Photograph: Braun & Cie.]

## FOREWORD TO SECOND YEAR'S COURSE

**I**F the first year's course of Nature Study as set out in Volume I has been followed the children will by now begin to have some acquaintance with common flowers with hedge plants in different stages of growth with butterflies and moths, they will have some idea how to pursue these interests for themselves. It is hoped that whether they have the same teacher or not it will be possible to make constant reference to their first year's experience and also to give them an encouragement in carrying their discoveries further by helping them with collections and individual records, and by devoting some part of the time allotted to Nature Study to the discussion of their independent observations.

With each year the principle of discovery for oneself should grow clearer and at the same time good reference books become more and more essential for confirmation of observations and for identification of new finds. In the second and third years it is proposed that a good deal of time shall be devoted to a study of birds and as very little cutting is required in the way of material it is possible that some money might be spent on establishing a good small library either for each classroom or better for a Nature Room which can become the focusing point for all the Nature Study of the School.

The following books will be found useful:

*Birds of the British Isles and Their Nests* by I. A. Coward in three volumes (Warne) is excellent for both teacher and children especially on account of its coloured plates.

Sanders *Oxford Book of Birds* (O.U.P.) though much smaller and therefore cheaper, is also a valuable reference book with coloured plates.

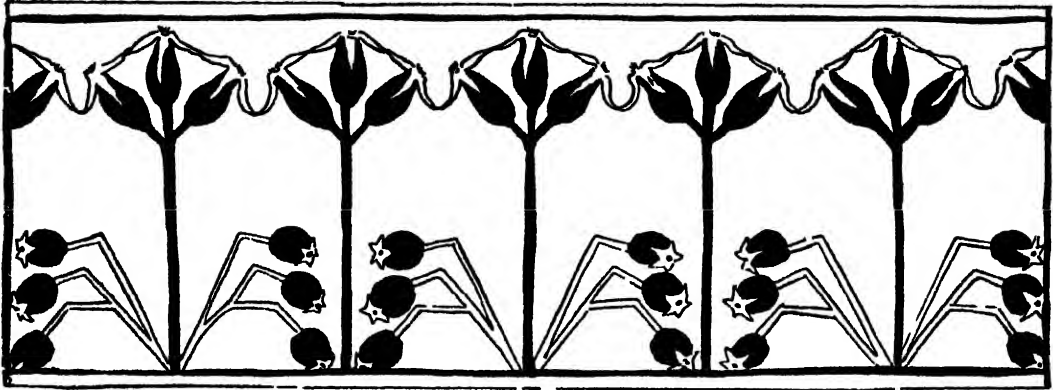
*An Introduction to Zoology* (Mammals) by R. Fulham provide a most useful help to the study of all the common invertebrate animals of the garden, pond and field.

*Bird Studies* (O.U.P.) by Westell suggests many interesting lines of inquiry for children.

It is far better to have a few reliable books than to have many cheaper ones which do not for long serve any purpose because the information they give is too slight or not trustworthy. Miss Fulham's book though intended for students will be invaluable to the teacher in identifying and studying common creatures and for suggestions for field work. The books recommended for the children's use (see Volume I page 30) will still be needed.

It has not been thought necessary in this second year's course to repeat a programme, giving the detailed succession of lessons as a general seasonal plan was given in the first volume. Needless to say the teacher will re-arrange and apportion the subject matter according to his or her individual conditions. As before each study has been considered as a whole though the lessons may actually be separated by some weeks or months in order to proceed by the appropriate stages. The lessons on Birds and the Earthworm are held over to the next volume.

## I. HIPS AND HAWS



### POINTS FOR THE TEACHER'S CONSIDERATION

**I**N the autumn of the second year the study of hedgerow fruits would continue along the lines begun in the first year. Fruits would again be collected, those already known recalled, and new ones added to the list. Their means of dispersal would again be referred to, and it would be suggested that some of those which had not been particularly examined should now be looked at more closely. The children could be allowed some choice, and with the aid of needles or penknives should find the seeds and all the particulars they can about the characteristics of the fruits, making drawings to illustrate what they find. Class lessons would follow two or three periods of independent work. In making records children might be allowed the choice of pencil or water colour, either free brush work or flat washes with a pencil outline. Colour not only gives pleasure to the child student, and a greater sense of mastery of material, but it plays also an important part in portraying the relation between fruits and animals.

It is assumed in the succeeding notes that the children have already had the oppor-

tunity of becoming familiar with the material, and that some of it has been examined carefully.

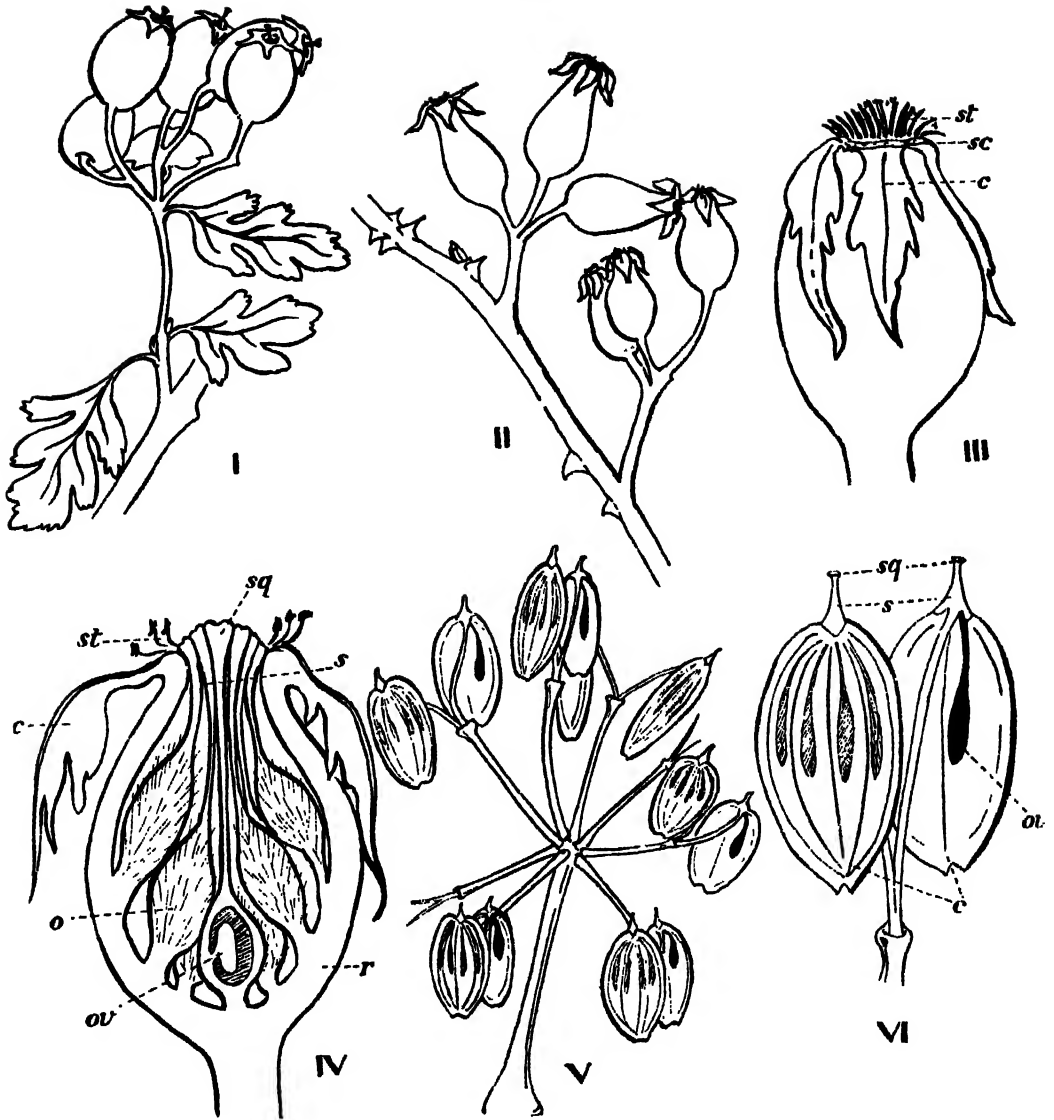
### THE LESSON

**Aim.** To understand the structure and means of dispersal of (a) Hips, i.e. Wild Rose fruits, and (b) Haws, i.e. Hawthorn fruits.

**Material.** Sprays of both fruits sufficient for children to share in pairs. A good sized branch of each to show its growth. Some hips cut lengthwise.

**Introduction.** Question the children about where both these fruits grow. They are found on the outside and top of the hedge, and both belong to prickly bushes. The Hawthorn may become a tree with a main stem or trunk, the Wild Rose, like the blackberry, clambers over the hedge by means of down-curved hooks or prickles. The Hawthorn has spines which are not mere skin outgrowths, but come from the inside of the stem. Strip the skin off a small twig of each to show the difference.

PLATE I



SKETCHES FOR THE BLACKBOARD

HAWTHORN. I. Fruits, showing growth and arrangement.

WILD ROSE. II. Fruits of Dog Rose, showing growth and arrangement. III. Rose hip: *c*, calyx; *st*, remains of stamens; *sc*, scar left by petals. IV. Vertical section of fruit: *s*, receptacle; *s*, styles; *sq*, stigmas; *o*, ovary; *ov*, ovule; *c*, calyx; *st*, remains of stamens.

WILD PARSLEY. V. Collection of fruits. VI. Single fruit: *c*, carpel; *ov*, ovule; *s*, style; *sq*, stigma.



The thorn of the Hawthorn remains as part of the twig. These thorns and prickles make it very difficult for an animal to eat either plant

**I.** Give the children the small sprays and let them look at the way the fruit grows. In the Hawthorn there is a cluster of fruits, with stalks of the same length, coming out between the branch and a leaf. In the Wild Rose there may be two, three or more together, but they are spread out over the whole branch, and are not arranged in clusters. Rose hips are the larger and they are scarlet in colour. Haws are of a deep crimson colour.

**II.** Let the children examine the haws separately and peel off a little of the skin. Ask what they find (Whitish pulp, soft but not juicy). Ask of what other fruit it reminds them (Holly). When the pulp is scraped away a hard stone is found. The fruit is really a little drupe, like the plum and holly. Some of the children will probably have cracked the stones, and found the seed inside. If they have not, crack a few for them to see. Notice the small projections at the top of the fruit. Occasionally there is a little crumbling, dark powder also. What are the projections and powder? (The remains of the flower, the stamens and calyx.) The petals, which were also on this little rim, have dropped away. The ovary has turned from green to red (this change would have been watched during the preceding summer) and has grown much larger to form the fruit.

Look for any signs of their having been pecked by birds, and suggest that the children shall look on the hedges. In January, 1931, a large number of haws were found on the ground under a tree, with the pulp of each scattered in three or four pieces, and the stone neatly cracked in two and empty, thus the ends of the plant in providing for its seeds to be dispersed were defeated. No tracks in the mud betrayed the marauder. A few untouched fruits remained on the tree. Could some bird have torn them open,

cracked the stone and dropped the bits after eating the seed? (Probably a field mouse or field vole.) Instances of this kind are interesting because they show that adaptations to life may be imperfect, that a plant has to take chances and risks, or even that we may be wrong in attaching a particular value or purpose to some structure because the purpose seems obvious. For one seed that reaches its destination a great many may be eaten or destroyed in other ways. Robins are very fond of the pulp of haws.

**III.** Let the children examine the hips. Include if possible some that have been pecked open. Here again are fruits that would attract birds. Notice the remains of calyx and stamens, and the position the petals would occupy. Now draw attention to the stiff bristles which protrude through the small opening at the top. From their position, it may be suggested that these form the stigmas. Pass round the halved fruits for the children to follow the course of these bristles down. It will be seen that each one is attached to the top of a "seed." Explain that each one of these seeds is really a nutlet with its own stigma and style. Compare with Wood Aven (Geum) or Herb Bennet) in which several nutlets form one fruit and the style of each forms a hook. In Wild Clematis the style forms a plume. If these have not already been seen in the hedge they should be shown for comparison and all three drawn.

In the Wild Rose, however, the nutlets are enclosed, so that they seem to be seeds. The top of the flower stalk to which all parts of the flower are attached, the *receptacle* has become hollow like a deep cup, and grown right round the ovary. The same thing has happened in the Hawthorn fruit, only here the receptacle is not hollow, but has joined on to the fruit. Illustrate by a blackboard diagram.

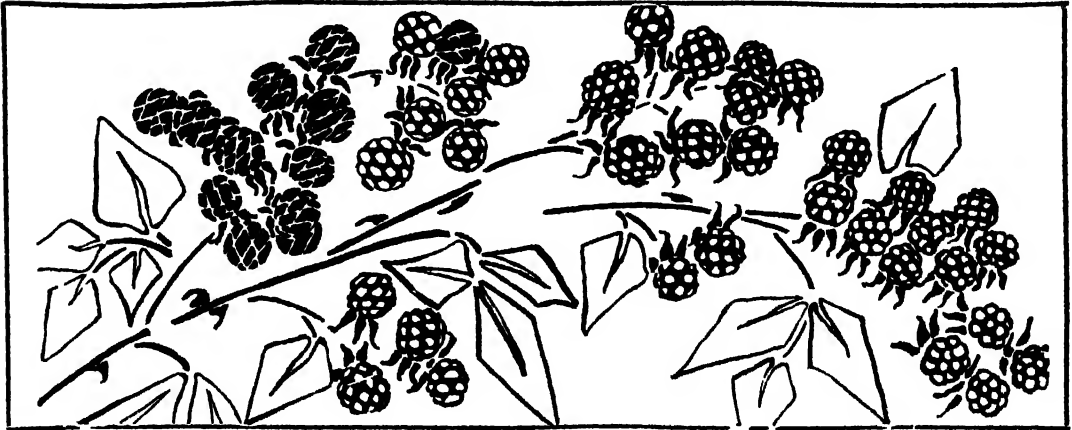
**IV.** If the children have not already made drawings of these two fruits they should draw them first; then let them draw

a vertical section of the hip to show the shape of the receptacle, the nutlets and styles.

**V. Further work.**—Observations should then be made out of doors to see how

many of the fruits are really eaten by birds, and when they disappear count the number of hips found pecked open and hollow. Record on a chart giving place and date of anything noticed.

## II. BRAMBLE OR BLACKBERRY



### THE LESSON

**Aim.**—The study of a successful hedge plant, and especially of its fruit.

**Material.**—A long branch. Sprays of fruits for the children showing different stages in development. It is usually possible to find a few flowers, if not, a picture of the flowers, which the children will have seen earlier in the summer, may be obtained.

**Introduction.**—In the first year the children examined the growth of the bramble. It is only necessary, therefore, to recall the characteristics which make it successful in obtaining its place in the hedge in order to lead up to its final stage, the provision for colonising new areas.

Ask the question, "What is there about the growth or structure of the bramble

that helps it to succeed in obtaining such a good position in the hedge—a place in the sun?" Refer to its scrambling habit, its hooked prickly thorns on stems, leaf stalks and the under side of the veins, the vigorous growth it makes each year (perhaps some children have measured the longest branches they could find) the habit of throwing out some branches sideways, which root when they touch the ground, and so extend the width of the plant. Blackboard headings might be written (1) success due to structure, (2) success due to habit of growth—and the various points might be filled in as they are mentioned.

**I.** This would bring us to the study that is new, the fruit. The flowers are mostly found at the surface where insects can see

and visit them, though often some of the largest and most luscious fruits are tucked away under leaves, or even formed low down in the hedge, amongst the grasses. Those in sheltered, sunny places ripen first. Though brambles grow in very dry situations, the best fruits are found where the roots can draw upon a good water supply. Those in dry places are apt to be hard and seedy.

Let the children notice that the fruits grow on short special branches bearing a cluster, each fruit with its own stalk. Trace the stages by which they are formed. First the petals drop off, the stamens shrivel, the ovary begins to grow larger. The ovary is green at first. It can be seen to consist of several distinct or free chambers called *carpels*. As they grow larger they change to red, but are still quite hard. Gradually they turn black, soft and juicy. Let the children cut the fruits through the centre lengthwise with penknives. In the centre is a cone-like receptacle, to which all the separate carpels are attached. The upraised shape of the receptacle allows sufficient room to accommodate them. Examine separate carpels. Each consists of a thin outer skin, a juicy pulp, and a hard seed inside. So each carpel is really a tiny drupe or *drupelet*, and the fruit as a whole is known as a compound drupe.

The fruits are eaten, the seeds pass

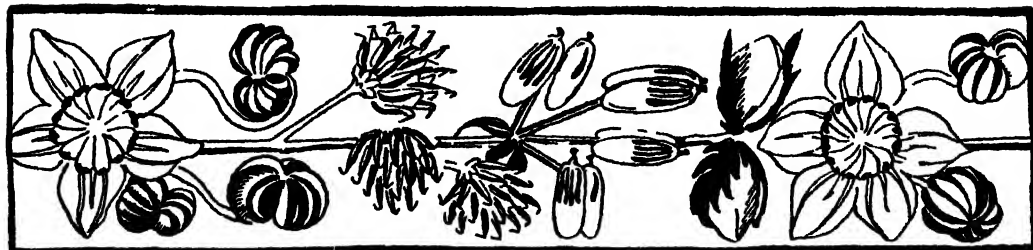
through the food canal without the stone being digested, and in this way stone and seed are deposited in some new place where they can grow. Human beings eat the whole fruit, but possibly birds, pecking at separate drupelets, may drop the seeds from their beaks without swallowing them.

**II.** Let the children draw the spray of fruit, the section, and a single drupelet diagrammatically to show the stone inside. Label the drawings to explain the purpose each part serves.

**III. Further work.**—As in all this series, any observations to note whether the device really works are valuable. Look for "berries" which have been pecked. Look for seedlings. It is not always possible to be sure, however, without digging them up, whether young growths are from underground stems or from seeds. Many fruits, especially those hidden near the ground, are never found by birds. As they are so juicy they often "go mouldy" very quickly, that is, they supply food for plants called moulds, without serving any purpose to the plant. Many flies lay their eggs in such hidden fruits, and the grubs (like small white caterpillars), which will be familiar, feed on the juices without helping to scatter the seed. Probably only a small proportion of fruits serve the ends of the plant.



### III. NON-SPLITTING DRY FRUITS



IT will perhaps hardly be necessary to give a formal class lesson on these fruits. Their characteristics can best be studied individually from time to time as they can be obtained. The teacher should draw attention when suitable moments occur to any points she wishes the children to grasp especially if the children do not seem to notice or understand them. Each child might have a copy of a set of questions and instructions to guide him.

This group of fruits technically called "indehiscent" does not depend as a whole on either wind or animals for dispersal, though there are instances in which both play their part. The fruits may drop quite close to the parent plant and germinate there, taking their chance of survival if over crowding occurs or they may roll some distance, or perhaps (as in the case of some nuts) be blown along the ground. The hard pericarp, or carpellary (ovary) wall which serves to protect the seeds until they are embedded in some crevice or hidden amongst fallen leaves, gradually softens as it absorbs water from its bed, and the root eventually emerges through the decayed substance.

The following notes will help the teacher to distinguish important points, and guide her in examining other examples.

**Hazel Nuts.**—The hazel bears two kinds of flowers on the same bush (to be examined in the following spring), the catkins which

carry pollen and the ovary bearing flowers marked by little bright red tufts of stamens, which project from buds close to the stem. As a result of wind pollination the ovaries develop into nuts usually borne in clusters of two or three. They are hard at first pale green almost white then by October the ripe nuts change to a rich light brown. Each is enclosed in a cup composed of three toothed lobes, leaflike in texture. Each cup or cupule is developed from three bracts or leaves which grow immediately below the flowers inside the scales of the bud.

A large number of these nuts must be eaten by squirrels, dormice, field mice, nuthatches and other strong billed birds, and also by boys. But some when they fall to the ground roll away and become planted in some suitable place for germination.

Note that animals in this case are enemies, not friends because they eat the seeds. The hard pericarp protects the seed from all who have no means of cracking it.

**Hollyhock and Nasturtium.**—These fruits are known as *schizocarps* (from a Greek word meaning *to split*) because the carpels split away from one another and fall separately, but without opening so that germination can take place only when the pericarp is softened by water. In the Garden Nasturtium, the three carpels usually mature, but sometimes only two or one becomes ripe. In the Hollyhock, many

carpels are arranged round a short, columnar, central receptacle. Each separate carpel is disc-like, and sufficiently light to be helped by the wind.

**Wild Parsnip** - (Illustration on Plate I, page 389.) These fruits are also schizocarps. Their flowers are borne in very large numbers on a flat inflorescence known as an *umbel* in which a large number of branches from the top of the flower stalks bear small flowers all at the same level. The fruit of each flower consists of a pair of carpels, very lightly attached by a thread-like rod which splits downwards, so that each carpel is suspended vertically from the top of it. Each carpel is a thin plate bearing the seed in the middle of two wing-like expansions. As it falls away it is easily caught and carried by the wind. Many members of this family of the Umbelliferae have a similar device, others have hooked fruits so that they catch on to the coats of animals (e.g. Hedge Parsley (*Forh.*) noted in the previous year).

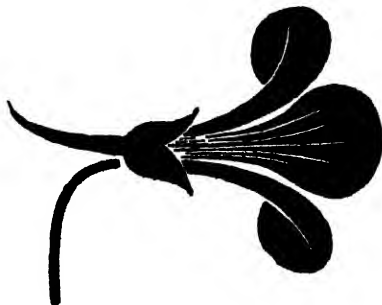
**Burdock.** This is a bur plant found in rank hedgerows, associated with rubbish heaps and like docks and nettles following the haunts of man. It is a strong pushing coarse growing plant establishing itself very readily where human interference has destroyed natural vegetation without replacing it by definite cultivation. Its heads of dull purple thistle-like flowers are surrounded

by rows of stiff scale-like bracts, which become hard and woody after fertilisation has taken place, and the bracts are recurved at the tip to form a hook. These hooked bracts enclose a number of nutlets, interspersed with stiff bristles. When the head of fruits is ripe, its attachment to the stalk becomes so slight that the least touch will detach it, so that a person or animal brushing against the plants in passing, will carry away bunches of fruits at a time on his clothes or fur. At the same time, the attachment of the nutlets inside is loosened. The bracts dry and separate, and the loose nutlets inside drop out and are scattered. Since passers by dogs, sheep, and cattle are the chief agents, the nutlets will in all probability again be dropped in similar haunts.

**Slip of instructions for the children.** For each fruit

- (1) Find out if you can what parts of the flower are present and where the other parts were attached.
- (2) Has any other part opened as well as the ovary?
- (3) What means of dispersal do you think the fruit will have?
- (4) How do you think the seed will be able to sprout? Can it come out?

Make drawing to show all you can find out about the fruits and label them or write notes, whichever you think best to explain them.



## IV. THE APPLE



## POINTS FOR THE TEACHER'S CONSIDERATION

**T**HE Apple presents a condition in which a succulent fruit relies, not on the production of sugar and water inside the pericarp, but in an accessory part of the flower—in this case, in the receptacle (see previous plate).

In the plants grouped together as the Rosiflorae a transition is found from a saucerlike shallow receptacle as seen in the Plum to a cone-shaped receptacle on the one hand (Bramble), or a deep cup-shaped one on the other (Rose). These various forms all seem to be attempts to give more space to the various parts of the flower and especially to the fruit. In the Rose it was seen that the deep, hollow receptacle completely enclosed a number of free carpels or nutlets. In the Apple the process has gone further. The five carpels are completely united (*syncarpous*) and the hollow receptacle has fused with the carpellary wall. The same thing has happened in the Hawthorn (in the fruit but not in the flower), the receptacle forming a very thin covering not distinguishable from the outer pericarp.

As the fruit of the Apple ripens the ovary grows, but remains horny, forming the core in which the seeds are embedded.

The receptacle becomes succulent soft and in cultivated apple sweet and delicately flavoured though in the wild apples it is sour and has a peculiar drying effect on the palate. The skin of the receptacle becomes brightly and delicately coloured thereby attracting birds and other creatures.

The Strawberry is another member of the Rosiflorae in which the receptacle provides the attractive edible part, only here as in the blackberry it is convex instead of concave. The "seeds" embedded in the surface of this succulent receptacle are in reality nutlets or distinct rounded carpels each containing a seed.

## THE LESSON

**Aim.**—To realise that other part of a fruit than the ovary can be edible and therefore attract animals.

**Material.** If possible get each child to bring an apple, or take the lesson with small groups in turn to minimise the number of fruits needed. Some will need to be cut transversely, i.e. in a plane at right angles to the stalks and these can be interchanged for the children to draw them. If possible

obtain some wild and cultivated Crab Apples.

**Introduction.**—Let the children enumerate all the succulent fruits they can think of, and ask them what part of each becomes succulent. Remind them that in the Wild Rose it was not the wall of the ovary, but the receptacle on which the sepals, petals, and stamens grew, that became brightly coloured and edible; and that the true fruit, composed of free nutlets, was enclosed inside it.

**I.** Give them the apples to look at and describe. Notice the large amount of succulent pulp that can be developed in cultivated forms, the sweetness and variety of flavour. Explain that these have been attained by selecting the best that occur, and by grafting the branches which bear them on to strong trees, grown from seed. By cutting the branches and binding them together, the two can be caused to join and grow as one. Gradually, by careful choice, new and better forms have been cultivated.

Notice that the glossy skin, like a bloom, throws off water, and thus it protects the inside. The skin also calls attention to the attractiveness of the contents. Ask if the children have watched the apples growing. When the pale pink petals are scattered, we can see just below them a small, hard, green knob, with the sepals still attached to the top. This is the receptacle. Make a blackboard diagram. Inside the receptacle is the ovary, joined to it. Probably out of a cluster of a dozen flowers only two or three will ripen into apples.

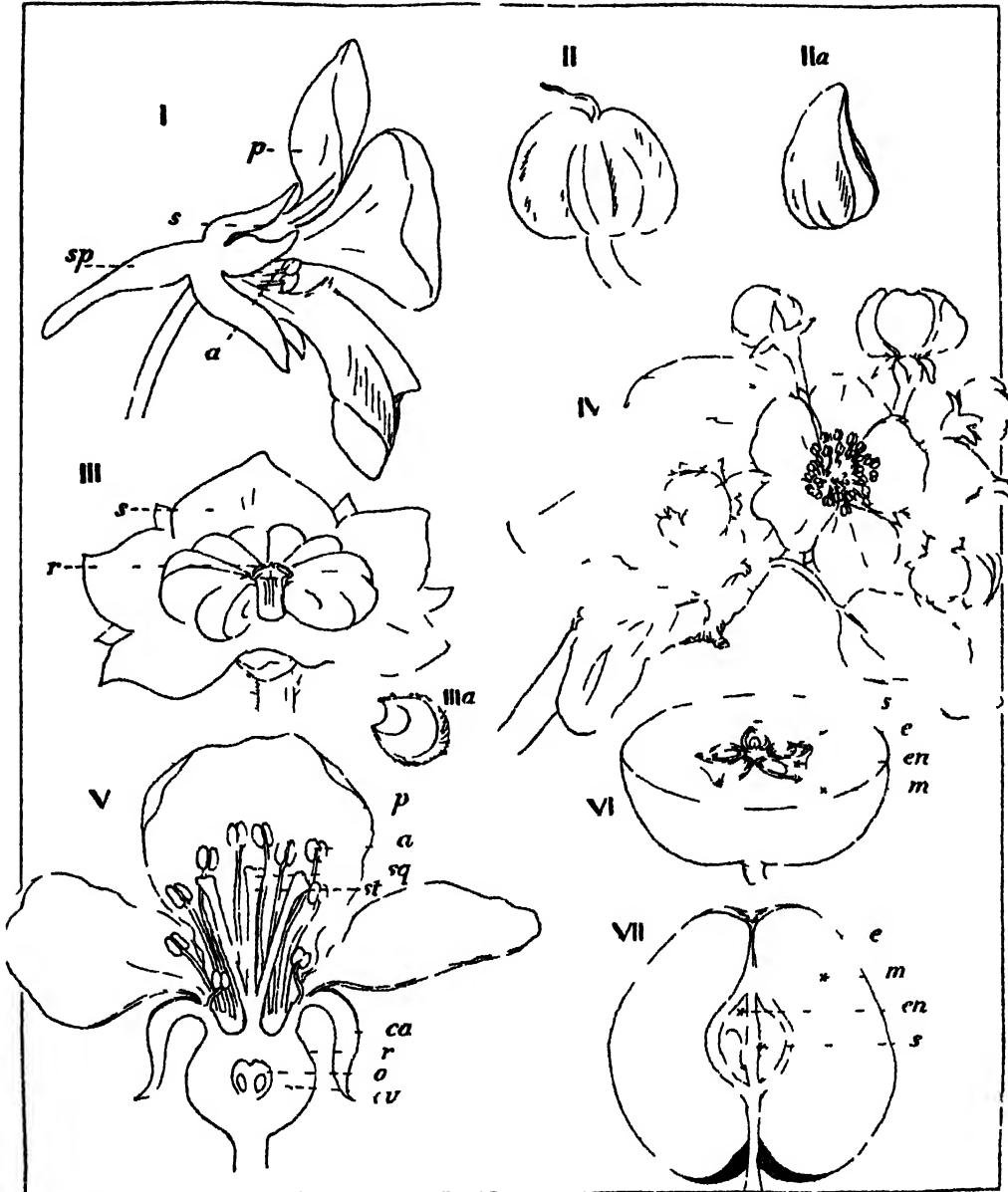
**II.** Now let us see what the ripe fruit is like inside. Cut several across as described, keep one and pass the others round for examination. With the help of a blackboard diagram show the parts. On the outside is the skin. Then comes the juicy pulp, formed from the receptacle. Separating the ripe ovary proper, the "true fruit," as it is sometimes called, is the thin green line of the ovary wall, or pericarp. Inside this is the core, or ripe ovary. It consists of five chambers or carpels, with black or dark brown seeds embedded in them, arranged in rings with their points towards the central axis, to which they are attached. They are white in an unripe fruit. The core is horny, and not good to eat.

**III. Dispersal.**—Discuss what happens to apples. We eat the pulp or receptacle and throw away the core. Having bitten into it we expose the seeds, which can then drop out. Do birds or other animals eat apples? Collect any evidence you can. Horses are fond of them, some dogs like them, but in both cases they eat the core. Perhaps the seeds may be passed out undigested and so sown. Birds will peck the surface of apples. Do they get down to the seeds? Perhaps they may in Crab Apples, where the pulp is not very thick. In the cultivated apples the pecking of birds may cause the fruit to decay through the entrance of moulds or flies, and so gradually the seeds will be exposed. Many flies and wasps will attack fruit when the skin has been perforated by the beaks of birds.

**IV.** Let the children draw the cross section of the Apple to show the various parts.



# PLATE II

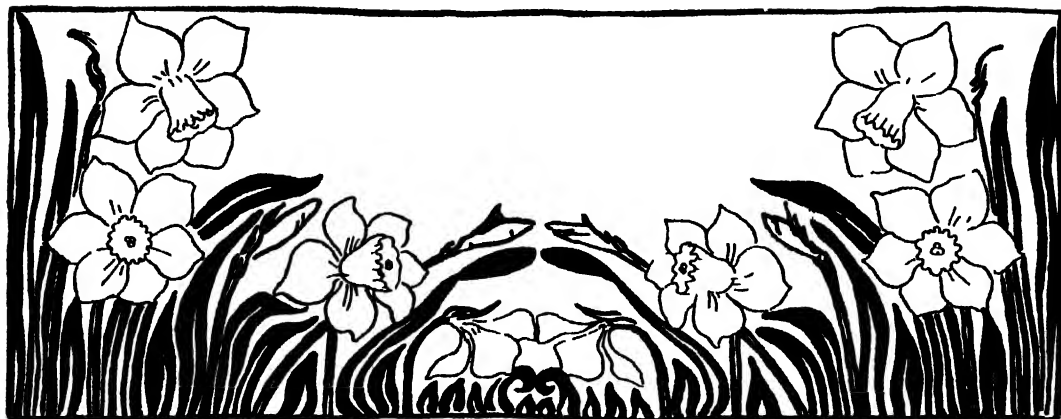


## SKETCHES FOR THE BLACKBOARD

NASIURTUM I Flower, side view s sepals, sp spur p petals a stamens II fruit IIa Fruit separated.  
 HOLLYHOCK III Fruit r remains of styles, s sepals IIIa. Single fruit  
 APPLE IV Blossom V Vertical section of flower p petals, a stamens sq stigma ca sepals r receptacle, o ovary, cv cervix  
 VI Transverse section of fruit e, epicarp, m mesocarp, en endocarp s seed VII Vertical section of fruit



## V. THE DAFFODIL



**A**S the study of a bulbous plant has been indicated in detail in the Hyacinth, there is no need to repeat here the procedure. It will be sufficient to give a brief account of the characteristics of the Daffodil, especially where it differs from the Hyacinth. The bulbs are best grown in pots of soil or fibre, and if possible in an open border or in grass in the school garden, where their normal growth can be watched under natural conditions. Cultivated forms differ from the wild daffodils or Lent lilies chiefly in size and in the variety of form and colour which has been developed in the trumpet or corona. The wild ones are fast disappearing owing to the ruthless way in which the bulbs are torn up by people gathering the flowers, for flowers of bulbous plants should be cut or carefully picked if the bulbs are to be preserved.

**The flower** is single, not an inflorescence. It is protected by a circular bract which remains as a wrinkled paperlike sheath below the flower.

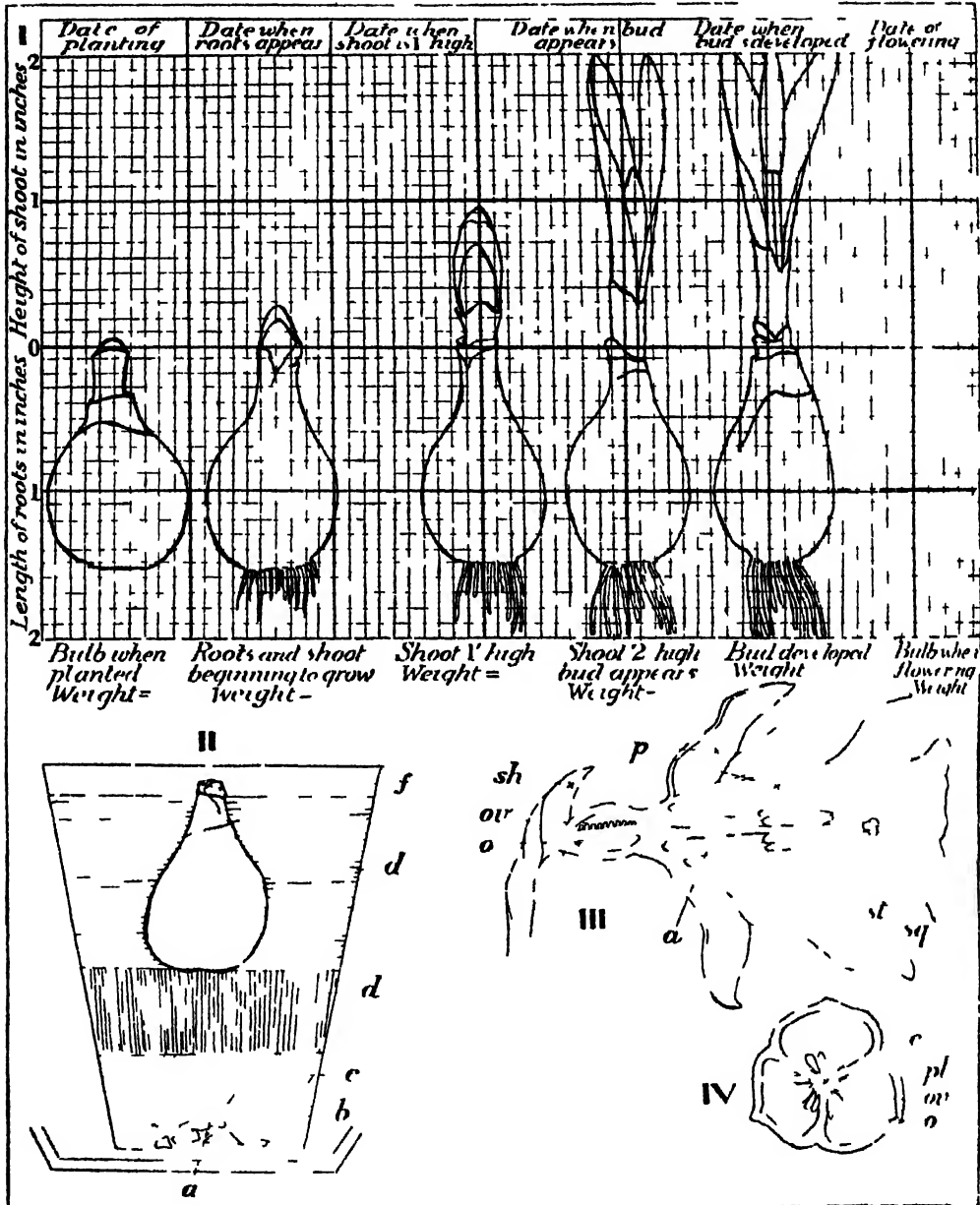
It differs from that of the Hyacinth as follows

- (1) The ovary in the Daffodil is below the rest of the flower, not enclosed by the cup of perianth leaves.
- (2) The six perianth leaves are united half-way and then bend outwards at right angle to their original direction. At the line at which they become free the flower tube is continued as the corona, or crown, by an outgrowth from the inner surface of the perianth.

In the number, nature and arrangement of the rest of its parts the Daffodil resembles the Hyacinth except in colour. In the Snowdrop which is otherwise similar to the Daffodil, the stamens grow on the top of the ovary while in the Daffodil they are attached to the perianth just below the level of the corona. Daffodils probably depend much more upon bulbs than seeds for propagation.

**The bulb** is light brown, smaller, longer and less globular in shape than a Hyacinth bulb. The outermost scales are papery and easily torn. The chief differences in the growth of the plant are

### PLATE III

[illegible]

- (1) The leaf sheaths come up above the ground, they completely encircle the leaves which pierce the second sheath just to the side of the tip
- (2) The foliage leaves are flat, and pressed against one another's inner surface instead of overlapping. The greyish green colour is due to a bloom of wax

The bulb should be examined after flowering, as described for the Hyacinth, by removing the sheaths one by one. The brown scales are the remains of the bases of foliage leaves formed three years ago. The next series consists of two or three leaf sheaths, which extended half an inch to an inch above ground surrounding several bases of foliage leaves. These are all fleshy and contain a store of food. They developed two years ago. The third series is formed by last year's sheaths and bases of foliage leaves. These also are all fleshy.

This year's growth consists of two or three sheathing bases of which the whole structure can still be seen, with wrinkled papery extensions above ground holding the foliage leaves together. The number of leaves and flowers which they enclose varies. Already, by the time the bulb has finished flowering, the leaf bases and base of the flower stalk are beginning to store food.

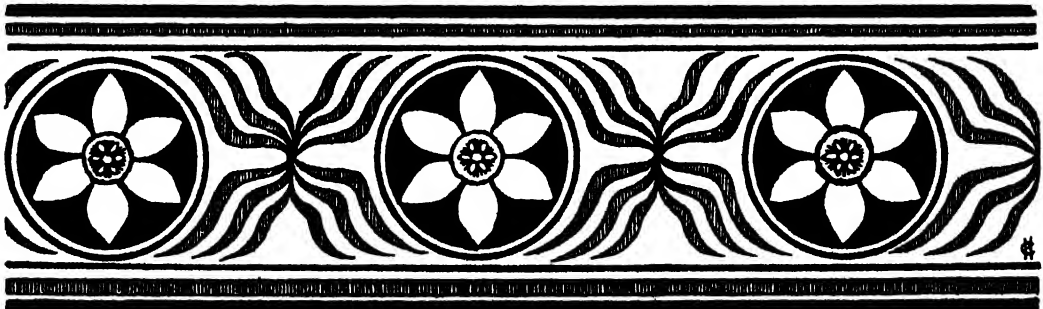
The remnants of flower stalks can be distinguished from leaf bases by their narrower width, since they do not become tubular. They are not terminal, as in the Hyacinth,

but are produced in the axils of leaves, while the apex of the bulb continues its growth as an ordinary leaf bud.

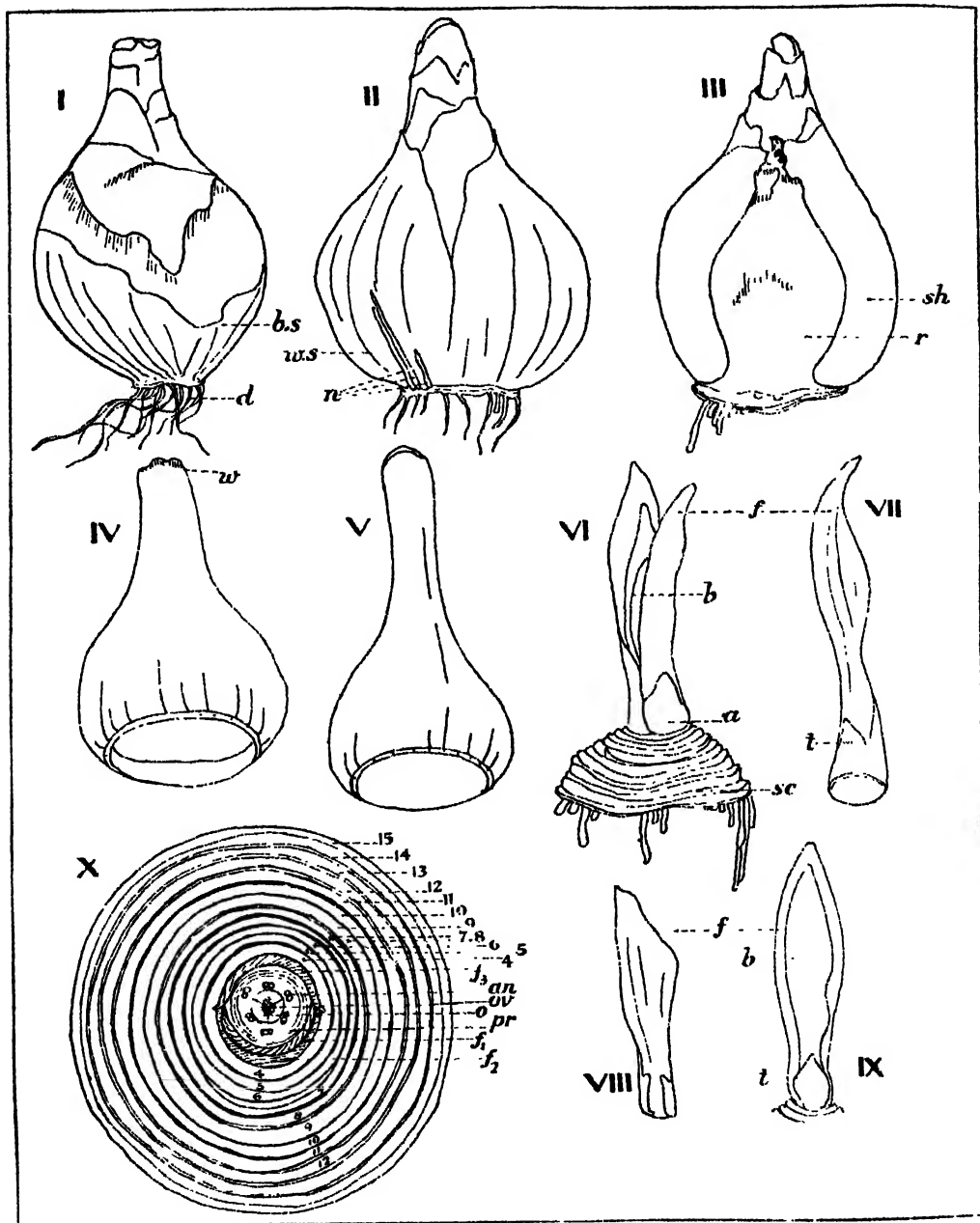
The leaf sheaths are tubular in shape, though occasionally an outer one will be found to split down its length as it is stretched by the growth of the bulb. The foliage leaves are flat and strap-shaped to begin with, but at an early stage the edges of the base fold round the next leaf and eventually join together, forming a little curved tongue on the opposite side. The innermost leaf will frequently be found to have its edge just beginning to fold over at the base.

New bulbs are formed from axillary buds, often produced with great regularity in all the leaf axils except the leaf sheaths. Thus they face one another, as do the leaves, alternating up the bulb. It is often possible to distinguish leaf bases from leaf sheaths by the absence of axillary buds in the axils of the sheaths.

If one of the buds is dissected it will usually be found to consist of the bases of two or three leaf sheaths, then a series of foliage leaf bases, all of last year's formation surrounding the bud proper. Their removal reveals two or three flattened tubular sheaths, each perforated at one side of the tip by a small opening through which the leaves inside will emerge. Inside the sheaths, which may be about  $\frac{1}{2}$  inch long are several incipient leaves and flowers only discernible at this stage as minute outgrowths from the growing point.

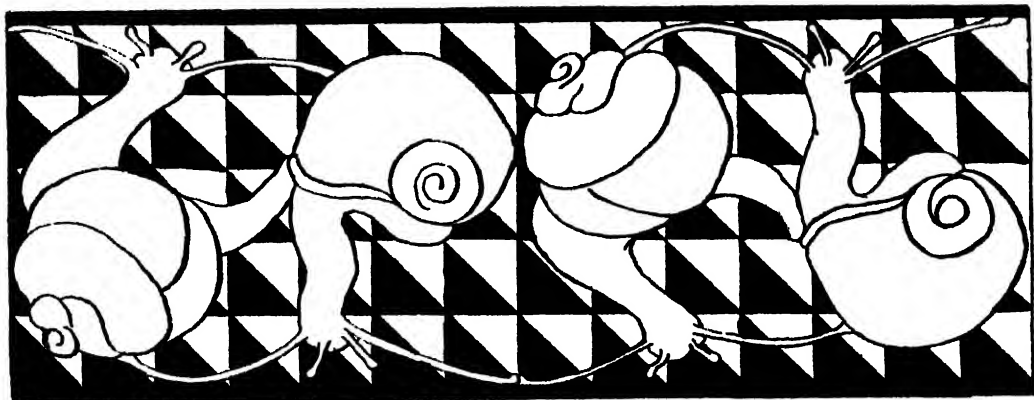


# PLATE IV



DAFFODIL. Bulb dissected before growth. I. Bulb showing brown scales (*bs*) and old roots (*d*). II. Brown scales removed, white scales (*ws*) splitting as bulb grows; *n*, new roots. III. Three white scales removed; *r*, remains of flower of two years ago; *sh*, sheaths, which surrounded last year's foliage leaves. IV. Foliage leaf of last year; *w*, withered edge. V. One of the three sheaths of this year. VI. Scales removed; *sc*, scars left by scales; *f*, this year's foliage leaves; *b*, flower bud; *a*, a new axillary bud. VII. Foliage leaf: *t*, tongue. VIII. First foliage leaf—base not tubular. IX. *f*, foliage leaf; *b*, flower bud; *t*, terminal bud of bulb. X. Transverse section of bulb: *o*, ovary; *ov*, ovules; *an*, stamens; *pr*, perianth; *f*<sub>1</sub>, *f*<sub>2</sub>, *f*<sub>3</sub>, foliage leaves of this year; 4, 5, 6, sheaths of last year; 7, 8, foliage leaves of last year; 9, 10, 11, sheaths of last year; 12, 13, 14, 15, brown scales.

## VI. SNAILS AND SLUGS



## POINTS FOR THE TEACHER'S CONSIDERATION

IT is often convenient to begin the study of Snails and Slugs in late autumn, when there is perhaps some difficulty in obtaining material for Nature Study, but it is equally good as a spring or summer study, reverting to it in the autumn to add observations on the preparations made for winter. If the study is started in the autumn, it forms a striking introduction to the subject of *hibernation*, or winter sleep. If it is desired to make some study of the snails' activities in the autumn, they may need to be artificially stimulated to keep them awake. Usually, if brought into a warm room and handled, and given a "home" which is moist and provided with fresh grass and leaves, they become active. It may be necessary, however, to hold each snail under the tap, or dip it in a basin of water for a few moments. They will then usually remain active sufficiently long for a lesson, returning to their passive condition as soon as the interference ceases.

Snails belong to the group of *Molluscs*, a name meaning soft-bodied. The group is essentially aquatic, and those members that

have taken to a land life are only partially adapted to it, and are limited in their activities by their incomplete fitness for it. There are two chief difficulties for animals which emerge from water, (1) the difficulty of breathing atmospheric instead of dissolved oxygen, and (2) the difficulty of preventing the body from drying up. They must cope with these two problems. In the case of snails the difficulties are overcome partly by means of special habits, and partly by special structures.

In the first place, they live only in damp places, coming out in search of food only at night, when the skin which they must expose will not be dried up by the heat of the sun. During the day they withdraw into their shells, and hide in some dark, damp corner, protected from the sun's rays by foliage, stones, old pieces of bark or other substances. In prolonged dry weather they can remain for days in hiding, protecting the opening of the shell by one or more thin, mica-like plates, exuded as slime which hardens on exposure to air. In winter they do the same, thus obtaining

protection from frost and cold winds, but the plates are further strengthened and thickened by impregnation with lime, so that they become quite hard



Fig. 1. (Snail) Head and body exposed. (a) shows the head and the body (b) shows the head and the body (From *Journal of Zoology*)

Structurally, snails are protected from a dry environment by their shells. These, which are found in their marine relations, are characteristic of the group and probably their presence was a determining factor in allowing the snails to become pioneers on land. The shell has been lost by the slugs, it is represented by a plate lying under the skin over the shell gland which secretes the shell. In some snails an intermediate condition is found a tiny shell, too small for the snail's use.

It may be objected that the Banded Snails so frequently seen in chulky districts are often found resting during the day on the upper surfaces of plants fully exposed to the hot sun. This is true but if the shells are examined it will be found that they seem peculiarly thick compared with those of the various garden snails. Possibly also, the narrower coils expose a smaller surface. Probably, in the hottest weather these snails, too, take shelter. This point could easily be investigated by children.

In addition to finding protection from a dry atmosphere by seeking damp surroundings and by possessing a shell into which it can retire, these conditions facilitate breathing. All breathing takes place primarily through the skin, which may either

remain thin and delicate all over the body, as in the Earthworm, or be drawn out or pushed in, to make special projections or sacs, through which an interchange of oxygen and carbon dioxide can take place. In the snails, an out-growth of delicate skin (or a membrane), called the mantle lines the shell and forms a breathing organ or lung. This is supplied with small blood vessels which can extract oxygen and give up carbon dioxide. Muscular contractions of the floor of this sac (the body wall) help to pump air in and out, while a special valve on the right side of the body opens and closes at intervals to empty and fill it. When the snail retires into its shell it occupies the space and therefore forces air out. The edge of the mantle, called the collar joins the body to the rim of the shell except in the one position where an opening is left for breathing.

## THE LESSON

(First Period)

**Aim.**— Study of habitation

**Introduction.** If the school has a garden, or there is waste ground in the vicinity in which snails abound the children can go out and look for them. Give them the object of the study and arrange the class in small groups with leaders. Give each group a slip of questions to guide their observations. This study might occupy about a quarter of an hour.

**Questions.** (1) Where do you find the snails? (2) What are they doing? (3) If they are attached to something, can you remove them? What do they do when you take them off? (4) Look at the place on which they rested. What do you notice? (5) Are all the snails (a) of the same size? (b) of the same kind?

If it is not possible to do this outdoor work, collect any information the children can give about these points.

**I.** Suggest that a home shall be made in which to keep a few snails, and ask how it shall be made. How can a snail's natural home be imitated? A shallow enamel bowl or pie dish makes a suitable observation case, with a sheet of glass over the top to prevent the contents from becoming dry and the occupants from wandering. Emphasize the need for keeping it damp, because the snails cannot breathe dry air. The cover can be lifted once or twice a day to admit fresh air, but the snails do not need very much. Let the children place in the bowl some short turf, moss, dead leaves, and one or two stones, or pieces of broken earthen ware for shelter. The snails kept in captivity invariably crawl to the top of the bowl and on to the glass, and if there is no cover they will be found high upon walls and even on the ceiling by the next morning.

**II.** Let the children draw the snails in their resting position. Draw attention to the coiling of the shell, the direction of the coil (looked at from above), the number of coils, and the fine lines of growth. At intervals a thickened ridge may be found. This ridge indicates the cessation of growth each autumn. It tells us the snail's age, but it is not an unfailing guide, as, in a hot, dry period in the summer, growth may cease temporarily and then go on again. The shell is added to by the edge of the mantle, which secretes the limy substance of which the shell is made. The markings will often show better if the shells are washed.

(Second Period)

**Aim.**—Study of movement and senses.

**Material.**—Two snails to each group of children. Apparatus for the teacher to demonstrate to one group at a time the

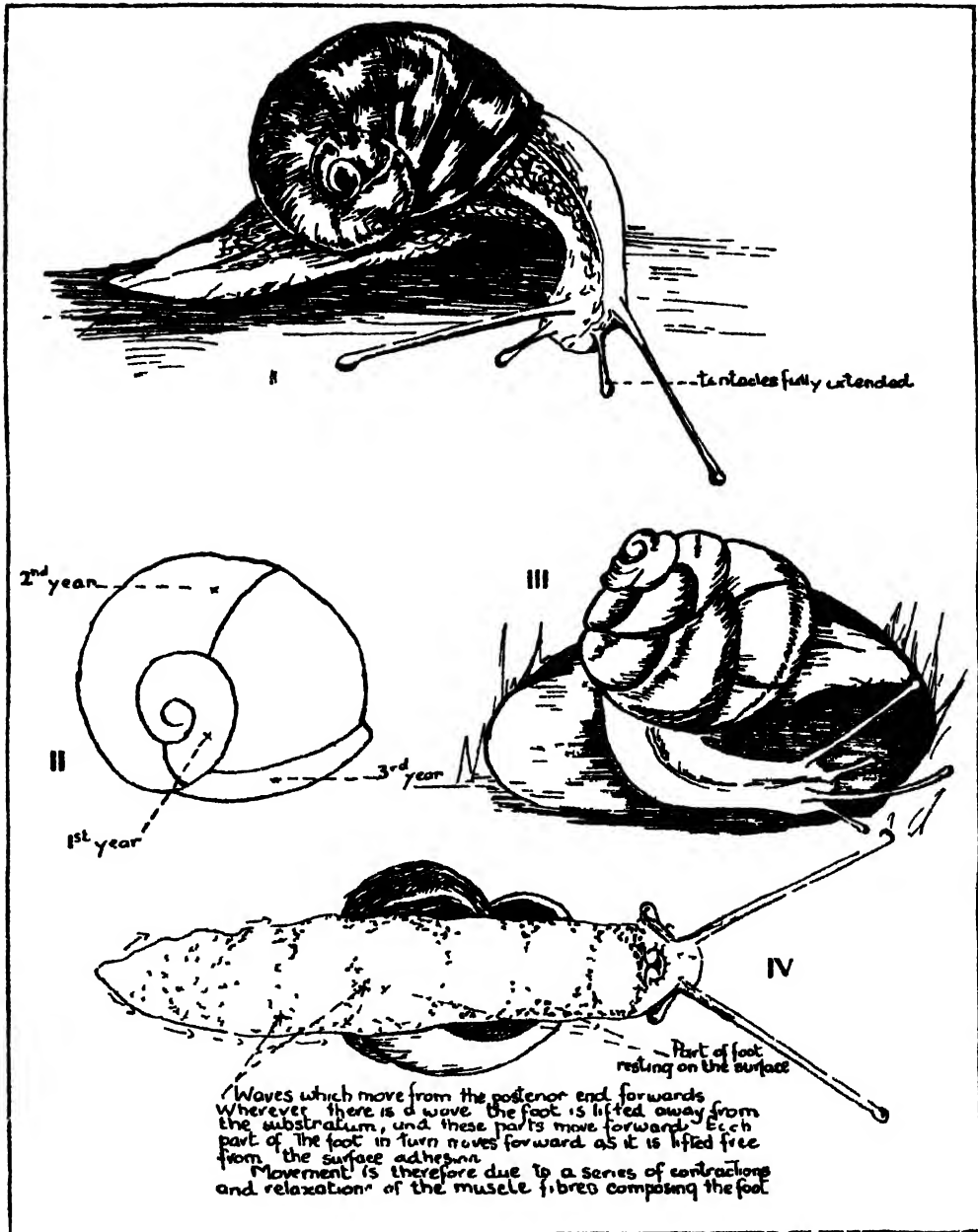
snails' responses to various stimuli: a small basin of warm water with wire gauze over it, or a glass plate that can be warmed in water and then lifted out, various strong-smelling substances, such as ammonia and turpentine, a glass rod, a small dark screen with three sides and an electric torch, a whistle, a small bell, a box to rattle, or any childish musical instrument, to make both irregular and rhythmical noises. Small dishes for each group of children (sea shells, walnut shells) containing tiny pieces of carrot, apple, onion and lettuce, in addition a small jar of water.

**Introduction.**—Let the children arrange themselves in the same groups as before and give them written instructions on the blackboard. Discuss these instructions with them until they are clear. Explain to them that the little dishes of food are for the snails to eat if they can find them, and ask how the children could arrange so that they can see how the snails find their food. How could they possibly find it? (They might see it.) Suppose we prevented them from seeing it, is there any other way in which they might try to find it? Suppose there were apples or oranges in a bowl and you were near them but could not see them, could you find the fruit? Or suppose the dinner was cooking in the next room, could you tell? What we are really going to try to find out, then, is whether snails can see or smell food, and so find it. (It will often be found that children are slow to propose anything in the way of experimental conditions, and may finally need to have the suggestion made that they shall put the snails with their backs to the food, so that they cannot see it to begin with, or they may put something between to hide it, e.g. stones.)

**Instructions.**—

- (1) See whether the snails discover the food in the little dishes.
- (2) Watch to see whether they eat anything, and how.
- (3) Make drawings to show a snail crawling.

PLATE V



- I Snail fully expanded in wing the way tentacles are fully extended
- II shell showing three years growth
- III snail extending over a time
- IV underside of foot, showing movement



- (4) Make drawings to show how it feels its way
- (5) What does it do if you put something in the way?
- (6) Can it feel? Which parts seem to feel most?

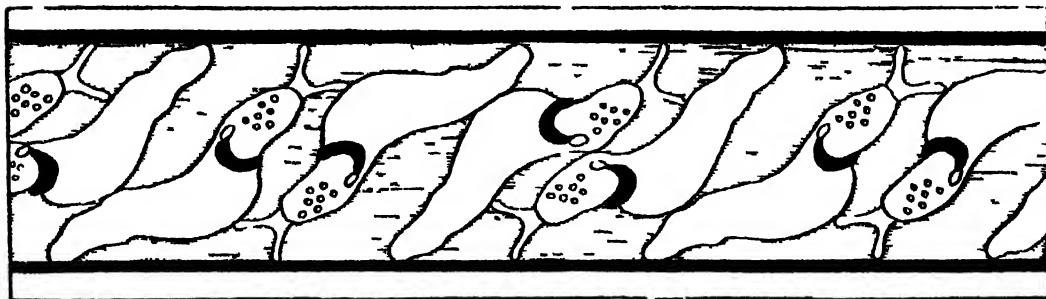
**III.** When the groups understand what they are doing, and have started work, the teacher can take one group round a table, to see as much as possible of a snail's behaviour in the presence of various stimuli.

If the snails are inactive dip them in water, then watch their movements as they emerge from the shell. (All the groups may do this.) Put two or three snails on a damp plate or sheet of glass, so that they can move easily. Hold a glass rod dipped in ammoniac or turpentine in front of each in turn. Be very careful not to touch the snail or drop the substance on it. Note what kind of response is made.

Try the snails on both a warm and a cold plate, to see whether heat has any effect. Place them near the hot pipes. Flash the light upon them. Enclose them with the screen (large enough for the children to see into it from the front), which should cut off light from the window. Each side of the screen should be about 1 foot square. Direct the light steadily upon the screen.

Try both irregular and rhythmical noises. Then try tapping on the glass plate on which the snails have been placed. In each case note as exactly as possible whether any responses are made to light, to sound, and to vibration (due to the tapping on the glass, which is conveyed to them along it). As individual behaviour differs it is important not to try the same snails every time and to have several, if any conclusions are to be drawn. In all these experiments care is taken not to give pain.

## VII. SNAILS AND SLUGS



(Third Period)

**Aim.**—To see something of the structure as far as it is related to activities observed.

**Material.**—Let the groups of children have the snails in boxes or vessels, covered over, but so that they can be taken out for reference if required. The drawings made should

also be available. The teacher will also require glass plates, and a leather sucker on a string.

**I. Introduction.**—Tell the children what it is proposed to do. Let them describe the snail's movements, (1) in coming out

of the shell, (2) in feeling its way, (3) in crawling.

(1) In coming out of the shell, first of all part of the underside can be seen, then the whole of it. This is called the *foot*, because the snail glides along by using it. Then the head appears, and the neck, and at the same time, often one by one, four little horns or feelers stretch out, a little at a time.

(2) Ask what the children notice about the use of these horns. The long ones, which are uppermost, are moved about in the air and come into contact with any obstacle, and sometimes with the ground. They seem to help the snail to feel its way. Sometimes it rears up the whole front of the body as well. The short horns touch the ground gently immediately in front of the snail, and seem to help it to feel, also. Perhaps they detect rough ground. They emerge by turning inside out, and are drawn in again by the tip first.

(3) In crawling the snail glides on its foot, and leaves a trail of slime behind. Where does this come from? Take the snails out, induce them to come out of their shells and crawl on the glass plates. Take a pencil and touch the groove on the underside of a snail just where the head joins the foot. As the pencil is drawn away it is seen to bring a thread of slime.

Let a snail crawl on the glass, and hold it up to look underneath. As it moves along a rippling movement can be seen passing forwards along it, as if there were white bands constantly slipping forwards. Explain that these are the muscles of the foot that contract to pull the snail along. Place your hand on the table and draw it up to the finger tips by contracting it. Notice that your hand moves forward only if your fingers are fixed by pressing on the table. The snail has to press the edge of its body against the glass in order to draw the foot along.

Hold the snail upside down on the plate. It does not fall off. Show how this can be by

pressing a damped leather sucker on the under side of a plate, and explain that this happens when there is no air between the table and the sucker. The slime moistens the foot of the snail and so helps it to act like the leather sucker. (N.B. This process is not *understood*, it is only *shown*.) Let the children place something in the path and watch the snail surmount it, clinging to it with the soft edges of its foot.

(4) Draw attention to the large coil forming the outermost part of the shell, and tell the children it is used for breathing, and takes in air. Let them watch till a snail opens the round hole on the right side just at the rim of the shell. They may not see it at once, but they should bear the point in mind and look for the opening.

(5) If in the previous lesson the children were not successful in getting the snails to feed, they should try in spare moments until they *have* seen them feeding. They should also put fresh leaves of lettuce or cabbage, and small pieces of apple, potato, carrot, or onion into the house, and look for the tooth marks, which are quite distinct, the harder substances looking as if a fine rasp or grater had passed over them. Look for the mouth just underneath the head. When not in use, it is only a small dark-brown mark, but when the snail feeds it can be seen to open wide, and a minute scoop appears, which quickly scrapes the surface and disappears again. Explain that this rasp (not really a tongue) is covered with rows of very small teeth, nearly 15,000 of them, so that it is no wonder that the snail can destroy a great many plants in the garden.

**II. Further work.**—(a) When the cold weather begins let the children hunt for snails again, and notice the following points:

- (1) Their tendency to congregate in large numbers, one on the top of another, and to fill spaces under stones, old

drain pipes and plant pots, or just under loose soil or decaying vegetation.

- (2) That if they are detached, it will be seen that one or more plates have been formed across the shell opening. These are yellowish, with a white, porous spot which is supposed to suffice for admitting air. The snails will remain in one place all through the winter, not feeding, breathing very little, and never moving, until the warm, damp spring days bring new vegetation for them to feed on, and warmth enough for them to become wakeful.

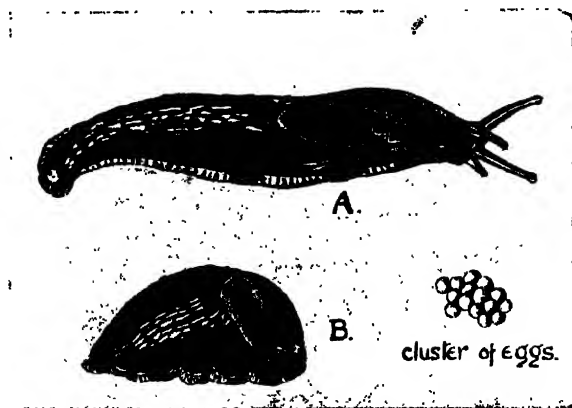
(b) In the spring, look for the eggs, just beneath the surface of damp soil—a cluster of pearl-like, transparent globes about  $\frac{1}{8}$  in. in diameter. Take them indoors and keep them in a saucer of damp soil, covered with a few damp decaying leaves, which can be lifted to watch them. Cover the whole with a glass plate and label with the date. The development can then easily be watched.

A little speck will be seen in each egg. Then the speck will grow larger, and with a lens can be seen to revolve inside the transparent capsule. In a few days, minute, colourless, transparent snails will emerge. Keep a few blades of grass and bits of fresh leaf in the saucer for them to feed on.

(c) Slugs can be looked for, watched, and compared with snails, from which they differ chiefly in having no shell. A great variety of slugs may be found.

(d) Outdoor observations on the movements of both snails and slugs from place to place are interesting, as they can be tracked by their slimy trails. Their range, the distance they travel, the plants they eat, and their curious habit of returning home in the morning to the same spot after a night out are all easy to see. A slug's eggs are opaque, but otherwise like those of a snail. They vary in size in different species.

(e) Further experiments may be tried, e.g., their pace timed; two snails "raced"; weights attached by thread to see how much they can pull.



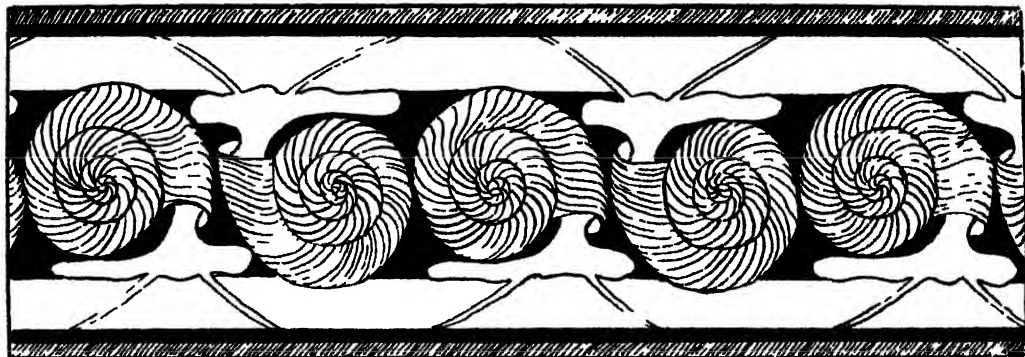
BLACK SLUG, *Arion ater*:

A. Slug extended, showing the open respiratory aperture in the mantle.

B. Slug contracted.

(From Lulham's "Zoology".)

## VIII. POND SNAILS



## POINTS FOR THE TEACHER'S CONSIDERATION

**T**HE lesson on Pond Snails would be taken in the series on fresh water animals, but they are described here because of their close relationship to Snails and Slugs of the garden. (For illustration see plate on Water Beetle, page 383.)

The clue to their life is that they have, like the garden snails developed the power to live on land especially they have developed apparatus for breathing atmospheric oxygen and they have afterwards returned to a water life. They are frequently to be found exposed for long periods on weeds above the level of the water, and they can exist for some time on land, but like their relations they must have a damp atmosphere.

They cannot remain under water without coming to the surface to breathe, since there has been no re-adaptation to breathing under water. The time they remain under the surface seems to depend on their activity, and therefore on the amount of energy used. They may, when passive, remain as long as fifty minutes under water, but when feeding they come up to breathe frequently, for instance, once every two minutes, or once in every ten minutes.

## THE LESSON

**Aim.**—To study the habits of the pond snail, comparing it with the garden snail.

**Material.** Glass jam jar, one between two children, or better still, one each, if they can bring their own. A snail and a little water weed, e.g. Starwort or Canadian Pondweed. The Common Pond Snail (*Lymnaea stagnalis*) is the best. This has a pointed shell about  $1\frac{1}{2}$  to 2 in. long. If possible there should also be some in a large tank, bath or tub as their wanderings can then be better watched.

**Introduction.**—Tell the children that the Pond Snail is a relation of the Garden Snail, that the Pond Snail has gone back to live in water again, but it still has to come up above the water to breathe.

**I.** Let the children watch the snails and notice everything they do, trying to sketch them to show the various positions adopted. The lesson should be mainly informal, the teacher going round to discuss what is seen, and letting the children, in

small groups, watch anything of interest in the behaviour of any snail. She would also suggest, by questions, what labelling should be attached to the sketches made, e.g. "Pond Snail crawling on the side of the jar", or, "Crawling on the underside of the surface of the water", or, "Opening its breathing hole above water."

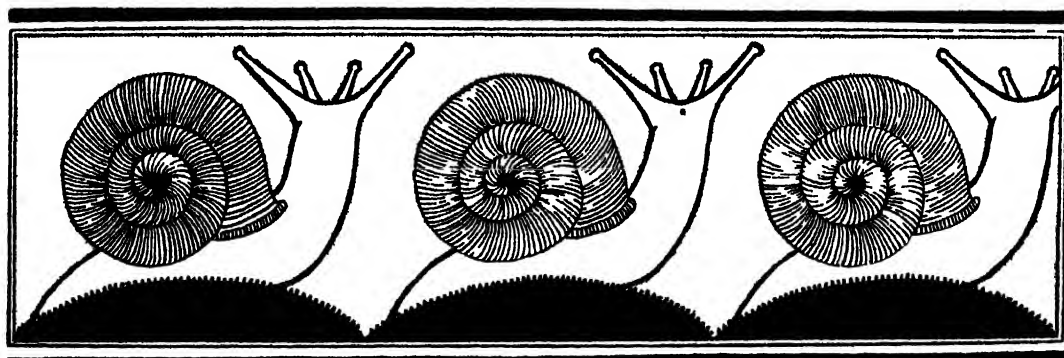
**II.** The various things noticed would then be collected. They would probably include the following points:

- (1) The snails glide up weeds or up the sides of the jar, and slip from these on to the underside of the water surface so smoothly and gently that they do not cause a ripple.
- (2) After a time they might be seen to swing over (so that the *left* side would be uppermost) and project a very short spout, just breaking the surface film. At first this looks like a pin prick, but in a moment it widens into an opening like the breathing hole of the Garden Snail. The short rim prevents the water from filling it. This seems to close suddenly. One can sometimes hear a little "pop,"

especially in a pond where there are many snails.

- (3) Probably the snail will then withdraw into its shell, and as the body then nearly fills the air chamber, it is suddenly heavier, and falls to the bottom. Sometimes snails are said to form a rope of slime and climb up and down it, attaching it to the surface and to some plant at the bottom.

**III. Further work.**—The eggs are very common objects, often brought in with weeds, or laid in an aquarium where snails are kept. The early stages of development and hatching of young snails, as well as their later growth, are easily watched. The eggs are much smaller than those of a garden snail, about  $\frac{1}{16}$  in. across, and are laid in rows, many together, in a long narrow sac of gelatinous substance, by which they are glued on to stones, leaves or stalks of water plants. This anchorage is useful in preventing them from being washed away, and the "jelly" is so slippery that it is difficult for fish or other creatures to eat it. The "jelly" also spaces the eggs so that each has room to grow and has enough light, water, and air.



## IX. HIBERNATION



## POINTS FOR THE TEACHER'S CONSIDERATION

**T**HE subject of 'Winter Sleep' is often included in a Nature Study syllabus and is apt to be treated purely academically, because it is difficult to observe it at first hand in animals high in the scale of development whose life in winter rarely comes within the experience of either teacher or children. It is frequently regarded as a phenomenon peculiar to the lives of animals whereas the cessation of physiological activity is almost universal amongst plants in our climate. The term 'hibernation' is strictly applied only to animals in which actual physiological changes occur during the dormant period, including a lowering of the temperature of the body, and thus really includes the lower animals only, and not the mammals. However it is popularly used to cover all cases of winter sleep amongst animals and indeed it is difficult to draw an absolute line, since it has been found that the winter sleep of bats which *are* mammals, is accompanied by lowered temperature.

Children will realise the fact that in plants all activity ceases after they have provided for their offspring and for their own continued

growth next year. This would lead to the question, Do animals ever meet the winter in the same way as plants by ceasing to live an active life or by 'going to sleep'? This might lead to a survey of garden and hedge, the children's own gardens, and any other areas that have been under consideration with a view to discover what *has* become of their animal inhabitants in the winter. A special wall chart might be kept to record any instance of their being found, and in what condition—for instance, ladybirds, small tortoiseshell butterflies and gnats may be seen in the sunshine on a warm February day.

Some animals are able to remain active through the winter, either because they are able to keep up the body heat to the same level at all times like the birds, and so only suffer from cold in very severe weather, or because, like the earthworms, they live in some protected situation where frost and wind do not affect them. Many of the birds, as we know, migrate to warmer climates.

Having perhaps dug up certain caterpillars, or a cockchafer pupa or the dark

red leathery pupa of the Buff Tip moth lying in a passive condition in the soil, or cocoons lying amongst fallen leaves, the children establish the fact that other animals besides squirrels and polar bears spend the winter in a dormant condition. This would lead to an intensive and extensive search for such cases. If possible, the teacher, after a preliminary exploration to be sure that patient search *would* be rewarded, might take groups of children in turn to hunt in a variety of different places, and the class could make a list of all the animals found, and the number of each. The searchers might visit heaps of dead leaves, fallen branches and stumps of trees, examining holes and lifting loose bark. They might overturn stones and look in crevices of walls and doors of sheds, under window ledges, amongst tall grass and decaying vegetation, especially inside dry hollow stalks, under the overhanging trails of rock plants, and in box hedges and ivy. This preliminary work might be followed by a class lesson in which all evidence would be collected and classified, and the teacher would round off the subject by a talk on the hibernating habits of other animals outside the children's experience. A list is given below of some of the creatures which might be found during the children's explorations.

Snails and slugs of various kinds.

Caterpillars of Tiger moth.

Chrysalises or cocoons of Buff Tip moth.

Tortoiseshell, Peacock and Brimstone butterflies.

Ladybird beetles (adult).



COCKCHAFER AND LARVA.  
Slightly magnified (after Haro).

Cockchafer larva and pupa in soil (a white fat grub with nearly black head and weak legs).

Occasional spiders, bees, wasps, blue-bottle and house flies.

Woodlice, centipedes and millipedes under stones, overhanging or decaying vegetation and bark of decaying trees. These creatures seem to be partially inactive, but they rouse up when exposed to the air.

Newts and frogs under dead leaves, in ditches or hollows in the roots of trees.



CHRYSALIS OF  
CABBAGE  
BUTTERFLY

*Pieris  
brassicæ :*

*e*, compound eye.  
*a*, antenna.  
*d*, dorsal spine.  
*l*, lateral spines.  
*s*, spiracle.  
(From Lillham's  
"Zoology".)

## THE LESSON

**Aim.**—To collect all the children's experience of hibernating animals, and to enlarge it by giving further information.

**Material.**—Some examples of hibernating creatures found in the garden arranged with a little suitable material to illustrate their natural surroundings, e.g. stones, dead leaves and small pieces of bark. (These could be on the Nature Table, and labelled a day or two beforehand.) The children's lists and any class chart or other class record that has been kept.

**Introduction.**—Refer to the fact that the children have been searching for animals hiding under stones, leaves and so on, spending the winter in a passive state, or "asleep." Tell them that this is called "hibernation" from the Latin word *hibernus*—winter.

**I.** Take their lists of animals found and write them in two columns on the blackboard, under the headings "*Occasional*" and "*Frequent*", grouping the names according

to the kind of locality. Take any evidence the children can give, from repeated visits, showing whether the dormant state is continuous, or interrupted by active periods. Have the creatures been seen out in the sun, or anywhere else (e.g. ladybirds)? There is a popular belief that if the winter sleep is broken the animal dies. Possibly it is true of the lower creatures, but observers believe that it is not true of bats and squirrels and other higher animals.

**II.** Discuss the effect of winter on animal life. It affects animals chiefly through cold and diminished food supply, but in the case of damp-loving creatures like snails, one of the dangers is exposure to drying winds.

Some animals provide against the diminished food supply by storing food in their bodies, especially in the form of fat, e.g. snails and frogs. Then, when they go to sleep, their stored food can be used to keep them warm and to keep them alive, since they are not roving about and so using it up



THE SQUIRREL

in the form of energy. Other animals make store houses, to which they go from time to time when they wake up on a sunny day for a short time, e.g. dormice and squirrels. Colonies of ants will burrow deep underground, and, taking their stores of food with them, live an active life through the winter. A colony of yellow meadow ants was found in a London garden eighteen inches deep in the soil, about the roots of a rhododendron bush. With their instinctive foresight they had taken with them, or else found a colony of aphides, which were feeding on the roots, and giving their "milk" of honeydew when the ants stroked them.

The animals that are called "cold-blooded" are unable to regulate the heat of their

blood, which goes up and down with the weather conditions. If the day is cold, their blood is cold, but in warm weather their blood is warmer, too. Thus in cold weather they are really too cold to be active, unless, like the earthworms and some beetles, they can burrow down into the soil where it is warmer. That is why so many of them hibernate; they cannot keep awake. The "warm-blooded" animals, however, are not much warmer blooded, but they have the power of regulating the heat so that it can be kept always at one level, whatever the weather. That is why so few of the higher animals need to hibernate. Probably those that do, are influenced more by lack of food than by cold. Most animals, like squirrels



THE COMMON TOAD  
(From Mural.)

and rabbits and dormice, are said to be very thin by the end of the winter, and frogs use up nearly all their store of fat.

Amongst the cold-blooded animals are the snails and slugs, insects, frogs and newts, snakes and lizards, and, amongst "pets," the tortoise.

Amongst the warm-blooded animals which hibernate, all of which are mammals, are the field and wood mice, dormice, squirrels, voles, hedgehogs, rabbits for a time during severe weather, and bats. Most of them find a hole in a secluded place, squirrels in trees or amongst the roots, field mice in holes in the ground (see Hans Andersen's "Thumbelina"), dormice, hedgehogs and voles in holes in banks or





LITTLE BAT

amongst the roots filled with drifted leaves. The little store of nuts, berries and seeds which many of these small creatures make is usually in another hole a short distance away.

The bats hang themselves head downwards with their wings folded, and they hook themselves on to some rafter or projecting piece of rock in old barns, churches towers and caves. They are enabled to hang by a curious long curved claw on each thumb.

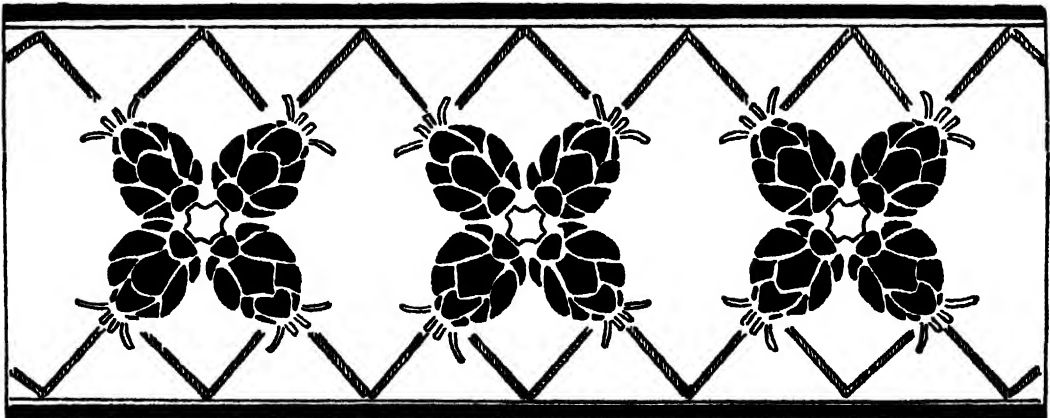
Amongst foreign mammals the Polar Bear is perhaps most frequently mentioned for its curious habit of burrowing in a hole in the snow keeping the cavity and the

snow above it from freezing hard by the warmth of its body and breath.

In many cases it is difficult to see how the animals manage to breathe, but probably life is at so low an ebb, and the energy used up is so slight that a very small supply of air is sufficient.

III. Let the children write a free account of "Winter Sleep of Animals," using both their own experience and what has been told them. (In connection with this lesson the teacher might like to read extracts from *Tarka the Otter* by H. Williamson which tells about the hiding places of animals and also gives a most impressive account of the hardships experienced by wild animals, both mammals and bird in a severe winter. *The Wind in the Willows*, by Kenneth Grahame, though not scientific and not intended to be so would be a charming story to read in conjunction with this study.)

## X. HAZEL FLOWERS



### POINTS FOR THE TEACHER'S CONSIDERATION

**H**AZEL flowers can be encouraged to appear in January by keeping them in a warm and sunny window, and giving slightly warm water, thus they make

a useful study to tide over the "dead" period when material is difficult to obtain. The Hazel is a good example of trees or bushes which find it an advantage to flower early,

before their flowers are obscured by surrounding foliage,—their own and that of higher trees. The disadvantage of this is that there are very few insects abroad to effect the transference of pollen, and so, apparently, these plants have reverted to wind pollination. They have lost the perianth which might have attracted insects, and have diverted the energy thus saved to the production of greater quantities of pollen.

It will be noticed that wind-pollinated flowers are usually well exposed either because they flower before the leaves open or because they are held well away from the plant, as in the sycamore, or are borne on long stalks above the level of surrounding plants, as in most grasses and the few other meadow plants such as Salad Burnet, which have resorted to wind pollination. In most cases there are traces of structures which show that at one time the flowers were accustomed to pollination by insects, though we cannot tell whether they were ever very conspicuous or brightly coloured—probably not. In the case of the Birch catkins which are closely related to the Hazel a minute four-lobed perianth still persists and shows the condition from which the Hazel flowers have been derived.

In the Hazel there are two distinct kinds of flowers borne on separate branches of the same tree, often quite close together. The most conspicuous are the pollen-bearing inflorescences, the well known lambs tails or catkins. These consist of a large number of flowers arranged spirally on a drooping stalk. Each little horizontal hood or bract supports two flowers protected by subsidiary bracts or bracteoles (which, however, are too small for children to distinguish). Under each bract are eight anthers containing a large quantity of very fine dry pollen. The anthers are borne on long, delicate, thread-like stalks or filaments. Each stamen consists of a branched filament and two anthers, and a flower consists of two stamens. The branching of the filament is a device to secure a larger amount of pollen, since a great deal is blown away without reaching

the stigmas of other flowers. These are the male flowers, consisting of nothing but stamens and the protecting bracts.

The female or pistillate flowers are enclosed in oval buds borne on reduced branches, often very short. Each bud has several flowers. Each flower consists of a pistil and two flowers are borne by one bract and two small bracteoles as in the staminate flowers. The collection of flowers and bracts forms a short spiral inflorescence protected by scale leaves, from which the bright crimson stigmas project. Each ovary (or flower) has two stigmas. The flower buds contain foliage leaves also which unfold after the stigmas have withered. There are also smaller, more pointed buds containing foliage leaves only.

The stigmas have a roughened surface (only visible under the microscope) which helps the pollen grains to adhere to it.

### THE LESSON

**Aim.**—To study a wind pollinated flower, noticing how it differs from those already observed which are pollinated by insects.

**Material.**—A large spray of Hazel catkins. Small sprays showing catkins and pistillate flowers sufficient for the children to share in pairs.

**Introduction.** If the buds have been brought out in the classroom the children will already be familiar with their appearance. Tell them that the Hazel flowers are almost the earliest we find, certainly the earliest tree flowers. Ask why we should call them flowers.

**I.** Let the children examine the catkins closely to see if there is anything that suggests a flower. They will probably see the stamens. (As the stamens are very easily detached the number to be seen is variable, and in any case they are rather too small to count.) Is there anything else? Are there any petals or sepals? (No, the

stamens are protected only by the little green hoods or bracts) Is there any ovary? (If these are flowers, they are very different from any others seen) Do they smell sweet? Do you think they would attract insects? Have you seen any insects round them or on them?

The children will probably suggest that it is too early for bees and flies. Could the pollen be taken away in any other way? Remembering the sycamore, and by analogy with seeds and fruits, the children may think of the wind. Let them shake the twigs as the wind might do. Clouds of dry, light pollen are shaken out. Notice that both the catkins and the stamens shake,—both have very thin stalks. Would other flowers shed their pollen like this? If there are Daffodils or other flowers in the room, try shaking them in the same way. The children will then see that the dry, light pollen is characteristic of the Hazel flowers, and can be easily carried by wind, just as tiny seeds can be carried.

**Questions.**—Where is the pollen carried to? We could find no ovaries in the catkins, could they be anywhere else? Can you find anything on the Hazel twig that might be a different kind of flower? If the tufts of red stigmas are not found, draw attention to them and explain that these really are little clusters of flowers, and that each flower is only an ovary with two stigmas. The red stigmas catch the pollen as it floats by, and then the nuts can be formed in each of these buds. The ripe nuts may have been seen in the preceding autumn. How many grow together? (One, two or three) Each little

cluster is formed from one of these buds. Recall the appearance of the nuts in October, each with its frilly green cup. These flowers are called pistillate flowers, because each is one pistil, or an ovary with stigmas. If they receive pollen they will take all the summer to ripen into nuts.

**II.** Summarise the chief points by questions revising what has been seen or told. Either a blackboard summary may be made, or the children may write answers to questions. The following points would be recapitulated

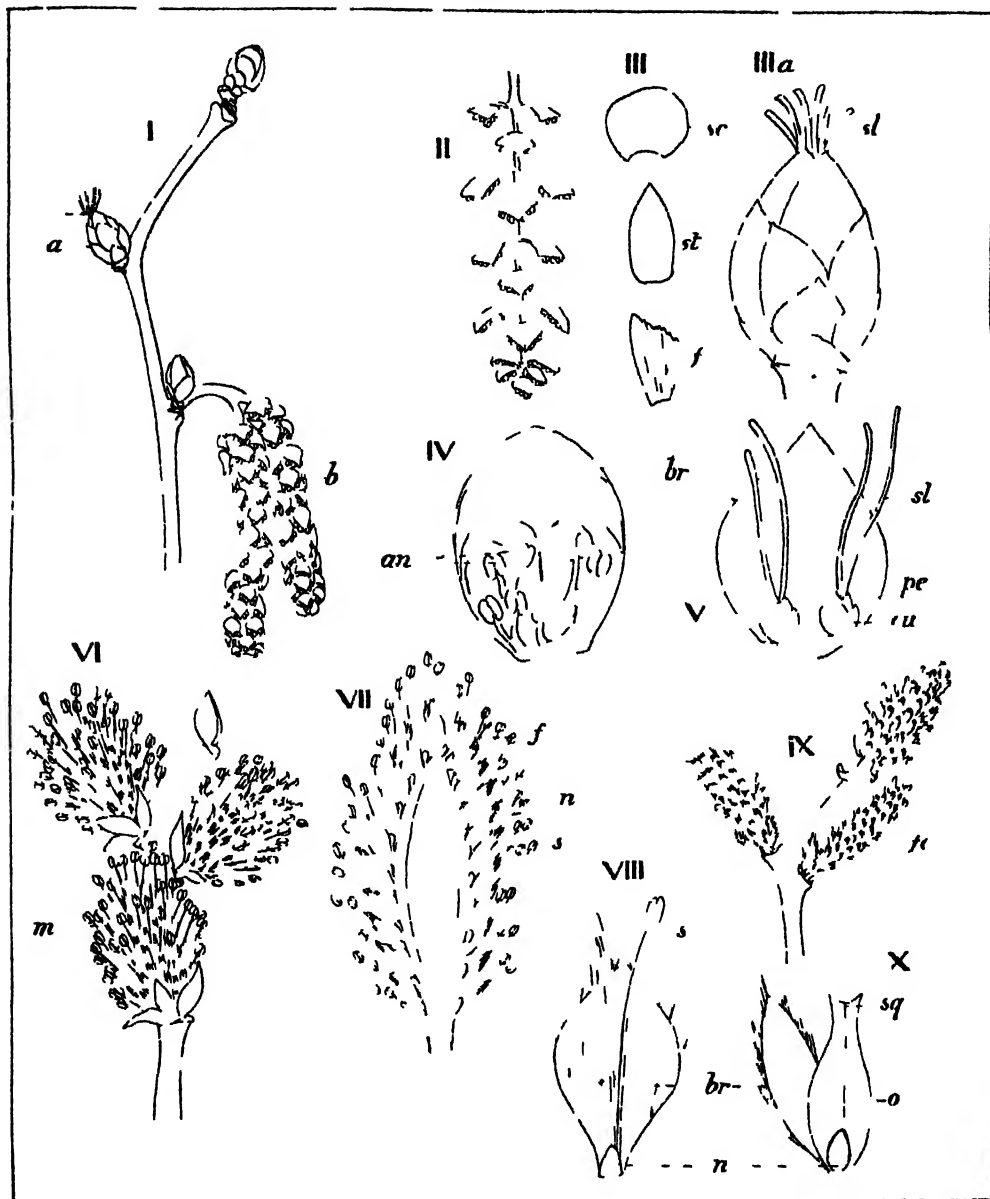
- (1) The Hazel has two kinds of flowers, called staminate flowers or catkins and pistillate flowers.
- (2) The staminate flowers have pollen, the pistillate flowers contain ovules.
- (3) There is a great deal of pollen. It is very dry and light. It is carried by the wind to the pistillate flowers.
- (4) There are many flowers in a catkin, and many in a pistillate bud.
- (5) The flowers come out before the leaves.
- (6) The nuts form from the pistillate flowers, one to three together.

(If it is decided that this summary is too long for a particular class, then points 2, 3 and 6 are the most important.)

**III.** Any detailed structure is beyond the children in this stage, but brush-work drawings might be made to show how the catkins hang in the wind and how the stigmas project to receive the pollen. The drawings could be annotated to bring out these features.

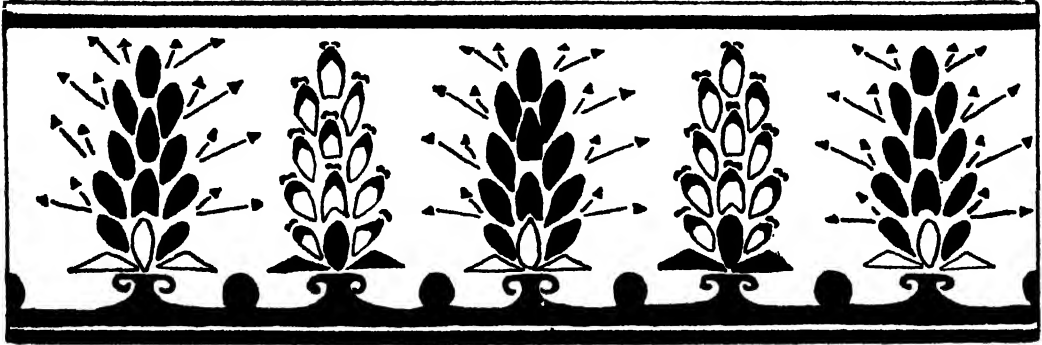


PLATE VI



HAZIL I Branch showing a female flower a male flower II Catkin showing arrangement of male flowers III Scale of female catkin st style of foliage leaf IIIa Female catkin st style IV Male flower an anthers br bract V Female flower br bract st styles pe perianth cu cupule surrounding ovary VI Male catkins (m) VII Longitudinal section of male catkin of flower n nectary s stamens VIII Female catkin n nectary br bract s stamens IX Female catkins (c) X Female flower br bract sq stigma o ovary, n nectary

## XI. PUSSY WILLOW, PALM OR SALLOW



### POINTS FOR THE TEACHER'S CONSIDERATION

**O**BTAIN the Willow, like the Hazel, in bud, and let it develop in water, if it is wanted very early. If possible, obtain both staminate and pistillate branches, which grow on different trees. At an early stage they can be distinguished because the green pistils begin to show through the silvery hairs. The opening pistillate catkins are often longer than the staminate. In both cases the buds are covered with reddish brown scales, which fall away to disclose upright catkins clothed in long, silky hairs, probably protecting the young flowers from frost and cold winds.

These flowers, contrary to expectation, are pollinated by bees, which often surround the trees on bright, sunny days in April, when the nectar is flowing. As in the Hazel, each catkin is an inflorescence, not a single flower. Each flower consists either of a single pistil or a pair of stamens, protected by a bract. At the opposite side to the bract, at the base of pistil or stamens, is a tiny yellowish scale, just discernible; this is the nectary.

### THE LESSON

**Aim.**—To see what kind of flowers the Pussy Willow has.

**Material.**—Small sprays of Willow of both kinds, to each group of four children. These sprays can be interchanged.

**Introduction.**—Ask the children what they remember about the Hazel flowers. \*Notice that here is another tree which flowers before its leaves unfold, though not quite so early (the time varies in different localities).

**I.** Let the children describe anything they notice: the silky hairs; the tiny leaves, perhaps just beginning to open; the two kinds of catkins. Ask if they can distinguish which is which. Let them describe the arrangement of each.

Let them remove carefully and draw one little brown scale, with its two stamens. See whether any of them notice the scale-like nectary. Let them do the same with a single pistillate flower, writing the name beside each.

Now ask if there is anything to tell us how these flowers are pollinated. They will no doubt reason that, as there are no attractive petals, wind is the agent. Shake the catkins. Very little, if any, pollen falls away, for it is not light and dry as in the

**Hazel** Then explain that this flower is an exception to what we should expect, for it is pollinated by bees which come for nectar and pollen. It is one of the earliest flowers from which they can feed. Humble bees are particularly fond of it. Show by a blackboard sketch where to look for the nectaries, and let the children try to find them.

**II.** Let the children write short accounts of the Willow flowers and illustrate them by any sketches they like to make.

**III.** Suggest that they shall look for bees round the trees and also later on look for the fruits. These with their small capsules opening to let out light plumed seeds should be shown on the Nature Table in due course.

## XII. THE LESSER CELANDINE



**I**t is useful sometime to make a detailed study of a whole plant in all the phases of its life in relation to its surroundings. Such a study gives the children a realization both of the various activities which have to be carried on if a plant is to live and perpetuate the race and of the close relationship between conditions and form. The plant chosen should be a common one and should present both interesting vegetative characters (e.g. special storage organ, creeping stems, a rosette of leaves or other means of establishing its position) and interesting features in connection with the production of flowers and fruits. The following plants would be suitable—Narrow leaved Plantain (Ribwort), Cinquefoil, Silverweed

or Tormentil (three common Potentilla), White or Red Dead Nettle, Wood Anemone, Lesser Celandine, Dandelion, Daisy, Ground Elder (Goutweed) and Clover. The Lesser Celandine and Wood Anemone have been chosen to illustrate the method of study and the biological points that arise.

The relationship between conditions and form may be studied by the comparison of the same plant taken from different habitats so that the varying effects of moisture, shade, exposure and nature of the soil may be noted. Attention may be drawn to the "sleep movements" of the leaves of Clover and Wood Sorrel and the etiolation (loss of green colour) of seedlings kept in the dark.

**THE LESSON**

Three periods, the first two on flower and fruit, the third on vegetative characters

(First and Second Periods)

**Aim.**—To study the flower and fruit of the Lesser Celandine. This phase is chosen to study first, because the flowers first attract children's attention and gain their interest, and because the early flowering explains the need for special vegetative organs and an alternative means of propagation.

**Introduction.**—If possible, spend a period or part of a period in looking at the plants out of doors. In this case show the children some flowers and write the name on the blackboard, and then tell them that they are going out to see where and how the flowers grow. If they grow in the school garden, this observation lesson need take only a quarter of an hour, but if the flowers grow some distance away, a whole period must be devoted to it.

**II. Points which can be observed in the garden.—**

- (1) Differences in general growth (height, number of leaves) due to differences in shelter and undergrowth.
- (2) The flowers all stages in their growth, and especially the fruits which, after pollination are to be found under the leaves.

If the children cannot be taken out ask them beforehand to look for the plants, and give definite points to find.

**III.** Have the children arranged in small groups, each with a bowl of flowers covering various stages.

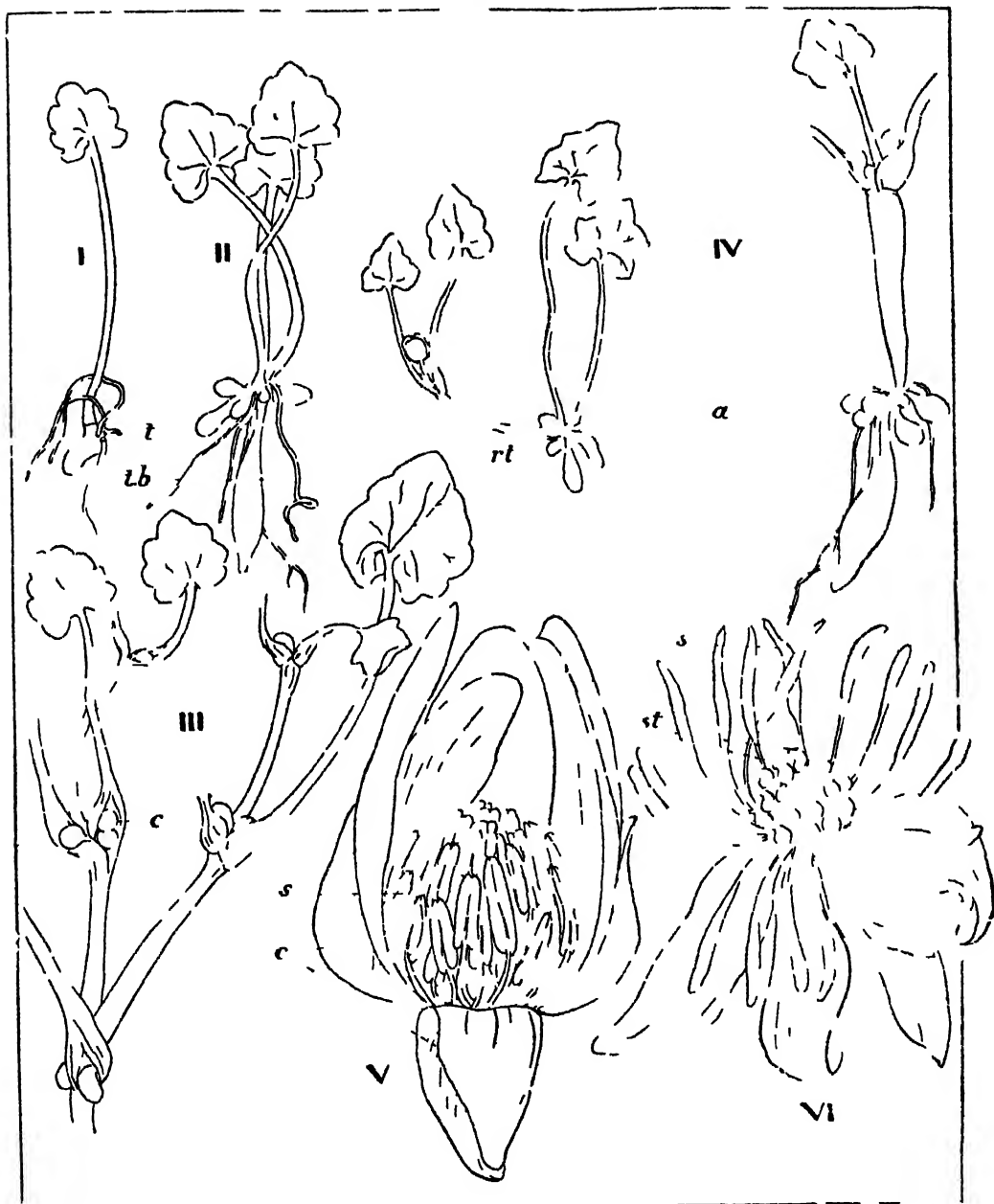
Let them notice the buds with the calyx enclosing the rest of the flower, then the opening flowers. What can be seen? A calyx of 3 to 5 sepals, then 6 to 10 bright

yellow, narrow petals, slightly green outside, and looking as if they had been polished inside. These surround the stamens, of which there are many. Notice the position of the stamens in this and in a wide-open flower. In the half-open flower they are bent towards the centre, thus hiding it. In the open flower they have straightened out and bent slightly backwards, and the ovary can be seen in the centre. Look very closely at the stamens. Notice that the *pollen-sacs* or *anthers* open outwards, so that the pollen will fall, not on the ovary in the middle, but into the cup of the flower outside the stamens. This means that the pollen cannot make its own seeds grow, or, as we say, cannot *fertilise* its own seeds. So it is necessary to obtain pollen from another flower. How is this done? Does the wind bring it or do insects? Have you seen any insects on the flowers? (Small black flies [*thrips*] are often seen inside the flowers. Very small beetles, dusted with pollen may sometimes be seen. If the weather is warm, there may be bumblebees, hive bees, for the redshell and cabbage butterflies.) The plants go on flowering for a very long time, from March into May, so that a good many may be visited by insects.

Ask if the children have noticed the fruits forming. If they have not suggest that they shall look under the leaves. What shall we look for? Look at the inside of the flower, and see what the fruit will probably be like. The ovary consists of several separate parts, called *carpels*. If it is impossible to visit the growing flowers, gather a clump with fruits under the leaves and plant it to show to the children. Protect by a glass shade.

Show the fruits. They are like the ovaries, except that they have grown larger, and each carpel has become flat with a slight ridge at each side. The carpel is drawn out into a little point at the tip, the stigma, on which it receives pollen. Now show the various stages by which the flower stalk bends over and hides its fruits under the leaves. This may perhaps prevent the fruits from being eaten while they are quite soft, before they are

PLATE VII



**LISSIRCHIA ANDINA** I Seedling showing root (r) and tuber (t) at the junction of root and tuber II Older plant with tuber (t) and leaves (l) III Plant with tuber (t) and leaves (l) IV Flowering plant with tuber (t) and leaves (l) V Young flower showing stamens (s) and stigma (st) VI Older flower with stamens (s) straightened out, st stigma



ripe. As they ripen, the fruits straighten out again. Then one by one the nutlets fall off. Perhaps the wind carries them a little way. Suggest that the children shall look and see how far away from a patch of plants they can find seedlings.

Remind the children that the flowers are formed very early in the year, before there are many insects. If we think of the places in which the Celandines live, does it help us to understand the value of this? (Yes, because they grow in shady places; when the leaves of the trees, bushes, and undergrowth come out, they will be hidden and their flowers cannot be seen by insects. Hence they need to flower before the leaves come out.)

**II.** Let the children make drawings of a flower to show the cup shape, and of a fruit.

(Third Period)

**Aim.**—To examine the vegetative parts of the plant.

**Introduction.**—If the Lesser Celandine grows in the school garden, begin the lesson by taking the children out to see it in as many different situations as possible. If it does not grow in the garden, tell them beforehand where to look for it, and ask them to find out all they can about the kind of place in which it grows, and how it grows. In either case the following points should be noted:

- (1) The Lesser Celandine grows in shady, sheltered places, especially under trees.
- (2) It grows in damp fields which may be quite open to the sun.
- (3) When it is amongst grass, and therefore shaded, it grows taller and straighter than on bare or open ground. On open ground the leaves are pressed close against the soil and are often small.

When the children are gathered in the classroom these points should be collected.

**I.** The groups of children would each be given a bowl of water containing plants in the five stages enumerated. They would be asked to find the youngest plants first, and describe their growth. This would probably show several small leaves growing from a common base, a few fibrous roots growing downwards from the same position, and one or two minute, round or oval tubers just forming. These would be new to the children. Give the name, and explain that they are rather like bulbs, and that they are the plant's way of storing food to feed new plants. Look at the next stage and see what has happened to the tubers. There are more of them, and they have grown longer. Count and see how many. Measure how long they are. The number of leaves has also increased, but not the number of fine roots, so it seems that these tubers act as roots.

Ask if the children can find any small tubers in other parts of the plant. They will discover that they are present in the axils of the leaves on the stem, and they will find them in different stages, some of them enclosed by the leaf base, which is thin and wraps round the stem, others bursting it and showing through. Explain how the stems bend down and root at the nodes, the tubers becoming embedded in the soil. A blackboard diagram is useful here. Let the children see this stage. It may not have been possible to find enough specimens for each group.

**II.** Summarise on the blackboard:

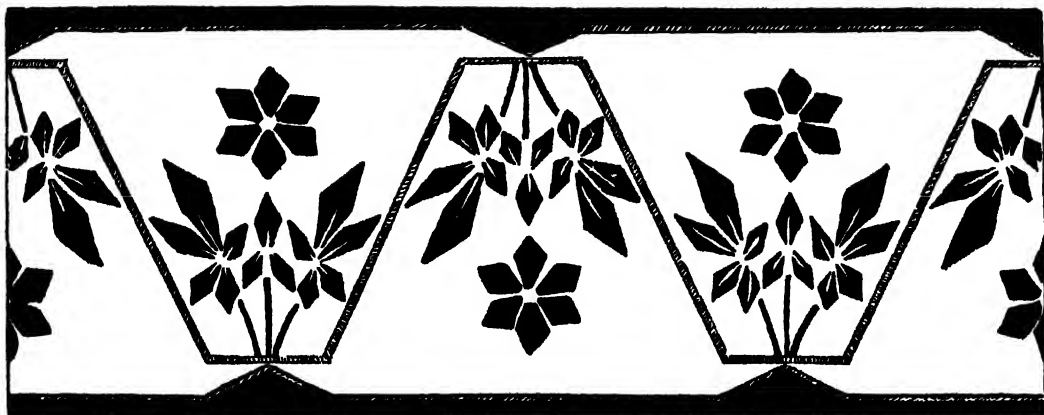
- (1) Seedling, small tubers.
- (2) Well-grown plant, many tubers, size (range).
- (3) Shoots form tubers, called bulbils, in axils of leaves.
- (4) Shoots bend down and root.
- (5) A new plant grows at the node.
- (6) Bulbils may separate and from them new plants grow.

**III.** Let the children make labelled drawings to show the first formation of tubers, and a shoot with bulbils in leaf axil. There should be no difficulty in obtaining plenty of examples of this stage without uprooting plants, and a few seedlings could be exchanged. All the children need not draw the same stage at the same time.

**IV.** Notice how quickly the plants have drooped when out of water. They grow in damp places where there is plenty of water. They have a very thin skin on the leaf, of Holly, with its hard surface.

**V.** Plant the Celandines in the garden if possible, but, if this is not possible, plant them in a window box, or in plant pots.

### XIII. WOOD ANEMONE OR WIND FLOWER



**T**HE Wood Anemone is another early flowering woodland plant, found in thickets and clearings, in flower in April and May. Its delicate white cups, suffused with mauve or green on the outside, are born on a frail stem 5 to 10 in. high, with a group of three deeply cut leafy bracts about  $2\frac{1}{2}$  to 3 in. below the flower. Each plant bears a single flower each year, and the bracts serve as foliage leaves, no others being formed. Like the Lesser Celandine, it increases its area by means of underground storage organs, but in this case it is the main stem that creeps under-

ground, becoming thickened to about  $\frac{1}{2}$  in. as it stores food for next year's plant. This *rhizome* (or creeping storage stem) is woody, and covered with a thin protective layer of cork, except just at the tip which is a terminal bud protected by several small white scale leaves. The stem consists of short internodes, with the scars of former scale leaves at the nodes, and a small oval scar on the upper surface of each node indicating where last year's flower stalk has broken away. Short fibrous roots are given off all round the nodes, but chiefly from the lower surface. Although these do

not extend very widely or penetrate deeply, they give the plant a firm hold, so that it is not easy to detach but the whole of the flower stalk comes away easily, leaving the rhizome behind with its terminal bud ready to carry on growth. The flower bud arises in the axil of a scale just behind the terminal bud.

Like the Lesser Celandine, the Wood Anemone is a relation of the Buttercups, being a member of the family Ranunculaceae.

### THE LESSON

**Aim.** To study the Wood Anemone in relation to the conditions of its life, and to compare it with the Lesser Celandine.

**Material.** A flower for each child. A few flowers which are forming fruits, both with the perianth and without. One or two roots, placed on the Nature Table in a glass vessel beforehand, so that the children can look at them both before and after the lesson. It is important to decide when it is justifiable to take roots. In the case of the Lesser Celandine, the plant is so prolific and hardy that six or eight roots might be used, but the Windflower has a more restricted distribution, so that it is better to have only one or two. Explain this distinction to the children.

**Introduction.** Show the class the flowers, and ask where they have seen them growing. Note that they, too, are moisture loving plants that they wilt very easily out of water, having a very delicate skin that will not prevent water from evaporating from stem, flowers and bracts. Draw attention to the similarity between this and the Celandine in habitat and flowering time. This will raise two questions:

- (1) Do they form seeds in the same way?
- (2) Have they any storage organ to help

them to flower so early, and to spread the plants vegetatively?

**I.** The examination of the flower will proceed on the same lines as in the case of the Lesser Celandine and points of similarity and difference will be noticed and discussed.

**II.** These points might be tabulated on the blackboard as they arise, somewhat as follows:

	<i>Wood Anemone</i> <i>Lesser Celandine</i>	
Time of Flowering	April May	March to May. (later in the north in both cases)
Habitat	Damp places Woods the fets clearings	Damp places Woods beside ditches, and hedges, under the trees and in open damp fields
The flower	A single cup 5 or 6 perianth leaves  White and mauve Many stamens	Similar 3 to 5 green sepals 7 to 10 petals Shining gold  Many stamens, at first bending over stigmas
Insect visitors	Any actually seen	Same, e.g. small black flies and beetles. Bees
Fruits formed	Yes The perianth leaves remain until the fruits are nearly ripe The fruit is	Yes The petals and sepals drop off, as soon as the stigmas have received pollen

*Wood Anemone Lesser Celandine*

bent like the flower. Several free carpels form nutlets. The stalk bends down and hides the fruit under the leaves till it is ripe, when it straightens out again. In the same way several free carpels form nutlets.

**III.** The flower may be drawn as another instance of a simple open cup which allows any insect to come and feed on pollen, on the chance of some being carried to other flowers.

Seedlings found

Yes, often outside the patch of plants

Storage organs

A creeping underground stem or rhizome. One flower formed just behind the rhizome.

A root tuber or special kind of root, growing from the nodes in the axil of leaves. The stems bend down and the tubers root. Pups grow upwards and form new plants. In Phil. potato.

Try in both cases to get the children to count the numbers of fruit in a measured area, e.g. a square yard. The difficulty that there are so few insects to bring pollen and so ripen the seeds makes the vegetative propagation of new plants peculiarly important in both cases.



## XIV. LIFE IN A POND



## POINTS FOR THE TEACHER'S CONSIDERATION

**T**HI study of life in a pond gives us a glimpse of a strange little world almost self-contained presenting in miniature many of the problems which the creatures in the much wider regions of land and ocean have to solve. It is true that the pond receives its water supply from outside, — from rain and drainage — and that the organic matter (such as leaf mould and animal manure from the fields) which drains into it provides food for the minute, invisible organisms, especially bacteria, which in turn feed the larger animals or provide for some of the needs of the water weeds. It is also true that the animals and plants in a pond depend upon the outside atmosphere for the air they breathe. But in a pond they live at such close quarters that their inter-dependence, and the inter-action of their lives, are more readily grasped than perhaps is the case in any other kind of community.

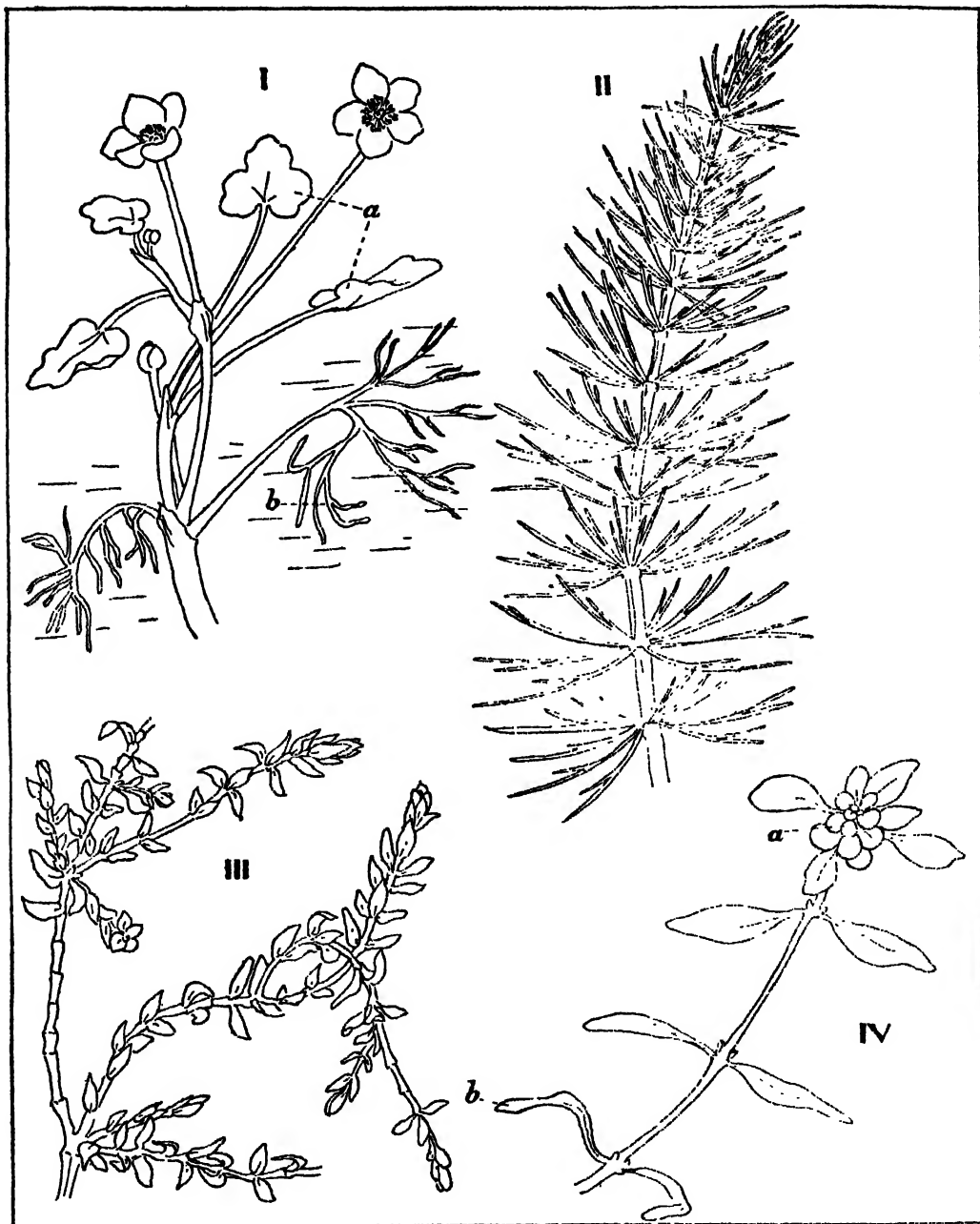
Both animals and plants must be able to obtain food, oxygen for breathing, shelter and safety from enemies, and in particular, protection for their young stages. In many

cases it is also important that they shall have some means of protection or escape, if the pond dries up.

Broadly speaking, animals feed on some of them directly as do the pond tadpoles and larvae of some kinds of beetles. Others feed on animals which have been reared on a vegetarian diet. They can feed only on substances which have formed part of an animal or plant body, or as we say, on organic substances. They obtain by this means energy for their activities which has been stored up by plants as it radiated from the sun.

Plants obtain some of their nutrition by the activity of their green parts, which take up the sun's energy, and use it to convert the gas carbon dioxide, with water, into carbohydrate food material. They are to this extent independent of animals. But they also require nitrogen in the form of nitrates. This they obtain through the agency of bacteria, which obtain it partly directly from the air, and partly by decomposing the dead bodies and waste matter (excretions) of animals. Thus plants take toll of

PLATE VIII



PLANTS SUITABLE FOR THE AQUARIUM

- I. WATER CROWFOOT (*Ranunculus aquatilis*), natural size: *a*, floating leaves; *b*, submerged leaves.  
 II. HORNWORT (*Ceratophyllum*),—branch, reduced size.  
 III. CANADIAN WATERWEED (*Anacharis*), natural size. The plant is dark, stiff and glossy  
 IV. STARWORT (*Callitriche*), natural size: *a*, floating leaves; *b*, submerged leaves.

the animals in water. (The bacteria themselves are regarded as plants.) Since the bodies of plants, eaten by animals, contain nitrates, this series of inter-actions between plants and animals is referred to as the *nitrogen cycle*. This cycle operates everywhere, but is particularly clearly seen in a pond.

Yet another interchange takes place between plants and animals in a pond. Both require oxygen to breathe, and both obtain it in solution in the water. Much of this oxygen passes into the water from the air above through disturbances of the surface, and through rain. In running water there is more possibility of admixture with air than in still water. But supplies obtained in this way are small. It so happens, however, that in manufacturing carbohydrates, plants give out oxygen as a by-product. (This is a distinct process, in no way connected with their breathing.) This can be used by animals for breathing. Now both animals and plants give out carbon dioxide as a result of breathing, and this is available for plants, which need it for the making of carbohydrates (*photosynthesis*). Thus there is a second cycle of inter-action, the *oxygen-carbon-dioxide cycle*. This also applies to terrestrial life but is very clearly seen in a pond.

Now it will be seen that, under these circumstances, the problem of obtaining sufficient oxygen may be a difficulty for plants and animals, and so may the question of the nitrate supply. Hence, if a pond community is to flourish, there must not be too many animals to feed on the plants. The number of plants is less important, since they are contributing both oxygen and nitrates to the animals. The proper relation between the two is referred to as *the balance of life*.

Since the oxygen supply dissolved in the water is limited, it will be seen that if some of the animals can obtain oxygen from the atmosphere, it will lessen the demand upon the water, and so make it possible for a larger number of animals to dwell there.

This adjustment has actually been made. It has been seen already that the pond snails have developed a breathing system suitable for dry land, and have then gone back to live in water, but that they still come to the surface to breathe. All insects found in ponds are also immigrants from land. So, too, are the adult frogs and newts which return to the ponds for the breeding season. Some of the insects have become adapted to breathing under water, and thus they use the dissolved oxygen, but others have retained the habit of breathing atmospheric oxygen and come to the surface, as the snail does, to breathe.

Here a word must be said about the importance of the *surface film*. Owing to the difference in tension between the water and the air, the surface of the water is stretched, so as to form a thin water membrane so strong, that by filling a glass of water from a tap very gently, one can fill it beyond the surface, the surface film preventing it from spilling. Many pond creatures are able to glide on to the surface film and suspend themselves from the underside of it, sometimes by means of a special structure. But the pond snails suspend themselves by the foot, while they penetrate the film at one small spot and protrude a short tube or valve, into which they can suck air without the water entering. This property of the surface film, and the delicate devices adopted for taking advantage of it, are of the utmost importance in enabling these animals to obtain fresh air for breathing.

Of the animals chosen for study in this year's scheme, the pond snails, water beetles and their larvae, obtain atmospheric oxygen; the dragon-fly larvae (except possibly in the last stages after the wings are formed) and "caddisworms" obtain oxygen dissolved in the water.

It is unlikely that enough Great Water Beetles and their larvae, or large dragon-fly larvae can be obtained for a whole class to work upon at once; so that these creatures would be watched and drawn by small groups at a time. If possible, whenever such

a wonderful event occurs, everybody in turn should have an opportunity of seeing the dragon fly emerge from its larval skin and change into the brilliant, dazzling fly. Small dragon-fly larvae are generally plentiful, and caddisworms and pond snails can be studied at the same time, so that in the course of a few weeks' study the whole class becomes familiar with them all. The detailed suggestions which follow are for small groups of children or for those working singly, but before beginning classroom work, it is advisable if possible to take the children to see a pond and to do some collecting under the teacher's guidance. Twenty children make a large enough group to take at once, unless the teacher can have the assistance of another teacher, as the excitement is usually great. The rest of the class will need to be given work to do in school, and the teacher will need to take two expeditions, spending about three-quarters of an hour at the pond. She may have to make other visits herself to collect additional material, and she will certainly need to make a preliminary visit.

### THE LESSON

The children should be divided into groups of four or five, each group having a leader responsible for keeping them together. One net and one jam jar might be provided for each group and two or three small tubes or potted meat jars for creatures which need to be isolated, or instance, beetles and their larvae and dragon fly larvae. Nets can be made of fine net or muslin, or loose meshed canvas, stitched on to a ring of copper wire bent into shape with the ends twisted tightly with pliers, and firmly bound round a walking stick or broom handle. It is advisable, however, to have one or two nets with a really strong frame (which dealers in naturalist materials will supply) so that they can be worked in forcibly amongst the roots of the weeds to dislodge beetles and large larvae clinging to them. Jam jars should have a string

handle firmly attached to the neck, or one suggestion I have seen is to knit or net bags of macramé thread into which the jars will fit, this lessens the risk of breakage.

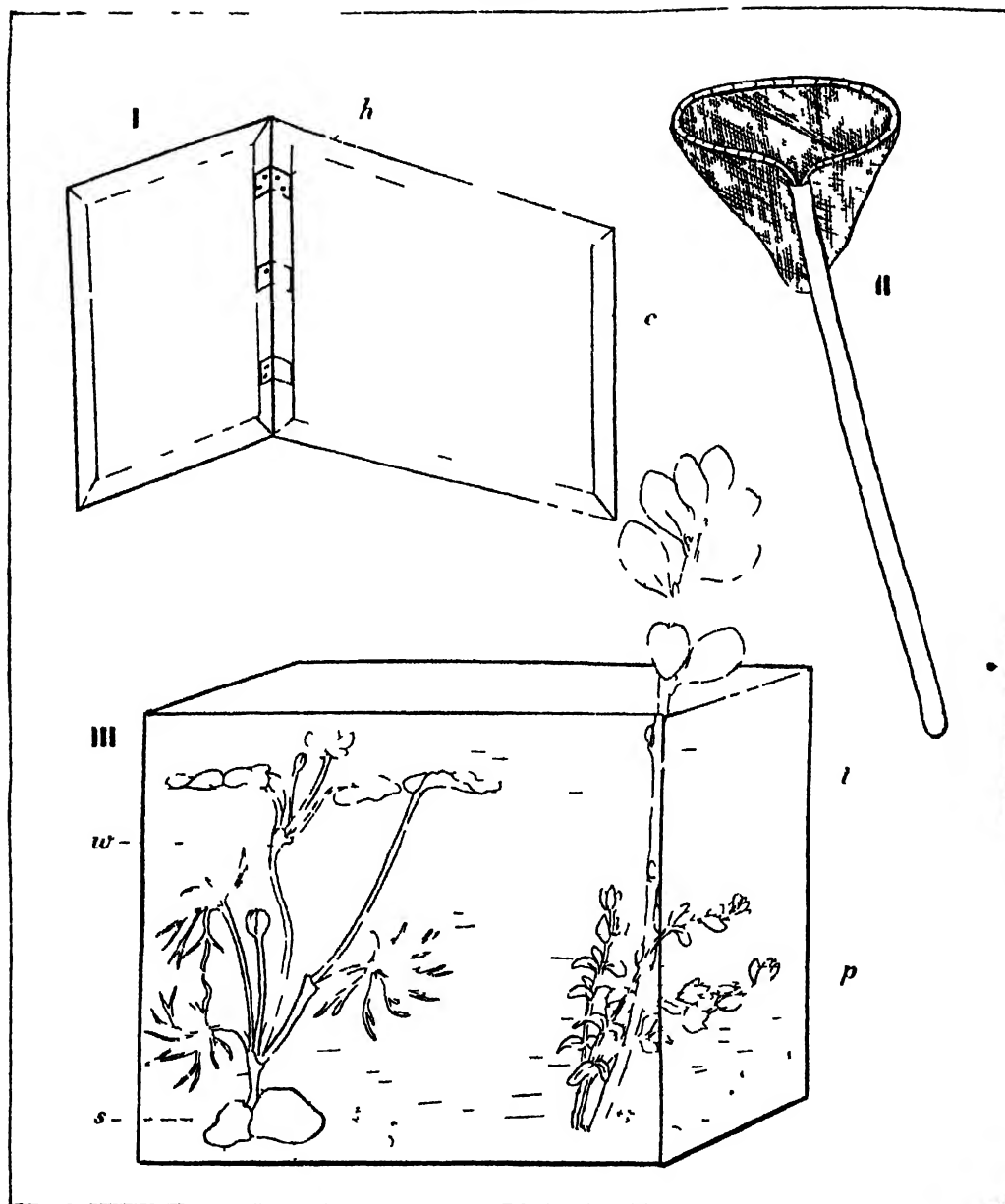
On arrival at the pond collect the children for a short talk on the conditions. Notice its aspect, whether it is sunny or shady, sheltered from winds or exposed. Then notice the plants growing round the edge, the bushes and undergrowth, then the water-loving plants such as Willow-herb, Figwort, Ragged Robin, then those which actually have their roots in water, such as Flags, Rushes and Reeds, then the floating Pondweeds (duckweeds and their like weeds) and plants with floating leaves, such as the Great Pond Weed and Water Crowfoot or Buttercup. Is the pond stagnant, or are there bubbles indicating springs? Are there trickles of water indicating drainage through it?

Give the children some instructions as to the use of the net. Before beginning to dip they should first of all watch the pond for a minute or two for any signs of living things. Newts, beetles and pond snails may be seen coming up to breathe, tadpoles and minnows or sticklebacks may be seen if there is a shallow margin, dragon flies, especially the small blue ones, darting and hovering over the surface or resting on reeds, many flies hovering about, pond skaters sliding quickly, and little steel blue shining Whirligig Beetles dancing their rounds over the surface film of the water. The children should then be shown how to dip a net gently so as not to disturb the surface, or the creatures below it, more than is necessary, and to drag it gently, along just below the surface. They may then dip more deeply, and push the net in amongst the rooted weeds, but not violently or ruthlessly, being careful not to break the plants or stir up the mud. A little disturbance is inevitable but there is no need for the pond to look as if a party of hooligans had been visiting it.

The teacher will go from group to group, advising and showing how to use the net,



PLATE IX.



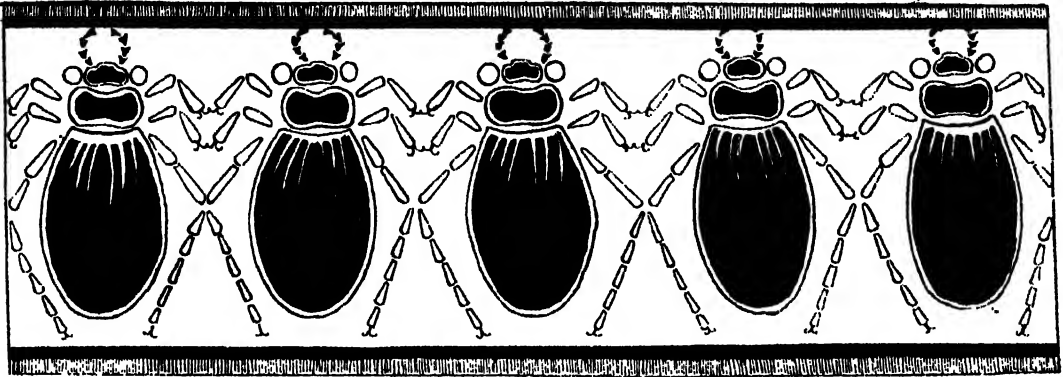
SITTING UP AN AQUARIUM

I. Screen having one long and one short side, with dark green casement cloth (c) stretched across it with drawing pins. II. Small net 3 in. in diameter for lifting out specimens or waste food. III. Aquarium set up as shown. Water Crowfoot (p) Canadian Pond weed—attached to stones or a piece of lead & leafy twig, for dragon fly may fly and caddis fly larvae to crawl out upon. B. Tank should not be overcrowded with weed.

and restraining too much impetuosity if accidents are to be avoided. With a very excitable class on a first visit, it is a good plan to have only one net, and let each child use it while the teacher controls its use. She will identify the animals found and have

the jars half-filled with water and a little weed. On the return to school she will supervise the sorting out of the animals and their disposal in the homes which should be already provided for them some days before so that the necessary weeds are established.

## XV. THE GREAT WATER BEETLE



**A**IM.—To study the habits of *Dytiscus* (or *Dytiscus*) *marginalis*, the Great Water Beetle. (There are other beetles with the same English name.)

**Material.**—For a small group of children, a glass jam jar or small deep rectangular tank, having 6 in. or more of water, containing one Water Beetle, or a pair (be sure they are male and female, or one will be killed). Another jar with a larva. Rooted Canadian Pondweed, Starwort or Water Crowfoot.

**Food:** very small earthworms, tadpoles, "blood worms" (found in water butts), occasionally scraps of raw meat, or blow-fly larvae, "gentles."

**The study.**—Let the children notice all they can about the appearance of the adult beetles. They are about  $1\frac{1}{2}$  in. long, with a horn-covered body, shaped rather like a

shallow boat, flat on the back, and rowed along by a pair of very long legs which are fringed with bristles to give them a blade like an oar. These move quickly. They can also be used to steady the beetle when it is resting in one position. There are two other pairs of less conspicuous legs. The first pair are very short, turned forwards, and serve to hold its victim while the beetle tears it to pieces with its sawlike jaws, which project just under the head. (There are three pairs, two with branches, called *palps*, which serve as organs of taste and touch, but the details will not be distinguished by children. The palps may be seen quivering just below the head, however.) A pair of feelers project from the angles of the head beside the eyes. These feelers are finely jointed. The legs are also jointed.

Three regions of the body can be distinguished—the head, thorax and abdomen. The legs are joined to the lower side of the

thorax, the hard wing covers to the back of the second joint or segment, and the thin, delicate wings, folded under these covers, to the third segment. (The back is covered by the wing covers, but if a dead beetle is turned on its back, the abdomen is seen to be jointed. There is no need to trouble children with these details, however, unless they notice and ask about them.) The wing covers are grooved in the female, smooth in the male; there is a yellow band round their margins. The male is also distinguished by a pair of round pads on the front legs.

The beetle swims with vigorous, long jerks if disturbed, or if it makes a sudden dart at a victim; but if left alone it is to be found for long periods resting in an oblique position, balanced in the water by its backward-directed long legs. From time to time it will come to the surface of the water and project the tip of the abdomen, raising the wing covers slightly, so that a stream of air can pass under the wings to the paired breathing pores (*spiracles*) situated on the back. A flat bubble of air can often be seen just beyond the wing covers at the end of the body. Children will notice the constant return to the surface, but it is so different from any mode of breathing known to them that it is impossible to infer what is happening. It has, however, been proved that this method of breathing is actually taking place.

In addition to observing these movements, it will be seen that the beetle cannot remain at the bottom except by swimming about or by clinging to weeds. It floats to the top. It is therefore, like the snails, lighter than water.

The children should time the visits to the top and notice the longest and shortest times that the beetle stays below without breathing.

It is a voracious feeder and the sight is not pleasant; but since children like to keep pond creatures at home, it is important that they shall realise that they *must* be fed on the right kind of food. In school,

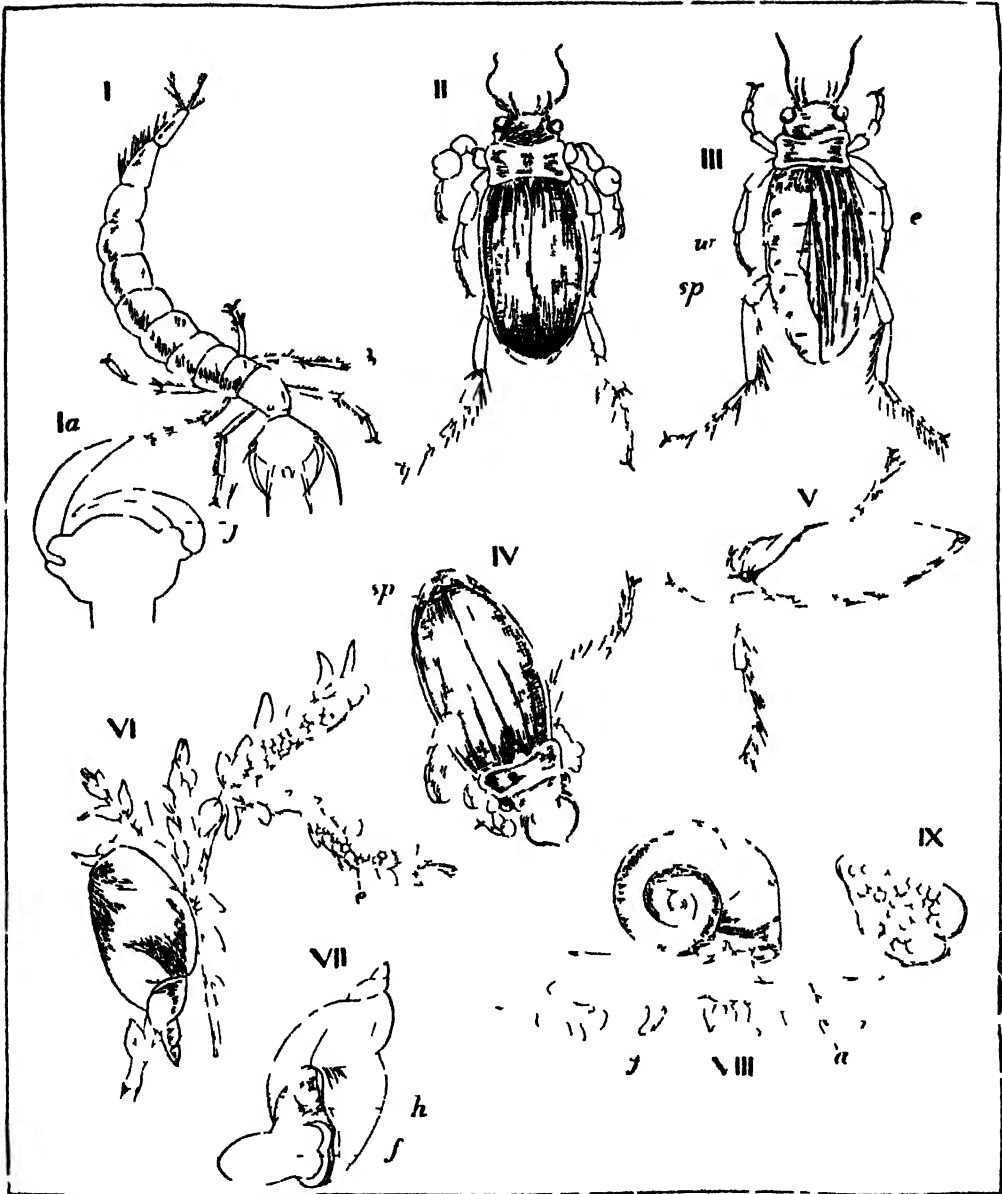
however, the teacher may prefer to feed them herself when the children are not present.

The children may be directed by means of short written instructions and questions, e.g.:

- (1) Notice all the movements the beetle can make. Try to draw it in a resting position. Draw one of the long legs which serve as oars.
- (2) Count (by the clock) how often it comes to the top. Try to see exactly what it does.
- (3) Is it heavier or lighter than water? How do you know?
- (4) Draw the back of the female beetle to show how it is different from the male.

**The larva.**—The larva can be watched and its movements recorded in the same way. As it is a voracious feeder, it needs to be supplied daily, at intervals, with several small earthworms, "blood worms" or tadpoles. Since it is covered by a skin hardened with *chitin*, a horny substance, it can grow only by shedding its skin periodically. The children should watch for this process. The cast skin should be placed in a watch glass standing on dark paper, where the details of the structure can be clearly seen. It will be found that the skin is split down the back, near the head end. The fine, piercing jaws, delicate legs and jointed body are all clearly indicated in the cast skin. The body is long and slender, of a sandy colour, with a broad, almost triangular head, having small black eyes (really a cluster) at each corner of the broad front, and a pair of narrow, curved, sicklelike jaws. These are in reality both piercing organs and tubes which can suck the blood of a victim. When in use, they fit into the corners of the mouth, which is kept tightly locked, and very rarely, if ever, opened, all the food passing as juice through the jaw tubes, which are pierced at each end.

When the larva comes to the surface to breathe it presses against the surface film

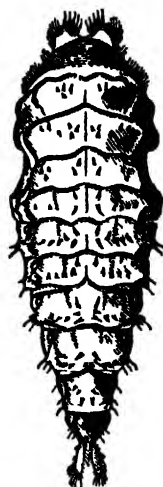


GREAT WATER BEETLE (DYTISCUS). I. Larva, a hind of larva with spiracles at wing base (clypeus). II. Adult beetle with wings spread (elytra). III. Adult beetle with wings folded. IV. Adult beetle with wings spread, showing the underside. V. Detail of head and antennae. VI. Snail with body extended from shell. VII. Snail with head and antennae extended. VIII. Common Freshwater Snail (Lymnaea stagnalis) with head and antennae extended. IX. Mass of eggs laid in a jar of water.

two narrow, leaflike *styles*, attached to the last segment and these act as a sucker and keep it suspended there. In order to catch its prey it lurks in the shadow of weeds with its jaws open. Its sandy colouring and still posture make it inconspicuous, when a small worm or soft bodied insect comes near the larva it makes a sudden dart and closes its jaws upon the prey, then sucks the juices and releases the shrivelled remains. Its position head downwards in the water with the body curved the head slightly bent downwards and the long thin legs and open jaws outstretched is very characteristic. If disturbed, it moves through the water by a sudden violent contraction of the whole body which shoots it some distance. It is so quick that the actual detail of the movement cannot be easily detected.

If full grown larvae are obtained they will require soil if they are to continue their development. The best way to arrange this is by placing an earthenware saucer of water in a convenient case (one with glass and perforated zinc sides and a zinc base is useful) and surrounding the saucer with a layer of soil up to the rim and sloping upwards slightly to the sides of the case. Close cut turf can cover the soil which must be kept damp. If the whole can be arranged in a perforated zinc tray which can be slipped out at the front, this can be sunk in water to moisten it when necessary.

Stones and weeds must be arranged at one side of the saucer to allow the larva to creep out. One or two bits of twig may be placed slanting in the saucer, so that they project over the edge. These can be weighted with small stones. A simple way to make a "home" for a larva about to pupate, is to obtain an earthenware plant pot saucer or small enamel or earthenware dish (the little dishes called "nappies" are suitable). Make a small perforated zinc tray to fit one side and fill it with soil covering it with short moss or close-cut turf. Fill the dish with water and fit up as described. Cover with a glass plate. When the larva has found its



PUPA OF DYTICUS  
DORSAL VIEW  
(From S. Hodge)

way into the soil it will be necessary only to keep enough water in the dish to keep the soil damp. The larva will creep into the soil, make itself a hollow chamber, and there become quiescent cast its larval skin for the last time, and become shorter. It lies in a curved position in the cell it has made, while the body is making internal changes and then the pupa splits its skin and the perfect insect emerges. It remains in the soil for some time before making its way back to the pond. Its skin is white and soft

and must become hard and dark coloured.

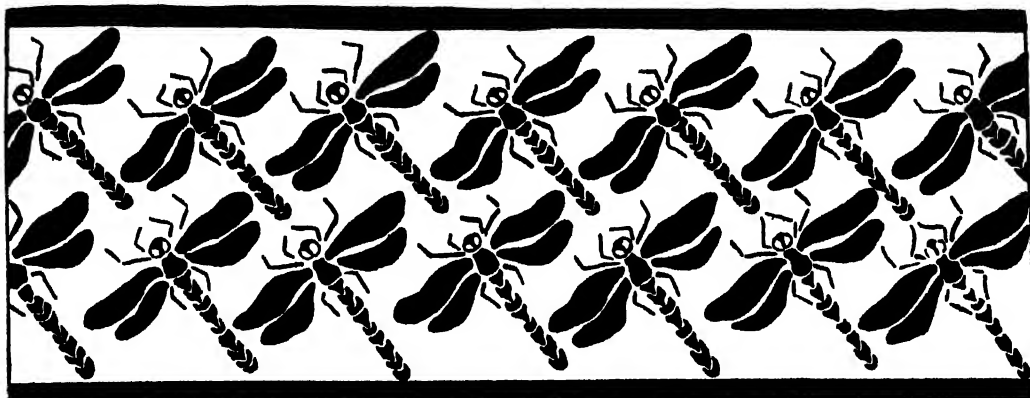
If the pupa is formed in the middle of summer the stage may last only a week or two but if towards the autumn it will remain a pupa till the following spring - so this is another case of hibernation. The female beetle inserts her eggs in incisions in the stems of weeds. She makes the incision with a special sharp instrument enclosed in the abdomen. Thus the Great Water Beetle is an instance of an insect highly adapted for a life on land returning to the water and spending the whole of its life there except for the pupal period yet remaining dependent on the air above the pond for breathing. In this feature the Great Water Beetle resembles the Pond Snail which also exhibits no re-adaptation to breathing under water.



FEMALE DYTICUS LAYING EGGS

(From Ragnabari)

## XVI. DRAGON FLIES



**A**IM—To study the habits of the larvae, and to watch the development and emergence of the adult insect

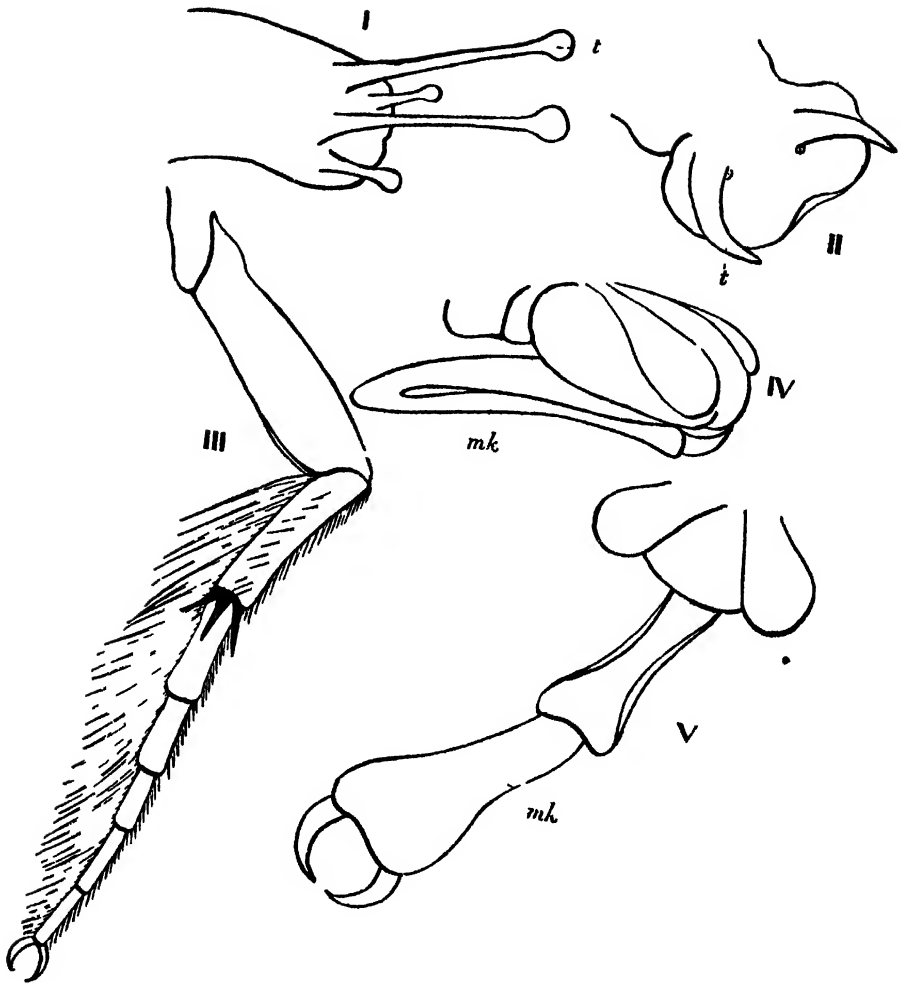
**Material.** The green larvae of the Demoiselle dragon flies, which are plentiful in most ponds. One or two larvae of the great Blue Dragon fly (known popularly as the "Horse stinger") These can be obtained from a dealer if they do not occur locally

**The study.**—A group of children might have two or three of the small green larvae in a dish. If a large one is available, it can be housed in a glass jam jar. Weed should be provided for shelter and for the insects to hold on to. The weed too helps to aerate the water.

The children should watch the movements and try to draw the larvae in characteristic positions. They should also be on the alert for the casting of the skin, when the body assumes a much brighter colour, especially in the large larvae. They should notice whether the insect has to cling to weeds in order to remain at the bottom, and whether it ever comes to the surface and projects any part of the body. They will find in this case also that the larva does not project the body,

it is therefore fair to assume that it is in some way capable of breathing under water. In the Demoiselle larvae, the three thin, narrow plates projecting from the end of the body are able to breathe in to take dissolved oxygen out of the water. In the case of the large larvae, water is sucked into the end of the food tube and then forcibly expelled, and from this water the walls of the food canal are able to extract oxygen, giving up carbon dioxide. It is sufficient to tell the children that the larvae breathe through the end of the body, and that in the Demoiselle, the three leaflike plates are connected with breathing.

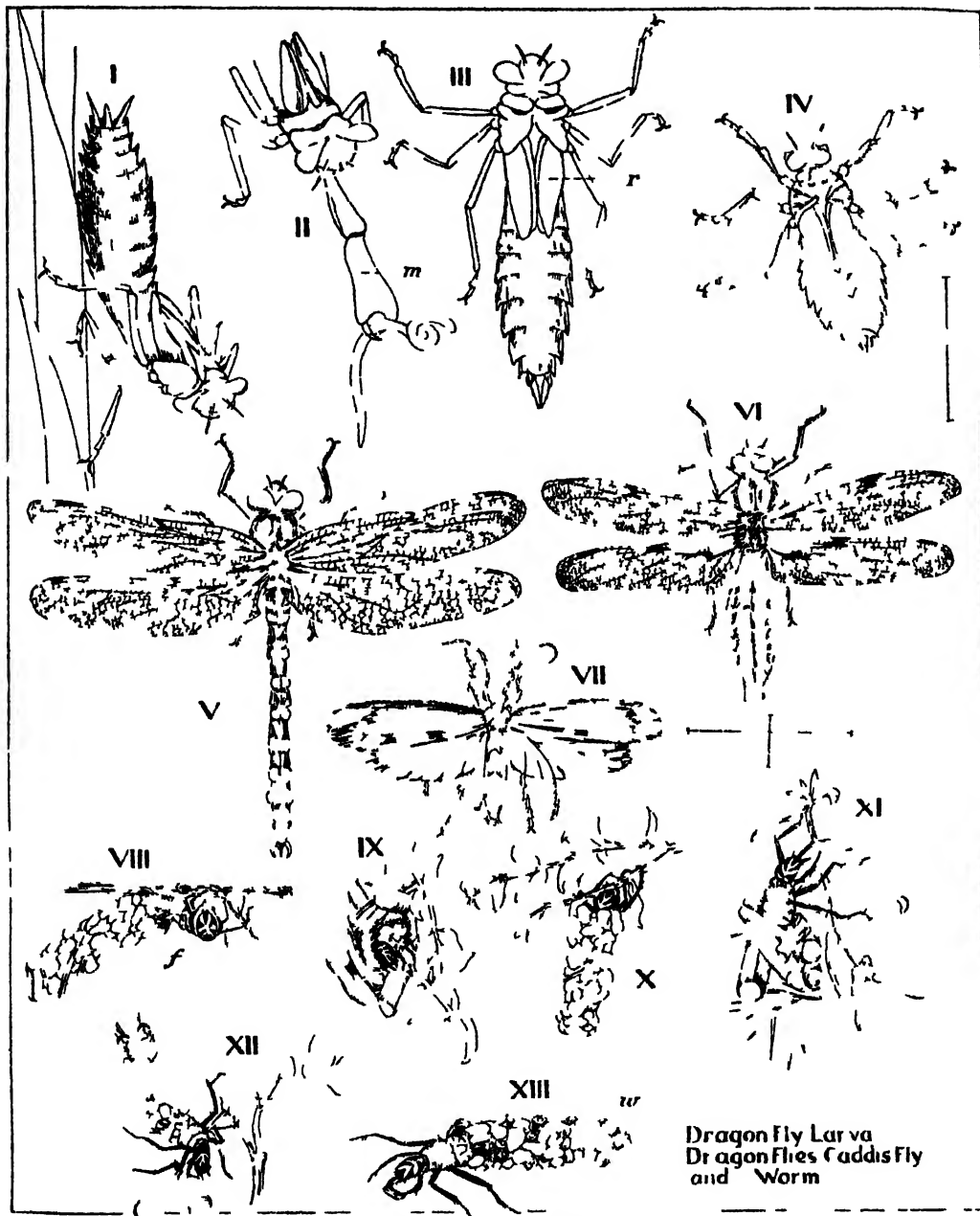
The Demoiselle larvae will be recognised when they are captured amongst weeds by their green or brownish green, nearly transparent body, long and narrow with a hammer-shaped head and large eyes. They wriggle in the net and usually suggest to the children the idea of shrimps, but as soon as they are put into water and dart away it will be seen that they are insects. They swim by curving the body vigorously from side to side. They vary from  $\frac{3}{4}$  in. to about 1 in. long, and the larger ones will be seen to have two pairs of small wings already developing. The body is divided into seg-



SKETCHES FOR THE BLACKBOARD

CARDINAL SNAIL (*Helix*) I. Head with tentacles extended (*t*)  
 COMMON POND SNAIL (*Lymnaea stagnalis*) II. Head of snail, *t* tentacles  
 DYTISKID III. Hind leg used for swimming.  
 DRAGON FLY (*Anisoptera*) IV. Head showing mask folded (*mk*) V. Head with mask extended (*mk*)

# PLATE XII



Dragon Fly Larva  
Dragon Flies Caddis Fly  
and Worm

DRAGON FLY LARVA I Full grown larva of *Aeschna* (nat. size) awaiting prey. II Capture of prey and extended (m)  
III Full grown larva of *Aeschna* - rudiments of two pairs of wing IV Larva of *Libellula* (nat. size)

DRAGON FLIES V Dragon Fly - *Aeschna* - male VI Dragon Fly - *Libellula*

CADDIS FLY VII Caddis Fly (line to right shows nat. size)

CADDISWORM VIII Under surface of the water breathing of filaments for respiration IX Feeding X clinging to  
weeds XI crawling over weeds XII Constructing a case of bits of leaves XIII Worm and completed case of a caddis  
worm and bits of watercress (w)



ments and has three pairs of short, weak legs. At the end of the abdomen are the three projecting breathing leaflets already described. They are pretty, delicate-looking creatures, but their habits are voracious. They lurk amongst the weeds, sometimes stalking their prey, sometimes waiting until it is within jaw's length, for they have a peculiar extensible jaw which can be stretched out to almost half the length of the body. This is known as a *mask*, for when folded it completely covers the under side of the head and part of the thorax. It is hinged to the mouth and has another hinge or joint, so that the first part can be bent backwards under the body, and the second joint can be bent forwards on that again. This second joint is broad in front and bears a pair of pincerlike jaws. As the victim comes within reach the apparatus is shot forward, the jaws open and suddenly close upon it. At the same time the mask is retracted, bringing the prey close to the mouth, where it is torn up and pushed in.

The large larva may be  $1\frac{1}{2}$  or  $2\frac{1}{2}$  in. long, and as thick as a child's finger. It is a dark, muddy colour, except just after shedding its skin, when it is a bright, translucent green. It stalks with slow, stealthy movements, or clings lurking amongst the weeds. In captivity it will eat eight or more tadpoles a day (throwing away the crumpled skins), and seems always ready for small worms. It grows, like the small larvae, by casting the skin, and then expanding while the new skin is still soft. It can be seen to draw the last segments of the abdomen in and out regularly, while at rest, and this is a definite breathing movement; in reality it is drawing in water. Sometimes, if the larva is taken out and then put back into a dish of water, it squirts a distinct jet of water from the end of the body, making a little waterspout.

There is no definite pupal stage in the Dragon flies, but the wings gradually develop and internal changes take place. When the large larva is ready to change into the fly, the eyes become brighter. In

the case of the small larvae, the body seems to become more opaque and solid-looking, and then the larvae are seen to be climbing up twigs out of the water. Twigs or reeds must always be fixed steadily in the dish, so that the larvae can climb out.

In both cases the skin splits down the back of the thorax, the body inside swells and widens the crack, which extends further, allowing the head and wings to be freed. Then the legs are drawn out by strong movements of the parts already free, and finally by holding on to the old skin with the legs, the abdomen is curved away from it and drawn out; cf. the emergence of a seedling stem. The larva stretches the abdomen and curves it away from the old skin.

But the body is still compressed and the wings crumpled. In a short time the wings can be seen to expand, and they begin to attain their iridescent colouring. The body and wings still take some time to harden, and it is probable that a pumping of liquid takes place to distend and shape the wings and abdomen, and that later this liquid dries up. Liquid has been observed dropping away from the abdomen as it gradually gets thinner. The whole process takes about three hours in the large Dragon fly, a shorter time in the small ones. Towards the end of this time the abdomen assumes its brilliant colouring, but it has frequently been observed, at any rate with the small Dragon flies, that if the change takes place indoors, in limited light, they do not attain their full depth or brilliance of colour.

The colour of the Demoiselles is a deep azure, with iridescent wings shot with purple and green. The large Dragon fly is a deep, dark greenish blue, with bronze and gold lights in the sun, yellow spots on each side of the abdomen in the female and green in the male. The eyes are a deep greenish blue. It is curious to see the flies resting for a long time, especially as the light fails, apparently asleep but with wide-open, staring eyes. They feed on the wing like swallows or hawks, with a swift, strong flight. The two pairs of wings are long and

narrow, presenting a long cutting edge to the air.

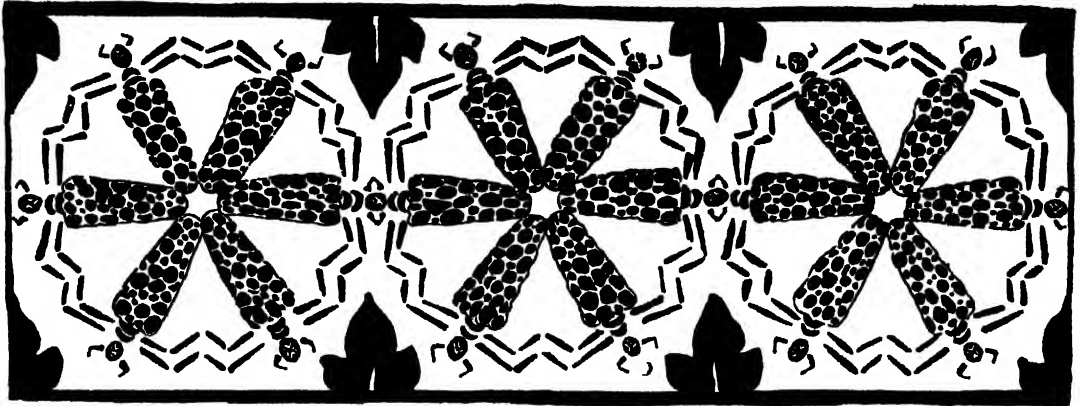
The small Demoiselles dart lightly but with equal purpose, over the ponds, coming to rest on reeds, sometimes hovering over the water as if suspended there, for in strong light the transparent wings are often difficult to see. The eggs are dropped into the water as the insects hover over it.

There are many other British Dragon flies, one a deep ruby colour, about an inch long (its Greek scientific name, *Pyrosoma*, means "fire-body").

A larva that occurs fairly often is a curious short, thick-bodied creature about an inch

long, very broad, dull, muddy greenish-brown in colour, and often covered with particles of mud. Very short threadlike weeds may be growing on it. These foreign bodies serve to conceal it still further from its victims. It has the characteristic mask, otherwise it might not be recognised as a relation of the others. This larva turns into a rather thickset Dragon fly with less brilliant and attractive colouring, and with proportionately shorter wings than the others described. It will be noticed that the larvae of both the Dragon fly and the Beetle, owing to their shape and colouring, are difficult to discern amongst the stems and narrow leaves of the water weeds.

## XVII. CADDISWORMS



EVERYBODY knows the quaint little creatures called Caddisworms that carry their homes about with them, and utilise many kinds of materials to construct them. They are distant relations of the Dragon flies, for they are not worms at all, but the larvae of four-winged flies, which may be seen from May onwards resting amongst the grass and rushes, or often swept away on the current of small streams into which they have fallen after

having laid their eggs. They are frail greyish, dull-looking flies, about 1 to 1½ in. across the wings, with long, delicate antennae, thin legs, a thin body and transparent wings.

The larvae of each kind, for they are very numerous, choose their own type of material for their tubes or cases, and different species are found in running water and in stagnant ponds. A few sweeps of the net will be almost sure to secure some of them; they may be narrow tubes of sand, ½ in to ¾ in. long,

or they may be broad and irregular in shape, with small stones and shells stuck all over them, or with short lengths of stalks and bits of green leaves clipped off by the sharp little jaws. Some of the larvae make their case of two oval pieces of leaf stuck together, so that it is quite flat. Others make a raft by sticking on two or three pieces of twig much longer than the tube. In the net they will show no sign of life, though on looking into the case the insect can be seen withdrawn inside it, but almost as soon as they are put into water, a small, dark, horny head will peer over the edge, then a bunch of claws will emerge, and finally, three pairs of legs will project fully and the creature will begin either to swim or crawl. The small kind of Caddisworm which makes a mud tube will swim actively, carrying its shell horizontally, and may be seen to chase such things as very young May-fly larvae, "blood worms" and other soft creatures.

The best way to keep Caddisworms is in a saucer or shallow bowl with a little of the pond mud and some floating weed. They live chiefly upon the vegetation and upon very minute animals found in the mud or on the surfaces of the weed, so that these will need renewing from time to time.

**The study.**—Let the children have a saucer containing several Caddisworms, preferably of different kinds. Let them watch and notice how the Caddisworms move, and how rapidly they withdraw if touched. The children can see the horny head and three pairs of legs, the first pair very short.

Notice that after feeding for some days, the Caddisworms withdraw into their cases and do not again emerge. If the case is then closely examined, without being disturbed, it will be found that the insect has anchored it to a weed, or to the saucer, by fine, tough threads. It has also closed the opening of the tube where the head emerged, or perhaps both ends, by a sort of fine grating of thread, or by a bit of leaf. When this occurs the Caddisworm has passed into the pupal stage, and the adult fly will soon

appear. Provide some little twigs for the fly to cling to, or it may fall into the water and be drowned. The eggs are laid on weeds in a loop of jelly, something like those of the snail, but not glued down along their length.

The teacher might extract three or four larvae from their cases by gently prodding them from the back with a bristle, or a small pinhead, when they will leave the cases. Let the children see that they are soft-bodied, being protected from their enemies by the case. The body is jointed, and provided with tufts of white threads, by means of which they breathe,—for they are able to take oxygen from the water. A current of water constantly sweeps through the tube (which, it will be noticed, is open at both ends), and the dissolved air is used for breathing.

A little behind the head (on the fourth segment, or first abdominal segment) are three little knobs, which are pressed against the tube to keep the Caddisworm in place. On the last segment are two tiny hooks, by which it is also hooked in.

Now put a variety of material into a saucer—a little fine sandy mud, some leaves, some water weeds, with stalks, a little very fine gravel—and put the larvae into it. Place this on the Nature Table and let the children have the opportunity of looking at it from time to time. The larvae will soon begin to select material, bite off the sizes they require, and make themselves new cases, which they stick on the body with their jaws.

**Experimental work.**—In the case of all these larvae, it is possible to test by very simple means their responses to light, sound, vibration and touch. Part of the home in which they are kept can be darkened, and they can be watched to see if they prefer a light or a dark place. A flashlight can be used. The dish can be tapped. Noises can be made near it,—clapping, ringing a bell, blowing a whistle. They can be gently touched with a fine paint brush. The hand

## SECOND YEAR'S COURSE OF NATURE STUDY 391

can be suddenly extended over the dish. In each case the response can be noticed. It is probable that the larvae of the Beetle and Dragon fly find their food chiefly by smell, but they seem to see any creature which comes close to them and to distinguish between light and darkness. All respond very quickly if touched.

**Class summary.**—It is well to be sure that the children have really understood what they have seen. When each group in turn

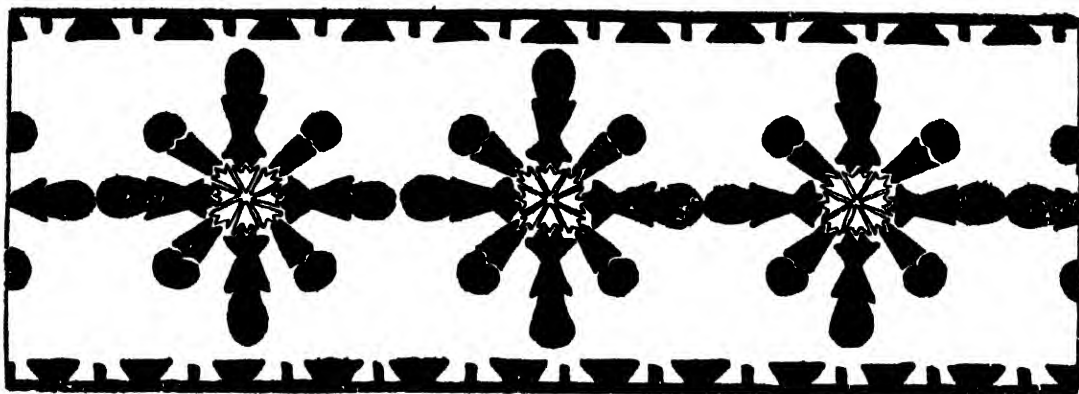
has been able to observe the larvae of the Dragon fly and Water Beetle, and the Caddisworms, it is desirable to devote one period to getting from the class an account of all they have seen, then any further explanations which seem necessary might be given by the teacher, and some of the problems of a pond might be considered. It is a good plan to put the account together under definite headings, and finally to make a tabulated blackboard summary. The following may be a guide:

	<i>Great Water Beetle</i>	<i>Beetle Larva</i>	<i>Dragon Fly Larva</i>	<i>Caddisworm</i>
1. Movement.	Rows by means of 3rd pair of legs, which are like oars.	Jerks the body violently to swim. Often crawls along stalks of weeds.	Demoiselle wriggles from side to side. Great larva jerks the body and pumps water in and out of the end of it.	Crawls on the bottom or swims.
2. Posture.	Tilts the body and balances with "oars".	Head downwards, with body curved and "tail" up.	Lurks amongst weeds, clinging with legs, or lies in mud.	Lies on the bottom in mud or clings to weeds.
3. Feeding.	Worms, tadpoles. Holds prey with front legs and tears with jaws.	Worms, tadpoles. Pierces prey with sicklelike jaws and sucks them.	Worms, tadpoles, soft insects. Shoots out mask, and catches prey in jaws, then bites and tears them up.	Weeds and very tiny animals.
4. Breathing.	Comes to surface. Tilts end of body out of water and takes air under wings, then into breathing holes there.	Comes to surface. Presses two styles against film and pushes end of body out, which sucks in air.	Breathes under water by tail plates (gills). Large one takes water into end of body and can get air from it.	Breathes under water. Has threads inside case which can take in air from water.
5. Growth.		Sheds skin.	Sheds skin.	Sheds skin. Makes a new case when old one is too small.

<i>Great Water Beetle</i>	<i>Beetle Larva</i>	<i>Dragon Fly Larva</i>	<i>Caddisworm</i>
6. What it becomes	A Water Beetle. It <i>can</i> fly but does not often, except if pond dries up.	A Dragon fly with four wings.	A Caddis fly with four wings.

The teacher who wishes to carry the study of water creatures further would find *Aquatic Insects*, by Miall, invaluable. *Life in Ponds and Streams*, by Furneaux, is very helpful in identifying animals, and has some coloured plates. *Pond Problems*, by Unwin, is full of suggestions for children's work, and for the children's own shelf. *The Pond I Know* in the same series as *The Hedge I Know* is useful.

## XVIII. WHITE DEAD NETTLE



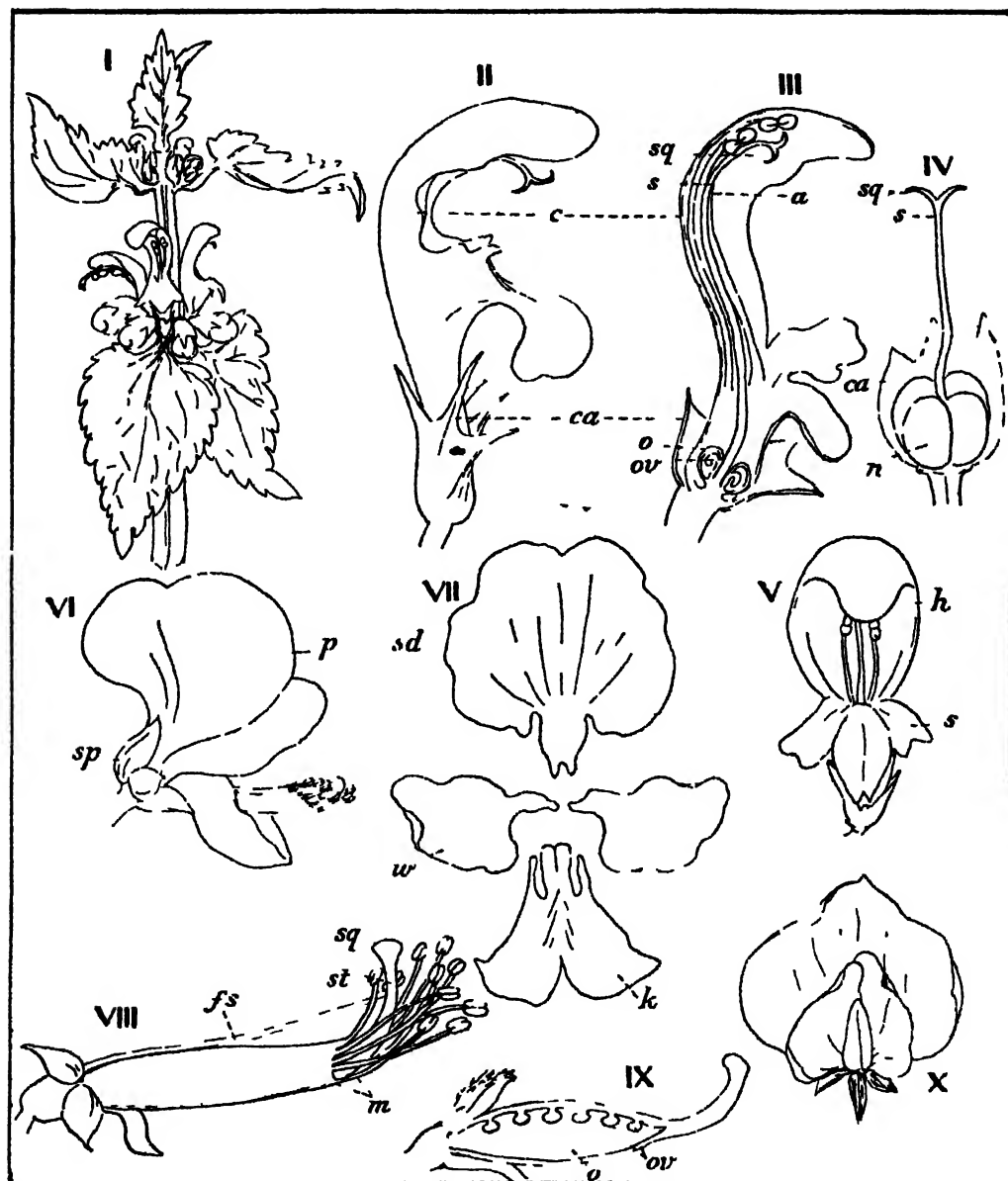
### POINTS FOR THE TEACHER'S CONSIDERATION

THE White Dead Nettle, and indeed all the members of the Labiate family (i.e. the flowers with a "lip") to which it belongs, are highly specialised for the visits of insects. Instead of the simple circular arrangement, or *radial symmetry* of the cup-shaped *Lune*, *Celandine* or tubular *Bluebell*, we have here an elaborate joined tube, with the petals drawn out into curious shapes which serve to attract insects by their conspicuousness, to protect the pollen from wind or rain, and to provide a platform on

which insects can alight. Since it would only be possible to divide the flowers into two equal halves through a medium plane passing through the back and front of the flower, this arrangement is called *bilateral symmetry*.

It will be seen that the flowers attract attention in two ways; (1) by the large number of flowers borne together on one stalk, and (2) by the circular arrangement of the flowers at each node, so placed that the white hoods radiate from the centre and form

PLATE XIII



WHITE DEAD-NETTLE I. Sh wing, a fragment of flowers and leaves. II. Sweet-pea I. view of calyx II. calyx III. Vertical section of flower s style q stigma a lunens o ovary ov ovule IV. Nodule (n) a persistent calyx V. Front view of flower showing wing standard (s) h h c VI. Side view of flower showing wing standard (s) h h c VII. Petals per tel sd standard w wings, k, keel VIII. Petals per tel h wing, fused stamens (fs) m, joined stamens st style sq stigma IX. Vertical section of ovary (o) ov, ovules X. Front view of flower.

a conspicuous ring. On examining these apparent circles closely, it will be seen that there are two distinct groups, each consisting of a central flower which is the oldest of the cluster, and paired flowers on either side,—the oldest on the outside, the youngest underneath, and the intermediate one nearest to the central flower. Seven is the usual number in each cluster. Thus there is a long flowering period, successive flowers opening while others are already forming seeds. Each corolla is held by a tubular calyx with five sharp points representing the sepals which have united to form it. The calyces from which the corolla has fallen will be seen to contain four round nutlets; these are at first green, afterwards turning black.

If the study of the flower is made in May, there is an opportunity of observing both the vigorous vegetative growth, and the long time of flowering. It will often be found that in sheltered places (and Dead Nettles usually grow on sheltered banks or at the foot) there is a second autumnal flowering period, while the related Red Dead Nettle and Henbit can be found in flower almost all the year round in open waste places and neglected gardens.

### THE LESSON

**Aim.**—To study the life and habits of the White Dead Nettle, and especially its flower.

**Material.**—An inflorescence for each child, or one between two. A plant.

**Introduction.**—If possible take the children out to see a bed of the plants in flower. Stop them some distance away, draw attention to the plants, and ask what it is that makes them notice the flowers. (The white colour; the flowers massed together; the tops of the flowers, or "hoods".) In the same way insects might notice them from a distance. At close quarters notice the free, luxuriant growth of the plants, and the general character of the inflorescence, with the youngest clusters at the top, and each

cluster having flowers of different ages. Look for fruits (nutlets: the children will probably call them seeds, but actually there is a hard pericarp). Look for seedlings. If there is any cleared ground near, e.g. a garden bed, they are almost certain to be present in considerable numbers. They have large smooth cotyledons and less pointed leaves than the mature plant.

Notice the arrangement of the leaves in pairs, each pair at right angles to the next (*decussate*), which allows a good deal of light to reach the lower parts of the plant and does not hide the flowers.

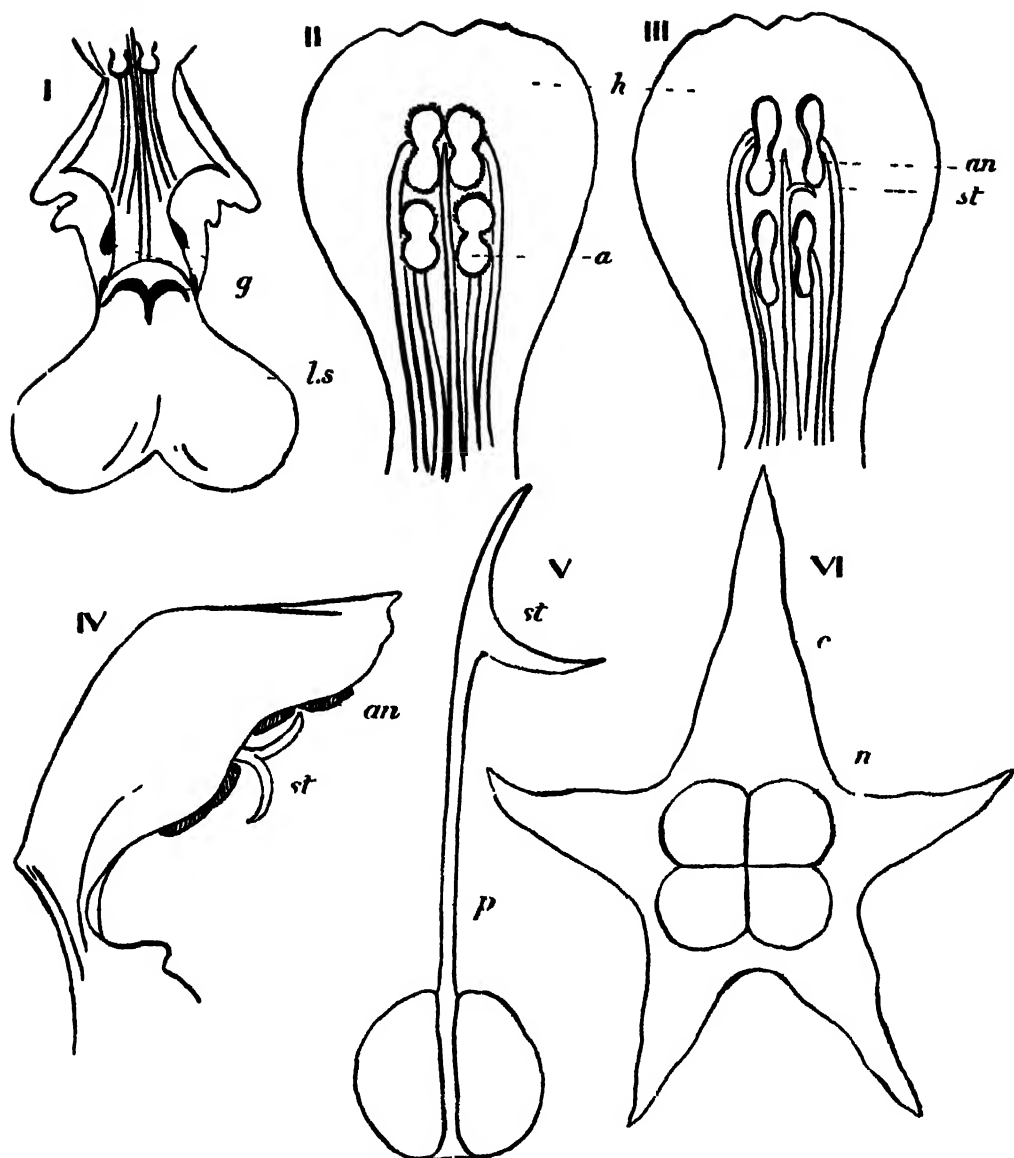
I. Returning to the classroom, show the children the whole plant, and get them to realise that the creeping stem and the large number of seedlings together explain why such large colonies are formed.

Turning to the inflorescence, let the children examine and describe the arrangement, realising that the succession of flowers in different stages will help to make sure of cross-pollination.

**Pollination.** Let the children look for the stamens. Look at flowers of different ages. They will notice that there are four stamens, with the anthers pressed tightly together under the hood. They are black, with yellow pollen, and as they are all open this shows as a yellow streak on the under side of each. In the older flowers the edges will be seen to have contracted. The stigma projects between them, but as it is white the children probably will not see it.

They will notice how well the stamens are protected by the hood, and that the front part of the flower, which is deeply lobed, forms a platform to which a bee can cling as it pushes into the flower. At the bottom of the flower is nectar. If hand lenses are available, the children will be able to see several light-brown spots on the platform and at the sides of it, leading into the flower tube. These are supposed to serve as honey guides. These are bee flowers, and the tube prevents other insects from reaching the nectar. By pushing a pencil into the flower

PLATE XIV



SKETCHES FOR THE BLACKBOARD

WHILE DEAD NITIF I To show labelling tag (ls) and guiding filaments (g) II Hood (h) in wing stance with open anthers (a)  
 III Hood showing anther (an) empty and anther (an) st stigma IV Side view of III an anther is st to fork stigma V Pistil (p)  
 with forked stigma (st) VI Calyx (c) with four outlets (n)



and seeing how the stamens touch it, the children can see that as the bee pushes its tongue into the flower, its back and head will receive the pollen, which falls *downwards* as the stamens open this way. The bee may then brush on to the stigma of another flower. The stamens are attached to the hood by their stalks just where the tube begins.

The rest of the process can be described with the help of the blackboard diagrams provided. With a lens the children may be able to see the forked stigma between the stamens, but not otherwise. Until the stamens have shed their pollen, the long style, coming up from the bottom of the tube, and the forked stigma, are pressed against the hood behind the anthers. The shrinkage of the empty anthers allows the stigma to project, one prong pointing towards the tip of the hood and the other downwards, so that a bee is sure to brush against them

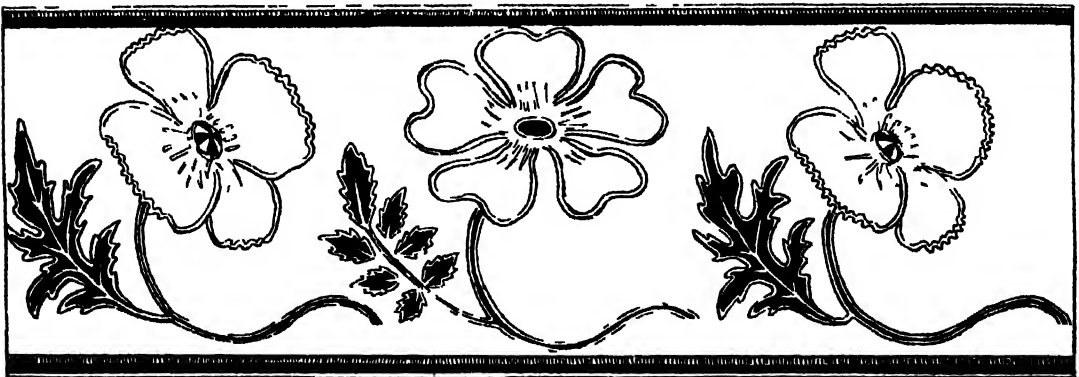
on entering, if they are ready to receive pollen. By turning back the hood of one flower, and gently pressing back the anthers, the stigma and style may be plainly seen. The stigma passes down between the carpels to the base of the ovary. It falls off, with the corolla and stamens, soon after the ovules begin to grow into seeds.

**II.** Let the children make a series of enlarged sketches:

- (1) Of a side view of the flower to show the hood, landing stage, tube of the flower, and calyx.
- (2) Looking upwards into the hood, to show the stamens (anthers).
- (3) Of the landing stage from the front.
- (4) Of a calyx from the top, containing the four ripe nutlets.

**III.** *Further work.* Seeds could easily be grown in a pot or box of soil.

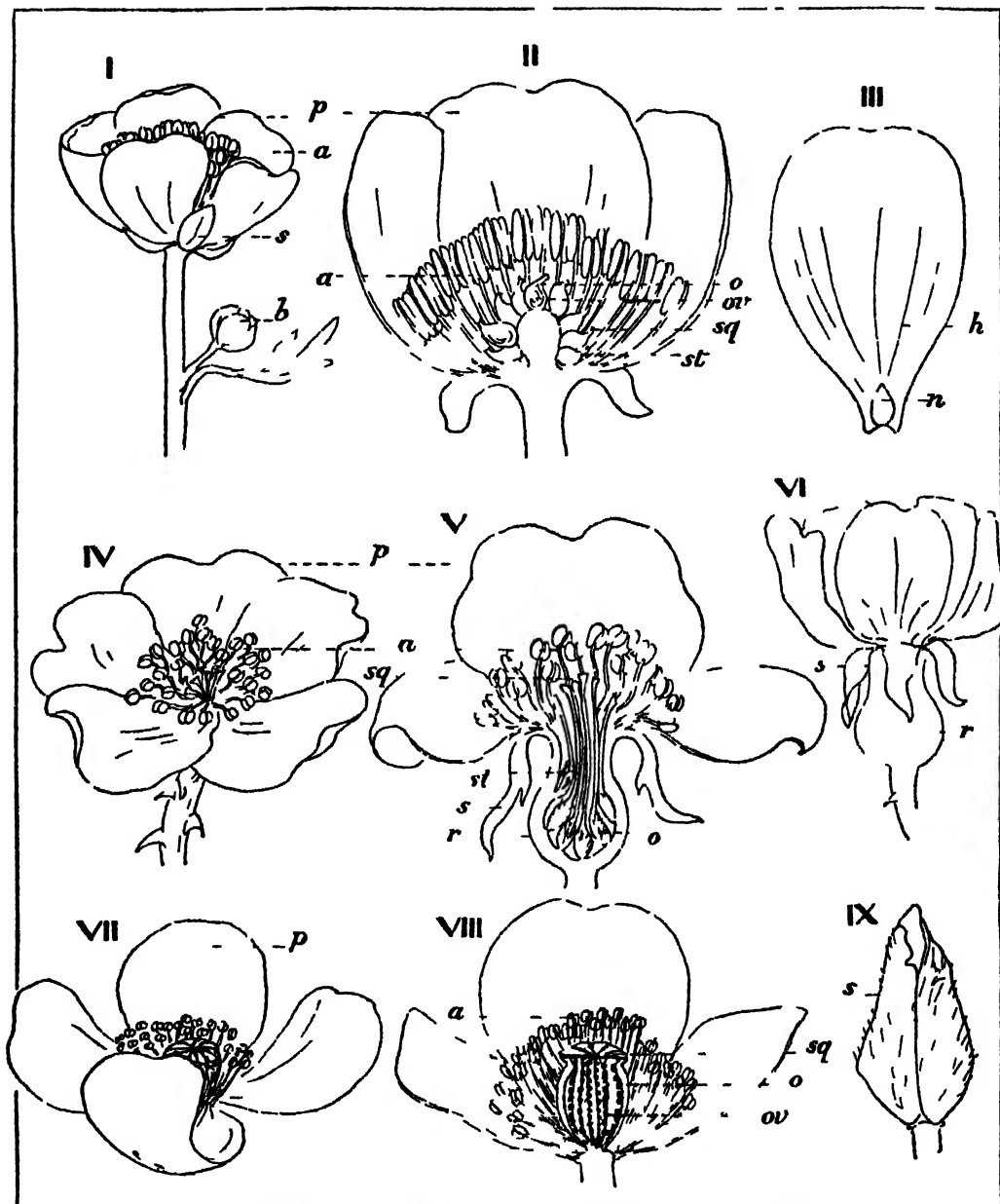
## XIX. POPPY AND WILD ROSE



**A**S several cup-shaped flowers have already been studied carefully, the children realise that they are open to all insect comers, depending for pollination on the probability that some of their many visitors will go to other flowers of the

same kind, whether these visitors are bees, flies or butterflies. They will realise, too, that the flowers provide chiefly pollen. This is used as food directly, and for making "bee-bread" to provide food for bee larvae. The method of study has already been fully

PLATE XV



BUIFERCUP I Flower side view p petals s sepals a anthers b flower bud II Vertical section of flower st stamens sq stigmas o ovary, ov ovules III Petal n nectary h hairy glands  
WILD ROSE IV Flower front view V Vertical section of flower p petals a anthers st stamens sq stigmas o ovary r, receptacle VI Flower, side view  
POPPY VII Flower front view p, petals VIII Vertical section of flower a anthers sq stigmas, o ovary ov ovules  
IX Flower bud s sepals

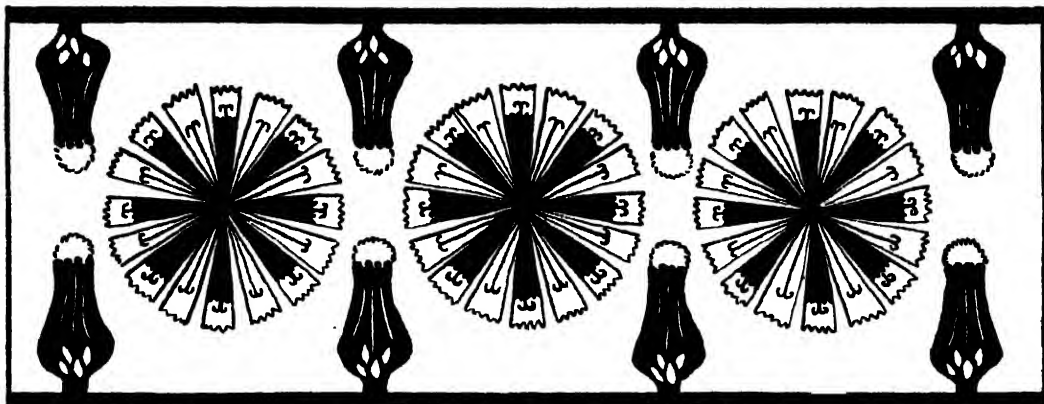
indicated: the children would try to watch insects visiting the flowers, they would look out for movements of stamens, or movements of petals and sepals in the opening and closing of the flowers, or for movements of the flower stalk after pollination is effected. They would also follow the ripening of the seeds, both from flowers kept in the classroom, and out-of-doors.

**The Poppy.**—Possibly the strong, heavy smell attracts flies. Certainly many little flies can be seen in the flowers. There are numerous stamens—note the positions of these in young and old flowers. The ovary is curious in having a number of radiating ridges, five to fifteen, passing from the centre to the edge. These are the stigmatic surfaces. They are seen to be rough, which helps to hold the pollen. The structure of the ovary

has previously been described. The flower attracts chiefly by its large, brightly coloured petals. The calyx falls away as the flowers open, the petals and stamens fall soon after pollination.

**The Wild Rose.**—The calyx, corolla and stamens are all borne on the rim of the deeply-hollowed receptacle, which, as already described, encloses the ovary of many separate carpels. There are several stigmas to receive pollen. The strong, sweet smell suggests the presence of nectar as well as pollen, but it is a false scent, for there is no such gift. However, there is a plentiful supply of pollen to reward the insect visitor. In addition to the formation of seeds, the plant can also increase its colony by creeping underground stems, which produce buds from which new plants grow.

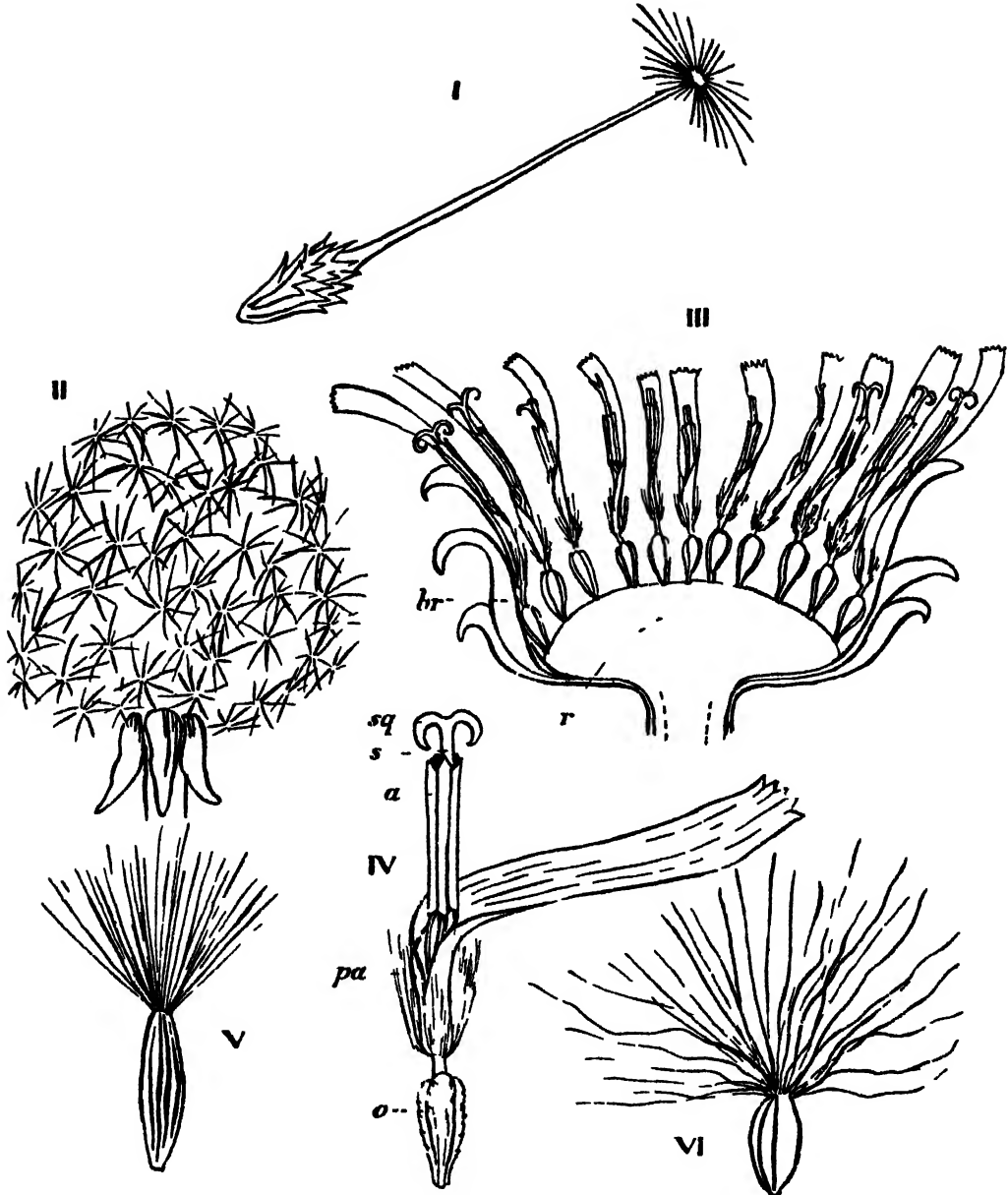
## XX. DANDELION AND GROUNDSEL FLOWERS



**T**HESE may be examined as examples of many small flowers being crowded together to attract insects, without going into details of structure. It can be seen that they are made up of a number of

tiny tubes ending in a large strap-shaped process. Each of these is a flower, and the mass together makes an attractive head which can be easily seen. It also saves an insect's time; and makes far more visits

PLATE XVI



SKETCHES FOR THE BLACKBOARD

DANDY ION I Single fruit of Dandelion II Collection of fruits in head III Section through head showing arrangement of florets br bracts r receptacle IV Single flower sq stigma s style a anther st stamen pa pappus fruits of ovary  
 GROUNDSEL V Single fruit of Groundsel  
 THISTLE VI Single fruit of Thistle

possible. Watch a bee on a Dandelion flower. It will be seen to go hurriedly round to all the florets that are ready for it, visiting a large number.

Let children notice the different movements of the flowers and their stalks,—the "sleep" movements which take place not only at night, but on dull days when there is no sun, and the closing of the flower while the fruits ripen, and while the stalk at the same time lies flat on the ground. When the tiny fruits are ripe, the stalk rises up again, the head expands, and each tiny parachute unfolds, to bear away the nutlet (with the seed inside it) as soon as a slight puff of wind loosens it.

The Groundsel flower head is too small to be of much interest to children, but the ripening fruits should be watched in detail and compared with those of the Dandelion. Note that in the Dandelion the nutlet is suspended at the end of a long stalk, while in the Groundsel (and Thistles) it is directly attached to the spreading plumes

The silky plume is called a *pappus*, and is in all these cases developed from a reduced calyx. It will be noticed that the function of a calyx in protecting the bud is carried out by several rows of narrow leaf-like bracts which enclose the whole head of flowers. The pappuses of the Groundsel and Thistle soon drop their "seeds" and float away, but those of the Dandelion may carry the seeds for long distances.

The seedlings are easy to obtain and should be recognised by all gardeners. Note the difference in form of the rosette of leaves in dry and in damp shady places, and the great height to which they can attain; on the other hand, on a regularly mown lawn they will flower half an inch above the soil. Cutting seems only to stimulate further growth and later flowering; the closest blade cannot cut their central buds. The long tap root is not only very difficult to eradicate, but reaches down to hidden supplies of water which keep it alive when other plants are dying of drought.



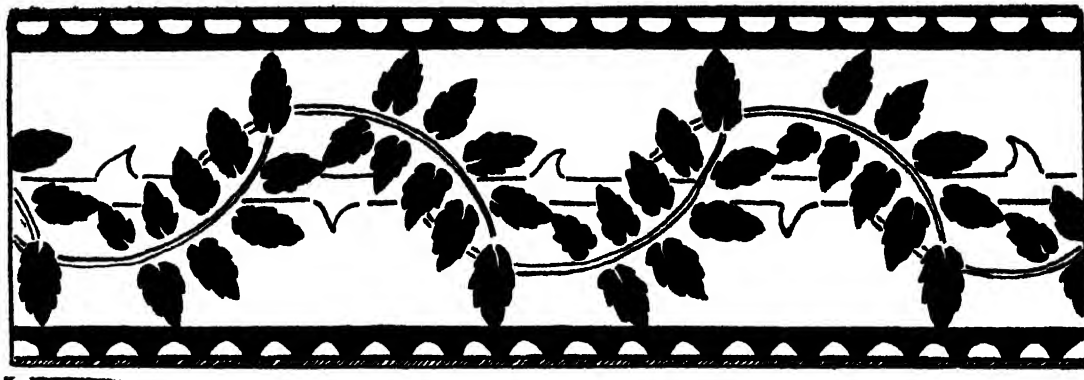
PLATE XVII



CIMITERS

- I. ROSE *r*, rose stem *p* prickles  
 II. SWEET PEA *st* stipule *l* leaflet *t* tendril (modified leaflet)  
 III. RUNNER BEAN—young plant *s* first foliage leaves *l* suprl *rt* *st* climbing stem

## XXI. CLIMBING PLANTS: SWEET PEA, RUNNER BEAN, WILD ROSE



**T**HE Sweet Pea and Runner Bean should be grown from seed, and their whole life history watched, though in all probability, if the ground indicated in this syllabus is covered, there will not be time for a detailed study in this year.

The germination of these plants should be watched and recorded by diagrams at each stage, and compared with the germination of plants already studied. Different supports (rough and smooth sticks, metal skewers, etc.) may be provided for different plants, to determine which is the most serviceable. One plant may be left without support.

Revise the object of a climbing habit to reach the best position for light and air in the hedge.

For method of study see treatment of climbing plants in Volume I page 373.

### Points to be noticed.—

(1) At what stage the plants begin to need support.

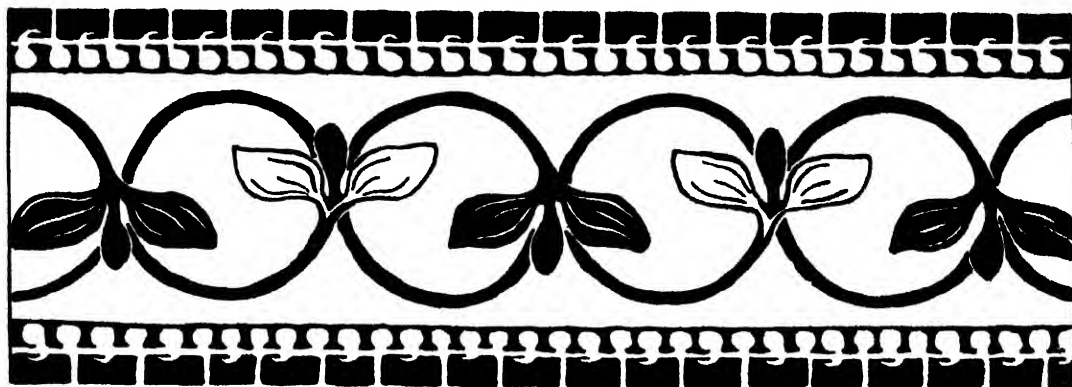
(2) The movements they make in trying to find support.

(3) What part of the plant twines. In the case of the Sweet Pea, it is the leaves which form tendrils, in the Runner Bean it is the stems. The large outgrowths at the base of the leaf in a Garden Pea, the stipules, serve as leaves, while the fine upper leaflets lose their blade, and the veins chiefly are converted into tendrils. In the Sweet Pea the one terminal leaflet only forms the tendril, and the stipules remain small.

(4) The Wild Rose is an example of the habit of climbing by means of thorns or prickles. In addition to their use in this capacity, the prickles of the Wild Rose prevent browsing animals and slugs from feeding on the leaves.

To complete the study of the Wild Rose, its climbing habits would be observed for comparison with the climbing of the Bramble, already studied. It would be carried out in the same way as the study of the Bramble. The Wild Rose has similar thorns or prickles, skin structures, but these are much stronger and larger than those of the Bramble. The stems are weak, and the curved thorns serve to uplift the leaves and blossoms high above the other plants in the hedge.

## XXII. GERMINATION OF SUNFLOWER, MUSTARD AND CRESS, BROAD BEAN



THIS study, which could take place in the early spring, would follow the lines already suggested for other seedlings; that is, the seeds would be grown in various ways and exact records kept. These records drawn on squared paper would show the lengths of roots and stems at different stages, and a series of annotated and dated drawings would be made by each child.

In addition, more stress might be laid on the experimental aspect. The seeds might be grown in light and also in darkness; with a limited supply of water and with plenty of water; in warm and in cool places. The effect of these differences would be recorded.

Again, sketches might be made, and descriptions should be written.

The structure of seeds, at any rate those of the Sunflower and Broad Bean, might receive more attention than in previous years.

**The Sunflower "seed".**—In reality this is a fruit, as its hard pericarp is fused with the seed coat. If possible keep a head of a

Sunflower from a previous year, and show all the fruits growing in it, each surrounded by the shrivelled remains of a flower. Soak some seeds, and notice how they swell and become soft. A white root emerges and grows downwards for some time. If the seed has been firmly fixed, a small white curved stem called the *hypocotyl* will appear, and this will drag out of the pericarp the two *cotyledons* or seed leaves. Let the children open some soaked seeds which have not germinated and find these cotyledons. The cotyledons turn green as they emerge from the skin, and so appear to be ordinary leaves, but really they contain a store of food for the young plant. It is some time before a minute bud can be detected between them. This is the true main stem of the plant. It finally unfolds and produces true foliage leaves and eventually the big plant.

**The Broad Bean** seeds should now be soaked and afterwards opened by splitting them carefully along the curved edge, avoiding the black scar, or *hilum*, which is where a short stalk joined it to the pod.



Before removing the skin, notice the impression made on it by the root inside. Keep the skin.

Examine the contents. The root will be noticed first. This primary root is called the *radicle*. It is attached to two large cotyledons, which are white and contain a quantity of food for the young plant. Separate them gently. As they break apart, a yellowish bud will be seen lying between them, continuous with the root, but inside. This is the shoot, or *plumule*.

Now look at the skin or seed coat which has been taken off. It will be found to consist of two layers— a thick, tough outer one, and a thin one. Look at the inside of the scar. At one end of it will be seen a tiny pocket into which the root fitted. How does the root get out of the seed coat? The water softens the skin. There is a little hole between the scar and the pocket, and the root pushes against this hole and so tears it until the hole is big enough for the root to get out. If a few soaked seeds that have been kept in water are now taken out, and the children are allowed to squeeze them while they look at the point indicated, they will see very small bubbles come out of it, showing where the hole is. The hole also helps to absorb water. (It is also the point where the pollen tube entered the ovule.)

### Experiments.

(1) Grow a number of Scarlet Runner Beans in small pots. Support each by tying it to a short stick. Let them grow a few inches beyond the sticks, then substitute a long stick in one case. It will be found that the upper part begins to twine round the stick from left to right, or anti-clockwise. Support a second plant in the same way, but cut off the bud and about 1 in. of the tip of the stem. See what happens in this case. It is the region immediately behind the tip that responds to contact by twining round the stick. Take one of the plants which has a short stick, bend the upper part of the stem down, and leave it. It will be seen that the stem rights itself again by

making a circular sweeping movement, and then grows upwards in a spiral. (According to Dr. Cavers, this usually takes about two hours. He also suggests using sticks of different thicknesses and placed at different angles.)

(2) Grow some Sweet Peas in pots. When they are several inches high, and the tendrils are well developed on the younger leaves, notice that these tendrils have a small twist at the end. Rub that side of the tendril several times with a pencil. It will be found that it soon begins to curve towards the side rubbed. If rubbed on the other side there is no response. Support one plant by tying it to a short stick, and notice the movements made by the tendrils. In another pot place a branched twig suitable for the tendrils to twine round, and watch how it occurs. Cut off the tips of the tendrils in another pot, and provide them also with a branched twig.

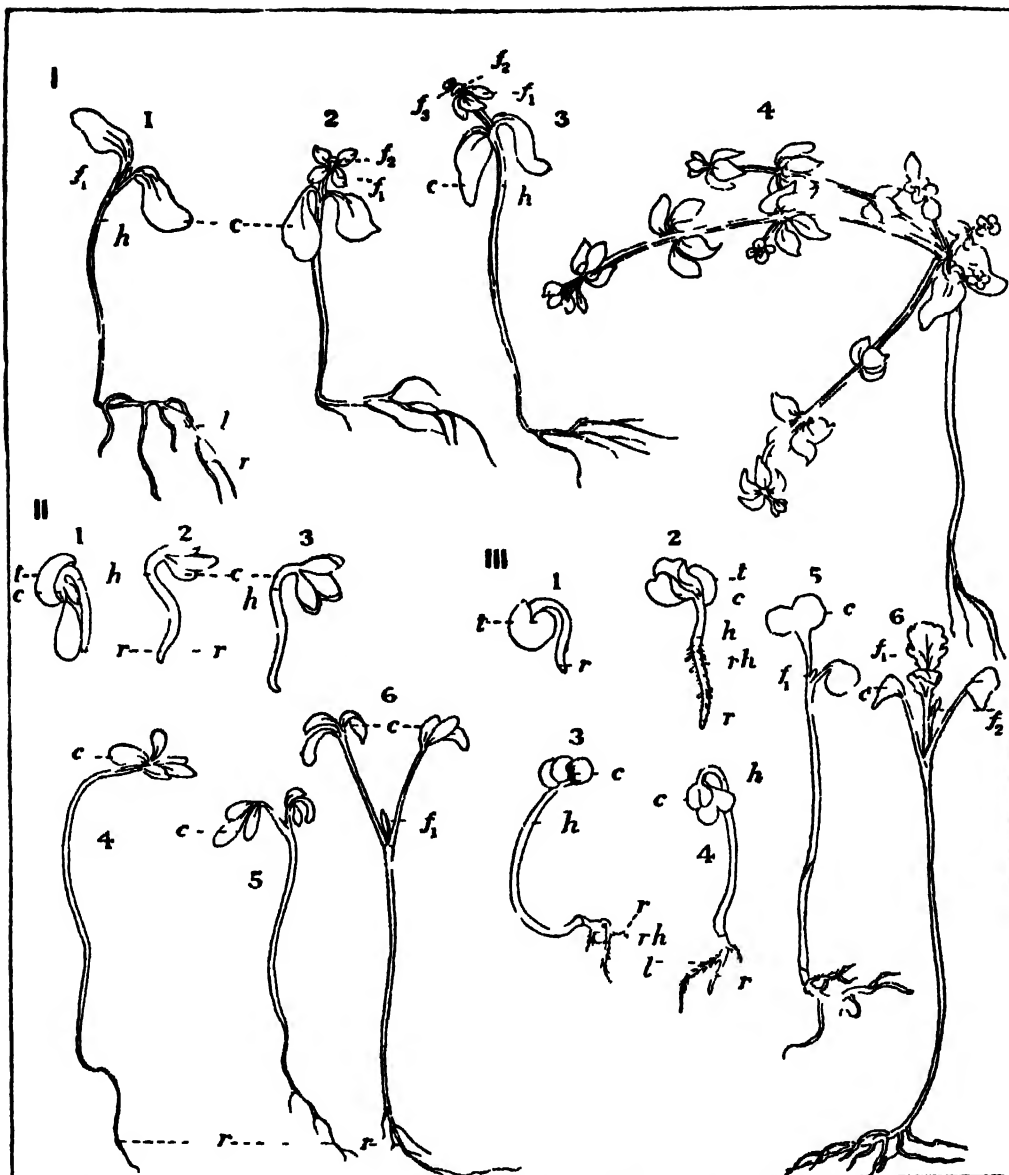
(3) Place some pots in the light and some in darkness to see whether the light affects the climbing in any way. It will be found that it does not, but that contact alone makes the tendrils or stems twist, though in both cases before they have touched anything, they perform spiral movements which help them to find a support.

(4) Carry out the same experiments on Scarlet Runners and Sweet Peas grown out of doors.

Point out to the children how the stem or tendril which has found a support tightens up and becomes very firm; also that when both ends of tendrils are fixed, there is a little "kink" in the middle, the upper half turns one way and the lower the opposite way.

By twisting a piece of string that is fixed at both ends the cause of this can be seen. If you try to twist it in one direction there must be a compensating opposite twist at the other end.

PLATE XVIII



I. GOOSE GRASS SEEDLING: 1 c cotyledons, f first foliage leaves, h hypocotyl, r radicle, l lateral roots, 2 and 3 f first foliage leaves, f2 second foliage leaves, f3 third set of foliage leaves, c cotyledons, h hypocotyl, 4 Seedling of several weeks growth.

II. CRESS SEEDLING: 1, 2 and 3 f, testa, c cotyledons, r radicle, h hypocotyl, 4 and 6 r radicle, c cotyledons, f1 first foliage leaves.

III. MUSTARD SEEDLING: 1, 2, 3 and 4 f testa, r radicle, c cotyledons, h hypocotyl, l lateral roots, rh root hairs, 5 and 6 c cotyledons, f first pair of foliage leaves, f2 second pair of foliage leaves.

**Germination.** When the bean seed germinates, the radicle comes out first and grows for some time. If it is grown in a glass jar lined with blotting paper not too wet a soft furry mass of delicate white threads will appear just above the tip. These are the *root hairs* whose work is to absorb water. If they are injured and the plant cannot quickly form more, it will die. This is true of all plants except water plants. Root hairs will be equally well seen on the Sunflower root grown in the same way. Later on small *lateral roots* (side roots) will branch from the main one.

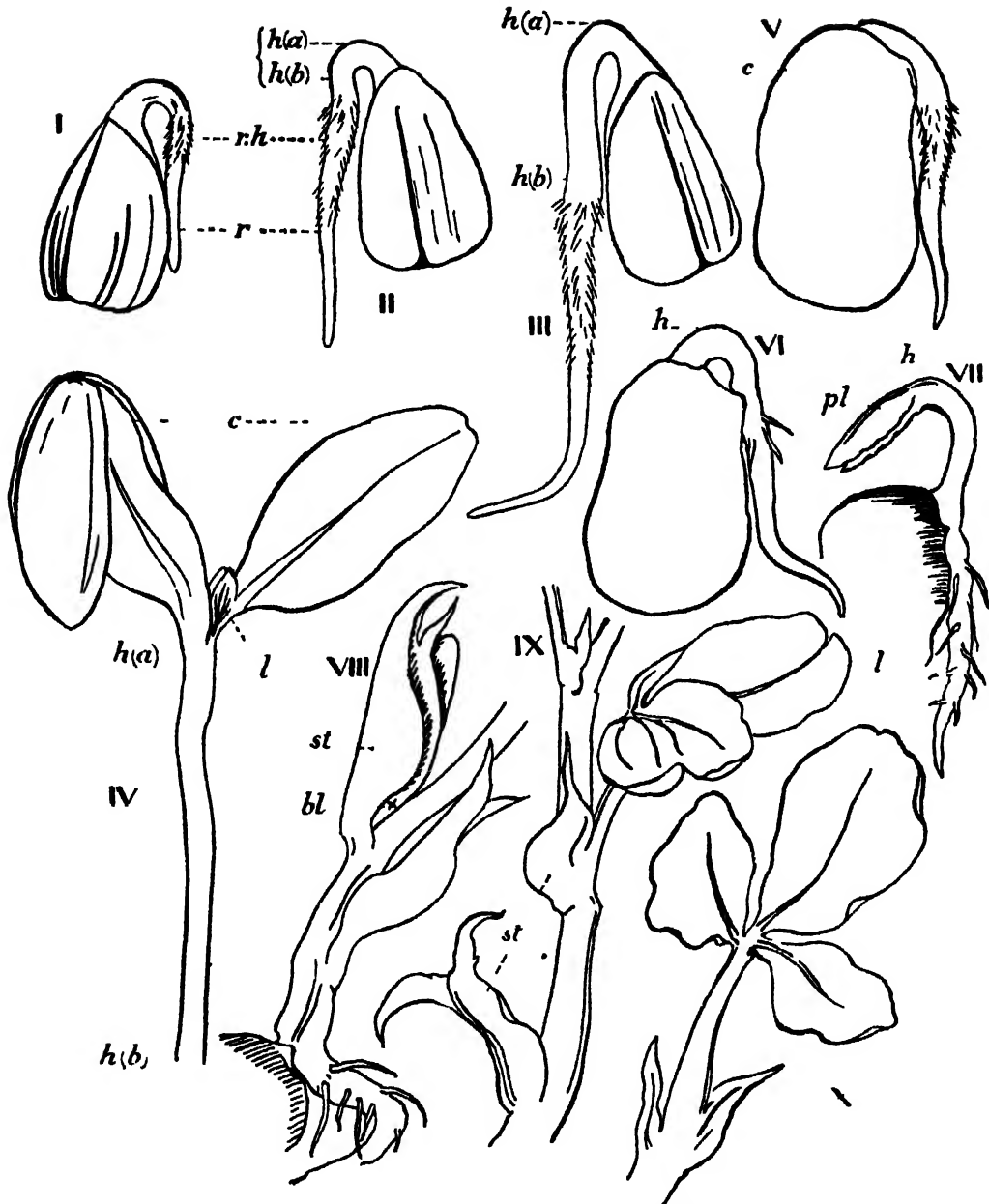
But before this happens the plumule comes out, at first bending over as in so many other seedlings then straightening out. The cotyledons it is to be noticed remain inside the seed coat and below the ground, as in the Horse Chestnut and Oak, whereas in the Sunflower and Mustard and Cress they emerge, as in the Sycamore (In the Cress the cotyledons are deeply divided into three or more, and in the Mustard each is almost heart-shaped). As the bud of the plumule unfolds, its first leaves are seen to be very simple. They

indeed represent only leaf bases with slight lateral outgrowths (*stipules*) and the point in the middle alone represents the green blade which develops in the later leaves. Three leaves of this kind form, and then several leaves with two leaflets. Finally the fully developed leaves have each four leaflets. Although the Broad Bean is a relation of the Sweet Pea and Scarlet Runner, it is to be noticed that it has no means of climbing. When the Broad Beans have been growing sturdily for some time, a small bud will appear at each side of the main stem, coming out from the seed. These buds are actually between the cotyledon and the plumule (in the axil of the cotyledon) and are regarded as proof that the cotyledons are true leaves, since this is the typical position in which buds grow.

Both Sunflowers and Broad Beans grown indoors are apt to develop into long straggling plants, so it is as well to grow some out of doors in order to watch their normal growth. Not only is the growth less rapid, and therefore the whole plant sturdier, but the leaves are different in colour, having in the Broad Bean a greyish tinge.



# PLATE XIX



## SKETCHES FOR THE BLACKBOARD

SUNFLOWER I II III, and IV Germinating seed, rh, root hairs r radicle h(a) to h(b) hyp (cyl); c cotyledons l first leaves  
 BROAD BEAN V VI VII, and VIII Germinating seed c, cotyledon h hypocotyl pl plumule st stipules l position of blade IX Leaf, showing two leaflets (l) and stipules (st). X Mature leaf



**SECOND YEAR'S COURSE  
OF  
GEOGRAPHY**



TOBOGGANING IN CANADA  
(Class Picture No. 76 in the portfolio)

# PRACTICAL GEOGRAPHY

## INTRODUCTION

**M**ODERN school geography is a convention. Although this is more definitely the case in the later stages, yet in the primary school the course should be planned in relation to the agreed dogma favoured by geographers. The accepted creed has an alphabet and a vocabulary all its own. The geographer uses the term "sheep" in a different sense from the usages of either the farmer or the biologist, his interpretation is nearer to that of the ordinary man; to him a "valley" is something more than a trough in the earth's undulating surface and an obstacle to the engineer, and is something less than a surface conformation which betrays its history to the geologist. From one point of view geography is as conventional as formal Euclid, and it is this formal body of dogma which controls the aims of the teacher.

In the primary school the pupil is to be introduced to the essential elements, the geographer's terminology and the map as a geographer uses it; it is to be suggested to him that some time or other he will learn to appreciate the formal relationships and will be able, after a time, to "reason why."

Geography in the primary school, as in all schools, is not geography unless it is purposeful; a geography lesson is one of the easiest lessons for a teacher who has a gift for description, since it is so easy to fascinate the children with the "fairy" stories of other folk and other places different from those they know at first hand, yet unless these stories have a precise position in a course their telling is a waste of time. It is equally easy to deaden the budding intellect with specious reasoning of the type "A is A, because it is A," where the three letters A stand for three different ways of saying the same thing in different words. On the

other hand in the primary school reasoning of the type "A is B, because both depend on C" is difficult mainly because the geographical vocabulary to which A and B and C all belong is imperfectly known.

There is a large measure of justification for the gibe in the well-known story of the boy who answered the question, "Where is New York?" propounded by his prospective employer, by saying, "I don't know, sir; but, if you will tell me where it is, I will tell you why it is there." Any one who is familiar with thousands of examination answers to questions in geography knows that the fundamental error in much learning of geography is ignorance of locations. It is a safe assumption that a child who inserts Lagos, Bombay, Durban, and Rio de Janeiro, on the same coast line of an outline map is ignorant of geography, although he may have a nodding acquaintance with many verbose statements which he deems to be geographical descriptions and explanations.

It is the first function of the primary school to begin with the answering of the question, "Where is it?" This function should become increasingly dominant throughout any course in geography for the main reason that its answering is often the only school introduction for the child to the conception of two dimensions. Too many people grow up without any sense of perspective, either literally or figuratively; they can "see straight ahead" but they cannot see sideways at the same time. Geography is essentially a training in perspective, and in the primary school, "where" is more important than either "what" or "why."

**Where is it?**—Let us begin with a board of soft wood perforated with rows of holes, having coloured pegs to fit the holes. Insert one peg in a hole. Ask for a description



of where the peg is. "In the fifth hole of the third row." Ask which fifth hole, and which third row? to determine the notion of starting points. Label the rows and number the holes; let the pupils place pegs accurately in position to order, and let them describe the positions in which you place pegs.

Pass on to seats in the class and to the elucidation geographically of an address, - "16 Smith Street."

Having reached the beginnings of the notion of two dimensions, put a drawing pin somewhere in a large blackboard and ask where it is. The pin represents a ship needing help on the waste of waters, or a stranded airman forced down in the desert; there are no landmarks, not even the lines of the edges of the blackboard. Wireless communication is possible. How can he tell the world where he is? Probably some child will suggest some feasible notion which can be used to develop the idea of the compass points, or the idea of squares, which is at the back of the convention of latitude and longitude. In time the children will reach the notion of the starting point at the wireless station, and either "so many miles south-west," or "in square M 6," i.e. in the sixth square to the left of the Mth row of squares down. And so we come to drawings, or the compass points. Put up a plan of the child's locality on a large scale, marked off with reference squares. What's your address? Put a tiny flag on the drawing to mark your house. Where is your house? In square T 9.

Perform the traditional experiment in the playground, or at a south window, with the noonday sun casting a shadow of a stick. Mark on the ceiling the four points. Place labels N, S, E, W, prominently and appropriately on the walls. Practise the children in moving to order "5 paces north and then 8 paces east." The sense of two-dimensional direction matures slowly; exercises in orientation are a commonplace in Intelligence Testing because the power to think spatially is an evidence of incipient maturity.

Mark the compass points on the drawing of the locality and combine the two notions.

So far there has been little but talk and movement. Now we can introduce the "treasure island" map, the key diagram to the hidden treasure. How to find the island, and how to locate the treasure, become incentives to a better grasp of the conventions; and so we come to a map of the ocean with nothing but dotted islets in groups and in isolation, and we pass to the map of the island with the beach and the trees and other landmarks. From this we proceed to the exercise of the child's attempts at imitation, and ask for samples of "treasure island" maps and of drawings showing the way home from school, and so on.

In a casual way, as a commonplace, the notion of distances has been already used. The next step will depend on the coincident work in arithmetic and drawing. In geography the relation between paces or strides and yards can be established; 50 paces is a distance dependent on the pacer; 50 yards is invariable. This leads to the next notion.

**Size.** -This new notion is not linear, but areal; the child achieves notions of relative sizes, not as in arithmetic as definite areas stated in square measure units, but as indefinitely shaped portions of the earth, usually as units of something larger, a field is part of a farm, a district is part of a town. It is not necessary to wait for the formal arithmetic since the real appreciation of areas comes in the secondary school.

Start with a rough drawing on the blackboard of a field with a tree, fences and a gate; the problem is to show the field and the rest of the farm. Another board is needed and the field is re-drawn to a different size and the rest of the farm inserted; proportions are maintained, the general picture of the field is retained; it is smaller. So we pass on to scales: half-scale, tenth-size, and so on; and on to the representation of distances on different scales. This notion is developed at first pictorially, and may be related to the notion of the appearance

of the same object at different distances, to lead to the imagination of the land in the locality as an airman might see it. This notion is developed into the drawing on the same sized sheets of paper of the locality as seen from a mile up, two miles up, five miles away, etc.—all imagined. The greater the distance the smaller the size. This will lead to the comparison of the locality map with the plan of the town, the plan of the town with the map of the district, and so on to the county map, the map of England, and hence to the British Isles, to Europe, and the World. Thus the child reaches the atlas.

Throughout all this the dominant note is not scale, but persistence of shape, and the children need all the practice they can get in this connection. Australia, Newfoundland, the British Isles, Africa and the other continents should become immediately recognisable from their shape whatever the size.

From a field as part of a farm we have reached the notion of England as part of the world, and we can now pass on to the globe. A plain black and white globe as large as possible with the continents in outline is all we need to begin with. Shapes come first, then relative positions by compass directions, then sizes. It is wise to have this globe always on view, and to affix a flag on any spot mentioned in class. In time this globe will become so well known that a more detailed globe of the conventional type with names and colours can be introduced; but care is required not to swamp the facts already known, in the plethora of names usually crowded by inconsiderate globe makers on the printed sphere. Exercises can follow on the relation between the atlas and the globe. Tommy's uncle writes to him from Calgary; Tommy wants to know where Calgary is. Tommy learns to use the index to his atlas, and proudly sticks a flag on the globe for Calgary. James is a collector of stamps; he is proud of a rare one, he fixes it in his album and wants to know where Nicaragua is; he proceeds after Tommy's fashion and another flag appears on the globe.

**How to get there.**—The child is familiar with streets, roads, railways and canals. They all lead in two directions, and so he is familiar with travel either in fact or in thought along a line. This familiarity should be fostered. In place of the road which twists, he can think of a line to the SW.; he can think of the sequence of towns along the railway at which the train stops; let him also think of the sequence of countries and towns along lines to the N, the SE., and so on.

Which is the direct way to London? Here the ceiling is of use.

The road has its signposts, the classroom can have its direction arrows on the ceiling. An arrow points the way to the nearest big town, another to London, a third to France and Paris, a fourth to Ireland, the Atlantic and America. The arrows can be duplicated on the globe by coloured lines. "Look towards the North Sea, and say in which direction you look," can be a frequent exercise.

An exercise in imagination can be given on similar lines. Ask for a sketch drawing of the ceiling of a school in Australia. Train the child to the imaginative translation of himself from here which he knows, to there which he does not know. Fix the class collection of pictures in boxes or frames on the wall in correct relation to the cardinal points and in correct order, so that the curious child can go to them and look at them in sequence, and imagine them as the successive places he would see on an air journey in this direction. It is not wise to consider any picture out of relation to the location of the place depicted. Follow the local river both ways pictorially in sequence; treat the local road and railway similarly, and so pass on to the consideration of the ships of England and the routes they follow. The world is a set of orderly sequences of things to be seen along lines which radiate from the homeland.

Into these orderly sequences may be fitted, on occasion, the location of current events in which the children may be interested,

and also the stories told by the labels, such as Canterbury lamb, Danish bacon, with which children are familiar in the shops.

**What is it like?**—Primarily the description of what a hill is like is an exercise in English, in oral composition. Before the geographer can begin his studies of surface features the child must have some experience in the use of the words: hill, valley, ridge, stream, etc. It will not suffice for the geographer that the child can explain these words in terms of other words; the child must be able to visualise and imagine the reality for which the words are labels. The child must be able to model these surface features, he must recognise them in pictures. He should be able to sketch in some crude fashion what they are like. Ability to sketch may be fostered by the use of tracing paper and simple photographs. Let the children take a picture postcard of a simple scene and trace the main lines, the skyline, the road, the stream, etc.; let him then be shown how to add a line or two to give a sense of slope, until in a crude conventional way he acquires some facility in sketching. In all this much depends, first, on the character of the locality, and, secondly, on the character of the holiday excursions which the children make. In any event the illustrations in some of the books in the school library will provide useful material.

From this early notion the geographer may proceed slowly to the study of differences; this hill in contrast with that, this part of the river near its source in comparison with that part near the mouth, this plainlike valley with that mountain gorge. Most of this is still primarily a lesson in English, the fitting of the suitable adjectives to the nouns; it is an exercise in the convention of everyday speech. Towards the end of the primary school course, when the vocabulary is known, arises the question of describing a section of the country, in such manner as to tell someone who cannot see it what it is like. The first attempts will be made in words and crude sketches;

they will lead to the notion of economy of effort. The map may then be regarded as one of the labour-saving and time-saving devices of modern times.

Here the use of the scale notion may be useful in the reverse order. On the map of England the local hill which looms large in the landscape is a dot; the manner of its depiction on a map is traced backwards in increasing size until the child is introduced to one of the contour conventions, the colour washes with large vertical intervals, to be seen on some county and district maps. Lowlands are green, slopes are brown, the darker the brown the higher the ground, until the dark brown on the map means the top of the hill which the children can climb. Then comes the excursion to the top of the hill. There, with a large map laid out on the ground correctly orientated, the actual feature may be compared with its conventional representation. The first map work of this kind must be done "in the field." When this has been done the geographer begins to teach English, he takes samples of maps and gradually develops a technique of interpretation of the map symbols in words, and so introduces the notion that a correct map transcends the best verbal description which they can make. The map is more important, more useful, than verbal statements. In time the child will realise that a sketch made in five minutes can tell the initiated much more than a composition which occupies half an hour; he has learnt something of the modern necessity for economy of effort.

While the child has been achieving a wider outlook on the world along these lines of thought, some time or other the thought has been presented to him that all the things he has talked about have some relation to people, and he will be ready for the next notion.

**What manner of folk exist and what do they do?**—Here again the preliminaries belong to English: what nouns imply workers, and what adjectives fittingly

describe these workers. Here again also the child begins at home. He classifies the workers whom he knows, and proceeds outwards sequentially along his direction lines to the types of workers to be met. His arrows on the ceiling now are signposts to folk,—this way to the farmers, that way to the fisherfolk, the other way to the miners, and so on. He distinguishes between the primary and the secondary occupations, and achieves the notion that some work is almost self-contained, while other work is dependent upon workers elsewhere, and ultimately finds that even apparently self-contained work is not worth while except in relation to the needs of other folk; it is not worth while to catch fish on a large scale if no other people want the fish when they are caught; rich deposits of iron ore are not worth the mining unless the ore can be disposed of to others who require it.

When the ideas have been acquired, then again the map becomes an economy. On the district, the county, and the country map in turns the type of workers are inserted at first by name. But the bigger the area depicted the less room is there for detail, and first comes the need for the classification of occupations, and later the need for symbolic presentation of the generalised terms adopted. The globe is dotted with coloured flags, each colour representing a type of work which men do.

The flags on the globe begin to take on a pattern, they are not higgledy-piggledy, and this pattern requires some explanation, and the beginning is made in simple reasoning. Farmers congregate here, lumberers there, fishers elsewhere. Why? The simple elements of the main natural vegetation regions of the world then become manifest. The ceiling arrows now point to the forest, the grasslands, and so on.

But the ceiling arrows are beginning to become complicated. They are direction signs to places, to types of folk, and to kinds of products, all in relation to the background of types of surface conformation and types

of surface cover. It is high time that these ideas were sorted out. There are five sets of ideas. Which belong to which? Certain associations must be made. It is now worth while to take the direction sequences in turn as lines on the blackboard, and tabulate for each the correspondences such as North Sea—fishers—steamships—ports and dock-workers—railway termini—holiday resorts, etc. Certain things fit, and not only fit together, but fit into certain places in the world.

All this leads to the final stage in the primary school, the beginnings of the study of why these things fit in the way they do.

**Why?**—The notion that things are not haphazard involves treatment in two directions, which may be summarised conveniently by the terms Weather and Climate. The combination of these two notions in the view that the "prime cause" of both is the sun may be just glimpsed by the more capable children, for at this stage nearly everything depends on the capacity of the children. Associations of ideas are possible to these young children, but the appreciation of casual connection is often beyond their powers. An attempt may, however, be made to provide some simple connectives.

The study of the weather may have begun in earlier years by the mere noting of weather changes, the simple record of seasonal variations where the differences are sufficiently large to be appreciated by the children. There are three factors of importance,—rainfall, temperature, and cloudiness. The dominant factor is cloudiness. For British children the state of the sky as a screen against insolation has more importance than any other weather condition. Winds in relation to clouds are of secondary importance. The facts should be noted as they occur, until the children have some notion of the associated phenomena. These are observation exercises suitable to be spread over the early years. They will lead to such associations of ideas that ultimately the children will be able

to talk sensibly on such topics as "The work of the rain," "The effect of the frost," "Heat and the work of the farmer and the market-gardener," "The seasonal sequence."

This is the simpler sequence of thought, the regularity of the annual changes and their consequences; later, the other sequence of thought can be introduced, that is the notion summarised by the phrase the Climatic Regions of the World. From the concept of the main vegetation regions allied to the notion of the influence of seasonal changes on the growth of plants, etc., the children can be led to the notion that climate is an explanation of vegetation, and the English climate and the English vegetation can be fitted into the world scheme. The ceiling arrows now take on their sixth and last direction sequence; they point to the deserts, the winter rain areas, the frozen wastes, and these areas are associated with the other five sets of conditions.

Finally, the relation of all human activity to the sun is suggested by the fact that the final explanation of the geographical phenomena depends on the sun; somewhere each day of the year wheat is being harvested.

The purpose of this article has been to demonstrate the lines of thought which should result in a syllabus for teaching geography in the primary school. The importance of the descriptive side of geography has been discussed elsewhere. In this article attention is confined to those aspects of teaching which depend upon the activity of the child, upon what is sometimes called "practical work." The main thesis is that the child should learn the geographical alphabet and grammar in such a fashion that he is inhibited from making fundamental errors. The child should know his sequences and associations just as accurately as he knows his multiplication table, and he should read his map as easily as he reads the text in his reading book. He can begin to acquire perspective, the power to imagine himself in surroundings which differ from those of home; he begins to appreciate

the "Not-I" in an environment of "Not-here."

The teacher will look in vain in the foregoing for a syllabus. In the primary school each teacher must work out his own geographical salvation. In the first place stands the teacher himself. What ways appeal to him and how much time and effort he has to spare are fundamental considerations. Then come the children. What is their average capacity? What is their rate of growth? What are their habits and home conditions? Then there is the school; is it in the country or in the town? What background of common experience does its location provide? No syllabus can take account of all these variables which are the more important the younger the pupils are.

All that has been attempted is to suggest the fundamentals which must be grasped, certain lines of development along which progress is easy. The dovetailing of these notions into the rest of the geography, and the fitting of them together so that the passage from one aspect to another is easy for the pupils, must be left to the teacher.

Two final warnings may perhaps be valuable. First let the written work in primary school geography be all diagrams, sketches, maps; let there be no English composition in writing. Talk, discussion, the statement of ideas orally, speech of any and every kind is valuable, but the dead written word is fatal. Primary geography is an oral exercise.

Secondly, let the teacher pay most attention to the character of the inevitable mistakes which the pupils make; he will learn more from the way in which the pupils fail than from the ways in which they succeed. The right answer may be parrot-like repetition; the wrong answer is frequently essentially an individual product. A wrong answer usually means not only that a single fact is wrongly apprehended, but that the whole set of associations, and, perhaps, the whole of a sequence of notions, is incorrectly made.

It has been pointed out that it is not possible to give a syllabus or course of lessons in practical geography which will meet the needs of all teachers in the primary school, but the following series of lessons will be helpful as a guide to the method of dealing with this important subject

## LESSONS IN PRACTICAL GEOGRAPHY

### 1. PRELIMINARY TALK ON THE EARTH

**Aim**—To give the children a simple account of the formation and the movement of the earth

**Story.** How many of you have noticed the stars as you have walked along on a winter evening? I expect that most of you have done this and thought what a large number of them there are. If you had been able to look at them through a telescope, you would have seen many thousands more, which are too far away to be seen with the naked eye. Those thousands of twinkling stars, the moon which appears to change its shape, the sun which gives us light and the earth on which we live, are some of the things which together form a great group that is called the universe.

For hundreds of years men have wondered about the stars just as you do to-day, and for many years men knew very little about them. Clever men have, however, found out some of the secrets of this wonderful universe. They tell us an interesting story of how they think the earth was formed.

Thousands of years ago the sun was a vast ball of greatly heated matter which whirled round in space, flinging off masses of hot gas as it turned. Each of the pieces flung off took the shape of a ball and turned, just as the large one did, at a great speed. As the masses of gas were thrown off they began to cool. After a long, long time they hardened, till the gases changed into solid rock.

It is on one of these spinning balls that we live. Our spinning ball is the earth. From it we can sometimes see the other worlds that were flung from the big hot mass of the sun which sent our world into space. One of these companions of ours which is always going round the sun with us is called Mars. There are nine of the balls, or planets, in all. Each of them moves in the same regular way round the sun, but they are at different distances from it.

It is from the great fiery ball which flung our earth on its course that we still receive light and heat. You have all probably noticed that the sun appears to rise in the sky each morning and to descend in the afternoon, until it seems to sink out of sight. Perhaps you will be surprised to hear that these daily changes in the place of the sun are not caused by the sun moving round the earth. Really the changes which you see are caused through the spinning movement of our earth. When the place on which we live is turned towards the sun, it is day, but when our home is turned away from the sun, it is night.

Now that you have heard something about the nine worlds that spin and travel round the sun, you should hear something about the moon. This dull ball which is generally seen on cloudless nights moves round our earth in the same way as the planets move round the sun. You may not feel sure that the moon is shaped like a ball, because it does not always appear to be the same shape, but what you can see most clearly is that part of the moon on which the sun is shining.

There are, of course, many hundreds of objects which you see in the sky besides the moon and the planets, but they are all so far away that they appear to be tiny. Even when we look through a telescope some of the stars appear to be no larger than a pill. Each of these little lights is a sun, having a few smaller worlds travelling round it.

**Teaching hints.**—The important points for us to keep in mind during the lesson are, firstly, that we should give the children the

idea of a scheme in the universe, and secondly, we should make clear our own position in this cosmos. The story is a preamble to our work in the course, because it has been found best to give ideas of the earth's movement in space as soon as possible. By so doing we put the world first in the child's mind instead of the globe, which we must not forget is only a representation. Thus we defer the harder process of representation until the children have at least an elementary conception of the object represented.

It may be admitted that there are different opinions concerning the origin of the world, but the story gives the one which is at the present time the most generally accepted. The effective value of the story may be tested by asking the children simple questions about the stars a few days after telling the story. If the children are able to tell the most simple ideas, or, better still, if they ask us something of what they have seen, then we have accomplished much towards creating the spirit which should follow all our work in practical geography. Perhaps some of the questions that we are asked may be too difficult for a reasoned explanation. It is often surprising what thoughts the starry skies provoke in a child's mind, and we should dispel the perplexities with care.

**Teacher's Notes on the Solar System.**—The earth is only one of a great number of spheres in space. The nearest of these is the moon, whose average distance is about 240,000 miles. The stars are also spheres far larger than the moon, but billions of miles away. An airplane travelling at 300 miles an hour would take tens of thousands of years to reach the nearest star. These stars are all fiery hot; but the moon is a cold mass of rock.

The huge sun, another sphere, is a star with a diameter of 860,000 miles. Its average distance from the earth is some 93,000,000 miles, and yet it is so hot that we receive our heat and light from it.

The sun is the centre of a family of spheres which form the solar system. In this system,

there are nine large spheres called planets, of which the earth is one, and more than six hundred small planets. The nine large planets in order of distance from the sun are Mercury, Venus, Earth, Mars, Jupiter, Saturn, Uranus, Neptune, Pluto. The sun and stars shine by their own light, but the planets merely reflect light, like the moon. The bright evening and morning stars are planets like the earth. From one of them, the earth would be seen to have the same steady bright light that they show to us. The most distant planet is Neptune. If an express train could have started from Neptune when the Romans landed in Britain, and could have travelled steadily onwards day and night at the rate of 60 miles an hour, it would not yet be halfway there. Jupiter, the largest planet, has a diameter twelve times greater than our earth.

All the planets have been found to turn, or *rotate*, on an axis. The earth takes one day for rotation; the sun over 25 days; Jupiter takes nearly 10 hours; the moon 27½ days. All members of the solar system travel, or *revolve*, round the sun. Planet, which means *wanderer*, was the name given by the ancients, because planets were observed in different parts of the heavens on different days.

Several of the planets have moons. The word satellite, meaning *attendant* or *follower*, is given to these smaller spheres because they *follow* their planets in their revolutions round the sun. The earth has one moon; no moons have been discovered for Mercury and Venus; but Saturn has nine (possibly ten) moons.

It is interesting to note that the moon's *rotation* takes 27½ days, and its *revolution* round the earth also takes 27½ days, so that we always see the same face of the moon. As seen from the earth there is no *apparent* rotation of the moon.

The sun is the only member of the solar system that is hot enough to glow. The earth is cold at the surface, but hot within. The small moon, though now cold, was probably once hot within. The heat of the

sun is so great, that even mineral substances exist in the form of gases. This white-hot sun radiates heat into space. With great speed (in about 8 minutes) these rays cross the 93,000,000 miles that separate us from the sun. A fast train would require 175 years to do the same distance.

**Stars.**—Stars are suns, some of which are a million times brighter than our sun. They are all travelling; some so fast that a cannon ball in flight alongside them would appear to be creeping. The distance to the nearest stars is so great that miles are useless for measurement, and the velocity of light is used as a measure. Light travels at the rate of 186,000 miles a second; that is, a ray of light would travel nearly  $7\frac{1}{2}$  times round the world in one second, yet the nearest star is  $3\frac{1}{2}$  light years away, and some stars are thousands of light years from us. From this statement we can gain some slight idea of the immensity of the space surrounding our comparatively tiny solar system with its sun, planets and satellites.

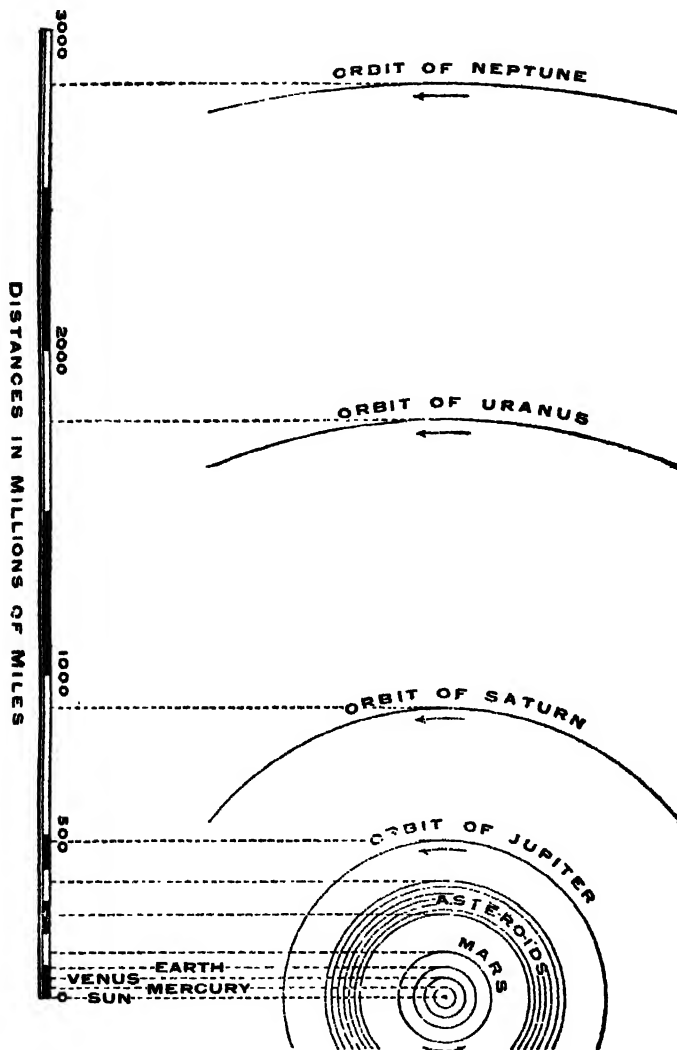
**The Shape of the Earth.**—In early times, men believed that the earth was flat. Some men, however, noticed that the apparent meeting place of the heavens and the earth was circular, hence the earth was thought to be like a huge flat cake surrounded on all sides by the ocean. It was very difficult for men to imagine how this vast disc could be supported in space. According to the Hindus, it was supported on the backs of four elephants, themselves standing on the back of a huge tortoise swimming in the sea. The Northmen represented the disc as supported by a gigantic ash tree, which had its roots in hell, and its branches in heaven.

It was not until about the sixth century before Christ that philosophers taught that *the earth was a fixed ball* with other bodies revolving round it. Aristarchus of Samos, who lived about 250 B.C., made the startling discovery that *the earth revolved*. This fact was not generally believed until 1800 years afterwards. Copernicus, A.D. 1473-1543,

devoted many years of his life to proving that the earth revolved. Later, Sir Isaac Newton, 1642-1727, showed that the shape of the earth was somewhat like an orange, slightly flattened at the poles, and bulging a little at the equator. It must be remembered, however, that it is an exaggeration to say that the earth is the shape of an orange; for the difference between the earth's shape, and that of a ball, is very slight. The circumference of the earth is approximately 25,000 miles, the diameter through the centre at the equator is 7,926 miles, and the diameter through the centre from the north to the south pole is only twenty-six miles shorter.

**Distances and sizes of the planets**—In his book, *The Vault of Heaven*, Sir Richard Gregory gives a description of the solar system which enables one to form a clear idea of both the distances and sizes of the planets. He says: "The earth is approximately eight thousand miles in diameter. Let us represent this by one foot and construct an imaginary Solar System on the scale of one foot to eight thousand miles. The dome of St. Paul's Cathedral, more than one hundred feet in diameter, is a fitting representation of a hemisphere of the sun. Mercury would be proportionally represented by a baby's head at Chancery Lane; Venus, by a globe rather less than one foot in diameter revolving in a path at the distance of Charing Cross from the Cathedral dome; the earth by a one-foot globe at Buckingham Palace; and the moon a cricket ball circling round her at a distance of thirty feet. Mars, a man's head, travelling in a circle having for its radius the distance from St. Paul's to South Kensington Museum, the minor planets, or asteroids, small shot, revolving at the distance of Hammer-smith; the radius of Jupiter's orbit would be just beyond Richmond, the planet itself being a globe eleven feet in diameter; Saturn, a nine-foot globe, would be at Staines, near Windsor, and would move round St. Paul's at this distance;





THE RELATIVE DISTANCES OF THE PLANETS FROM THE SUN

Uranus would be a four-foot globe at Reading; and Neptune, a globe four and a half feet in diameter, would have for the radius of his orbit, the distance from London to Oxford."

## 2. FINDING DIRECTION

**Aim.**—To show the importance of a general rule of direction.

**Method.**—Begin the lesson by asking several children in turn to describe their way to school. Ask each child to give a description of the return journey also. Consider with the children the different methods which have been used to describe the journeys. This should elicit the fact that one or more of three methods is used: (1) the streets along which the child came are mentioned by name; (2) outstanding objects are referred to; (3) the turnings that have been made from the first street are enumerated.

Proceed to tell of the difficulties of travel in unknown, or undeveloped, country, where there are no tracks or landmarks. Ask the children to name places where it may be difficult to find one's way. "In the desert" and "On the sea" are answers which will readily be forthcoming.

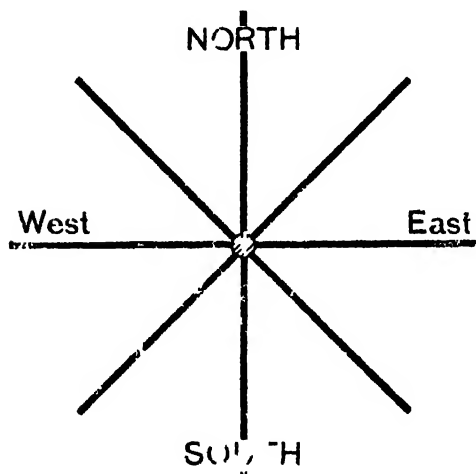
Tell the children of the peculiar property of the magnetised needle. A simple illustration of the action of a magnetised needle will be found helpful. This can be done by floating a needle, one end of which has been rubbed with a magnet, in a bowl of water. Move the bowl to different desks in the classroom. Ask the children to point in the same direction as

the needle head. Take care that the children point in the correct direction, and not to an object in the classroom. Name this direction.

Place the blackboard in a horizontal position. Draw a north-south line; mark the north, taking care to let the children see that the magnetised needle is used as a guide. Make a line crossing the first one at right angles, and name the other points.

Ask the children individually to point to the north with the left hand, and to the south with the right hand. Continue similar exercises in which the children find a second compass point when they have found the first one correctly.

Show a mariner's compass and let the children draw, on cardboard or stiff paper, a copy of the dial on which only eight points are marked. Keep the compass cards for use in later lessons. (See diagram.) A slotted upright post, or stick such as those in use on some railway stations, is valuable. Make signs (N, S, E, W) which can be slipped into the appropriate grooves. (See page 422.)



A SIMPLE COMPASS CARD

**Teaching hints.** It is not essential that the whole of the foregoing work should be completed in one teaching period. There are several stages where the teacher may conveniently make a break to suit the peculiar circumstances. Each division of the work should, however, include an application of the principles taught, no matter how brief the teaching period, or how elementary the principles.

In this lesson it is important to impress the point that *direction* is what we must think about. Do not allow the children to say that a certain point on a wall is the

north. The portable indicator, if used frequently, will prevent such muddled thought. The purpose of the story is to show the value of the mariner's compass, and also, as an extension of the previous story, to explain early ideas of the earth's shape.

## STORY

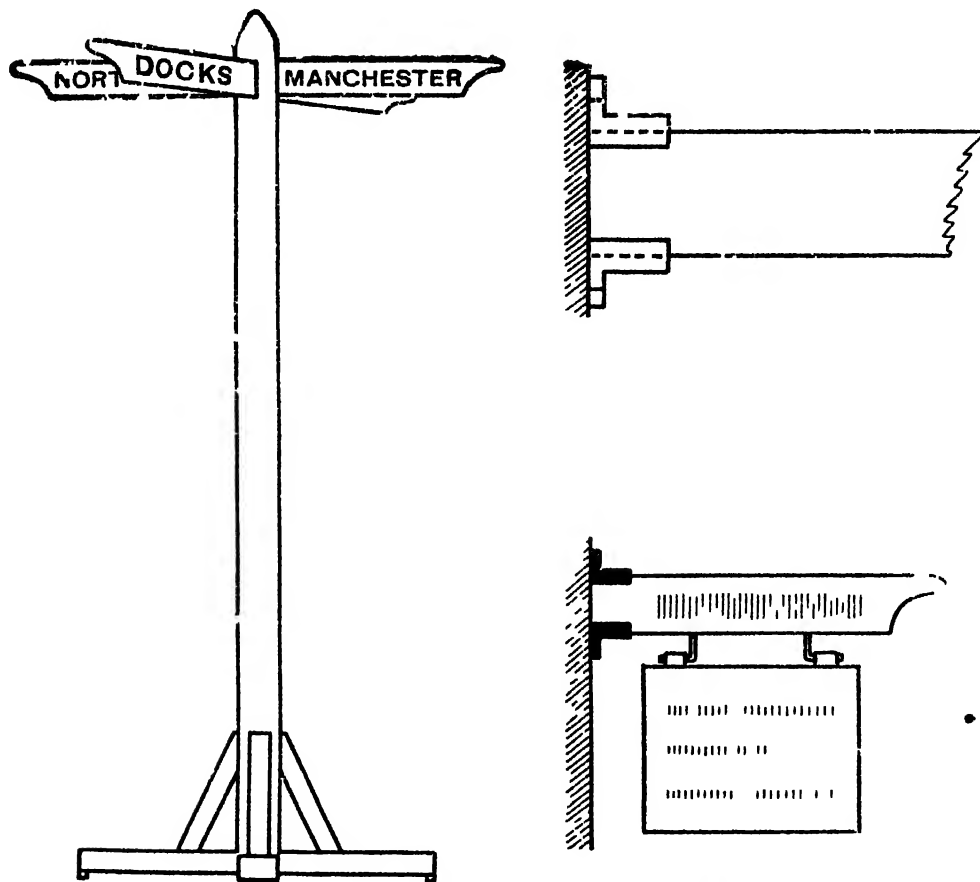
### The Voyage of Christopher Columbus

Many of you will have heard in your history lessons the story of the voyage of Christopher Columbus to America. Have you ever wondered what it must have felt like to be on one of the ships which sailed on this famous voyage? It must have been a very risky voyage, and one that few people would care to make. That is why some of the sailors who went with Columbus were taken from prison and were compelled to go on board.

At that time very few people knew as much about the world as did Columbus. He wanted to find the way to the Spice Islands, for everybody wanted pepper and other spices to eat with their salt food. In those days farmers had very little hay and no turnips or mangolds with which to feed their cattle during the winter months, so in the autumn they killed most of their animals and salted the meat to keep for winter food.

So Columbus was going to sail westward in an attempt to reach a place which had previously been reached by going eastward. He felt sure that he would reach the coast of India, but he did not know, and nobody knew, that a great New World lay in the way. (Use the globe to explain this paragraph.)

To try the test he had to sail across an unknown ocean for a great distance in a small sailing ship. Many men who lived at the same time as Columbus had made long voyages, but they had not sailed far from the coast. By keeping near the coast, it was easy for them to pilot their ships with



PORTABLE DIRECTION POST FOR USE IN THE CLASSROOM

the help of landmarks, such as headlands and capes. The voyage which Columbus planned was different from the others. He was going to steer his ship on a straight course away to the west, where there were no landmarks to guide him, and where no man had previously sailed. How was he going to keep his ship heading in the same direction when he had lost sight of the land?

Some of you may be able to tell how Columbus could keep his ships heading for the west. It was a way which meant that at every moment someone should be observing the direction in which they were sailing. Somewhere on the ship was the small instrument called the mariner's compass

which was necessary for the success of the adventure. The sailors were frightened, for they knew that each day they were sailing with their backs towards home. They became more and more timid as they sailed on, fearing lest they should slip over the end of the earth. Imagine how the sailors would feel when, morning after morning, as they looked over the bow of the ship, they saw no trace of land. On deck they could see the compass. Ever since they had left Spain on 3rd August, the needle had pointed to the port side of the ship—that is the right side. Now it was October. From their own simple records of the voyage, the sailors could tell how many days they had been

sailing on this westward course. They knew how many times the sun had risen since they set sail. It was not until the sun rose for the seventieth time since they set sail that land was sighted.

Columbus thought that this land was India, and he returned to Spain with the news that he had found a new way to India. We know now that he did not actually reach India, but he did much more than that, for he found a New World, which is now known as America.

(A fuller account of the voyage of Columbus is told in the history section of Volume IV. There is a Class Picture of Columbus ship, the *Santa Maria*, No. 52 in the portfolio.)

### 3. DIRECTION THE SUN

**Aim.** To show how the sun can help us to find direction.

**Method.**—Ask the children to point to the place where they first see the sun in the morning. Then ask them to point to where it is last seen in the evening. Try to get answers that will lead to the conclusion that the apparent course of the sun is an arc. This may be done by asking the children to point out the position of the sun at intermediate times. Where do you see the sun as you come to school? Where do you look for it at playtime? Let the children trace the apparent course of the sun by pointing. Ask the children to name the points of the compass where the sun appears and disappears. In which direction must they face to see it when it is highest? In which direction will the shadow then point? If possible obtain shadow lengths by fixing pins in the window sills. Ask children to notice the lengths of the shadows at intervals during the day.

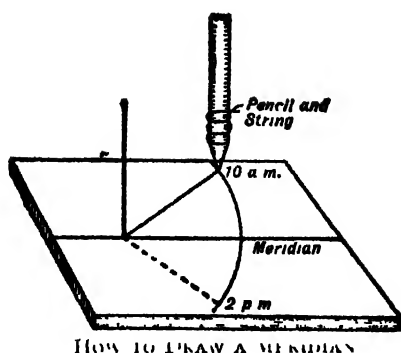
If work in the open is possible, the teacher may direct simple observations. Care should be taken to select a level place where the work may be done. It will be found convenient to use a shadow stick one yard long. Lessons taken in the afternoon session will

be found the most suitable during the early stages. Preparations for the work should be made on the same day. Fix the shadow stick perpendicularly on a selected spot. (A simple plumb line for helping to fix the stick vertically can be made by hanging a door key on a piece of string.) Observe the length of its shadow. Draw a line along the shadow cast by the stick. Contrast the shadow with others that were marked earlier on the same day. What change were taking place in the shadow during the morning? What is happening to the shadow in the afternoon? At what time was the shadow shortest? In which direction does the noon shadow point?

**Teaching hints.** Some of the work done in this lesson may be a revision of what has been done in lower classes. Repetition of real observation is not time wasted, but well spent if its results are convincing. The use of the terms rising and setting has been avoided in referring to the apparent movement of the sun because they are misleading. It will probably be found that to speak of the appearance of the sun prevents confusion of thought. Care should be taken in referring to the apparent course of the sun.

Much incidental work during the year will be found helpful in training the children to observe sun signs. Ask them to notice the gardens in a particular street. They will find that the flowers are in bloom on one side and not on the other. Why is this? (The north side gets more sunshine.) Again notice the bark of the trees on a certain road. There they will probably see that the bark is green with moss on the same side of every tree. Which side is green? It is valuable work to construct a simple sundial for its use establishes ideas of coincidence between earth movement and time.

**The meridian.**—At some point in the practical course it will be necessary to find the meridian. Fix a rod upright in a place where the sun can shine upon it. About two hours



HOW TO DRAW A MERIDIAN

before midday, observe the direction and length of the shadow of the rod, and by means of a piece of string, fitted loosely to the base of the rod, draw an arc of a circle having a radius equal in length to the shadow. In the afternoon, mark the point on the arc when the shadow again reaches it. A line bisecting the angle between the directions of the two shadows is a true north and south line. It is a meridian which, if continued, would pass through the north and south poles.

*To find the south with a watch* When the sun is shining, the south can readily be found by means of a watch. Point the hour hand to the sun, and divide the angle between the XII and the hour hand by an imaginary line. This line will point to the south.

#### Application to descriptive geography.

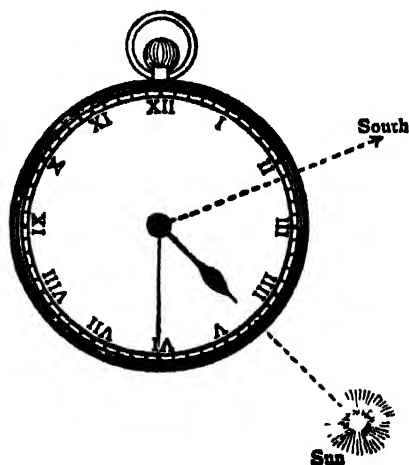
Reference might be made to a desert journey, for the children have doubtless some knowledge of the camel-men. There is a lesson on *Hot Dry Lands* in Volume I., and a Class Picture of a Camel Caravan, No. 71 in the portfolio. The children should understand that in the desert lands the sun shines every day and it can be used as a guide. Could the sun be used as a guide every day in England? The way in which travellers cross the desert is by journeying from one oasis to another, keeping as near as they can to their direct route. In this way their journey becomes a number of zig-zag stages, each of which is a straight march from one oasis to another. Draw a blackboard sketch

to illustrate this point. Tell how and why the camel-men begin their journeys in the early morning. Speak of an imaginary day's journey in an easterly direction. Let the children tell where the sun would be from hour to hour as they travelled onwards during the day. Let them tell how the shadows would vary in length and direction. Refer again to the experiments made with pins in a window sill, or with the shadow stick in the playground. Is it likely that the camel-men would have watches with which they could find the south? Would it be easy to keep watches in the desert? (The fine sand would soon spoil all but specially made watches.) Would camel-men be likely to have compasses? Why not? Do camel-men dress and live like English people? They have watched the sun and stars for centuries; are they likely to change their ways and buy watches and compasses? (Such questions as these are useful because they promote thought and discussion.)

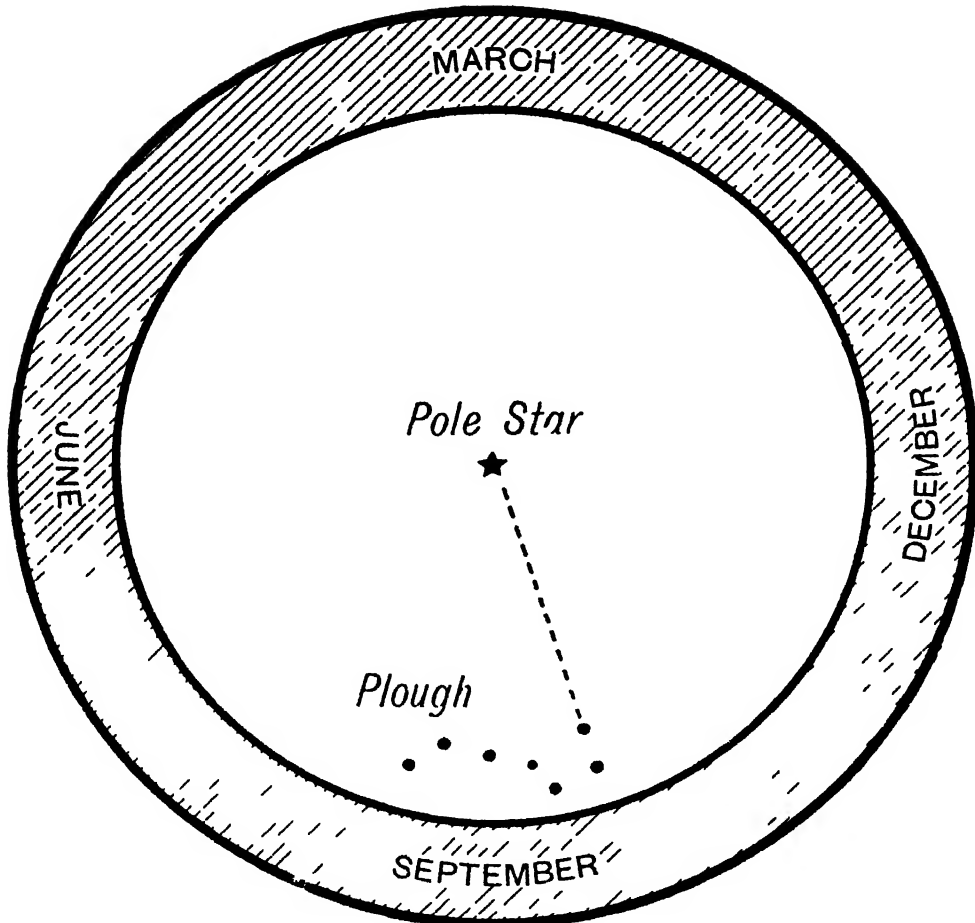
#### 4. THE POLE STAR AND THE PLOUGH

**Aim.** —To show how the stars help us to find direction.

**Method.** —Tell the children that there is a star which always keeps the same position.



HOW TO FIND THE SOUTH WITH A WATCH



CARDBOARD DISC FOR LESSONS ON THE STARS AND DIRECTION

This star is a good guide to those who want to find directions, as it shines in the north. Name the star—the Pole Star. Point out that it is an easy matter for us to find direction on a clear night if we can locate this one particular star. Make a disc of cardboard, diameter about 3 ft., and mark it as shown in the diagram. Fix the disc on the blackboard with a drawing pin. Tell the children that the signs and the pin head represent stars. Turn the disc in an anti-clockwise direction, and ask the children to point out which star has not moved. Notice the group of stars. Name the group. Ask

the children how many stars there are in the group. Why is it called the Plough? In which way does the group appear to move? Does the group lose its shape? Which stars do you think represent the handle of the Plough? Does the group move as a plough moves? Join the leading stars of the Plough and produce the line. Ask the children what they notice about this line. (It touches the Pole Star. In reality the line of the pointers when extended passes a little to one side of the Pole Star.) On the board, beneath the disc, print the word September. That is the time when the Plough is in

the "correct" position. Find, by questioning, the position of the group in March, December and June. Mark these months round the disc.

Let the children make star discs for themselves. Double discs, of different diameter, fastened at the centres with a paper fastener will be found suitable. Occasionally the children might be asked to turn their disc to show the position on the night of that day.

If it is possible (as it may be in a private school or with Boy Scouts or Girl Guides), compare at night the direction in which the north end of a compass needle points with the direction of the Pole Star. To do this take a pair of wooden compasses such as are used for demonstration purposes on the blackboard, keep one leg horizontal and point the other leg to the Pole Star. Compare the direction of the horizontal leg with that of the compass needle.

The Pole Star is sometimes called the North Star because it indicates approximately the geographical north. At the north pole the Pole Star is almost exactly overhead. Invite the children to imagine they are discoverers setting out to find the north pole. How could they find their way by night? How could they tell when they had arrived at the north pole?

**Teaching hints.** It is important that these lessons should have for their real object the stars as aids in finding direction. Star lore has no purpose in our work unless it contributes to this end. For several reasons the subject of the stars is more suitable for winter lessons, and it is advisable that the work should be done in the first term.

If the children can find local pointers during the lessons on direction encourage them to do so. Care must be taken in these attempts to fix landmarks and bearings, lest the children should select objects too near their point of observation. Tell them to look for the distant objects which are prominent, e.g. hills, the distant wood, the high buildings in the next town, the lake down the

valley. These places may be associated with the celestial bodies by saying that the Pole Star stands over a certain hill, or over a certain village; the sun at noon is above  $x$  or  $y$ .

Mention should be made of certain streets which have a north-south bearing. Tell the children that in walking from  $a$  to  $b$  on a clear night the Pole Star is in front of them. Invite them to find similar streets, or streets that have east-west bearings.

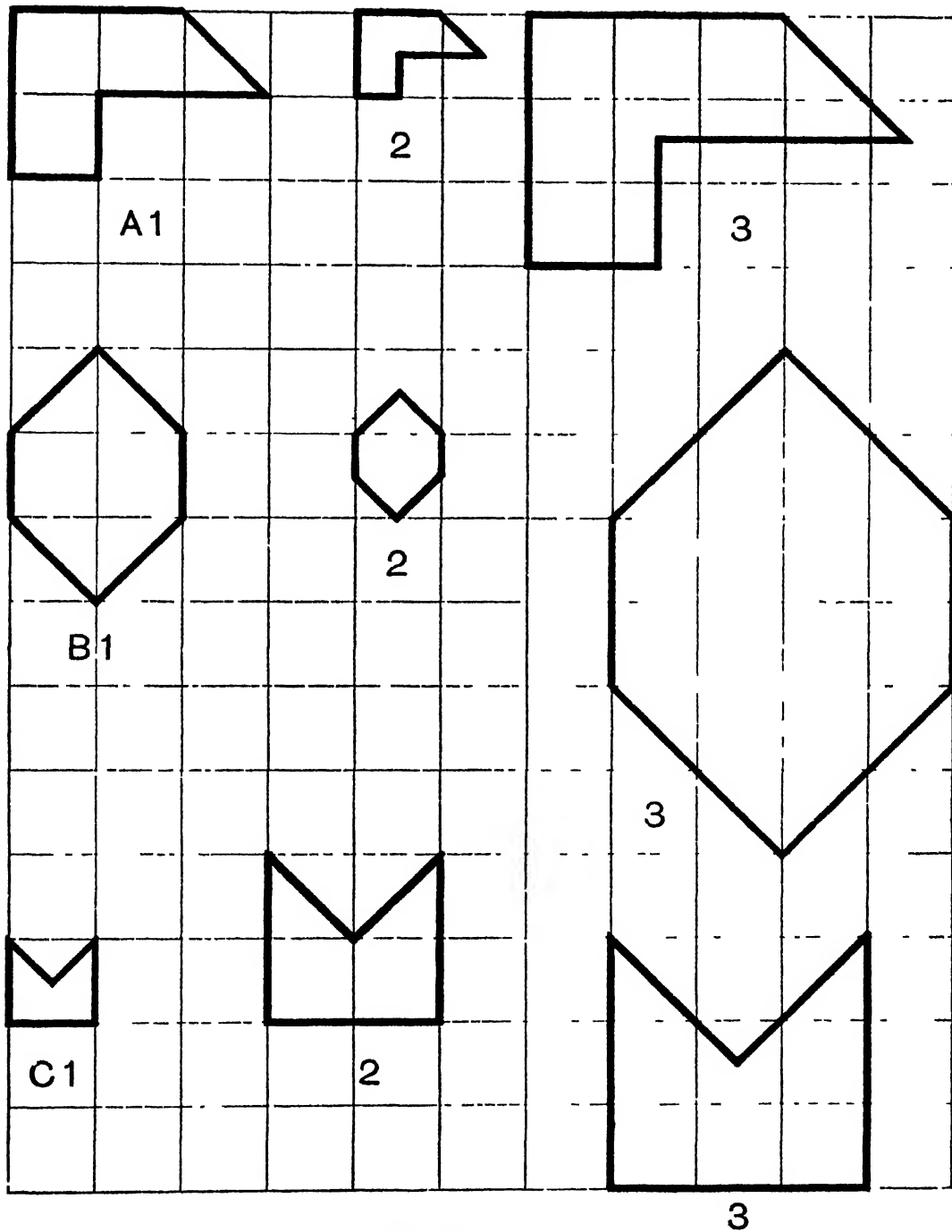
**Application to descriptive geography.**—A story of an imaginary desert journey might be told to supplement that told in the previous lesson. The children should understand that the stars are seen every night in the desert lands. Are the stars always visible in England at night? They should of course realise that the moon is not always to be seen, and that the stars are the most reliable guides. First tell of a simple north-south journey. Children will understand how much more pleasant it is to travel in the cool air of night than in the torrid heat of the day. Tell them of the intense blue of the sky, owing to the clear atmosphere. Compare the smoke-laden atmosphere of great cities. Let them picture the scene—the undulating sand thrown into deeper relief by the moon or star light, the long line of camels, the monotony of the scene except for the splendour of the heavens, the deep stillness. Let them imagine what would happen if the guides did not follow the direction as told by the stars. Remind them of the story of the Wise Men and the Star in the East.

## 5. THE MAKING OF PLANS

### PART I.

**Aim.** --To teach the children how to make and how to read a plan, with special reference to the comparison of shapes.

**Method.** Let each child measure the top of his desk. Ask the children the measure-



### SKETCHING EXERCISES

Drawings of this character should be done on squared paper to help children to understand that persistence of shape is the dominant point when drawing figures.



ments they have made. What is the length of our drawing paper? How can we draw the desk top on this paper? (By making the drawing smaller than the object.) Accept suggestions for a length from the children, and draw it before them on one of the papers. Ask for suggestions for a suitable breadth. Accept one and draw the figure. Hold up the drawing to the class. Does it look like the outline of the desk top? (No.) Why? (It is not the correct shape.) How can it be improved? (By making it narrower.) Alter the plan and hold it up for inspection. Does it seem to be right now? (Yes.) Why? (It is the same shape as the desk top.) How have we kept the correct shape? (By making each line  $\frac{1}{2}$  of its length on the desk.) Let the children draw the plan. Mark on the papers the scale (1' = 3").

Make a drawing of a side view of the desk on the blackboard. Ask the children to name any differences in the drawings. Contrast the points of view. Mark the position of your inkwell on the plan which you have drawn. Can I show the position of the inkwell on my drawing? (No.) Why not? (Because your drawing shows only the side of the desk.)

Measure from corner to corner (a diagonal) on your plans. What is the distance? What will the distance be between the corresponding corners of the desk? Test your answer.

**Teaching hints.** In this lesson we are dealing with the notion of area. By children of the primary school this notion is acquired, not by arithmetical processes giving definite areas stated in square-measure units, but by appreciating smaller spaces as units of something larger. From the part we can proceed to the whole, continuing, if we wish, from the desk top to the school, and from thence to the district, and so on to the world.

It is necessary to notice that the dominant point is not scale, but persistence of shape. The teacher should resort to the device of a scale as a way in which the correct shape of the object is maintained. Use squared

paper if possible in these exercises, and give frequent practice in sketching shapes of different sizes similar to those in the diagram. Such work will lead the children to recognise shapes quickly—an important matter when map reading is started.

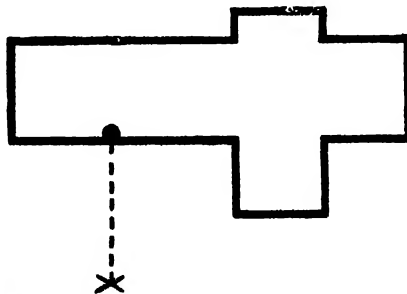
At this stage it is advisable to spend some time in considering the limitations of the plan which is being made. Bear in mind the dimension that has been lost when the plan supersedes the elevation; we shall require to remedy this defect in our sketch maps next year.

As we have noticed above, the use of the scale is not a feature of the plan which we should stress. The simple exercise of measuring from the plan is, however, worth attempting, if it is only for the added interest which the plan has for the child when he finds that he can discover something from it.

## STORY

### The Hidden Treasure

"This is a real adventure!" cried Roger, as he and his brother Jack pored over the words scribbled in faded ink on the scrap of paper they had found under the attic floor. It was evidently a message left by a cavalier who was expecting a raid from enemy soldiers, and who had hidden his wealth so that they should not plunder it. The faint characters on the paper gave the clue to the hiding place. There was a rough sketch the shape of a cross, and within the



PLAN SHOWING WHERE THE TREASURE WAS HIDDEN

lines on the right hand side was a mark, against which was written, "Treasure buried here." Then came the words, "Find the chipped stone in the south wall, and from there take 20 paces towards the midday sun."

There were the ruins of several old buildings in the village, and the boys could only hope that the one which held the treasure was still to be found. "It's very likely to be the castle," said Roger, "that would be the safest place to hide anything."

"But the castle has four sides the same length, with a turret at each corner, and the plan of that would be a square, not like this," objected Jack.

"Can it be the ruins in the Dene?" asked Roger.

"We'll go and have a look at them," replied his brother. "Come on." They made their way to the ruins of what was once a great mansion. The moss-covered stones sunk in the ground marked the foundations of the outside walls of the building, which were connected in places by traces of the inside walls.

Clambering up the stones as high as he could, Jack looked around at the outline of the building, which was clear to him as he stood above the ruins. He could see that this was not the building that had been sketched, though Roger insisted that it was the same shape. But, as Jack pointed out, the south wall on the plan was a long side, while the long walls of this building were on the east and the west.

The boys sat down to think more carefully about the plan, and particularly of the way in which the long walls pointed east and west. Then they knew that it represented the little monastery church. Off they went to see if they could make a more fortunate search this time.

Their guess was right. Now the search was beginning in earnest, but another difficulty had to be overcome. The chipped stone which they had to find had crumbled to pieces long ago. How were they to find the part of the wall from which they had to make the

twenty paces? The lads pondered for some time over this fresh problem, until Roger, who was looking at the plan, had a good idea. "Listen, Jack," he said. "I think I know how we can find the spot where the stone was." And he showed how the distance from the corner of the walls to the place from which the steps were to be taken was roughly twice the distance between the hidden treasure and the chipped stone.

Jack accordingly stepped off forty paces from the corner, turned to his right, marched another twenty paces, dug his heel into the ground and shouted, "There's the spot!" Nothing more could be done that day, as it was getting dark, and they would need shovels to dig for the treasure. They marked the spot with a stone and planned to come again the next morning.

Next day the boys began to dig at the spot that they had marked. But they found nothing, and they decided to search again. "I think your paces were wrong," said Roger. "Your stride is smaller than a man's. Last night I asked father the length of a man's stride, and he told me it was about thirty inches."

"Let's work out the distance and measure it, then," replied Jack. "I have a tape measure."

They measured the distances again, and Roger made sure that they turned due south from the wall by using his pocket compass. Again the boys dug, but with the same result,—there was no sign of treasure.

"I think that compass of yours is broken," said Jack. "At twelve o'clock I am going to stand against the wall and measure towards the sun." That time the spot was four feet from the hole that they had just dug. They started to dig again, and they had not long been at work before they came to a small metal box, rusted with age. They had found the treasure!

(The children will be interested to speculate on the nature of the treasure. The way in which the boys found the spot should be worked out practically in a field, or in the playground.)

## 6. THE MAKING OF PLANS

## PART II.

**Aim.** -To teach the children how to make and how to read a plan, with special reference to an appreciation of the relative sizes of spaces planned.

**Method.** Revise the points found in the previous lesson, especially noticing what we had to do to keep the shape of objects when we made a plan. Make a large rough plan of a desk on the blackboard. Try to draw an equally large plan of another desk on the board. This is impossible because there is not enough room to complete it. Another board is needed. How can we draw the two plans on the same board? We must make the plans smaller. We want to show a plan of the classroom on the blackboard. Rub out the other drawing and begin again, making the plans smaller. Arrive at the rule that the larger the object to be drawn the smaller the scale, the paper being the same size.

Consider the relative size of the objects. Examine the spaces representing the desk and the room on your plan. Point out that the ratio of the size of different objects is maintained.

Let the children make a similar plan, preferably on squared paper. Ask them to let a unit (the side of a square) represent a foot, and give them the dimensions of the room. On their plans ask each child to show, to scale and in correct position, his desk and the teacher's desk. Ask each child to find the distance from his desk to the wall on the north side of the room.

**Teaching hints.**—From the idea of shape we now proceed to that of relative size. When the children are preparing for the second plan, they will see the necessity of reducing the size of their first drawing. It is now our task to develop the child's notion of sizes as parts of larger units.

We have shown that drawings of various sizes all represent a plan of the desk, and

similarly the plans of the room may be changed in size without detriment. Now let us combine the two plans, and it is by the judicious arrangement of pairs that we can illustrate the point we wish to make. When the children tell us that an object "seems to be the wrong size," we are leading them to appreciate the importance of maintaining proportion in their conceptions of size. So, when we speak of the Sahara Desert, and point out the region on a map, the children may think of it as a fraction of a unit (Africa). That unit can be found on any other map, or on the globe, because it has always the same well-known shape, and the Desert could be visualised as a fraction of a unit which is not always the same size.

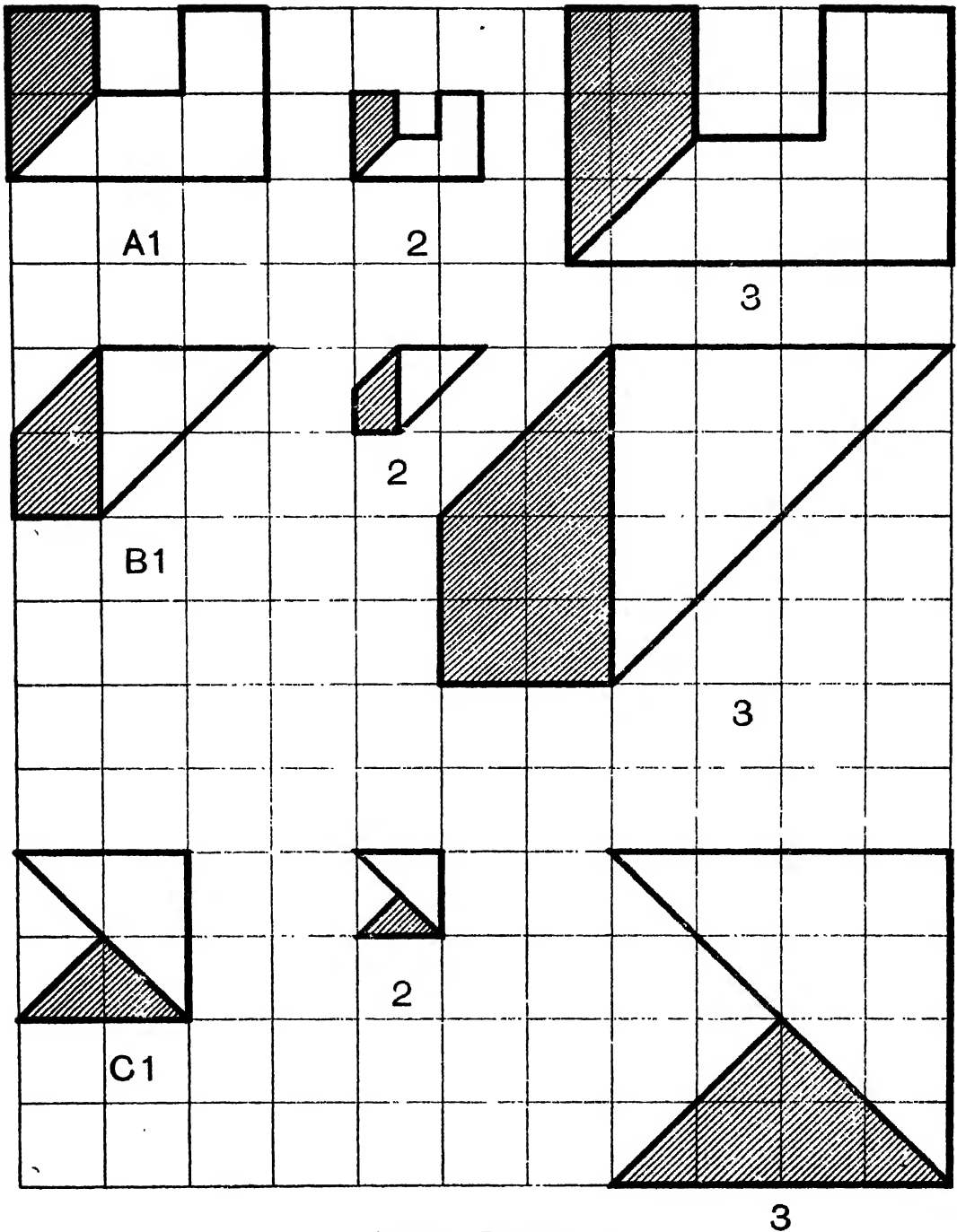
It is recommended that practice in the representation of space relations be given at this stage. These may be an extension of the sketching exercises suggested in the last section. The diagram shows how the figures may be used in this connection. It is left to the teacher to decide how much help should be given to the class in this work, but it will be well to remember that the drawings are intended to give exercise in the estimation of a ratio.

## 7. THE MAKING OF PLANS

## PART III.

**Aim.** To teach the children how to make and how to read a plan.

**Method.**—Make a plan of the school district. Start by drawing the school boundaries as a small outline near the middle of the paper and work outwards. Estimate distances and directions and show the main roads in the vicinity, with the adjacent streets which connect them with the school. Show by suitable boundaries the position and the size of any important buildings. Build up the plan step by step with the class, so that a familiarity with the point of view may be created, and ask for the



### SKETCHING EXERCISES

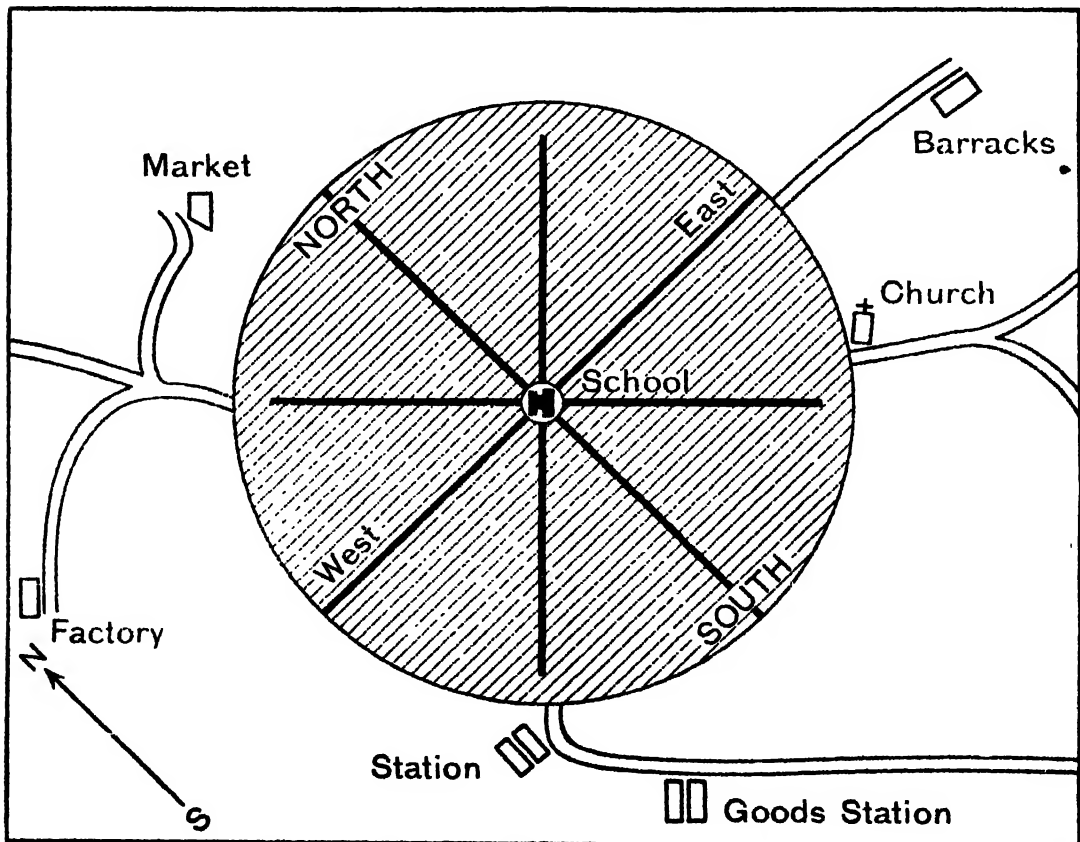
Drawings on squared paper intended to give practice in the estimation of a ratio.

names of all streets indicated. It is a good system to use two boards during this lesson; one should be in a horizontal position, while the other is placed in the usual position for the class.

Let the children draw a line on the maps to show the north-south bearing. Let them use the compass cards to find out the direction from one place to another. This can be done by laying the card, properly set, on the point of the plan from which direction is being found. Obtain a few picture postcards of the district. Continue the contrast of pictures and maps which was begun in a previous lesson. Notice the width of the road. What appears to happen on the picture? (The road is narrower in the distance.) Examine the map. Does this

show any change in the width of the road? Look at a postcard showing a building. This is a view of the south side of the Town Hall. Can you tell from the view what is to the north of the Town Hall? (No.) Now look at your map. Is there any building to the north of the Town Hall? (Yes.) What building is it?

**Teaching hints.**—In this lesson we begin the making of plans of regions. Previously we could envisage the objects which were being drawn, making direct comparisons between object and plan. Now, however, we proceed to the stage where we must represent what we know is there, rather than what we see. The children can point to the landmarks around the school. These are our



HOW TO DRAW A PLAN OF THE DISTRICT ABOUT THE SCHOOL

key positions, but we must know how to reach them. Here the importance of our ideas of direction will be realised, and we shall require to know more than distance and route when we are making our plan. To say that the barracks is one mile from here on the Henley Road contributes little to the progress of the work unless we have plotted this route, but to be told that this building is one mile west of the school is a material aid to making our plan. These are our primary attempts to trace on our plans the way from 'here' to 'not here'. In doing this we use for our aid the facts which have been collected in the earlier lessons on direction, and we prepare for the definite lessons on routes.

The use of the compass card is intended to give scope for exercises in finding direction on the plan. Once the drawing has been orientated the north-south line clearly drawn, it will not be a difficult matter to set the compass card and read directions. Vary the mode. Such work will lead to clearer thought in map reading and help the children to understand direction from another's point of view. Ask questions such as, 'Point to the North Sea' and say in which direction you are pointing.

Make use of the class indicator again. Substitute for the aims already used, others which bear the names of local landmarks.

Aerial views should be obtained of the district if possible, as these help considerably in the teaching of drawing plans at this stage. Subject such views to close inspection. Contrast them with ordinary views. Try to show what difference would have been made if the photographer had been higher or lower when he took the views. (The children will be interested in the Class Picture, No. 41—*An English Village in Early Norman Times*.)

**A useful exercise**—Place your compass cards in position on the school in the plan. Set them by the north-south line that you have drawn. (See diagram.) Read off the directions of the market, the factory, the

barracks, the church and the station. (The market is north of the school, the barracks is east of the school, etc.)

## 8. OUR ROUTES

### PART I.

**Aim.**—To show the connection between the home town and other places, and to find out how we can reach the world beyond our boundary.

#### I. OUR ROADS

**Method.** (a) *Outdoor work.* If possible take the children along a main road. Draw attention to the signposts and make rough copies of important ones. Take the children to the crossroads. Notice the direction of the main roads. Let the children name the roads. Choose a suitable part of the road where the passing vehicles may be observed. Ask the children to notice the kind of traffic, both vehicles and freight. Find any information you can from the traders' vehicles, e.g. the merchant's trade and his address. In some districts the children will notice a preponderance of certain commodities. This will lead to questions of destination and route. Try to find what the returning lorries carry. If there is a dock road notice the traffic which passes along it. Notice, too, the road to the regional centre and the road to the nearest port.

(b) *Classroom work.* Should it be impossible to make a definite school journey for the purpose of road observation, a successful lesson can often be given by asking the children to tell all they know about the roads. The aim of the lesson may be achieved in this way, though the selection of useful material will need care on the part of the teacher.

Draw a large road plan on the blackboard. Show only the principal roads radiating from the town centre. Accuracy of scale and details of bends may be disregarded, so

long as the plan is true in showing general directions. Orient the plan and make a north-south line. Place the blackboard in the usual position before the class. Ask the children questions about the plan, e.g. Along which road would you travel if you wanted to reach Accrington? In which direction would you travel? Ask a child to point to a certain road on the plan. Ask if anyone has seen a signpost or a milestone in that road. Make a copy of the sign on another blackboard. Do the same with the other important roads, and make suitable signs for the junctions, where these cannot be prepared from the children's answers.

Gather all the information you can about the traffic and merchandise on the roads. Train and bus signs also furnish material for consideration.

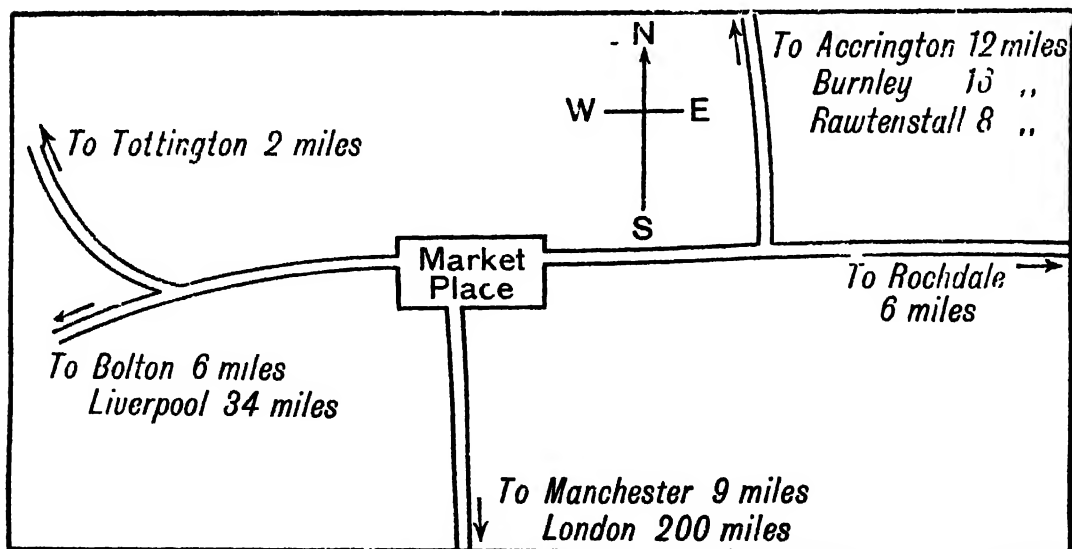
*A useful exercise.*—Let the children copy the skeleton road map. Set them to show on their sketch map the information shown on the signposts.

**Teaching hints.** It is necessary to remind ourselves occasionally that the first function

in the primary school geography is the answering of the question, "Where is it?" The present series of lessons on routes helps to further the work we have already done towards answering this question, and also advances a step by solving another question, "How can we get there?"

We shall find in this series that there is plenty of scope for interesting work out of school, but there should be suitable preparation before a journey of observation. In every instance where work has been done outside, it is essential that a record of the journey should be made. If the children are asked to do work to show what they have learned on one of these tours, let it be a sketch map or a diagram rather than a written composition.

Certain lessons in the series have been arranged in pairs. It is intended that classes which do the outdoor work will at least work the exercises from the other section. In some districts observational journeys can be made along the river and the canal, and the teacher will have no difficulty in directing the attention of his class to salient points in the link between our town, and what is outside our town.



A SIMPLE ROAD MAP OF A DISTRICT

It is a good plan to obtain photographs of places in both directions along our routes. Take the opportunity to display these illustrations sequentially at intervals, and make extensions till, in time, we can leave our shores and pass on to a consideration of the ships of England and the routes they follow.

Make full use of the children's personal knowledge and their propensity for collecting things. Those children who have travelled are always willing to tell what they can remember of the places they visited and the things they saw *en route*. Some of them collect foreign stamps and have a special interest in the place from which the last specimen came. Others have relatives abroad, and sometimes they go to the port from which their relatives sail.

More arrows or signs can be made after each of these lessons, and the classroom indicator should be in frequent use. Change the signs often, or add a pendant extension to the arms, so that additional information may be shown.

## 9. OUR ROUTES

### PART II.

**Aim.**—An extension of the previous work showing another way in which the home town is linked with places outside.

#### 2. OUR RAILWAYS

**Method.**—(a) *Classroom work.*—Ask the children to direct someone to the railway station. Discuss the things seen there, and ask for the names of the next stations in both directions, or, as may be the case, in every direction. Find out which other stations are close to the local line, and ask for things seen on a railway journey to a certain town. Ask the children to tell the positions of any junctions which they have passed. Correlate the work with that of the

previous lesson by referring to the roads which lead to the towns mentioned. Build up a railway map on the blackboard as the lesson proceeds. Notice where the railway is single, double, or laid in numerous tracks. Let the children give reasons for this. (There are more trains at the junction, near the city, or at the port, than there are at certain other places.) If there is another station in the town, build up a second route on the same lines as the first. Ask the children questions concerning the passengers, e.g. To which place do most passengers travel? At which station would you book a ticket for —? In which direction would you travel to reach —? Let the children copy the sketch map showing the railway lines.

(b) *Outdoor work.*—Take the children to a place where they can see a railway track. Choose, preferably, a site where a goods depôt, or an important junction, can be seen. Ask the children to notice the wagon signs and make sure they know the local wagons. What are the signs on the "foreign" wagons? (L.M.R., W.R., N.E.R. or S.R.?) Ask for names of places from which these wagons may have come, and supplement the answers to show which wagons may have come from industrial centres. Look for special trucks, e.g. timber wagons, fish vans, coal wagons, and observe any private traders' wagons which may indicate the destination or home station of the vehicles. Ask the children to name the next station that the passing train will reach. Make them interested in the places beyond that point. Follow the train, in imagination, to the city, the port, the colliery, the seaside, or to whichever place it is going.

**Exercise.**—Let the children fill in the railway sketch map with information that may have been collected during the school journey. The facts may be written on the blackboard, but it will be a good exercise for the children to fill in the map with as little help as possible.



### A Railway Junction

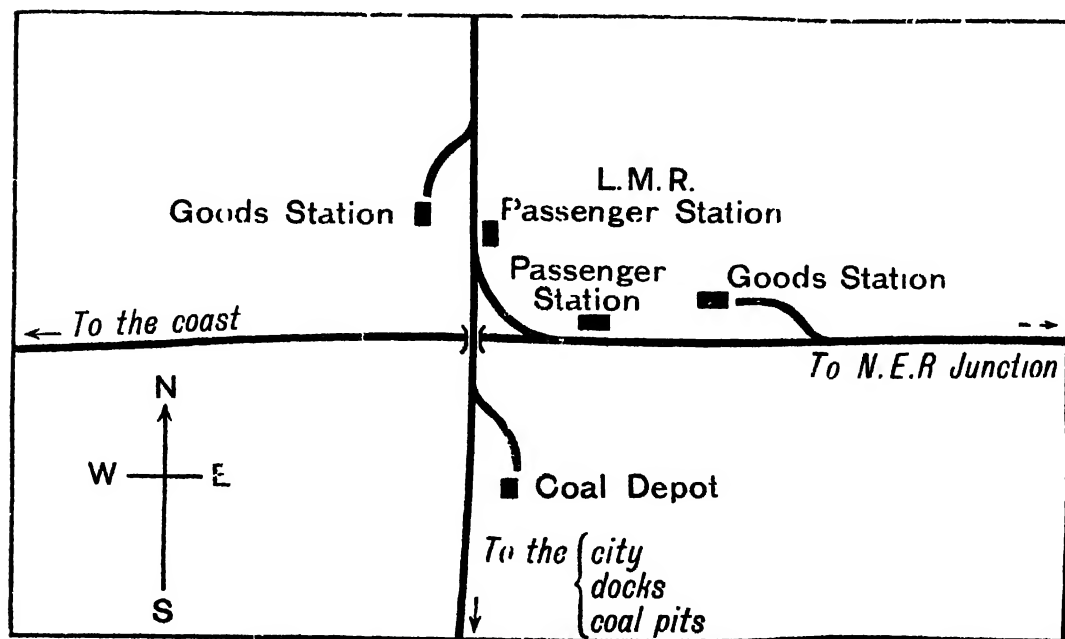
Night time is always the busiest time at the railway junction. During the day the wagons have been unloaded at the goods stations; now they must be grouped together, those for the same destination in one siding, so that they will be ready for the goods train which will take them away. All this preparation is done by the small shunting engine which moves the trucks into the sidings, taking all those for the southward-bound train to one line, those for the northward-bound train to another line, and in this way forming the chains of wagons that will be attached to the passing goods trains.

The shunter must know into which siding he must shunt every wagon. This he finds from the wagon labels. A label may show, not only the place to which the wagon should go, but also the route by which it must be sent.

These trains of goods wagons which travel in the night are in some respects like the

passenger trains which travel mainly by day. There are the express goods trains, sometimes drawn by two powerful engines, which speed along with their heavy loads from one city to another. These trains do not collect the wagons from the smaller stations, for this would delay them, and they must be at the city early in the morning. There are smaller trains which collect the wagons at all the stations on the route to the city. These are like the stopping passenger trains which travel daily to the city. If a traveller wishes to go beyond the city he may have to change from one train to another, or perhaps from one station to another. In the same way the wagon from the local train must join the other train, but this takes place at the junction.

Sometimes, the shunter has problems to solve. Wagon labels become torn and scratched, making it difficult to read destinations and routes, and he must do his best to find out where the wagons have to be sent. Perhaps he will have to go to the office at



A SIMPLE RAILWAY MAP OF A DISTRICT

the station where the clerk will make enquiries, but frequently the contents of the wagon will afford him some information. At one junction he will know that a load of empty barrels is for the chemical works, a truck of sand is intended for the glass works, and a wagon load of skins must be forwarded to the tanneries at the next town.

When morning arrives the wagons are all in place in the goods yard. Traders come to the station to take away their goods, or the railway lorries deliver them at the shops and factories. The work at the junction is not so great as the morning goes on, and then the passenger trains begin to pass more frequently as the working people go to the city.

## 10. OUR ROUTES

### PART III

**Aim.** To show another way in which merchandise is conveyed from place to place.

#### 3. OUR CANALS

**Method.** Question the children on the same lines as those of the preceding lessons. Are there any docks or wharves near the school? What kind of goods are handled at the wharves? From which place have they come? To which place do they go? What is the name of the canal? Name any towns through which it passes. What names of towns have you seen painted on the barges? In which direction would you travel from the wharf to —? How are the barges loaded and unloaded? How do they travel—by steam, horse or sail?

The children may be able to give sufficient information concerning the commodities carried for simple ideas of transport economy to be noted. Contrast the weight of coal in a large barge with that in a merchant's van. A single horse can draw a van carrying

a ton of coal, but it can pull a barge carrying twenty tons.

**Exercise**—Let the children draw a sketch map similar to those which were made to show the railway routes. Let them show the wharf, the direction of places reached by the canal, the way to the docks.

## 11. OUR ROUTES

### PART IV

**Aim.** An extension of the previous work with special reference to river transport.

#### 4. OUR RIVERS

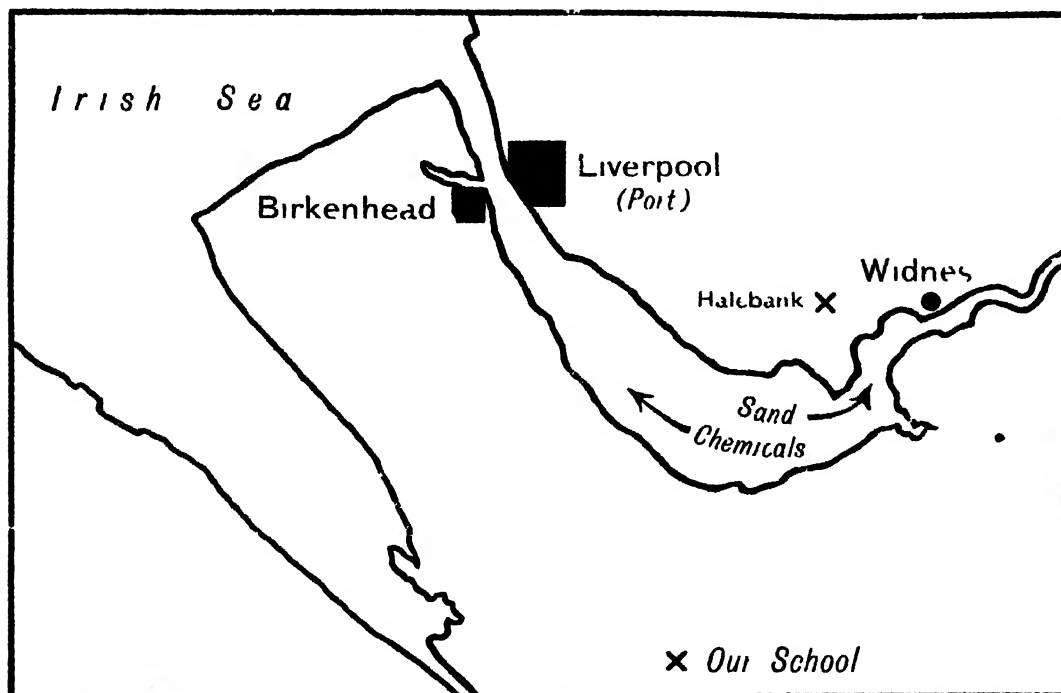
**Method.** Treat the subject in almost the same way as canal transport. Proceed from what is purely local and intimate to the distant and unknown. Bear in mind that we are considering the route because of its importance to us, hence local associations must be stressed.

Have a prepared sketch map in front of the class. Begin by discussing the river in the vicinity. Keep to the subject of what the children have seen on the river. If there is a dock or a quay, spend some time considering features of interest. Question the children freely. Remember this is the part of the lesson when they can contribute most information. Later the teacher will have to tell what is seen along the routes which radiate from the port. Place names are a wonderful source of help in geography. In a dock will be found some that fascinate us by the visions of distant lands which the names arouse. Let us trace the route of one of the ships on its homeward voyage. Follow its course on the map, mark its course on the slate globe in white chalk, and stick a label on its port of origin. Someday we shall hear some stories about that part of the world.

Perhaps our river is not deep enough for large steamers to sail on. Then we may watch the boats that sail past our town. These are only small vessels but they are links in the chain of international trade. Trace the river above and below our town. Find out how far the little boats go in one direction and where they meet the big ships

in the other. Mark what you find on the map you are using.

*Exercise*—Draw sketch maps as in previous lessons and let the children mark on them certain given information such as is suggested in the diagram of the river Mersey.



Fr y Walker Ltd &c

FIGURE 111. MAP OF PART OF THE RIVER MERSEY

# DESCRIPTIVE GEOGRAPHY

## I. CANADA—THE RED INDIANS

### PICTURE REFERENCE



THE RED INDIANS IN EARLY DAYS

**T**HE Class Picture (No. 75 in the portfolio) shows some aspects of Indian life at the present day. It is illustrated on p. 449 and described in the Reference Book. In the above picture are some men making bows and women stretching skins to dry in the sun. On the left is a papoose in a hammock. The homes are called wigwams, and consist of three poles lashed together with hide and covered with buffalo skins. They could be quickly put up and taken down when necessary.

### INTRODUCTION

The "Children's Story" in this lesson deals with the Red Indians as illustrated by Longfellow's poem of *Hiawatha*. It would be advisable before beginning this story to revise some of the work already dealt with in Volume I. If the first year's course has been followed the children will know something of the Eskimos and the Lumbermen, and of the workers on the grasslands and fishing grounds of Canada. The story of

the coming of the white man should be told briefly. The way has already been prepared by the story of Columbus on page 421 of this volume. The salient points of the history of Canada are here set out for the teacher's reference.

The history of the English in America begins with the expedition of John Cabot. The news of the discoveries of Columbus caused great excitement in Europe and many expeditions were sent out. The merchants of Bristol wished to have a share in the New World for they already carried on trade with distant Iceland. In 1497 they sent out John Cabot (a Venetian merchant who lived in Bristol) with five ships to find out what fresh lands he could find. Henry VII encouraged the expedition and granted to his 'well beloved John Cabot citizen of Venice to Lewis Sebastian and Sinius sons of the said John, full and free authority, leave and power upon their own proper costs and charge to seek out discover and finde whatsoever isles, countries, regions or provinces of the heathen and infidels, which before this time have been unknown to all Christians.

Keeping to the north of the Spanish waters Cabot reached the American coast in the neighbourhood of Newfoundland or Nova Scotia. He found few inhabitants, but as the soil was fertile and the climate temperate Cabot was convinced that he had discovered the north-eastern part of Asia. He was especially struck by the immense quantities of fish on the Newfoundland Banks, for his crew had only to lower baskets into the water to catch cod. On his return to England, Henry VII was delighted with his success, granted him a pension of £20 a year, and advanced considerable sums of money for a second expedition. But the second expedition was a failure, instead of the coveted lands of Cathay and Cipango, Cabot discovered rocky, or forest clothed coasts, and found his way blocked by icebergs. Slowly he realised the bitter truth that he had not discovered Cathay, but some other land

worthless for purposes of trade. Although many brave attempts were made to discover a North West Passage through the Arctic Ocean, England did not take much share in voyages of discovery till another fifty years had passed.

Attempts at colonisation made by Sir Humphrey Gilbert and Sir Walter Raleigh proved failures. A French explorer, Jacques Cartier, laid the foundation of Montreal. The island on which a great part of Montreal now stands he called Mont Royal, and he named the country Canada from the Indian *Kanatha*. Champlain was, however, the great pioneer in the founding of French Canada. He settled French colonists in Nova Scotia in 1605, and the settlement gradually extended up the St Lawrence valley.

In the meantime the English had settled along the Atlantic seaboard and founded the colonies of New England and Virginia. Hudson discovered the country around the bay now named after him where fur trading stations were set up. The fur trading proved so successful that a company was formed called the Hudson's Bay Company which explored the northern coast of Canada, built many more trading posts or *forts*, and became one of the great influences in the development of the country. In course of time the French and English settlers in Canada fought for the mastery of the land and the struggle ended in a victory for the English on the Plains of Abraham in 1759, where the two leaders, Wolfe and Montcalm, both lost their lives.

The discovery of gold in the Fraser valley in 1858 caused a rush of settlers to the west of Canada.

Other than the aborigines, the peoples of Canada are mainly of British and French extraction. Of the aborigines, Indians and Eskimos are still fairly numerous in certain parts of the Dominion, but their numbers are very small in comparison with those of European descent. Canada began the nineteenth century with a population of about 260,000, a number which by now

has increased to about 12,500,000. About 56 per cent. of the people are British and 28 per cent. French. The Indians form about 1 per cent. of the whole population, and the Eskimos probably much less, but no accurate estimate can be formed. Thus the bulk of the people are either of British or French stock in the proportion of two to one. Eighty-five per cent. of the people can speak English and 30 per cent. can speak French. About 72 per cent. of the people live on the eastern side of Canada (Quebec, Ontario and the Maritime Provinces), 22 per cent. are found in the prairie provinces (Manitoba, Saskatchewan and Alberta), and about 6 per cent. occupy British Columbia. The vast areas of Yukon and the North West Territories contain only about 24,000 people.

Mention has already been made in Volume I of the Indians, but some further detail is here necessary. The Indians of Canada number about 120,000, and a slight yearly increase is found to exist. The idea that the race is dying out is not in accordance with statistics. Doubtless before they were brought into contact with Europe in civilisation, the numbers were much larger than they are to-day, but a condition of stability has now been reached. The Indians are small in number near the Atlantic seaboard, but in Yukon and the North West Territories they form almost half the total population. The system of reserves, whereby particular areas of land have been set apart solely for the use of Indians, has long been the custom in Canada. It was designed to protect them from encroachment, and to provide a sanctuary where they could develop unmolested. By such treatment they now not only tend to increase in numbers, but they are steadily enlarging the area of land they cultivate, and increasing the size of their flocks and herds.

In the Hudson Bay region the Indians hunt and trap over most of the wooded areas. Many are living in reserves, but they are also found in scattered bands on all the principal rivers and lakes.

The Indians of the Yukon territory are of a different type from those found on the prairies. They are nomadic in their habits and very few of them live regularly in cabins or houses. Before the advent of white men they lived in wigwams built of the skins of moose or caribou, with the hairy side outwards, but in modern times they use the ordinary canvas tent. They are very ingenious in providing themselves with the things needed in daily life, and live mainly on the game, fish and berries of their locality.

The Indians of the North-West Territories confine their settlements to the inland wooded region and practically to the Mackenzie basin.

In the large reservations assigned to the Blackfoot tribe of Indians, in southern Alberta, Red Indian life may still be seen in some of its original splendour. On ceremonial occasions the Indians wear their distinctive costumes of fur, feathers and beads as of old. The Blackfoot wigwam is a comfortable home which can be erected or taken down with remarkable ease. The buffalo hide walls covering pine pole supports need no guy ropes to support them. The strong poles, lashed together at the top, form the skeleton of a cone over which the skins are stretched. When taken down the skins are packed on the pine poles and drawn by a horse to the new camping ground. Until the coming of the White Race the wheeled vehicle was unknown in America.

The Salish speaking Indians are found in British Columbia, and there they are engaged in fishing, hunting, the lumber and canning industries, they also act as guides to tourists.

Many of the Indian people possess a high order of intelligence and readily assimilate the normal Canadian way of life. Europeans have to thank the Red Indians for moccasins, snowshoes, toboggans and hammocks, for tobacco and potatoes.

(Biographies of Cabot, Hudson, Raleigh, Drake, Smith and Wolfe will be found in Volume VI.)

## CHILDREN'S STORY

**Hiawatha.**—Here is the story of a noble American Indian chief who lived before white men had settled in many parts of Canada. In those days the Red Indians lived mainly by hunting and fishing. The different tribes were constantly fighting each other. One day all the Indian tribes saw a wonderful blue smoke rising from the high red rocks near a lake in Canada. The smoke spread outwards into a snow-white cloud, which rose to the top of heaven and rolled all around, "Waving like a hand that beckons."

"The Great Spirit is smoking his pipe of peace," said the Indian prophets to their tribes. "He calls you to his council. Up and go!"

The warriors of all the tribes journeyed to the red rocks, some in their canoes down the rivers, others on foot over the plains or prairies, and they met on a meadow by the great lake. Very fierce they looked - -

"With their weapons and their war-gear,  
Painted like the leaves of autumn,  
Painted like the sky of morning,  
Wildly glaring at each other."

Then the Great Spirit counselled the Indians to give up fighting and to live as brothers,---

"I have given you streams to fish in,  
I have given you bear and bison,  
I have given you roe and reindeer;  
Why then will you hunt each other?"

The Spirit went on to say that he would send them a Prophet who would guide and teach them, and if they did not listen to his teaching, the Indian tribes would perish. To show that they heeded his warning, the warriors buried their tomahawks in the ground, washed the war paint from their faces, and took out their peace pipes, which were made of red rock with stems of reeds and decorated with feathers. In the pipes

they smoked strips of willow bark. Finally the white cloud vanished, and all the warriors went home.

Close to the shore of the great lake stood a wigwam, or tent of deerskin, where lived a mysterious Indian woman with her beautiful daughter Wenonah. In course of time Wenonah had a little son, and soon afterwards she died. Her baby boy was left to his grandmother Nokomis to bring up. She called him Hiawatha, the Teacher, for this baby was the Prophet promised to the Indians by the Great Spirit.

Nokomis made Hiawatha a cradle of lime tree branches, bound together with reindeer sinews and lined with moss and rushes. As he grew older she told him stories of the stars, and taught him the song of the fire-fly -

"Wah-wah-tavsee, little fire-fly,  
Little, flitting, white-fire insect,  
Little, dancing, white-fire creature,  
Light me with your little candle,  
Ere upon my bed I lay me,  
Ere in sleep I close my eyelids!"

Hiawatha loved to sit at the tent door and listen to all the sounds around him. He heard the lapping of the Big-Sea-Water and the whispering of the pine trees in the dark forest behind the wigwam. He was always asking questions of Nokomis. One day he saw a rainbow.

"What is that, Nokomis?" he whispered; and the good Nokomis answered—

"'Tis the heaven of flowers you see there;  
All the wild flowers of the forest,  
All the lilies of the prairie,  
When on earth they fade and perish,  
Blossom in that heaven above us.'"

Gradually Hiawatha came to understand the languages of birds and animals, and talked with them when he met them. He found out the birds' secrets in building nests, and he knew how the beavers made their lodges. When still a boy, he was given a

bow made from a branch of ash tree and fitted with a deerskin cord. The arrows were of oak, tipped with flint and winged with feathers. Hiawatha was very proud of his bow. He went all alone into the forest with it, not heeding the birds, rabbits and squirrels which called to him to spare them, but with his thoughts fixed on the red deer, whose tracks he was following. For a long time he waited motionless in a thicket near the river, and when he rose on one knee and lifted his bow to aim at the buck trotting down the pathway, Hiawatha showed himself a perfect hunter, for he did not rustle a leaf. His arrow killed the deer, and he staggered homeward under its weight. How proud was Nokomis of her grandson! She made Hiawatha a cloak from the deer's hide; she invited all the people of the village to feast on the flesh in honour of his skill, and praises of Hiawatha were in everybody's mouth.

When Hiawatha grew to manhood, he proved to be the finest athlete among all the warriors of the Ojibway tribe. He was so swift of foot that

"He could shoot an arrow from him  
And run forward with such fleetness  
That the arrow fell behind him!"

So strong and quick was his arm, that he could shoot ten arrows upward in such a way that the tenth had left the bow-string before the first had fallen to earth. He wore mittens and moccasins of deerskin.

On one of his journeys he called at the wigwam of an arrowmaker, who belonged to the Dakota tribe of Indians. The arrow-heads were beautifully made of polished stone, and Hiawatha admired them greatly, but he admired still more the Arrowmaker's lovely daughter. She had sparkling eyes and a voice as musical as the river which rippled past their wigwam and tumbled over rocks in the distance. Her father called her Laughing Water--Minnehaha.

When Hiawatha grew to manhood he built himself a wigwam in the forest, and

lived there alone for seven days and nights of prayer and fasting, to fit himself for his work of improving the life of his people. On the first day he wandered in the woods, watching the rabbits, pheasants and pigeons, and at evening time he prayed to the Great Spirit to show him how his people could obtain food without having to depend on hunting. On the second day he roamed along by the river and saw the wild berries on which the Indians fed.

"Surely our lives should not depend on these things," he said, and prayed again for help from the Almighty. He sat by the lake on the third day, and watched the perch, the herring and the great sturgeon swimming about.

"Is there not some food other than fish for my people?" he cried again, and prayed for an answer. On the fourth day he lay in his wigwam weak from starvation, and a young man appeared at the door. The stranger was dressed in green and yellow garments, and green plumes waved over his golden hair.

"Hiawatha," he said, "your prayers have been heard in heaven. The Master of Life has sent me, Mondamin, the friend of man, to show you how to gain what you have prayed for. You will obtain it only by hard work and a bitter struggle. Rise, and wrestle with me."

Three nights Mondamin came and wrestled with Hiawatha. He told Hiawatha that if he held out till the fourth night, he, Hiawatha, would win the victory. He then left him to sleep. In the morning Nokomis came with food, fearing that Hiawatha would die of starvation, but he refused it and sent her away weeping. On that night he killed Mondamin and buried him lightly in the earth. Then Hiawatha went home, his fasting done. Every day, however, he returned and tended Mondamin's grave. At length a small green leaf shot up, and before the end of the summer—

"Stood the maize in all its beauty,  
With its shining robes about it."



"It is Mondamin the friend of man," cried Hiawatha joyously. In the autumn he gathered the ripe maize cobs and gave the first feast of Mondamin, teaching his people how to grow this new food, the gift of the Great Spirit.

Hiawatha's next task was to build himself a canoe. He cut round the bark of a birch tree, just above the roots, then cleft it through from top to bottom, and stripped the bark whole from the trunk. With cedar boughs he made a framework, and bound all together with roots from the larch tree. He closed the seams with resin from the fir tree, and decorated his canoe with hedgehogs' quills, stained red, blue and yellow. He put a girdle of quills round the canoe's waist, a quill necklace round the bows and two stars made of quills in front. It was a beautiful canoe, and floated on the water "like a yellow leaf in Autumn." Hiawatha sailed slowly down the river in it, and, with the help of his friends, set to work to clear the river bed of tangled roots, sandbars and dead trees. When they had finished their difficult task the river had become from its springs to its mouth a safe pathway for the Indian people.

Many other noble deeds were done by Hiawatha. He fought and slew the Evil Spirit of the marshland, who sent fevers amongst the Indians. He understood the art of healing, and wandered east and west among the tribes teaching men how to make medicine from herbs and to cure diseases. Once he and his canoe were swallowed whole by a huge sturgeon, "the King of Fishes," but Hiawatha struck at its heart with his fists and killed the sturgeon. Then, when birds of prey had torn off part of the flesh, Hiawatha set himself free again, and Nokomis made a good supply of oil from the sturgeon's body.

As he walked in the forest, Hiawatha was troubled because his people did not know how to make records of the brave deeds of their warriors, or how to send messages except by word of mouth. He took the paint out of his pouch, and painted

objects on the smooth bark of a birch tree, making each object stand for a word or a thought. For the Spirit of Evil he painted a serpent.

"Sun and moon and stars he painted,  
Man and beast, and fish and reptile.  
For the earth he drew a straight line,  
For the sky a bow above it.  
Footprints pointing towards a wigwam  
Were a sign of invitation."

Hiawatha showed the paintings to his people, and explained their meanings. Then he bade them paint other pictures of their own, and so taught the Indians -

"All the art of Picture-Writing,  
On the smooth bark of the birch tree,  
On the white skin of the reindeer,  
On the grave-posts of the village."

At length, Hiawatha told Nokomis that he wished to marry Munnahah who lived in the lands of the Dakotahs.

"You are foolish," said Nokomis. "You should wed a girl of your own tribe. The Ojibways are often at war with the Dakotahs."

"If I marry Minnehaha, the two tribes will be united, and so the wars may cease," said Hiawatha.

He set off on his journey, and when he heard the sound of the waterfall close to Minnehaha's home, he killed a great roebuck in the forest and threw it over his shoulder. Then he went to the door of the Arrow-maker's wigwam. The old man bade him enter, and Hiawatha, going in, laid the deer at the feet of Laughing Water. Hiawatha looked tall and handsome. He had a plume of eagle feathers on his head. He wore a deerskin shirt, inwrought with beads of wampum and edged with ermine. His leggings also were of deerskin fringed with hedgehog quills, and his moccasins were thickly embroidered with beads. He looked round the wigwam, which was high and airy, "Made of deerskin dressed and



(11140)

1A

INDIANS IN FULL DRESS

whitened", and the sides of the wigwam were painted with pictures of the gods of the Dakotas. Minnehaha sat on the ground, plaiting a mat of rushes, but she laid her work aside, murmured a welcome to Hiawatha and fettered him food and drink. Hiawatha talked to the Arrowmaker of his pleasant home among the Ojibways, and asked for the hand of his fur daughter. The Arrowmaker answered:

"Yes if Minnehaha wishes,  
Let your heart speak Minnehaha!"

Minnehaha loved Hiawatha, and so they went back together to Nokomis. There was a grand wedding followed by a feast. All the guests came robed in costly furs with belts of wampum, necklaces of beads, and plumes on their heads. They feasted on sturgeon, pike, pemmican, maize cakes and wild rice, Haunch of deer and hump of bison. Afterwards the warriors smoked their peace pipes filled with tobacco and willow bark while one of the guests danced a stately measure among the pine trees, gradually moving more and more swiftly till he spun round in circles and whirled the leaves and dust with him. A second guest made sweet music on his flute and sang love songs while a third told wonderful tales of adventure. At length the wedding feast ended and the guests departed.

This was the beginning of many happy years for the Indian tribes. Hiawatha's wise counsels brought to the land peace and plenty. War clubs were buried. Hunters went safely into the forest in search of deer and beaver, or fished on the rivers in their birch canoes. The Indian women made sugar from the maple tree, dressed the skins of the animals and cultivated the maize fields. There were happy scenes at autumn time when the young men and maidens gathered at the maize harvest and sat in a great circle under the pine trees husking the grains from the cobs. Whenever a maiden found a blood-red cob in the heap, the others shouted, "You are lucky! You

shall have a handsome husband!" At this the old men sitting under the pine trees laughed and grunted. One man in the tribe was an idle fellow, and when Hiawatha was away working among the other tribes this mischief-maker persuaded the young men of the Ojibways to gamble with him, by shaking coloured dice in a wooden bowl and throwing them on the ground. So he won all their treasures—belts of wampum, ermine robes, pipes and pouches—and carried the goods away to his lodge. Then he broke into Hiawatha's empty wigwam and turned everything upside down. On his return, Hiawatha found all the village in confusion. He was terribly insulted and angry because of the gambler. The evil doer had fled, but Hiawatha hunted him down and slew him.

Time went on and one and then another of Hiawatha's friends died so that sorrow entered his heart. Then after all the years of happiness a lone bird winter set in, longer than any they had ever known. All their food supplies were gradually eaten and the Ojibways were faced with starvation. The snow fell deeper and ever deeper, until the hunters could scarcely force a way out of their wigwams. From the forest all the birds and beasts had vanished. The cold and hunger weakened Minnehaha, and she fell ill with fever. Hiawatha strode through the forest on his snowshoe, vainly searching for food, and when he returned home empty-handed, his wife was dead. For even days and nights he sat like a stone figure on the foot of her bed, his face hidden in his hands. Then the warrior, buried Minnehaha and Hiawatha had to live life again without her.

"I arewell, O my Laughing Water,"  
he said

"Soon my task will be completed,  
Soon your footsteps I shall follow  
To the Land of the Hereafter!"

The spring came at last. Great flocks of wild swans and geese flew overhead to the

northward; the robins and bluebirds piped; the pigeons cooed in the pine trees. A traveller came to the village. Among other marvels he told the Indians that he had seen a water bigger than their Big-Sea-Water, and too bitter to drink. Over this water sailed a canoe with wings, and from its mouth came thunder and lightning. In it were a hundred warriors with their faces painted white, and hair on their chins.

"Kaw!" laughed the people. "What lies you tell us! We don't believe you!"

Hiawatha, however, did not laugh.

"It is true," he said. "I saw it in a vision. The Great Spirit has sent them hither. Let us welcome the strangers as our brothers. Their towns will smoke in the valleys and their axes will ring in the woodlands. My people, if you forget my counsels, and war with each other, you will be swept away to the westward, like the flying autumn leaves."

Soon afterwards a strange canoe appeared on the shining lake, and a Paleface chief in black robes stepped on to the shore, followed by guides and companions. Hiawatha stood with his hands extended aloft, in sign of welcome.

"All our town in peace awaits you," he said. The Black-Robe chief held up a cross and blessed Hiawatha and his people. Then they went to Hiawatha's wigwam and feasted, and the chief men of the village bade the strangers welcome. The Black-Robe chief, in halting words, preached of Jesus Christ. The Indians listened gravely, thanked him, and departed to think over what they had heard and seen.

In the evening Hiawatha softly bade farewell to old Nokomis. He went into the village and said good bye to all the warriors and young men, advising them to protect the strangers and listen to their words of wisdom. Then he launched his birch canoe on the Big-Sea-Water and sailed away westward—"To the Land of the Hereafter."

### TEACHING HINTS

**1. Lake Superior (Big-Sea-Water).**—The southern shore of Lake Superior, in the

region between the Pictured Rocks and the Grand Sable, was the land of the Ojibways. The Pictured Rocks are sandstone bluffs, extending along the shore of Lake Superior for about five miles, and rising, in most places, vertically from the water, without any beach at the base, to a height varying from fifty to two hundred feet. They are objects of dread and grandeur, and have been very curiously excavated by the action of the lake. Large portions of their surface have been coloured by bands of brilliant hues, and from this circumstance they derive their name. The Grand Sable is a long reach of coast resembling a vast sand bank, more than 350 feet high, without a trace of vegetation.

**2. Minnehaha.**—This is a waterfall on a stream running into the Mississippi, between Fort Snelling and the Falls of St. Anthony.

**3. Calumet.** This is another name for the peace pipe, made of red rock with a reed for stem and fringed with eagle's quills. They were used at tribal councils and when treaties with the white colonists were made.

**4. Wampum.**—Wampum consists of beads made from shells and strung for ornament, currency and tribal records. They became the recognised medium of exchange with the early white settlers.

**5. Pemmican.**—This is a preparation of food with lean meat denuded of all fat, dried in the sun and wind, and pounded into a paste. When dry it will keep good indefinitely.

**6. Bluebird.**—The Bluebird is a common bird of North America, allied to the thrush. Sky-blue in colour, with chestnut throat and breast, it is a little larger than a robin, and is very tame, building its nest in gardens.

**7. Indian Dances.**—Symbolic dancing was much practised by the Indians. The Siouan

buffalo dance, the Iroquoian corn dance and the sun dance of the plains were magico-religious. The Hopi snake dance was a rain-making rite.

**8. Art lessons.**—*Hiawatha* lends itself effectively to the art lessons. The picture of the child at the door of the wigwam, with the forest of pines behind and the lake at his feet, might be drawn with pastels or paints; the young Indian in his canoe on the river, and the great winter, also lend themselves to artistic treatment. Let the pupils try some picture-writing of their own, folding their drawing paper into halves or quarters, and sketching or painting pictures with meanings to them, as *Hiawatha* taught the Indians to do. (There is a lesson on primitive writing, including that of the Indians, in Volume I., page 73, and on the same page an illustration of an Indian inscription drawn on birch bark.)

**9. Memory work.**—(a) John Cabot crossed the Atlantic Ocean and discovered Canada and Newfoundland. (b) The Red Indians buried the hatchet as a sign of peace. (c) White men learned from the Indians

how to smoke. (d) Nokomis lived in a wigwam made of deerskin. (e) The Indians hunted red deer in the forest and bison on the prairie. (f) Belts of wampum were treasured by the Indians. (g) *Hiawatha* taught them how to grow maize for food. (h) The name *Hiawatha* means *Teacher* or *Prophet*.

**10. Exercises.**—(a) Describe a Red Indian. (b) What articles first made by the Indians are used by white people to-day? (c) How did the braves prepare for battle? (d) Describe the cradle in which *Hiawatha* slept. (e) What did Nokomis tell *Hiawatha* about the rainbow? (f) How do we know that *Hiawatha* was a good hunter? (g) What work did Minnehaha's father do? (h) What prayer did *Hiawatha* ask of the Master of Life? (i) By what name did the Indians call the maize plant? (j) Describe the building of *Hiawatha's* canoe. (k) What did *Hiawatha* do to the river? (l) What other good deeds were done by *Hiawatha*? (m) What was the name of *Hiawatha's* tribe? (n) Tell the story of the wedding feast. (o) What happened during the terrible winter? (p) How did *Hiawatha* receive the first white men?



INDIAN TEEPEE



# RED INDIANS

OLD-TIME CHIEF  
HUNTER CALLING MOOSE

CHILDREN OF TO-DAY  
MOTHER AND BABY ON A RESERVATION

(CLASS PICTURE NO. 75 IN THE PORTFOLIO)

## II. A TRIP ACROSS CANADA

### PICTURE REFERENCE



*(Courtesy of Canadian National Railway.)*

MOUNT ROBSON B.C.

**T**HIS Class Picture (No. 76 in the portfolio) shows Robson, a mountain in Canada (see page 410). The picture is described in the Reference Book.

Mount Robson, illustrated above, is the highest peak in the height of land between British Columbia and Alberta (12,972 ft.)

### INTRODUCTION

**Surface.**—The Dominion of Canada comprises the northern half of the continent of North America, and is as large as Europe, or thirty times the size of the British Isles.

It is bounded by the Arctic Ocean on the north and by the United States on the south. From the latter it is separated by an artificial boundary line, so that trade between the two countries can readily be carried on. The ports on the east coast are well situated for trading with the ports of the United States and the British Isles, and those on the west coast are equally well situated for trading with Japan, Australia and the United States.

This vast country is a region of lofty mountains, high plateaux, plains of varying altitude, marshes and swamps, numerous lakes, large and small, and is also pre-

eminently a land of rivers. It may be divided into five physical provinces: Acadia, Laurentian Lowlands, Canadian Shield, Great Plains, and Mountain Region.

*Acadia* is the Appalachian region. It comprises the three maritime provinces and the south-east of Quebec. It is hilly country, but agriculture is carried on along the coasts, in the river valleys and between ridges. The famous Annapolis valley in Nova Scotia is well known for its apple orchards. It produces two million barrels of apples each year, a large number of which are exported to the United Kingdom.

The *Laurentian Lowlands* extend along the valley of the St. Lawrence for 600 miles from Quebec to Lake Huron, and are bounded on the north by the Canadian Shield. They are fertile plain and level tablelands on which sturdy farms and orchards. The region near the shore of Lake Ontario is an important area for fruit production. At the western edge of the valley is the Niagara cataract.

The *Canadian Shield* encloses Hudson Bay like a great U. The surface is very irregular but, broadly speaking, it has the conformation of a huge plain, depressed toward the centre and the north, and elevated along the southern and eastern borders. The highest portion is in the north-east where, with an altitude of 6,000 ft. it presents a steep face to the sea. A very large number of lakes, great and small, occur, and the surface of the country is crossed by many short winding streams. Bogs, called muskeg, occur here and there, one of which, in particular, gave considerable trouble to the builders of the Canadian Pacific Railway. The soil of the Shield is of very small depth, and, as a result, agriculture is not a profitable occupation.

The *Great Plains* lie between the Canadian Shield and the western mountains, and stretch from the United States boundary

to the Arctic shore. The southern plains have three prairie steps rising one above the other from east to west. In the northern region the two western levels become merged into one. The great plains possess a soil of unsurpassed fertility and, in the south, agriculture is the outstanding occupation of the people. To the north of the farming and ranching country lies the forest, and along the Arctic shore are the Barren Lands. Enormous supplies of coal have been located in Alberta, where natural gas has also been tapped and oil is obtained in the valleys of the Peace and Mackenzie rivers.

The *Mountain Region* consists of a number of parallel ranges with deep valleys between. The eastern and highest range is called the Rockies; the western range is called the Coast Range. It runs close down to the ocean shores and its drowned valleys form deep bays in the coast like the fiords of Norway in Scotland. Some portions of these mountains dip beneath the sea and reappear as islands—Vancouver Island, Queen Charlotte Islands. Between the Rockies and the Coast Range lies a vast plateau system which in parts breaks into mountains. The rivers of the region flow mainly in deep valleys called canyons.

**Rivers and lakes.** Canada is pre-eminently a land of rivers. In the old days the Indians could travel from one end of the country to the other by canoe, having only to carry the boat for short distances from one stream to another. The outstanding rivers are the St. Lawrence, Saskatchewan, Nelson, Mackenzie and Fraser. Canada has cities rivers longer than the Thames, and numerous lakes which teem with fish. Many lake areas such as the Muskoka lakes of the Canadian Shield have become important holiday resorts. The largest lakes of Canada are the Great Lakes of the St. Lawrence valley—Superior, Huron, Michigan, Erie and Ontario, which contain half the fresh water of the globe—and Lake Winnipeg in Manitoba.



The St. Lawrence is a great water highway for the cheap and rapid shipment of grain from the prairie provinces. Canals have been constructed which allow vessels to proceed from the Atlantic Ocean to the interior as far as Port Arthur and Fort William on Lake Superior, halfway across the continent. The St. Lawrence is over 2,000 miles long; Lake Superior is as large

their currents carry logs down stream from the forest to the mills. The mouth of the St. Lawrence is frozen for a part of the year.

The Saskatchewan flows through Lake Winnipeg and is then continued as the Nelson into Hudson Bay.

The Mackenzie flows in a north-westerly direction into the Arctic Ocean, draining



THE DOMINION OF CANADA

Note the two main systems of railways - the Canadian Pacific Railway and the Canadian National Railway..

as Ireland, and Lake Erie larger than Wales. Lake Michigan is wholly within the United States, the artificial boundary line passing through the middle of the other lakes. The Niagara Falls are situated between Lakes Erie and Ontario. Many falls in the river and its tributaries supply electric power for paper, pulp and saw mills, and

the Lakes of Great Slave, Great Bear and Athabasca. When the country around is frozen the river overflows and floods the land, forming an enormous frozen marsh.

The Pacific rivers, in comparison with those of the rest of Canada, are comparatively short, but they are really long and very useful. They flow through a difficult

mountain country where routes are hard to construct. The development of New Westminster and Vancouver at the mouth of the Fraser, and Prince Rupert at the mouth of the Skeena indicates not only the value of those rivers for commerce, but also the use of their valleys for the construction of railways. Many Canadian railways follow river courses especially in the mountain districts of the west. Rivers do the preliminary work of cutting the gradient.

**Water power.**—As many parts of Canada have a considerable elevation above sea level it is inevitable that the rivers should generate abundant water power on their course to the sea. Moreover since many of the rivers possess falls where they descend abruptly from higher to lower levels, water power becomes one of the important natural resources of Canada. Its development in recent years has contributed in a marked degree to increased Canadian production. Practically every large industrial centre throughout the Dominion is now served with hydroelectric energy. In the central provinces, which are deficient in coal supplies, water power is the mainspring of industrial progress. Near the forest areas of Ontario and Quebec the pulp and paper mills depend to a large extent on water power. Ever since the days of the early French settlers water power has been an important factor in the industrial life of the Maritime Provinces. At one time mills were common sights on the principal rivers, the flowing streams being used for water mills. Although many of these are now abandoned and some have entirely disappeared, modern generating stations have risen in their stead harnessing the water power by a new method.

The economic importance of this "white coal" is emphasised when it is pointed out that the chief bituminous coal deposits of Canada are in the extreme west and east. The pulp and paper industry, which requires an enormous amount of power, is located

for the most part in areas deficient in coal. The greatest developments in recent years have been in the west of the Dominion.

**Climate**—The southern parts of Canada are in the same latitude as Marseilles, and the northern islands are hidden in the everlasting ice of the Arctic region. Hence there is a great variety of climate.

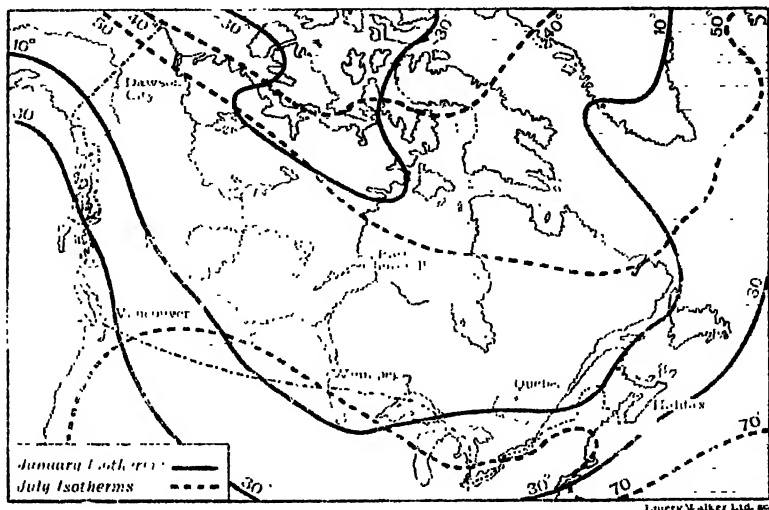
The climate of Canada is in the main "continental" that is subject to extremes of heat in summer and of cold in winter. On the Pacific coast where the west winds from the sea are intercepted by the Rockies the rainfall is very heavy throughout the year. The winds moderate the temperature and the drift from the warm Pacific current keeps the central sea free from ice in winter.

The winds which have been dried by their passage over the mountains are called chinook winds and they melt the winter snow of the plains. Rain on the prairie is scanty, but it falls at the period of early summer. The range of temperature throughout the year is very great, hot summers and very cold winters being the rule. At Winnipeg the range between the warmest and coldest months is 70° F. (In London it is 5°). At Victoria on the Pacific coast it is only 21°. In northern Canada as much as 160 inches of snow (equal to 13 inches of rain) fall in a year. In snowfall of Manitoba ranges from 50 to 55 inches in the eastern and south western districts and from 40 to 45 inches in the west of the province. Owing to the influence of the chinook winds, large areas of southern Alberta are usually bare of snow throughout the winter. As there are no mountains in the middle to form a barrier against the Arctic winds, terrible blizzards frequently arise, and in the central plains the crops are apt to suffer from summer frosts.

Towards the east of Canada the rainfall becomes plentiful again. The great lakes in south Ontario temper the extremes of climate there. On the whole the summers of the province are very warm and the

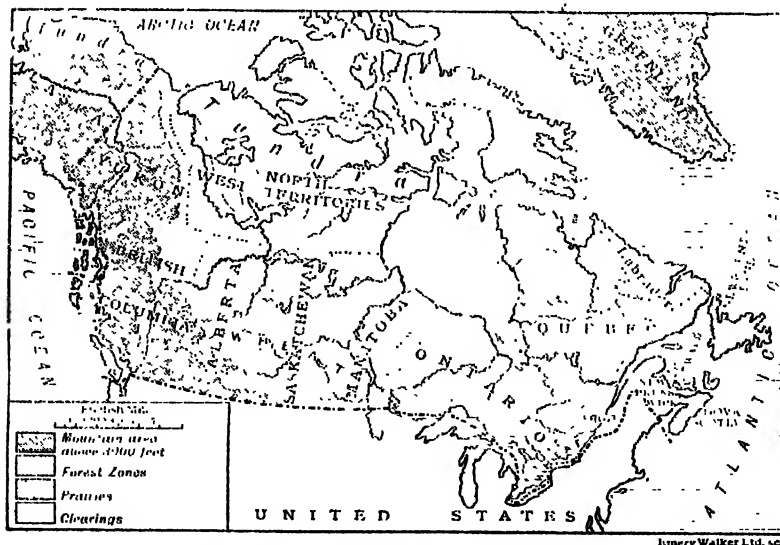
winters cold. The most genial conditions are found in the lake peninsula. North of the lakes the winters are very cold and the summers cool. The cold Labrador

current makes winter severe in Labrador, and the bitter Arctic winds blow. The summers are remarkable for long days of sunshine, giving a rapid, though short



THE DOMINION OF CANADA—JANUARY AND JULY ISOTHERMS

Note that the important middle belt of Canada has a January temperature of 10° F. and a July temperature of 70° F.



THE DOMINION OF CANADA—VEGETATION

Most of the Canadians live in that part of Canada marked Clearings, which averages about 100 miles wide.

growing season. North of the Arctic Circle is the land of the midnight summer sun.

The Gulf Stream tempers the climate of the Maritime Provinces, and keeps open all the year round a number of harbours extending from Cape Breton to St. John on the Bay of Fundy. The summers on the whole are a little warmer than in southern England, and the rainfall is heavy. Winter temperatures in Canada vary considerably, but the weather does not necessarily get steadily colder by definite degrees as one travels farther north, for much depends upon the altitude. The presence or absence of forests, too, has also a great influence on weather conditions. The most severe cold is experienced on the treeless plains, but exceptional degrees of frost last only a few days. Zero weather is to most Canadians an exhilarating delight. The sun is more often seen in the far North West in winter time than in more humid climates. Workers often discard coats and gloves in winter, for the sun is warm in spite of the snow. The climate throughout Canada is particularly bracing and healthy.

### CHILDREN'S STORY

**A trip across Canada.**—Joyce Wilson is a bright little London girl who writes short stories and gives them to her friends to read. They are all very, therefore, when she tells them that she is leaving England. Her mother, who is a widow, has decided to go out to Canada and live with her brother in Vancouver.

"Write to us, Joyce!" cry her classmates, when she bids them good bye.

Joyce and her mother sail away from Liverpool in the *Liverpool* on a sunny July day, and after nearly a week's voyage across the Atlantic Ocean they enter the mouth of a great river and steam slowly up it. This is the river St. Lawrence, the highway into Canada. Other vessels flying strange flags pass by in the opposite direction. After several hours' sailing, there is a stir among the passengers and fingers are pointed

towards the distant spires of a city built high up on a rock. "Quebec," is the word Joyce hears, and a thrill runs through her at the thought of soon setting foot in the New World. Slowly the liner draws near the landing stage, and at last the passengers disembark. A friend awaits Joyce and her mother, and shows them round the city before they take the train across Canada. Joyce knows the story of General Wolfe who climbed the heights on which Quebec stands, and so, by taking the city, won Canada for the British Empire. Now she sees with her own eyes the bare, grey rock and the statue set up in Quebec to the honour of those who died in the fight. Here, too, is one of the largest bridges in the world. It is the famous Quebec Bridge by which the railway crosses the St. Lawrence.

Quebec has many French settlers living in it and in most of its beautiful old churches the services are held in the same way as in the churches of France. Quebec is very quiet now," observes their Canadian friend, "but you should see it at Christmas time! The river is frozen and all the streets are white with snow. People travel about in sleighs instead of motors, and jolly crowds go skating and tobogganing."

"What fun!" thinks Joyce, and her eyes sparkle.

Mrs. Wilson now notices that her watch is fast by the Quebec clocks and carefully puts it right.

"You will have to put it back four or five times when you travel westwards to Vancouver," says her friend. "The time at Vancouver is four hours behind Quebec, because the sun rises four hours later there."

At length they go to the railway station, on which is painted C. P. R. "'R' stands for railway," says Joyce. "What does C. P. mean, mother?"

"Canadian Pacific" is the answer.

"Canadian Pacific Railway," repeats Joyce. "Now for our trip across Canada!"

**The train.**—"All aboard!" shouts the conductor. The big engine bell tolls and

soon the train is speeding away. Passengers who wish to watch the view sit in the observation car, which has glass sides. All the coaches have gangways running down the middle with platforms at the ends so that travellers can walk from one part of the train to another. On either side of the gangway are seats facing each other and providing room for four passengers. When night falls a porter comes along with mattresses and blankets. He pulls out the seats until they meet and form beds. He also lets down some broad shelves above the seats. Then he hangs curtains round and soon afterwards the Wilsons are comfortably asleep. In the morning they go to the dining and sleeping rooms and meals are served in a comfortable dining-room.

**The Province of Quebec.**—Joyce and her mother enjoy sitting in the observation car and watching the country spin by.

"I want to write all about it to my friends in London, you see," says Joyce. "O! I mustn't miss anything."

For five hours they travel past splendid fields of growing grain and orchards of rosy apples, until they approach a city the greatest in Canada—Montreal. Here they are welcomed for a few hours by a aunt of Joyce, who takes them to see the great harbour and its two splendid bridges. Flags of all nations fly from the vessels riding at anchor, and immense buildings stand at the water's edge.

"That tall building is called an elevator," Joyce is told. "It is filled with wheat which will be emptied into cargo ships and carried away to all parts of the world. The building next to it contains huge freezing rooms where beef and mutton are stored until wanted for shipment. Montreal is the busiest city in Canada, and its street hums with traffic. Although it is a thousand miles from the sea, very large ships can reach it by way of the river."

At ten o'clock that night they return to the railway station and Joyce sleepily

kisses her aunt before she climbs into the train.

"Let me see—this is Tuesday," says the Canadian lady. "You will get to Vancouver in about five days' time. I expect. Send me news of your arrival won't you?"

**Ontario.** As Mrs. Wilson gets into the train the bell clangs and they are off again. It is too dark to see the countryside, so they go to sleep. In three hours' time Joyce wakes with a start and sits up. "Mother, we've stopped!" she whispers, in a fright.

"Yes, it is only another station. Lie down and go to sleep again," says Mrs. Wilson.

"What place is it then?" persists Joyce. "Ottawa!"

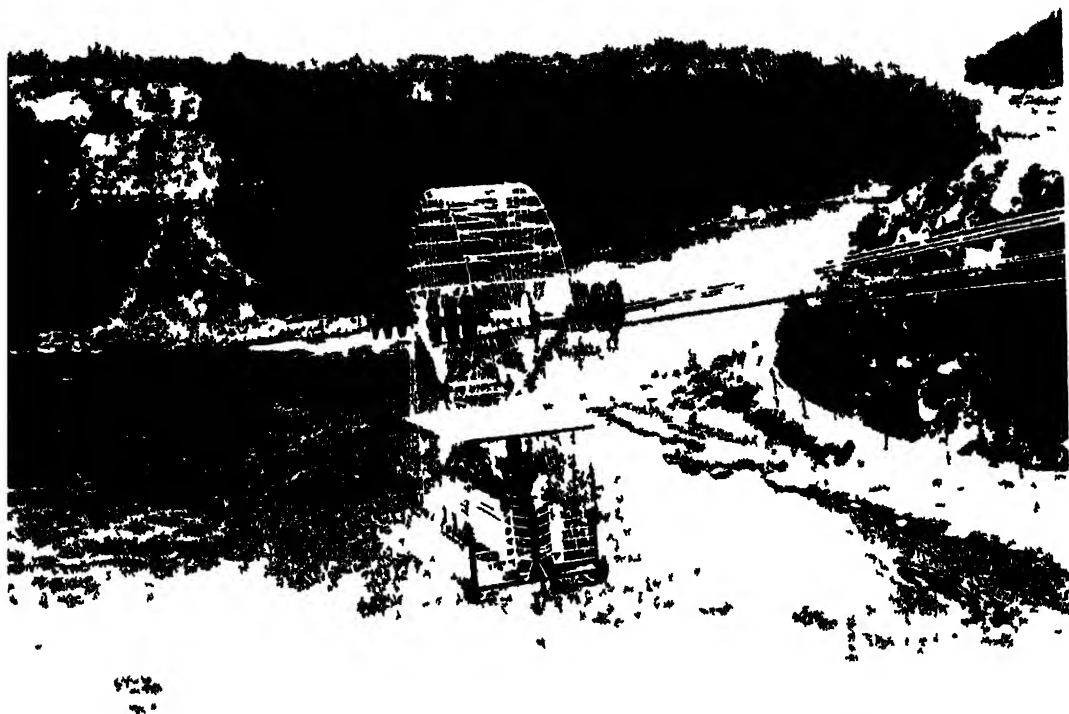
"Oh, I was taught at school that Ottawa is the capital of Canada," murmurs Joyce. "I wish it was not in bit," and he falls asleep again.

Sitting in the observation car after breakfast Mrs. Wilson and Joyce fall into conversation with a Canadian fellow traveller who is going on his way to Vancouver and is pleased to talk about his homeland to the stranger. The train is climbing now to higher land. Joyce learns that the river she catches sight of now and then is not the St. Lawrence but the Ottawa, which runs into the St. Lawrence just above Montreal. The Ottawa come hurrying down in hills which they can dimly see in the distance.

"Over there are great forests," says the Canadian traveller, and when winter comes lumberjacks get busy cutting down the trees. In spring the river Ottawa is crowded with logs which swirl down to the sawmills and paper mills of the city of Ottawa. The mills are all run by electricity made by great wheels which are turned by the rushing water."

"I have seen a picture of some wonderful waterfalls in Canada," says Joyce. "They are called the Falls of Niagara. Are they near here?"

"You want to go by ship up the St. Lawrence to see Niagara," replies the



VIEW OF NIAGARA FALLS FROM THE CITY OF NIAGARA FALLS, N.Y. (Left) and (Right) the City of Niagara Falls, N.Y.

Canadian. The river opens out into a great lake called Lake Ontario. The steamer crosses the lake and at one end of it is the short river Niagara which joins the lake with another called Lake Erie. The river falls over a horse shoe shaped rock thirty times as high as a man and forms the falls. The Niagara Falls are the most famous waterfalls in the world. They are a wonderful sight. The roar of the water is deafening and spray is flung up like clouds of steam. You would be able to get a fine view of the Falls by going on a tramway which crosses the river on strong wires. Clever men have made the Falls do work for them. The water turns great wheels and makes electricity to light the streets and houses and drive machines in the cities near by."

The train is now running through one of the chief mining districts of Canada and Joyce finds the view dull and bare. They pass great pits and heaps of slag. Nickel and copper are mined in this district where the rocks are very old and hard. In course of time the forest appears again and after several more hours of travelling Joyce beholds a wide expanse of water, like an inland sea. It is Lake Superior. The St. Lawrence passes through five Great Lakes altogether, one of which is in the United States of America. Lake Superior is the largest of the five.

"It reminds me of the sea shore," cries Joyce.

There are tall cliffs and sandy beaches and in the distance the crested waves tumble

over each other like "white horses" in the sea. In the spring and autumn Lake Superior is troubled by storms as dangerous as those which ships meet in mid-ocean. All night the train journeys by the shore of Lake Superior, and at breakfast time on Thursday morning halts at Port Arthur. Here Joyce sees many more tall elevators by the water-side, and steamers called "lakers" loading wheat from them. She has now travelled 1,200 miles from Montreal.

**The Prairie Provinces.**—"Ding dong" tolls the train bell, and once more they are off. Joyce glues her nose to the window to see the last of Lake Superior. Soon the country begins to change. The forests dwindle and disappear. The country around is bare and rocky. Joyce watches till she is tired, and then turns to her picture books for a change. All day long, whenever she looks out, she seems to see the same view over and over again. "Some parts of Canada are very lonely," thinks she.

In the evening the railway track widens out into a network of lines. Many freight trains stand in sidings, or lumber by in the opposite direction. They are carrying loads of grain, cattle and timber.

"We must be coming to a junction," says watchful Joyce, "with all these big yards and sheds about."

Soon afterwards they arrive at the city of Winnipeg. The Canadian traveller tells them that Winnipeg is a great market to which is sent all the produce of the lands lying around it.

"The corn and cattle of the prairie, and the wood and furs of the forest are sent to Winnipeg," he says, "and from Winnipeg they go by train to Port Arthur or Montreal where steamers await them. Winnipeg is called the 'Gateway of the Prairie.' There are big mills in the city, where some of the grain is ground into flour before being sent away."

From Winnipeg the train carries them onwards for miles through the three prairie provinces, Manitoba, Saskatchewan and Alberta, which rise in three giant steps

towards the west. Joyce is up early on Friday morning to look at the prairie, and gazes out at a sea of golden grain which ripples in the breeze. Motor reapers following each other in threes are just getting busy in the mighty wheatfields. All along the railway track now they are constantly passing elevators to which the farmers bring their grain. After breakfast they halt at Regina, and among the people on the platform Joyce spies a tall man in a scarlet and blue uniform, and points him out to her fellow traveller.

"Oh, he is one of the Royal Canadian Mounted Policemen," he says. "His horse is tethered near by, I suppose. The headquarters are in Ottawa. These men are called the 'watchdogs of the prairie' because they keep law and order. No criminal ever escapes them."

On they go again and the grainfields seem to be endless. They are passing them for the rest of the day, hardly a tree is to be seen, and by bedtime Joyce is weary of the sight of wheat and oats. The next morning she looks out and sees yet more wheatfields!

"I should think that Canada grows enough wheat to feed the whole world!" she exclaims.

After lunch, the grainfields gradually give place to great stretches of grassland dotted with horses, cattle and sheep.

"We have come to cowboy land," says Joyce.

"I see you've been to the cinema," laughs the Canadian traveller. "Real cowboys don't lead such thrilling lives as film cowboys do. Still, they are fine horsemen, and it is exciting to watch them 'round up' their animals for sorting. The Duke of Windsor when Prince of Wales had a cattle ranch out here, seventy miles from Calgary."

Calgary is the market town for Canadian cattle, and it is reached in the early hours of Saturday morning, when most of the passengers are asleep.

**The Rocky Mountains.**—Leaving Calgary the train climbs in and out of green hills, and presently glimpses are caught of snow-



*(Reproduced by courtesy of the C. P. R.)*

THE BOW RIVER VALLEY AND THE CANADIAN PACIFIC BANFF SPRINGS HOTEL BANFF

capped mountains. Eighty miles farther on the train stops at Banff. Tourists, who travel about the world to see its beauty spots, stay at Banff and go climbing in the mountains. Around Banff is an enormous National Park where no one is allowed to kill wild animals, and some of these have become quite tame. Brown bears, moose, mountain sheep, deer, elk, goats and herds of buffalo are found there. A river winds round the town of Banff, and standing on the bridge that spans it the traveller beholds a wonderful view of the Rockies—"snow-capped mountains, playful cascades, many-coloured waters, bright green pastures and health-giving pines." Mountain climbers discover lovely lakes sleeping in the heart

of gum mountains, their colours changing in the sunlight.

**British Columbia.**--The train climbs to the top of the Kicking Horse Pass (so called from the figure of a great horse which can be seen in the rock on the side of the mountain), and then runs down a steep seven miles of sloping land. It is now in the province of British Columbia. In the valleys are enormous trees called Douglas firs. Waterfalls tumble over ledges of rock, and there are vast fields of glimmering ice, called glaciers. Here the train has to wind amongst mountain chains separated by tablelands and valleys. Where the descent is very steep there are side lines, called





VIEW FROM LOOKOUT POINT

The railway of the C.P.R.

switches which lead off from the main line and run up the mountain side. When there is danger ahead the train can be switched off the main line and running up one of these steep tracks it soon slows down and stops. The engine carries a great searchlight which lights up crag and valley at night for a long way in front. Sometimes in the spring huge rocks slide down and cover the trail and therefore men have to watch it night and day. When the snowfall is very heavy the engine pushes before it a great snow plough which sends the snow flying to the fences on both sides of the track. In some districts where masses of snow slide down the mountains the railway tracks are covered by sheds of timber over which the white avalanche slides into the gorge or canyon below. The carriage windows are double—two thick panes of glass separated by a space—in order to keep out the intense

cold of winter and the fine powder dust of summer. They cannot be opened so the train is ventilated in another way.

On they go still westwards along river valleys leading down to the coast and now the train passes through orchard lands again. The beautiful fruits, apples, peaches, cherries and strawberries grown in the district around Lake Okanagan have won prizes at many exhibitions. The railway track along the river Fraser becomes dangerously narrow and passes through a gloomy deep canyon with the river thundering below. Two hundred miles more through quiet meadows brings the train to Vancouver on the sea coast and the great continent has been crossed.

It is eight o'clock on Sunday morning, and the railway journey has taken a week. The Wilsons bid farewell to the friendly fellow passenger and alight from the train.

A motor car awaiting them soon carries them away through the streets of Vancouver city, with its gardens of English roses, holly trees and laurels.

Thinking it all over a few days later, Joyce, pen in hand, decides that it is not easy to paint in words a picture of that vast and wonderful country, the Dominion of Canada.

### TEACHING HINTS

**1. Crossing the Atlantic.** The 'Children's Story' in this chapter is a long one, and parts of it may need further explanation, hence nothing has been said about the ocean trip from England to Canada. If the opportunity occurs, this would form the subject of a further useful lesson. (See blackboard sketch page 491.)

**2. Winter sports.** The fall of snow in certain parts of Canada is very heavy. Many people are engaged in winter in clearing the streets of snow in order to permit of the movement of trams and other vehicles. In mud and street lights are used. Young men strap on ice skates and slide and race across fields and fences. Ice skating is very popular. The favourite sport is ice hockey, carried on under cover in large hall the floors of which are naturally frozen. The hockey players are all on skates. Another funous winter sport is curling, a national Scottish pastime transplanted to Canada. The game is rather like bowls but played with circular stones on the ice, and each player carries a broom to sweep the ice clear.

**3. Canadian railways.** The C.P.R. was completed in 1885. In the forty years following 39,000 more miles of railway have been laid down chiefly under the control of the government, and these are known as the Canadian National Railways. There are three transcontinental lines. Canada possesses the most extensive railway system of any country of its population.

A journey of 3,000 miles by train means

that one is in a travelling home. The train must provide food and sleeping accommodation and the passengers must have some freedom of movement. Special sleeping cars each accommodating sixteen people, are a part of the train. The berths are similar to those on board ship and can be curtained off to give privacy. A special dining car is used for meals which are of the standard provided by good hotels, a separate baggage car provides for personal luggage. The observation car may be used only as a lounge.

In all the railway routes constructed the line of least resistance is taken through difficult areas. Mountain passes and river valleys are used. The route across the western mountains is a marvel of engineering skill.

**4. Maritime Provinces.** These are Nova Scotia (once called Acadia—see Longfellow's *Lover's Lane*), New Brunswick and Prince Edward Island. After taking the trip across Canada, the class might be told that when the St. Lawrence is frozen steamers call at Halifax or St. John instead of Quebec and travellers crossing Canada take the railway from either of these towns to Montreal.

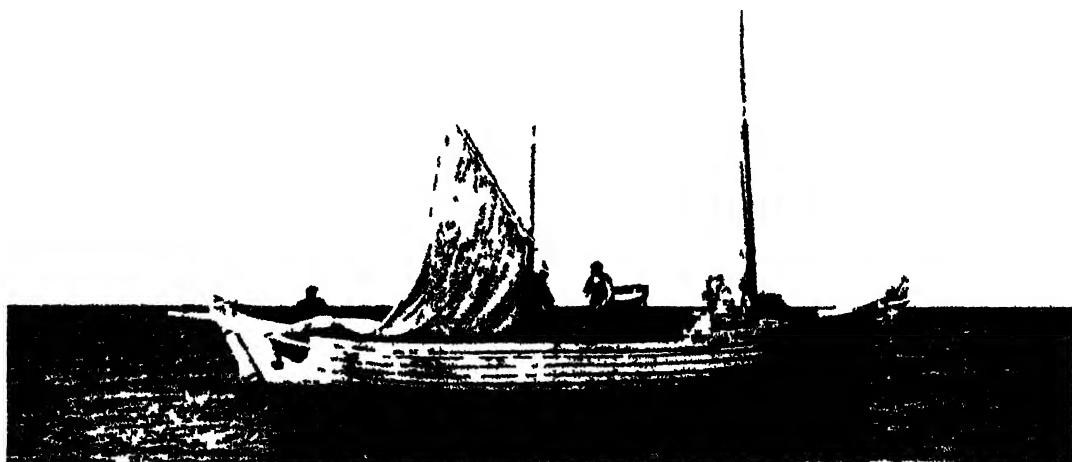
**5. The clock.** The teacher might explain simply how it is that the sun rises later in the west than in the east by holding the globe in front of a window which lights up the eastern side and slowly revolving it towards the light. Time changes one full hour for a difference in longitude of 15°.

**6. Moose.** This creature is the largest living member of the deer family. It has beautiful antlers. A fine male stands 7 ft high and weighs over 1,000 lb. It keeps to the more secluded parts of the forest regions. The males are often lured to destruction by hunters who imitate the cry of the female. The moose can travel at great speed and noiselessly, its flesh makes good venison, and its hide is converted into leather.

**7. Canyon.**—This is a valley with precipitous sides, cut by a river and tributaries vertically downwards through a layer of soft rocks. The valley sides, which are not worn down owing to lack of rainfall, form steep cliffs.

**8. Memory work.** (a) Canada is thirty times as large as the British Isles. (b) There are hundreds of rivers and lakes in Canada. (c) The railways carry millions of tons of goods. (d) The divisions of Canada are called provinces. (e) Many of the people of Quebec are French Canadians. (f) The city of Ottawa is the capital of the Dominion of Canada. (g) The city of Winnipeg is called the Gateway of the Prairies. (h) There are cattle ranches in Alberta. (i) The Douglas firs of British Columbia are some of the largest trees in the world. (j) Apples, cherries and peaches come from British Columbia.

**9. Exercises.**—(a) How many miles does a train travel across Canada from east to west? (b) What does C P R mean? (c) What river provides a good entrance into Canada? (d) Tell all you can about winter sports in Canada. (e) Which city stands in a lumbering district? (f) Which is the largest of the Great Lakes? (g) What is an elevator? (h) Why has Port Arthur many great elevators? (i) What is grown on the prairie? (j) Where in Canada do cowboys live? (k) What is the name of the highest range of mountains in the west of Canada? (l) Describe what can be seen at Banff. (m) How is the train protected from falling masses of snow? (n) What is a canyon? (o) What fish are caught in the Fraser river? (p) Where does the train stop on the Pacific coast? (q) Why is the railway called the Canadian Pacific Railway?



[Reproduced by courtesy of the Canadian National Film Board]

A TYPICAL COD-FISHING SAILING BOAT

### III. CANADIAN FISHERIES

#### PICTURE REFERENCE



SALMON FISHING IN CANADA

Classification 1 f 1

#### INTRODUCTION

**Newfoundland and the cod fisheries.**—The island of Newfoundland stretches across the mouth of the river St. Lawrence. It was discovered in 1497 by John Cabot, who reached the island on the Feast of St. John (June 24th), and so the name St. John's

has been given to the capital. Its shores are deeply indented with inlets mainly of the fiord type, thus providing an abundance of magnificent harbours which are a valuable asset to a land whose chief resource is fish.

The island has an undulating hilly surface, and there are many rivers, lakes and marshes. Thick forests grow in the

interior on the low hills and along the bank of the streams. The trees are mainly spruce and fir.

Newfoundland is so well supplied with softwood timber and water power that the pulp industry is making rapid progress. At Grand Falls are one of the finest pulp and paper mills in the world, and the town owes its existence and prosperity to the mills. Power is supplied by the Exploits river, and nearly 400 tons of pulp and 200 tons of paper are produced daily. A large amount of pulp is exported to be manufactured into paper at Gravesend in England. It is estimated that nearly a million trees are consumed yearly in the mills at Grand Falls. Very large paper and pulp mills are also located at Corner Brook on the west coast where there is an output of about 400 tons of newspaper daily.

Newfoundland possesses extensive mineral wealth. The largest iron mine in the British Empire is on Bell Island in Conception Bay, one of the openings on the east coast. Copper and coal are also found.

The great importance of Newfoundland lies in its position as one of the foremost fish-producing regions in the world. The Grand Banks, which are parts of a submarine plateau 200 miles from the Newfoundland coast, attract enormous quantities of fish that come to feed on the plankton brought by the cold Labrador current.

The cod fishery is the most extensive in the world. There is an average annual export of about 75,000 tons of cod. The greater part of the population is engaged in some branch or other of the fisheries. At one time codfish was the national currency, payment of debts being made in kind. Many other kinds of fish are found in the waters near the island, notably halibut, haddock, turbot and herring, and the inshore and river fisheries yield salmon, lobsters, eels and mussels.

Long experience has made the Newfoundlanders expert in catching and drying cod, and the markets for their produce have been long established. The cod is obtained

from three sources—near the shore, on the Banks, and near Labrador. The shore fishery yields the largest catch, about 80,000 tons of cod being the average annual amount. It is essentially a summer occupation and most of the coastal towns and villages are engaged in it. The cod are caught by hooks, trawls and traps. The shore fishery begins in June and ends in October, except along the south coast where the fishing is carried on in winter also to a small extent.

The Banks fishery receives the attention of fishermen from June, as well as of those from the island. The Newfoundlanders visit the Banks in schooners which they anchor in the fishing grounds. The fishermen then go out in boats called dories to set the lines which are of great length, with each hook separately baited. The day's catch is taken to the ship where it is cleaned and salted. A great deal of waste thus occurs, since much material which could be converted into valuable fish manure is thrown back into the sea. In the Labrador fishery for cod the set fishing part leave the island and settle on the coast of Labrador from June to September, returning to Newfoundland at the end of the season with their catch.

The har seal, valued for its oil and skin, is found in large numbers on the ice floes to the north of Newfoundland during the months of March and April. The fishing fleet sails from St. John's, and some 200,000 seals are caught each year. The skins are not obtained for fur but from them is made a valuable leather used in the manufacture of fancy leather goods.

The rivers of the west coast supply large quantities of salmon, and modern methods of freezing salmon in cold water have established a market overseas for this fish. The production of frozen salmon has already reached three million lb. in a single season.

The Maritime Provinces of Canada have a convenient position and coastal outline for taking a share in the wealth of the Newfoundland fishing grounds. Nova Scotia has the best position for the fishing industry.



HABIT OF THE FISHES OF A FISHING VESSEL

Cod is again the chief fish caught and prepared and Nova Scotia accounts for nearly 70 per cent of all the cod caught and landed in Canada. The bulk of this fish comes from the Banks fishery, and Lunenburg in Nova Scotia is the principal fishing port and centre for drying cod. New Brunswick takes second place for cod production and deals with about one tenth the quantity produced by Nova Scotia.

The Atlantic coast of North America takes the first place in the world as a lobster producing region. The lobster fisheries are especially productive between Yarmouth and Cape Sable, and in Northumberland Strait.

The herring is found along the whole 2,000 miles of the Atlantic coast of Canada, but a large part of the catch comes from a coastal strip, 35 miles in length, along Charlotte County, New Brunswick, on the Bay of Fundy. The fishery, at present, is almost

wholly for the young herring, the so called sardine which is obtained in enormous quantities. Most of the sardine are canned and shipped all over the world.

The value of fish to eastern Canada and Newfound land may be emphasised by noting a few additional facts. The fishing grounds are the most extensive in the world and the quality of the products obtained is exceptionally good. It is an accepted fact that fishes used for food improve in proportion to the purity and coldness of the waters from which they are taken. Judged by these standards the cod, halibut, herring and salmon must be considered of exceptional value. Further, the opportunities for carrying on the industry are wonderfully good. A remarkably long coastline provided with excellent natural harbours within easy reach of the fishing grounds is an incentive to carry on the fishing industry. The existing industry is the growth of the past half-century upon

a foundation laid more than four hundred years ago. Ultimately the industry embraces, directly and indirectly, an enormous number of people. Ship building and boat building, the making of nets, sails, ropes, fishing lines, boxes and barrels, must all be considered as occupations directly concerned with the fishing industry. Cutting timber in the forests for boxes, etc., canning and freezing fish are also among the occupations indirectly associated with fishing.

St. John's has been a rendezvous for fishermen of many nations since 1500, and has always been the principal port of the country. It is the oldest settlement occupied by Europeans in the New World. The harbour entrance, called "The Narrows," is half a mile long and flanked on either side by cliffs 500 feet high. It leads to a perfect, landlocked harbour—a safe anchorage from any storm a harbour which is open to navigation all the year, and is very little affected by either ice or tide.

The Atlantic cables from Ireland, 1,700 miles away, terminate at Placentia Bay. Within recent years a railway has been built across the island.

**Salmon.**—The rivers of the Pacific slope of Canada are of outstanding importance for supplying salmon. On the Fraser are some of the largest canneries of the world. The fish are caught when they come up the river to spawn. The salmon come in such numbers that they almost choke the rivers, leaping as much as six feet out of the water to clear the waterfalls. They are caught in nets and salmon wheels, the latter scooping the fish up and throwing them into tanks. The variety known as the sockeye is by far the most important owing to its deep red colour and excellent texture. It is very much in demand in the British market. The Skeena river is becoming more important than the Fraser for this fish. A variety, known as chum salmon, is salted and exported to the Far East. Many of the employees in this fishery are Asiatics, the Chinese preponderating in the canneries,

and the Indians and Japanese in the fishing operations.

As much as 2,000,000 cwt. of salmon is sometimes obtained in a year.

### CHILDREN'S STORY

**Cod.**—Some of the hardest people in the world are the fishermen of Newfoundland. The island of Newfoundland lies more than a hundred miles away from some famous fishing grounds called the Grand Banks. These are hills underneath the ocean. Towards the Banks flow, a cold stream, or current of water, from the north coast of Canada, and carried along in this current is a mass of fish food—tiny shellfish, plants and jellyfish exactly what codfish like to eat. Therefore, millions of cod gather round the Grand Banks, where they can find abundance of food.

The fishing season, which lasts from May till October, is carried on under great difficulties. The sea is often very rough, there is the danger from icebergs, which come floating southwards from the polar regions, there are often fogs which last for days together, and sometimes it is bitterly cold. The fishing schooners, or bankers, which are each manned by a crew of a dozen to twenty men, sail out of harbour and anchor in the fishing grounds. Some of the schooners come from the United States and some from France, across the Atlantic Ocean. Fishing is carried on from dories, or small boats, eight or ten of which belong to each banker. The dories sail away from the ships, and the two fishermen on board each dory throw out very long lines, each with two or three thousand hooks baited with shellfish and other dainties to tempt the swarms of cod on the Grand Banks. After waiting some hours, the lines are hauled in, and the dories take their catches to the waiting banker. You can see from the picture how the fishermen toss the cod from the boats like a farmer tossing hay on to a stack. (See Class Picture No. 73.) The little dories ride the sea like birds, and fishing goes on

during biting winds and cruel weather. When the dories return to the bunkers at evening time, the men slit open and clean the cod, salt them and pack them away in the ships' holds.

As soon as the bunkers are fully loaded they return to their home ports. Some of the cod is then packed in barrels with salt. Some is laid out on high platforms called fish flakes, which are made so that the sun and wind can pass through and dry the fish. Dried cod is called stockfish. Cod liver oil is made from the liver and isinglass from the bladder of the fish while the roe is made into a red food called caviare.

More than a million tons of cod are caught off the east coast of Canada in a year and 100,000 men are engaged in fishing. Other men are also supplied with work such as shipbuilding, making nets, sails, ropes, fishing lines, boxes and barrels. Lumber, too, has to be cut in the forests for the boxes. Altogether there are enormous numbers of people connected in some way or other with the Canadian fisheries.

Many are the tales of hardship that the fishermen tell. One evening a dory returned in a fog carrying on board not only the day's catch but also two boys who had been taken up from a drifting boat. When they had eaten and rested the boys told their story.

They said that they lived on a part of the coast near the Farkes and sometime rowed out in a dory as part of the fishing fleet. Then after an hour or two of fishing they would return home. Four days ago they had strayed away from the fleet and a fog suddenly came on. They at once pulled up the anchor and began rowing for the shore. After six hours' hard pulling they could see no sign of land so knew that they had lost their way, and decided to anchor for the night where they were. To their dismay they found the water so deep that the anchor would not touch bottom!

A wind had sprung up, and the boat began to take in water and drift round. The whole night long the boys did not stop rowing

and bailing out water by turns, and day-break found them weary and faint. They had a loaf soaked with salt water and a few raw herrings on board but ate nothing all the day. At night the wind dropped and they rowed again till dawn. On the third day they were forced to eat the bread but the salt water in it made their throats and tongues dry and swollen. That night they tried to eat the raw fish but could not swallow any, and on the fourth day they took to the oars again bravely, determined to go on rowing till their strength was spent. All this time the fog had not cleared but in the afternoon on the fourth day the fog drifted away and they were picked up by the fishermen in the dory.

**Salmon.** Even more valuable than the cod fisheries of the Grand Banks are the rich salmon fisheries of British Columbia. Canada's salmon are worth twice as much every year as Canada's cod. They are bred in snow-fed lakes and rivers and are as fine as any salmon in the world.

After hatching, the young salmon remain in fresh water for about two years. Then they leave their mountain pools and suckered creeks and make their way to the distant sea. Once in the ocean they seem to be lost for a time. As soon as they are fully grown, however, they return to their native water. The coastline of British Columbia is cut up into many opening and firmin spring to autumn each year along 7,000 miles of the broken coastline, millions of mighty salmon appear making for the river mouths. When they come to waterfalls in the rivers they leap sometimes as high as 100 feet out of the river from the lower to the higher level and swim on until they are far inland.

When the salmon are running that is when they are coming up the river the whole wide river is bright with the gleam of their shining scales.

The salmon are caught in the mouths of the great rivers before they reach the safety of their far retreats. They are then just



about to leave the ocean well fed healthy and in fine condition. Sometimes they are captured in nets and sometimes by means of salmon wheels. The salmon wheels which are turned by the current have baskets fastened to them, into which the salmon swim, they are then lifted up and thrown on to a slide, which carries them on to the bank. The catch is hurried to the cannery washed in fresh spring water, trimmed, cooked, canned and labelled in a few hours.

The work is all done by fast moving machinery. At one end of the machine you see rows of fish moving swiftly. In a few moments they are cut up by circular knives which work much like the bread cutting machine in a grocery shop. On move the round files of salmon towards the metal boxes into which they are quickly piled and then they are passed along to be cooked by steam. In a marvellously short time the fish are ready, the tins are sealed, machines stick on the labels and other machines pile the boxes in crates ready for despatch to England and other parts of the world.

The Fraser, Skeena and Columbia rivers have the largest canning factories on their banks. These rivers are almost choked with the fish during the season. A million and a half cases of salmon are turned out every year. There are several kinds, the best known being Canadian Sockeye and Canadian Pink Salmon. The Sockeye is a beautiful red salmon and the Pink Salmon though not so expensive is the other is fine nourishing fish.

### TEACHING HINTS

**1. Fish.**—Children should understand that fish can generally speaking be divided into freshwater and saltwater fish. The salmon partakes of the nature of both kinds. There are blackboard sketches of the salmon and cod on page 461.

**2. Tinned fish.**—Most children will be familiar with tinned or canned salmon and

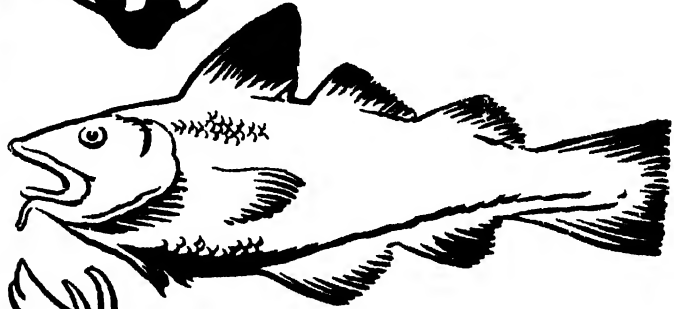
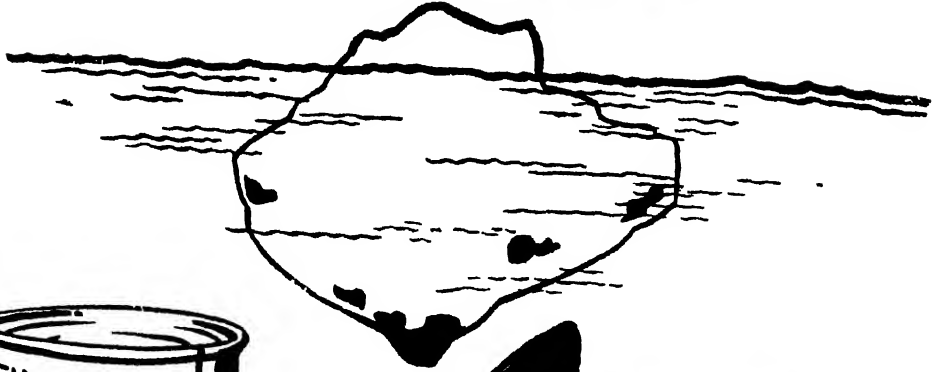
lobster. Ask them to look at home or in a grocer's shop for the names of the places on the labels. They will probably find that the salmon comes from British Columbia or Alaska. It will be necessary to explain where Alaska is.

**3. Fogs.** When warm moist air mixes with cold air fogs usually occur. The cold and warm ocean currents in the neighbourhood of Newfoundland flow side by side and the air over one may move and mix with the air over the other. More vapour is then contained in the mixture than can remain in the invisible form. Some of it becomes visible as minute drops of water and forms a fog. If a bath in a closed room contains hot water on a cold day a mist develops in the room. More vapour passes into the cold air than it can contain and the surplus becomes a visible mist of minute drops of water.

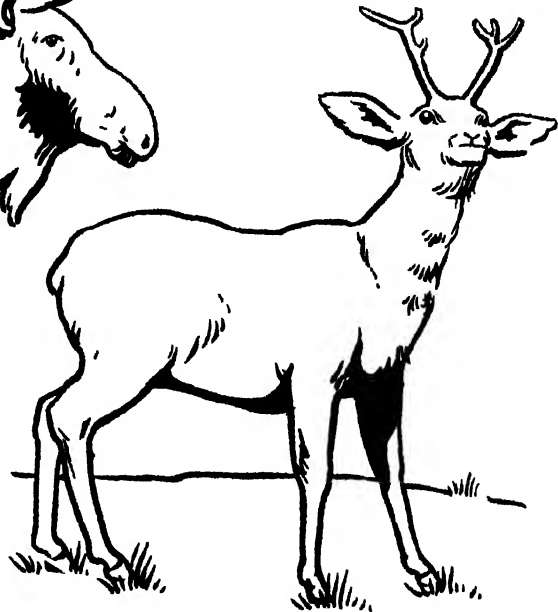
**4. Labrador.** Labrador is the great peninsula lying north of the Gulf of St. Lawrence. The climate is very severe and large areas are unexplored. The Eskimos of the country are keen hunters and travel over regions of snow in winter, clad in sealskins, trapping, fowling, hunting, etc. and render life for them would be impossible without their sled dogs (huskies). These animals can stand the severest cold and have a wonderful sense of direction. Excitement is at the maximum when the hunters return to the villages with reindeer meat, and there is great rejoicing. During the months of August and September the Eskimos are engaged in cod fishing and they then live in tents on the coast. They depend upon the catch of cod for a sure supply of food for the winter.

**5. Icebergs.**—Masses of land ice which have broken away from glaciers or ice sheets are called icebergs. When a glacier reaches the sea the ice is buoyed up by the water or cut by wave motion, which causes masses to break off. About one-ninth of

SKETCHES FOR THE BLACKBOARD



TINNED SALMON  
MOOSE



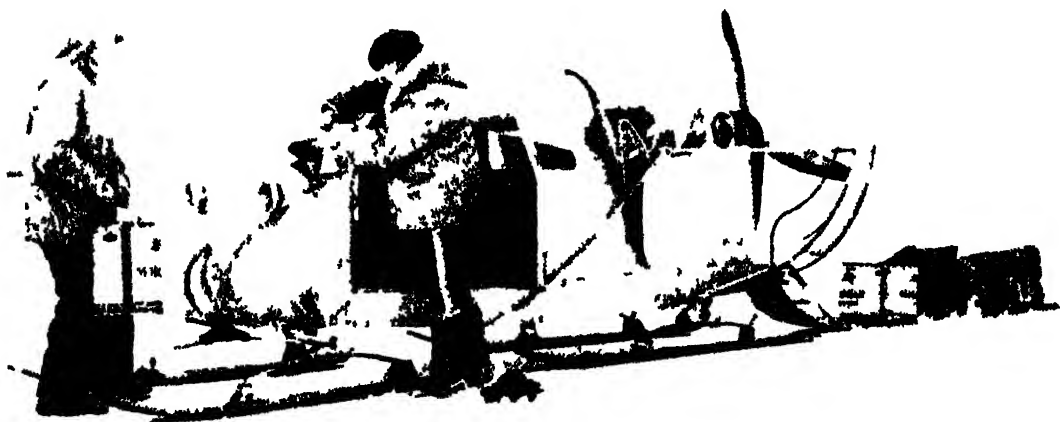
COD  
ROEBUCK



an iceberg is above the water, Arctic bergs have been seen 300 ft high, which indicates that 2,400 ft were below water. (See blackboard sketch page 461.)

**6. Memory work**—(a) The Grand Banks near Newfoundland are famous for fish. (b) Codfish are salted or dried. (c) Cod liver oil and kippers come from the cod. (d) Young herrings are canned and called sardines. (e) Canned lobsters come from Canada. (f) The salmon is the king of fresh water fish. (g) Salmon keep the waterful of the rivers. (h) The River St. Lawrence in British Columbia is the home of millions of salmon. (i) Canadian salmon can be frozen and sent all over the world.

**7. Exercises.**—(a) Where are the Grand Banks? (b) What fish are caught on the Grand Banks? (c) How does the Labrador current help to make this part a good home for cod? (d) At what time of the year is the cod fishing season? (e) How are cod caught? (f) What is a banker? (g) What is a dory? (h) What dangers beset the fishermen? (i) What are fish flakes? (j) What name is given to dried cod? (k) In what part of Canada are the finest salmon caught? (l) Where are salmon hatched? (m) Tell the story of a salmon life. (n) Explain how salmon are caught by wheels. (o) What is done with the salmon catch? (p) What is the color of salmon? (q) What is written on the label on mother's tins of salmon?

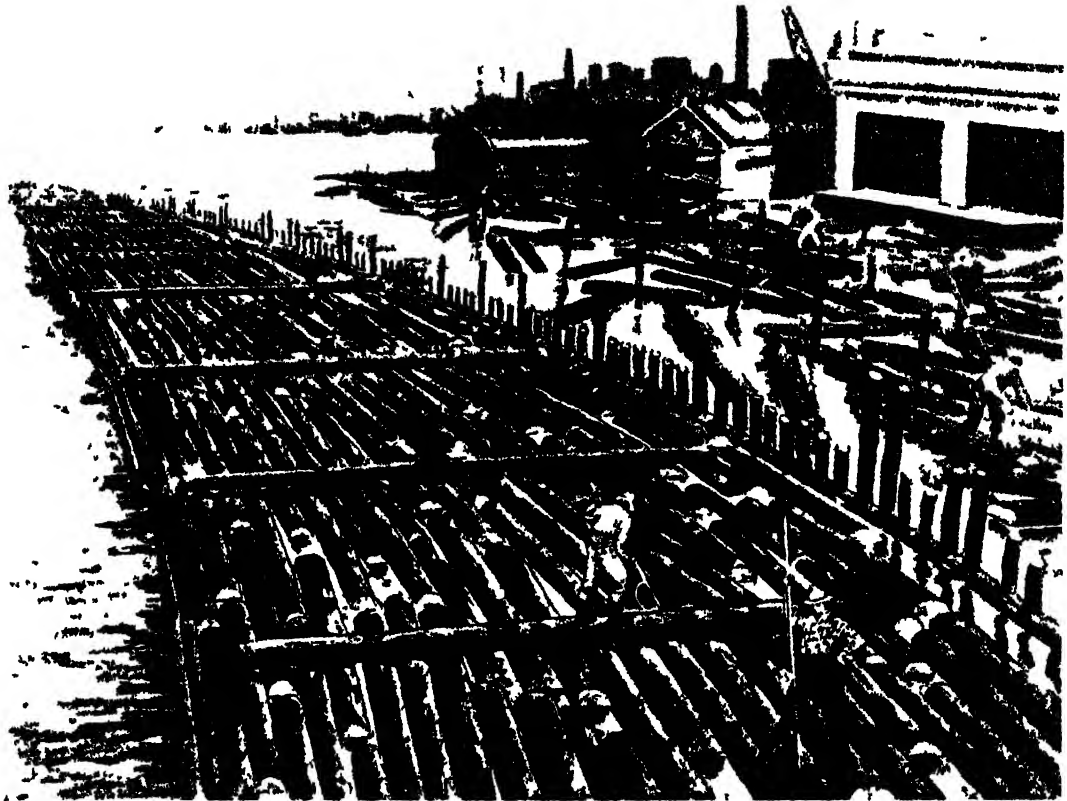


Produced by the Canadian National Film Board

A MEMBER OF THE ROYAL CANADIAN POLICE REGULATING HIS ENGINE POWERED SNOWPLANE

## IV. CANADIAN FORESTS

### PICTURE REFERENCE



A CANADIAN LUMBER RAFT

(Illustration No. 73 in the Portfolio)

**T**HE "Children's Story" deals with a "Sugaring off" Party and the Beaver. In the "Introduction" the lumbering and paper pulp industries are described at some length in order to provide the teacher with ample material for further lessons on Canadian forests.

#### INTRODUCTION

The conditions of soil and climate in Canada generally appear to favour the

coniferous type of forest. Notwithstanding that portions of eastern Canada contain areas of hardwoods, the greater part of Canada's forest consists of spruce, pine, balsam, Douglas fir and other softwoods. The total area covered with timber is estimated at more than a million square miles. The forest stretches from the Atlantic to the Pacific and is broken only by high mountains and expanses of water. In the south the forest merges into the grassy

prairies of Manitoba, Saskatchewan and Alberta, and in the north gradually disappears the tundra of the Arctic shores taking its place. There are three main groups of the great forest: the Cordilleran, the Great Plains, and the Eastern Forests.

*The Cordilleran Forest.* The wet slopes of the western mountains provide valuable trees including the Douglas fir and red cedar which stretch in the northern part of the belt up to an altitude of about 2,500 ft. Towards the north and at high altitude the Douglas fir disappears and hemlock spruce becomes the chief tree. The Douglas fir is one of the world's giant trees; specimens 350 ft. in height being abundant. In the Cordilleran Forest much timber is obtained for use in the

mining industry of British Columbia and Yukon.

*The Forests of the Great Plains.*—From the United States boundary for a distance of from 100 to 400 miles northwards, the prairie grass belt predominates, but north of this purely agricultural and pastoral belt is found the great area of forest. This stretches from Alaska to Labrador and has a width varying from 300 to 400 miles. White spruce predominates in this belt, but aspen, poplar, larch, black spruce, paper birch, jack pine, and balsam poplar are also found. Above the northern margin the forest merges into the sub-Arctic tundra and tree growth is found only in sheltered valleys. The cold influence on the east limits the treeless belt to far south latitude  $57^{\circ}$  N. Near the southern part of Hudson



Fig. 111. — Cutting and Stacking Logs.

STACKING LOGS FOR THE SPRING BREAK-UP, ONTARIO

Bay there are large areas of muskeg which are quite treeless, except for a little stunted black spruce.

*The Eastern Forests*—Near the northern shore of Lake Erie and along the western part of Lake Ontario is a hardwood belt and this is a continuation of the hardwood region of the eastern United States. To the north of this lies a purely agricultural and pastoral area which has been cleared of its former forest. The forest to the north of this and stretching from the St. Lawrence to the treeless belt of Hudson Bay is the most important forest area of Canada. White pine is the predominant tree, but spruce and hemlock are abundant. Along the northern border there is a mixture of hardwood and softwood varieties, maple and yellow birch taking the place of white pine.

The forests of the Maritime Provinces are of great importance and form part of the Acadian belt of eastern forest. Red spruce is here a very important tree, especially in Nova Scotia. It is estimated that nearly 75 per cent of the Maritime forest land

**Uses of the Forest.** The forest has always played a great part in the life of the early settler and pioneer, especially in eastern Canada, providing him with building material and fuel, but opposing his efforts to grow crops. The early buildings were always of timber, usually roughly built log huts.

Trade in timber began in New France shortly after 1650, and sawmills were established near the St. Lawrence towards the end of the seventeenth century. Shipment of lumber was made to the French West Indies during the French rule in eastern Canada, and shipbuilding made extensive use of the forest lands. The Atlantic trade in timber did not start until the beginning of the nineteenth century, but, once commenced, it increased very rapidly. The lumber industry, which began in Quebec and New Brunswick, has gradually extended into Ontario, along the Ottawa river and its tributaries to Georgian Bay and to the

Lake of the Woods. In the central plains lumbering has only been carried on to meet the local demands. In the western forests lumbering has provided new species to the timber market. Lumber is being floated by sea to sawmills along the coast.

Remarkable developments in the manufacture of wood pulp and paper in recent years have created a new industry in eastern Canada which has already surpassed the preparation of lumber. Today it is the most important manufacturing industry in Canada, giving rise to the second export of the country.

Another great use of the forest is that it is the source of fuel. From the earliest times when the Indian fishermen from the banks traded for fuel, to the present time the search for fuel has played a great part in the development of Canada.

**Lumbering.** Lumbering is the name given to the industry in which men are engaged in cutting down the forest trees and preparing the wood for other industries. The two branches of the work are logging, or felling the tree, and transporting them to the mills and sawmills, or cutting the logs into the required form. Lumber is the name given to marketable timber.

The preparation of lumber, the second most important industry in Canada, depends on the forest resources of the country. Many difficulties present themselves in the search for the forest wealth, and it is not always the extensive areas of forest that are first attacked. The outstanding difficulties are the question of routes and the great bulk and weight of the material which has to be dealt with. The only natural routes of the forest are rivers and these are local. The virgin forest grows on land which is far from level and over which it is extremely difficult to drag heavy trees. Roads and railways are costly to construct and are of little use for the transportation of bulky tree trunks. The water link between the area of production and the region where the material is needed is always the best, and it is the

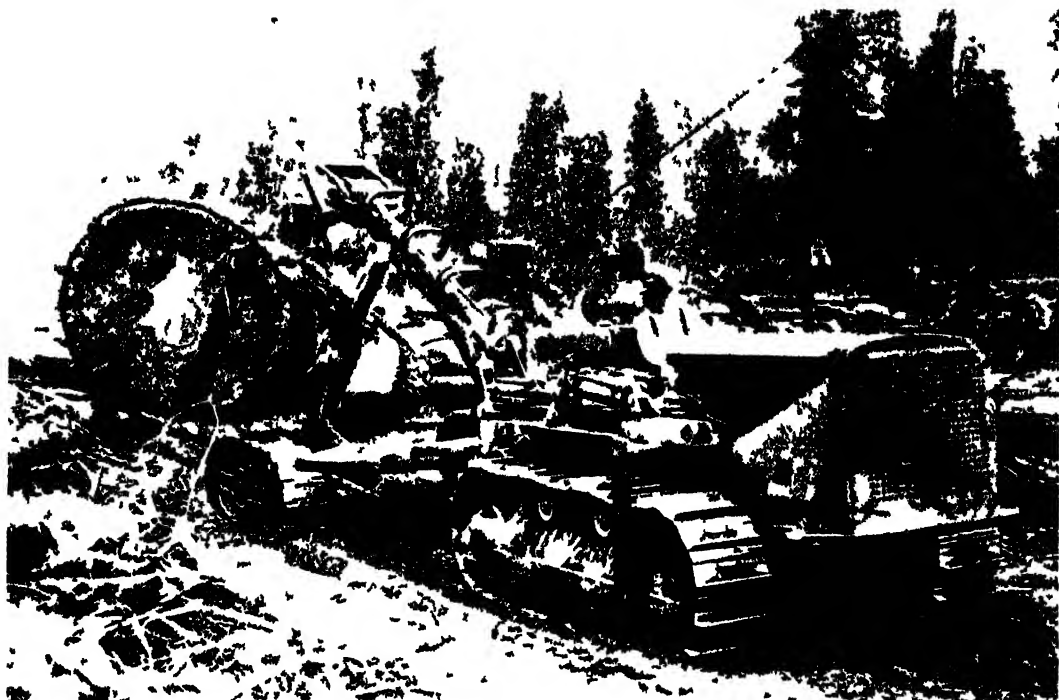


Fig. 11. Logging in winter in the  
Mackinac-Huron-Lake region.

water route that is used in Canada to connect the forest with the sawmill and the pulp and paper works. The forest in the neighbourhood of the St. Lawrence and its tributaries, and the forest of the Maritime with its excellent waterways, are the regions where the lumbering industry is carried on most actively. Without the assistance of the snow of winter the industry would not have assumed its present dimensions. The heavy snowfall of eastern Canada has already been mentioned, and it is the mantle of snow which covers the ground for four or five months of the year that brings success to the industry. Inequalities of the surface during the winter are wiped out, and the forest area becomes a fairly level, hard, slippery area. The rivers are frozen, and although the temperatures are very low, the atmosphere is dry, and the conditions are healthy and invigorating.

It is during the winter months that the lumberman or lumberjack is busy. A camp is pitched where the trees are to be felled, and a log shanty is erected to serve as sleeping quarters and dining room. A good stove is placed in the shanty for cooking the food and warming the building, and a cook is selected to prepare the meals. From dawn to sundown the trees are felled and dragged over the hard, frozen snow to the banks of the streams. The transport from the scene of felling to the river is done on sledges, wheeled vehicles being unsuited for the purpose. At the river's bank the logs are piled in stacks, and so the work goes on, day by day, during the winter. In April the snow begins to melt, and the ice of the rivers to disappear. With the additional water drained from the land the rivers become rushing torrents. Logging ceases, the camp breaks up, the logs are tumbled

into the streams to form great rafts, which are carried without much trouble down stream. The only serious difficulty which arises is when a log jam occurs at some awkward bend of a river; but the skilled men in charge of the rafts can overcome this with comparative ease. Lower down stream the rafts reach the sawmills and the paper and pulp factories, and, by a boom across the river, the further progress seawards is arrested.

The lumbermen find other work during

**The Miracle of Paper.**—The manufacture of pulp and paper is a comparatively recent development in Canada. Paper was first manufactured in Canada about a hundred years ago, but before 1860 no wood pulp was used or produced. Before that time paper was made from rags, straw, esparto grass, cotton waste and other materials. The first paper mill was established at St. Andrews in Quebec in 1803, and the first wood-pulp mill at Windsor Mills, Quebec, in 1870. By 1901 there were twenty-five



LUMBER JAM

the summer months, and the forest no longer rings with the sound of their axes and saws. Thus a combination of factors has made eastern Canada one of the most important regions of the world for timber, pulp and paper. It is not merely the presence of trees supplying useful timber, but the rivers and the severe winter with its heavy fall of snow are of the utmost importance. Neither must we forget the skill of the hardy Canadian, who spends his winter in isolation in Canada's eastern forest.

mills, and since that date the advance has been very rapid. The great development is due to the abundant water supplies, and to water power adjacent to extensive resources of wood suitable for conversion into pulp.

In the mechanical process of preparing wood pulp, the barked wood is held by hydraulic pressure against the surface of a revolving grindstone, the sticks lying with their lengths parallel to the width of the stone. The grindstone is constantly washed by water





FIGURE 1. A PILE OF LOGS AND BRANCHES, READY FOR THE PULP MILL.

which carries away the pulp as it is formed. This form of pulp is used only for the cheap kind of paper. It contains all the void substance—a large proportion of which is not durable.

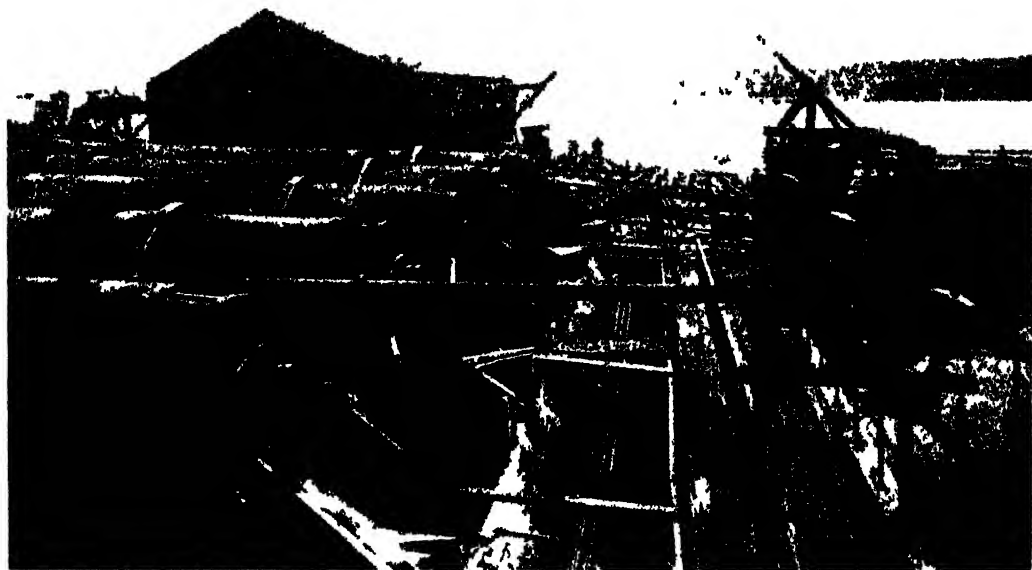
There are several chemical processes of preparing wood pulp, but in each the essential operation is to treat finely chopped wood with chemicals. The chemical process is used for the manufacture of the better class paper, which, although it lacks strength, can be readily finished to a good surface. Spruce is the chief timber used in the manufacture of wood pulp, forming over 50 per cent of the total.

Newsprint paper forms about 50 per cent of the annual paper production of Canada. The output of newsprint paper is now over two million tons per annum, making Canada the largest producer of newsprint in the world.

**Maple sugar.**—The pale yellow maple sugar, which is a popular Canadian sweetmeat, is prepared from the sweet sap of the

maple tree, which is the national emblem of Canada. The tree is tapped in early spring, before the foliage begins to develop. An incision made in the tree

one three feet from the ground or two to four holes are bored. Pans are then hung on the tree to receive the sap which oozes out. The pans are emptied and replaced until the buds begin to form when the sap ceases to flow. The sap is transferred to cauldrons which are hung from branches over log fires. The scum which rises to the surface during the process of heating is skimmed off, and the hot liquid is put aside to cool when it thickens and sets to a delicious sugary toffee. The average yield from a tree is four pounds of sugar. A more modern method of treating the maple sap is to convey it by pipes to an evaporating house. As well as for the production of sugar, the sap may be heated to the consistency of syrup, which is used in American households as we use treacle. The whole work of collecting and purifying the maple sap is carried on

*(Reproduced from the National Geographic Magazine)*

## WOOD BARKERS AND SERAPENTS LAUKINNIEMI LUTP AND PAUL MITIS, QUEBEC

by farmers, who themselves use much of the product for culinary purposes.

**The Fur Trade.** Reference has been made to the quest for fur in the early history of the Dominion. Fur and fish undoubtedly were the incentives for Europeans to visit the northern part of America and to try and effect a settlement in the country. The old forts established by the Hudson's Bay Company and the early trappers have lost much of their importance as collecting and trading stations, but many have become firmly established and have prospered in other directions than fur. The need for the commodity is, however, greater to day than it was centuries ago and far greater quantities are obtained. A change of method has been brought about in a more advanced age. The railway has revolutionised conditions. Edmonton, a railway centre near the

southern edge of the forest of Alberta, has become a large collecting centre. Winnipeg, the great railway town of the central plains, is now the collecting and distributing point of the Hudson's Bay Company, though Moose Factory is visited once a year, as formerly, by a vessel from London. The furs of the Ottawa valley and the Onchar forest near by, are collected at Montreal for shipment. Montreal has become, in fact, the great international fur market. Thus the three great fur markets of Canada are now on the line of railway across the continent in the south of Canada, whereas formerly the centres for collecting the commodity were in the vicinity of Hudson Bay.

The fur bearing animals have been hunted and killed for their peltries for hundreds of years, but few species, if any, have been exterminated. The most valuable of the animals are the beaver, otter, marten, mink,



COLLECTING MAPLE SAP

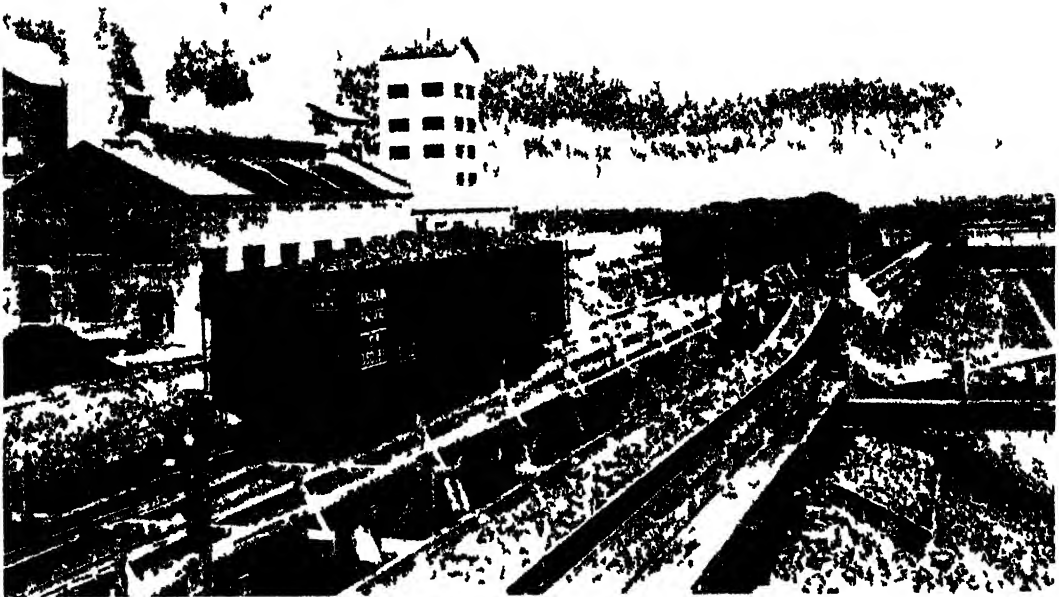
*[Reproduced by courtesy of Canada House]*

Where pipe lines are not used in a maple tree bush the pails of sap are emptied into a large tank and carried to the evaporator house on a skid drawn by a team of horses.

muskirat, bear, wolf, fox, skunk and ermine. For a long time the beaver was the most prized fur, and a beaver skin was made a unit of value for all barter. For some years the muskrat was the fur most in demand, and as many as a million pelts were taken in the neighbourhood of the Saskatchewan river in a single season. The beaver is not found farther north than the limit of the poplar and birch, the barks of which are its favourite food. Polar bears and white and blue foxes

are restricted to the more northerly regions, and the muskrat prefers swampy regions. All the other varieties are widely distributed.

In the Maritimes and Quebec special attention is now paid to the rearing of fur-bearing animals in captivity, and fur farms have been established. Prince Edward Island holds the premier position in this industry. Silver fox farms predominate; but a few farms raise the beaver, mink and muskrat. The following tables may be of interest.



UNITED STATES SUGAR FACTORY

<i>Province</i>	<i>Number of Pelt in One Year</i>
Alberta	1,775,000
Ontario	1,000,000
Saskatchewan	500,000
Manitoba	300,000
Quebec	297,000
British Columbia	272,000
N.W. Territories	204,000

<i>Kind of Animal</i>	<i>Number of Pelts in One Year</i>
Muskrat	1,654,000
Furmine	482,000
Mink	157,000
Skunk	130,000
Beaver	112,000

which finds on Lake Ontario. One day his father brought him a packet of maple sugar. Maple sugar is very like the rich yellow sugar we find stored up in the pressed and cooled orange and lemon peel that we cut up to put into cakes. It is a favourite sweet in Canada and is well known there as hardy sugar in England.

Where does maple sugar come from?" asked John as he thoughtfully crunched a lump of it.

It is made from the sweet juice of the maple tree, replied his father. When I was a boy I lived in a big farmhouse near the forest, and I used to see the maple sugar made every year. Each March, which is the sugar-making season, my father would allow us children to have what we called a 'sugaring off' party.

In the morning before the party my father's men would go into the forest and bore two or three holes in the maple trees

### CHILDREN'S STORY

**Maple Sugar.**—John was a little Canadian boy who lived in the town of Hamilton,

about three feet away from the ground. Then they used to hang pails under the holes to catch the sticky juice which dripped out from them. All day long the juice dripped into the buckets.

Our friends came to our house for the party in the late afternoon, when it was already growing dark. We used to eat a big meal together and then wrap up warmly in our 'mitts' and 'tugues' and set off for the maple wood.

When we came to the tree which the men had bored we started to gather wood and make a large bonfire. Then we poured the sticky sap from the pails on the trees into an iron pot, taking care to put the pails back again, so that the sap should not be wasted.

"We hung the iron pot from a branch over the log fire, as Scouts do in England. As the juice grew hot a scum formed on it like the scum which forms on jam when in the boiler, boiling it over the fire. We scraped off the scum with a knife as it formed, leaving the juice a clear syrup. When the syrup had boiled and thickened a little over the fire

we seized the pot and poured the hot liquid on to the snow. The coldness of the snow made the syrup set at once, and it turned to a delicious sugary toffee.

Then came the fun. Everyone scrambled to get the first pieces of sugar, fingers were burnt, and there was friendly fighting and snowballing among the boys. When every one had some sugar, we would make up the fire and sit round it, singing songs and telling ghost stories till we were sent home to bed."

**The Beaver.** Long before the axes of lumberjacks were heard in the Canadian forests the Red Indians used to wander amongst the trees hunting and tapping for fur-bearing animals. For in the cold forests of North America live countless wild creatures. There are the brown, black and grizzly bears, the beaver, otter, marmot, fox, sable, muskrat, wolf, skunk, marten and mink. Many of these animals have skins of great value for winter clothing and the Hudson's Bay Company set up stations to trade in furs with the trappers. Some of



A BEAVER DAM

these stations have grown into cities, and one of them, whose name was formerly Fort Garry, is now the great city of Winnipeg.

You have already been told about the life of a trapper in the cold forests and how he obtains the furs which hang in shop windows. One of the most beautiful and expensive is the fur of the beaver. This animal is about three feet long, of which length nearly one third is tail. He makes his home in the water, and for this reason his hind feet are webbed like those of a duck. He also has peculiar nostrils which he can close when he dives so that the water is kept out. He has a broad flat tail shaped like a paddle and covered with scales. The rest of his body is covered with soft reddish-brown fur. This fur is much prized by men and women for making into coats, gloves, hats and other clothing.

The most wonderful thing about the beaver is the way in which he makes his home. If you are walking along the bank of a stream in Canada and come to a place where beavers have made their home, you will see a remarkable sight. The stream, which up till now has been flowing along quietly, has suddenly become a deep pool. How has this happened? A great dam of twigs, earth and stones has been built across the stream from one bank to the other. This dam prevents the water from moving away quickly so that it collects and forms a pool behind the dam. Who have made this dam across the stream? The clever beavers themselves.

Why have they made it? The beavers, as you have heard, spend much of their time in the water. Now an ordinary stream becomes shallow in the summer weather when there is not much rain and the beavers find that then there is too little water for their comfort. Again, in rainy weather the stream is swollen and rushes down very fast, and the beavers find that the swirling water washes away their homes. What they need is a small lake of still deep water, and they set to work to make it by building a dam across the stream to hold up the water.

How do the beavers build their dam? Let us suppose that a colony of beavers decides to move. In early summer they leave their old home and set out along the river bank to look for a new one. They travel along till they find a place which takes their fancy. There they set to work to build their dam. Now we see how clever the beavers are. They know what kind of building will be best. If the stream flows gently they make the dam of branches and twigs. These do not altogether stop the water from flowing but make it trickle slowly through them as if they were a sieve. When the stream flows swiftly however the dam must be strong to stand against it and in that case it is made chiefly of mud and stones packed firmly together and strengthened with logs.

Whatever kind of dam they choose to make the beavers have much work before them, and they start at once. The first thing is to cut down the trees which they will need. It is wonderful to think that an animal with no tools but its teeth and claws can cut down a tree. Yet if you go into the woods beside a beaver's dam you will find many tree stumps which show that the beavers have been at their work. To fell a tree a beaver sets to work with its strong sharp teeth to nibble through the trunk about a foot above the ground. Round and round the trunk it goes chipping off little pieces of wood till at last only a tiny thick mass is left to hold the tree upright. Then the beaver can do no more. He must wait till the wind blows the tree down. He is such a skilful woodcutter, that when the tree does fall, it generally comes down on the side nearest to the water.

As soon as it has fallen, the beaver strips off the bark and the branches, and cuts up the trunk into pieces. All these pieces have next to be carried down to the water's edge. When they are small enough, the beaver carries them there in his mouth. The larger pieces he rolls down with his paws, pushing himself along by means of his broad flat tail. Sometimes if the ground is very

rough, and the tree lies far from the stream, he will dig a canal from the water to the trunk. The water runs up the canal, and the beaver pushes the trunk into it, and it floats down to the stream.

Every log, branch or twig that he can find or cut down is brought to the dam, and pushed and patted into place by his paws. He strengthens the dam with stones and with mud which he carries in his paws, holding them pressed together under his chin.

At last the dam is finished; but much still remains to be done. The beavers have now to build themselves houses, or *lodges* as they are called. These are made of mud, branches and twigs well patted together. They are built either in the bank beside the pool made by the dam, or on an island in the middle of the pool. If you were to look for the door of a beaver's lodge you would not find it, for it is under the water. When a beaver goes home, he dives into the pool and swims to his front door, which is a hole in the bank underneath the water. He goes through it into a dark tunnel which runs up through the bank. At the end of it he comes into a cosy room with a round ceiling and walls neatly lined with mud. Here the beaver family live—father, mother and babies all together. No enemy can reach them in their snug house, and if they wish to feed, they can slip down their tunnel into the water without danger of being seen by any creature on the bank.

When the dam and the lodges are finished, there remains only one final piece of work to be done. This is the filling of the beaver's winter larder. The beaver's food is water-lilies and the roots of other water plants; he also gnaws bark and twigs. In summer he can get this food when he pleases, but he knows that in winter the pond will be frozen over, so he lays in a store of juicy roots and pieces of bark, fastening them down under water so that they will not float away.

The beaver begins his building late in the summer, usually about August, so that

when the first frosts come everything is ready for the winter. The dam is strong and firm, the lodges are snug and water-tight, and the larders are full. When the winter cold comes, it freezes everything hard and stiff, and the beaver can live safely through the winter in his cosy house.

### TEACHING HINTS

**1. Maple.**—There is a blackboard sketch of a maple leaf in Volume I., page 407.

**2. Sugar.**—It would be advisable to revise the lesson on sugar given in Volume I., page 473. Children should understand that the two chief sources of sugar are the sugar cane and the sugar beet. Probably some of the children will have seen sap oozing from a tree such as the peach.

**3. Clothes.**—In cold weather Canadians wear *mitten*s (gloves without fingers), a *tuque* or knitted cap, *moccasins* and thick woollen stockings, and a heavy *mackinaw* or fur jacket which is worn over a jersey.

**4. Pelt.**—A skin or hide with the wool or fur attached.

**5. Fords.**—The early collecting stations for the fur were often liable to attack from Indians or French rivals. It was therefore necessary that they should be surrounded by some form of protection.

**6. Muskrat.**—The outstanding importance of this animal as a source of fur should be noticed in the table given. The hair resembles that of a beaver and is of a dark tint. The animals live in streams and pools, and are most active at night, spending the day in their burrows. Their fur is called musquash.

**7. The seal.**—Seals are animals adapted for marine life. The limbs are converted into paddles. The one or two (generally one) young seals are born on land, and are

at first white. Seals are found in all seas except those of the tropics, but abound chiefly in Arctic and Antarctic regions. There are three families—harp seals or true seals, fur seals or sea lions, and walruses. The common seal, which has a yellowish coat spotted with brown, lives around Scotland, Ireland and Wales, and haunts the mouths of salmon rivers, eating the fish. The harp seal or Greenland seal is hunted off Newfoundland and has a light grey coat with black crescents extending from the shoulders to the thighs. The face also is black. There are also the ringed seal hunted by the Eskimos, the great grey seal, the hooded seal which lives near Iceland and has an inflatable sac about a foot long on the face, and the monk seal of the Mediterranean. The sea lion has a more distinct neck than a true seal, small external ears and a close

woolly fur under the coarse grey hairs. In addition the hind limbs are free from the tail and can be turned forward so as to be used on land. The sea lion is the source of the highly prized sealskin of commerce.

**8. Memory work.** (The Memory Work includes matter dealing with the forests and the teacher will probably like to revise the exercises which were given in Volume I.) (a) Canadian timber ranks second in importance to Canadian wheat. (b) In the forests of Canada grow cedars, firs, spruce, and pines. (c) The Douglas fir of British Columbia is one of the largest trees in the world. (d) Sawmills are worked by electricity. (e) Paper is made from wood pulp. (f) Maple sap is boiled to make sugar. (g) Fur-bearing animals live in the forests. (h) The beaver is hunted for its valuable pelt.

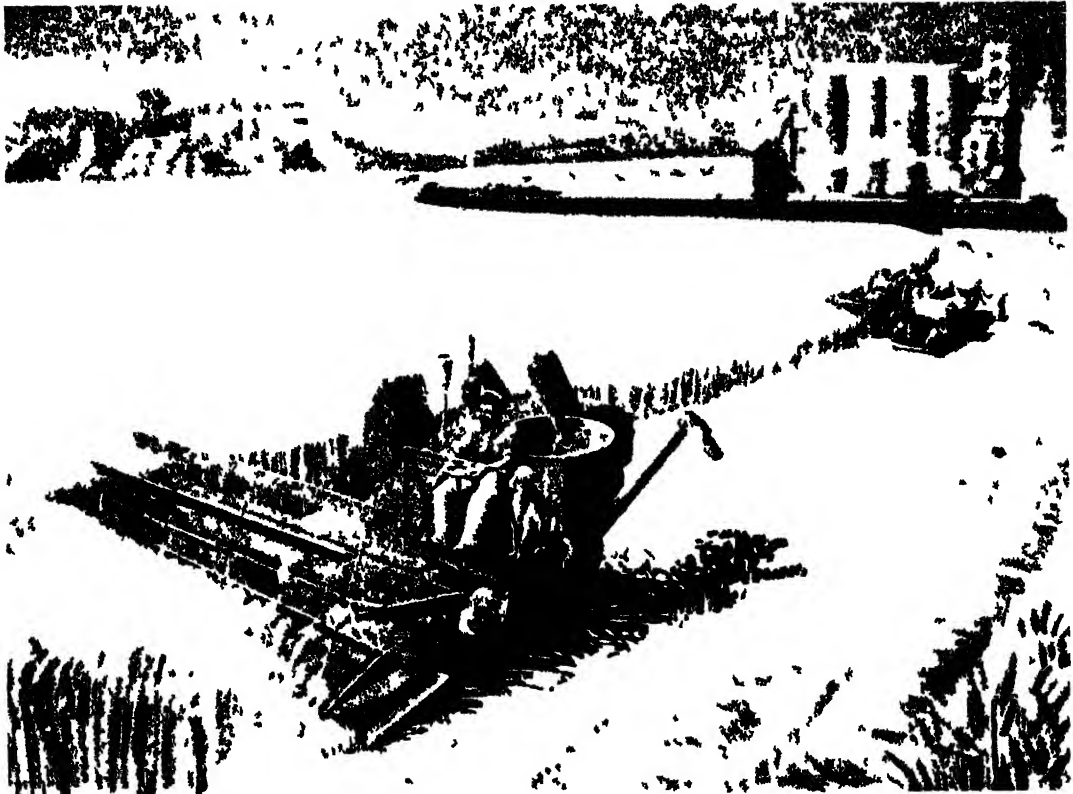


ELDORA MINI PORT RADIUM ON GREAT BEAR LAKE  
(The mine produces pitchblende from which uranium is obtained)



## V. CANADIAN WHEATLANDS AND RANCHES

### PICTURE REFERENCE



HARVESTING ON THE CANADIAN PLAIN

(The illustration is from the portfolio)

### INTRODUCTION

**Agriculture** -The varied aspects of farming form the chief industry of the Canadian people, the products constituting a very large percentage of Canadian exports and also providing the raw materials for many Canadian manufactures. All along the southern border of the Dominion agricul-

ture is possible in some form or other. The Maritime Provinces are noted for their fruit and vegetable crops, Quebec and Ontario specialise in dairying, the Prairie Provinces are great regions for wheat, barley and oats, and for stock raising, and the fertile valleys of British Columbia produce fruit crops.

It is, however, to the southern portion of

the three Prairie Provinces, lying between the United States boundary and the northern forests, that we must turn for the great agricultural lands and for the most important region for stock raising. It must be noticed, however, that no matter how favoured the area may be in its climate and soil, big production has only become possible by the construction of a multitude of routes and by attracting to the area a hard working vigorous type of people. Thus since the completion of the Canadian Pacific Railway in 1866, the population of Canada has more than doubled, and the production of wheat has increased sevenfold. The big increase in the wheat crop is due, in a large degree to the development of routes in the southern part of the Dominion.

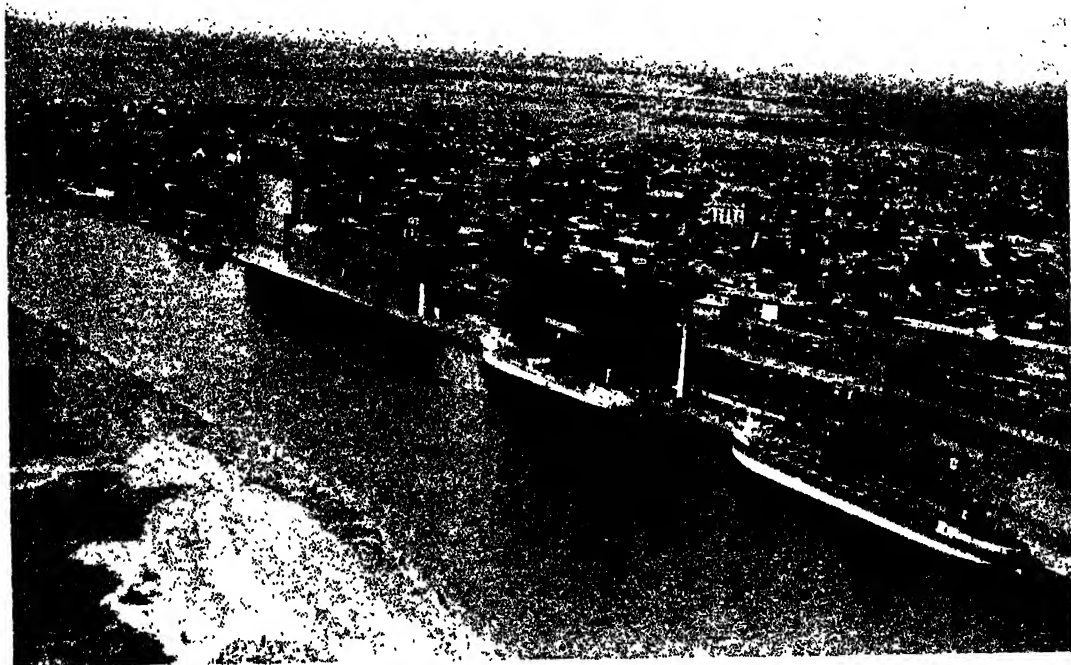
The plain region of Manitoba and Saskatchewan has a rich loamy soil. It is almost treeless, is well watered and is highly fertile. The heavy snowfall of winter gives plenty of moisture to the soil in spring, the summer rainfall comes at the best time of the year, when the temperature is highest, and the high temperature of the summer months is favourable to the production of grain. The region has become the great wheat belt of Canada. Saskatchewan in the middle province is the largest producer, and is followed by Alberta and Manitoba. The same order is true for oats, but for barley the order is Saskatchewan in Manitoba and Alberta.

Scientific research has made Canada a great wheat land. The discovery of



A CATTLE RANCH IN WESTERN CANADA

(Class Picture No. 80 in the portfolio) ABOUT SOME OF



[Reproduced by courtesy of Canada House.]

**GRAIN ELEVATORS, FORT WILLIAM, ONTARIO**

varieties which needed a shorter growing period than those of more equable climates was necessary, and such varieties were obtained. Every few days that can be taken off the growing period will extend the area under wheat into a more northerly and westerly part of Canada than that which is at present such a prolific source of supply.

While wheat stands supreme as a staple of human food, the other grain crops are of importance for the maintenance of live stock.

The most important manufacturing industry connected with the field crops is flour milling. Such work started with the early settlers, for it was an absolute necessity for them to obtain flour for their daily bread. Large scale production in milling began with the competition between stone and roller milling. Local stone mills had enabled farmers to convert some of their grain into

flour; but to-day the small local mills have given way to the large mills served by elevators at central points suitably placed for collecting grain from a large area. Nearly 1,400 mills are now working in Canada, and about 11½ million barrels of flour are exported annually. Canada possesses the largest flour mill in the British Empire; this mill can produce 24,500 barrels of flour a day.

In addition to the crops already mentioned, there are others suited to particular localities, and these add materially to Canada's agricultural wealth. They comprise tobacco, sugar maple, sugar beet, fruits and potatoes. Tobacco is grown principally in Ontario and Quebec, maple sugar and maple syrup are products of Ontario, Quebec, Nova Scotia and New Brunswick. Quebec, however, produces about 78 per cent. of the total. Sugar beets are grown in Ontario, where there are two sugar beet factories,



*(Reproduced by courtesy of Canada House)*

#### APPLES IN NOVA SCOTIA

and in Alberta where there is one. The production is small in comparison with the principal sugar beet countries of the world, but over 60 million lb of refined sugar are obtained annually.

Canada is particularly noted for many of its fruits. The Annapolis valley of Nova Scotia, the lake peninsula of Ontario, and the Okanagan valley in British Columbia are outstanding regions. The northern shore of Lake Ontario, the Georgian Bay district, the region near Montreal and Vancouver Island are also noted for their fruit crops. Apples, which are probably the most important Canadian fruit, meet with ready sale in British and European markets, where their attractive appearance, excellent

flavour and good keeping qualities have gained a wide reputation.

Practically all varieties of fruit are prepared in canneries located near the centres of production. In Nova Scotia the apple-growing industry has assumed great importance, a large proportion of the crop being exported to Great Britain. The first export is said to have been shipped by a sailing vessel from Halifax to Liverpool in 1819. The first steamer to carry apples direct from Annapolis to London was the *Neptune* which left in 1881. The shipment consisted of 6,600 barrels and the journey to London took fourteen days. From that time the trade has continued to increase in volume, the annual export now being about two



FRUIT FARMING. BRITISH COLUMBIA

(Fruitful) courtesy of C. P. K.

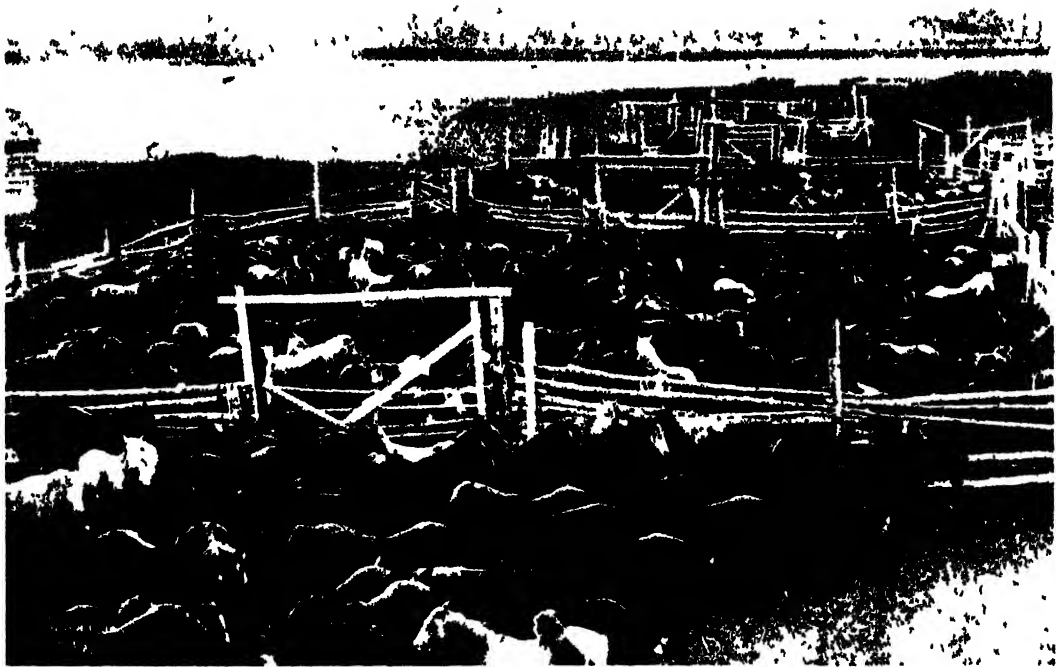
million barrels. The region for apples, the Annapolis and adjacent valleys, comprises a district about 100 miles long and 6 to 11 miles wide.

The fruit region of Ontario, along the northern shore of the lake and in the peninsula, produces apples, peaches, pears, plums, grapes and cherries. Fruit growing on a commercial scale in British Columbia is a comparatively recent industry; to-day it is exceedingly prosperous and thousands of boxes of carefully graded fruit are exported. The finest orchards are in the Okanagan valley, where apples, pears, plums, peaches, apricots and cherries are grown. It was not until the Canadian Pacific Railway was completed that fruit growing could be a commercial proposition in British Columbia. Canning fruit is a large and flourishing industry.

There are more than 711,000 farms in Canada and most of these are very large

concerns the average area of each farm in the Prairie Provinces being about 350 acres. In Manitoba and Saskatchewan, over half the land suitable for farm purposes is already occupied, and in Alberta about 30 per cent of the land is owned. The best and most up-to-date machinery is in use, farm buildings are large and modern and the conditions of life are very good.

**Ranching and Dairying.**—Although overshadowed by the production of cereals, the raising of live stock has made very great progress in Canada. The natural pasture of the western prairies is an admirable ranching country. Sheep rearing is on a much smaller scale. The meat-packing industry is developing, and some of the large cities of the plains manufacture leather from the available skins and hides. In the eastern provinces cattle are reared mainly for dairy products,



ROUGH HORSES IN CORRAL S. ALBERTA

*Reproduced by courtesy of Canada House*

for which Canada is now well known. Ontario and Quebec specialise particularly in the dairying industry, but it must be remembered that butter and cheese are also exported from the western plains. The oldest cheese factory dates back to 1855, and was established at Oxford in Ontario.

Dairying is not only one of the oldest but it is now one of the greatest industries of Canada. Modern dairying owes its development and expansion to the factory system for the making of cheese and butter and to the facilities offered by modern methods of cold storage. The early French colonists made cheese and laid the foundation of the great trade in Canadian Cheddar.

Within recent years there has been a big development in the preparation of condensed and evaporated milk.

The rearing of pigs, particularly for bacon production, is profitably combined with dairying and cereal farming. There is a ratio of pigs to persons of 1 to 24 which is higher than that in Ireland.

### CHILDREN'S STORY

**Wheat, cattle and fruit.** When the Boy Scouts were going to hold a great Empire Jamboree in England, Jim Dennis, of York, had his father's permission to make one of a party going to the camp. It was a thrilling adventure, and not the least exciting part of it was meeting Scouts from overseas and hearing tales of their lives. Jim became acquainted with three Canadian Scouts, all strangers to each other, and the four boys had many an earnest talk round the camp fire and during "lukes." Jim hoped to go

to Canada when he became a man, and told the others so one evening.

"The best part of Canada is the prairie," said one of the young Canadians, who lived in the province of Manitoba. "My father's farm is mostly under wheat. When the winter snow melts, we turn out the tractors and ploughs, and a whole battery of them to work one behind another. They plough from one end of the farm to the other, because there are no hedges or fences in the way, and the furrows are nearly a mile long."

"After ploughing the seed is sown and quickly shoots up. Then we get the rains, which make it grow faster still. I love the prairie in the late spring. It is all patches of colour. Wild crocuses grow everywhere, prairie roses creep and twine, golden rod and prairie sunflowers push up their yellow heads between the green blades of wheat. Father has the farm buildings all freshly painted, and the Jacksons do the same. They are our neighbours, and we can see their farm away on the skyline."

"Our neighbours live next door," observed Jim.

"Yes, I shouldn't care for that," replied the boy from the prairie. "I like to go out and see a stretch of sky and the plain rolling away in all directions. I should hate to live in a cramped town. We have a fine, timber farmhouse with central heating and gas, and also a large orchard and vegetable garden."

"You should see the harvesting machines we use. They cut and thresh as they go along. When the bins are full of grain it pours out of a pipe into a motor truck and is sent off to the elevator by the railway. There the wheat is put through sieves and graded, and father gets his price per bushel. In the end, the grain goes down to Winnipeg by freight train."

"I saw some in an exhibition at York," said Jim. "It was called 'Manitoba Hard Wheat'."

"Yes, the hot sun hardens it. English wheat is soft. Hard wheat makes the best quality flour, and I've heard that English

bakers mix Canadian with other flour to give the right 'strength' to their bread. Anyway, your English loaves taste very good at tea time," and he laughed.

Jim made up the fire, as the wind had turned a little chill, and fetched out of his pocket a bag of toffee, which he handed round.

"My great wish is to own a ranch, not a farm," remarked the second young Canadian. "I live twenty miles west of Edmonton in Alberta and have ridden a horse to school for four years now. Our part of the prairie is all grassland. We have plenty of sunshine and very little cold weather. In winter the days are bright and the light snowfall is quickly melted by a warm wind which we call the chinook. The winter is over by March, when the prairie flowers come out and speckle the grass with bright colours."

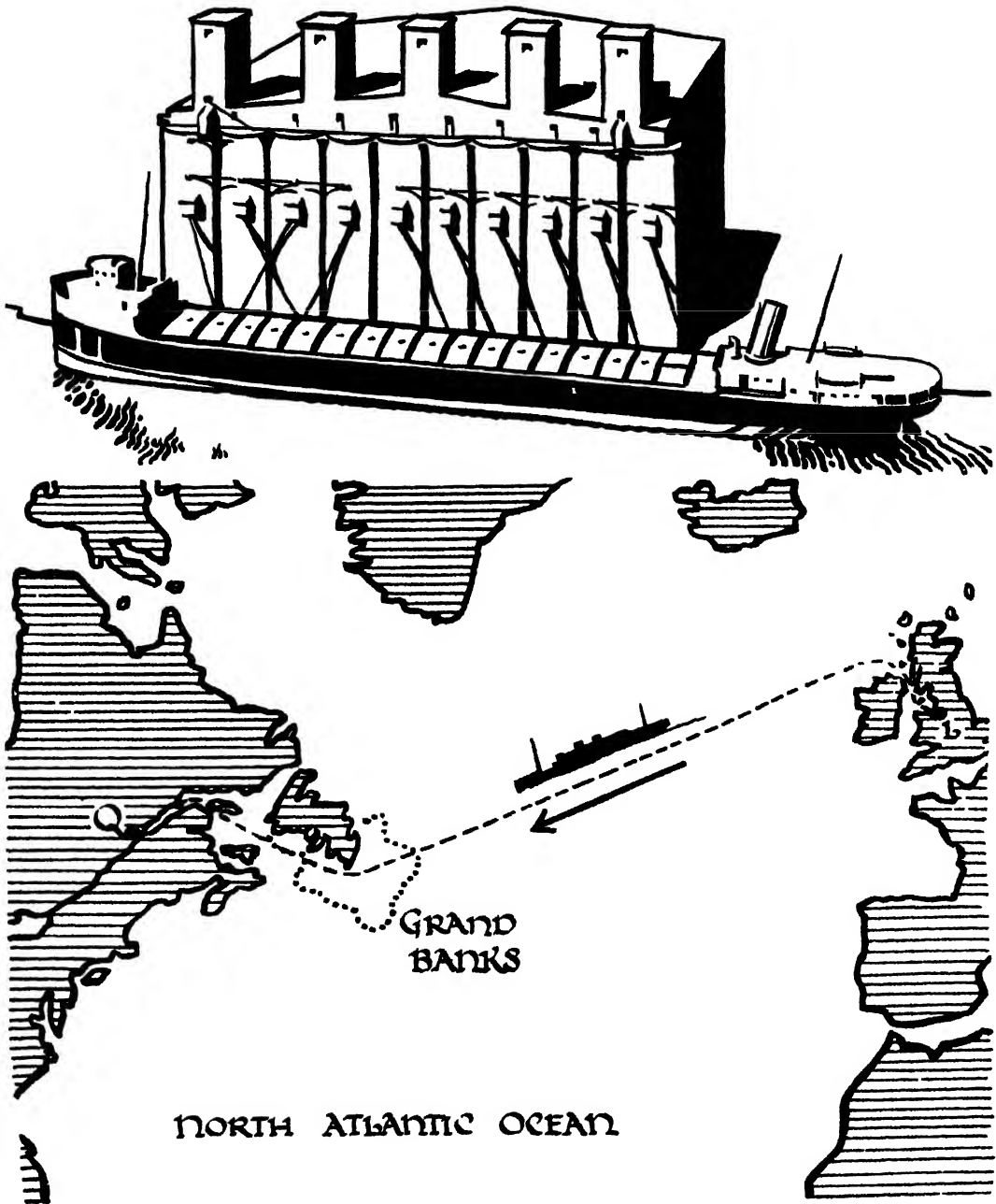
"There are cattle, horses and often sheep as well on every ranch, and the cowboys have to be in the saddle the whole of the day to look after them all. There are no farm houses or human beings anywhere about, so it is a lonelier life than a farmer's, but cowboys are always too busy to bother about loneliness. They love the free life of the open air. I have seen them do great feats of horsemanship when they are rounding up horses and cattle for branding (that is stamping them with the mark of their owner). I hope to do my share of it in a few years' time."

"What is done with your cattle and horses?" asked Jim.

"Canada's very big and there are plenty of lonely places not fit for cars, and you must have horses for riding or pulling. The cattle end as canned meat, chilled beef or beef extract. There are big meat-packing factories at Edmonton. Some of the cattle, of course, are dairy cows, kept for butter, cheese, condensed milk and milk powder. We don't make these goods in our own dairy, but send the milk to creameries and cheese factories."

"I have eaten a lot of Canadian Cheddar cheese," said Jim.

## SKETCHES FOR THE BLACKBOARD



NORTH ATLANTIC OCEAN

A JAKIR BEING LOADED AT A GRAIN ELEVATOR  
DIAGRAMMATIC MAP OF THE SEA ROUTE FROM LIVERPOOL TO QUEBEC



"Well, now it is my turn," struck in the third young Canadian, "and what I can tell is the best of all. My father is a cherry farmer in Kootenay, British Columbia, and I want to become a big fruit farmer too. The wild flowers of the prairie are beautiful, but the blossoming of the trees on our cherry ranch in May is a wonderful sight. The white flowers look just like wax and cover the branches from end to end. They even stick to the trunks and limbs of the trees, like the feathers on a bird's leg.

"Fruit picking is a busy time. The cherries look delicious and are packed in boxes holding eight or sixteen pounds each. We also send hundreds of pounds to the cannery.

"My father grows cherries only, but I should like to try growing other kinds of fruit as well, as farmers do in the Okanagan valley. Father once saw a single Okanagan apple which weighed over two pounds! The Okanagan farmers grow apples, peaches, grapes, pears and strawberries, which are sold raw, or canned, or dried. Some are also made into jam. Of course we never get the severe weather that the prairie suffers from, and I have heard that it is also mild and warm on the east coast of Canada in Nova Scotia, where the Annapolis apples grow."

The boy stopped speaking, and for a minute there was silence. Then Jim screwed up the empty toffee bag and threw it on the fire.

"Haven't you got some special policemen who travel about on horseback, or in planes or cars, and make men keep the law from east to west?" he asked, slowly.

"Oh yes!" they replied in chorus. "The Royal Canadian Mounted Police."

"Well, I think I'd like to become one of them, and then I could visit you all in turn," said Jim.

### TEACHING HINTS

**1. Map.**—The pupils should find on the map the exact positions of the wheatlands, ranches and fruitlands of Canada. A sketch

of Canada as a rough oblong might be drawn on the board and the various districts marked off in coloured chalks.

**2. Threshing.** One of the most wonderful machines in the world is the combine harvester which is seen on all the large farms of Canada. It cuts and gathers the wheat, threshes it, cleans it and pours it into bins. Sometimes the grain is poured straight into wagons built up like huge bins and is taken directly to the railway car or elevator.

**3. Grain elevator.**—An American name for a grain silo or granary. It contains a number of deep vertical bins constructed of steel plates. By means of a bucket or pneumatic elevator the grain is emptied into a receiving chamber, whence it is carried by a bucket elevator to a distributing floor at the top of the building. By means of a system of belt conveyors it is rapidly delivered into one of the bins. Trucks which run under the bins are loaded directly, or the grain is transferred to "lakers," by belt conveyors or through spouts.

**4. Ranch.**—It should be pointed out that dairy cattle require a good deal of attention. The cows must be milked twice a day, and the milk must be kept fresh or sent to the factory. Beef cattle require less attention. They are turned out to feed and are brought to the farms only in winter, or during the periodical "round-up" for marking or selling. Point out that large cattle ranches are not seen in England, for there is not enough space for them and the land is too dear.

**5. Chinook.**—This is a warm dry wind blowing along the eastern margin of the Rocky Mountains. When currents of air descend mountain slopes, they are heated by compression, and thus enabled to hold more moisture. This descending, warm, drying wind clears away more snow in a few hours than many days of bright sunshine, and allows cattle to find grass even in winter. The wind is called after the name of an

Indian tribe that once inhabited a part of the mountain area

**6. Illustrations.**—Children might be encouraged to collect different fruit labels, labels from canned beef, and magazine pictures bearing on the lesson, such as plants, animals, fruits, agricultural machines, cowboys etc. It is a good plan for each child to keep an exercise book in which to paste pictures and draw diagrams associated with the lessons.

**7. Memory work.**—(a) Wheat needs rain in spring to make it grow and sunshine in summer to ripen it. (b) When the snow melts it leaves behind in the soil mineral food for plants. (c) The large prairie ploughs are drawn by motor tractors. (d) The grain is stored in elevators. (e) Canned beef lunch

tongues, condensed milk, cheese, butter and bacon come from Canada. (f) Annapolis apples have red skins and white flesh. (g) Miles of cherry trees grow in British Columbia.

**8. Exercises.** (a) Describe the prairie as it is to-day. (b) Why is the prairie so good for wheat growing? (c) To what city in Canada is most of the grain taken? (d) What is a cattle farm in Canada called? (e) What is the chinook? (f) When is the busiest time for the cowboys? (g) What is done with the cattle? (h) Where do apples grow in Canada? (i) What other fruit is grown? (j) What is done with the fruit? (k) What is your favourite canned fruit? (l) What life would you have chosen had you been Jim? Explain why.



[Reproduced by courtesy of the C. N. R.]

BUFFALO ROUND UP IN ALBERTA

## VI. HOME LIFE IN CITY AND COUNTRY

## PICTURE REFERENCE

THE illustration on the following page is reproduced from the Class Picture (No. 81 in the portfolio). There are seen pictures of Jumbermen, a Royal Canadian Mounted Policeman and a Pioneer Lumberman. The occupations of the first two pictures tell the work of the Pioneer Lumberman opening up new land in the Peace River district described in the Reference Book.

## INTRODUCTION

More than 70 per cent of the people of Canada are found in Ontario, Quebec and

the Maritime Provinces, and it is therefore on the eastern side of the Dominion that town life is best studied.

*Montreal* is the richest city and commercial metropolis of the Dominion. It stands at the head of ocean navigation on the St. Lawrence, and it is the headquarters of the great railways of Canada. More than half the population of the city is of French origin. The first impression thrust upon the visitor is that of the commercial character of the city. Docks, wharves, ships, elevators, railway station, business premises, banks, "skyscrapers" and crowded streets all point



MONTREAL

(As produced by courtesy of Canada House)

Looking up McGill Street from CNR Sheds showing Royal Bank Building and Beaver Hall Building and Notre Dame Cathedral to the right.



CANADIAN PEOPLE

LUMBERMEN

ROYAL CANADIAN MOUNTED POLICEMAN

PIONEER FAMILY

(Class Picture No. 81 in the portfolio)



QUEBEC

LIFE IN THE CITY

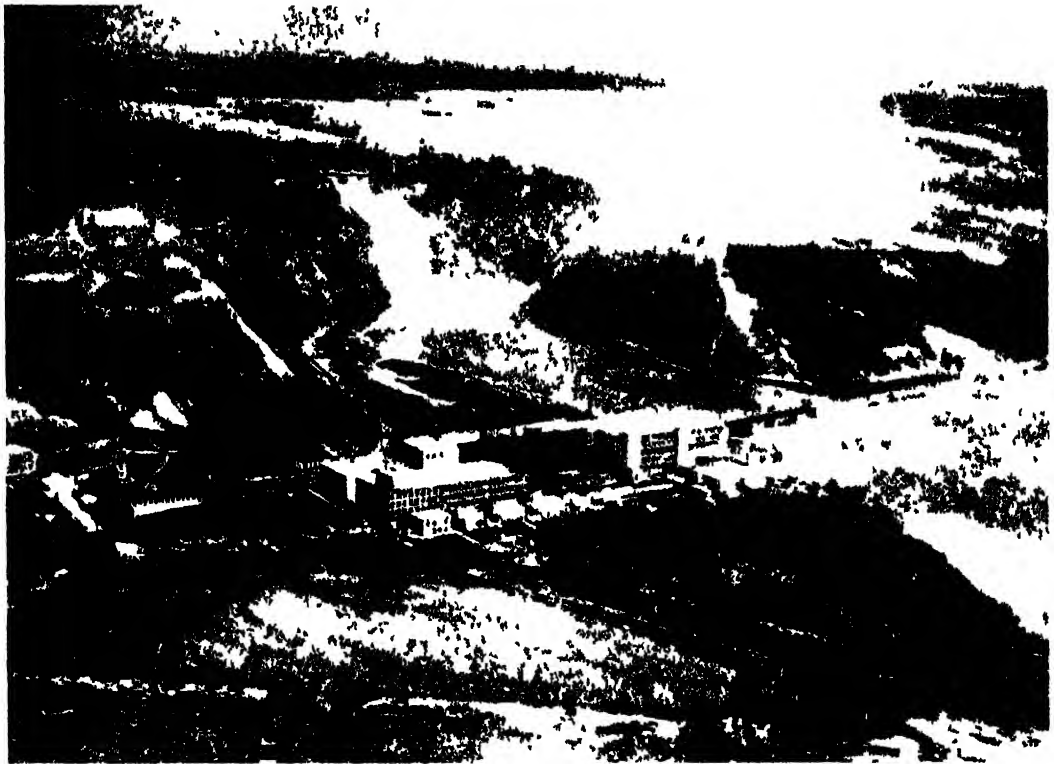
FIG. 1. The Citadel in the foreground with the Citadel and Plains of Abraham in the background.

to commercial activity. The city is built on terraces cut in the slope leading to Mount Royal. Most of the largest and best buildings are constructed of local stone which being grey in colour gives a special character to the city.

Many of the streets are narrow and flanked by lofty buildings. The newest part, however, possesses magnificent streets and fine shops. The great cold of winter and the abundance of snow make the city famous for its winter sports which include every variety associated with the Alpine sports region of Europe. The very low temperatures of winter also necessitate a careful heating of all inhabited buildings, the central heating plan being universally adopted. By such a method every part of a house is made

warm including not only all rooms, but passages and corridors. Double windows are also a characteristic feature of dwelling places in order to conserve the internal heat.

Quebec still retains its French tradition, aspect and people. At first sight it appears a fortress much like Gibraltar. Houses run from the base of the heights up the slope. The streets are mainly narrow and winding, and an old style of architecture characterises the city. Here both French and English are commonly heard but the French- and British Canadians are good friends, they follow their own religion and manage their own schools. The original battle area has been converted into the "Battlefields Park." The higher part of the city can be reached



[Reproduced by courtesy of the C. P. R.]

MONONGONECE FALLS SHOWING POWER PLANT WHICH SUPPLIES CURRENT WITH ELECTRIC POWER

by steep steps, by an iron stairway, or by a hydraulic elevator.

Quebec is both a busy ocean port and a great railway centre, and there is plenty of evidence of the commercial side of the life in the city. Like Montreal it is a centre of attraction for its winter sports. The abundant water power near by makes electricity cheap to produce, and electric lighting and heating are common.

*Ottawa* is a beautiful city and possesses many magnificent buildings. It is, however, a striking contrast to Quebec. The streets are wider, there are more open spaces, and there is a greater wealth of attractive vegetation on the outskirts of the city. The Château Laurier and Parliament Buildings

are imposing structures. *Ottawa* is an industrial centre. Its water power, lumbering, sawmills, pulp and paper mills have brought prosperity to the place, but, unlike many manufacturing cities, it possesses no slums. The Experimental Farm on the outskirts of the city is reached by a short journey through beautiful country. There are many centres of soil research in the Dominion, and their establishment has brought prosperity to the wheat farmer. The experimental farms produced the early ripening wheat which has opened up great areas of the prairie for wheat production.

At *Toronto* two features of Canadian city life become very marked: (1) the love of the Canadian people for cleanliness and

tidiness, and (2) the great attention paid to education. The school-leaving age in Canada is sixteen; but in all towns of a population of 5,000 or over, a part-time education up to the age of eighteen is enforced by law. The schools in the cities are large buildings, and most of the secondary schools possess their own swimming baths. All schools are well built and well equipped, and co-education is characteristic of most of them. The universities, keeping in mind the character of their country, pay great attention to the scientific aspects of agriculture, pastoral work and engineering. A great deal of attention is paid to cookery, needlework and household training in the schools.

When one passes westward into the great plains a change becomes apparent. A greater variety of dwelling places and buildings is marked. Wooden buildings become the predominant type of dwelling. In Canada to-day more than 70 per cent. of the dwelling places are either wholly or mainly constructed of timber. Another marked feature is the smaller attention paid to economy of space. In the prairie towns, broad wide streets are everywhere the main feature. If the prairie plain were thoroughly investigated every possible type of home could be discovered, from the simple shack, apparently cut off from civilisation, to the almost luxurious home of the prosperous farmer. Isolation, however, is not a characteristic of the great agricultural and ranching regions. The telephone is almost universal and is a link which connects the scattered population.

In the houses of the plains there are no coal fires. Every house is heated by a furnace in the basement and every part of the house is thoroughly warmed. Hot water is supplied to every bedroom. Cooking and cleaning are done by electricity. Verandahs are a feature of the dwelling places away from the towns, and in the heat of summer these serve as sleeping places and dining rooms. Refrigerators are used in summer for perishable food, and these supply

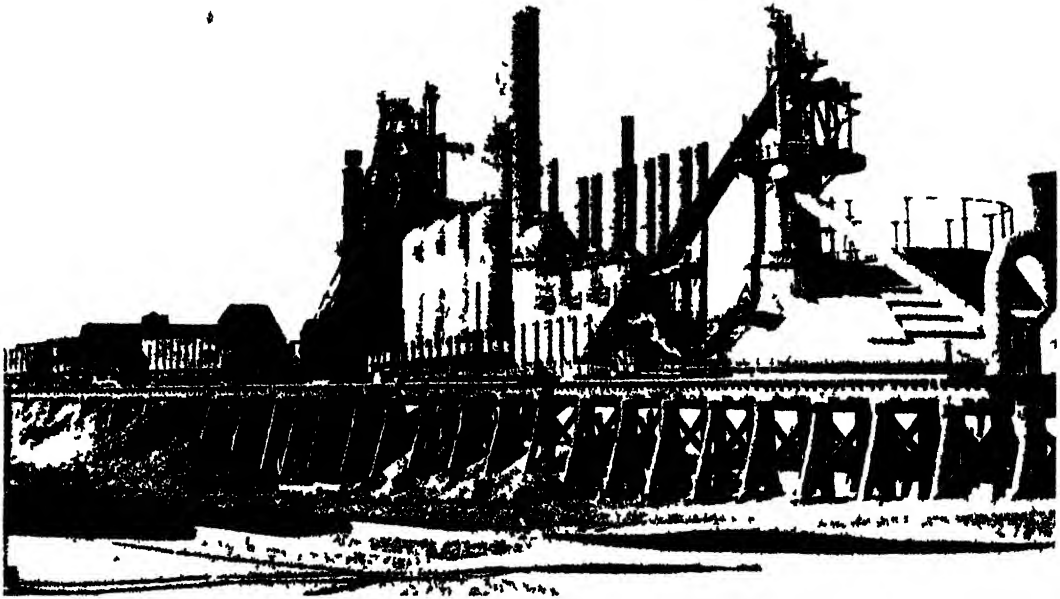
iced water and give an opportunity for making ice cream, in which the Canadians excel.

*Winnipeg*, the great city of the plains, was originally a fur-trading station called Fort Garry. It has had a very rapid growth. In 1870 it had a population of only 215, but to-day it has over 200,000 inhabitants. It is the railroad centre of western Canada and possesses a wonderful number of sidings for accommodation of trucks laden with grain.

In the autumn, when the harvest is travelling eastward, Winnipeg becomes a great wheat city. Stock yards are also numerous, and the largest abattoirs in the plains are in Winnipeg. Electric traction in the streets and the manufacturing establishments in the city are worked by hydro-electric power. Great Falls, on the Winnipeg river, supply the power. Winnipeg is a city of beautiful houses. Being of modern construction the streets are wide and attractive. Open spaces are numerous and include a zoological garden, where the buffalo can be seen. It is a town of sunshine and warmth in summer, but it is very cold in winter. Houses are built to withstand frost; the wooden shacks have disappeared, and magnificent buildings are numerous. The schools, university and legislative buildings are an ornament to the city.

*Regina* is a pretty and well-planned city in the centre of a rich agricultural district. It has direct railway communication with all the important points in the west. As in the other new cities of the plains, the streets are wide and open spaces are numerous. It is noted for its fine schools, colleges and legislative buildings. Its development has been rapid, keeping pace with the conversion of the prairie into wheat fields.

*Saskatoon*, in 1912, consisted merely of a collection of shacks, but to-day it is a well planned city containing many fine buildings, including a university. It is the railway centre for a productive farming district.



*Reproduction from the Dominion Steel and Iron Company*  
 PLANT FURNACES OF THE DOMINION FOUNDRY AND STEEL COMPANY OF CANADA

In a similar way *Calgary* has developed in a few years from a Mounted Police outpost to a city of fine buildings and great commercial importance.

Hard work and long hours of it, especially during the summer months, are the lot of the workers in the prairies but it is a healthy life in pleasant surroundings.

Although the people away from the cities lack the cinema, stage and other attractions of towns, there is usually some easy access to town amusements. Travelling libraries are in circulation in almost all the provinces and there are travelling medical and dental clinics in the rural districts. A farm may be purchased by instalments and by perseverance the beginner can improve his homestead until he may be in possession of a very comfortable and well-equipped home.

The Canadian homestead is so constructed that work may be made easy. The housewife does her cooking and cleaning by electricity. The houses have polished wooden floors, hot water in almost every room, and there is no dust or dirt from coal fires.

### CHILDREN'S STORY

Let us now take a peep at the homes of different Canadian children. First we will visit one of the great cities. We notice that the streets are very wide and the buildings tall and straight. In front of the houses are lawns which run down to the road and are not fenced in or shut off in any way. The streets are lit by electric light and the machines in the factories work by electricity, which is very cheap because there are so many rivers and waterfalls from which it can be obtained. All the people we meet are very proud of their city and like to point out its advantages. They help it



to grow by sending out posters which attract visitors.

The houses are built with verandahs round them, and in summer the families spend most of their time on these, eating and even sleeping in the open air. If we were to go inside a house we should be sure to find a telephone there, used by all the family including the children. The house is warmed by a furnace, which stands in the basement and heats water which is sent through pipes into every room. Even in mid-winter the Canadians wear light summer clothing indoors because the house is so warm, and dress in furs and leather coats when they go out. Electric lighting is used and also an electric cooker, and the girls tidy up the house with an electric cleaner. In the kitchen is a freezing chest in which food is kept in summer.

We journey a few miles out of the city and stop to look round a country village. Here the houses are all made of timber, but they still have telephones, electric light and wireless, so they are not without comforts. We would like to buy some candies, so we go into the *store*. This place is not a storehouse; it is the Canadian word for a shop. The village store sells everything, from postcards to suits of clothes, and the villagers collect there to hear all the news and enjoy a chat. The storekeeper is also the postmaster and knows more about the district than anyone else. He knows the names of all the people and a good deal about them. He knows what land and farms are for sale and all the latest gossip.

Our next visit is to a forest clearing in Ontario. Here the family live in a little log cabin. They have only two rooms downstairs and an attic above. A big iron stove for heating the house and for cooking stands at one end of the living room. On the walls hang guns, fishing rods and skins of animals. The boys are brought up to lead hard lives in the open air, lumbering, fishing, hunting and trapping. Sometimes in the summer they act as guides through the forest. They do not care for city life and think little of

anyone who cannot paddle a canoe and follow forest trails.

Now for a peep at a small farm on the prairie! It is a wooden cabin built of double boards with tar paper between. The farmer buys flour, bacon and canned foods from the nearest town which is fifty or more miles distant. There is no other house for ten miles around and no railway station for twenty miles. The vast prairie rolls away on either hand without a fence, hedge or wall to break the view. The farmer must tie up his horses at night or they may stray. He cuts grass and stores it for their winter food in stacks standing near the house. All the spring and summer he toils at the land growing wheat, and in winter he may be snowbound for weeks at a time. It is a hard and lonely life, but sometimes he prospers so well and so quickly that after a few years of good crops he can spend his winters in the south, while his sons and daughters go to college.

Our last visit is to the province of Quebec. Many farmers here are French-Canadians and are called *habitants*. They have tiny white houses of stone, and long, narrow strips of land, carefully cultivated. Every village has its church, topped by a golden cross, for the people are Roman Catholics. They are good, hard-working, lively people, just like their French forefathers who came over the Atlantic and settled in Canada years beforehand.

Canadians like to have their children well educated. Most of the schools are free to all, and girls and boys sit side by side in the classrooms. There are also private schools, high schools and universities. Boys and girls leave school at the age of sixteen, but in most cities they go on taking lessons for part of the day until they are eighteen. The schools are fine buildings and many have their own swimming baths.

From the Great Lakes to the Pacific, law and order in Canada are enforced by the Royal Canadian Mounted Police. They wear scarlet and blue uniforms, and ride horses or travel in motor cars, airplanes and even dog

sledges; for often they go hundreds of miles to arrest a law breaker.

In winter, as you have heard, the Canadian boys and girls enjoy all sorts of winter sports in the snow and on the ice. In summer, many boys and girls in Canada copy the Red Indians and live in camps in the forests, or spend days canoeing on the rivers, bathing and fishing. They pull their fish suppers out of the lakes and cook them over camp fires. At night they sit round bonfires and sing songs to the music of banjos. Such a healthy life makes them grow up into fine men and women.

### TEACHING HINTS

**1. Map.**—All the towns and provinces mentioned in the "Children's Story" should be found by the children on the map, either during the lesson, or at the end when recapitulating. Thoroughness in this way leads to association of ideas which is valuable both in reasoning and memorising. For instance, winter sports are connected with Quebec, found to be in the east of Canada, consequently eastern Canada must have a severe winter. Log cabins are built in forest clearings in Ontario and New Brunswick. Finding these places assists the children to locate the lumbering areas of Canada. A teacher should not be satisfied to supply the class with geographical names only, because by themselves they are too abstract to be useful.

**2. Homes.**—The occupation of the people in any area largely determines the type of dwelling place that will be found. Lumbering in the forest means more or less isolated log huts built in the regions where the trees are felled. Similarly on the great expanse of the prairie plain, isolated dwelling places and villages are numerous. The character of the dwelling places will depend upon the length of time the people have been in occupation of their land. The beginner will have a simple home, but those who have become

prosperous will indicate it in the style and equipment of their buildings. Everywhere in the great plains things will be comparatively new. Up-to-date equipment will be found in all the towns. Even small towns will cover a large area, since there is no need for a cramped condition. The points best situated for the collection of material will show great growth and will also have developed a manufacturing industry based upon the material with which they deal.

In the eastern part of the Dominion large and old towns will be found. Overseas trade is mainly centred in the ports of the east and the commerce will make these ports great towns. They, by their mixture of old and new buildings, will show both their early importance and their modern growth through large trade.

Emphasise that isolation, away from the towns, has been more or less broken down by modern inventions—the motor car, telephone, aeroplane and wireless.

The water power resources of the Dominion and the great use of hydro-electric power, electric lighting and heating should be dealt with in a simple manner. Canada is rich in waterfalls, rapids and running water. Hydro-electric power is clean, cheap, and can be transmitted through wires for very long distances. In parts of the Prairie Provinces where water power is not available electrical power is obtained by engines using the cheapest fuel available. Such fuel may be local coal, oil or petrol. The fuel-using stations are primarily for lighting purposes.

**3. Shack.**—This is a one-storey house built of wood. The roof is usually of sticks and twigs covered with earth, and the floor is generally pounded earth.

**4. Homestead.**—This really means a person's dwelling place with the ground and buildings adjoining. The character will depend on the time it has been occupied and the nature of the prosperity of the owner.

**5. Canadian money.**—Canadian money is paid out in dollars, and a dollar is worth about four shillings. There are one hundred cents in a dollar, and a cent is a copper coin, a halfpenny in value. Silver coins for five, ten, twenty-five and fifty cents are used, and bank notes for one, two, five and ten dollars or more.

**6. Education.**—The control of Canadian education is reserved for the provinces, the funds for its support being derived from local taxation and government grants. In all the provinces primary, and in some cases secondary, education is free. In Quebec the Roman Catholic schools which constitute the majority are chiefly controlled by the local clergy of that Church. The Protestant schools are managed by a separate board. In Ontario also, separate schools are allowed to Roman Catholics. In the Maritime Provinces, Manitoba and British Columbia the public (free) schools are undenominational. McGill University at Montreal and Toronto University are famous for higher education, and there are many newer ones. All the larger universities have the power of conferring medical degrees, and since 1877 Canadian medical degrees have been recognised by the Medical Council of Great Britain.

**7. The habitant.**—The earliest white settlers in the St. Lawrence valley were French, and to this day the language, customs and social institutions of Quebec are still French. Nevertheless the French-Canadians are now loyal subjects of the British Crown. The land was granted in the seventeenth century by the French king to French gentlemen, who handed on portions of it to humbler French emigrants known as *habitants*. These were generally single young men. When they had settled on their farms, they needed wives for house-

keepers and cooking. The French king therefore sent out every year one or two shiploads of young women for the *habitants*. The "bride ships" sailed to Quebec, and there in the hall of a great convent the young men went to choose their brides, whom they married immediately and took away to their farms. The *habitants* are fond of dancing and singing and are devoted to their Church. They grow tobacco, vegetables and fruit on their farms, especially the Snowapple, called "*Fancuse*," with a bright red skin and creamy flesh.

**8. Château Laurier.**—This is named after Sir Wilfred Laurier, a Canadian statesman. He was born in Quebec, had a great gift of oratory, and could speak equally well both English and French. He became Prime Minister in 1896, and was the first French Canadian to hold that position.

**9. Memory work.**—(a) Canadian cities are very like cities in England. (b) Most of the houses have central heating. (c) Electric cookers and cleaners save the housewife much hard work. (d) In the country the houses are made of timber. (e) Boys and girls go to school until they are sixteen years old. (f) Ottawa is the headquarters of the Royal Canadian Mounted Police. (g) Canada is a "Land of Promise."

**10. Exercises.**—(a) Of what use are the verandahs of the houses? (b) How is food kept good in the summer? (c) Explain how houses are warmed in Canada. (d) Why is electricity used everywhere? (e) Explain all the ways in which housekeeping is made easy in Canada. (f) What do you know about the village store? (g) Describe a log cabin in the Canadian forest. (h) Describe a small farm on the prairie. (i) Describe some Canadian winter sports. (j) How do men earn their living in Canada?

## VII. AUSTRALIA—HISTORY AND PEOPLES

## PICTURE REFERENCE

**T**HE Class Picture illustrated on the next page (No. 82 in the portfolio) depicts four characteristic modes of life in Australia. The Prospector with his Camel will help the children to understand the manner in which much of the exploration of parts of western and central Australia has been carried out. From the knowledge received from former lessons on the "Ship of the Desert" they will by analogy understand something of the climate and natural features of the dry interior. Accompanying the prospector is an Aborigine, whose native skill as a guide and in managing animals is often invaluable. A lesson on the sugarcane was included in the first year's course and reference to Class Picture No. 70 will provide interesting comparisons. The Stockman, as his name denotes, is associated with sheep and cattle, dealt with in Chapter IX, whilst the team of the Bullocky, although largely displaced by machinery, still does notable service hauling logs in the marshy eastern forests.

## INTRODUCTION

**Discovery and exploration.**—The development of Australia in less than a century is one of the most remarkable features of British colonisation. This great island of the southern hemisphere, with an area of nearly three million square miles, lying between  $10^{\circ}$  S and  $40^{\circ}$  S, and  $113^{\circ}$  E and  $153^{\circ}$  E, comprises one-fifth of the British Empire. The continent is almost bisected by the Tropic of Capricorn, about equal areas being in the tropical and temperate zones.

There was an early tradition of the existence of an Austral Land (or Southern Land) lying to the south of India, rumours

to that effect finding their way to Europe from time to time. References to a Terra Australis were made by Ptolemy in the early days of the Christian era. Nothing definite was known, however, until a very much later period. It seems to have been first sighted by the Portuguese, those great explorers of the fifteenth and sixteenth centuries. In 1606 De Torres, a Spanish navigator, passed through the strait that now bears his name and proceeded to the Philippine Islands. The first Europeans to land in Australia were the Dutch. In their keen desire to find fresh openings for trade, they visited the island, sailing southward from their possessions in the East India islands. The Dutch East India Company, in 1605, sent an expedition which sailed along part of the east coast south of Cape York, and in 1616 Dirk Hartog sailed along the west coast as far as the island which bears his name. In 1622 the Dutch vessel *Leeuwin* rounded the south-west corner, and the name Cape Leeuwin stands as a memento of this. The following year the Dutch discovered Arnheim Land, and the large gulf to the east was named after Carpentier, the governor of the Dutch East India Company. During the next few years other efforts were made to obtain a knowledge of the continent, attention being concentrated on the northern, western and south-western coasts. In 1642 Abel Janszoon Tasman sighted the western coast of the island which he named Van Diemen's Land, in honour of the governor of the Dutch East Indies. The honour was later transferred to the discoverer himself, and the island is now known as Tasmania. Tasman explored the east coast of Australia for some distance, and took possession of the country in the



THE PROSPECTOR



SUGAR CANE GROWERS



THE STOCKMAN



THE BULLOCKY

AUSTRALIAN PEOPLE

(Class Picture No. 82 in the portfolio)

name of the Government of the Netherlands. The Dutch, however, feared to make settlements there on account of the wildness of the country and of the fabulous giants which were believed to inhabit the land.

The first Englishman to visit Australia was William Dampier, who landed on the west coast in 1688. He described the country as barren and, but for the kangaroo, almost devoid of animals. Nearly a century elapsed and then Cook's voyages began.

**Captain James Cook.**—James Cook, the English naval captain and explorer, was born in 1728 at the village of Marton, Yorkshire. His father was an agricultural labourer, and afterwards a farm bailiff. Though James Cook had not the advantages of an early education, he became by his own native talent and untiring industry the most accomplished navigator of his time.

At twelve years of age he was apprenticed to a haberdasher at Whitby, and a year later to a firm of shipowners. He served on a merchant vessel for some years and rose to be mate. In 1755 he joined the Royal Navy, and took part in the French Canadian war. After peace was declared he spent some years in surveying expeditions; he sounded and surveyed the river St. Lawrence, and published a chart. Later he was appointed "marine surveyor of the coast of Newfoundland and Labrador." His remarkable abilities were shown in the volumes of sailing directions he brought out in 1766-68.

In 1768 the English Admiralty appointed

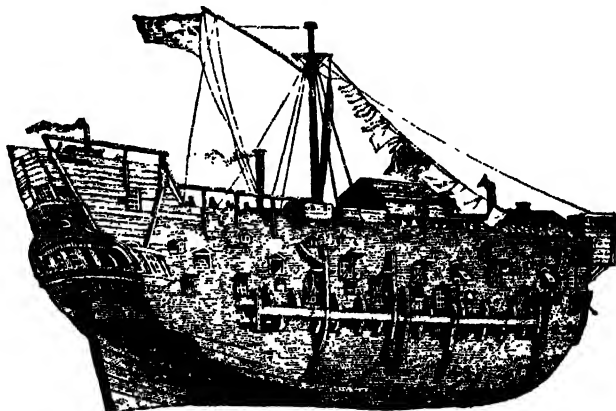
Cook to be captain and scientific director of an expedition to Tahiti to observe the predicted transit of Venus and to carry out geographical researches in the South Pacific Ocean. He set sail in the *Endeavour* in company with several men of science, and after successfully achieving the main object of his journey, Cook spent six months in circumnavigating New Zealand. He proved that this country consisted of two islands, and charted the coasts for the first time, especially noting the channel now called Cook Strait. Cook then went on to trace the whole eastern coast of Australia.

On the way back, passing through Torres Strait, he finished the work of the Dutch explorers by proving the separation of New Guinea from Australia.

In 1772 began Cook's second voyage in quest of a supposed great southern continent. The voyage lasted three years, and, although

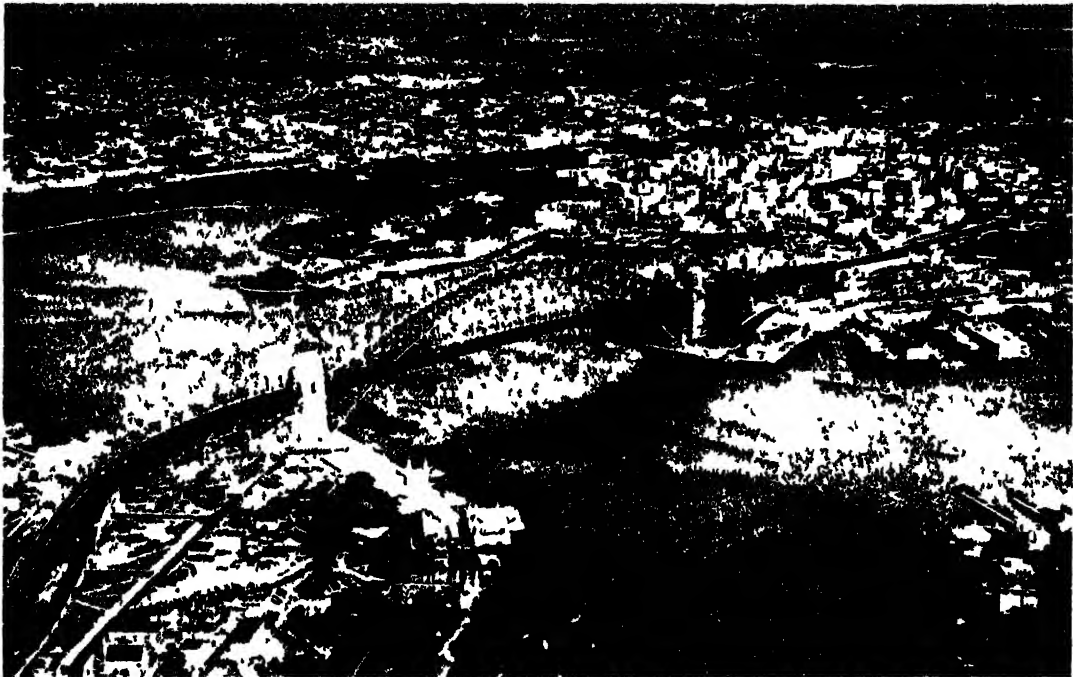
no continent was discovered, he circumnavigated the globe near the Antarctic Circle. The voyage was remarkable for the successful effort of Cook to keep his men free from scurvy. Out of over 100 men only four died, three by accident, in the three years. His humanity was as great as his genius, and he was prouder of the renown he had gained by giving his sailors the means of preserving their health, than of the fame of his discoveries.

Cook's third and last voyage was undertaken chiefly to settle the question of the north-west passage round the American continent. He started from Plymouth in



"THE DISCOVERY"

In this ship Captain Cook made his last voyage. When this drawing was made the ship was being used as a coaling vessel at Newcastle; hence the addition of the steam funnels.



[Reproduced by permission of the Sydney Harbour Trust.]

#### SYDNEY HARBOUR, NEW SOUTH WALES, AUSTRALIA

(Sydney is a city of New South Wales, and a city of 1,500,000 stretches away to the Pacific Ocean in the background. Behind the famous Harbour Bridge, Sydney is a city built up with its distinctive modern skyscraper buildings. To the left is a large area of parkland and islands which are the site of the harbour. In the foreground are some of the best of the world's most famous and most beautiful harbours. Sydney is one of the finest in the world and is a city of the future, with its modern buildings and its modern and modern work places in the metropolis.)

July, 1776, to sail into the Pacific, and at the same time other ships were to attempt a passage on the other side from the Atlantic. Cook continued his voyage by way of the Cape of Good Hope, Tahiti, New Zealand and the Tonga and Society Islands, making discoveries as he went. From Tahiti he rediscovered the Hawaiian or Sandwich Islands, the greatest of the Polynesian archipelago. He reached the west American coast, explored Bering Strait, but found further passage barred by a wall of ice. After discovering King George's and King William's Sounds, Cape Prince of Wales, and Cook's Inlet or River, he at last made his way back to the Hawaiian group. Here on February 14th, 1779, the great explorer

met his death owing to a conflict with the natives. On the previous night natives stole one of the *Discovery's* boats, in consequence of which Cook seized the king's person until reparation should be made. Having landed on the following morning with some marines, a scuffle ensued during which Cook received a blow from behind that felled him to the ground. He rose at once and vigorously resisted the crowd, but was soon overpowered.

Like his second voyage, his third was futile in its main purpose, but it led to the exploration of the North Pacific. The extent of the coasts Cook surveyed surpasses that of any other navigator. Distinguished honours were paid to the memory of James Cook both at home and abroad, and a



*A photograph by courtesy of the Commonwealth of Australia*

#### CIRCULAR QUAY, SYDNEY N.S.W.

pension was settled on his widow, but in his lifetime small reward was given to the greatest of British maritime discoverers. As a commander, an observer and a practical physician his gifts were equally great, and with it all he had extraordinary wisdom, decision and perseverance. He had a commanding personal presence and won the affection of his men by his sympathy, kindness and unselfish care for them. A statue of James Cook has been erected in the Mall, near the Admiralty, London.

**First settlements.**—In 1787 Captain Phillip left England with a party of convicts as settlers, and took formal possession of the whole of the eastern part of Australia and Tasmania. Phillip was appointed governor-in-chief of "our territory called New South

Wales, extending from the Northern Cape called Cape York, in the latitude of ten degrees thirty-seven minutes south, to the southern extremity of the said territory of New South Wales or South Cape, in the latitude of forty-three degrees thirty-nine minutes south, and of all the country inland westward as far as the one hundred and thirty-fifth degree of east longitude."

In 1825 Captain Blenner took possession of the northern coast. The final step to make the whole of the island a dependency of the United Kingdom took place in 1849, when Captain Fremantle hoisted the British flag on the shores of the Swan river.

In 1825 Van Diemen's Land was politically separated as a distinct colony. The territory of West Australia was created an



independent colony in 1829, and South Australia became separated seven years afterwards. In 1851, "Port Phillip District" was constituted the colony of Victoria, and Queensland was separated in 1859. On January 1st, 1901, the colonies were federated under the name of the "Commonwealth of Australia," and in 1909 the Commonwealth chose Canberra, a city now in the process of creation as the Federal Capital of Australia. Under the administration of the Commonwealth, but not included in it is British New Guinea or Papua.

One of the first steps towards investigation of the interior took place in 1813 when Blaxland crossed the Blue Mountains behind Sydney. The exploration of New South Wales followed. Afterwards, in 1828-9, Sturt explored the Darling and Murray rivers and prepared the south east for future settlement. In his later explorations Sturt set out from the Darling in an endeavour to reach the middle of the continent. He traversed wastes covered with short porcupine grass to within 150 miles of the point he had set out to reach, and was compelled to return through lack of water supplies. A member of the expedition described the barren ground west of the Darling in these words—

"There was no grass at all not even a green thing, nothing but sand and sand and sand arranged in interminable ridges. And all this on a most stupendous scale. The ridges are nearly as high as a man about 60 feet at the base narrowing to half that at the top. At the very shores of the lake we gazed down on a vast and level expanse of brine pits."

In 1835 Mitchell investigated the Goulburn district, which he described as a beautiful and fertile region. Ten years later he explored some of the best pastoral districts of Queensland. He was the first martyr in the cause of Australian discovery, being murdered by natives on the Bogan river.

Eyre did much to open up South Australia. He had frequently to go days without water and endured great hardships. Burke and Wills crossed the continent from Melbourne to the Gulf of Carpentaria, and, in their attempt to return died of starvation at Cooper's Creek. Many others took part in the great work of exploring the interior of Australia, among whom were Warburton and Forrest who crossed Australia, and Giles who travelled 2500 miles from St Vincent Gulf to Perth nearly half the distance being through terrible scrub land.

In 1851 gold was discovered in New South Wales and Victoria. There was a rush of settlers to the goldfields. Numbers of Englishmen went out to make their fortunes and remained in the new land taking up other work when gold mining failed them. Many became squatters or sheep farmers. As one writer aptly phrases it, this event "precipitated Australia into nationhood."

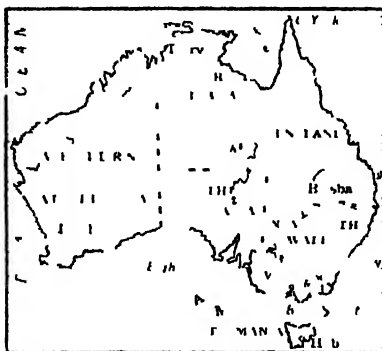
**The people.**—The population of Australia is estimated to be about seven and a half million. The number of Aborigines at the advent of the white race was about 150,000, and they now number less than one third of that total.

The sheep road built to the pastures beyond the Blue Mountains was the first step towards making Australia the chief area in the world for sheep and wool and squatters laid the foundation of the sheep run. South African merino sheep formed the basis of the early flocks brought into the country, and the export of wool commenced. Pastoral industries still form the backbone of Australia's prosperity.

The discovery of gold not only created a new set of industries but it opened up new areas and caused a large increase in the population.

The great mass of the population of Australia is of British stock. There is a remarkable concentration of people in six parts of the Commonwealth, since they contain nearly 48 per cent of the whole population.

Sydney	(New South Wales)	1,398,000
	48% of State	
Melbourne	(Victoria)	1,154,000
	59% of State	
Brisbane	(Queensland)	93,600
	35% of State	
Adelaide	(S. Australia)	70,000
	57% of State	
Perth	(W. Australia)	26,000
	46% of State	
Hobart	(Tasmania)	21,000
	% of State	



THE AUSTRALIAN CONTINENT

Thus, nearly half the population is scattered over the developed areas of the rest of the continent and there are very few towns of any magnitude other than the six named above. This points to the fact that pastoral and agricultural pursuits are the mainstay of the prosperity of Australia.

**Australian Aborigines.** When the first explorers visited the continent the Aborigines were the only inhabitants. They were people of the Stone Age, their weapons were made of stone or wood, they did not know the use of metals. They cultivated no crops, they made no pottery, they had neither flocks nor herds, and were unable to write.

Warburton, one of the early explorers, refers to the Aborigines in the following words, "They are 'the very lowest in the scale of humanity, and I cannot conceive anything could fall much lower. They do not even take the trouble to put a few

busbies to shelter themselves from the sun or the rain. . . The gentlemen take the shank bone, about nine inches long, of the wallaby, a kind of marsupial hare, and when it is lubricated nicely in the mouth, they pass it through the cartilage of the nose, and it sticks out, and having done this they are in full dress."

Charles Darwin, in his *Voyage of the Beagle*, makes this reference to the natives —

"In their own arts they are admirable. A cap being fixed at thirty yards distance they transfix it with a spear delivered with the throwing stick with the rapidity of an arrow from the bow of a practised archer. In tracking animals or men they show most wonderful sagacity. They will not, however, cultivate the ground or build houses and remain stationary or even take the trouble of tending a flock of sheep when given to them."

The number of Aborigines is rapidly decreasing partly owing to the introduction of European diseases, and partly owing to the gradual extinction of the wild animals. They are now most numerous in reservations in the remote tropical portions of the continent, where their habits and customs are distinct survivals of old tribal ways. The men are mostly hunters, using the spear, boomerang and club as weapons, while the women supplement food supplies with lizards, snakes, small game and grass seed. Hard flat cakes made from the seed form the staple nourishment.

All illnesses suffered by these natives are supposed to be the result of witchcraft, and the task of the medicine man is to exorcise the evil spirits. The native dances, called corroborees, are wonderful affairs. Many of these, such as the kangaroo and emu dances, are imitations of the movements of the native animals of Australia.

### CHILDREN'S STORY

**Captain Cook.**—During the eighteenth century there lived at Marton, in Yorkshire, a boy who grew up to be one of the great

builders of the British Empire. His name was James Cook. His father was a poor labourer, and when a small boy James used to scare crows away from a farmer's crops. The farmer's wife kept a little school, where James learned his letters. When he was twelve years old he became an apprentice to a haberdasher at Whitby, and about a year afterwards to a ship owner. He proved to be a fine sailor and later joined the Royal Navy where he rose to a high rank.

In 1768 Captain Cook sailed to the Pacific Ocean to watch the movement of the planet Venus in the sky, and also to find out whether the southern half of the world was all water or partly land. His ship was called the *Endeavour*. It had been built for carrying coal, and though not swift was stout and strong, able to stand against all weathers, and it carried twenty-two guns. On board with Cook were several clever professors as well as the crew, making eighty-five men altogether. The *Endeavour* cruised about the Pacific, first in a southerly and then a north-westerly direction. Cook discovered many groups of new islands and made charts showing exactly where they lay in the ocean. At length the coast of New Zealand was sighted, and they sailed into one of the bays. They called it Poverty Bay because it looked such a wretched place. Cook spent six months sailing round the islands of New Zealand. He then headed north-west over the Pacific, and three weeks later beheld the eastern shore of Australia.

The *Endeavour* journeyed up the coast and finally dropped anchor in a bay near what is now Sydney. On the shore opposite the ship was a group of Blackfellows cooking food over a fire. To the surprise of the English, these Aborigines took no notice of them. The splash of the anchor in the water and the noise of the rope running out from the ship did not make them look round. When Cook ordered out the boat to the shore, however, the Blackfellows leaped up. Two men, each armed with a bundle of spears, ran to a rock by the water and

threatened to kill the strangers. They shot their spears from a throwing-stick with great force. The Englishmen discharged a gun at them, hoping to frighten them away. One dropped his spears, but he picked them up again immediately, and faced the strangers as fiercely as before. The other man then threw a stone at the boat, and for this he was shot in the leg. Still undaunted, the two Blackfellows ran back into the bush and returned with shields made of bark to protect themselves from the gun shot. They were certainly brave men. The boat's crew soon drove them off, however, and Cook landed several times at different places round the bay. He tried to make friends with the Blackfellows, but found them always very distrustful and unfriendly. The professors named the inlet Botany Bay, because of the number of new plants that they found. While there, Captain Cook hoisted the Union Jack and took possession of the country for the British Crown.

After leaving Botany Bay, the party sailed northwards. They saw and named Port Jackson and many other inlets and headlands. All the while Cook took notes to assist him in making a chart of the coast line. Thus he and his companions sailed on for more than 1,300 miles. They described the country "as rather barren than fertile, yet in many places the rising grounds are covered with woods and lawns and the plains and valleys are green with grass." It was bigger than the whole of Europe, they said. The Aborigines, who were few in number, were naked savages, of a middle height, very active, their skins being of a chocolate colour, but their faces not disagreeable. Their food was chiefly fish, birds, fruit, "and the flesh of a strange animal called the kangaroo. Their weapons are spears, which they throw with great force and skill. They also use shields of an oblong form, made of the bark of a tree." At one place where the voyagers landed the people set fire to the woods, which burned to the water's edge, obliging the sailors to return to their boats. Farther north, they

shot a kangaroo, which was said to be 'the size of a greyhound, and mouse coloured'

Suddenly one night at ten o'clock the water became shallow although there were no rocks or land in sight. A few minutes afterwards the ship struck heavily and fell over. All guns and heavy articles had to be thrown overboard at once to lighten the vessel. As soon as morning came the sailors attempted to float the ship with the tide, but could not move it because it was heavy with water leaking in. Four pumps had to be kept working in the hold and even then the water could hardly be kept down. At length one of the crew remembered a plan he had seen of passing a sail slung by cords and filled with wool and frayed rope underneath the vessel in such a way that the sucking of the leak drew the sail into the hole and thus stopped it up. They did this with success and the vessel was floated out with the evening tide. Then they made for land near the mouth of a small stream and there repaired the ship. The track on which it had struck was a great coral reef stretching for hundreds of miles at some distance from the shore. It is called the Great Barrier Reef.

In Port Jackson several males from Cape York, two Blackfellows again fiercely defied a flaming party. A shot was fired over their heads and they ran away. The landing party found a lonely hut with some native children in it, and threw beads and ribbons inside the hut in sign of friendship. When they went again the next day, however, they found the hut empty and their presents lying untouched on the ground. Cook then sailed on northwards as far as Cape York, the most northerly point of Australia to which he gave its name. The great explorer had now cruised along the whole of the east coast of Australia, and he again took possession of it for Great Britain from its most northerly to its most southerly point, naming it all New South Wales. He and his companions then crossed Torres Strait and landed for a short time in New Guinea or Papua, which looked delightful from the sea. They

found it a mixture of hills and valleys, where groves of coconut trees and breadfruit trees were growing. Some of the Papuans shot flaming arrows at a landing party, but no one was killed. After this wonderful and memorable voyage Captain Cook returned home round the Cape of Good Hope in Africa. He had a much better account to give of Australia than any of the other sailors who had visited it. For the east coast of the island is much more fertile than the other shores. In taking possession of the country he had added a beautiful jewel to the British Crown, although its value was not then known.

**The Settlers.** Seventeen years afterwards, a party of British settlers sailed to Botany Bay. They were in the best kind of settlers for a new country, because they were prisoners whose punishment was to be sent out of England. Governor Phillip went with them. In another six years settlers who were not prisoners had begun to sail out from England, but they did not arrive in large numbers for another twenty years, when gold was discovered in the south-west.

Settlers next appeared on the Swan River, in West Australia, but the vast stretches of land between west and east remained unknown for a long time. Many brave men made journey on camel or horses into different inland regions to find out what they were like. The explorers discovered miles of hot desert, some of it covered with low prickly bushes called scrub, and all without rivers or water of any kind. The heat was terrible. Gradually through the courage and suffering of these explorers the whole of Australia became known, and then work was set on foot to make use of these vast areas of land. The soil was rich and only needed water to make it fruitful. So men irrigated large tracts by partly stopping up rivers in the east, carrying the overflow of water through pipes for a very long distance and letting out the water only where it was needed. They also dug deep wells until they reached a layer of hard rock along

which water had collected under the earth. This water gushed up through great pipes to the surface, and it was run over the land, thus watering the thirsty soil and making it fertile. These deep wells in Australia are called artesian wells.

Thus gradually Australia became a prosperous country. It is yet dangerous to go into the wilder parts without a guide who knows where water can be found. Deaths from thirst in the bush still take place. Now, however, a telegraph line and a motor road cross the vast thirsty interior from north to south, while a great railroad stretches from east to west.

**The Blackfellows.**--Although Australia is a new country to white people, it is really very, very old, and the natives or Aborigines are among the most backward savage races in the world. They are much like the people of the Great Stone Age. They make stone axes and put stone tips to their spears. They do not build houses, they have no domestic animals, they cannot grow crops or tend sheep and cannot count beyond three or four. The word that they use for "five" means "many." When they want a fire they cut a groove in a hard, flat piece of wood and lay some dry grass on it. Then they sharpen a stick made of softer wood, place the pointed end of the stick in the groove, twist it quickly between their hands, and set the grass on fire. (See Class Picture No. 1.) The Blackfellows are of middle height with thin arms and legs. They have curly hair and chocolate-coloured skins.

Their weapons are rough spears, woomerals or throwing-sticks, clubs and boomerangs. The boomerang is a curious curved stick which is thrown at an animal or enemy with great force, and if it should miss its mark it returns to the feet of the man who threw it. The Blackfellows are very clever in tracking animals and men. They live on lizards, snakes, the flesh of animals and grass seed, with which they make hard flat cakes.

The native women collect the food, do all the work and carry everything when on the march. At mealtimes they sit in a row behind the men. The meat, such as that of a kangaroo, is roughly roasted in its fur. The men devour the best parts and throw the rest over their shoulders to the waiting women. They are fond of fish and often camp by oyster beds or on the coast where there are good fishing places. In the rivers they place traps, and they also catch fish in nets made by women of the fibres of plants. They believe in evil spirits and do many religious dances to ward off their bad influence. All the troubles and illnesses that befall them are caused, so they think, by evil spirits.

White men have tried to civilise the Australian Blackfellow, but they have not been successful. He learns to wear clothes, but once they are on he will never take them off and does not understand that they need washing and changing. As his life in a tribe is spent in hunting or fishing, it is difficult for him to get used to steady work. But on the cattle stations of the north he and his wife are fine helpers with the animals. When riding a horse he is a handsome fellow, with his fine black beard, curly hair and wide forehead. He is faithful to a white master and brave in the daytime, but easily frightened at night. The scars seen on the chests of Blackfellows are from knife cuts. When the boys grow to manhood they are gashed or tattooed in patterns which show to what tribe they belong.

There are not a great number of Australian Aborigines left in the country and these are gradually dying out.

### TEACHING HINTS

**1. The globe.**--It will be necessary at the outset of this lesson to point out on the globe the position of Australia. The children will see that it is in the centre of the water hemisphere, and they will understand why it was the last of the continents to be explored by Europeans. Compare the position

for trade with that of the British Isles in the centre of the land hemisphere

**2. History of Australia.**—There are several special points that need emphasis. (a) Australia was the last region of the world to receive the serious attention of the great explorers. (b) The development and exploration have taken place within the last few years of the world's history. (c) The continent was known to the Dutch many centuries ago but they were not seriously impressed with the region they had discovered. (d) The great distance of Australia

settlers to overcome the disadvantage of distance and natural barriers and in one year the population was doubled and brought to over a million.

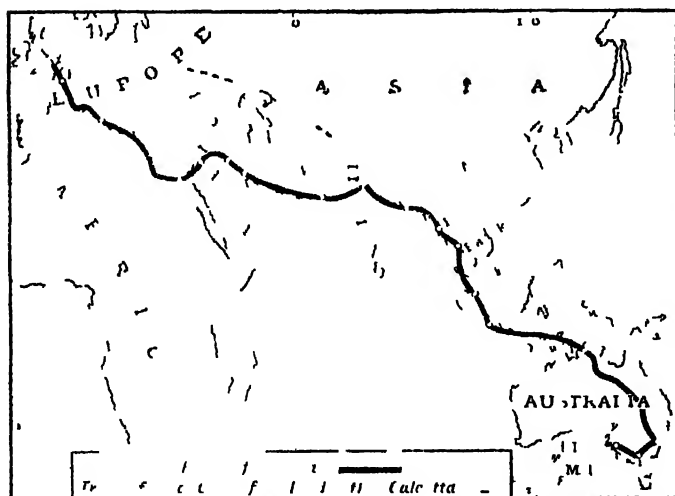
**3. Communications.**—In earlier days it was considered a rapid journey to get from England to Australia in 100 days. Mail steamers now take less than 27 days for the voyage between Fremantle and London. Children will readily understand how modern inventions have brought the people of Australia and England closer together. The All Red cable connects Vancouver to Auckland which is in communication with Sydney. From Australia cables go to England from Fremantle *via* Durban, and from Darwin *via* Singapore, Madras and Bombay.

News can now be transmitted by wireless.

In 1919 Captain Ross Smith with his brother Sir Keith M. Smith and two lieutenants, accomplished the first flight to Australia. They left Hounslow on November 12th and reached Darwin on December 16th, having covered 11,294 miles in less than a month. The route followed is shown on the map.

Today the huge air liners of the British Overseas Airways Corporation regularly span the vast distance in 48 hours.

**4. Van Diemen's Land (Tasmania).**—In 1796 Dr. Bass sailed between Victoria and the island, proving that it was not a part of the mainland. At the time of its discovery the island contained about 5,000 natives, but they are now extinct. It was first used as a penal settlement for convicts from Britain and the change of name from Van Diemen's Land to Tasmania was to wipe out the disgrace attached to the island. A peculiar animal somewhat like both a dog and a bear, and called the Tasmanian Devil,



THE FIRST FLIGHT TO AUSTRALIA

from Europe (halfway round the world) was a handicap to the early traveller on the ocean. (e) It was not until Australia was explored from its eastern shore in a temperate part of the continent that progress was made. (f) The great heat of the interior, the lack of water and supplies over tremendous areas, and the deficiency of navigable rivers penetrating far into the interior were all against the early explorers. (Contrast with Canada—the wonderful water routes, the abundance of natural products and the temperate climate.) (g) The discovery of gold in 1851 was the special incentive to

is found in the north of the island. It has a very large head in proportion to its body, is nocturnal in its habits and exceedingly ferocious.

**5. Blue Mountains.**—These are a well wooded range of mountains in New South Wales, extending from the Australian Alps to the Liverpool Range, and approaching to within 40 miles of the coast. Their average height is about 3,000 ft., and they send spurs to the sea coast. They received their name from the distinctive colour they present, at a distance, to the observer.

**6. Botany Bay.**—This is now a popular picnic resort. On the south side of the bay is a monument commemorating the landing of Cook in 1770. The name was given owing to the remarkable variety of plant life seen there by the first explorers, -scientists who accompanied Cook in the *Endeavour*. The pass in these mountains behind Sydney has led to the convergence of routes upon the great seaport.

**7. New South Wales.**—This name was given by Cook to the eastern part of Australia on account of a supposed resemblance to Glamorganshire.

**8. Artesian water.**—About one-third of the rain which falls sinks into the earth wherever the surface is porous. Some returns to the surface from springs on sloping ground, some can be obtained by digging wells. In certain parts of the earth the water is trapped and cannot return to the surface of its own accord. This is the case when the porous rock is saucer-shaped and lies between two layers through which water cannot pass. Rain enters at the edges of the porous material and accumulates on the non-porous layers below. If a boring is made the water gushes up as an artesian well.

**9. Great Barrier Reef.**—This coral reef, 1,200 miles long, stands at an average distance of 20 or 30 miles from the coast of

Queensland, and consists of a number of reefs built by living organisms called coral polyps, which thrive in warm sea water near the surface. The lower part of the coral polyps hardens into a solid cement formed from the carbonate of lime extracted by the living creatures from sea water. Coral rock is not really *built*, but is a vast accumulation of the skeletons of the coral polyps. The passage between the Great Barrier Reef and the coast is used by ships passing from Sydney and Brisbane through Torres Strait on the route to Singapore, China and Japan. The Aborigines gather sea slugs (black animals shaped like cucumbers) that crawl over the coral, they are cured and exported to China as *beche-de-mer* or *trepang*. Pearl oysters are also gathered; the headquarters of the pearl fishery is at Thursday Island.

**10. Memory work.**—(a) Australia was the last continent to be discovered. (b) Early visitors thought it a dry, barren land useless for trade. (c) Captain Cook was the greatest English explorer. (d) He discovered Australia and New Zealand. (e) Cook hoisted the Union Jack at Botany Bay. (f) Many settlers became sheep farmers or squatters.

**11. Exercises.**—(a) To what nation did the first men who visited Australia belong? (b) What did they say about the country? (c) Who was the first Englishman to visit Australia? (d) What was the name of Captain Cook's vessel? Describe this famous ship. (e) Tell all you know about Captain Cook himself. (f) What did Cook say about the country of Australia? (g) How was the ship nearly wrecked? (h) What name did Cook give to the east of Australia? (i) Who were the first British settlers? (j) What discovery drew a large number of people to Australia? (k) What happened to these people? (l) Tell of some of the hardships undergone by inland explorers. (m) In what ways is water obtained in dry districts? (n) How are the Blackfellows like men of the Stone Age?

## VIII. AUSTRALIA—A TRIP ACROSS THE CONTINENT

### PICTURE REFERENCE



DATKY COWS IN VICTORIA, AUSTRALIA

(Cl. Pic. No. 83 in the portfolio)

### INTRODUCTION

The British Territories in Australasia comprise the Commonwealth of Australia, the Australian Dependencies of Papua and Norfolk Island, the Dominion of New Zealand and adjacent islands, and the Crown Colony of Fiji.

The Commonwealth of Australia consists of the states of Queensland, New South Wales, Victoria, South Australia, Western Australia and Tasmania. North Australia, Central Australia and the Federal Capital Territory are directly administered by the Commonwealth. The Federal Capital is Canberra, about 150 miles south-west of Sydney.



A mountainous ridge, the Great Dividing Range, runs near the east coast, gradually increasing in height from north to south. The highest part is the Australian Alps, which attain their summit in Mt. Kosciusko. The Australian Alps are continued northwards by the Blue Mountains, Liverpool Range, New England Range, etc. The island of Tasmania, separated from the mainland by Bass Strait, is a detached part of the mountain ridge.

Southwards from the Gulf of Carpentaria stretches the deep depression of the middle plain. The low shores of the Gulf are separated by a narrow ridge from a basin of inland drainage centring in Lake Eyre. There are several more lakes in this area, but they are dry hollows filled with water only after rain. Many of the rivers shown on the maps in the middle plains are usually dry watercourses except after rain. To the south-east is the lowland of the important Murray-Darling basin.

West of the plains is a vast low plateau, which comprises half the continent.

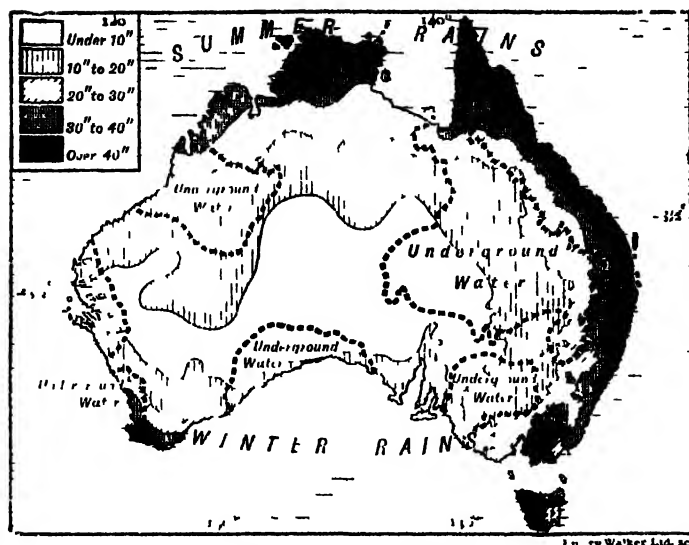
The coast of Australia is regular. In the south is a wide bay called the Great Australian Bight. For some three hundred miles its shores are rock-bound by almost vertical cliffs, and there is no anchorage for ships. In the north is the Gulf of Carpentaria. The Great Barrier Coral Reef extends for about 1,200 miles along the coast of Queensland, and forms a huge natural breakwater. Australia has, however, many excellent harbours, the chief of which are Port Jackson, on which stands Sydney; Port Phillip with Melbourne, St. Vincent Gulf with Port Adelaide, and Spencer's Gulf.

The capital cities of the states are Brisbane, Sydney, Melbourne, Adelaide, Perth, Darwin and Hobart (Tasmania). All these cities are seaports with the exception of Perth on the Swan river, which has Fremantle as its port, and Adelaide which has Port Adelaide. All these cities on the mainland except Darwin are joined by rail, which generally follows the contour of the coast, and branches extend to the busy mining

and agricultural towns inland. There is no railway at present from north to south, but Darwin is joined to Adelaide by a telegraph line and motor road.

The great transcontinental line, 1,037 miles long, extends from Kalgoorlie to Port Augusta, north-west of Adelaide. The most important railway journey in Australia is from Perth to Brisbane, a distance of about 3,500 miles. The greatest drawback to the railway communications in Australia is that lines of different gauge have been laid in the different states, so that on a journey from Perth to Brisbane it is necessary to change trains eight times, and the journey of 3,500 miles takes 170 hours. To-day, however, vast rebuilding works have begun by which all gauges will be unified and new lines laid to connect Darwin directly with N.S. Wales and Queensland. Good roads radiate from the chief cities. In the drier regions the pack camel is extensively used, for camels can walk on the dry roads without turning up the dust; donkey and mule teams are used to draw wagons, as these animals can live on rough herbage.

**Rainfall.**—The Tropic of Capricorn passes almost through the middle of the continent, so that the northern half belongs to the tropical zone, and the southern half to the warm temperate zone. As the mountains are near the east and south-east coasts, a large part of the continent is shut off from rain-bearing winds. The northern coast is a monsoon region with summer rains and a high temperature. The eastern highlands have rain at all seasons; the western slopes of the highlands are drier, and the rainfall steadily decreases as the distance increases from the coast. The south-west and south-east of the continent lie in the track of the *Brave Westerlies*; here the rain falls mostly during the winter months of June, July and August, and the climate is of the Mediterranean type. Tasmania, also in the track of the *Westerlies*, has a plentiful rainfall at both seasons of the year. A vast interior region of Australia has little rainfall.



ANNUAL RAINFALL IN AUSTRALIA

It is well to remember when studying the rainfall map, that a total annual rainfall of less than 12 inches is *arid*; 20 to 40 inches is *damp*; 40 to 60 inches is *wet*.

Southwards from the Gulf of Carpentaria stretches a vast artesian area of underground water. Layers of rock tilted in the shape of a great basin lie on layers of clay through which water cannot pass. This water is reached by deep borings, and over 4,500 artesian wells have been sunk for watering cattle, sheep and vegetation.

The Murray-Darling is the chief Australian river. Both the Murray and its tributary the Murrumbidgee rise among the heights of Mt. Kosciusko, and are partly fed by the melting snows. Dams and reservoirs have been constructed in connection with the river system, and by this means large areas of dry fertile land have been made to yield great crops of wheat, fruit, etc. The river flows into a large shallow lagoon called Lake Alexandrina, and owing to the presence of banks of shifting sand the mouth is not of much value to commerce.

**Vegetation.**—The forest regions are mainly in the highlands and the better watered

coastal lands. Along the north and north-east margins are forests of the tropical kind. The eucalyptus, or gum tree, is characteristic of the whole continent. There are many kinds, varying from the mallee scrub, which covers a large area, to the great jarrah trees of the south-west. Gippsland, a well-watered region in Victoria, is famous for giant gum trees, the tallest hardwood trees in the world.

Inland from the forest regions, where rainfall decreases, are woodlands, grass and cultivated lands. The dry interior lands are either scrublands or bare. The

scrub vegetation of dwarf acacias and spinifex prevails where rain falls at intervals, and as exploration extends into the heart of Australia it is found that the land unfitted for agriculture is not so extensive as was at first thought. The grassy plains of the Murray-Darling basin are the most noted of the fertile plains.

Millions of sheep, beef cattle, and dairy cows are reared on the grasslands, millions of bushels of wheat are grown on the cultivated lands.

**Animal life.**—The continent has for many ages been separated from other lands, so that the native animals are different from all others. They are mostly marsupials—that is, the females have a pouchlike bag in which the young are carried during infancy. The kangaroo, Australian opossum, wallaby and wombat are among the best known. A very strange animal is the platypus, or duck-billed mole, but this is not a marsupial. In the forest regions are flying squirrels, tree snakes, gaily plumed parrots, parakeets, beautiful lyre birds and many other birds. On the grasslands, besides the kangaroo, are the emu and cassowary, large



*(Reproduction courtesy of the Commonwealth of Australia)*

#### ORCHARDING IN VICTORIA

running birds akin to the ostrich of South Africa and the rheas of South America.

When the continent was discovered in the seventeenth century there were no horses, cattle, sheep, pigs, etc., but these animals all thrive remarkably well in Australia. Rabbits, which were introduced from Europe, multiplied so fast that they have become a pest, and sheep runs have to be enclosed by miles of wire fences to preserve the herbage. In Western Australia a rabbit-proof fence has been constructed across the continent from north to south. There is now a considerable trade in rabbit skins and rabbit meat.

**Sheep farming.**—The introduction of refrigerative methods has made it possible for Western Europe to import mutton from Australia and New Zealand, where cheap land and suitable climates have made sheep

farm one of the chief industries. Immense numbers of sheep are reared in all the states. The largest numbers are reared on the hills among the head waters of the Murray-Darling system, in the south of Victoria and the adjacent territory of South Australia. Wool is the greatest of all the Australian products. The country owes its pre-eminence as a wool-producing country to the rich grasslands and to the fleshy grey-green shrub called the salt bush which covers large tracts of country. It smells of bad fish when crushed in the hand, and has a salty flavour, but it is excellent food for sheep.

**Cattle rearing.**—Australian cattle are mainly beef-producing, but there is an increasing industry in dairy farming. Queensland and New South Wales rear beef cattle in great numbers, but in the cooler and moister coastal regions of New South Wales



*(Reproduced by courtesy of the Commonwealth of Australia)*

APPLE ORCHARDS TASMANIA

and Victoria, and in the Murray-Darling basin, dairy cattle are reared in order to supply the cities with milk, butter and cheese. In Queensland and New South Wales maize is largely grown as food for cattle and pigs.

**Other crops.**—On the hot, moist coastal regions of Queensland the sugarcane is cultivated by white men, and bananas and pineapples are grown; farther south, oranges, lemons and other fruits are produced.

There are extensive vineyards in South Australia and in the irrigated Mildura district of Victoria where the climate is of the Mediterranean type. The products of the vineyards are wine, table grapes, dried raisins and currants. Other crops are apricots, peaches, nectarines and plums. In parts of Victoria and in Tasmania the cool damp summers are specially suited to apple growing. Fruit is exported fresh, canned, dried, in jams and in jellies.

Wheat is the only Australian cereal crop

of which a surplus is grown for export. Where the climate is suitable, natural grasslands, scrublands and lightly wooded areas of eucalyptus and pine, have been cleared for wheat production. It is mainly produced in the region of winter rains in Western Australia, South Australia, Victoria and New South Wales. Little wheat is grown in Queensland, which has summer rains, or in Tasmania, which is too wet. In New South Wales the *Riverina* is the chief wheat-growing area, in Victoria the *Wimmera* district, once covered with mallee scrub, is the best wheat area; in South Australia the wheat area extends inland from Adelaide for 150 miles, in Western Australia wheat is grown in the south-west.

**Towns.**—Australia is about equal in area to Canada. Only a small part of the continent is inhabited. The total population is about seven and a half millions. The policy of the Australian Government at the



*Reproduction of the scene at Melbourne*

#### LOADING 'WHEAT' MELBOURNE

present time is to keep a white Australia, that is, not to allow coloured races to work on the plantations. This partly accounts for the scanty population of the hot monsoon region of the north and north east, as white people do not take kindly to plantation work in these regions. There are vast areas in Australia waiting for development as the population increases. Australians are mainly agriculturists widely scattered over extensive tracts of fertile land, or town dwellers living close together in cities. About 48 per cent. of the people who are mainly British, live in the capital cities of the states, and these cities are on or near the coasts. The chief factories are those connected with the main industries: bacon-curing works, meat freezing, butter factories, flour mills, smelting works, sawmills, tanneries, cloth factories, canneries, etc.

Many large towns in Australia are mining centres. Australia is rich in minerals: the chief of which are gold, silver, lead, zinc, copper, tin and coal. Many of the mines are situated in the arid parts of the country far distant from the chief cities, to which, however, they are joined by rail. Coal and iron are abundant, but up to the year 1940 secondary industries were slow in development. Serious shortages during the Second World War, however, caused a remarkable transformation and to day in shipbuilding and the manufacture of cloth, chemicals, paper, heavy steel goods, aeroplanes, motor cars and innumerable modern products an era of vast industrial expansion has begun.

**Queensland.**—As the rainfall is heavy and the heat great, there are dense tropical forests near the coasts, and tropical plants

can be grown. The heat is too great for extensive sheep rearing, but cattle rearing on the plains is of much importance. Wool and frozen beef are the chief exports. Brisbane is the capital, chief port and industrial centre; Rockhampton and Townsville are ports and railway centres with large meat-preserving works; the chief goldfield is at Mount Morgan, which is also the second most important copperfield; the most important coal mines are at Ipswich.

**New South Wales.**—In the Hunter river coalfield is Newcastle, the centre of the industry and of Australia's largest steel-works. The silver-lead-zinc mines of Broken Hill are some of the most celebrated in the world. Broken Hill is on the edge of the desert, cut off from the rest of New South Wales, but joined by rail to Sydney and to Port Pirie on Spencer's Gulf in South Australia. Sydney, the capital, has a magnificent harbour and beautiful beaches. It is a gay and lively city, with many industries and well over a million inhabitants. The county of Cumberland which surrounds the city has a large number of thriving towns, joined to the capital by motor roads, railway and aeroplane services, and some by coastal steamers.

**Victoria.**—Gold mining is mostly done at Beechworth and Bendigo. Melbourne, the capital, is a dignified city set by the beautiful tree-lined Yarra River. It is also a great seaport, and the centre of many industries brought about by plentiful electricity generated from the coal deposits of Gippsland. Geelong, the second port, is notable for its wool trade.

**South Australia.**—Most of the people live in the wetter south east, about Spencer's and St. Vincent Gulfs. Copper is mined at Wailaroo and Moonta in the Yorke Peninsula. South Australia is the one state in which gold mining is of no importance. Wheat and wool are the chief exports. Adelaide, the capital, is a centre of culture, a quiet well-planned city with vistas to the

country beyond at the end of every street; its port is Port Adelaide.

**Western Australia** comprises more than a third of the continent, but it is sparsely inhabited. The bulk of the people live in the south-west, where rainfall is certain. Here are grown Mediterranean fruits and wheat. The Fitzroy valley in the tropical north is the chief cattle rearing area; sheep are mainly reared in the middle districts. The rich gold mines of East Coolgardie and others are in the desert lands; water is conveyed in pipes from a great reservoir a few miles south-east of Perth. Perth, the capital, has a fine situation on the Swan river, some twelve miles from Fremantle, its seaport, where there are smelting works, flour mills, tanneries and foundries.

**Tasmania** has abundant rain, hence much is forest country with grasslands in the drier areas, where cattle and sheep are reared. Hobart is the centre for the fruit growing (especially apples) of the south, and has many factories. The chief cereal crop in Tasmania is oats. Copper, tin and zinc are important mineral products.

**The Northern Territory** (now divided into North and Central Australia) is at present undeveloped, having only a few settlers mainly engaged in cattle rearing. Many of these cattle are taken by well known stock routes to neighbouring states. Darwin is the port. A transcontinental railway will eventually join Darwin with Adelaide.

## CHILDREN'S STORY

Australia is such a vast country that people sailing to it from different lands will not all start from the same place to travel across it. Those who go out from England on a P. & O. liner will arrive at Fremantle, the port for Perth in Western Australia. This great state extends over one-quarter of the whole of Australia, but as yet it has fewer people in it than any of the other



*(Reproduced by courtesy of the Commonwealth of Australia)*

TIMBER HAULING KILCOY DISTRICT, SOUTH QUEENSLAND

states except Tasmania. In the year 1917 an important railway called the Trans Australian Railway was completed. This runs across part of southern Australia linking up with railways in the east and west, and is a great help to the trade of Western Australia. Travellers can now take a comfortable train, which has dining and sleeping cars and a bathroom, for a journey of over three thousand miles from Fremantle on the west coast to Brisbane on the east coast.

People may travel to Australia in a British ship by way of the East India Islands. They will sail by the coast of Queensland past maize, sugar and banana plantations, vineyards and orange groves. They will arrive at Brisbane and take their trip across the continent from Brisbane to Fremantle instead of from Fremantle to Brisbane. They will have caught a glimpse of the hot forests of Australia, the home of the crocodile.

From the forest edges spread away grassy plains on which thousands of cattle feed.

Other travellers may set sail from South Africa and they will arrive first at Hobart in Tasmania, an island to the south of Australia. Miles of beautiful apple orchards are seen here and hop gardens like those in the south-east of England. Many of the apples seen in English shops come from the apple orchards of Tasmania. From Hobart, travellers will sail to Melbourne in Victoria and then take a train going westwards to Fremantle. Let us take a trip across Australia from Fremantle to Brisbane.

Fremantle is a seaport at the mouth of the Swan river and many large steamers call here. The railway line from Fremantle runs along by the river to Perth, the capital of Western Australia. At Perth the river is wide and bordered by shallow beaches which make the city look like a seaside



*[Reproduced by courtesy of the Commonwealth of Australia]*

"RAKE" OF TIMBER DRAWN FROM WESTERN AUSTRALIAN FOREST

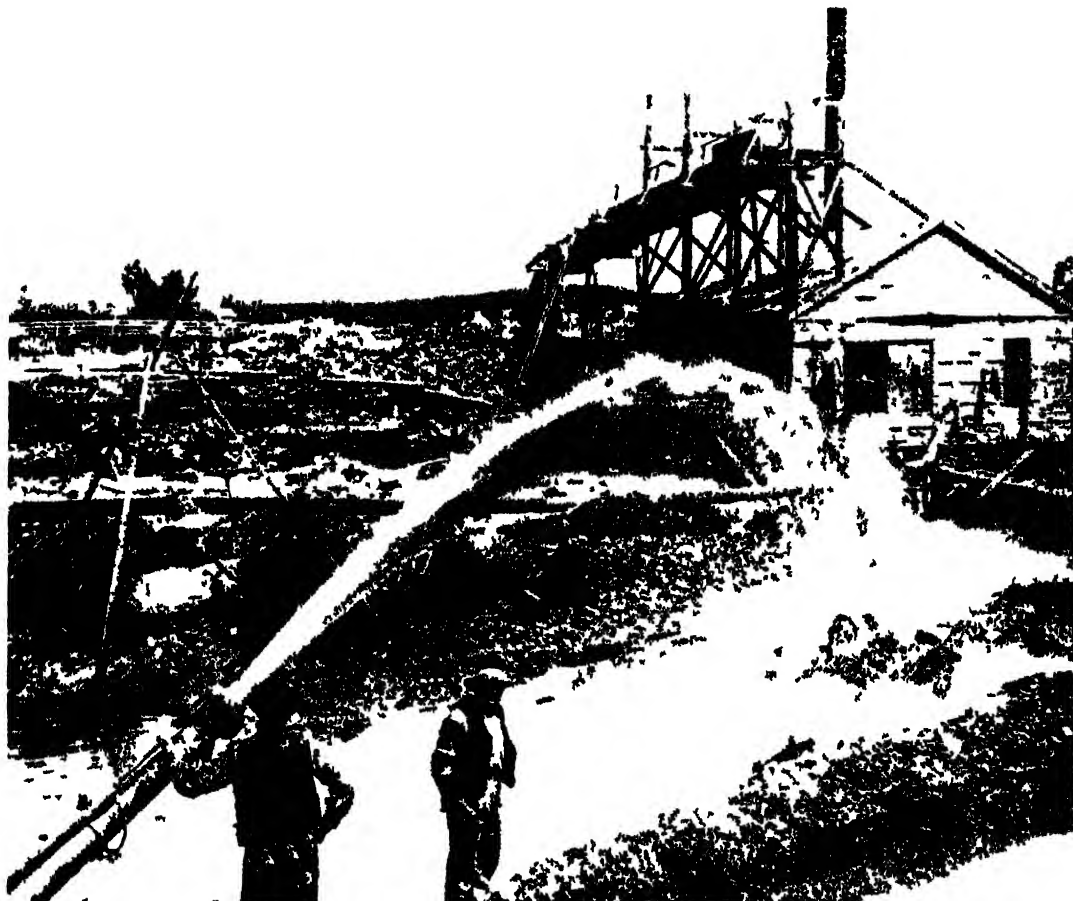
resort. There are zoological gardens at Perth and a fine park full of beautiful flowers and trees. In the country around Perth hundreds of dairy cattle are kept and fine fruits are grown—apples, pears, apricots, peaches and plums. Many farmers, too, grow wheat. South of Perth where plenty of rain falls are forests where giant jarrah and karri trees grow 300 ft. high, with no branches lower than from 50 to 80 ft. from the ground. Jarrah wood is red and very hard, proof against insects and rain. It is used for road blocks and bridge building. Timber worth a million pounds is cut down and sent away from these forests every year.

As the train travels eastwards from Perth the land is drier. On both sides of the line thousands of sheep are reared. Signs of rainfall are few. Instead of forests miles of

Australian bush cover the land. The bush in this region, called mallee scrub, consists of dwarf gum trees some ten feet high. They have grey-green leaves which droop as if limp for want of water and turn their thin edges to the sun to prevent themselves from being dried up. Much land once covered by low scrub now grows fine crops of wheat. The farmers crush the bush under heavy rollers dragged by horses and dig or burn out the roots.

After many hours of travel farther inland the soil appears yet more parched and the land looks almost like a desert. The mallee scrub gives place to dreary patches of mulga scrub and salt bush. Mulga scrub is prickly and will grow in parts that are too dry for mallee scrub. Although this region of Australia is so parched the train stops at a large town called Kalgoorlie. What could





[Reproduced by courtesy of the Commonwealth of Australia]

#### SLUICING FOR GOLD IN VICTORIA

have attracted people to make their homes in this desolate place? It was the discovery of gold which drew men here from all over the world in the hope of becoming rich.

Gold is found in rocks that are very very old and the tableland of Western Australia is made of some of the oldest rock in the world. In New South Wales a state in the east of Australia the rocks are old too, though not so old as the western ones. Goldfields were first found at Ballarat in Victoria. A man who had been a gold digger in America had settled in New South Wales, and one day he found gold in a river valley. The river had carried down

the gold from the mountains. The news soon spread. "Stockriders left their cattle, shepherds their flocks, schoolmasters their desks and clerks their counting houses." Many became rich beyond dreams for in some parts the gold was found in lumps lying on the ground or just below the roots of the grass. More was washed out of the gravel in the river bed. To search for gold by digging or picking among rocks or under roots is called *fossicking* in Australia.

The road from Melbourne to the goldfield was soon covered with wagons, horsemen and diggers on foot. Men had to camp out, cook, wash their clothes and do every-

thing themselves. Watchmen were appointed to catch thieves, and the gold diggers, though rough, were not unruly or violent.

In a few years the surface gold had all been found, and many of the diggers turned to other work in Australia. Then more goldfields were discovered in the west around Kalgoorlie and Coolgardie and another gold rush began. This time the diggers found the country waterless and hard to live in, but the goldfields were even richer than those in New South Wales had been. One part of Kalgoorlie is called "The Golden Mile" because of the amount of precious metal that was found there. Gold worth millions of pounds has been found in Australia but gradually the supply is failing. Very little gold is obtained by hand now. It is taken from the rivers by dredging machines and cut out of the rock by expensive machinery, after which the gold ore has to be separated from the lumps of rock in which it is hidden. The towns that grew up round the goldfields remain, however, and the district round East Coolgardie is now the richest mining area in Australia. Water is carried hundreds of miles in pipes from the coast and the gold towns have tramways, electric light and modern houses. Many of the inhabitants of Australia are engaged in mining for silver, copper and lead as well as gold.

At Kalgoorlie travellers gaze at the tall chimneys rising above the rich mines; they also look carefully at the station clock, for all watches must be put forward as we travel eastwards. Midday in eastern Australia is two and a half hours earlier than in western Australia, and at the chief stations along the line the clocks are put forward to the correct time. Leaving Kalgoorlie the train runs eastwards almost as the crow flies for hundreds of miles over a great, dry plain. In the whole distance it does not cross a single stream of constantly running water. This is called the Nullarbor Plain because it has no trees. The earth is red and all around is bush—blue bush, salt bush, sage bush. After a long, long time the wearisome

view begins to change. A lake region is reached, lying very low, actually below sea level, and at one time the sea may have washed all over this part. Some of the lakes are salt, and the surface of the land between them has a glittering layer of salt upon it. In these dry lands camels are used as pack animals, and donkeys draw wagons, for donkeys can live on rough herbage. Presently the line curves southwards in the direction of Port Augusta on Spencer's Gulf. A thousand miles lie between Kalgoorlie and Port Augusta, where the traveller changes train again and runs on to Adelaide, the capital of South Australia.

Adelaide is a beautiful city surrounded by vineyards and orange groves. In the autumn (which is springtime in Europe) a pound of grapes can be bought for 1d. or 2d. and oranges, peaches and figs are just as cheap. The fruit district extends from Adelaide into the state of Victoria, which ranks second to South Australia for its vineyards. The grapes are either made into wine or dried and packed as raisins and currants. The most noted town in Australia for raisins is Mildura in Victoria. No doubt you have often had in your Christmas pudding raisins which came from the sunny vineyards of Mildura.

The vineyards of Australia are largely watered by channels which have been cut to bring the water from the Murray river.

There are not many large rivers in Australia. The greatest is the Murray, and its chief tributary is the Darling. Some men live all their lives along these winding, slow rivers. They travel down the banks making their living by fishing and doing odd jobs on the stations that they pass. On the rivers, too, are found families who live in barges and float down from town to town. Little theatres and cinematograph shows travel about in this way. The plain through which the rivers flow is flat and easily flooded. Rain seldom falls steadily in Australia. There are in most places long spells of dry weather broken by fierce storms, during which the rivers swell and

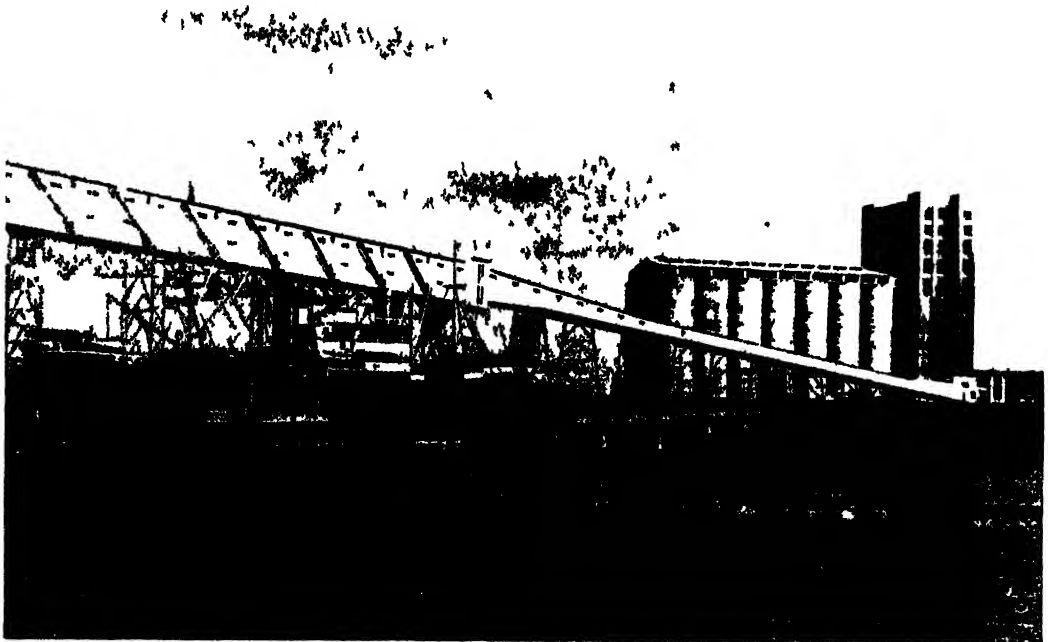
soon overflow. Sometimes hundreds of sheep are drowned. One explorer wrote that he camped one night beside a dry river bed and woke up in the morning to find it a deep and fast flowing stream.

From Adelaide the train travels south-eastwards towards Melbourne, the capital of Victoria. Melbourne is a handsome seaport. It has miles of firm white sand curving round the bays. At many places on the Australian coast are beautiful beaches like those at Melbourne, some of very large extent such as the Ninety Mile Beach in Victoria. Thousands of people are seen at holiday times paddling and surf bathing. On some parts of the Australian coast bathing is dangerous on account of the sharks. Sharks will not swim into the broken water of surf beaches but everywhere else they are a great nuisance. A

shark can bite a man's body in half with one snap of its jaws. Many Australian children learn to swim almost as soon as they can walk, and the sea and sun turn their skins a coppery colour.

There are many fine buildings in Melbourne and large parks planted with oaks, elms, limes and other English trees. It is a great seaport, from which is sent to England and other lands much of the wool, wheat and fruit of Australia.

Leaving Melbourne the train runs north-eastwards for many miles through the farming district of Victoria with its fields of wheat and oats and its meadows with cows and sheep. Much of this region, through which the train passes, was once mallee scrub, which has been crushed and burnt. At Albany the train crosses the river Murray and enters the state of New South Wales.



*[Reproduced by courtesy of Grain Elevator Board]*

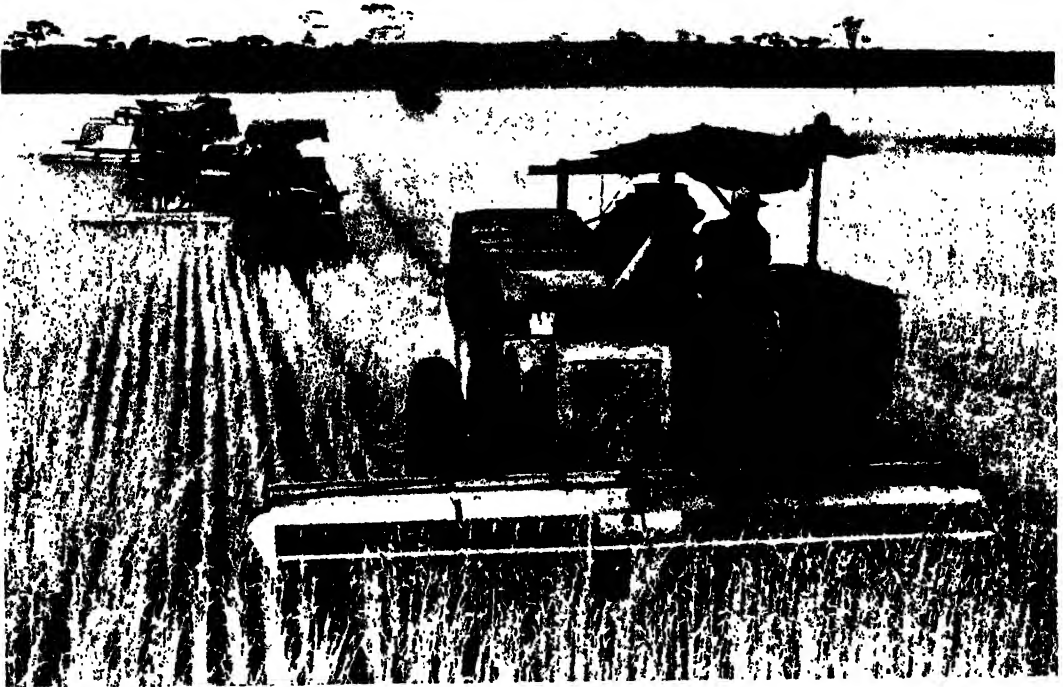
LOADING WHEAT FROM A SILO AT GEELONG

Here are some of the chief wheatlands and sheeplands of Australia. Here rain falls in the autumn, winter and early spring (April to October), and there is hot sunshine to ripen the grain in the summer (November to March). The farmer uses ploughs which turn many furrows at once and are pulled by teams of many horses or by petrol motors. His harvesting machine reaps and threshes the wheat and carries it in a bin as it goes along. The wheat crop in Australia is gradually becoming more and more valuable as fresh land is cultivated and better grain sown. New South Wales is the chief wheat growing state, and Australia ranks second to Canada in the Empire for wheat.

Behind the Australian Alps as we travel northwards is the famous sheep rearing plain known as the Riverina, the most notable sheep land in the world. (We shall hear more about Australian sheep in the

next lesson.) Presently the train leaves the plain and climbs the gentle slopes of the Blue Mountains. Then it continues its journey rushing past wild gulleys and steep wooded slopes towards the east. It stops at Sydney, the capital of New South Wales and the largest seaport in Australia. Here live more than one million people. The harbour of Port Jackson is one of the finest in the British Empire. Sydney is much like the large cities of England. There are wide streets, lofty buildings, large factories for making boots and shoes, pottery, glass, furniture, machinery and many other things, beautiful parks and handsome squares. About 100 miles from the city are the coal mines of Newcastle which supply coal for the factories and ships.

About 150 miles south of Sydney the wonderful new city of Canberra is growing up. You already know that there are several states in Australia and each of these states



*[Reproduced by courtesy of Australian National Publicity Association.]*

HARVESTING A CROP OF 7,000 ACRES OF WHEAT AT MILING, W. A.



SUGAR MIKE AUSTRALIA

manages a great deal of its own affairs. But there are some matters which concern every man, woman and child in the land, so that it has been thought well to have a great building in a new city where men and women from every state can meet together in a Commonwealth Parliament and talk matters over. The splendid new parliamentary buildings were opened at Canberra by the Duke of York in 1927 and a fine city is slowly growing.

Travelling northwards from Sydney our train passes through the coal-mining area of Newcastle, the second port in the state.

As we continue our journey the weather becomes very warm for we are travelling all the time nearer to the equator. Now we see wonderful crops of maize and plenty of oranges and melons and such fruits as grow in sub-tropical lands. Soon we reach the state of Queensland where we see white men busy in the sugar cane plantations, for

in Australia white men do most of the work even in the hottest part of the country. At length our train arrives at Brisbane, the capital of Queensland where we can buy a ripe pineapple for a few pence.

### TEACHING HINTS

**1. Map.** It is advisable to introduce the lesson with a general survey of the map of Australia. It is not difficult for young children to understand the general build of Australia. The position of the Tropic of Capricorn should be clearly understood, and the children should be led to realise the marked contrasts between the climate of the tropical north and that of the temperate south. Point out, too, the principal railways, so that the children will understand that most of the people live in the large cities of the east and south-east which are all linked by rail.

**2. Local time.**—Change of local time is a very important factor in making an east to west journey of any magnitude. The extremes of longitude are roughly  $115^{\circ}$  E and  $155^{\circ}$  E, giving a difference of  $40^{\circ}$ . Every  $15^{\circ}$  of longitude mean a difference of an hour in time, and so noon occurs 2 hr. 40 min. earlier in the east than in the west. Such a big difference cannot be neglected and adjustments must therefore be made.

**3. The Golden Mile.**—This was Australia's great gold region. Emphasise the fact that the original condition of the region was hot, dry desert, and show how it has been changed to a populous area in which the conditions resemble those of other large towns. The railway line and the water line (pipes to the coast) have been the chief instruments in the transformation.

**4. Port Augusta.**—This is a great grain centre, not only for wheat from South Australia, but also for some of the crops from the western part of New South Wales.

**5. Wheat lands.**—Note that Australia has an annual production about half that of Canada. It is the second region of the Empire for the production of wheat. Australia's chief wheat area is in the south-east corner, roughly south of a line drawn from Adelaide to Sydney, but not on the coastlands, except near Spencer's and St. Vincent Gulfs.

**6. Dried fruits and wine.**—Emphasise the fact that these products are obtained from regions which were originally very poor land. The great development is the result of the use of river water for irrigation purposes after the land has been cleared.

**7. Coal.**—The deposits of New South Wales rank as the most important in the southern hemisphere. A large quantity is exported to coaling stations which are not supplied by Britain.

**8. Brave Westerlies.**—The air that rises in the belt of calms flows northward and southward high above the earth towards the poles, in the opposite direction to the trade winds, which are nearer the surface. The influence of the earth's rotation causes these winds to blow in a westerly direction, and these wind belts are called the *prevailing westerlies*. They cover the greater part of the two temperate and the two frigid zones. These winds are the most constant about latitude  $40^{\circ}$  in the southern hemisphere over the great stretches of ocean where there are few land masses, islands, mountains, etc., to alter their direction and change their strength; hence, the latitudes where these prevailing winds blow are sometimes called the *roaring forties*. The word "brave" is used because of the value of these constant winds to mariners.

**9. Memory work.**—(a) The Trans-Australian railway crosses Australia from east to west. (b) Forests of jarrah and karri trees grow near Perth. (c) Water is carried hundreds of miles in pipes to the goldfields of the west. (d) White men only are wanted in Australia. (e) Much fruit is grown in south-east Australia. (f) Wheat ripens in summer, which is winter in England.

**10. Exercises.**—(a) Where is Fremantle? (b) What is the name of the river on which Perth stands? (c) Where are the chief goldfields of Australia? (d) Why must clocks be altered when going by train across Australia? (e) What is mallee scrub? (f) How do settlers prepare the land for wheat? (g) Which is the chief town of the western goldfields? (h) Describe ways of obtaining gold. (i) Why is the Nullarbor Plain so wearisome to cross? (j) What is grown near Adelaide? (k) Say all you know about the chief river in Australia. (l) Why cannot people bathe in the open sea at Melbourne? (m) Where are the Australian Houses of Parliament? (n) Where would you like to spend a holiday in Australia?

## IX. AUSTRALIA—SHEEP AND CATTLE

## PICTURE REFERENCE



SHEEP SHEARING IN AUSTRALIA  
(COURTESY OF THE AUSTRALIAN GOVERNMENT)

## CHILDREN'S STORY

**Sheep.** More than a quarter of all the wool in the world is grown on the backs of Australian sheep yet just over a century ago there was not a sheep run in the continent. Settlers were trying to keep themselves alive on the coast of New South Wales and finding it very difficult to do so. When the British first went to Australia they found

no potatoes or wheat, no cows, sheep or horses and no animals such as deer or bison which could be killed for food. Early settlers took a few cattle with them and these fared better than their masters, for grass was found in plenty. To-day, Australia produces grain and fruit from her fertile soil and rich minerals from her rocks, but above all else Australia is the land of shepherds and cattlemen.



CAMEL TRAIN IN AUSTRALIA

When the first little colony had established itself animals and plants were sent for from over the seas. A few sheep arrived from South Africa, some more cattle from England and some English grain seed. Both sheep and cattle thrived and their numbers grew so large that in time pasture became scarce. Then it was that three brave men found a way of crossing the Blue Mountains that stood like an enormous wall between the coastal plain and the regions inland. In a short time two roads or tracks over these mountains were cut out, and a stream of people began to pass along them. Each man took with him his family and all his possessions—wagons, tents, animals, household goods and food—and wandered into the grassy plains bordering the rivers of New South Wales. He squatted or camped at a spot that he fancied, put up a rough sort of house and set to work to make a living. He cut down the trees, burnt the stumps, ploughed up one

or two small fields for wheat, oats and potatoes, and planted a fruit and vegetable garden near the house. He carefully tended his animals and after two or three years of hard work the squatter often found to his joy that his flocks were increasing and success would be his. In course of time he became the owner of a large sheep run and a comfortable home or station.

Why is Australia the best country in the world for sheep?

Sheep are not found of course in every part of Australia. Some regions are too dry, some too wet and some too hot for them. The district which suits them to perfection is the Riverina which lies between the Murray and Darling rivers in New South Wales. This is the most famous sheep land in the world. The weather is warm all the year round so that flocks can live entirely in the open air and always find plenty of grass to eat. The mountains in the east shut out much of the rain, so that



the plains are fairly dry. Sheep cannot live on damp land, as the wet gives them a disease of the feet called foot-rot. The rivers moisten the ground sufficiently for the growth of grass and also supply the sheep with drink. Many of the bushes and grasses that grow wild in Australia, such as salt bush, sage bush and kangaroo grass, are the best food in the world for sheep, and this is another reason why the wool of Australian sheep is so fine and silky. It is called merino wool and is very long. The increase in the numbers of sheep has been

One of the first things to be done on a new run is to put up rabbit-proof fencing, which divides the run into large fields called paddocks, and also keeps out the rabbits. Rabbits are a pest in Australia. There are millions of them, and unless they are checked they eat all the grass needed for the sheep. As there is no very cold weather they breed all the year round, and thousands of pounds have been spent in fighting them. One method was to poison them, but native birds and animals were killed as well. Nowadays all pasture lands have to be



WOOL VALUATORS IN SHOW ROOM

met by the building of railways from the coast to the chief centres of the wool districts. Thus the wool can be quickly sold and carried away for shipment to other parts of the world, and so the Australian wool trade continues to grow and prosper.

Australia has over a hundred million sheep, and more than half of these are reared in New South Wales.

Sheep runs in Australia are vast stretches of land, though most are smaller now than they used to be. Some sheep farmers still have as many as 150,000 sheep on their runs.

enclosed in rabbit-proof wire netting, and the rabbits are also hunted down with dogs. They are driven to live in the worst parts of the country, and there they are being trapped and sent frozen to other lands, and their skins are made up into imitation furs. It is the work of special horsemen employed at the station to keep the rabbit fences in good order, and see that none is broken down. These horsemen travel long distances, for the fences extend for hundreds of miles. In the west a rabbit-proof fence stretches across the continent from north to south.

The men who tend the sheep are often away for many days and nights together, and they carry supplies of food with them. They have always plenty of meat to eat, and Australians generally eat three times as much meat, either mutton or beef, as people in England.

There is always work to do on a station. Ewes with lambs must be cared for and flocks must be moved from one run to another. To guard the sheep against insect pests they have to be dipped in water containing some disinfectant. (See Class Picture No. 87 in the portfolio). Kangaroos must be kept out of the paddocks, for they eat food wanted by the sheep, and any dingoes, or native dogs, prowling around must be shot, for they will kill a dozen sheep in a night. The wool is sheared or clipped off the bodies of the sheep by machinery, then it is sorted and packed in bales, which are pressed to make them as small as possible. They are loaded on wagons drawn by horses or bullocks, or on motor lorries, and taken to the nearest railway station. Some bales are sold in the large Australian cities such as Sydney and Melbourne, where woollen factories have been set up. Others are bound with iron hoops and packed on board ship to be sent to England and other countries.

By far the greatest numbers of Australian sheep are reared for wool, but some flocks are kept for their meat. These are killed first and sheared afterwards, or they may be skinned, as some countries buy sheepskins with the wool upon them. The great ports of Melbourne, Sydney and Brisbane have warehouses packed with bales of wool, kegs of tallow made from the fat of the sheep and stacks of sheepskins. Close to the warehouses stand large freezing rooms in which chilled or frozen mutton can be kept until the steamers come to carry it to Europe.

**Cattle.**—Cattle are reared in Australia both for their beef and for their milk. The beef cattle are found in the hot wet parts of the country, chiefly in Queensland. Their pastures are hundreds of miles in length, and

cattlemen have to be expert horsemen with good horses, to cover such long distances. The cattle are often driven several hundred miles from their pasture grounds to the nearest railway or port. They feed and fatten as they go along, taking months on the journey. Arrived at their destination they end as frozen beef, canned beef, or extract of beef. Their hides are tanned with Australian wattle bark and made into boots and shoes and other leather goods.

The dairy cattle cannot stand so much heat as the beef cattle. They are mainly reared on the coastal plains of New South Wales and Victoria. They feed on rich pastures and give excellent milk. The milk is put in churns which are loaded on to wagons and sent to the nearest creamery or butter factory. Here the cream is separated from the milk and made into butter and cheese, and the skimmed milk left behind is sold for feeding pigs for the bacon factories. Australian butter is now beginning to rival New Zealand butter, and Australian cheese is also coming to the front, although the quantities made are much smaller than those sent away from New Zealand and Canada. Tins of dried and condensed milk are also exported.

Australian dairy farmers are sometimes troubled by spells of dry weather which may wither the grass. Then the cattle will starve unless the farmer has a reserve supply of fodder. He therefore builds in a sheltered spot brick or concrete towers called silos and fills them with lucerne, maize, wheat, oats and other grasses, cut green. This "hay" keeps a long time and cattle, sheep and horses are very fond of it.

About one-fifth of all the cattle in Australia are dairy cows, and from the milk nearly three hundred million pounds of butter and over thirty million pounds of cheese are made in a year.

### TEACHING HINTS

1. **Pastoral and dairying production.**—The importance of pastoral and dairying produc-

tion in Australia is shown by a comparison of the following figures—

Total value of dairying and pastoral production £173 000 000  
 Total value of all agricultural production, £84 000 000  
 Total value of all mineral production £7,000 000

2. The following are the chief products obtained from sheep runs

Wool (a) by annual clip  
 (b) from skins of slaughtered sheep  
 (c) exported on sheepskins  
 Mutton and Lamb exported frozen  
 Tallow obtained from the fat  
 Skins to be made into leather

The chief products obtained from the cattle pastures are

Beef exported frozen tinned or concentrated  
 Milk—butter cheese evaporated and tinned milk  
 Hides for leather  
 Bones for various purposes

3. **Hides and skins**—Cattle and sheep rearing has led to a trade in hides and skins and there is an export of these commodities to the value of over £5 000 000 a year. The largest trade in this respect is in sheepskins with wool, of which France is the chief purchaser. Rabbit skins, opossum wallaby and kangaroo skins are also exported. The possession of large flocks and herds has led to the establishment of tanneries in many parts of Australia. The manufacture of woollens and tweeds is carried on, the production of the woollen

mills of Australia consisting chiefly of tweed cloths flannels and blankets

4. **Frozen meat.**—Perhaps the most important event in the history of the Dominion of Australia occurred in the year 1882 when the sailing ship *Dunedin* carried the first consignment of frozen lamb and mutton to London

5. **Tallow.** This is generally obtained from mutton fat by melting and separating by pressure. Suet is a natural form of tallow. When pure, tallow is white tasteless and insoluble in water. It is used in the manufacture of soap and candles.

6 **Memory work.** (a) Australia stands first in the world for wool. (b) An Australian sheep farmer's home is called a station. (c) Australian merino sheep give the finest wool in the world. (d) Sheep runs are enclosed by rabbit proof fences. (e) The sheep are tended by horsemen. (f) Tallow is made from the fat of sheep. (g) Beef cattle and dairy cattle are reared. (h) Chilled beef, corned beef and extract of beef come from Australia. (i) Wool, chilled mutton, tallow and hides come from Australia.

7. **Exercises.** (a) Why did the first settlers in Australia find the land? (b) On which birds in Australia are the best sheep reared? (c) Why do sheep thrive in Australia? (d) Of what use are the railways to the sheep farmers? (e) Why are the sheep runs fenced with wire? (f) What are paddocks? (g) What work has to be done on a sheep farm? (h) What is a dingo? (i) Tell all the ways in which sheep are useful. (j) Why do men keep large herds of cattle? (k) What are dairy farms? (l) How is it that people in England can get butter from Australia? (m) How do farmers in Australia guard against spells of dry weather?

## X. AUSTRALIA—LIFE IN CITY AND COUNTRY

## CHILDREN'S STORY

A JOINTY poem has been written about the land on the other side of the equator—a poem called *The Opposite Side* (See page 231). In it the writer pretends that toys live in houses and play with children. Tops spin boys round and round, shuttlecocks toss little girls in the air, everything in short is exactly the opposite of what it is in England. It is amusing to read such pretty fancies, but you must not think that they are true. If you do you will be disappointed should you visit *The Opposite Side* some day for you will find that Australia in many ways like England, and the people who live there are mostly of British descent.

In the streets of the great cities people ride in electric trams, hop, skip and bounce in many stores high and along the main roads many of which are very wide. Gum trees are planted along the pavements because they offer grateful shade from the hot sun. Turning out of the street lead to open space full of trees and flower beds and to large public parks. Racecourses and cricket ground adorn the cities. Because of the warm weather and sunshine Australians are very fond of sports and summer games are played all the year round.

The large country houses are built of wood with eight or nine rooms each and four deep shady verandahs, one for each side of the house. On these verandahs in summer the family spends most of its time dining, reading, writing and sewing. At night the family sleeps on the verandah, the beds being screened by gauze to prevent attacks from mosquitoes. When the sun rises in the morning magpies call to each other with clear shrill voices and the

sound of the kookaburras laugh awakens sleepers. The kookaburra is a bird with mottled grey plumage. It is about the size of an owl and is sometimes called the laughing jackass because of its mocking note which is like a man's loud laugh.

On the hillside at a distance from the house may be seen groves of gum trees whose trunks in spring are of a beautiful pinky white colour. As the season advances and the sun beats more and more fiercely on the trees the bark deepens in colour into red and brown and then it strips off and shows the new fur white bark underneath. Most of the trees in Australia shed their bark and not their leaves. In the valley at the foot of the hill are clumps of wattles about as large as apple trees. In spring these are covered all over with soft blossoms of the brightest yellow.

All around the house are smooth green lawns and flower beds in which hundreds of flowers are blooming. Sometimes as many as sixty different sorts of roses grow in one garden and they blossom all the year round, so warm is the climate. Flowers of England, Italy, China and India as well as native Australian blooms are in the beds. A tennis court stands beyond the garden and round its high wire fences climb vines. Adjoining the tennis court is an orchard containing orange and lemon trees, apple, pear, peach and custard apple trees and strawberry and raspberry canes. Custard apples are fruits which are soft inside and taste like custard. On the far side of the orchard is a meadow or paddock for the horse which are not kept in a stable except on very wet cold nights. Many Australians have built similar homesteads for themselves, and this prosperous life has grown out of the huts, the tiny farms and hard work of their great grandfathers the squatters.

When building their houses the Australians cover all the ground area with cement or with asphalt, and take care that no beams touch the earth. If they do, the wood will be eaten by white ants or termites. These insects have their homes underground and run about in all directions to eat up whatever wood they can find. They eat beams, floors and even furniture in such a way that the mischief is not discovered until the house suddenly falls in. A beam will appear to be quite sound when really its whole heart has been eaten out by termites. Fortunately they cannot burrow through brick or stone. In Queensland the houses are often built high up on piles or heavy posts. On the top of each pile, between it and the building, is an iron plate with the edges turned downwards. This plate prevents the ants from entering the home, and the space between the house and the ground allows for a free passage of air which keeps the building cool. Sometimes the space

underneath the house is large enough to be used as a garage.

Those farmers who possess hundreds of acres of land call their homestead a station, and this may stand a hundred miles or more from any town. It is generally a comfortable bungalow made of hard wood such as jarrah, and linked up with the nearest town by telephone. The house is lighted either by electricity obtained from moving water, or by acetylene gas manufactured on the estate. Thus, though the farmer is a very long way from a city, he is not without comforts, and nowadays many farmers own motor cars which are of great assistance in their work.

Children in Australia have a very happy life. They grow up more quickly than English children, because from an early age they have to take a share, however small, in the work. At the same time they have many more holidays and more sunshine in which to enjoy them. The great sport of



*[Reproduced by courtesy of the Australian Publicity Board]*

**PLACING SULTANAS IN DRYING RACKS**

holiday makers is picnicking, and picnics are seldom spoiled by rain. When they go for a picnic Australians always supply themselves with plenty of tea, for they are great tea drinkers. They boil water in a "billy" or tin pot over a fire of sticks and make tea several times during the outing. Even near the large cities there are many lovely spots for picnics in Australia. In the spring the bush is bright with all sorts of curious flowers, white, blue, purple, pink and brown. One flower, the waratah, is the handsomest wild flower in the world. It grows wherever there have been bush fires. The flower is of a brilliant red colour, stands on a high stalk, has petals like flannel and is as large as a grapefruit. The gum trees and wattles give out a refreshing scent. Near the coast are sandy beaches. Oysters can be taken from the rocks and fish from the sea. Thousands of people may be seen at all hours of the day on the dazzling beaches of Sydney which is the home of surf bathing.

All children in Australia have to go to school, so that everyone is taught to read and write. Even in the most distant parts the Government carries children free of charge on the railways, or sends a motorbus to collect them so that they shall not lose their education. Families that are quite alone and very far away are encouraged to employ a governess. In the bush districts of Australia the children ride to school on horseback, sometimes three or even four on a horse. In the cities the schools are very good. All the Government schools are free and clever children can win scholarships which pay for their education at high schools and universities.

Australian children play at all the usual British games, tops, marbles, skipping, hoops. Cricket is the great national game and schoolboys everywhere are keen players. The Australian Cricket team holds the championship of the world. Tennis and football are played also. Like the young Canadian, the youthful Australian often spends his holidays camping out. Boys can sail a boat and carry a gun when they are fifteen or

sixteen years old, and they go out in parties hunting in the bush or sailing on some river or inlet of the sea.

**Animals and birds.**—We have already seen that cattle, sheep, horses, pigs, and rabbits are the most numerous animals in Australia but there are besides some strange animals and birds because Australia is a very old land which has long been cut off from the rest of the world. The best known wild animal is the kangaroo. When the English and Australian cricket teams meet they are often pictured as a cheerful lion and kangaroo shaking each other by the forefoot. In front of its body the mother kangaroo has a pouch in which it carries its young until they are old enough to look after themselves. The kangaroo's forelegs are small, its tail and hindlegs very powerful and these it uses for rushing over the country in huge hops. Although a kangaroo is generally humbles, it will fight when it is bay, standing on its hind legs and tail with its back to a tree. It can tear a log to pieces with its forelegs. You must not think however that kangaroos can be seen anywhere in Australia. Like the Blackfellows they live far away from towns and people and the greater number of Australians have never seen either a Blackfellow or a wild kangaroo. White people do not care for the flesh of the kangaroo but the tail makes nourishing soup, the skin supplies shoe leather and can also be made into rugs and overcoats.

The chief Australian animals living in trees are the koala or native bear and opossum. The koala is a quaint little creature resembling a large fat cat with eyes like saucers. It spends most of the day in a leafy tree trunk fork. It is quite humbles and feeds on gum leaves. (See Class Picture No. 85.) The opossum is hunted for its beautiful grey fur. The Tasmanian opossum has black fur which is very valuable, and hunters are fast killing all the opossums in the country. They are often caught in snares. Bush boys find a tree with cratched bark, showing that an

opossum family lives high up in a hollow of the trunk, and they fasten a noose to the tree. The opossum sleeps in the daytime and when he comes down at night to feed or drink he is caught in the snare. Some opossums are shot by hunters.

Another curious animal of the country is the echidna or anteater. It is covered with sharp spines and has no teeth, but from a long snout it shoots out a sticky tongue to seize the ants which form its chief food. The echidna lays eggs but does not sit on them. They are hatched in its warm pouch, and there the little ones remain while they are young.

One of the strangest animals in the world is the platypus, duckbill or duckmole. We are told that once upon a time all mammals laid eggs, but there are only two animals now left which lay eggs, and the platypus of Australia is one of the two, and the echidna is the other. The platypus is an animal about eighteen inches long, with fur like that of a mole, with a short tail flattened like a beaver's, with its four feet webbed, but with a duck's beak having a fleshy covering. The duckbill's fur is dark brown above and whitish below the body; the eyes are small and deep set like those of a mole; the large openings for ears are not seen above the fur, but the animal's hearing is acute.

The home of the platypus is in parts of certain rivers in Tasmania and Australia. It chooses a spot near a deep pool in the river, where it builds an underground burrow leading from the water; there is one unseen entrance from the water and another entrance from the land. In the depths of the burrow the mother platypus lays and hatches two eggs. The food consists of water animals, worms, insects, and little shelled animals. It is very difficult to get near a platypus for it is exceedingly timid and cautious. (See the Class Picture illustrated on the next page.)

The largest of the Australian birds are the emu and the cassowary. The emu is found only in Australia and some islands

near. It is the second largest bird now living, being next in size to the ostrich. The hen emu is larger than her mate; both sexes are valiant fighters, but the hen is famous for the strength and speed of her blows. The emu is rather like an ostrich but its wings are smaller; it escapes from danger by its swiftness in running. The feathers are brown and slender, spotted with grey, and the young birds have long stripes of a paler colour. In common with all wild life in Australia, the emus have suffered from the coming of man, and are now rare except in the wilder parts of the country. They live in small flocks, and feed chiefly on fruits. In Queensland the prickly pear was introduced and spread very rapidly; it has been found that the emu thrives wherever the prickly pear grows, for it eats the fruits, and is most numerous and in finest condition where the prickly pear is thickest. Emus swim well, and take to the water readily.

Like the emu, the cassowary is akin to the ostrich. It is smaller than the emu, and stands about five feet high to the top of its head. A cassowary is easily distinguished from an emu by the horny helmet on the head covered with a thin skin. The head and the upper part of a cassowary's neck are bare of feathers, and usually the skin of the neck is brightly coloured. The feathers look like coarse hair because they are so narrow, and they are black and glossy. The small imperfectly formed wings have each about four black quills. Like the emu, a cassowary has stout strong legs for running swiftly, and fights by giving powerful and deadly blows with its great clawed feet. Cassowaries do not keep to the open; they are shy and live secretly in the forests and undergrowth.

### TEACHING HINTS

**1. Custard apple tree.**—This is a small tree native to Brazil. It has aromatic lance-shaped leaves and flowers that are brown outside with yellow centres. The fruit is the size of a tennis ball, and is made up of many



WILD ANIMALS OF AUSTRALIA

*Above* KOALA KAKABURRA—OPUS UM  
*Middle* . CASSOWARY—RED KANGAROO—I MU  
*Below* DUCK-BILLED PLATYPUS—LYRE BIRD—ECHIDNA

(Class Picture No. 83 in the portfolio)

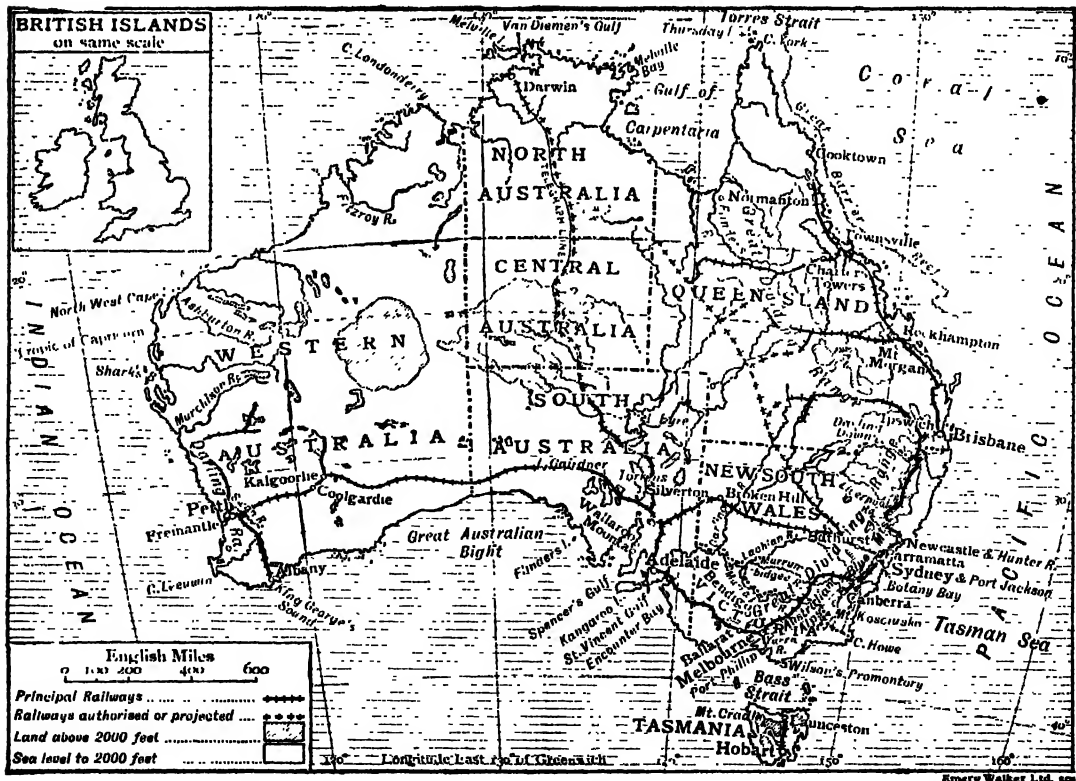


cells completely fused, as shown by the netted marking of the rind. The custard apple is delicious when not over-ripe.

**2. Wattle.**—This name is given to various kinds of *Acacia* which is a spiny shrub that grows on the edge of deserts. The minute flowers are gathered into crowded spikes. The leaves, divided into many leaflets, have a feathery appearance, and turn their edges upwards and downwards to resist the heat of the sun. Some kinds furnish drugs, gums and tanning material. The trees were so called from wattles, or hurdles, which the early settlers made of the long, pliable branches of or the split stems. They are sometimes grown in British greenhouses for their beautiful masses of yellow, red, or white blossoms.

**3. Memory work.**—(a) Australian cities have wide streets and many open spaces. (b) Country houses are built with verandahs all round them. (c) Many people spend their holidays at the seaside or they go picnicking or camping. (d) The kangaroo is a native animal of Australia. (e) The gum tree is a native tree of Australia.

**4. Exercises.**—(a) Why can Australians play cricket on Christmas Day? (b) How do lonely stations keep in touch with towns which are far away? (c) Tell all you know about the kangaroo. (d) Tell all you know about the rabbits of Australia. (e) Tell all you know about a country house in Australia. (f) What would you expect to do at holiday-time in Australia?



**GENERAL MAP OF AUSTRALIA. (NOTICE THE SIZE OF THE BRITISH ISLANDS.)**

## XI. NEW ZEALAND—HISTORY AND PEOPLES

### PICTURE REFERENCE



COOKING IN A HOU WHITT NEW ZEALAND  
(H. L. N. 1891)

### INTRODUCTION

When discovered in 1642 by Tasman the group of islands called New Zealand was found to be inhabited by a race of Polynesians called Maoris. Tasman's first view of New Zealand was the west coast of South

Island which he described as 'a high mountainous country'. He continued his voyage along the west coast of North Island and gave the name of Cape Maria van Diemen to the north west extremity. At no part of the journey did he land in the new country. The next great event in the modern

history of New Zealand was the visit of Captain Cook in 1769. He sighted land at Young Nick's Head, and on October 8th anchored in Poverty Bay. He coasted round North, South and Stewart Islands, but had the idea that South and Stewart Islands were one land mass. From New Zealand he sailed to Australia on March 31st, 1770, leaving the land at Cape Farewell.

Cook not only determined that New Zealand was not part of a polar land mass, but also he gathered much information concerning the nature of the islands and their inhabitants. He described the country as being "well adapted for the plentiful production of all sorts of the fruits, plants and corn of Europe"; and so it has proved.

In 1772, an enterprising French navigator, M. Marion du Fresne, visited New Zealand and, in an encounter with the Maoris, he and sixteen others were murdered.

During his second voyage Cook again visited New Zealand, reaching Dusky Bay, near the extreme south west, on May 4th, 1773. He spent some time examining the shores and the forested country near at hand; he got into touch with the people, and for their benefit planted a garden with English vegetables. After visiting some of the islands of the South Seas, Cook returned to New Zealand for supplies of wood and water, and to visit the Maoris on the east side of North Island. On this part of the journey he sailed through Cook Strait and then set his course for the polar ice, twice crossing the Antarctic Circle. On the homeward journey, in 1744, New Zealand was visited for the third time.

During his last great journey Cook reached New Zealand again in 1777.

The first Europeans were left in New Zealand in 1792, when Captain Raven of the *Britannia* landed a sealing party at Facile Harbour on the west coast of South Island. After this small detachment of people had remained for a little over a year on the island, they were called for and taken away. During the next few years, whaling stations were established at several points

on the coast, and periodic visits were made by whaling vessels. In 1814 the first missionaries, headed by Samuel Marsden, arrived at the island, and in 1815 a mission station was established at Rangihoua, in the Bay of Islands.

For twenty years progress was hindered by murderous wars between the tribes. At length the persevering teaching of the missionaries checked the fighting. Peace and Christianity gradually became established, and English men and women went out in parties as settlers. Captain Hobson was the first governor; he hoisted the Union Jack in the country, which was placed under the government of New South Wales. The Maori chiefs acknowledged Queen Victoria after receiving a promise that they should keep their lands. Even then it was long before Englishmen and Maoris settled down peaceably together. There were many quarrels over the government of the country, and fighting continued for several years. At length, in 1840, New Zealand was declared a self-governing country, the Maoris surrendered their weapons, and settlers were able to concentrate their attention upon sheep farming. The discovery of gold in North and South Island led to a rush of fresh settlers, and a few large towns gradually grew up round the coasts. Real prosperity came to New Zealand with the invention of a dredger for obtaining gold, and the discovery of a method of chilling meat and sending it overseas in cold storage.

**Population.**—The population of New Zealand proper (exclusive of Maoris) is 1,688,000, and the Maoris number some 100,000. The following table shows the concentration of people in the towns; the population is given in round numbers:

Auckland	..	282,000
Wellington	..	183,000
Christchurch	..	159,000
Dunedin	..	88,000
Palmrston N.	.	20,000
Invercargill	..	29,000

More than 40 per cent of the people of North Island live in two towns and nearly 40 per cent of the people of South Island live in two towns. The four towns are ports.

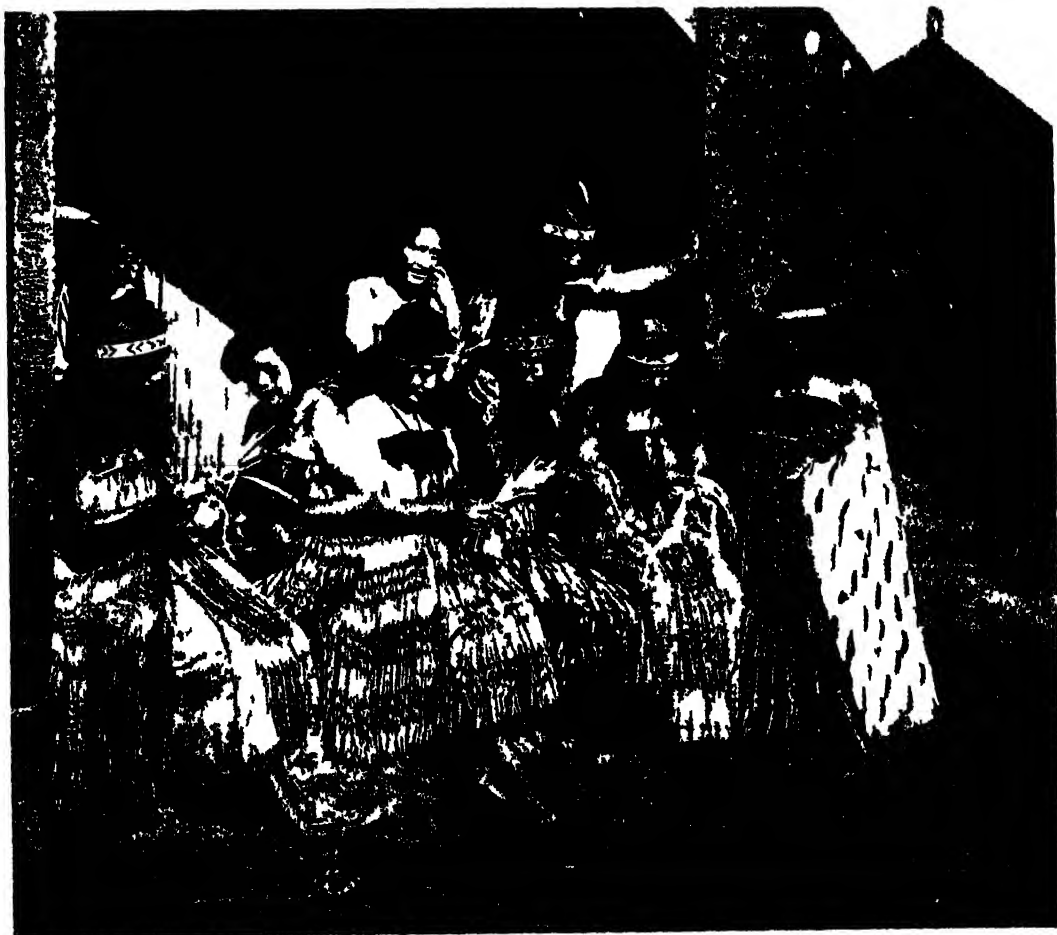
Reference has already been made to the Maoris, the original inhabitants of New Zealand. They are a Polynesian people who probably migrated by way of Malaya to the Pacific. Tradition runs that they dwelt originally in a country named Hawiki and that one of their chiefs after a long voyage reached the northern island of New Zealand. Pleased with what he saw he

returned home and persuaded others to go to the new land.

The Maoris are steadily increasing in numbers but the gain in numbers has been accompanied by a considerable dilution of blood. North Island is the home of 94 per cent of the Maoris.

### CHILDREN'S STORY

Twelve hundred miles south east of Australia lies a group of islands called New Zealand. These islands are so far away from



*Reproduced by courtesy of the C. P. R.*

MAORI GIRLS IN NATIVE COSTUME NEW ZEALAND

other lands that little was known about them until Captain Cook made his celebrated voyages to them in the years 1769-1777. The islands were called New Zealand because they were first discovered by Tasman, a native of Holland, so they were named after the province of Zealand in that country. When travellers first visited the islands they found them inhabited by people called Maoris, but to-day most of the people of New Zealand are descendants of the English, Scots and Irish, and especially of the Scots. The islands are about five-sixths the area of the British Isles, but at present there are about one and three-quarter million people living there, while there are over forty-seven million people living in the British Isles. New Zealand is a country where there is plenty of room. People are not crowded together in great smoky cities as they are in parts of England, although more than half of the New Zealanders live in the six chief towns. But even in the towns there are many more open spaces and many more gardens than there are in the old cities of England. The climate of New Zealand is a good deal like the climate of southern England only there is more sunshine in New Zealand. You can easily understand that where there is plenty of space for sport and games, and where there is plenty of sunshine, the people are particularly strong and healthy, and New Zealand is noted as being the most healthy country in the world.

Strong, healthy people love games, so it is little wonder that the favourite game of boys and men in New Zealand is Rugby football. Of course other games are played too—cricket, hockey, lacrosse, golf, bowls—just as they are played in England, but Rugby football is the great New Zealand game. There are many things to do on holiday in New Zealand. There are lofty forest-clad mountains, numerous swift running rivers, many lakes, and there are deep fiords along the coasts. New Zealanders, then, can enjoy swimming, sailing yachts, fishing, picnicking, camping and shooting.

As in Australia, there were no cattle, sheep, pigs and horses in the country until they were brought there from abroad, but now these animals thrive in great numbers, and to-day most of the people depend on the sheep and cattle for their livelihood. In English shops you will often see the labels: *New Zealand Butter*, *New Zealand Cheese*, *Imperial Honey*, *New Zealand Apples* and *Canterbury Lamb*. Canterbury is the name of a district near which are wide stretches of grasslands on which thousands of sheep are reared, and much of the meat of the lambs and sheep is frozen and sent in ships to England and other countries. Before we take a trip round the islands let us hear a little about the clever Maoris who lived there before the British entered the country.

**The Maoris.**—When Captain Cook visited the islands he found the people living together in villages fenced round with boughs and trees lashed together. He said that they were tall, dark-skinned people, "with black hair, thin black beards and white teeth." They tattooed their faces and bodies in wonderful patterns, and "wore ornaments of stone, bone and shells at their ears and about their necks." The men generally wore long, white feathers stuck upright in their hair.

The Maoris were then a very warlike people, but they now live peaceably and keep the British laws.

The Maoris are clever people. Most of them can read and write, some are rich and well-educated gentlemen, and their children attend school. They are allowed to vote and send their own members to the New Zealand Parliament. Those who still live in native villages have learnt the ways of the settlers. Some own large herds of sheep and cattle, others cultivate the land. Their favourite food crop is the sweet potato, they are fond of pork, and they eat a good deal of fish, which is caught in abundance in the lakes and rivers. Their cooking is now generally done in English fashion, but in



*[Reproduced by courtesy of the High Commissioner for New Zealand]*

MAORI WOMAN AND CHILD, ROTORUA, NORTH ISLAND NEW ZEALAND

North Island, where the Maoris mostly live, there are some hot springs, and when a steam-hole is near the Maoris use it for cooking their food. The hot springs, too, are very useful in other ways, for in them the women wash their clothes and the people bathe. Most of the Maoris to-day dress like the British, but at one time they made all their own garments from the strong fibres

of a plant called New Zealand flax which grows luxuriantly in that country. In the picture you will see three women cooking their dinners in one of the hot springs, and you will notice that they are dressed in garments made of New Zealand flax. They grow the flax and weave the clothes themselves on rods stuck into the ground. Afterwards they dye the garments brown and

black with dyes made from the bark of trees. The clothing is in two parts—cloaks or capes which are hung round the shoulders and fastened in front by strings or bone pins, and skirts that are tied round the waist. They do not wear hats, or shoes and stockings, but they sometimes wear sandals. The Maoris are clever at carving wood and stone. The fronts of their whares or houses are often carved, and they also make quaint little figures out of greenstone to sell to visitors.

The Maoris were very clever canoe-voyagers. The last tribes of them came to

New Zealand in canoes from distant islands about the time that Edward the Black Prince was fighting in France.

Their canoes are hollowed out of the trunks of trees. They sail them with great skill and are good swimmers as well. When water sports are held the Maoris join in canoe hurdle races. The hurdle is a pole fastened across to two posts and standing up a little out of the water. In the race the Maoris paddle quickly towards the pole. When near it they run to the back of the canoe and tilt it up, so that the nose glides over the pole. Then they run forward and



*(Reproduced by courtesy of the High Commissioner for New Zealand.)*

FLAX CUTTING, NORTH ISLAND, NEW ZEALAND

the canoe slips down on the other side, sometimes turning over as it goes and throwing its owner into the water. Besides swimming and sailing, the Maoris like football, wrestling, shooting, and any kind of life in the open air.

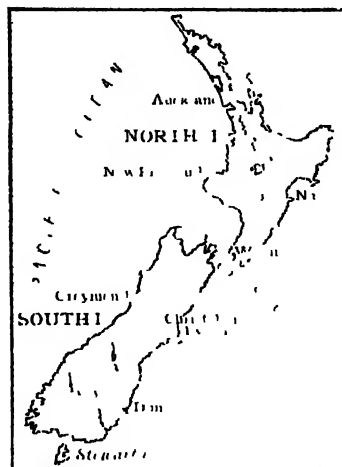
Singing and dancing play a large part in their lives. When visitors go to see the wonderful hot springs of New Zealand the Maoris in some of the villages dress up as they did in days gone by and perform a war dance in which they look very fierce and pretend to rush upon an enemy. Some of the poetry in their songs is very musical, but there is no tune in their singing. It is a long chant, with the voice falling at the ends of the stanzas. The singers take breath anywhere, so there are no general pauses, and the chant seems to go on and on without a break for a very long time. Here is a Maori song sung by a watcher at a fort:

"Be watchful!  
O be wakeful!  
Be watchful this defence!  
Be watchful that defence!  
The enemy shall be caught  
Outside the fortress walls  
Fighting and struggling,  
Be watchful!"

When two Maoris meet, they clasp hands and press their noses together. The British and the Maoris are good friends now. The white men fought against them in the past and learned to honour them for their bravery. Now the two races are fellow countrymen, sharing in the work and government of the land.

### TEACHING HINTS

**1. The globe.**—Before talking about the Maoris to the pupils it is necessary to point out on the globe New Zealand, the chief islands, the surrounding seas, and the position of New Zealand with regard to Australia and the British Isles. Its discovery and history might then be mentioned, the



NEW ZEALAND

points being selected by the teacher from the "Introduction." From the accompanying map the teacher will be able to draw a blackboard sketch of the islands.

**2. Maoris.**—The contrast between the natives of Australia and New Zealand is very striking and should be emphasised. In Australia the Aboriginal population is of a very low type and the numbers are small, while in New Zealand they now rank on an equality with the British, and their numbers are increasing.

**3. Concentration of large numbers in a few towns.**—A most striking feature in Australia and New Zealand is the remarkable size of a few towns, in comparison with the population of the whole country. In each country the primary production is of the same type. Large areas are needed for flocks of sheep and herds of cattle, but a small number of people can do all that is necessary in those areas. The material obtained, however, is of large bulk, and the great mass of it is prepared for the export trade. A large number of people are therefore indirectly connected with the pastoral industry in each country, and the amount of material handled at the ports is immense.



Of the employed people about 25 per cent. are engaged directly in agricultural and pastoral work, nearly 15 per cent in the manufacture of material obtained as the result of the work of those people, about 15 per cent in commerce and finance, and 8 per cent in transport. This gives a total of 63 per cent of the employed people of the country, who may be said to be directly employed as the result of the primary work of its people

**4. Nationality.**—The remarkable fact that the population of the country is almost entirely of British descent contrasts with the mixed populations in Canada, British Africa and India. In New Zealand British people experience a climate approximating to that of their homeland

**5. Native flax.**—Large areas in various parts of New Zealand are covered with *Phormium tenax*, or New Zealand flax, the fibre of which is used in making binder twine and rope. The flax grows wild in swampy districts and was used by the

Maoris for the making of clothing, fishing lines and mats. The largest cultivated areas are in the Auckland and Wellington districts. There are about ninety flax mills in the country. The leaves of the plant grow from about five to eight feet high.

**6. Memory work.**—(a) New Zealand is 1,200 miles away from Australia. (b) The first white settlers there were English, Scots and Irish. (c) There are plenty of open spaces in the towns of New Zealand. (d) Butter, cheese, honey, fruit, meat and wool are exported from New Zealand. (e) The native people are called Maoris.

**7. Exercises.**—(a) Captain Cook first visited New Zealand in the year 1769. How long ago was that? (b) Why was New Zealand so called? (c) What might you do on holiday in New Zealand? (d) Name some New Zealand products which may be seen in English shops. (e) In what way are the Maoris different from what they were when Captain Cook first saw them? (f) How do the Maoris make their own clothes?



[The photograph is produced by courtesy of the High Commissioner for New Zealand]

IN A BUTTER FACTORY

## XII. NEW ZEALAND AND PAPUA

### PICTURE REFERENCE

**T**HE Class Picture illustrated on the next page (No. 87 in the portfolio) introduces the children to three types of New Zealanders and to a Man of New Guinea. The Maori chief is wearing a characteristic flax cloak, he holds a sharp-edged club of greenstone, and is standing beside an elaborately carved totem pole. In the second picture we see timber-getters of New Zealand cutting down one of the giant kauri pines of the forest. The illustration of Sheep Dipping will be familiar to some country children, but will have to be explained to the town dwellers. The huge fish trap as used by some of the people in the Southern Seas are about ten feet long and six feet in diameter. They are made of split bamboo bound together with rattan vines. At each end is an opening which converges to a hole in the centre, through which the fish can pass but cannot return. The huge trees behind the man in the well-known saga palms.

### INTRODUCTION

The Dominion of New Zealand mainly consists of North Island and South Island (separated by Cook Strait), with Stewart Island.

The country is situated in the south temperate zone between  $33^{\circ}$  and  $47^{\circ}$  south latitude. The north is nearer to the equator than the south, and is consequently the warmer part of the country. East Cape is nearly  $180^{\circ}$  east longitude, that is halfway round the world from Greenwich.

**South Island.** A backbone of mountains extends from the south-west in South Island to the north-east in North Island. The

lofty snow-capped Southern Alps slope steeply to the west, and in the south west drop almost sheer to form the walls of fiords. Great glaciers lying on the mountains feed many rivers. The highest peak, Mt. Cook, is more than two miles high. In the east are many streams which during the course of ages have distributed loads of soil to form the important lowlands of the Canterbury Plains and the plains of Otago farther south.

**North Island** is mainly hilly or mountainous and much cut up by running water. The long Auckland Peninsula in the north, is lowland but hilly. The Rotorua district is a world famous area of active extinct and dormant volcanoes with geysers and hot springs. Mount Egmont in the west is a magnificent extinct cone. Ruapehu is the highest volcanic mountain. Lake Taupo is the largest lake. Thousands of tourists and invalids are annually attracted to Geysersland which is somewhat similar to Yellowstone Park, U.S.A.

**Climate.** In January (summer) isotherms  $60^{\circ}$  passes through the middle of South Island. Isotherm  $50^{\circ}$  passes through the middle of North Island in July (winter). Thus there is a range of only  $10^{\circ}$  between summer and winter conditions, so that New Zealand is a typical example of a country having an insular temperate climate.

The prevailing *Westerlies* bring much rain to the mountainous Westland of South Island, on the east the Canterbury Plains and Otago are the driest in New Zealand. Throughout the North Island there is a plentiful rainfall, with more on the west



NIU ZLAI AND PLOILE

OLD TIME MAORI CHIEF  
NEW GUINEA MAN WITH FISH TRAP

FITTING A KAUKI PINI  
SHIP DIPPING

(Class picture No. 87 in the portfolio)

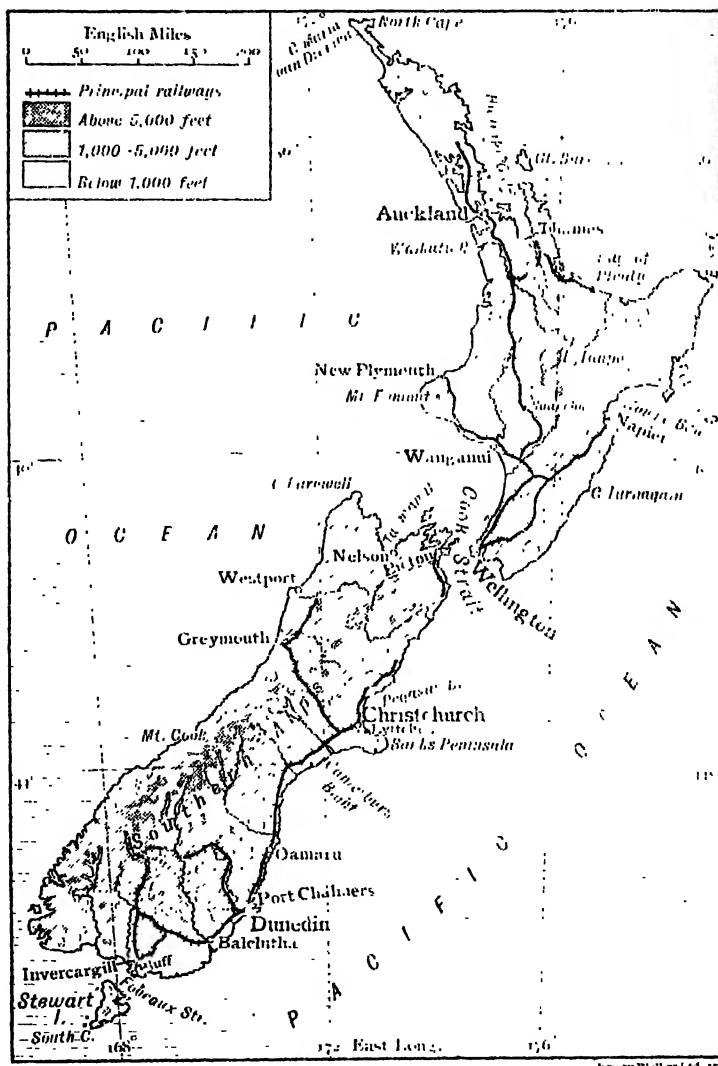
than on the east. Owing to the heavy rainfall the west of South Island is heavily forested, mainly by pines. The timber of the white pine is largely used for making butter boxes. Gigantic tree ferns grow in Westland and other parts of New Zealand. In the Canterbury Plains and other parts European grasses have been largely sown for cattle and sheep, for the native variety of grass is wiry and grows in tussocks. In North Island the kauri pine is prized for house and ship building. Kauri gum from ancient forests is dug up and exported. In the marshy districts of North Island grows phormium, or New Zealand flax, which is used like hemp in the manufacture of rope.

The eucalyptus tree, and the kangaroo and other marsupials of Australia are not found in New Zealand. One of the most curious native birds is the kiwi which cannot fly. As in Australia, the horse, sheep, cow, dog, pig, etc., have been introduced by white men.

**Industries.**—Sheep rearing, dairying, wheat and fruit growing, and mining are the chief industries. Sheep are mostly reared in the eastern districts of Canterbury and Otago in South Island; and in Wellington and Hawke's Bay in North Island. Four-fifths of the cattle are reared in the coastal districts of North Island, and in the south-west round Mount Egmont. Hamilton is the

headquarters of the New Zealand Co-operative Dairy Company, one of the largest organisations of its kind in the world. Wheat and oats are grown chiefly in Canterbury and Otago, but wheat has to be imported; temperate fruits grow well—apples, plums, peaches, grapes, etc. The chief coalfields are near Greymouth and Westport; gold is found in both islands.

The principal exports of New Zealand are



GENERAL MAP OF NEW ZEALAND

wool, frozen meat, butter, cheese, tallow, skins and hides, gold, kauri gum, phormium, timber. The chief imports are apparel, metal goods and machinery, sugar, tea, tobacco, paper, motor cars and oil.

**Cities.**—Auckland is the chief port and largest city of the Dominion. Wellington City is the capital and is a port of call. Christchurch City, the largest in South Island, is 8 miles from its port of Lyttelton. Dunedin City is the outlet for the Otago produce, and is the chief city of the south. All the chief cities are joined by rail in their respective islands. Notice the railways from the coalfields of Westport and Greymouth across the Southern Alps to Christchurch; and the line from Wellington to Auckland.

**Fiji.**—The Fiji Islands comprise a group of about two hundred and fifty islands, of which about eighty are inhabited. The largest is Viti Levu, with an area about equal to that of the combined areas of Cornwall and Devonshire; next is Vanua Levu, about half the area of the former. There are many European missionaries at work among the Fijians; there are numbers of schools, including two government grammar schools at Suva. The total population of the islands is about 255,000, of whom there are about 5,000 Europeans, 116,000 Fijians, and 117,000 Indians. The islands are of volcanic origin, but there are no signs of recent activity. The larger islands are mountainous and densely wooded; the soil is fertile, the climate healthy, and the rainfall plentiful. Many plantations are cultivated by European and Indian settlers, the principal cultures are bananas, coconuts, maize, sugar cane, tobacco, tea, rice, cotton and beans. Horses, mules, cattle, sheep, goats and pigs are reared in considerable numbers. Suva, the capital, is on the south coast of Viti Levu; it has an important entrepôt trade.

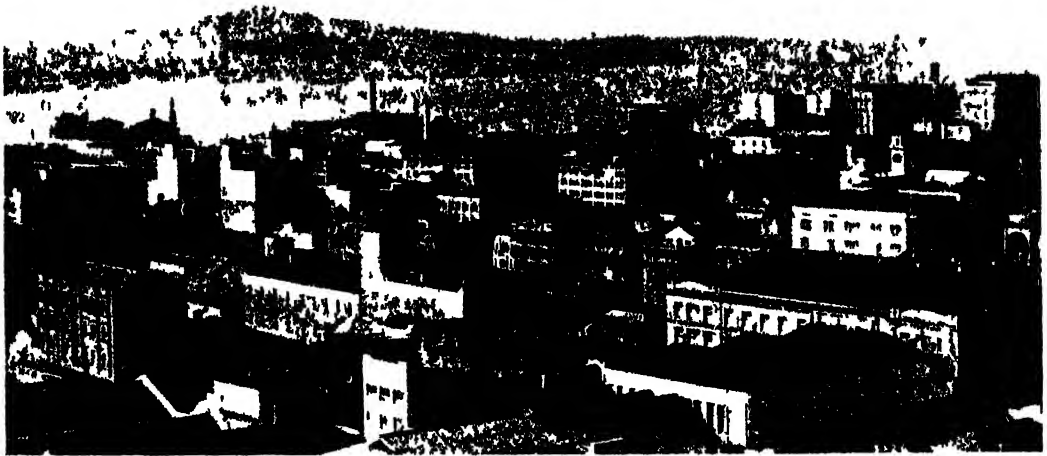
The Fijians are a tall and well-built race with features which, though strongly marked, are not unpleasant; they have deep-set eyes and the men have thick, bushy beards.

The chiefs, who are fairer-skinned, are not so Negroid in type as the people. The Fijians are skilful cultivators and show skill in irrigating their fields with built water-courses and bamboo pipes. They are also good boat builders, and show capability and taste in the making of their mats, baskets, nets, cordage and pottery, the latter, like many other articles, being made by women. The Fijian weapons are spears, slings, throwing clubs, bows and arrows. The houses are ingeniously and well built with a timber framework lattice and thatch, and are well furnished with native furniture.

**The Territory of Papua,** under the government of the Australian Commonwealth, is the south-eastern part of New Guinea, with several groups of small islands. Missionary bodies are at work among the people, who until recent times were very uncivilized. Many hundreds are now employed by planters in the cultivation of coconuts, rubber and sisal hemp. Mining is one of the most important industries, gold and copper are exported from Port Moresby. The Papuans are people of Negroid stock, and are a tall, long-headed race, with receding foreheads and prominent brow-ridges. They have brownish-black skins and frizzy hair, which is often dressed mopwise. The word *Papuan* is derived from a Malay word meaning *mop-headed*. In general the people are peaceful fishermen and farmers.

### CHILDREN'S STORY

(The following talk on New Zealand touches only on certain important or interesting topics. Little reference is made to the important pastoral occupations, as similar occupations have been dealt with in the section on Australia, but the teacher will naturally select the subjects for talks to suit the needs of the class. An account of the Sunny Islands of the Pacific was given in the "Children's Story" in Volume I., page 484. A short talk on the Papuans is added at the end of this section.)



*[Reproduced by courtesy of the Education Department]*

AT KLAND CITY, NCID ISLAND, NEW ZEALAND

We will now take an imaginary trip to New Zealand to see some of the most notable places and to watch the people at their work. Take the globe and put your finger on the British Isles. Now remove your finger, turn the globe slowly round until you find the islands of New Zealand. You will see that you have to turn the globe almost exactly halfway round to find these islands, so you will understand that when at midnight you are fast asleep in bed the New Zealand boys and girls far away are having their midday meal. Look at the globe again. The British Isles are north of the equator and the islands of New Zealand are opposite to them on the south side of the equator. This teaches us that when we are eating our Christmas dinner in midwinter, the New Zealanders are eating their Christmas dinner in midsummer. We in Britain will probably have hot roast beef, or turkey, or fowl and hot plum pudding and mince pies. But that sort of food is not very good to eat in hot weather, so the New Zealanders will prefer

to have a cold Christmas dinner with plenty of strawberries and cream, ices and ripe fruit, for when Britain has snow New Zealand has warm sunshine. As the earth goes on spinning round matters will change. When it is midsummer in Britain it will be midwinter in New Zealand, but still the winters in most parts of New Zealand will not be very cold, for it is a warmer country than Britain throughout the year.

On arriving by steamer at New Zealand we enter a grand harbour at the mouth of an arm of Hawaki Gulf. Near by are great concrete wharves with many large cranes, steamers, sailing yachts and boats of many kinds lie in the harbour. We land and walk up Queen Street and look round at the fine public buildings and the splendid shops. We can take a peep at the university, the art gallery and the free library. When we want a rest we can go to one of the beautiful parks, and if we have time we shall certainly visit the Zoo, which is a very famous place. If we are staying at Auckland for a few days

we shall go by steam ferry to the suburbs and see the fine houses surrounded by splendid gardens and orchards. We shall be sure to see some of the giant trees called kauri pine. They are among the finest in the world. Now where Auckland now stands the country was at one time forest land covered with these grand trees, but now most of them have been cut down. They are straight trees having round trunks like great pillars and round bushy heads. The leaves which are thick and leathery remain

so you will understand why men dig it up from the sites of ancient forests.

There is a good deal of rain in parts of New Zealand and there are, consequently, many forest-clad hills where grow, not only the kauri pine but other trees also. The New Zealanders call their forests the "bush." The bush is very dense for the trees are surrounded by a thick undergrowth of tough creepers and giant evergreen climbers twist and twirl about the trunks and branches. Among the most beautiful plants in the



1. AN OLD KAU

on the trees for several years, but the thick resinous bark falls off in large flakes. From the fork of the branch the kauri pine gives out a thick juice called resin which hardens like gum. Under the ground where the great trees once stood there are left solid lumps of this resin varying in size from a hen's egg to a man's head. This resin is very valuable. It is dug out of the ground and sent abroad in ships to make fine varnish which as you know is used by painters on the woodwork and ironwork of houses and other buildings. A ton of this wonderful kauri gum is worth about £200,

world are the New Zealand tree ferns. One of the finest tree ferns is called the Prince of Wales's Feathers. It looks like ostrich feathers curled and dyed green. Some of its fronds are four feet long. The bush is always green and in summer is gorgeous with flowers.

Imagine an English fuchsia as large as an ordinary tree in full bloom and you will have some idea of what can be seen in the New Zealand bush.

There are no dangerous wild animals in the bush but there are hundreds of deer and wild pigs. Captain Cook first brought

pigs to the land. The deer do much damage by eating young tender trees. The pigs too can be very troublesome. Opossums that live in trees are hunted for their valuable fur but the forest birds are protected for many of them eat insects, and others suck nectar from forest flowers and so carry pollen from tree to tree thus, like bees and butterfly flies, helping the trees to grow seeds.

An eight hours' journey by train from Auckland will take us to Rotorua one of the most wonderful places in the world. This town lies in the midst of a remarkable volcanic district generally known as the Hot Springs district. Here may be seen spouting geysers throwing aloft jets of steaming water, steam holes so hot that food can be cooked in them, and bubbling mud springs which are called porridge pots. A wonderful sight is the Champagne Cauldron. When we first see the cauldron it is a lovely calm blue pool. We stand and watch and if we are fortunate suddenly we see the water begin to foam, it seems to be covered with cream and then with a great heave it boils over and the frothy water pours over its yellow rock basin. Hundreds

of visitors go to Rotorua every year, but as there are 660 square miles of this wonderful Hot Springs district there will be plenty of room for us. We shall certainly visit the quaint Maori village of Ohinemutu and look at the houses made of wood and reed with their strangely curved woodwork. We shall see some of the people dressed in their flax clothes, see children bathing in warm pools, women washing clothes without having to boil their water, and some of them cooking their meals as you see them in the picture. We could spend many hours in this wonderful part of the country but we must take the train again and go to Wellington the capital city of New Zealand.

Here on the shore of Port Nicholson is a grand harbour washed in by steep hills. On the flat shore round the factories, shops and principal buildings. Situated over the water and the land are the dwelling houses. Here are some fine public buildings to be seen such as the Houses of Parliament, the Public Hall and the New Zealand Museum, the Law Courts and the Victoria University College. Here are



*The Harbour of Wellington, New Zealand*

APRILS FOR EXPORT AT WELLINGTON



*Keystone Illustrations 1011*

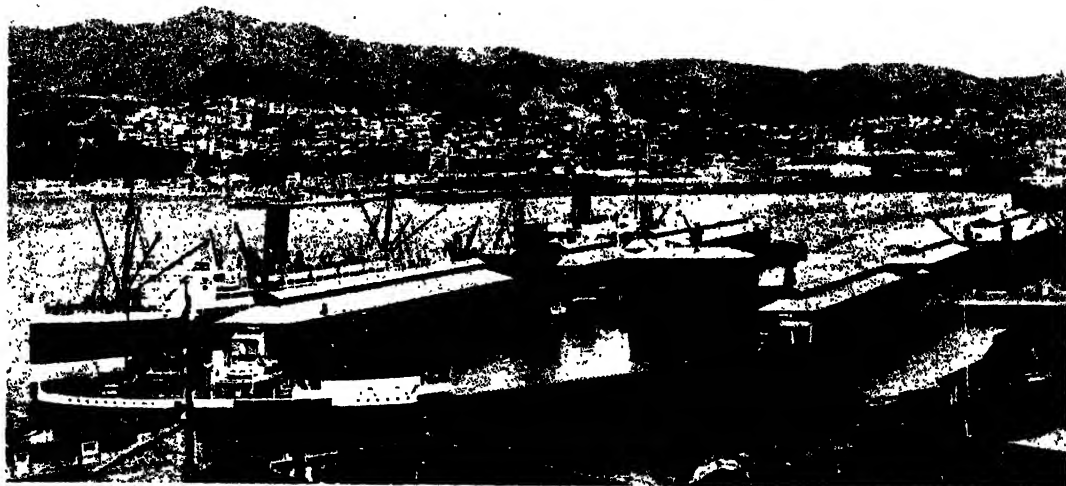
## MOUNT NGAURUHOE (LONGARIRO NATIONAL PARK) IN FICTION

delightful public parks and recreation grounds for Rugby football, tennis, cricket and other games. Electric trams and motorbuses run everywhere. Electricity is cheap in Wellington for it is produced eighty miles away by the power of rushing water. At Wellington in 1840 the first colonists made their homes. How long ago was that? Is it not wonderful that a fine city like this should have grown up in such a short time? In Auckland there are nearly as many people as live in Portsmouth in England and Wellington is a little larger than Dundee in Scotland.

How do the New Zealanders earn their living? You already know the answer to this question if you will remember about the New Zealand mutton, lamb, beef, butter, cheese and honey. Green pasture lands are the chief riches of the country. There

is no need to say anything about the sheep and cattle, for sheep and cattle rearing are carried on much the same as in Australia. Wheat is grown for food, dairy cattle for milk are reared in enormous numbers, sheep are kept for their wool and their meat, and fruit grows splendidly in the delightful climate. New Zealand is often called the "Britain of the South." There are several reasons for this: the settlers came mostly from Britain, the grasslands, wheatfields and orchards are similar to those seen in Britain except that the flocks and herds are more numerous, and the climate is like that of the warmest parts of Britain.

The New Zealanders are skilful and busy workers. The cows are milked by machinery; the wonderful butter and cheese are made in large factories under watchful eyes; the fruit is most carefully cultivated, picked and



*[Reproduced by courtesy of the High Commissioner for New Zealand.]*

#### WELLINGTON HARBOUR

packed for sending abroad; the mutton is frozen and sent away in large vessels to add to the food supplies of people in Britain, who do not keep nearly enough sheep to supply them with all the mutton that is needed. In the British Isles, you will remember, there are forty-seven million people to feed every day, so we are glad to have the many good things that the New Zealanders are able to send us.

Now we must go over to South Island. At Wellington we will take a steamer, cross Cook Strait and sail by the coast for about ten hours until we arrive at Lyttelton. This may be called the "Mutton Port" of New Zealand, for on the Canterbury Plains inland from Lyttelton are reared thousands of sheep. We take train to Christchurch, eight miles from the port. This city is the capital of the province of Canterbury, and like the Canterbury of England it has a fine cathedral, the best in New Zealand, and it is the seat of a bishop. We shall be sure to notice the wide straight streets, the brick and stone houses, the avenues of trees, the

parks and the gardens. We can go by tram to New Brighton, which, as you might expect, is a seaside suburb called after the large seaside town of Brighton in England. It will be worth visiting the museum to see the remains of a most curious bird called the moa. There are no moas living now, but when the Maoris came to live in New Zealand these strange birds were to be seen. Some of them were huge creatures, more than twice the height of a man; they had very strong legs which ended in four toes (most birds you know have but three toes); the bill was short and stout, and, most curious of all, they had no wings. Numerous bones of these birds have been found in caves and swamps, and clever men have built up the remains of one which can now be seen in the museum at Christchurch. As in other cities of New Zealand, there are fine public buildings to be seen, and what would please you best perhaps would be the wide open spaces where children play their games. New Zealand children can hardly help being happy seeing that there



*Landscape at Hells Creek, Tairāwhiti, New Zealand*

SHEEP ON THE PASTURE STATION IN THE TAI RĀWHITI OF NEW ZEALAND

are plenty of open spaces for games and so much sunshine.

We cannot visit all the fine cities of the country but we must take a railway journey from Christchurch across the Canterbury Plains if only to go through a wonderful tunnel. It is the Otira tunnel over five mile long (the longest in the British Empire) which has been cut through the mountains called the Southern Alps to take the railway from Christchurch to Greymouth and Westport. It was a great work to tunnel through these mountains and men were busy at it for fifteen years, but it was worth doing for Greymouth and Westport are the chief ports on the west side of South Island, and in the neighbouring district are found gold and coal.

We return to Christchurch and go by train again southwards along a narrow coastal plain till we reach the important city of Dunedin. It lies about fifteen miles from the open sea at the head of a narrow outlet called Otago Harbour. Steep forest clad hills rise close to the city and much land on which the buildings now stand had to be reclaimed from the sea. The trees of the forest near by may not be cut down for they are preserved in the public ground named the Town Belt and they give the city a grand appearance. As in most new cities the streets are wide and straight. As you already know, the New Zealanders take great care that all their people are well educated, hence there is a university at Dunedin. The ships in the harbour carry

away gold, wool, butter, cheese and frozen meat, and return with coal and clothes and other manufactured goods.

If you look at the map of New Zealand you may notice that there are many parts without railways. In some of these parts the land is mountainous and practically nobody lives there. The horse is used a good deal for travelling in New Zealand, and of course the motor car is to be seen almost everywhere. On the scattered sheep stations one need not be lonely, for a telephone will certainly be there and one can ring up a neighbour and have a chat at any time of the day.

**The Papuans.**—To the north of Australia lies New Guinea, the second largest island in the world. The west half belongs to the Dutch, and the eastern half is a part of the British Empire. The climate in New Guinea is very hot and damp, for the island lies close to the equator. Few Englishmen live in British New Guinea or the Territory of Papua as it is officially called, and the native people are called Papuans. They are a tall brownish-black people with frizzy hair which is often dressed upwise. The name Papuan is derived from a Malay word meaning *mop-headed*. In the warm moist climate of New Guinea cotton, rice, crops, grasses, fruits and trees grow in abundance, hence the Papuans have little work to do to obtain plentiful supplies of food. They are fond of yams, sweet potatoes, sago, maize and rice, in the forest they hunt with dogs for wild pig, wallabies and other small animals. (The wallaby is a small kangaroo.) Fish are plentiful, and these the Papuans spear at night by torchlight, or catch with lime or nets. In the swamp districts of the coast some people make huge fish traps which look like baskets. These traps, which are made of split bamboo, have an opening at each end through which the fish enter, but the traps are so made that the fish cannot swim out again. (See Class Picture, No. 87.) On the seashore are turtles and huge shellfish. Some of the

great mussels which live in these warm seas weigh (without the shells) as much as thirty pounds. The women cook the food in various ways, sometimes in cooking pots which are made at different parts of the coast, and sometimes by putting the fish or meat on the hot ember of a fire or in holes over heated stones.

A Papuan man is a fine looking fellow for he wears necklaces, armlets and earrings of shells, and feathers from the cockatoo, cassowary, or bird of paradise. Through the lower part of his nose he pushes a pencil of bone, or a pretty feather or flower and he may sometime be seen wearing a circle of dogs' teeth round his head. The Papuan comb is a long piece of bamboo split at one end into prongs like a fork. The prongs are stuck into the frizzed mop while the other end projects sometimes two feet or more and into it are stuck the bright feathers of birds. The Papuans are fond of smoking for tobacco grows wild in the country. The Papuans are clever in building canoes and other boats. Many of these are huge if made by hollowing out a large log. One side of some of the dugouts the canoe builders fix a stout piece of wood which rests on the water and so prevents the dugout from turning over. Such a dugout is called an outrigger. Some of the boats are built of planks tightly laced together with fibres of plants. Large vessels are made by fastening together several dugouts each about fifty feet long. These have two masts, a huge mat sail and a deck on which are built several high crates or boxes. The men sail these curious craft with the rates full of sago and exchange it at other parts of the coast for cooking pots and other pottery.

The Papuans are fond of dancing, but they do not often sing. They prefer to dance to the sound of the drum, which is made with one end open and is tapped by the fingers.

Some of the coastal houses are built on piles driven into the water while far inland there are huge houses, five hundred feet long. These have rounded roofs, thatched



HOMES OF COASTAL PEOPLE LAE

with palm branches and leaves and rooms for many families. Down the middle of an ordinary house there is a passage and sometimes a house will have two storeys, the lower one being used for stores.

The people used to be fond of fighting but nowadays those who have bows and arrows and two pronged spears use them chiefly for fishing. They keep their villages neat and clean and nicely sanded, they plant pretty trees and shrubs and build stone seats round a square where they can sit and talk over the news.

In the Territory of Papua there are about 3,000 Europeans, and, as far as can be known, about 337,000 Papuans. Missionaries are busy teaching the people, and they have schools in which some of the children are taught to read and write.

The territory is looked after by the Australian government, and there are Papuan magistrates and village constables. The

Europeans are mostly interested in the plantations of coconut, rubber and sisal and in the gold and copper mines. The chief port is Port Moresby, where the Papuans are used to helping with the huge steamships, motor cars and aeroplanes of the white traders.

### TEACHING HINTS

**1. Map.**—For revision purposes it will be useful to draw on the blackboard a sketch map of the world showing the zones of climate. This will help the class to understand why the conditions of life in New Zealand are similar to those in Britain. It will help them, too, to understand what is meant by a "tropical climate," such as that of the northern parts of Australia and the island of New Guinea. Comparison, too, can be made with life in Canada.

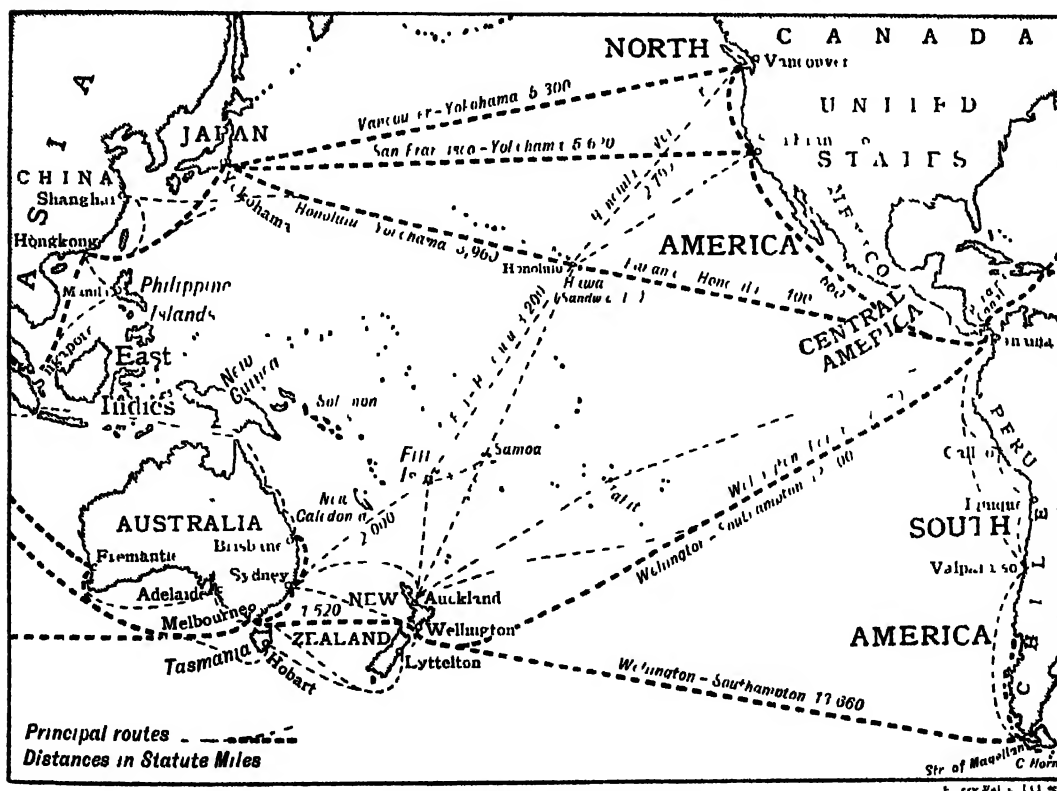
**2. Frozen meat.**—The first shipment in 1881 of New Zealand meat was less than 5,000 carcasses. In the year 1930, 9,500,000 carcasses were sent to Britain. This is a remarkable demonstration of progress in a period of fifty years.

**3. Apples.**—As a result of the application of scientific methods to the carriage of fruit over a distance of 13,000 miles from New Zealand to Britain, about one million cases of apples and one hundred thousand cases of pears are exported annually.

**4. Honey.**—The native grasses of New Zealand are of a wiry nature and English grass seed has been sown for the sheeplands. These grasses, with the white clover which grows luxuriantly, give Imperial Bee Honey the same flavour as the British variety.

**5. Wool.**—The New Zealand sheep flock is nearly twice that of England and Wales. The annual weight of wool is some 226,000,000 lb. Sheepshearing is now done almost exclusively by machinery. In the old days of hand shearing the best tally was two hundred and seventy-three. The modern machine shearer can put up a tally of three hundred and seventy in eight and a half hours.

**6. The thermal regions.**—Refer to the rise of temperature with increase of depth in the earth's crust. The temperature in deep coal mines is higher than that at the earth's surface although removed from the influence of solar heat. Water coming to the surface from deep seated regions is warm or hot according to the depth from which it issues. Geysers must be compared with volcanoes,



but they eject hot water instead of molten rock. Some openings in the crust eject hot gases (fumaroles); others throw up hot mud (mud volcanoes). Earthquake regions are also closely associated with volcanic areas. The town of Hastings was partly destroyed by an earthquake in 1931.

In the thermal area of New Zealand geysers, boiling pools and springs send clouds of steam upwards, while boiling mud pools add to the weirdness of the scene. One of the most famous geysers is called "Pohutu." The active volcano of Ngauruhoe (7,515 feet) is a great attraction to the tourist. Ruapehu (9,175 feet), near by, has a steaming lake in its crater, while Tongariro, a third member of the group, although extinct, has active steam vents on its lower slopes.

**7. Climate.**—The latitude, size and distance of the country from any large land mass must be dealt with in the study of the climate.

The country is situated in a latitude which corresponds to the north of Africa and the south of France. The sea influence is seen in the small range of temperature experienced everywhere and the total absence of drought.

Emphasise the influences of the *westerlies*. In the southern hemisphere the west winds blow over a region where there is very little land. They are therefore very strong winds and contain an abundance of vapour. The high Southern Alps receive the full force of these winds.

The Dominion is a land of abundant sunshine; the annual average is equal to that of Italy—exceeding 2,000 hours. The great distance from any large land mass keeps the country from the disturbing influence of a continental area. There is not that liability to abrupt changes and unpleasant conditions that a large mass of land tends to produce.

North Island is in a latitude where a Mediterranean climate of winter rain should be experienced. There is a winter rain maximum, but on account of the sea influences, there is not a definite winter rain type of climate.

The Dominion is in the southern hemisphere, and the seasons are, of course, opposite to those of the northern hemisphere. The New Zealand year divides approximately thus *Spring*—September to November; *Summer*—December to February; *Autumn*—March to May; *Winter*—June to August.

**8. The Antipodes.**—New Zealand is almost the antipodes of Britain. (The word *antipodes* is derived from a Greek word meaning *with the feet opposite*.) Children are always interested if they are asked to place two tiny pieces of plasticine or clay on a globe to represent two flies, one resting on Britain and the other on New Zealand. They will then readily understand the meaning of the word *antipodes*. The Antipodes Islands are a group of uninhabited rocky islets in the South Pacific, about 480 miles south-east of New Zealand.



Kiwi

**HANDWORK  
FOR THE GEOGRAPHY LESSONS**



## CANADA. I.

The lessons in this year's course are concerned with the peoples and the industries of the Dominion of Canada and of Australasia. The handwork lessons devoted to these parts of the Empire are equally divided between them; five deal with Canada and five with Australasia.

The first lesson, which tells the story of the growth of Canada, furnishes a picture of Red Indian life. A simple and appropriate model is that of a Red Indian peace pipe, or calumet, which may be constructed in the following manner. A strip of white cartridge paper is rolled tightly round a knitting pin, as shown in Fig. 1 A. When sufficient paper has been rolled on to the pin to make a firm roll, the end is securely gummed down and held in place till the gum dries. When the gum is thoroughly dry, the pin is removed and the strong paper roll forms the stem of the pipe. The pin is again inserted into the stem and a second strip of paper narrower than the first is rolled round one end of the stem to form a band of additional thickness, Fig. 1 B. This second roll is gummed in place, giving the completed pipe stem, Fig. 1 C.

The next task is to make the bowl of the pipe, which is shown in Fig. 1 D. It is modelled in clay, so that the children may colour it when it is dry. They should first take a small lump of clay and roll it between the palms of their hands to form a ball. From the ball they must produce a stunted, carrotlike shape, rounded at one end and pointed at the other. The pointed end must then be flattened by gently pressing it on to the modelling board. The sharp end of a modelling tool is pushed in the centre of the flattened end; the tool is held obliquely and carefully rotated to scoop out the bowl of the pipe. A simple pattern is marked round the outside of the bowl, and the completed stem is inserted at the

base. The model is put aside till it is thoroughly dry. It should then be painted in black, white and red, which are favourite Indian tints. A number of tiny paper feathers, coloured brightly in green, blue, red and yellow, are cut out and threaded on to a length of cotton. To complete the model the thread is tied to the stem, Fig. 1 E.

The next model is that of a Red Indian wigwam. A framework for the model is shown in Fig. 2 A. Four lengths of twig or cane are stuck upright into an irregular slab of clay, and are tied together at the top to form a pyramidal shape. The walls of the wigwam may be made of thin paper, but it is better to use a piece of calico or other material which has been dipped in weak coffee to colour it pale brown. When it is dry, a pattern in black and vermilion may be painted upon it. The walls are cut out as shown in Fig. 2 B. Two concentric circles are drawn; the middle is cut away and also part of the outer ring, leaving a flap for joining. It is a good plan to allow the children to cut a paper pattern of the walls, so that they can experiment on the required size and shape before attempting to cut the material. The walls are joined round at the top by means of two paper fasteners. A doorway is cut at the base, and the complete shape is slipped over the poles.

The third model is that of a snowshoe, which is cut from folded paper as shown in Fig. 3 A. The parts X and Y are cut away; the paper is opened out and the spaces are laced crosswise with thread. Folded paper is also used to make the head of a tomahawk, Figs. 4 A and 4 B. The portion marked X must be equal in width to the diameter of the stick which is used for the handle. The head is gummed to the handle and decorated by tying on coloured feathers.

Fig. 5 shows a Red Indian cut-out which gives scope for bright colour work.

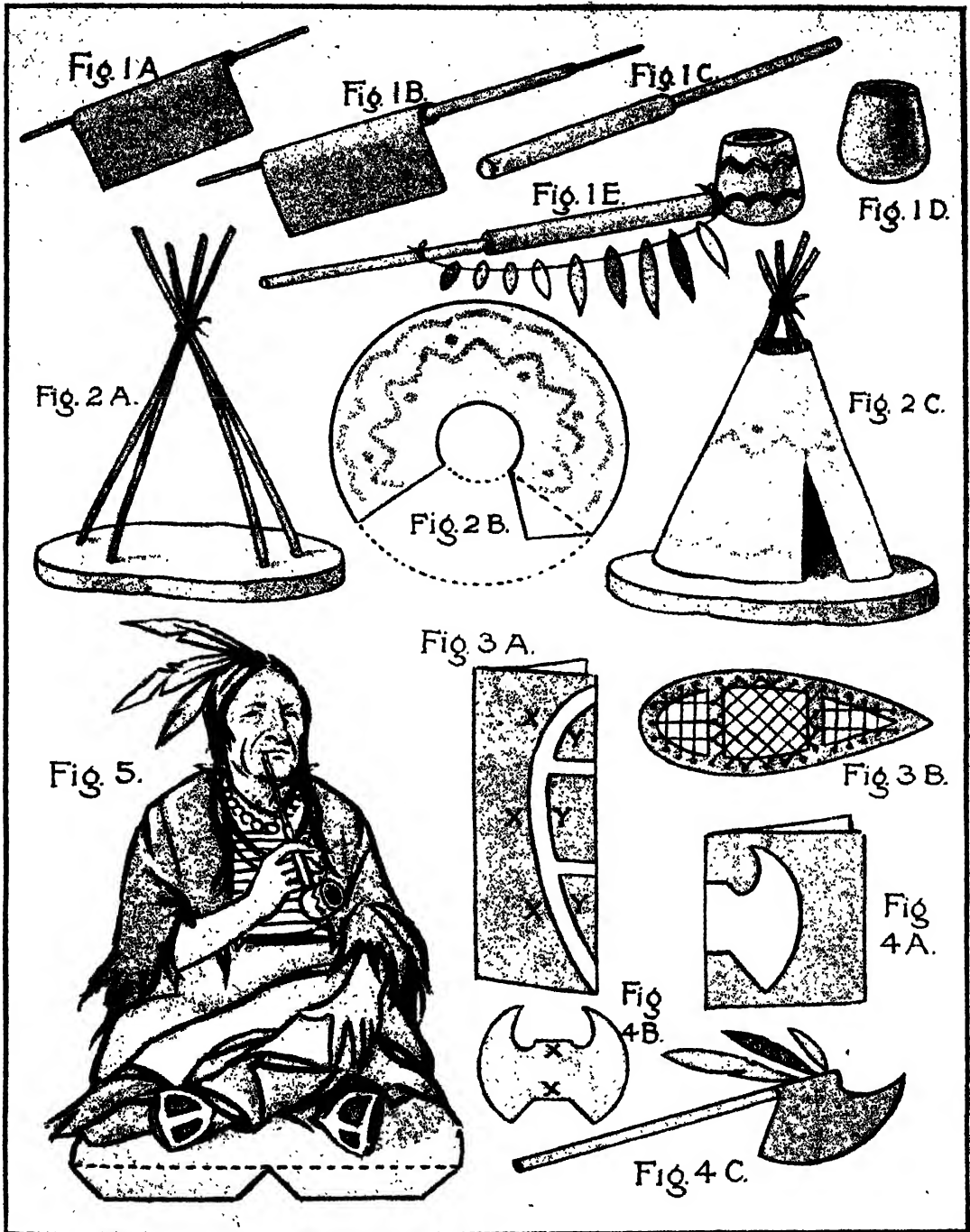


PLATE I.

- FIG. 1. INDIAN PEACE PIPE IN PAPER  
 FIG. 2. RED INDIAN WIGWAM IN PAPER OR CALICO  
 FIG. 3. SNOWSHOE IN CARD  
 FIG. 4. TOMAHAWK IN PAPER  
 FIG. 5. RED INDIAN CUT-OUT

## CANADA. II.

The chief subject of this lesson is the Canadian Pacific Railway, and the model chosen is a C.P.R. engine. A mantle box, a cardboard box lid, some thin cardboard and some clay or plasticine are required. The children begin the model by cutting the basal sheet of card (Fig. 1 A), which must be large enough to hold the mantle box lying upon it in the position shown, and also to give room for the cab behind it. Four fittings for the wheels, their length being the width of the base of the engine, must then be cut out from thin card. The mantle box is stuck firmly with seccotine or a similar adhesive, to the base of the engine, and the axle fittings for the wheel are stuck on to the underside at equal distances apart.

The children must then draw on the base of the engine a rectangle which is to equal the size of the cab, as shown by the dotted lines in the diagram. Having decided on the size of the cab, it must be planned out on flat cardboard as shown in Fig. 1 B. As it is a symmetrical shape, a paper pattern may be used for one side, and then reversed to draw out the other. Note the flaps which must be left for construction and for fixing the cab to the base of the engine. The cab is bent into position along the dotted lines shown in the diagram, then it is made up, and gummed to the rear of the engine against the end of the mantle box. A funnel and a steam chamber (Figs. 1 C and 1 D) are modelled in appropriate sizes in plasticine, and fixed to the mantle box in their correct positions.

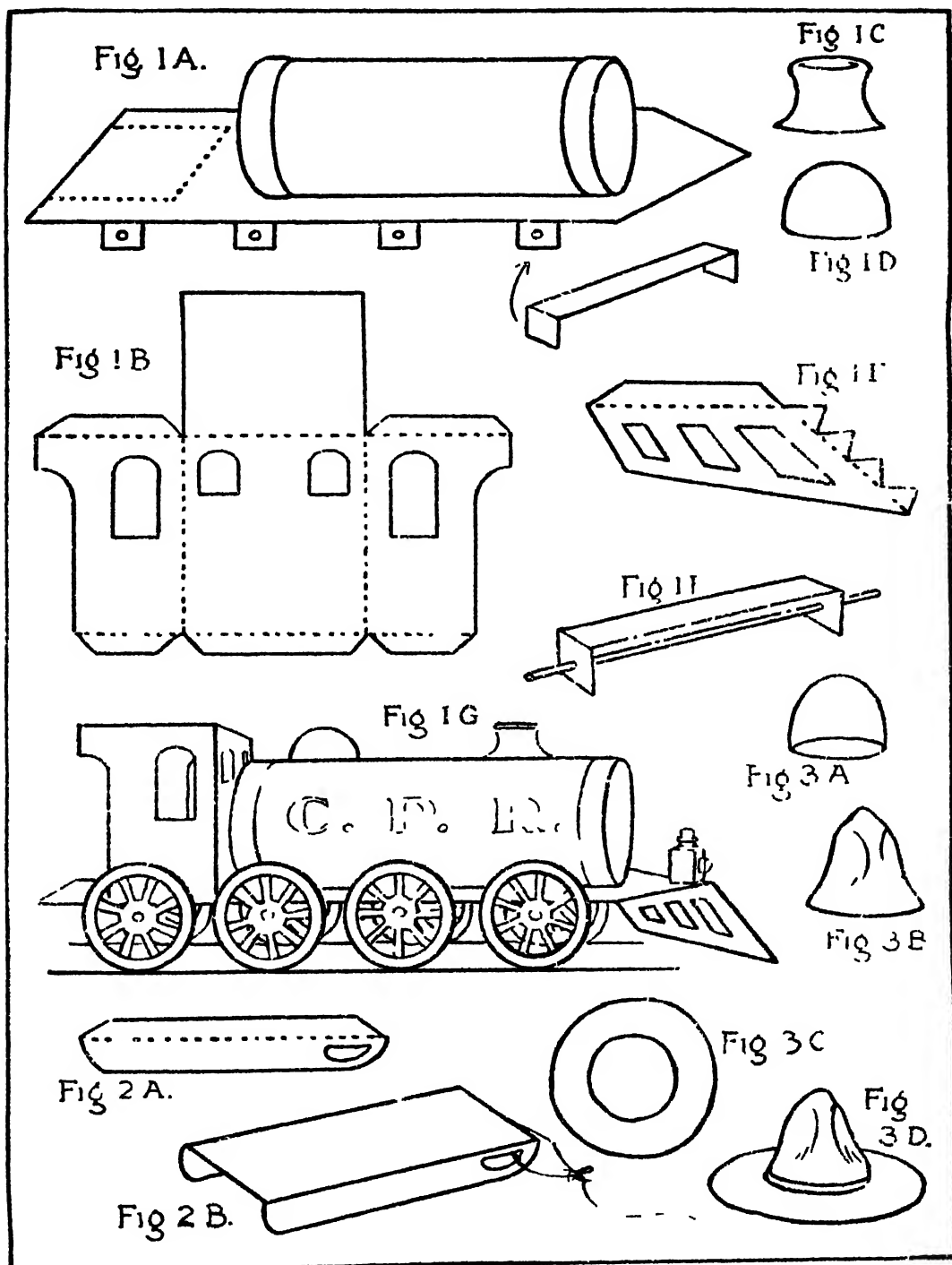
The cowcatcher, common to American engines, is fitted to the pointed front of the

basal card. It is made in two portions, one being the reverse of the other. The shape of the cowcatcher is shown in Fig. 1 E. The length of the top edge must be the same as that of one of the edges of the pointed front of the engine, along which it is to fit. The top of each piece of the cowcatcher will require a straight flap for joining it to the base of the engine, but only one will need the small triangular flaps which are used for joining the two front edges of the cowcatcher.

The model is now finished except for the fitting of the wheels. Kindergarten sticks are thrust through the axle fittings (Fig. 1 F), and stout cardboard wheels are added to the axles. Two tiny clay lamps and a whistle are required to complete the model, which is then painted a bluish-grey and marked with the letters C.P.R.

The winter sports of Canada suggest the model of a toboggan. This is easy to make and may be given to the backward children of the class. A rectangle of stout card is required, and to this two runners are added, Fig. 2 B. Each runner (Fig. 2 A) is provided with a long fixing flap; rounded openings are made near the front of the flaps through which a piece of string may be tied.

The last model is that of a cowboy's hat in plasticine. From a rounded cuplike shape (Fig. 3 A) a slightly pointed crown (Fig. 3 B) is produced. The wide brim is formed by flattening a ball and removing the middle to make the rest of it fit the crown, Fig. 3 C. The two are fixed together (Fig. 3 D), and a narrow band of plasticine hides the join.



# PLATE II.

- FIG 1. CARDBOARD MODEL OF A CANADIAN PACIFIC RAILWAY ENGINE  
 FIG 2. TOBOGGAN IN CARD  
 FIG 3. PLASTIC MODEL OF COWBOY'S HAT

## CANADA. III.

The children will find an interesting aid to study in making a collection of models of houses from different parts of the British Empire. Simple models of a Bantu kraal, a South Seas tree house and an Arab tent have already been made, and these would form a nucleus for such a collection. (See Volume I.) The consideration of Canada provides valuable material for the comparative study of housing. The primitive dwelling of the Red Indian has been dealt with in a previous lesson, and we now proceed to the construction of the log cabin and the rancher's house.

The first model is that of a Canadian lumberman's log cabin. An ample quantity of clay will be required, and it will be found advantageous for the children to work in pairs. A flat layer of clay is spread on the modelling board and nine kindergarten sticks are stuck vertically into it, as shown in Fig. 1 A. The plan of the walls of the cabin should be first marked on the surface of the damp clay. The length of the sticks should be greater than the final height of the walls, so that the sticks will project when the walls are completed.

The children must then prepare rolls of clay to represent logs. These are slipped over the sticks and cut to the required lengths in the manner illustrated. As seen in Fig. 1 B, the entrance to the cabin is formed by using shorter lengths to begin with on the front; the pointed ends of the gable are produced by decreasing the lengths of the upper rolls in building.

When all the rolls are in position, the projecting ends of the kindergarten sticks are cut off, and long rolls are added to form the roof. To complete the model, a chimney pot is placed in position, and a cardboard door is fixed in the entrance, Fig. 1 C. When thoroughly dry, the cabin should be given a coat of dark brown water colour, and brown and green pastel dust should be sprinkled on the base.

The next model is that of a rancher's house, which resembles those shown in the illustration of *A Ranch Scene in Alberta*, Vol. I, page 411. It will be noticed that the shape of the end of the gable is peculiar in having a double angle. Fig. 2 A shows how the children may make a paper pattern of this gable by cutting off the point of the usual shape of a gable. This pattern is used to develop the whole shape, which is shown in Fig. 2 B. The house is bent up as indicated by the dotted lines, and the end flap is stuck to the opposite side. The roof is an oblong sheet of thin card bent at the middle, and again on each side of the middle crease. It must be large enough to project about  $\frac{1}{2}$  in. at the ends and the sides, Fig. 2 C. The house is now stuck down to a cardboard base, and a verandah is fixed. The formation of this is shown in Figs. 2 D and 2 E, the fixing flap being bent down to stick to the side of the house. Short lengths of stick or paper will form the poles of the verandah. Two clay chimney pots are fixed to the roof and the model is painted in yellows and browns.

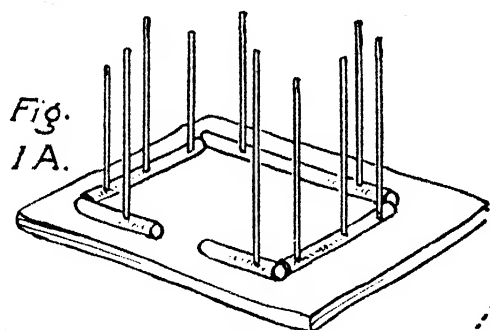


Fig.  
1A.

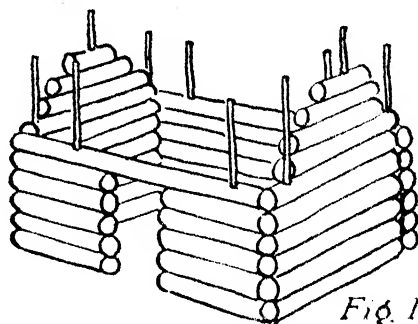


Fig. 1B.

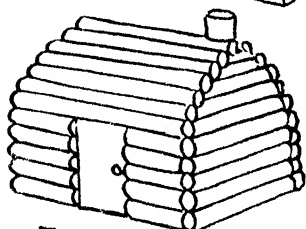


Fig. 1C.

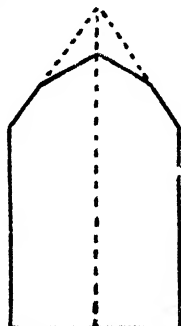


Fig. 2A

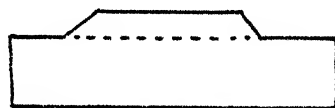


Fig. 2D.

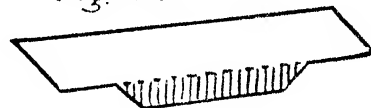


Fig. 2E

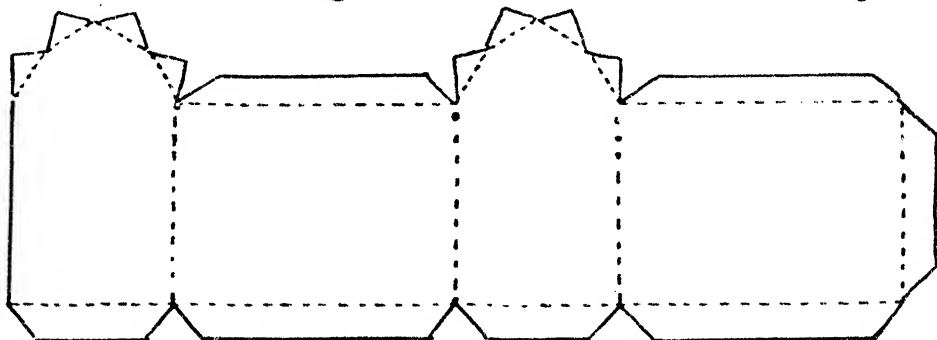


Fig. 2B.

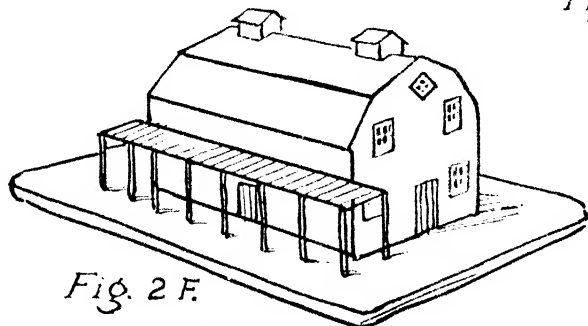


Fig. 2F.

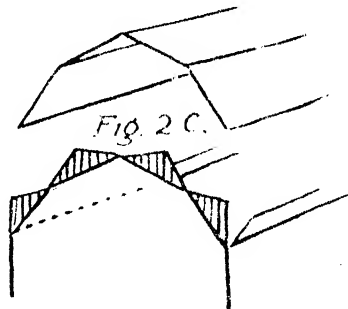


Fig. 2C.

PLATE III.

FIG. 1. CLAY MODEL OF LUMBERMAN'S SHANTY  
FIG. 2. CARDBOARD MODEL OF RANCHER'S HOUSE

## CANADA. IV.

In this lesson an attempt is made to produce an Arctic project to illustrate the seal industry of northern Canada. A simple camping project is also shown. In the course of working with juniors, it will be found that by placing in a natural setting the models made by the children additional interest and zest are given to the work. The setting also provides an attractive finish to the models. The children who produce the best models may be allowed to make the setting for them. In the lesson on the seal, the teacher might with the help of the children prepare on the sand table a large background and foreground, and group a number of the best-modelled seals upon it.

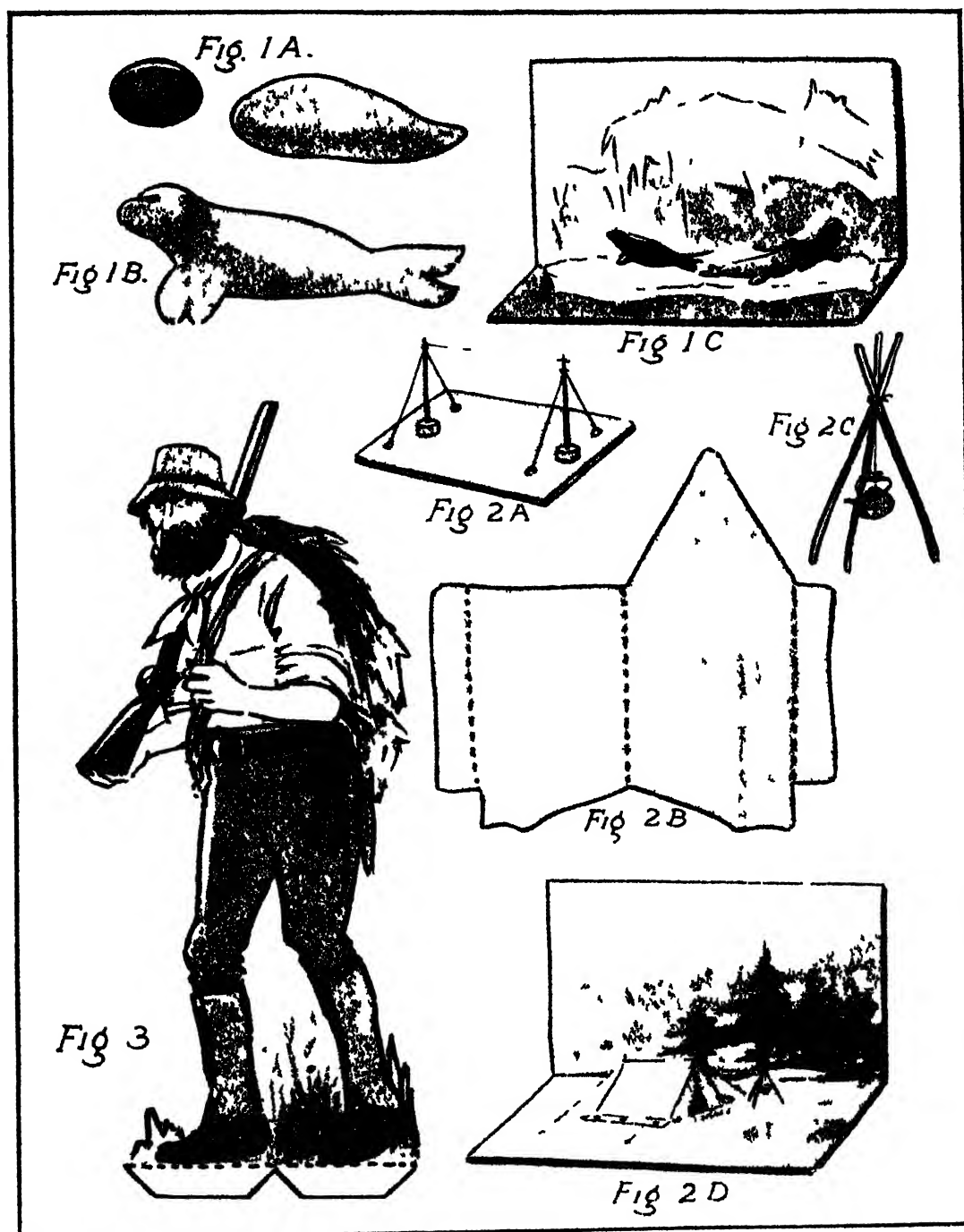
Fig. 1 A shows the two essential shapes used in making a plastic model of a seal. The first is a spindle or carrot shape, made by rolling a ball of clay between the hands; the second is a sphere. Clay should be used for this model so that it may be painted when it is dry. To shape the head, hold the ball in the left hand, and with the right hand press and pinch it into shape as shown. Place the head aside while the body is modelled. Add a flattened finlike tail and two arm fins to the body, smoothing them out at the joins. The head is attached last, care being taken that the forms are not injured in the process, Fig. 1 B. The body is bent a little, as shown, and the children will delight in adding one or two tiny whiskers cut from an old brush. When the clay is dry, the seal should be painted greenish-brown with a black nose.

For the foreground and background of the scene (Fig. 1 C), two large sheets of cardboard will be required. A pastel illustration of ice-clad hills is added to the

background in white, pale blue and green. The foreground is covered with dark blue and green pastel to represent the sea. Next, an irregular sheet of thick card is cut to form the land. This is placed on the base, and upon it are fixed one or two masses of damped and crumpled brown paper to represent rocks. The land portion is given a liberal dressing either of salt and flour, or of white pastel dust, to represent snow. The seal, or seals, may now be placed in position to complete the model.

The next model is that of a Canadian camp. The first task is to construct the framework of the tent. Two slices of thick bottle cork are stuck on a sheet of thin cardboard. Kindergarten sticks are placed vertically into these pieces of cork, and four ordinary brass paper fasteners are fixed to the edges of the card as shown in Fig. 2 A. Notches are made in the tops of the sticks, and tent ropes are added in thread, which is twisted round the sticks and the heads of the paper fasteners. A paper pattern is first made of the covering of the tent (Fig. 2 B), in order to obtain the correct size for the framework. From the pattern the tent covering is cut out in material. This is placed over the framework, the end is sewn up and the flat flaps of the board are fixed down with paper fasteners. A tripod of twigs with a clay kettle is then prepared (Fig. 2 C), and is placed with the tent in a setting suggestive of a scene in the Rocky Mountains, Fig. 2 D. Four more ropes are attached to the sticks on the outside of the tent; these extend to four paper fasteners placed some distance away from the sides of the tent.

Fig. 3 shows a Trapper cut-out which should be tinted in greys and browns.



# PLATE IV

- FIG 1 CLAY MODELS OF SEALS GROUTED TO FORM A SCENE
- FIG 2 CAMING SCENE - TENT IN MAMMOTH OR PAPER
- FIG 3 CANADIAN TRAPPER CUT-OUT



## CANADA. V.

The maple leaf and the beaver are the national emblems of Canada. The first model shown is that of a beaver in clay. Fig. 1 A shows the basic shape which forms the body of the creature. Starting from a sphere, an elliptical shape is rolled out; this is pinched a little at one end and widened at the other to make the characteristic hump in the back of the beaver. Fig. 1 B shows the smaller portions of the body, which should be in strict proportion. The head is modelled from a smaller oval mass, the mouth and eyes being marked with the point of the modelling tool; two tiny ears are added. The legs consist of small ham-shaped masses with straight portions attached, the hindlegs being fixed as shown higher up on the body than the forelegs. The tail is a club-shaped mass marked with the peculiar scalelike markings of the beaver. The complete model is shown in Fig. 1 C.

The next exercise is paper-cutting to produce a maple leaf in autumnal tints. It will enhance the interest of this exercise if each child is allowed to prepare his own tinted paper. The child should damp a piece of white cartridge paper and paint it while still wet in brown, red and yellow, allowing the colours to merge naturally. When dry, the sheet should be folded down the middle, and the leaves cut as shown in Fig. 2 A. The leaves are opened out (Fig. 2 B), and veins are added with a pencil or brush.

The next step is to use these leaves for some useful purpose in the classroom. A simple bookbinding exercise is suggested. This is in the form of a Canadian scrapbook, which will open out, screen fashion, and

show the children's collection of labels and pictures. The teacher should prepare narrow strips of brown or tinted paper from imperial sheets, making each strip the full length of the sheet. Each child must fold his strip into about eight pages, as shown in Fig. 2 C. The maple leaf cut-out is pasted to the front of the first page, with the inscription and name of the child printed in white ink.

Fig. 3 shows a Canadian scene which is built up from freely-cut shapes. A rectangle of dark blue paper, representing a night sky, is pasted to a mounting sheet. Bright yellow stars and a moon are added to the upper part. The mountains and fir trees are cut from dark grey or black paper and stuck on to the sky portion. This completes a scene which is suitable for use on a Christmas calendar.

No handwork lessons on Canada would be complete without the model of a canoe. The planning of this model is shown in Fig. 4 A. A narrow diamond shape is first drawn, care being taken that it is not too wide in the middle. The patterns of the bow and stern are then cut in scrap paper, taking the measurement Z Y for the base of each. These patterns are applied in turn to the two appropriate sides of the diamond shape, and are pencilled round as shown in Fig. 4 A. The lines X Y are cut, and the shapes are folded up to form the sides of the canoe. Dabs of gum are used on the inner sides at A to join the ends, and at X and Y to fix the middle of each side. The completed model (Fig. 4 C) is painted cream and dark brown, and provided with a seat in the stern, and a tiny matchwood and paper paddle.

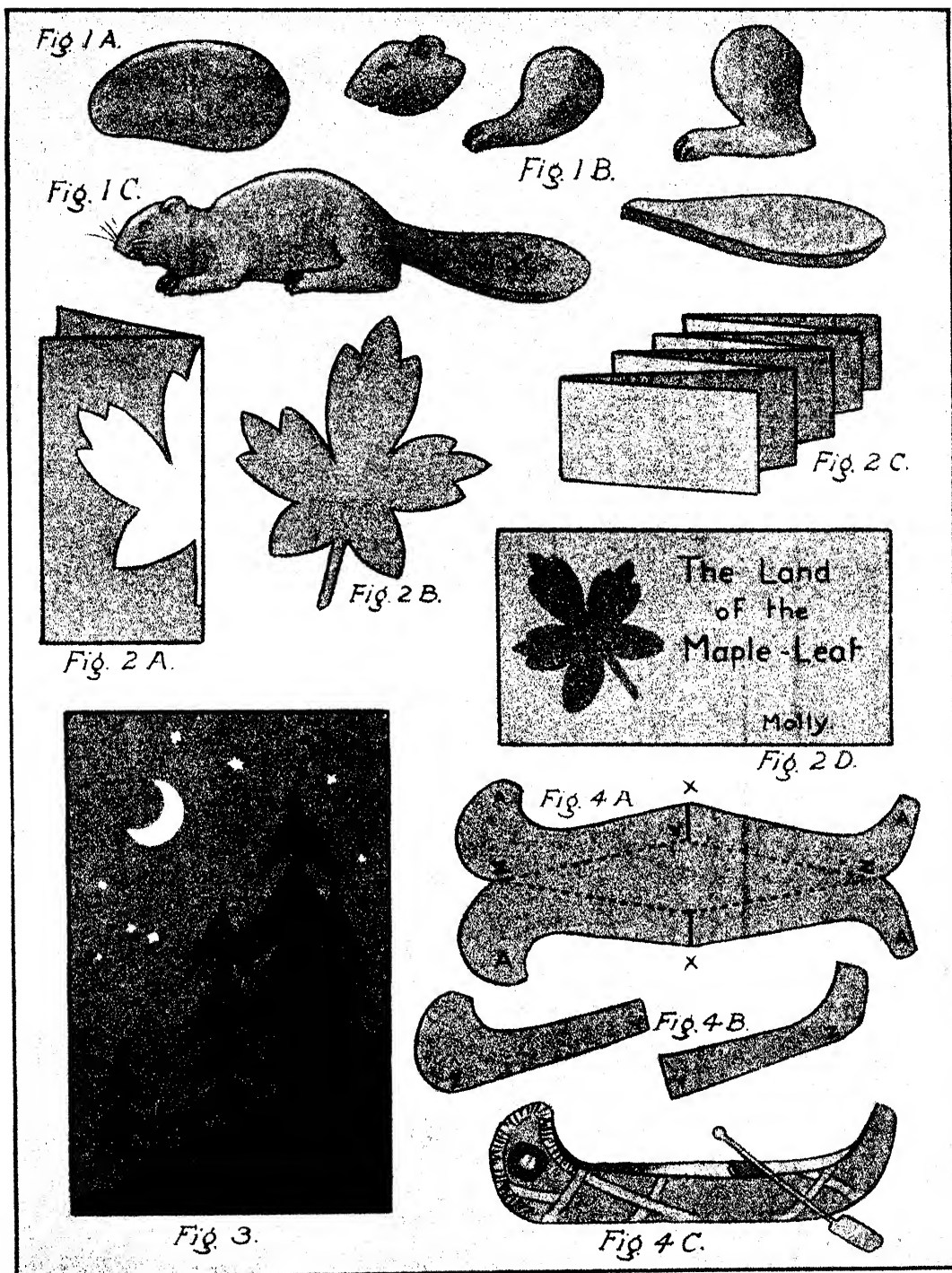


PLATE V.

- FIG. 1. CLAY MODEL OF BEAVER  
 FIG. 2. PAPER-CUTTING—MAKING A SCRAPBOOK  
 FIG. 3. CUT-OUT PICTURE OF CANADIAN FOREST  
 FIG. 4. INDIAN CANOE IN CARD

**AUSTRALASIA. I.**

The lessons are now concerned with Australasia, and begin with the activities of Dutch navigators in that country. The first handwork exercise therefore deals with the making of a Dutch flag. Some red, white, and blue paper (gummed for preference) is required, and a sheet of fairly stout mounting paper or thin card. The mounting paper is folded carefully into three equal divisions as shown in Fig. 1 A. The closely-folded paper is used as a pattern, from which the three strips of red, white, and blue gummed paper are cut out to size. (If white gummed paper is not available, the white mounting paper may be used for the middle bar of the flag, but it will be more effective if gummed paper of the same texture as the coloured strips is used.)

The folded mounting paper is now opened out, and the coloured strips stuck on between the creases as shown in Fig. 1 B, the top strip being red and the lowest one blue. The flag is now complete, though the edges may require trimming with the scissors, after straight guiding lines have been drawn across them. The next step is to mount the flag. There are two methods of mounting. (1) Some of the children may wrap one end of the flag round a kindergarten stick painted dark brown, paste it in position and add a tiny clay or plasticine knob, as shown in Fig. 1 C. Such flags, with others, are useful for classroom decoration and for the school Christmas tree. (2) Other children may paste the flag to a mounting sheet of dark pastel paper, add a flagstaff, and colour with brown and orange pastel.

The hunting weapons of the Australian

Aborigines provide material for handwork. Fig 2 A shows one of their oblong shields. It is made in thin cardboard, either as a free-cutting exercise, or from a folded paper shape to ensure that the two ends are symmetrical. The shield is then divided into three, and the oblique striped pattern is added with pencil and ruler. Care will be needed to make the stripes of equal width; they are afterwards painted alternately red and black. Two handles for the arm are made by folding strips of paper as shown in Fig. 2 B; these are pasted to the back of the shield.

Fig. 2 C shows how a spear may be made. The spear head is cut from thin card and inserted in a split kindergarten stick.

A woomerah, or aboriginal throwing-stick, may be constructed from a bent twig. This is cut with a right-angled cut at one end (dotted in the diagram, Fig. 2 D), and the spear shaft is placed along the twig, Fig. 2 E. Another type of woomerah that may be modelled in clay is shown in Fig. 2 F. It has a shallow V-shaped groove running along it.

The boomerang (Fig. 3) provides an exercise in free-cutting from cardboard.

Geographers tell us that the Australian Aborigine is the laziest and worst builder in the world. To make a native dwelling three or four lengths of cane are bent over (Fig. 4 A), thrust into a clay base, and tied at the top. The sides of the hut are woven over and under with raffia, a space being left for the door. Bits of grass, straw and small twigs are stuck on to the surface of the raffia when complete, Fig. 4 B.

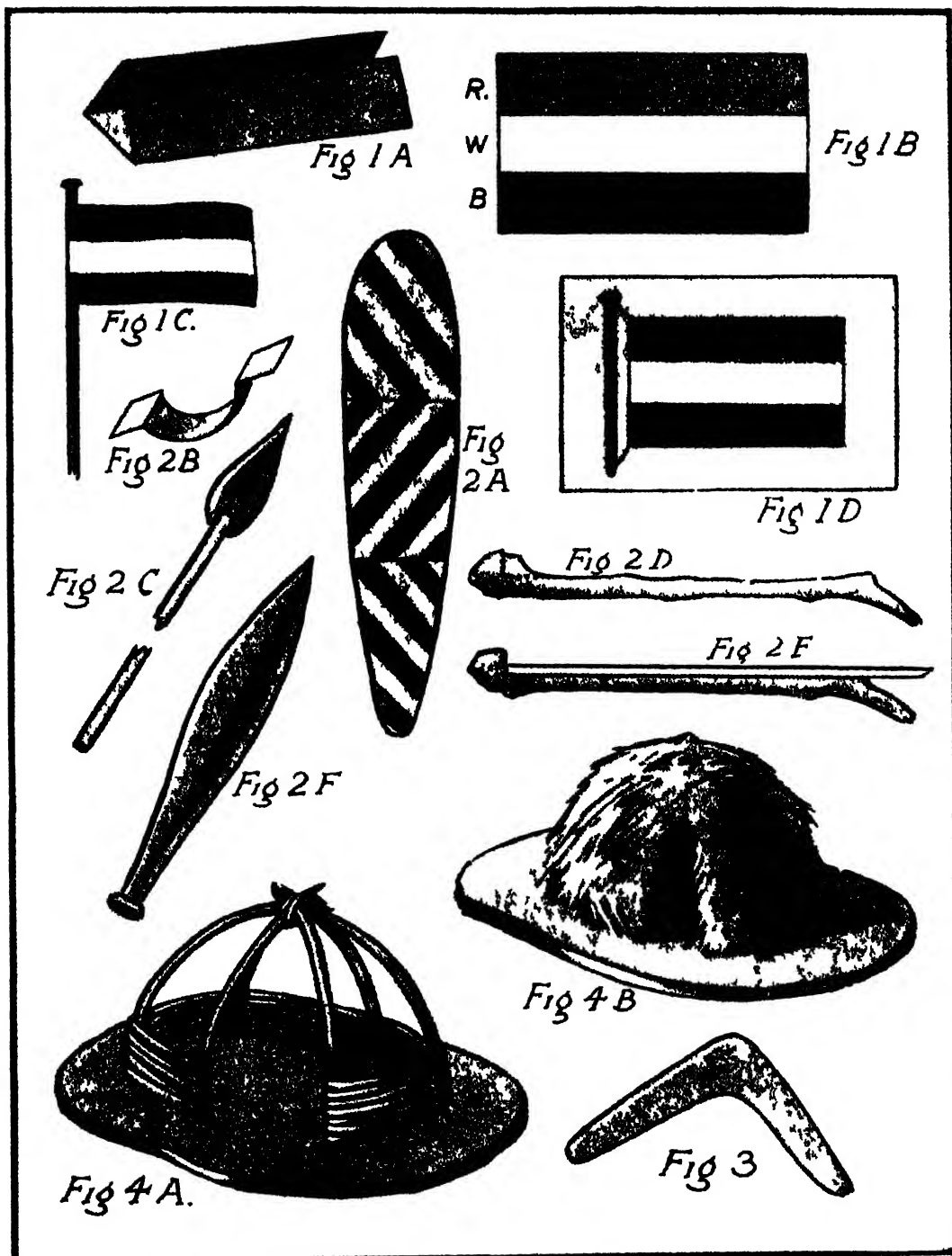


PLATE VI

- FIG 1 DUTCH FLAG. PAIR CUTTING EXERCISE  
 FIG 2 ABORIGINAL ARMS IN CARD  
 FIG 3 CARD MODEL OF BOOMERANG  
 FIG 4 ABORIGINAL DWELLING IN CLAY CANE AND RAFFIA

## AUSTRALASIA. II.

This lesson deals with the lumbering industry, of which the children have heard in connection with the forests of Canada. Fig. 1 shows the model of a lumber worker's saw; which provides a simple exercise in free-cutting. It should be cut from thin card to give substance to the blade. As shown in the diagram, the teeth of the saw are different from those of the usual joiner's saw, they are fairly large, with unbroken intervals between. The handle is made by taking two shapes of cardboard and sticking one on each side of the blade. The blade is then painted bluish grey, and the handle dark brown. To give further interest to the exercise, a clay model of a tree stump lying down is made, and the saw is inserted into a slit, made by a knife, in the stump, Fig. 1 B.

Continuing with the story of timber, the next model is of a lumber train. This is best taken as a group model, several children each making a truck, which are all joined as shown in Fig. 2 B. A simple engine made from a mantle box, on the lines of the C.P.R. engine, illustrated on page 567, may be attached. The construction of a truck is shown in Fig. 2 A. Each truck has for its basis a Swan Vesta match box, which is of the requisite proportions. (An advanced class may be allowed to construct the necessary boxes.)

The match box is inverted, as shown in Fig. 2 A, and eight tabs of cardboard, four on each side, are stuck to the inner sides of the box, so as to project a short distance. Next, four holes, two at the front and two at the rear, are bored in the box with a sharp point. Through these holes lengths

of thin twine are threaded with a bodkin. Inexpensive wooden button moulds, or discs of cardboard, may be used for the wheels, and these are fitted on to short lengths of kindergarten stick, which are thrust through holes made in the projecting tabs. Short hooks of wire are bent, and fixed at the front and back of the truck for linking. When completed, four or five of the trucks are linked together. A log of timber is modelled in clay, and when dry and hard it is laid along the group of trucks and tied on with the lengths of twine already in position. The trucks are painted grey, the log dark brown with orange-yellow ends.

The next model is that of a Maori house constructed in thin card. As shown in Fig. 3 A, the basis of this model is a three-sided house shape, with flaps for joining and for sticking it down to a sheet of thicker card. The house is made up, and a single end is planned which is exactly the same size as the end of the house, Fig. 3 B. This end is fixed a short distance within the walls, Fig. 3 C. (The horizontal flaps on the tops of the walls are made short in the plan to admit of this.) Next, as shown in Fig. 3 D, a roof is fitted to overhang at the back and lie flush with the front of the house. Fixing flaps are left at the front edge of this roof, and these, together with the front fixing flaps of the walls, are to receive flat strips of native carving. The carving is first fixed to the sloping roof parts, then the side posts are added, and finally the central portion. The whole of the model is painted dark brown, the carvings are lighter brown, the window pale blue and black, and the door black, Fig. 3 E.

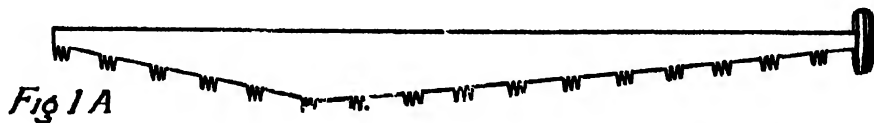


Fig 1 A

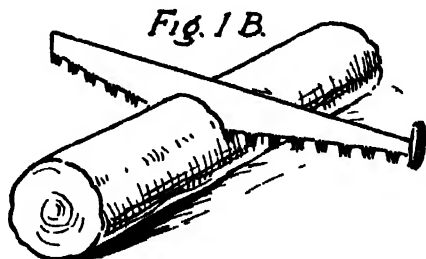


Fig. 1 B.

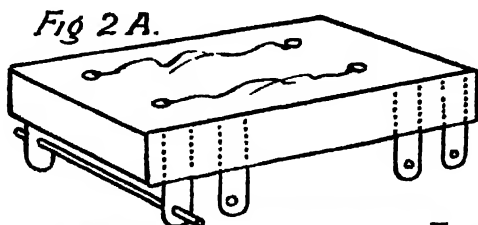


Fig 2 A.

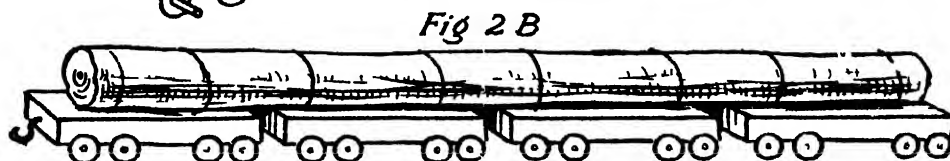


Fig 2 B

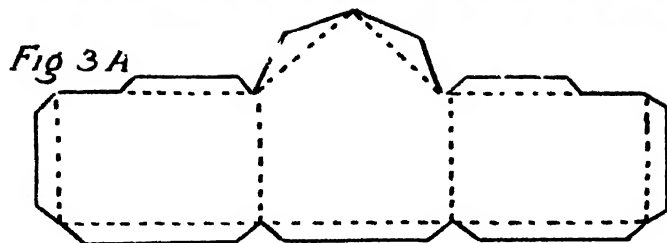


Fig 3 A

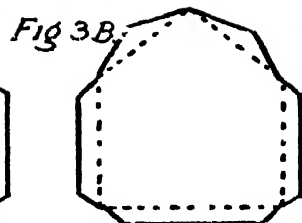


Fig 3 B.

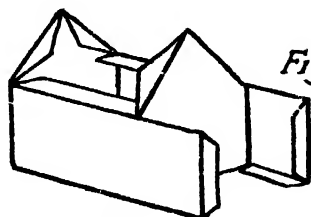


Fig 3 C.

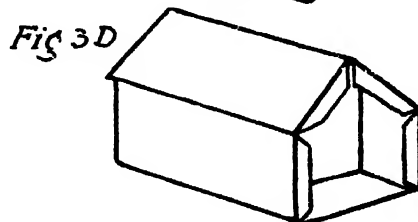


Fig 3 D

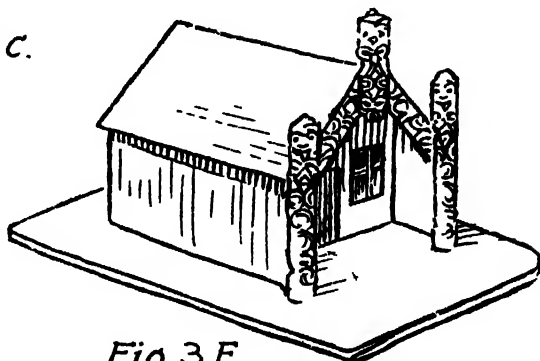


Fig 3 E.

# PLATE VII

- FIG 1 LUMBER WORKER'S SAW IN CARD
- FIG 2 LUMBER TRAIN—OF MATCH BOXES, CARD AND CLAY
- FIG 3 MAORI HOUSE IN THIN CARD

## AUSTRALASIA. III.

The first model constructed in this lesson is that of a wagon such as might be used for the transportation of wool. Naturally, it will have to be a very simple type of wagon, more like the usual trailer often seen drawn behind a tractor or a motor car. The children will be interested to know that the camel, as well as the bullock, is an animal sometimes used for transport.

The basis of the wagon is a shallow box or tray. The children will construct their own trays, planning them first on paper, which may be squared to assist them in making their right angles. The plan of the tray is shown in Fig. 1 A. Note that the axle flaps differ in size: one pair is made a little longer than the other, to admit of a pair of larger wheels at the back. Backward children may construct the tray from a shallow box lid, sticking on the portions to take the axles in the same way as in the making of a truck.

The next step is to stick projecting sides round the top of the inverted tray, and to thrust axles of kindergarten sticks through the holes in the axle flaps, Fig. 1 B. Cardboard wheels are cut—two large and two small—and are fixed to the axles. Any tendency to wobble on the part of the wheels may be checked by placing a  $\frac{1}{2}$  in. circular cardboard washer at the front and back of each wheel. A crossway shaft is cut from cardboard or pulp cane, and fixed to the underside of the front of the wagon by means of a drawing pin, which is first pushed through a disc of thin wood or card to prevent tearing out, Fig. 1 C.

A number of small bales are made by

packing old paper into bits of calico. These bales are sewn or tied with string and then loaded on the wagon, Fig. 1 D. To make the model more interesting, a team of bullocks or camels, cut out from thin card and painted, may be harnessed to the wagon. (For a pattern of a bullock see Vol. I., p. 107; for a pattern of a camel see Vol. I., p. 525.) In tracing the camel, omit the baggage, and draw the back of the camel only.

The next model is that of Sydney Harbour Bridge. This is a group model, in which several children may participate. The complete model (Fig. 2 E) is constructed of thin cardboard, and rests upon rows of cotton reels which form the supporting pillars. The first step is to make a collection of cotton reels. The end arches of the bridge are shown in Fig. 2 A. They are composed of simple rectangular solids, of which the distance X Y must be the height of the cotton reels. The bridge proper (Fig. 2 B) is cut from a long strip of card, the width of which must be that of X Y on Fig. 2 A. The pillars and cotton reels are stuck to a mounting board, and the line is stuck in position across. The pattern of the arch is cut in folded paper, Fig. 2 C. It is first tested for length and then used to produce the two arches which are fixed as shown in Fig. 2 D; these may be left solid or cut away. The vertical bars, joining the arch and the line, are added in thread with a needle. The bridge should now receive a coat of steel-grey water colour, after which one or two tiny boats should be added below.

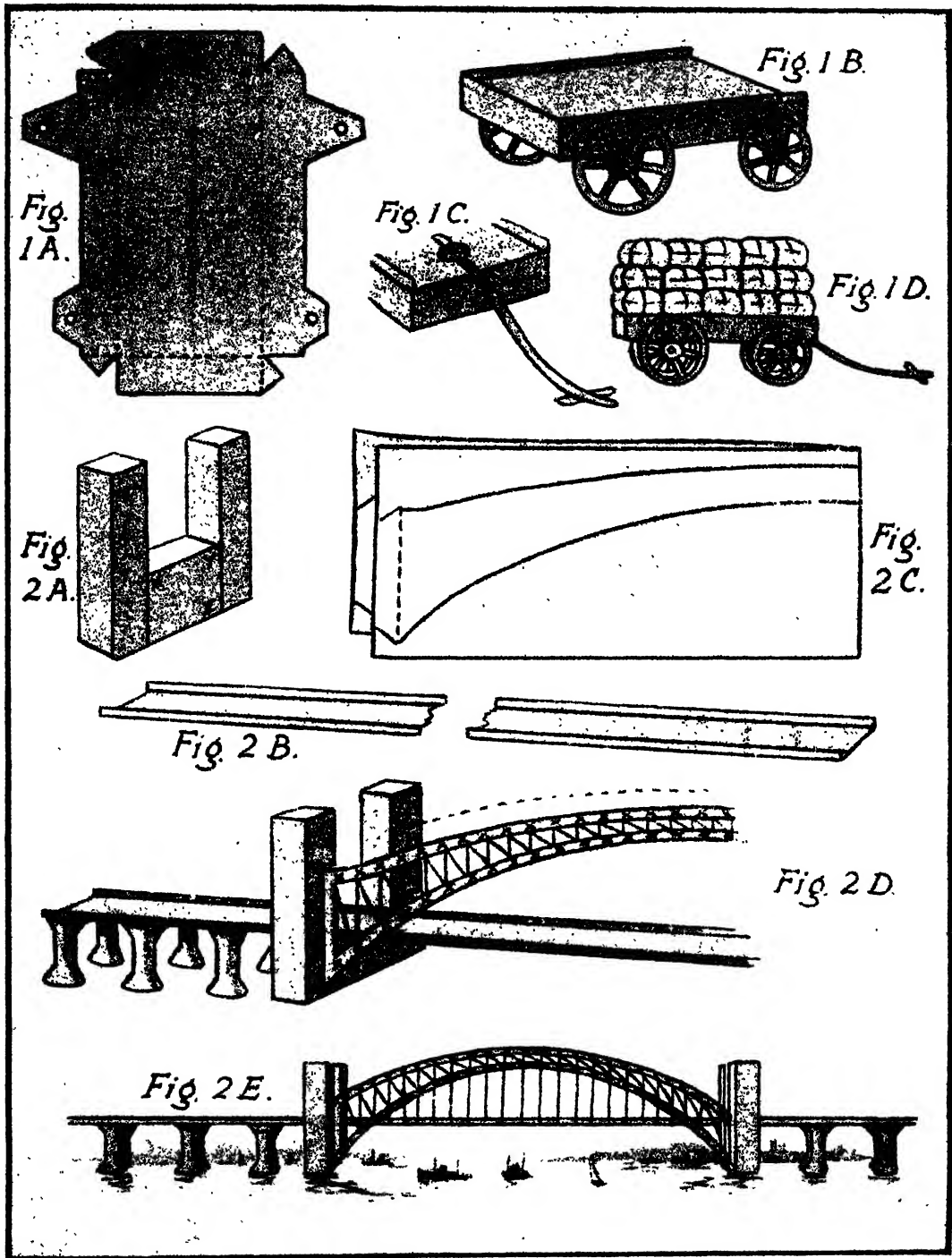


PLATE VIII.

FIG. 1. WOOL WAGON IN THIN CARD

FIG. 2. SYDNEY HARBOUR BRIDGE—IN CARDBOARD AND COTTON REELS



## AUSTRALASIA. IV.

From the study of houses much can be learnt of the climate of a country and the culture of a race, and it is interesting to compare and contrast the dwellings of different peoples. The Papuan house, which is modelled in this lesson, is almost the same in structure as that of the primitive lake dweller, which was considered in Vol. I., p. 113. The present race of Papuans, therefore, dwell in almost the same kind of house as our own British ancestors.

This model of the Papuan house is constructed in thin card, the plan of which is shown in Fig. 1 A. Note that it follows the usual shape of a house, except that the front end of the house is taller than the back, which gives a downward slope to the sides. The completed house is fixed to a large sheet of stout cardboard, as shown in Fig. 1 B. This sheet of card is made to project so that it produces a platform in front. The sloping roof is then cut from a flat sheet of card, the front of which is also made a little wider than the back. It may be advisable to let the children make a pattern in paper and test it for size before cutting the final roof. The roof is folded down the middle (Fig. 1 C), and gummed into position.

The house is then painted brown. When dry, it is given a coating of gum or glue,

and short lengths of straw or dried grass are stuck on. At the point of the roof at the front a few extra long stems are fixed, as shown in Fig. 1 D. Two ladders of thin twigs will be required, and it now remains to make the base for the house. A rectangle of stakes made from twigs is fixed into a slab of clay. The house is placed carefully on these twigs, and the model is now complete. A project of a modern lake village may be constructed by placing in rows face to face, the houses made by the children, with a central platform running down between them.

No lesson on Australia would be complete without a model of a kangaroo. A toy model of a kangaroo is given in Fig. 2 B. As will be seen in Fig. 2 A, the toy consists of separate segments which may be traced by the teacher, directly from the plate, and hectographed for class use. Only one fore leg and one back leg are shown, though two of each will be required for the model. The shapes are cut out and painted in varying shades of brown. Holes are punched (preferably with a leather punch), and the parts are joined together with small brass paper fasteners (about size 00). These toys will be found useful in providing material for action drawings of the kangaroo.

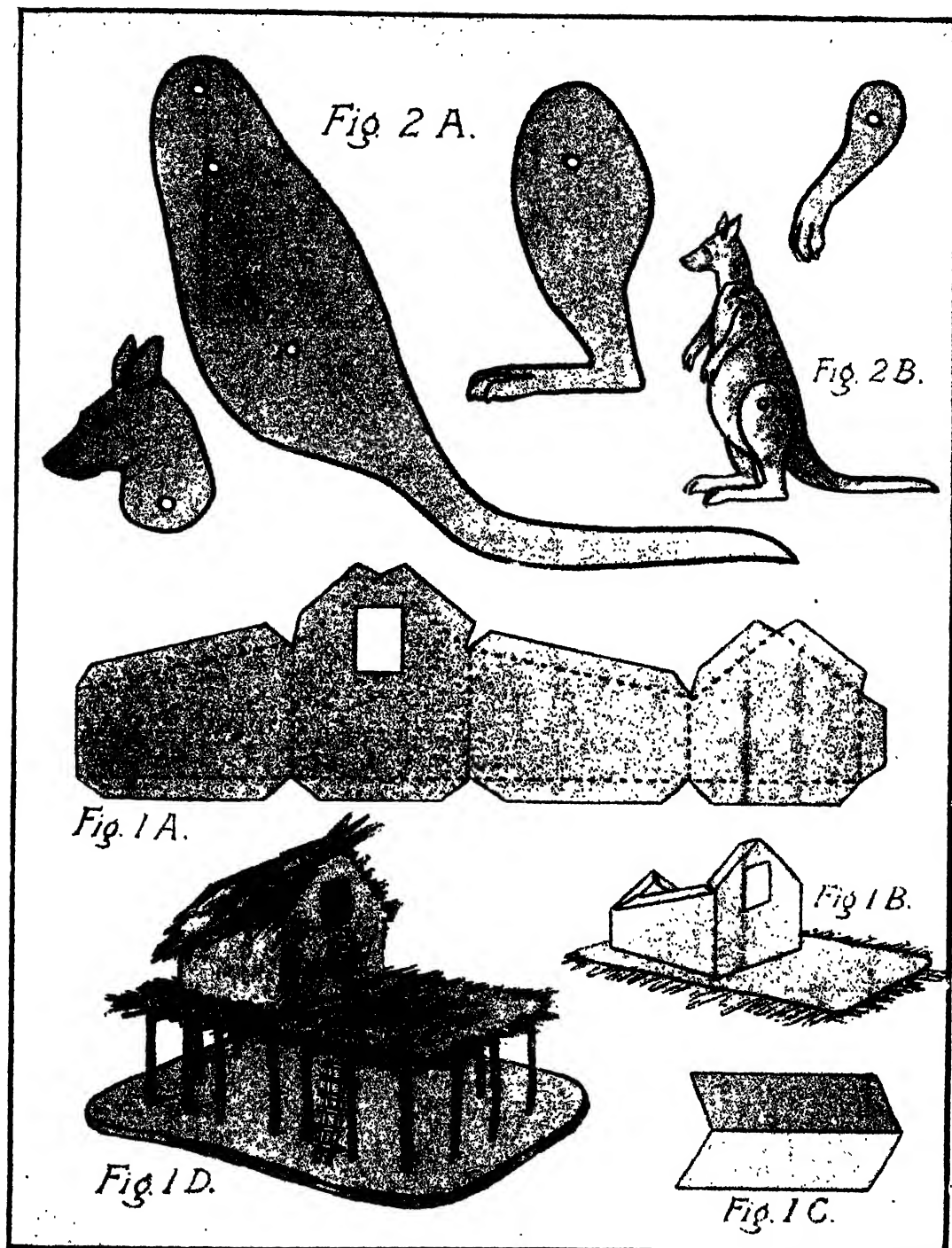


PLATE IX.

FIG. 1. PAPUAN HOUSE IN THIN CARD  
FIG. 2. TOY MODEL OF A KANGAROO

## AUSTRALASIA. V.

In this lesson the models take the form of a collection of toys and cut-outs illustrating Australasian bird life. The parrot is a common bird of the tropical forests, and may be familiar to many children as a pet bird. Fig. 1 shows a pattern for a balancing parrot toy. The teacher should trace the outline and duplicate it on sheets of paper, from which the children may trace it for themselves on to thin cardboard. (The children will not require carbon paper, for they may blacklead the inside outline of their drawings, which will function in the same way as carbon paper.) The shape is next tinted in crayon or water colour with the familiar hues of the parrot plumage,—bright green for the body, green and yellow for the tail, scarlet for the head, orange for the beak, and brown for the tree stem. If water colour is used, a few strokes of ivory black, applied in the manner shown in the sketch, will help to strengthen the shape and add brilliance to the colours. When thoroughly dry, the outline is carefully cut round, and the figure balanced on a string or thin rod placed between the tail base and the stem. Perhaps some of the more skilful boys may like to make this model in thin wood with a fret saw.

Fig. 2 is a similar toy showing the laughing jackass. If coloured carefully, this makes an exceedingly pretty model. As before, the children trace their shapes on to the cardboard and proceed to the colouring. By way of a change, they may be allowed to use body colour to give a more brilliant

finish. This is produced by adding Chinese white to water colours, which gives them an opaque appearance. The bird is tinted in shades of brown, black and white, with occasional tinges of pale green. The foliage drawn on bold broad lines adds to the attractiveness of the model. The stem of the foliage is tinted brown, and the leaves either bright green by way of contrast, or painted in harmonising autumnal tints of yellow, brown and red. As in the model of the parrot, the point of balance is between the base of the tail and the foliage stem.

Fig. 3 shows the emu, which should be compared with the ostrich cut-out in Vol. I., p. 525. In cutting out this bird, leave solid the part between the two slender legs to act as a support for the completed cut-out. The bird should be tinted brown with merging masses of grey, the beak and legs should be orange.

Fig. 4 shows the kiwi, which is constructed on similar lines, with a supporting solid portion left at the legs. This model is tinted medium brown, with orange beak and legs.

Fig. 5 shows the cut-out of the lyre bird, one of the most picturesque of Australia's feathered creatures. The decorative tail is painted black, white and red, the body a dark grey, the beak and legs orange. The leg support should again be left solid.

In all this work, the children should be encouraged to bring along their picture books, advertisements, etc., to help them with their tinting.

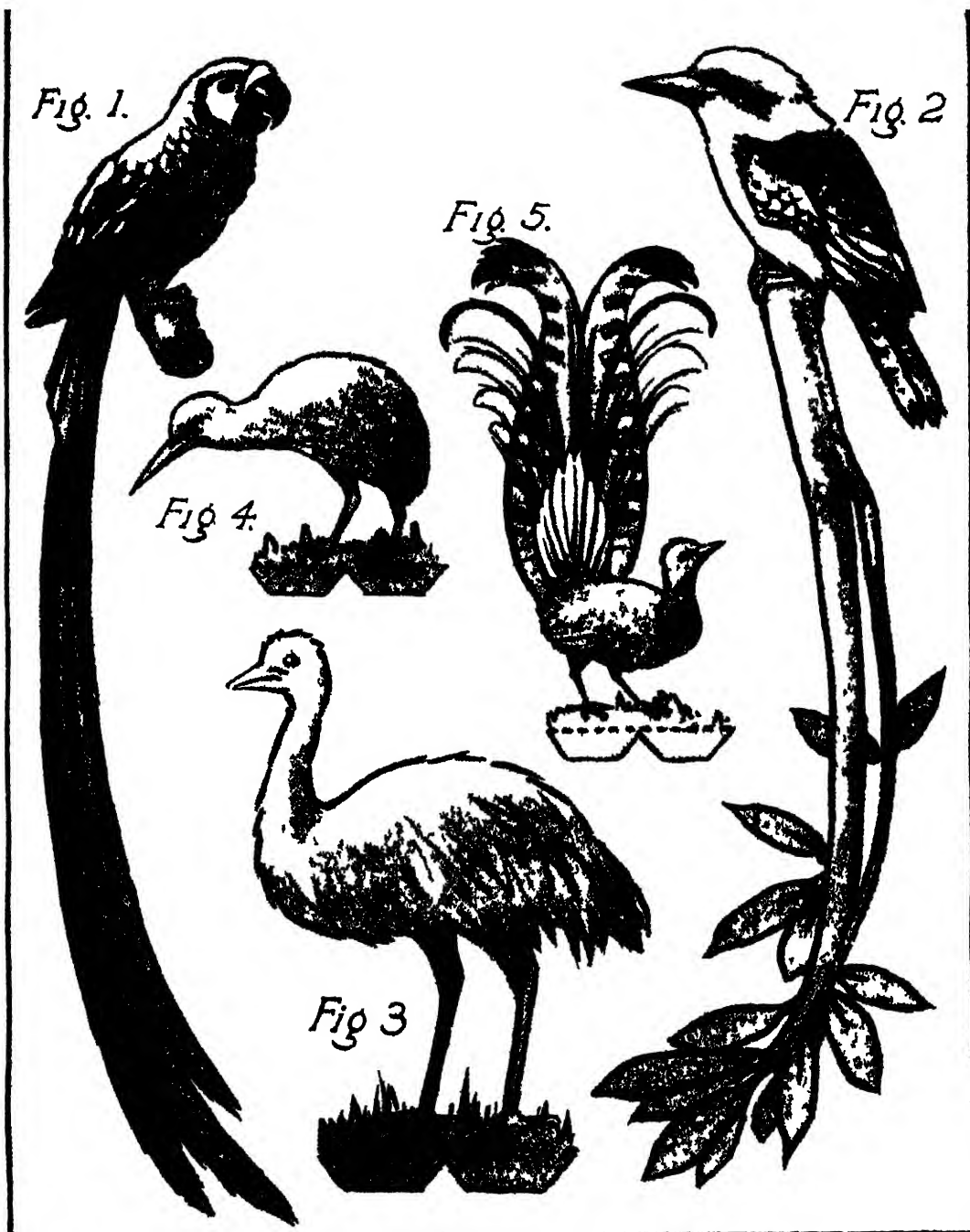
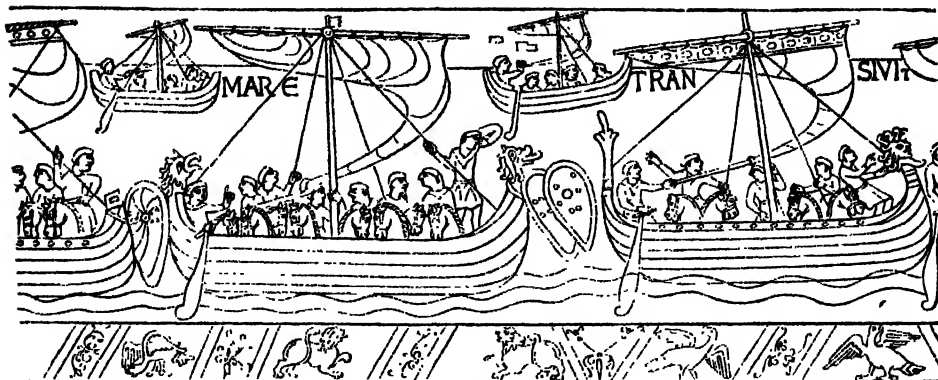


PLATE X.

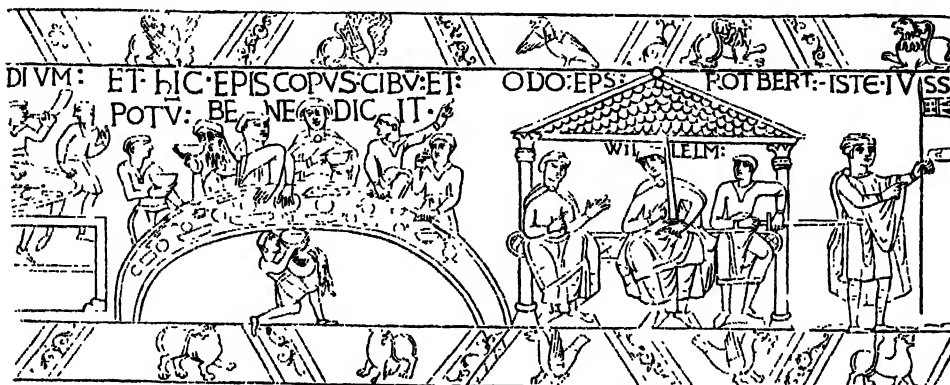
- FIG 1 BALANCING TOY OF PARROT  
 FIG 2 BALANCING TOY OF LAUGHING JACKASS  
 FIG 3 EMU CUT OUT  
 FIG 4 KIWI CUT-OUT  
 FIG 5 LYRE BIRD CUT OUT



**THE TEACHING OF  
DECORATIVE NEEDLEWORK  
IN THE  
PRIMARY SCHOOL**



WILLIAM SAILING TO ENGLAND



BISHOP ODO OF BAYLEUX SAYING GRACE  
AT BANQUET AFTER LANDING

WILLIAM HOLDING COUNCIL WITH HIS  
BROTHERS, ODO AND ROBERT



FORTIFICATION OF WILLIAM'S CAMP  
AT HASTINGS

MESSENGER BRINGS TIDINGS TO WILLIAM  
OF HAROLD'S MOVEMENTS

### SCENES FROM THE BAYEUX TAPESTRY

# A THREE YEARS' COURSE OF DECORATIVE NEEDLEWORK FOR CHILDREN FROM EIGHT TO ELEVEN YEARS OF AGE

**T**HE course of decorative needlework set out in these volumes begins with the second year in the primary school, and is intended to cover work for a period of three years.

## GENERAL INTRODUCTION

"It is also of first importance that the crafts taught should be genuine, and representative of a great historic line. . . . Craft work, as we understand it here, must be inspired by one of the great traditions, and unless it is so cannot fill the place we assign to it." (From the *Report of the Consultative Committee on the Primary School*)

Decorative needlework, which in its later stages is embroidery, answers in full to the requirements set forth in the above quotation. The lineage and traditions of embroidery are unimpeachable, and artists, inspired by the work of former centuries, are needed to execute work typical of English life, manners and customs, in the twentieth century. English Church work of the thirteenth and fourteenth centuries still stands unsurpassed in any part of the world. With the *Reformation* came the decline of English embroidery, followed by a revival and a new style in Elizabethan times, from that period there has been a steady decline to the present day.

Embroidery is a world-wide craft, centuries old, but owing to the perishable nature of the materials used, very early

examples have not survived as have works of art executed in other more durable materials. Nevertheless, ancient statues, tiles, ceramics and bronzes show patterns on costumes that were the work of the needle and the loom. To quote one example, Persia is known to have excelled in textile art for many centuries, but owing to the passage of time and to many invasions of that country, comparatively few examples of any antiquity have survived.

Traditional art has much to teach but it should not be slavishly copied. The work of former days expressed the manners and life of the era in which it was executed. An endeavour should be made to produce something typical of the present age, using the clean decisive lines and colours that are symbolical of to-day.

All the designs used in the lessons for this year are geometrical in character. Children generally find this type of design much easier to execute than the more difficult conventional designs taken from natural forms. Geometrical design follows naturally from the paper cutting and pattern making of the infant school. The stitches used, and the ways in which they are used, are such as will prove useful later on in the child's school career and after she has left school. The stitches are suitable to use on household linen and on clothes. Few people who are engaged in earning their living have time to do much needlework, and women generally regard the art as a leisure occupation, for which a knowledge of decorative stitches is invaluable. Articles for the house may attract some workers,



while others will prefer to make and beautify things for personal wear. In these days of mass production many garments are produced better and more cheaply than the average needlewoman can hope to make them, but with a certain amount of skill with the needle she can decorate the ready-made clothes in such a way as will render them individual and attractive. By this means she will have an article of distinctive appearance, satisfactory both from the aesthetic and economic standpoints.

The choice of the articles described here has been governed by the considerations mentioned in the previous paragraph as well as by the need for utility—fitness for their purpose. Also, as far as possible, the articles chosen are those that a child would like to own, and for this reason she will work speedily and well with a view to their completion at the earliest possible date.

The good, accurate work of the world is almost invariably done by rapid workers. This is not a supposition, but a proven fact. The natural speed of working varies with the individual, but the native gift can be cultivated and realised to its full extent, and there are few people who cannot attain a reasonable degree of speed if they make sincere efforts to this end. Each succeeding experiment should aim at increased speed without any lowering of the standard of quality. The beginner who is encouraged to work quickly, realises her natural speed and develops a working rhythm; a worker who has been allowed to arrive with the snail has great difficulty later on in developing speed, and her work is liable to look laboured and lifeless. It is also well to remember that work done at one's natural speed is produced without undue effort and is satisfactory.

The principles of design involved in the decoration of the simple articles made in these lessons have not been discussed, as explanations would not aid but confuse children of this age. Simple rhythm and balance have inevitably entered into the designs, but at this stage it is wiser to give

the child experience of actually working with them, leaving the abstract explanations to a later stage of the child's growth. Neither is a detailed study of colour entered upon here. Experience of the effect of harmony and contrast will suffice for the present.

There is no hard and fast rule as to which colours may, or may not, be used together; any colours may be used together— if they are used in the right proportions. Children love colour and if left to choose for themselves, seldom go far wrong, even though the results may be, on occasion, purple cows and blue geese. The purple cows, after all, open up an interesting field for investigation: they may show that children are not realists but possess an innate sense of design, or merely that they *love* purple. Certainly the average child has a vivid imagination which unfortunately is not always cultivated.

The colours used in the original samples illustrated are generally the colours of the spectrum; gradations of tone are avoided at this stage. Use of pure colour is safest. Tones, in the hands of a beginner, frequently lead to dull, uninteresting work, because the child uses too many tones, the wrong tones, or wrong proportions of the tones. Tone balance is a difficult and intriguing problem that may well wait.

The illustrations showing designs used on the originals in each lesson are marked with the numbers of the colours required for the part, as a guide to the teacher if exact duplication of the original is desired.

The embroidery stitches used are very simple, but they are most effective on plain articles. Chain, blanket and back stitch are neither described nor illustrated in the lessons because they are well-known to everyone. The ordinary sewing stitches used in the construction of articles are also neither described nor illustrated, because they are learnt elsewhere and they are not decorative stitches. The less familiar embroidery stitches are illustrated, but not described, as illustrations of stitches are much easier to follow than are descriptions of them.

Certain important points about some stitches are mentioned, as the successful working of the stitch depends upon attention to these points.

The material used in the articles illustrated is in each case of suitable kind and of good quality; other materials are suggested as alternatives when it is not possible to use the materials of which the originals were made. Careful planning before any cutting-out is done will economise materials. Some of the articles illustrated are deliberately cut to measurements that are fractions or multiples of 36, as 36 inches is the most usual width of material made. The size of the articles suggested could easily be increased or decreased to facilitate more economical cutting of other widths of material.

The needles used throughout are as large as is compatible with good work; at this age a large needle is easier to hold and use than a small one. Rug needles, basketry needles, No. 5 sewing needle and (once) a number 6 sewing needle are required. The cottons and wool are also as coarse as is

possible to use with pleasing results. Silk is omitted because it would cause only waste and disappointment.

Work should be kept in a white cloth or bag, as beautiful work is spoiled if it becomes grubby while being worked. Care should also be taken of embroidery cotton and other materials. Wools and cottons should be plaited as soon as they are cut and a thread should be drawn out as required. Scissors, needles and pins should be bright, sharp and clean. Thimbles must be smooth, and it should be remembered that good work cannot be done by a child unless she wears a thimble all the time she is sewing. Once a child has become accustomed to wearing a thimble she will find that she cannot work without it. All threads must be cut with scissors; threads must never be broken or bitten, or the embroidery stitches will be dragged and the work spoiled.

Pressing is necessary to obtain a good finish, and it must be done during construction; one pressing when the article is complete is not enough.

## I. A TOOL POCHETTE IN TACKING STITCH

**B**AD workmen always lose their tools,—or blame them. The tool pochette that is suggested as the article on which to begin learning decorative stitches should help to correct the habits of losing and blaming tools.

All children possess an innate instinct of collection, which usually operates indiscriminately, so that much of the material collected is valueless. This instinct may be directed, however, and in the present instance may be wisely directed to the collection of the requisite tools. The collector speedily develops a sense of pride in his possessions. Members of the simplest civili-

sations collect tools, and when a member finds any particular tool good—or in other words, useful—he begins to decorate it. To “find useful” implies a degree of skill on the part of the user. Similarly, young pupils who have acquired a degree of skill will begin to prize their tools, to use them more and more, and to replace any that prove suitable.

The tools collected will soon acquire a personal history; in addition to this the social history of the tools will prove interesting to their owners. Many centuries ago needles were made of bone, and to this day bone needles are used by native workers

in many parts of the world. Steel needles were made in Damascus, Antioch and Adrianople in the early Middle Ages. Englishmen who went on the Crusades were likely to have seen them, and in all probability the Crusaders brought steel needles back as presents to their wives. The wonderful embroideries for which the age of chivalry is famous could hardly have been executed without needles of great fineness. The earliest evidence of the existence of steel needles in Europe suggests that they were first made at Nuremberg (Nürnberg) in 1370. Needles were very precious in those days; they were kept in beautiful cases which hung on a cord or chain fastened round the waist of the lady who used them.

Bronze pins were made at Nuremberg in 1365; very good pins were produced in England also in the same century. Thimbles have been in use from very early times. They were probably first made of leather and bone, and they appear to have been smooth.

The date of the thimble, as we know it, is uncertain, but thimbles were certainly made in the Middle Ages. Scissors used to be very much larger than they are to-day; illustrations of scissors culled from various representations of life in the early years of the fifteenth century show that they were then becoming more like the modern articles.

Few tools are needed to start embroidery, and more can be added as they are required. The tools required as personal property to be kept in the tool pochette are as follows:

A tape measure.

A guider.

A thimble.

A pair of small, firm, sharp-pointed scissors.

Pins (small whites).

Needles (sizes 5 and 6).

There are good and bad tools. The bad ones, which are usually cheap to buy, are in the end the most expensive to use. A "Dean" tape measure is accurate, and,

because of its good quality, wears a long time. A thimble should fit and be smooth and well worn; well worn it cannot be when its owner is eight years old, but if it is rough it can be smoothed by rubbing with fine emery or carborundum paper. Scissors should have firm, sharp blades and keen points. Pins should be "small whites". Work can be spoilt by the marks made by bad pins; even good pins wear out with constant use,—that is, they lose their points and their covering—with the result that they pull and mark the stuff. At that stage they should be replaced with new ones. Needles must be free from rust, or they will mark the material and slow up the worker's speed, which usually means the loss of that working rhythm which is necessary for good, even embroidery. A guider is a small piece of cardboard about  $1\frac{1}{2}$  in. by  $2\frac{1}{2}$  in., notched at certain places to measure the width of hems. (See Fig. 3.) This method of measuring hems is more rapid and easier than using the tape measure.

Class tools and materials required include:

Tacking cotton, No. 50.

Large cutting-out scissors.

White sewing cotton, No. 40.

Natural linen, unbleached cotton, case-ment cloth, or some similar material.

Cream or white flannel, or similar material.

Dress fasteners (white).

D.M.C. *coton à broder*, No. 16, in clear, pure colours.

A notebook, in the form of a sampler, is invaluable in decorative needlework. As well as the decorative stitches themselves, certain ordinary sewing stitches are necessary in the construction of articles finished with decorative stitchery. The child may already know the sewing stitches required, in which case they need not be practised on the sampler, but a beginning may be made with the decorative stitches. For a sampler it is sufficient to have a piece of material only large enough on which to learn stitches. On this the child may learn the stitches

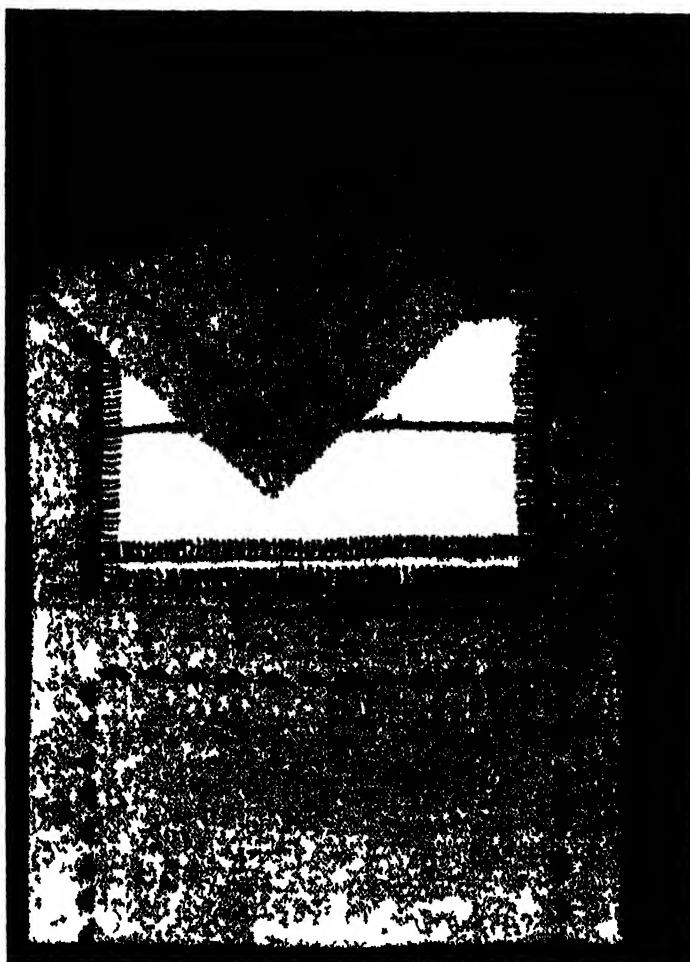


FIG. 1 (HILL)

without becoming weary of them before the actual work is started. It is a great advantage to have a material of loose open weave, the threads help in keeping the rows of stitchery straight.

The stitches needed on the pochette are

Ordinary tacking	}	Ordinary sewing stitches
Slip-stitching		
Over-sewing		
Decorative tacking stitch	}	Decorative stitches
Blanket stitch		
Chain stitch		

The four sides of the sampler should have hems turned up in the same manner as that advised for the pochette. These hems should be left tacked and the different stitches may be executed on them as the need arises.

When tacking is being done several points should be remembered.

1 Use *tacking* cotton, this cotton is of inferior quality, it breaks under strain and thus helps to avoid puckering.

2 Always pin the material together before tacking.

3. Use a knot on the end of the thread and start with a back stitch.

4. Tack hems close to the edges.

5. Pin one end of the hem to the table when beginning to tack.

6. Make well-defined alternate long and short stitches.

7. Keep the material flat on the table when tacking; by this method it is nearly impossible to do otherwise than take alternate long and short stitches. the tacking is then straighter and the hem lies flatter when finished.

8. Finish off the tacking thread with two or three large stitches.

9. Cut the tacking thread every few inches when taking it out, or the material and stitches may be injured.

Careful attention to such simple constructional details as these makes all the difference to the appearance of the finished work. Good embroidery cannot save work which has been treated with bad cutting, puckering and lack of tacking.

The tool pochette is made from a piece of natural linen 9 in. by 18 in.; this allows 1 in. for the hem. Material is frequently wasted by crooked cutting. This trouble is easily remedied by measuring the amount of material required, drawing threads at the marked points, and cutting by the lines made where the threads have been withdrawn. Except in a few cases it is wiser not to use the selvedge itself. The threads in the selvedge are usually tighter than those in the remainder of the material; if a tight selvedge is used to avoid turning in on one side, the hem is likely to pull, and certainly does so when it has been washed. Cutting the selvedge off is unnecessary; snipping a few threads every two or three inches will let the material "give," and the selvedge can then be turned in like a raw edge.

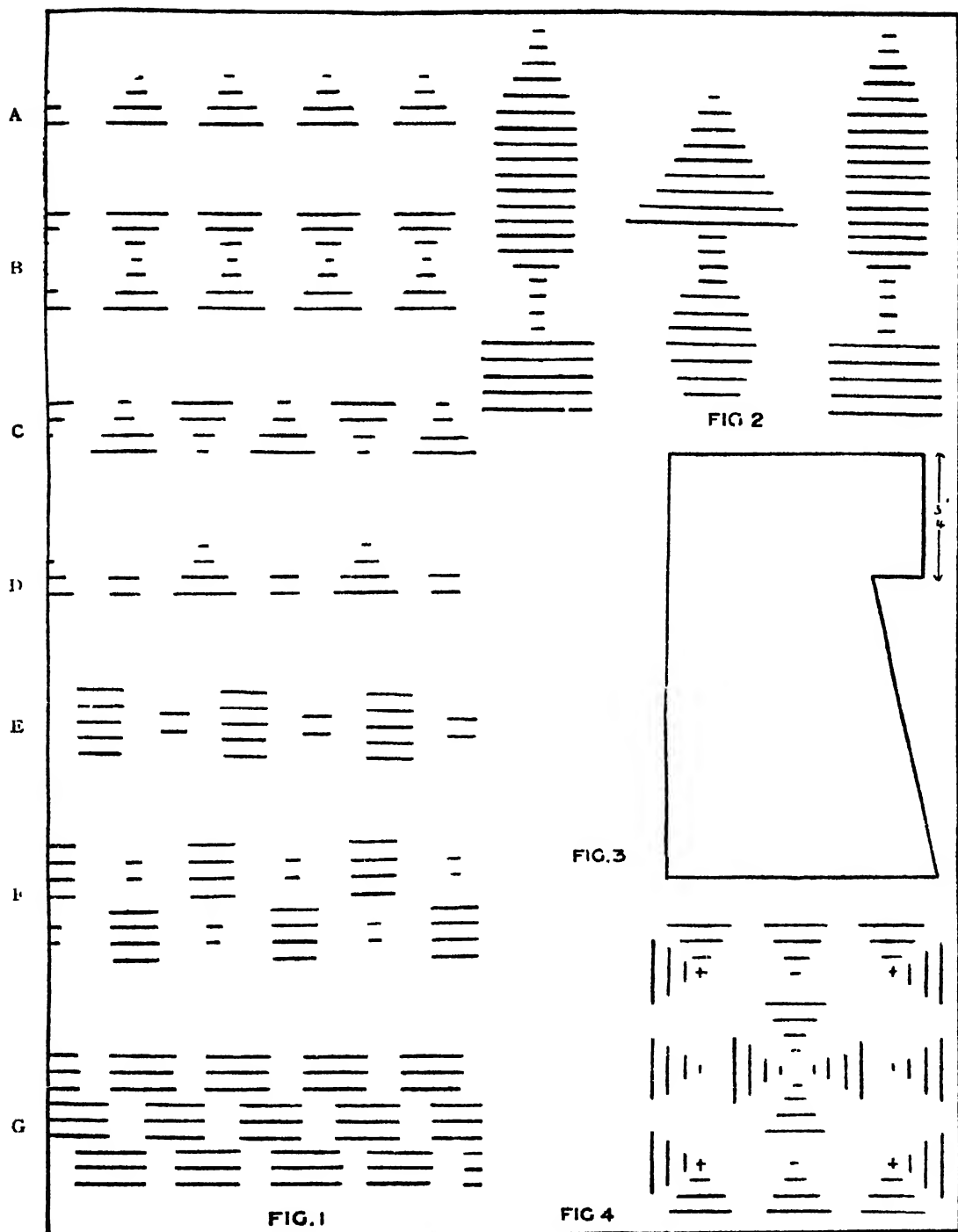
The hem on the pochette is  $\frac{3}{4}$  in. wide when finished;  $\frac{1}{4}$  in. of the 1 in. allowed for the hem is used for turning. The two long sides are turned up first, pinned and tacked, and the two short ends are turned last.

The corners are not mitred, as mitring corners is too difficult at this stage; the hems on the short sides are simply folded over the ends of the hems on the long sides. The small piece ( $\frac{3}{4}$  in. in depth) from the inside of the hem to the outer edge of the pochette is slip-stitched; the folded ends of the hems are top-sewn together. The pochette is then ready for its decorative tacking stitchery.

Tacking stitch is an easy and effective method of decorating simple articles; at the same time tacking stitch borders are only the introductory stage to a more ambitious style of decoration. Darned work as the more advanced embroidery of this nature is called, is to be found in examples from Egypt, Persia, Turkey and the Near East, as well as in some English samplers. When darned work is at its best the whole surface of the material is covered with a geometrical pattern, or the background to a design may be filled in with darning.

It is a very simple but beautiful form of embroidery. The more simple form of darned work here called tacking stitch can be executed by a child of eight years. A warning is necessary. The decoration is executed so easily and rapidly that the beginner is tempted to use it indiscriminately. The decoration of any place that can possibly have stitches put on it does not of necessity make the article more beautiful; in fact, the reverse is often the case. The material, as well as the stitches, has beauty. The worker should bear in mind several points that are essential to good design. The decoration must be part of the pochette itself; it must not be, or have the appearance of being, an afterthought. Extraneous ornamentation is not design. Decoration must be in keeping with the article on which it is used, and it must also take account of the lines of construction.

Tacking stitch designs should be practised on the sampler. If the material of the sampler is of open weave the threads will be a help in keeping the designs straight. If it is not possible to follow the threads easily,



FIGS. 1, 2, AND 4 BUILDING PATTERNS FOR DECORATIVE LACING  
FIG. 3 A GUIDER TO MEASURE THE WIDTH OF HEMS

it will help the young worker to put pencil dots at intervals, or a line of ordinary tacking, but these props should be dispensed with as soon as possible, and the lines kept straight by the eye.

The even length of stitch in ancient work was produced by counting the threads, but this practice is a strain on the eyesight. The length of the stitch can be judged by the eye with sufficient accuracy to give results that are pleasing for all ordinary purposes. It is advisable to remember that for children decorative stitchery is a happy way of developing needle skill, as well as a means of making objects that give immediate satisfaction to their owners. Fig. 1 shows the process of building up simple patterns: lines B, C and D are based on the triangle shown in line A; lines E, F and G are built up on variation of a rectangle.

An infinite variety of simple patterns can be evolved, but care must be taken that they do not produce a weak, disconnected design. The patterns when finished should look as nearly like geometrical solids as it is possible to make them with this form of stitchery. Isolated *motifs* such as those shown in Figs. 2 and 4, and on the flap of the pochette, are more difficult to execute than are all-over patterns, or a band of decoration such as is illustrated in the last line of Fig. 1.

The most suitable needles for decorative tacking are Nos. 4 and 5. If the needle is too small the cotton becomes roughened and then frays; in addition it is not easy to pull the thread through the material, as the needle is not making a hole sufficiently large. The first row of decorative tacking on a hem should be immediately above or below the line of ordinary tacking; this ensures the security of the turning of the hem. When this row is finished the tacking should be removed and the pattern completed. The stitches in the pattern should be close together to give a solid effect. Illustrations of patterns for decorative tacking necessarily exaggerate the spaces between the stitches; actual work will give a compact effect of connected blocks of colour, for the spaces

between the rows of stitches will practically disappear. A knot on the end of the thread is advisable; it may be tucked under the hem so as not to be visible. If the decoration is executed evenly the pattern in reverse will appear on the wrong side; the most should be made of this fact when encouraging the children to produce regularity of stitching.

Simple patterns are better executed in one clear colour, but as the work advances two or more *pure* colours may be used.

When the decoration is finished the pochette is ready for making up. Fold over 4 in. for the pocket and pin it into place. Next fold the whole pochette and mark the places for sewing on the clasps. The clasps should be sewn on the hem where there is a double thickness of material; the thick section of the clasp,—that is, the piece with a hole in it,—should be sewn on the pocket side, the lighter section which contains the clasp itself should be sewn on the flap of the pochette, as it is less likely to rub through with use. Unpin the pocket and sew on the clasps; pin up the pocket again and top-sew the sides together, using No. 40 cotton, and a finer sewing needle.

Only the flannel for holding needles remains to be prepared. Two pieces of flannel 5 in. by 3½ in., and 5 in. by 3 in. respectively, are needed. The edges of the flannel need blanket stitching; the stitches should not be too far apart. Blanket stitch should be practised on the sampler, the folded edge of one of the tacked-up hems being used for the purpose, or one of these may be let down to give a raw edge. Teachers may find it useful to bear in mind that as blanket stitch is used from time to time the spaces between stitches may be gradually decreased until they lie close together; at that stage it will remain only to add padding and the child will have learnt scalloping. When the leaves of the needle book are ready, chain stitch must be practised on the sampler in preparation for sewing in the flannel. Chain stitch has been chosen for this purpose instead of the more usual

feather stitch, or herringbone stitch, both because it is simpler and will be of use in decorative work to come later. Place the flannels one inside the other in the middle of the pochette next to the pocket. Find the middle of the leaves by measurement; pin, tack and sew the flannels into place

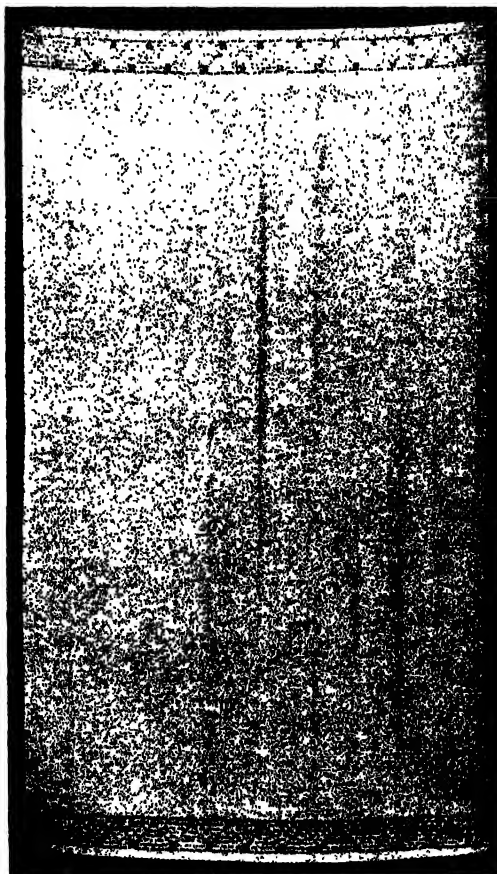
using chain stitch. The pochette is now complete.

*Time:* If practising on samplers is allowed as an occupation for odd moments, the sampler should be accomplished in from seven to eight periods.

## II. A TRAY CLOTH IN HUCKABACK STITCH

THE method of decoration used in this lesson does not appear to be very old. It probably dates from soon after the first appearance of huckaback, which is a product of the power loom.

The Victorian Age was the age of "fancy work", work to pick up in idle moments and to put down for a gossip. Huckaback work was very popular toward the end of the nineteenth century. The whole surface of the material was covered with a pattern with no regard for suitability, neither the function of the material was considered, nor whether the heavy decoration was in keeping with its use. Huckaback is primarily a material to be made into towels. The work is executed by taking a coloured thread under the raised threads which occur at regular intervals in the material. The idea was probably an outcome of the work in darning mentioned in Chapter I. Darned-work samplers were made in the Victorian era, so it is reasonable to suppose that there lies the germ of the idea. The product of the power loom was still a novelty in those days, and in accordance with the Victorian love of exotic novelty and incongruity, the idea of huckaback work ran mad. Cushions, ties and waistcoats were made in huckaback and smothered with pattern. However, huckaback work in moderation, used as borders to towels, children's feeders and



TRAY CLOTH IN HUCKABACK STITCH (FIG. 1)





HUCKABACK STITCH SAMPLER (FIG. 2)

simple tray cloths, is a pleasing form of decoration, so long as the worker withstands the temptation to overdo the amount of decoration because of the simplicity of its execution. A towel decorated all over would be most unpleasant to use, while a feeder similarly treated would not wear well because of the hard rubbing it would need in the wash tub. To put it briefly, decoration should not in any way impair the usefulness of the article on which it is placed.

A blunt rug needle is used for huckaback work, and thread such as No. 16 D.M.C. *coton à broder*, in pure colours. Thicker thread than this was used in Victorian times; the finer thread gives a more graceful and less ponderous result, more of the background material is seen,—and the background is part of the design.

Picking up every raised thread on the material (provided one is not working merely in straight lines as shown in border 8 of

Fig 2), almost inevitably makes diamond-shaped patterns of varying sizes, the patterns are controlled absolutely by the weave of the material. A glance at the sampler in Fig 2 will show this, borders 1 and 2 are half diamonds - triangles in fact. Border 3 shows a small diamond. Borders 4, 5 and 6 are parts of a diamond worked on different scales. Border 7, if composed differently, would form minute diamonds. Border 8 alone is free from the diamond formation except in its central device which can be any shape or size that the worker desires. These borders can be executed in one or two colours, care being taken at this stage to use pure colours and not shades.

The tool pochette will now require the addition of blunt rug needles, these must not be too large or they are liable continually to become entangled. The following list of tools and materials will be required:

White buckram 1 ft. wide  
D.M. catgut needle in clear, pure colour  
Large button snapper  
White cotton No. 40  
Black cotton No. 30

The material used for the tray cloth measures 24 in. by 12 in. that is a strip 12 in. wide cut out of the whole width of the material. The selvedge is to be used in this case. The raised thread in the material occurs only one way in the stuff, so it is necessary when cutting out to make sure that the threads are in the right position for the decoration since they form part of its construction.

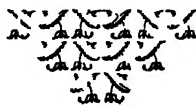
The tray cloth is decorated before any hems are turned up in order that all stitching and finishing thread can be covered. The

first line of the decoration is begun 1½ in. up from the selvedge. The starting thread is stitched loosely round the raw edge of the material at the point at which the row begins, finishing off is done in the same way. Joins are made by tying the new and old threads together on the wrong side care being taken not to tie a granny knot, an alternative method is to run the thread backwards and forward through a few of the raised threads on the wrong side. Huckaback patterns cannot be practised on the existing sampler but they are so easy to learn that after looking at examples of this work most children will be able to start on their tray cloth. Finding this a few shared samples of suitable material would suffice for the children who need this exercise.

The decoration completed, the hems on the sides are turned up to be ¾ in. wide when finished and are then pinned and tacked. The decorated ends are turned up last. The selvedge on buckram is usually good and if the material is rather thick, no turnings will be needed. About ¾ in. of material is left below the pattern when turning up the hem. Turning the hem directly below the pattern gives a cramped effect to the whole design. The four hems are then snug stitched with No. 40 white cotton, and the four ends of the tray cloth decorated hems are top stitched.

The work should finally be turned out to press it from the back with a damp cloth laid over the work to prevent the cloth and not the material dry from the right side, avoiding the decoration then iron it again all over from the back.

*Time* Three periods.



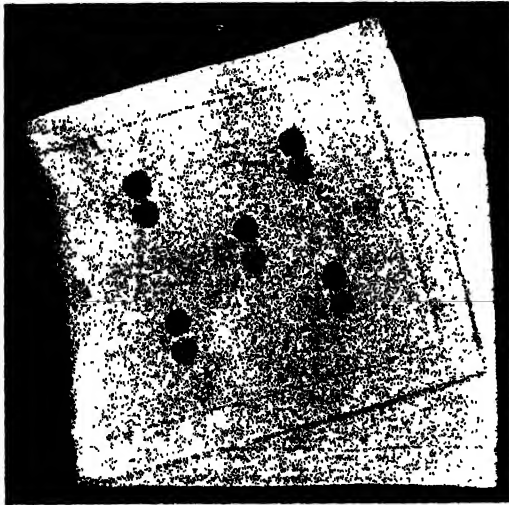
### III. HANDKERCHIEF SACHET USING CHAIN STITCH

THE filling of areas with suitable stitches presents many difficulties to the beginner in embroidery. There are numerous stitches from which to choose, but because of the intricate, self-assertive nature of many stitches, these do not lend themselves well to the filling of areas where a uniform, even surface is required. These stitches are beautiful and interesting, and they require a high degree of technique for

dominate, as this stitch is particularly flexible, and no distortion is needed to follow the most delicate curves. Chinese workers use this stitch, but it is not the one for which they are most famous; the stitch in which they are the great masters will be dealt with in a later lesson. Chain stitch was used a great deal in the famous English embroideries of the thirteenth and fourteenth centuries, and in domestic needlework of the Elizabethan period; after that epoch it re-appears in English work at various times down to the present day.

In this chapter is considered the need for making designs for embroidery. In Chapters I. and II. the patterns evolve more or less under the needle itself, but now it is necessary to plan a complete design before starting the work. So far, patterns have been the main consideration; the design is a much more extensive affair. Colour, shape, size, the amount of decoration to be used, all come under the heading of design. Design includes the whole article from the first stroke of the pencil to the last stitch of the needle,—or one might say to the last pressure of the iron. The planning, thinking and executing must combine in a sensible, orderly performance if the article, when finished, is to fulfil the tenets of "good design".

The handkerchief satchet illustrated in Fig. 1 is decorated with a simple all-over pattern. In decoration of this nature care must be taken that the pattern does not encroach on the marginal lines,—in this case the line of chain stitching fixing the hem. If the pattern runs too near this line the decoration will look overdone and cramped, and the design will become unbalanced. In this pattern the repetition of units composed of the same shapes gives



HANDKERCHIEF SACHET (FIG. 1)

perfection of execution; but the simple ones are the more effective for filling areas.

Chain stitch is one of the simple stitches to which reference has been made. It is a very old stitch; it has been in use for centuries and is to be found in work of many countries. Some pieces of ancient needlework are executed entirely in chain stitch, while in other pieces it is combined with different stitches. Chain stitch is frequently used in the parts of the design where curves pre-

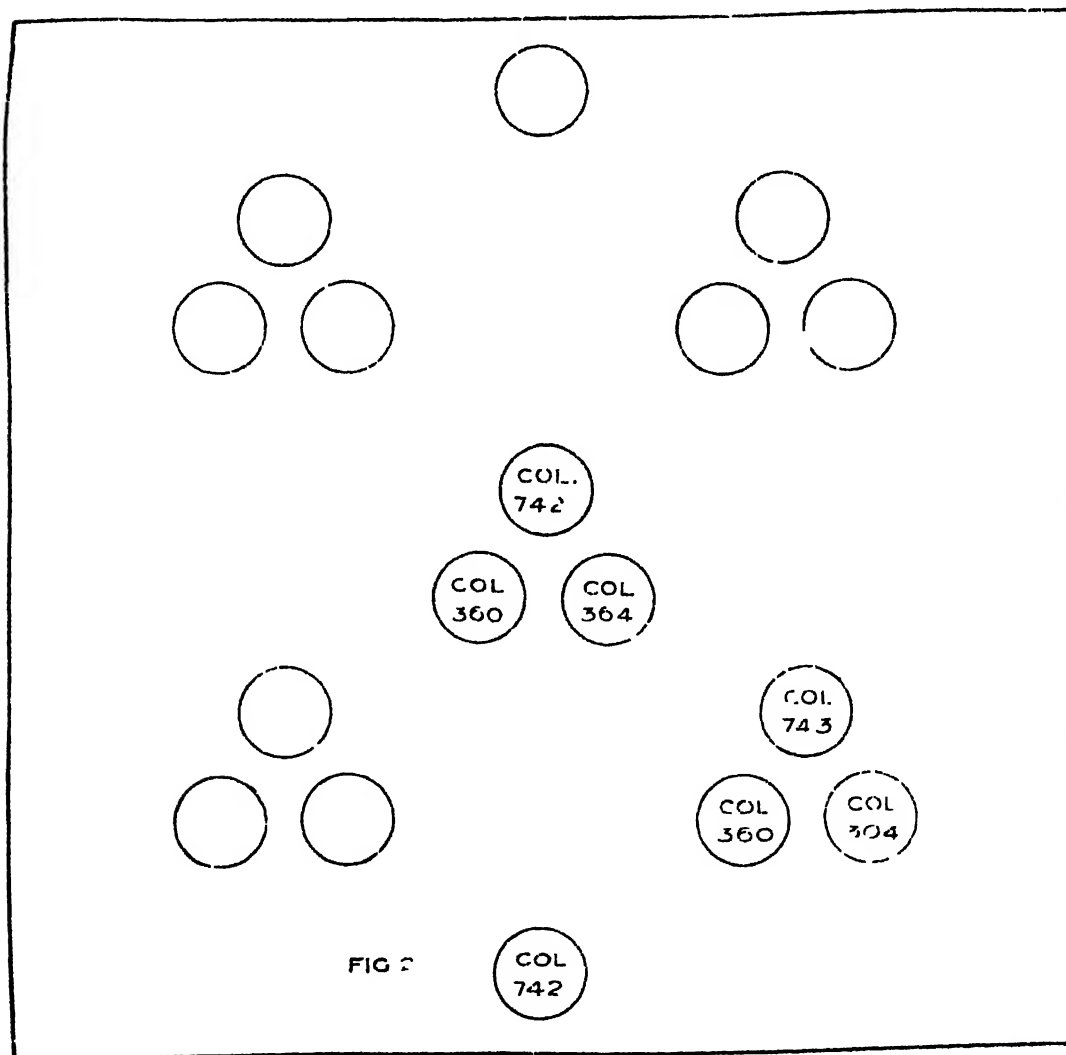
simple rhythm. Fig. 3, a variation on the same theme, also gives rhythm, but not of quite such a simple type as that in Fig. 1. Figs. 4 and 5 suggest a different form of decoration. A single large unit is used; this would be best placed centrally on the sachet. All these designs have been drawn on squared paper with geometrical instruments. Designs should be accurate, otherwise they will look

shapeless and undecided after being executed with the needle.

No addition to the tool pochette is needed, although it is an advantage to have private pencils.

The following classroom tools and materials will be required:

Linen, easement cloth or some suitable material.



DESIGN FOR HANDKERCHIEF SACHET READY FOR TRACING.

D.M.C. sewing cotton to match the material. D.M.C. *coton à broder*, No. 16, to match the material.

Squared paper, with  $\frac{1}{2}$  in. ruling.

A HB pencil and a UHH pencil for tracing.

Compasses.

Rulers.

Used carbon paper for tracing.

Tacking cotton, No. 40.

Large cutting-out scissors.

The handkerchief sachet shown in the illustration is made of buttercup linen and is embroidered in red, dark orange, orange and yellow D.M.C., Cols. 304, 360, 742 and 743 (see Fig. 2). The sewing is done with D.M.C. sewing cotton, No. 40, Col. 742.

The piece of linen used in the sachet measures 29 in. by 10 in.; this allows a hem  $\frac{3}{4}$  in. wide when finished. The cutting out and preparation of the hem are done in the same way as for the tool pochette in Chapter I. The hem is fixed by a single row of chain stitch in embroidery cotton to match the linen. The chain stitching should be done on *top* of the tacking, and the tacking then snipped every two or three inches and drawn out carefully, so as not to injure the decorative stitching.

Billing a circle with chain stitch should next be practised on the sampler; in the meantime the sachet should be put away

carefully to keep it clean. Start chain stitching on the outside of the circle and work gradually in toward the centre, working in the same direction all the time; this rule applies whatever may be the shape or size of the area to be filled. Care must be taken not to get the stitches at all tight, or the work will be puckered.

The next step is to trace the design on the sachet. Fig. 2 shows the design ready for tracing. Pin the design on the sachet taking care that it is quite straight. Slip a piece of used carbon paper under the design; then with a hard pencil and compasses trace over the design with a moderate pressure. New carbon paper is apt to make smudges on the work wherever fingers rest while tracing. Used carbon paper is easy to obtain from owners of typewriters or from offices, as from the typewriting point of view it is waste paper.

When the sachet is embroidered and pressed the only remaining work is to make it up. Fold over  $8\frac{1}{4}$  in. at the plain end with the wrong side uppermost. Top sew the sides together, starting from the hem and working down to the fold. Turn the work on to the right side and press it again.

*Time:* Six periods, if the design is done in the drawing lesson and the practice on the sampler in odd moments.



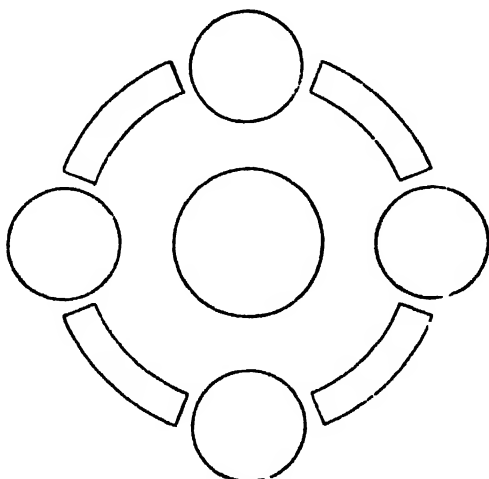


FIG 4

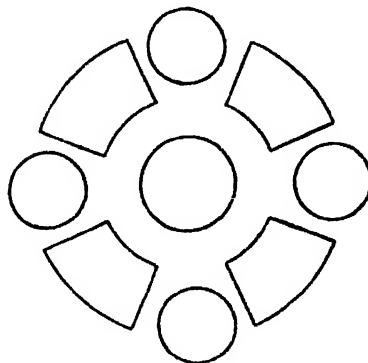


FIG 5

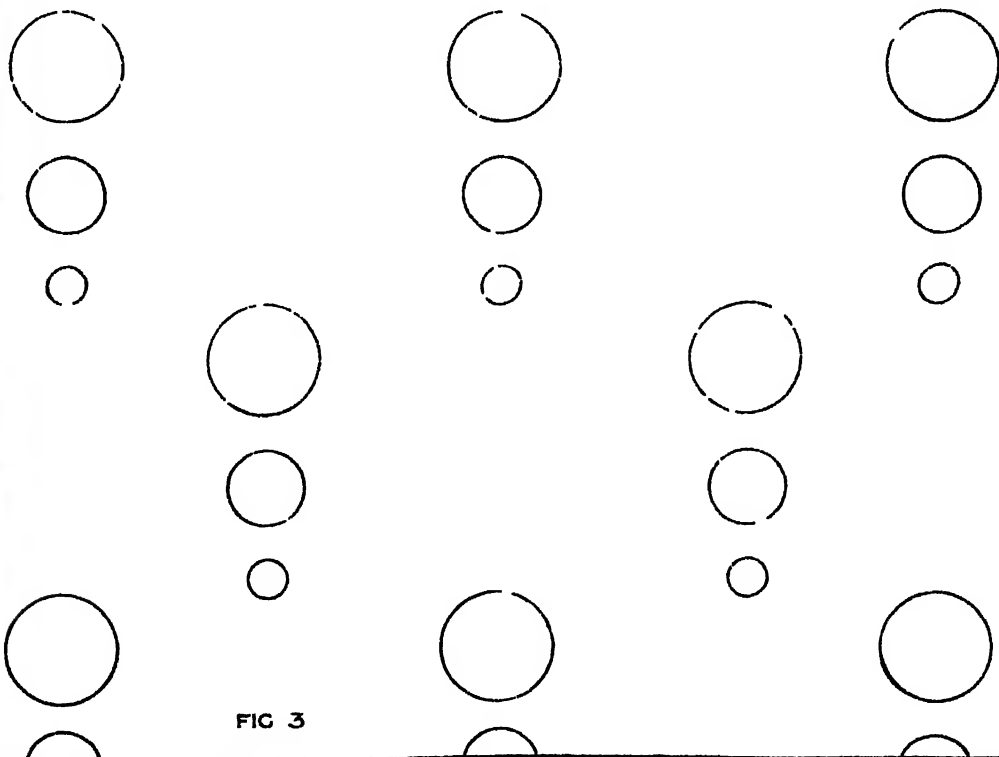
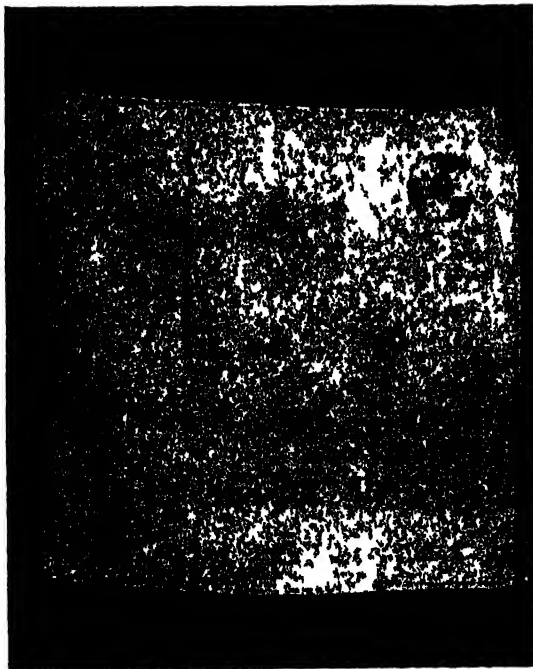


FIG 3

DESIGNS BASED ON REPEITION OF UNITS

## IV. HANDKERCHIEF DECORATED WITH STEM STITCH

**S**TEM stitch which is also called crewel or outline stitch is another simple stitch that can be used for filling areas. It is not used so universally as chain stitch and seldom has a whole piece of needlework been executed in this stitch alone. It does not seem to have been used so extensively



HANDKERCHIEF EMBROIDERY (Fig. 1)

in wool embroidery as one of its names would lead us to expect. Stem stitch is found in Eastern embroideries, in combination with other stitches it appears a great deal in Elizabethan work and is seen also in work of the Stuart Period.

The article chosen for decoration in this lesson is a handkerchief for which the com-

pact filling given by the use of stem stitch is particularly suitable.

Designs intended for embroidering on handkerchiefs should be worked out with rulers and compasses on squared paper. One must be taken that the designs are not too heavy for the purpose for which they are required and are yet suitable for executing in solid stem stitch. There is however no reason why areas should not be joined together by one or two rows of stitchery. By this method a lighter, more graceful effect will be gained, but the evolution of designs built entirely on lines must be avoided as such designs are apt to become the meaningless meanderings that are typical of decadent styles.

Fig. 2 shows the construction of the design used on the handkerchief illustrated in Fig. 1. In making this design more construction lines are needed than in any of the other designs suggested. Fig. 3 is also built up on circles but the construction is obvious. Figs. 4 and 5 are composed of a combination of squares, circles and subdivisions of squares. These designs are intended only as suggestions with regard to methods of working. If by way of starting children in making designs the teacher sees fit to illustrate these suggestions, the drawings should be removed from the blackboard before the children begin their own work, in order to ensure individual effort in creative work on the part of the children.

No additions to the tool pochette are required for this work.

The following classroom tools and materials will be needed:

Needless cambric, lawn, or some similar material.

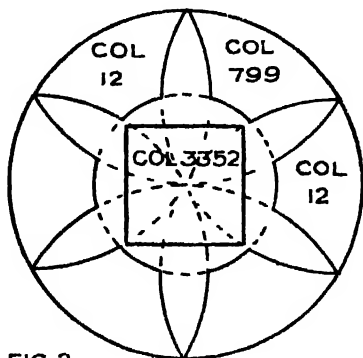


FIG 2

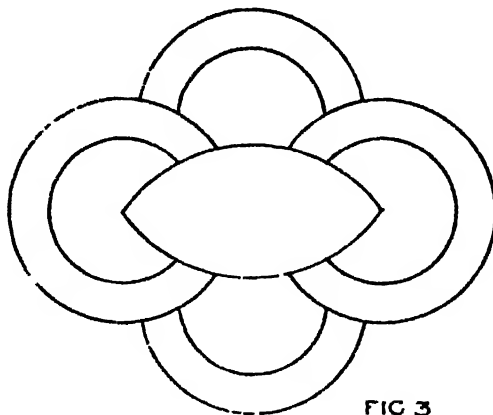


FIG 3

FIG 6

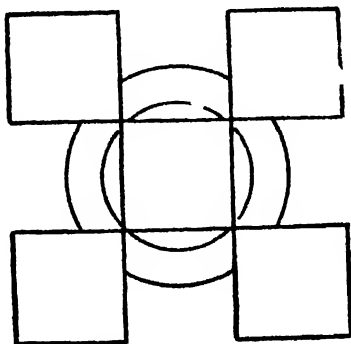
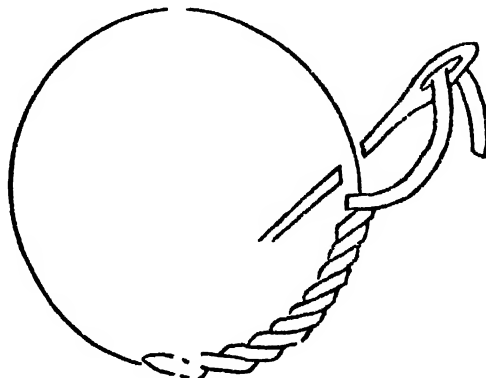


FIG 4

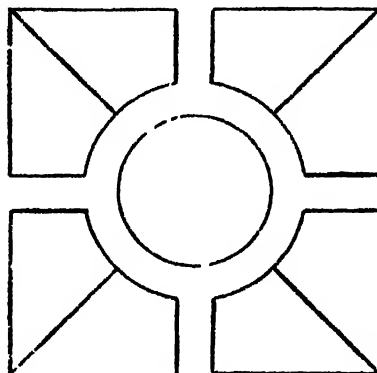


FIG 5



D.M.C. sewing cotton, No. 40, in colours to match the materials chosen

D.M.C. *coton à broder*, No. 16, in clear, pure colour

Tracing paper, or used carbon paper.

Squared paper with  $\frac{1}{2}$  in. ruling

Rulers

Compasses

Pencils,—H.B. and H.H.H.

Large cutting-out scissors

The handkerchief is made from a 12 in. square of fadeless rose-coloured cambric, and is embroidered in D.M.C. *coton à broder*, No. 16, in pink, Col. 3352; green, Col. 12, and blue, Col. 799; the corners are stitched with D.M.C. sewing cotton, No. 40, Col. 3326, which matches the cambric.

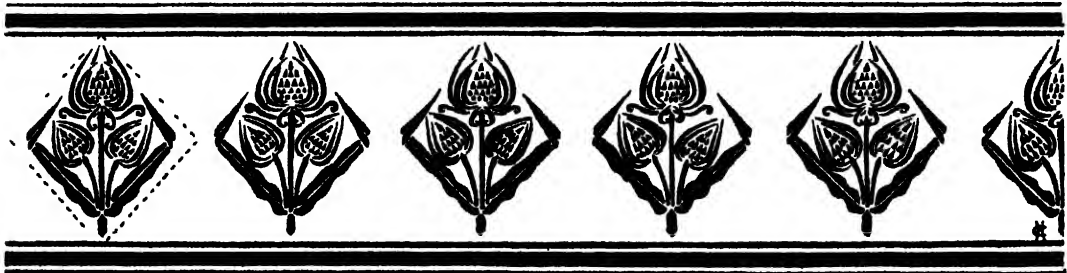
A hem  $\frac{1}{2}$  in. wide when finished is turned down all round the handkerchief and tacked by exactly the same method as that used in Chapter I. A sewing needle, No. 5, can be used for all the decorative work, No. 6 for hemming and top-sewing the corners. A single row of tacking stitch is used to decorate and fasten down the hem. Stem stitch, or more than one row of decorative tacking, would be too heavy on the width of hem that is desirable for a handkerchief of this type. When the hems are finished the design should be traced on the handkerchief, care being taken that the design is centrally placed with regard to the corner, and that it is far enough from the hems to have a surrounding background sufficiently large to set off the design. Placing the design too near the hems will give a crowded heavy effect, while if it is too far from the hems the design will appear lost and disconnected.

Before starting on the handkerchief another simple design should be traced on the sampler and filled with stem stitch for practice. No. 16 D.M.C. is a good thread with which to begin the practice of this embroidery stitch, but when the worker has had some experience, more beautiful results can be obtained if a slightly finer thread is used. For filling areas, the same rule applies in stem stitch as in chain stitch. When dealing with circular or irregular shapes the stitchery should start on the outside of the area to be filled, and follow the outline of the shape, working inwards to the centre row by row. Sometimes, for filling rectangular shapes, the stem stitching is done parallel with either the long or the short sides; this method of working gives a simple patterned effect.

Fig. 6 shows the method of working stem stitch. In the second row, the piece of material picked up with the needle should fall just below that picked up in the preceding row; the same remark applies to all succeeding rows. Working in this way secures an even covering of the background material.

The outside portions of the design on the handkerchief were embroidered first and the square in the centre last; in this case the method of working the square was from the outside edge inwards to the centre: if preferred it may be worked on the method of parallel lines of stitchery.

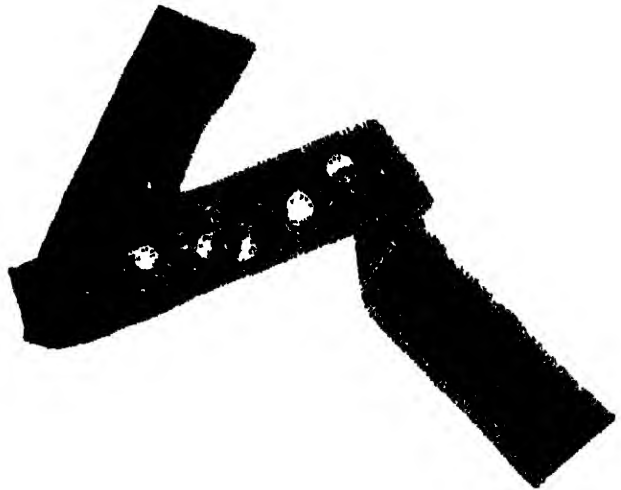
*Time.* Three periods of 40 minutes each if the design is made in the drawing lesson and if practice on the sampler is permitted in odd minutes.



## V. WOOL EMBROIDERY USING FREE DESIGN

WOOL embroidery appears to be a typically English form of decoration. Since very early times England has been famous for her wool. The story of the woollen industry from the twelfth to the nineteenth century gives an intimate picture of a great deal of the social life in England. In the early days wool was exported to Flanders, whence a good deal of it returned in the form of cloth. After some time English people learned to spin and weave the wool which grew on the sheep of their own hillsides. It is difficult to imagine that Englishwomen of those days failed to decorate some material of their own weaving, when they had made it up into dresses which they prized and wore for a very long time. We know from wills made as far back as the tenth century that dresses and hangings were handed down from one generation to another. We also know that people of those days knew how to dye materials by using the juices of plants. As early as the tenth century a law was made regulating the weighing and pricing of wool. Similarly, throughout English history, we find laws relating to wool, her staple product. The measure we know as a yard was instituted originally for measuring woollen cloth. Many words and phrases in the English language are the language of the woollen trade; for example, *spinster*, "to spin a yarn", and "to tell the tale" originally meant *to count the sheep*.

Chaucer was for some time "Controller of the wool customs." Perhaps it was his knowledge of the trade in wool and cloth



HAIR BAND SHOWING FREE DESIGN (FIG. 1)

that made him say of the Wife of Bath in the *Canterbury Tales*--

"Of clooth making she hadde swiche an  
haunt,  
She passed hem of Ypres and of Gaunt"

Wool embroidery lends itself very well to what is called free design. Many people find this method much easier than making a design on paper and visualising the finished effect. This chapter has been planned as a change from the more orderly thinking that has been necessary in the preceding ones. Colour, design, composition stitchery and suitability play their parts as in all the other lessons, but their presence is not so apparent. At the same time, however, thinking must be quicker and more immediate, as problems present themselves continuously, and to the very end they call for instant solution

at the point of the needle. In the preceding lessons, the design had already been settled before its execution on the material began. Most problems were therefore anticipated, or should have been, before starting on the article itself, except that of stitchery alone in which problems persist to the very last stitch.

The stitches used on the hat band illustrated in Fig. 1 are two that were used in the first lesson—blanket stitch and decorative tacking stitch. In this lesson they are used in new arrangements on different materials.

The decoration should follow some definite scheme, colours should be chosen before starting. The flowers should be composed into a block or blocks, powdered or else placed in some geometrical formation gained by eye-measurement. Fig. 2 shows the treatment that could be used where a light border is desired, Fig. 3 suggests a method of covering an entire surface in a free, all-over pattern; Fig. 4 might be used where a design is needed suggesting a heavy weighting border such as on the hem of a hanging. This border might be enlarged by increasing the size of the flowers and adding more.

The addition of pointed needles, such as are used in Indian coiled basketry, will be required for the tool pochette. The following classroom tools and materials will be needed:

Woollen materials, such as "wool cloth", flannel or some similar material of open weave.

Tapestry wools in clear strong colours.

Large cutting-out scissors.

Materials of loose open weave are best for this type of embroidery. "Wool-cloth" and flannel, which can be bought in very attractive colours, are easy to work on. If the hat band is needed for a summer hat, linens of open weave and soft coloured canvas can be used. The hat band illustrated

in Fig. 1 is made from a strip of brown, light-weight, hand woven tweed, 31 in. long and 2½ in. wide. The length and width of the hat band would, of course, vary with the needs and taste of the owner. The four edges are blanket stitched with stitches placed about ¼ in. apart over the raw edge. To turn in any material will make the edge bulky, and it is unnecessary if the blanket stitching is done properly. Care should be taken that the blanket stitching is not done tightly, or the material will fray away and give a hard, ridged edge. Straight blanket stitch need not be practised on the sampler, as it has already been used in Chapter I. The blanket stitching is done with wool a little lighter than the colour of the material; stitching with another colour altogether is apt to detract from the decoration and, except under special circumstances, give a home-made effect to the work.

Needles should be pointed; the smaller sizes of pointed needles for Indian coiled basketry are excellent for the purpose; they make a hole in the material sufficiently large for the wool to pull through easily without dragging either the material or the wool.

Blanket stitching in circles to form flowers calls for some sampler practice, as working all the stitches into the centre and making a circle by eye at the same time is a skilled performance. The centres of the flowers are made by two decorative tacking stitches placed close together; the leaves are composed of one or more decorative tacking stitches, according to what is required to balance the design.

Children enjoy decorating plain woollen jumpers, woollen dresses, or felt hats with this form of embroidery. Such work teaches children, while they are young, what can be done if good, plain, machine-made articles are bought, and the right amount of simple decoration is added at home.

*Time.* Four periods.

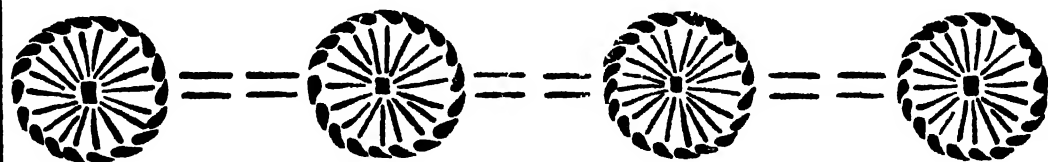


FIG 2

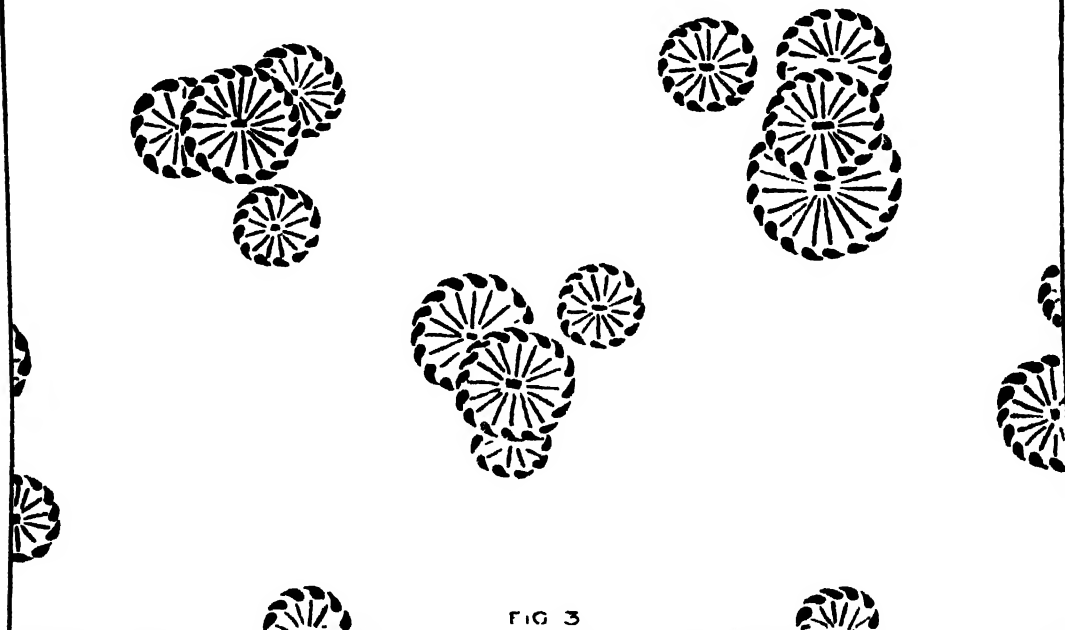


FIG 3

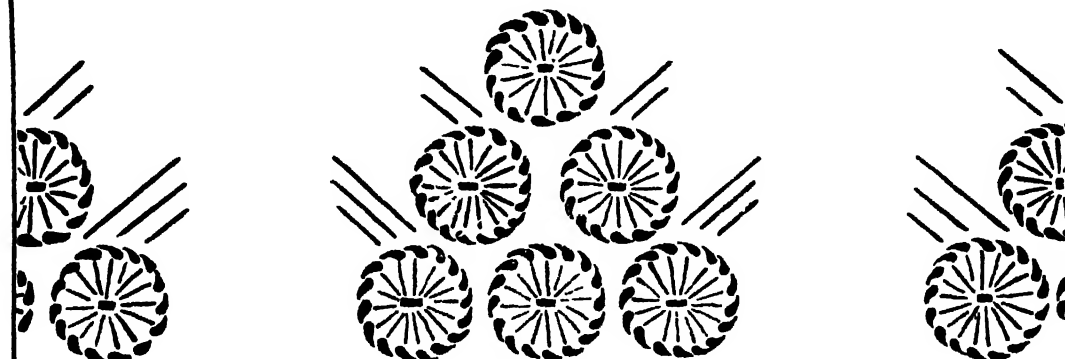


FIG 4

EXAMPLES OF FREE DESIGN FOR WOOL EMBROIDERY

## VI. POCHETTE EXECUTED IN TENT STITCH

**H**ITHERTO we have been dealing with decorative stitches that cover only certain portions of the material which forms the background. This chapter introduces another form of decoration in which the material is entirely covered with stitchery. The stitch used is one of those employed on canvas, it is known as tent stitch. It is also known by the French name of *petit point*. Tent stitch has been known for a long time, and has been used fairly universally, but its English name has not the romantic origin which it suggests. The stitch is not associated with tent-making

stitch, either alone, or in combination with other canvas stitches. For the beginner, however, it is wiser to learn one stitch at a time, and to execute examples in that stitch alone.

Canvas varies as to the number of holes to the inch, and as the stitch must completely cover the background, the wool used must be of the right thickness to hide all the canvas; at the same time it should be of a thickness that will pass easily through the holes of the canvas without dragging.

Blunt rug needles will be required as an addition to the tool *pochette*.

The following classroom tools and materials will be needed:

Penelope canvas.

Tapestry wools in clear, rich colours.

Light weight material suitable for lining the *pochette*.

Dress fasteners.

Tacking cotton.

Very narrow Russian braid to match the wool used as the background colour.

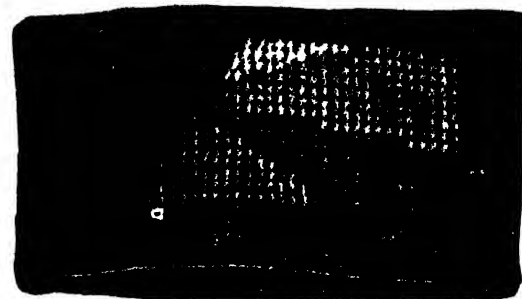
Sewing silk or D.M.C. sewing cotton to match the braid and the lining.

Large cutting-out scissors.

Used carbon paper.

Rulers.

Pencils,—HB and HHH.



POCHETTE EXECUTED IN TENT STITCH (FIG. 1)

of any kind, its real context is tapestry. Tent stitch takes its name from the tent, the frame on which material was stretched to dry. It was originally used to imitate woven tapestries which were the work of the loom.

The working of tent stitch is a good introduction to cross stitch, of which it forms the first part. It can be worked rapidly, and it gives a beautiful smooth surface; it is probable that for this reason it was so widely used for needlework pictures in former days. Through the centuries, hangings, chair seats and even carpets have been worked in this

The design used on the *pochette* illustrated in Fig. 4 is more difficult to work than that shown in Fig. 2 or Fig. 3 because of the sloping lines which form part of the design in Fig. 4. Designs similar to those suggested in Figs. 2 and 3 will be much easier for children to start on. However, should designs of the type illustrated in Fig. 1 be preferred, there is no reason why

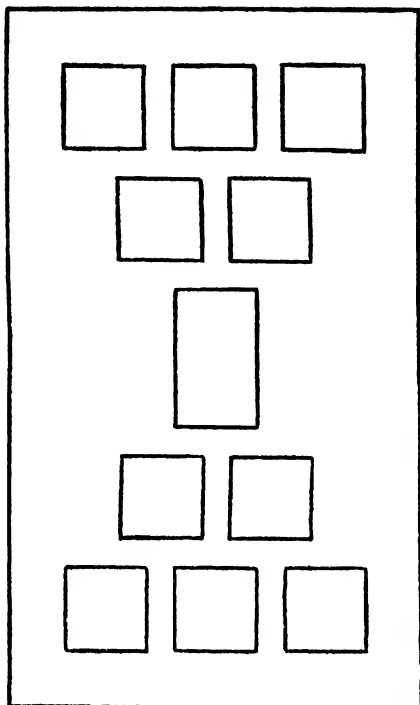


FIG 2

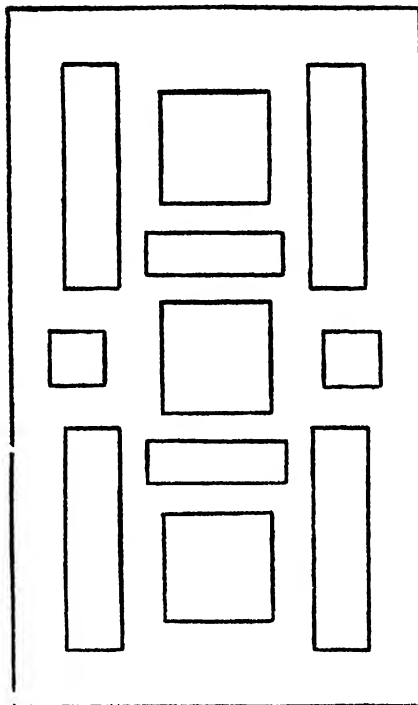


FIG 3

SIMPLE DESIGN SUITABLE FOR EXECUTION IN FINE STITCH

children should not attempt the problem of stepping the stitches in such a way as to form the sloping lines. It will be best for the present if designs using circles are avoided, and only those using rectilinear forms are attempted. Planning these designs in terms of the number of holes to the inch is a simple matter, and keeping the design true will present few, if any, difficulties.

The pochette illustrated in Fig. 1 is made from a piece of Penelope canvas,  $9\frac{1}{2}$  in. by 6 in.; it is worked with Pearsall's tapestry wools—blue, No. 21, green, No. 80; orange, No. 117, scarlet, No. 4, deep crimson, No. 51, and dull pink, No. 26. It is lined with tussore silk that is patterned with a geometrical design, using red, blue and green circles on a cream ground, and is finished off round the edge with a very narrow Russian braid that matches the wool used in the background.

The canvas is first whipped all round with double tacking cotton using large stitches, this is to prevent the canvas from fraying while it is being worked upon. The method of working depends upon the type of design chosen. If it is the type of design shown in Fig. 1 the design is traced on to that part of the canvas which will form the flap of the pochette when made up. Great care

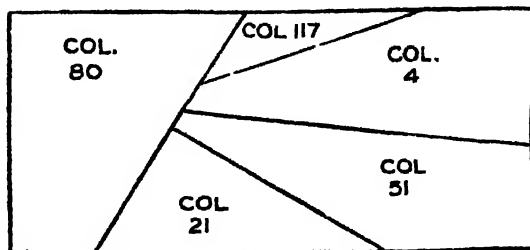


FIG 4

WORKING DRAWING OF DESIGN USED ON POCLETTE  
[ILLUSTRATED IN FIG. 1]

must be taken that the horizontal and perpendicular lines of the design lie exactly over corresponding threads in the canvas, or difficulties will arise in the embroidery. Fig. 4 shows the design for the pochette ready for tracing on to the canvas. If the design is similar to those shown in Figs. 2 and 3, the plan of the design will be used as a working drawing. The number of holes to an inch in the canvas is easily determined. Each section of the design can be marked in terms of the number of stitches to be worked in the various colours. The worker can then begin to build up the design on canvas with needle and wool, starting at one corner,  $\frac{1}{2}$  in. should be left bare all round for turning.

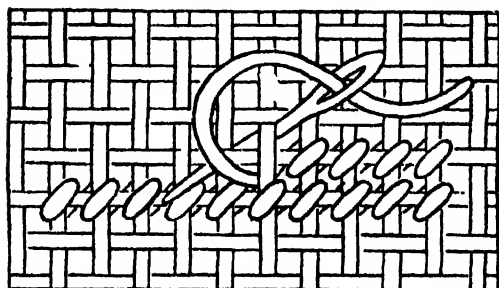


FIG. 5

## METHOD OF WORKING TENT STITCH

The method of working tent stitch is shown in Fig. 5. The thread is fastened in by making two or three darning stitches near the right hand side of the work; the stitch being worked from right to left. After making the last darning stitch the needle is brought up in the hole last but one of the lower of the two rows of holes being worked in. The needle is inserted in the hole diagonally above, carried through to the back and brought up in the next hole on the left of the starting hole. Continue working in this way until the left hand side of the work is reached, take the needle through to the back of the work, turn the work round so that the working end is on the right hand of the worker, bring the needle up in the

second hole from the end of the next row of holes below and continue working as before. The method described for starting a new row by turning the work is followed in order to ensure that successive rows of stitches lie in the same direction. This smoothness of texture is an essential feature of tent stitch. Working ends are finished off by making running stitches through the back of the work. New ends of wool are started in similar fashion; care should be taken lest unevenness is caused by the running of finishing and starting ends over one another. The back of the work should be neat and smooth; the stitches on the back differ from those on the front only in being slightly longer.

When the decoration is finished the turnings are folded on to the back of the work and herringboned down very carefully with cotton to match the background wool. Care must be taken that the herringbone stitches do not either come through on to the right side or pull the tent stitch; if possible put them into the canvas. The turnings should be tacked down before herringboning, using large stitches which are taken right through the work. These stitches should be cut out carefully after the herringboning is finished. If there is a selvedge on one side of the canvas it should be snipped  $\frac{1}{4}$  in. deep at every inch to prevent dragging on that side. A little canvas can be cut off across the corners to prevent bulkiness.

The lining is cut the same size as the canvas,  $9\frac{1}{2}$  in. by 6 in. It is turned in a little more than  $\frac{1}{2}$  in. all round, and is pinned, tacked and slip-stitched on to the pochette with silk or cotton to match the lining, using a No. 5 needle. If the lining is of patterned material it should have a pattern that is in keeping with the design on the pochette. The design in this case being geometrical, so also should be the pattern on the lining, but not such as will give a jazz effect to the whole.

The pochette is now ready to be made up. Fold up the end for the pocket to a depth of

$2\frac{1}{2}$  in. Mark places for clasps, sew on clasps and top sew the sides of the pocket as suggested in Chapter I, leaving the sides open  $\frac{1}{4}$  in. at the fold of the pocket for finishing off with braid. Poke one end of the braid in at the fold; finish top sewing that side and then sew on the braid using a running stitch and an occasional back-stitch. When working round the flap of the pochette, put the braid just under the flap. Now sew the braid down along the second side of the pocket to within 1 in. of the fold. Measure and cut off the braid, allowing  $\frac{1}{2}$  in. for finishing off. Poke the end of the braid into the piece of pocket left open, finish top sewing this side and then finish sewing on the braid. Finishing with braid may prove difficult for some children in which case it may be omitted. The braid is used to cover a thin line of

canvas which remains after the bare canvas margin has been turned in.

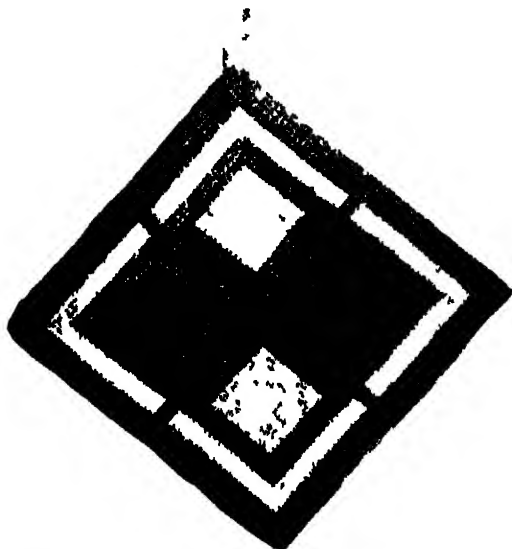
Beginners sometimes pull their work off the straight while working. This can be rectified by placing the finished work face downwards on a sheet of very wet blotting paper resting on a drawing board. The work can then be gently pulled into shape, pinned securely with drawing pins and left until dry. Glass headed or coloured headed drawing pins are best for this purpose, as they have long slender pins and do not rust.

Tent stitch cannot be practised on the existing sampler but practice is not likely to be necessary. Tent stitch is excellent for the development of working rhythm, and permits of progress toward real working piece.

*Time* Three to four periods if the designs are made in the drawing lesson.

## VII. AN IRONHOLDER EXECUTED IN CROSS STITCH

ANOTHER canvas stitch is used in this chapter. Cross stitch or *gross point* as it is sometimes called is a much better known stitch than tent stitch which was used in the previous chapter. Most people, at some time or other have worked cross stitch while tent stitch is used by comparatively few. As was stated in the last chapter, cross stitch is tent stitch carried a step further. Cross stitch has been popular with English embroideresses for several centuries especially during the seventeenth century. Cross stitch was used for the same purposes as tent stitch, sometimes the two stitches were used in combination. Chair seats, for instance, frequently show these two stitches in combination, the more delicate parts being executed in tent stitch, while the places where hard wear occurred were done in cross stitch.



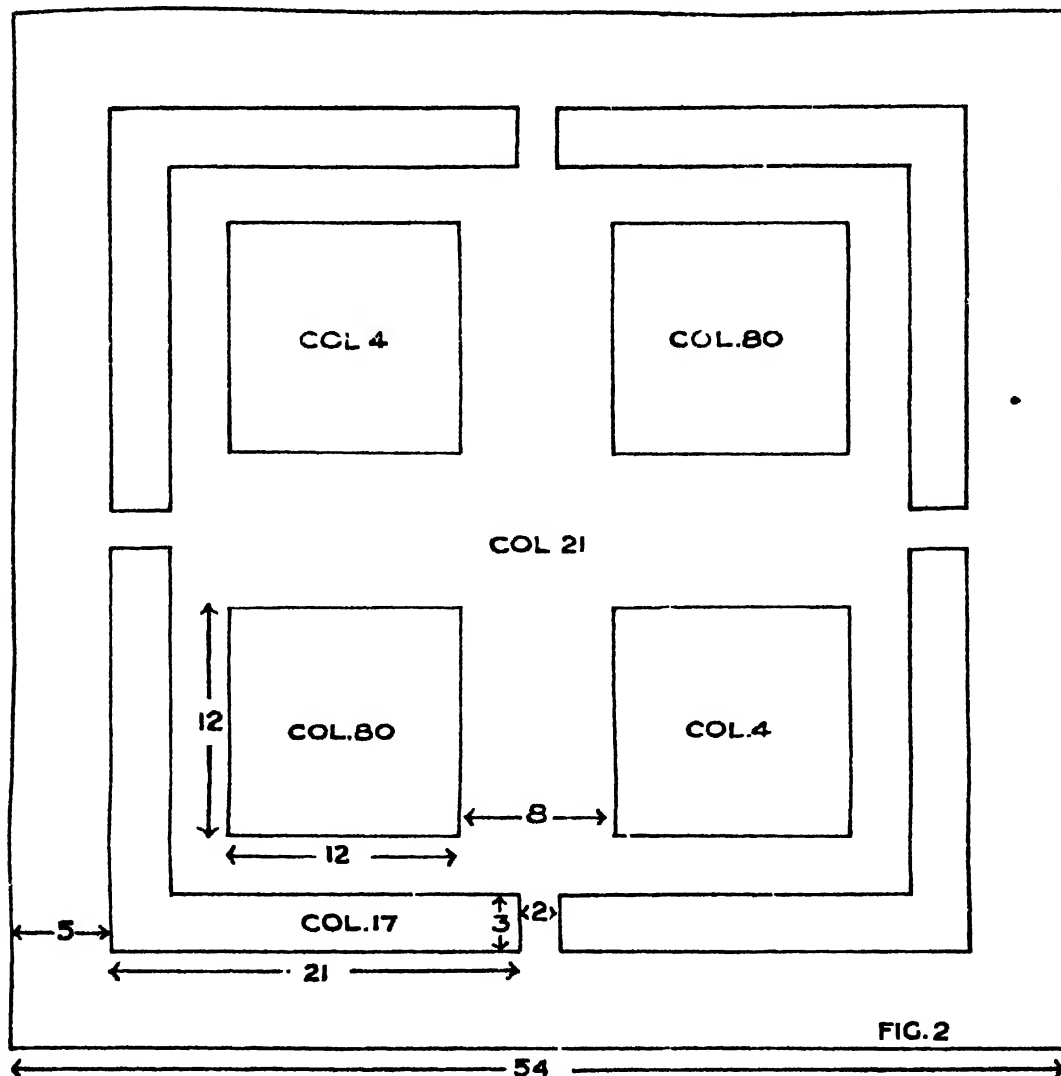
IRONHOLDER EXECUTED IN CROSS STITCH (FIG. 11)



Designs suitable for this chapter will be similar to those used for the pochette in the chapter on tent stitch, with the difference that in the chapter on tent stitch a rectangular shape had to be filled, whereas in this chapter a square is the most suitable shape from the point of view of usefulness. Designs using circular forms are still better avoided for the present, and there is, after all, infinite variety in the choice of the pro-

portions of rectangular forms. No designs are suggested in this lesson other than the one on the ironholder, as the type of design used in the two chapters on canvas stitches is the same. The experience gained in making designs to fill a rectangle, in the previous chapter, will prove to be ample preparation for dealing with the simpler problem of filling a square.

In the chapter on tent stitch it was sug-



WORKING DRAWING OF DESIGN USED FOR HOLDER

gested that a design drawn on squared paper, might be used as a working drawing. Fig. 2 shows the design used on the ironholder prepared for use in the manner suggested. A usual size in canvas is 10 holes to the inch. Fortunately, paper ruled in squares 10 to the inch is also common. If such paper be used and each hole be reckoned as a stitch, drawing and work will correspond in every particular.

The canvas used for the ironholder illustrated worked out at just over 8 holes to the inch; hence the design was worked out on paper ruled in eighths in preference to that ruled in tenths since closer correspondence in size was gained thereby. Each hole represents a stitch, but, since every hole is somewhat larger than its corresponding stitch, the drawing is larger than the actual ironholder. Once the working drawing is ready, the making of the ironholder may begin.

No additions to the tool pochette are required.

The following classroom tools and materials are needed:

Penelope canvas

Tapestry wools

Woollen material for lining and padding the ironholder

D.M.C. sewing cotton to match the lining for the holder.

Tacking cotton.

Blunt rug needles

Large cutting-out scissors.

Squared paper.

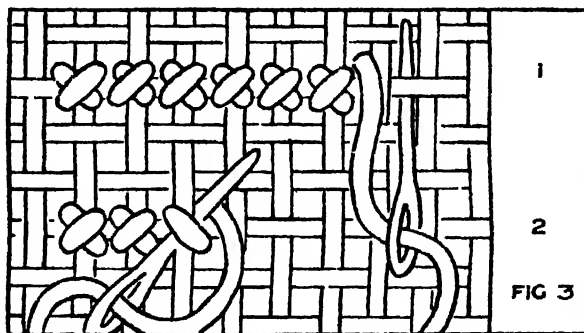
Pencils,—H B

Rulers.

The ironholder illustrated in Fig. 1 is made from a piece of Penelope canvas 7 in. square, and is worked in Pearsall's tapestry wools, blue, No. 21; scarlet, No. 4; orange, No. 17, and green, No. 80. It is lined and padded with fawn flannel.

The edges of the canvas are whipped to prevent fraying as was suggested in the last chapter. Cross stitch is illustrated in Fig. 3. One important rule must be borne in mind when working cross stitch; the top stitch must always lie across the under stitch in the same direction, or an uneven surface will be the result both as regards texture and colour. The method of finishing and starting threads is the same as was described for tent stitch.

When the cross stitching is finished, the ironholder should be pressed from the back; it is then ready for padding. The padding and final lining must be of woollen material, as wool is less inflammable than cotton; flannel is definitely dangerous because of its extreme inflammability. The material for padding is cut  $\frac{1}{2}$  in. smaller all round than the decorated surface, that is  $5\frac{1}{2}$  in. square. The number of such squares that will be needed depends on the thickness of the material used. The padding is placed on the back of the decorated portion and tacked on with large tacking stitches that go through on to the right side of the holder. A little canvas is cut off across the corners, the turning on the edges of the ironholder is turned down on to the padding and herringboned securely. The tackings should then be cut out carefully. The hanger is made from the same material as the lining and measures 4 in. by 14 in. before making up. It is an advantage if one of the long



METHOD OF WORKING CROSS STITCH

sides of this piece is a selvedge as in that case no turning will be required on this side. Fold the strip lengthwise into three and slip stitch the double edges together. Bend the completed strip to form a loop and sew it securely on to one corner of the ironholder. The lining is cut 7 in square that is,  $\frac{1}{2}$  in larger all round than the decorated

portion of the ironholder. A little more than  $\frac{1}{2}$  in is turned down all round this square, it is then pinned, tacked and slip-stitched on to the holder with cotton to match the lining in colour, using a No 5 sewing needle.

*Time* Six periods

## VIII. A CIRCULAR SCALLOPED MAT

SCALLOPING is a very popular method for decorating an edge. It is very simple to execute, but like many other simple things a high degree of skill is necessary if a pleasing and satisfactory article is to be achieved. Nothing looks worse than scalloping in which the stitches are too wide apart especially if the background

material and the thread used for scalloping are of different colours. Bad scalloping shows rough, untidy edges in the first wall, if they do not appear better than good scalloping on the other hand will wear well and look attractive almost indefinitely.

Scalloping is generally used as a bounding line to cover a raw edge because it has only one flat side, sometimes, however, it is used in the design itself. The Elizabethan domestic needlework mentioned in Chapter III, shows admirable use of buttonhole stitch in the design, in combination with chain stitch and other stitches. Buttonhole stitch used as part of the design will be dealt with in a later lesson as practice is needed before it can be used satisfactorily for this purpose.

No addition to the tool palette is required.

The following classroom tools and materials will be needed.

Linen, casement cloth or some similar material.

DMC *coton à broder*, No 16, in pure, clear colours.

DMC *coton à broder*, No 16, of the same colour as the material on which it is to be used (for padding).

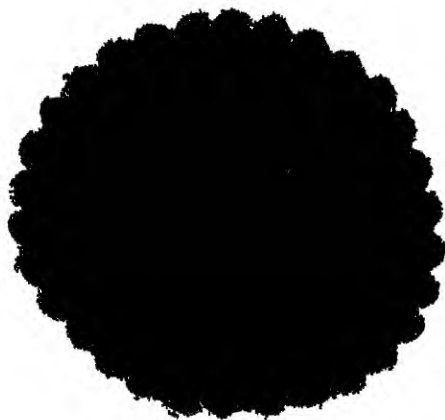
Compasses.

Used carbon paper.

Paper—thin brown is suitable.

Large cutting-out scissors.

Pencils, HHHH for tracing, HB for making scallops.



SCALLOPED MAT (FIG. 1)

Pennies.  
Halfpennies.  
Drawing pins.

The mat illustrated in Fig. 1 is 11 in. in diameter and is cut out of a piece of butcher blue linen,  $12\frac{1}{2}$  in. square. It is scalloped with copper-coloured D.M.C. *coton à broder*, No. 16, Col. 923, and it is padded with blue D.M.C. *coton à broder*, No. 16, Col. 923.

A circular mat has been chosen as a starting exercise since fewer difficulties occur while marking the scallops when there are no corners in the work. Draw a circle of  $5\frac{1}{2}$  in. radius with the compasses on a piece of paper  $12\frac{1}{2}$  in. square. Cut a square of linen whose sides measure  $12\frac{1}{2}$  in.; draw threads to cut along. Pin the linen on to a drawing board or table with drawing pins, taking care not to pull the linen out of shape. On the square of linen, place the paper on which the circle has been drawn, and pin it down carefully along one side. Slip a piece of used carbon paper under the piece of paper already marked with a circle and trace the circle with a *hard* pencil; this circle represents the outer edge of the scallops.

The scallops are marked by using a halfpenny and a penny in the following way. Place the halfpenny inside the circle so that it touches the edge of the traced circle; mark round the halfpenny as far as will give a dip of about  $\frac{1}{4}$  in. up from the circle; the next scallop will join at this point. Before marking the last half dozen scallops try whether or no they will fit exactly into the remaining space; if not, make a few scallops slightly larger or smaller than those made hitherto. When the outside edge of the scalloping has been traced all round the mat in this way, the inside of the scalloping is marked by using the penny. The penny, being a larger circle, cuts off the scallops more

bluntly at their junctions with each other; they are, for this reason, less likely to tear in wear, as well as being easier to work. Farthings and halfpennies can be used for marking smaller scallops. Coins which have milled edges should never be used because the milled edge grates the lead of the pencil on to the work and gives a jagged edge to the scallop.

These scallops are padded with chain stitch, which must increase in size with the width of the scallop. At the joinings of the scallops a running stitch is used instead of chain stitch; to continue the chain stitch at this point would destroy the shape of the scallop and make it bulky. The join between two scallops is the weak point in scalloping, and it is best strengthened by a superimposed stitch which will be described shortly (see Fig. 2). Padding should be done with cotton matching the background material in colour, as it is then less likely

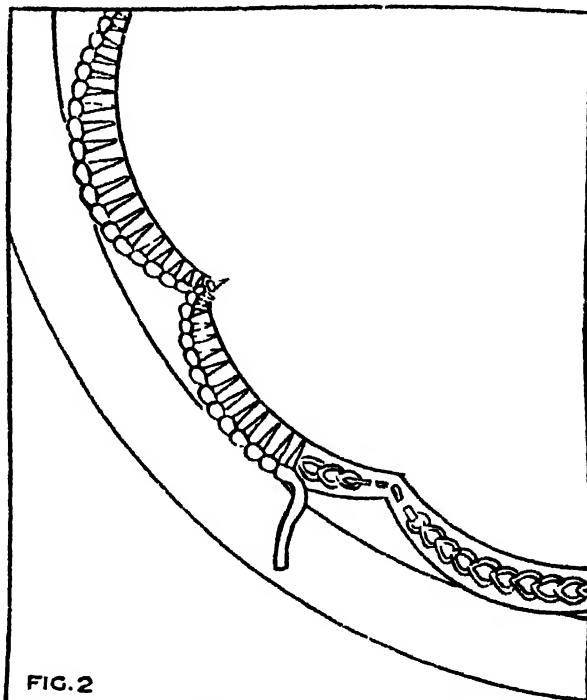


FIG. 2  
SCALLOPING SHOWING CONSTRUCTIONAL LINES, PADDING  
AND STITCHES

to show if the scalloping stitches are made not quite close together.

Scalloping is illustrated in Fig. 2. This diagram shows the stitches placed wide apart in order to make the technique of working clear. There are several important points to remember:

1. Buttonhole stitches must lie close together; but on the other hand, if they are too crowded they overlap and give a ridged effect, which may even fray away the material.

2. The buttonholing follows the curve of the scallop as if the stitches were radii of a circle; stitches kept straight cause bulkiness and too few stitches at the joining of two scallops.

3. The top of each scallop is *one* stitch; the stitches before and after this stitch overlap one another, that is, they are worked into each other, to strengthen this spot, which would otherwise be weak.

4. Cut the scallops from the back, sloping the scissors in, towards the centre of the mat. Scissors must be small and should have firm, sharp blades.

5. Cut the scallops before washing, as threads left from cutting will wash in with the slight shrinkage.

The line of back-stitching, which is  $\frac{1}{4}$  in. in from the inside line of the scalloping is done before the scallops are cut out. A No. 5 sewing needle can be used all the time during this lesson.

When the mat is finished it should be pressed well from the back, first on a damp cloth placed over it, and then on the material itself.

A few scallops should be done for practice on the sampler before starting on the mat.

*Time* Four periods, if sampler practice can be done in odd moments.

## IX. A DECORATED LUNCH BAG

A LUNCH bag made of hessian seems a commonplace article to decorate. There is, however, good reason why everyday things should be made beautiful, provided that the decoration in no way impairs their usefulness. In some countries much more attention is paid to making commonplace articles beautiful than is usual in England. For example, the slogan of the present movement in Sweden has become *Vackrare Var dagvara*—"Beautiful Everyday Ware." A less conscious tendency to beautify commonplace products is shown in the manufacture of some Russian sacks. They are woven of flax, of a texture coarser than Russian crash, but instead of being plain, simple patterns have been woven on them giving an effect similar to that illustrated in Fig. 1, which has been obtained

by couching wool. These Russian sacks when opened out and fringed at the ends may be used as rugs.

The decoration on the lunch bag should be simple and strictly geometrical in character, but these restrictions should not give rise to work which is dull in appearance. Within the limits of simple geometrical design the Navaho Indians weave rugs which are celebrated for the beauty of their patterns. The appearance of couching in straight lines with wool on hessian is similar to weaving, and we may take a woven design as an inspiration for work in couching. In the imitation of a woven design it is necessary to remember the limitations of weaving, or we shall lose the spirit of the originals,—the design must follow either the warp or the weft threads. The looms of the Navaho



DECORATED LUNCH BAG (FIG. 1)

weavers are simple, and the threads are stout, therefore the outlines of their patterns are clearly marked by the angles produced by the meetings of the warp and weft threads. Imitation is not the aim of the lesson, but Navaho design is so excellent in its barbaric simplicity, that a child will learn a great deal by copying one such design, if reproductions of some of the best blankets can be procured. The design should, if possible, be copied in the colours of the original.

The following extract from the book *Indian Blankets and their Makers*, by George

Wharton James, tells us the colours used by the Navaho weaver. "Red is the colour of the sunshine, hence its glorification in so many Navaho blankets. . . . He sees in the East the white light of morning, hence white is always symbolical of the East. The cloudless South is generally blue, hence blue always symbolises South. The sunset in the West is so often tinted yellow that that colour always symbolises West, while from the North come the dark, black clouds, hence black always symbolises North." These colours, red, white, blue, yellow and black, are the colours of the Navaho designs.

There are no further additions required for the tool pochette.

The following classroom tools and materials will be needed:

Coloured hessian

D.M.C. *coton perle*, No. 8, of the same colour as the hessian.

Pearsall's tapestry wools in clear, rich colours.

Large cutting-out scissors.

Tacking cotton.

Pointed needles such as are used for Indian coiled basketry.

The bag illustrated in Fig. 1 is made from a piece of brown hessian 19 in. long and 13½ in. wide, and two small pieces 18 in. long and 3 in. wide. The decoration is executed in tapestry wools in the following colours: jade, No. 75; red, No. 5; orange,

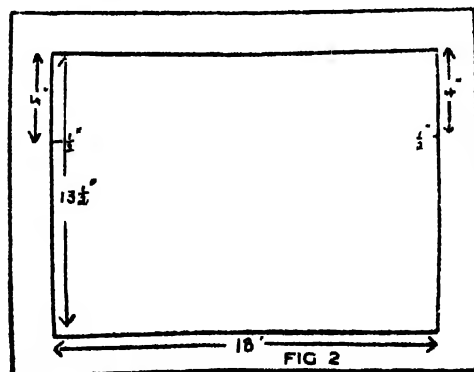


DIAGRAM ILLUSTRATING PLAN OF BAG

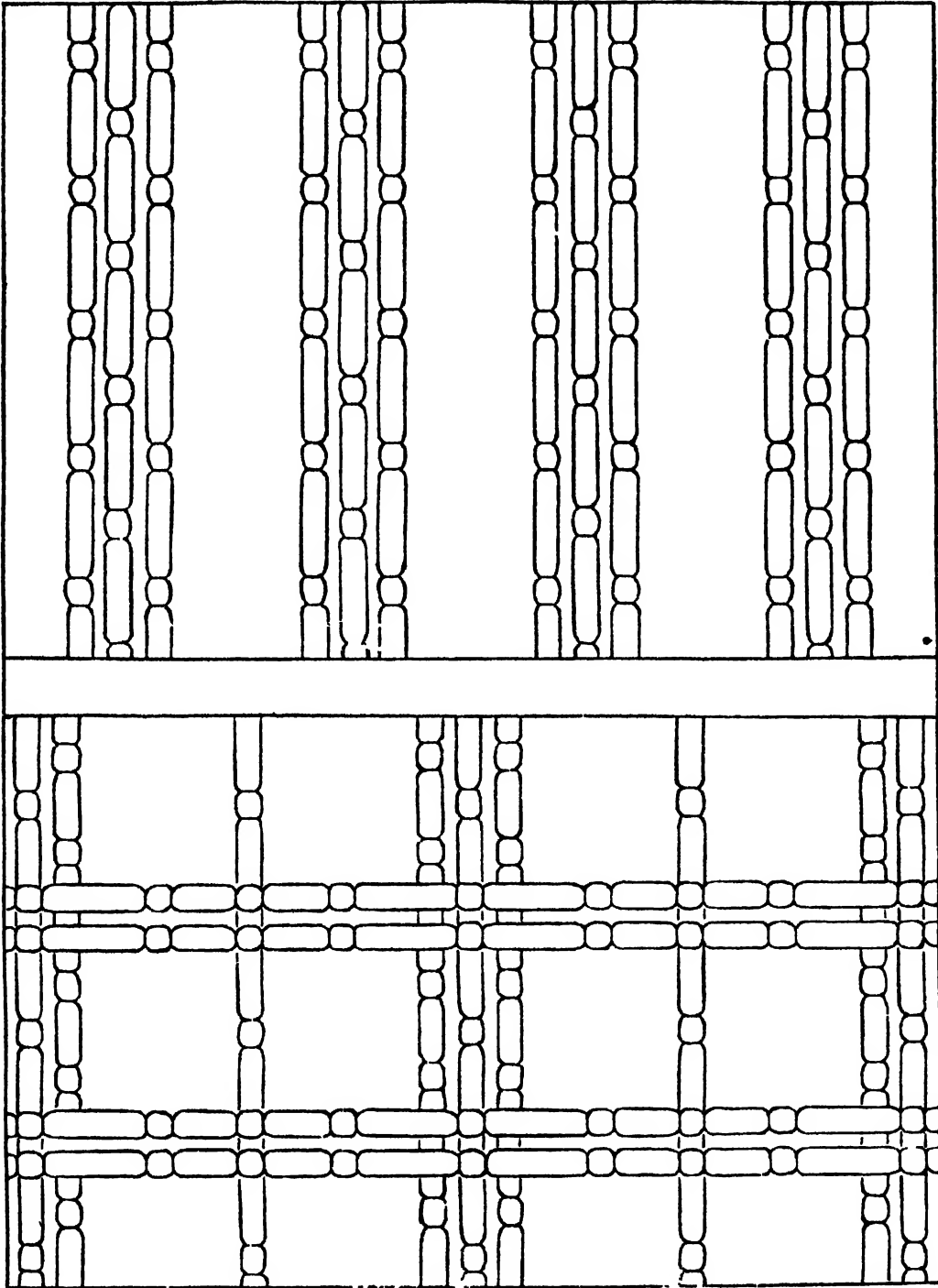


FIG. 3

FIG. 4

DESIGN SUITABLE FOR COLCHING

No. 117; light brown, No. 90. The decoration is couched down with dark brown, No. 91. The herringbone stitch is worked with D.M.C. *coton perle*, No. 801, which matches the hessian.

A single hem is turned up all round the piece of hessian, and is tacked down. The hem must be reversed along the side which makes the turnover at the top of the finished bag. This reversal is done in the following way:

Measure 4 in. from each end of the hem, and at these points make a snip inwards,  $\frac{1}{2}$  in. deep. Turn a single hem  $\frac{1}{2}$  in. wide on to the opposite side of the material from that on which the hem was previously tacked. Tack down the reversed hem (Fig. 2).

All the hems should be herringboned down with *coton perle*, No. 8 in colour to match the hessian. The herringbone stitches should be large, or they will pull and fray the material instead of making the neat strong finish which is required.

The bag is now ready to be decorated. In a case the pattern is a free design, but being of a geometrical character a certain amount of planning is required to keep the design true. The lines of decoration should be planned, and if necessary guiding lines of tacking cotton may be used. Fig. 3 shows a simple variation of the design on the bag illustrated in Fig. 1. Fig. 4 shows a design which is considerably more difficult to execute. A study of the tying stitches in this pattern (Fig. 4) reveals that they occur in regular sequence and form a secondary pattern, together with the pattern formed by the long threads they give the effect of a plaid. The regularity of the tying stitches in Figs. 1 and 3 gives the appearance of weaving.

Fig. 5 illustrates another type of design suggested by a Navaho blanket. If we suppose that the warp threads run from the top to the bottom of the bag, the lines of couching will follow the supposed weft threads, that is, they will run across the width of the bag. For example, in the central portion of the pattern shown in

Fig. 5, the lines of couching will run from A to B, then from C to D, and so on, until this part of the pattern is complete.

The procedure of working the decoration on the bag illustrated in Fig. 1 was as follows:

The perpendicular lines of couching, 3 in. apart, were worked first, finishing 3 in. from the top edge so that their ends should be well covered by the turnover in the finished bag. The work began with the centre line of couching (red), and it was then easy to work the jade threads on each side of it. For the method of couching see Fig. 6. It is easy to follow a thread of the material for the first row of decoration, although, as it has already been suggested, tacking threads may be used for guidance.

The horizontal lines were then added, which being also 3 in. apart, divided the background into three inch squares. These lines of decoration were finished off at the back of the herringboned hem on each side. The turnover was decorated with parallel lines of couching checks, or any more complicated style of decoration, would give the appearance of overcrowding. Seven rows of couching were used in the following order: light brown, jade orange, red, orange jade light brown. The tying stitch throughout the bag was of a dark brown colour.

The handles of the bag were made up and sewn on before the sides of the bag were joined. The two smaller pieces of hessian, 10 in. by 3 in., were used for making the handles.  $\frac{1}{2}$  in. of material was turned down along each long side of the strips, the strips were then doubled down the middle, pinned, tacked and then slip stitched with D.M.C. No. 6 in colour to match the hessian. In order to avoid bulk the ends of the handles were not turned in. The handles were pinned on  $5\frac{1}{2}$  in. from the top edge of the bag, and herringboned to the material with large stitches along three edges of the handle and across it, in the form of a rectangle with sides  $1\frac{1}{4}$  in. long.

The turnover was then folded over to a depth of 2 in. and the sides pinned and



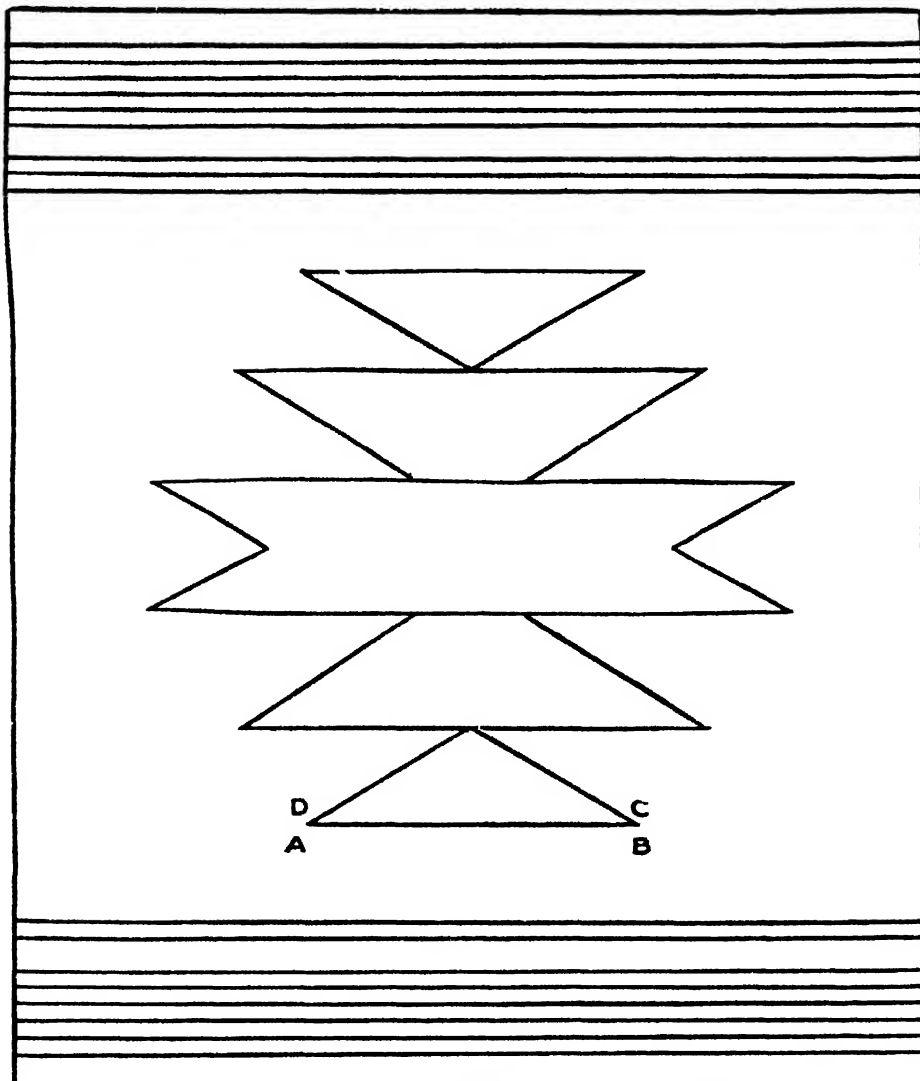


FIG. 5

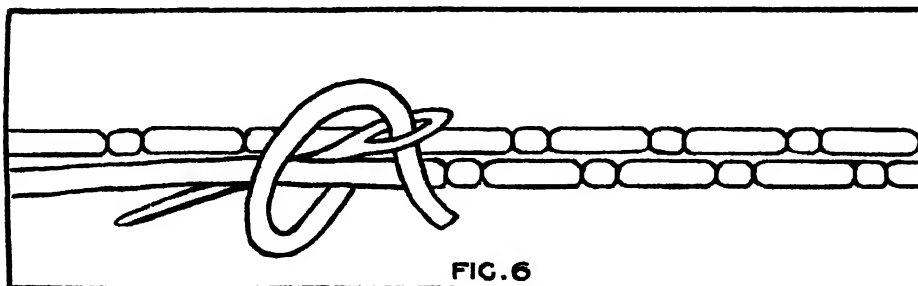


FIG. 6

DESIGN SUGGESTED BY NAVAHO BLANKET (FIG. 5)  
METHOD OF COUCHING (FIG. 6)

tacked together. Two strands of jade wool were attached just under the turnover. They were held down the side and whipped over with a strand of red wool, with stitches  $\frac{1}{2}$  in. apart. The bottom and second side of the bag were finished off in the same way. When the whipping was completed, the turnover was sewn together with D.M.C.

No. 8. The whipping may be carried to the top of the bag, but a more attractive appearance is given if the turnover is left plain, except for the decoration round the hem.

Sampler practice in couching is advisable as it gives experience in maintaining a straight line.

*Time:* Four periods.

## X. NEEDLE WEAVING

NEEDLE Weaving has been done in the Near East, Egypt, Persia and Europe for a very long time. It appears in saddle cloths from Morocco and Turkestan, mummy cloths and garments from Egypt, covers from Persia and sashes from Turkey, as well as in work from Russia, Spain, England and Central Europe. The general technique is the same in all cases; Moorish and some English work show single-whipped bars, and Moorish work also shows a carrying thread from one bar to another. In old work this form of decoration occurs most frequently on the borders of rectangular articles. The four sides usually have borders, but the embroiderers of early days seem to have left to chance the final working-out of the pattern, which was worked across one side, and down the other, and if the corners matched it was fortunate. Working from both ends of one side toward the middle, and constructing a *motif* in keeping with the pattern to use up the remaining bunches of threads does not appear to have entered into the calculations of past embroiderers. Needle weaving can be done on many different textures of material, but the finer the material, and the finer the working thread, the more beautiful will be the result. Carrying threads and whipped single bars are best left till the worker is expert, otherwise they mar rather than add to the beauty of the work.

Sometimes other stitches are used in combination with needle weaving. Bands of this form of decoration are divided or outlined with different stitches; or a little of the ground material, often only a few threads, may be left between the bands of needle weaving. An infinite variety of patterns can be evolved in needle weaving. Simple ones should be chosen to start with, as well as the easiest and most efficient method of weaving in the threads. There is no hard and fast rule for the weaving, and the mathematics of it will vary with the worker and with the type of pattern selected.

There are no additions to the tool pochette.  
Classroom tools and materials:

Coloured hessian.

D.M.C. *coton perle*, No. 5, in pure, clear colours.

D.M.C. *coton perle*, No. 8, the same colour as the hessian.

Tacking cotton.

Large cutting-out scissors.

Blunt rug needles.

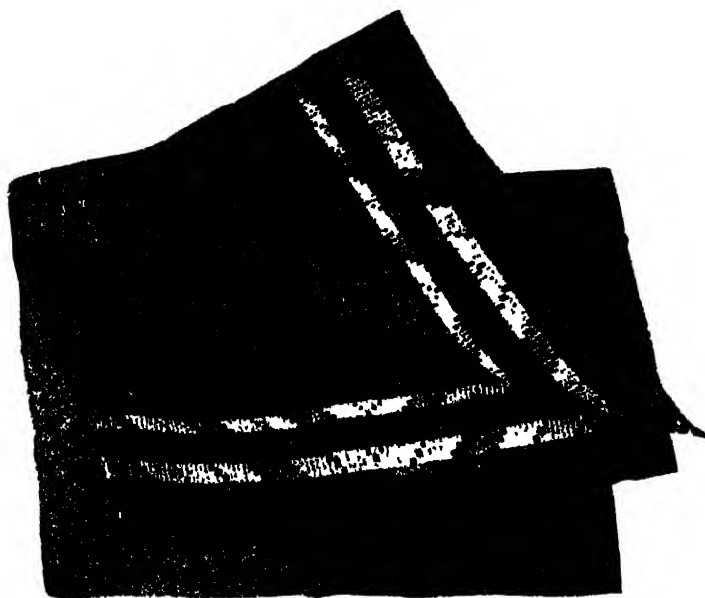
The runner illustrated in Fig. 1 is made from a piece of brown hessian 54 in. by 18 in. This is a large size and may be altered according to individual tastes and needs. The needle weaving is executed in D.M.C. *coton perle*, No. 5, Col. gold 740; yellow

725; fawn 427; copper 920. The hemstitching, slip stitching and top-sewing are done with *coton perle*, No. 8, Col. brown 801, to match the hessian. A blunt rug needle is needed for the weaving, and an ordinary No. 5 sewing needle for the hemstitching and ordinary sewing stitches.

The first thread for the border is drawn 4 in. in from the end of the runner; three more threads are then drawn before tacking up the hem, as it is easier to hemstitch when only a few threads have been drawn.

stitch, is the decoration. In this case hemstitching is merely a means of dividing the threads into bundles and fastening down the hem, but the rule mentioned above still holds in other cases. In the present instance a different coloured thread from the ground material would detract from the needle weaving.

For hemstitching see Fig. 2. Three threads are hemstitched together to form one bunch, at the sides, where the  $\frac{1}{2}$  in. hems occur, more than three threads have to be hem-



A RUNNER (FIG. 1)

Tack up the hem, using  $\frac{1}{2}$  in. for turning. Next tack up a hem (to be  $\frac{1}{2}$  in. wide when finished) down both long sides of the runner — unless one is a selvedge. Do not slip stitch these hems until all the threads for needle weaving have been drawn and the hemstitching and needle weaving completed, otherwise difficulties will arise in the weaving and when taking out the last few threads for the border.

Hemstitching should be done with cotton to match the material. The hole, not the

stitched together on account of the extra number of threads at these points. To divide these over-laid threads into bundles of three threads only would bring the bunches too close together, and they would be difficult and bulky to weave. The ends of the hem can be top-sewn while hemstitching, the left end being done before the hemstitching begins, and the right end when the hemstitching is finished. Hemstitching is required to be done on the hem side only of the drawn threads.

When the hemstitching is finished draw eight more threads, that is twelve in all for the wider border. The runner is now ready for needle weaving. In order to avoid joining more often than is necessary, the length of thread used is much longer than that employed in ordinary work. A little experiment will help the worker to discover exactly the right length of thread needed to weave one block for the design illustrated in Fig. 1. The thread can then be cut by a specimen length, and all joins in the blocks of decoration are thereby eliminated. Fig. 3 shows the method used for starting a thread. With the thumb of the left hand hold the thread up the second bunch of threads from the end of the block to be woven, put the needle round the first bunch of threads in the block, and start weaving as illustrated in Fig. 4. This figure illustrates weaving, but does not show the number of threads or loops required for each section of a block, as this would require a much larger illustration to make the point clear. The end of the thread must be kept in place with the thumb of the left hand until the weaving has moved beyond the first two bunches in the block. To fasten off a thread take it through to the wrong side and run it up and down two or three woven bunches of threads. The design is formed of three sections that move on one bunch at a time, each of these sections is composed of seven bunches of threads, and each has twelve strands of cotton woven in,—that is six loops at each end of a section.

The narrow inside border has been added for the benefit of the rapid worker. It is 1 in. away from the wide border. The preparation is exactly the same as for the first border,—four threads are drawn before, and four threads after the hemstitching is done; that is, eight threads in all. The

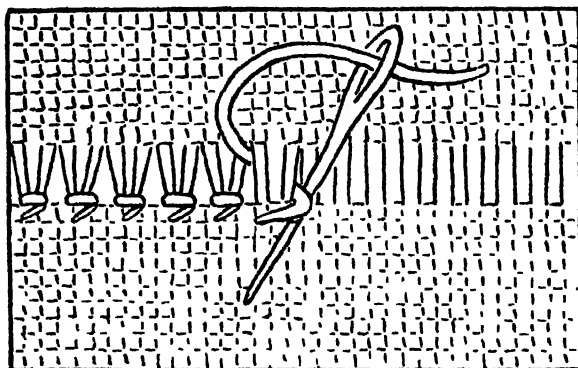


FIG 2

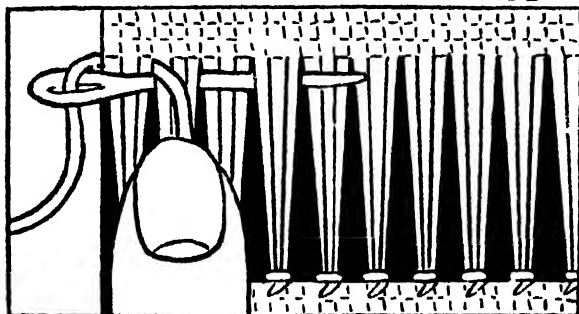


FIG 3

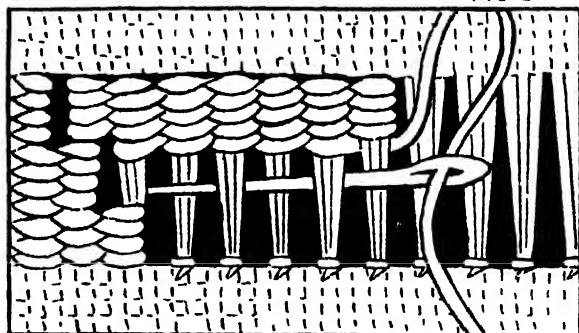


FIG 4

#### HEMSTITCHING AND NEEDLE WEAVING

blocks are six bunches wide and have eight threads woven into each section, thus making four loops at each end. When both ends of the runner have been decorated, the narrow hem on the sides should be slip stitched, and the tackings removed.

The sampler is probably too fine for practice in needle weaving; shared samplers of hessian could be used by those who do not feel able to start on the runner itself.

*Time:* Seven periods.